00035541

Digitized with financial assistance from

Government of Maharashtra

on 30 January, 2020

Map of Ancient
INDIA
to illustrate the Rāmāyana.
(Elphinstone's History of India Vol 2.)
English Miles
0 50 100 200 300
Longitude East of Greenwich
Rajasthan
Punjab
Hastinapur
Indraprasthra
Delhi
Himalaya Mountains
Ayodhya
Mithila
Janakpore
Matsya
Dwarka
Vindhya Mts
Saurasthra
Surat
Panchavati
Wilderness of Dandaka
Hermitage of Sutikshna
Sahyadry Mts
Deckan
INDIAN OCEAN
BAY OF BENGAL
Rishyamukha
Mountain
Cauvery
Ramaswara
Rama's Br.
Str of Manaar
Lanka
Sketch to illustrate the
History of the Brahmanic Age.
Land of Devarās,
Arctic Aryans
Land of Brahmans
E Longitude
W. Hughes
London N Trübner & Co. 60, Paternoster Row.

648

THE

HISTORY OF INDIA

FROM THE EARLIEST AGES.

BY

J. TALBOYS WHEELER,

ASSISTANT SECRETARY TO THE GOVERNMENT OF INDIA IN THE FOREIGN DEPARTMENT.
SECRETARY TO THE INDIAN RECORD COMMISSION.
AUTHOR OF "THE GEOGRAPHY OF HERODOTUS," &c., &c.

35041 ac

VOL. II.

THE RÁMÁYANA AND THE BRAHMANIC PERIOD.

ROYAL ASIATIC SOCIETY LIBRARY BOMBAY BRANCH OF THE

TT e 38

LONDON:
N. TRÜBNER & CO., 60, PATERNOSTER ROW.
MDCCCLXIX.

1869

[*The right of Translation is reserved.*]

00035541

CONTENTS.

VOL II.

PART IV.

THE RÁMÁYANA.

CHAPTER I.

THE CITY OF AYODHYÁ.

	PAGE
Opening scene of the Rámáyana at Ayodhyá, the modern Oude	1
Present appearance of the ruins	1
Ancient magnificence	1
Geographical position indicative of Aryan advance from Delhi to Oude	2
The Raj of Kosala	2
Lack of family traditions	2
Rajas descended from the Sun	2
The Sun descended from Brahma	2
Earliest tradition connected with Dasaratha, the father of Ráma	2
Commencement of the Rámáyana	3
Description of the Raj of Kosala and city of Ayodhyá	3
Houses, streets, temples, palaces, gardens, groves, and chariots of the gods	3
The tanks	3
The lotoses	3
The wind and the bees	3
The ducks and geese	3
The kingfishers	3
The plantain trees	3
Gems	3
Flowers, incense, and banners	3
Fortifications	4
The moat	4

PAGE
The gates 4
The guards 4
The people of Ayodhyá 4
The Bráhmans and their three classes of disciples, viz. : Servants, Students, Brahmacháris 4
The Kshatriyas 4
The Vaisyas 4
The Súdras 4
Virtues of the people 4
Palace of the Maháraja 5
Temples and treasures 5
Throne of the Maháraja 6
Palace guards 6
Virtues of Maháraja Dasaratha 6
Virtues of his Ministers 6
Eight special Counsellors 6
Two priests and preceptors 6
Review of the foregoing description of a Raj, a people, and a Maháraja 7
Hindú ideal of a city 7
Poetical sympathy with external nature subordinate to Brahmanical ideas 7
Coy brides 7
Reverential pupils 7
Disciples of the Bráhmans 7
The people 8
Stress laid upon caste distinctions 8
Model of a Hindú Maháraja 8
Military and religious character 8
His Counsellors 8
His two Purohitas 8
Real nature of the palace enclosure 8
Treasuries and temples within the enclosure 9
Throne in the centre of the palace 9
Hindú idea of the necessity for spies 9

CHAPTER II.

THE HORSE SACRIFICE OF MAHÁRAJA DASARATHA.

Performance of an Aswamedha to obtain a son . . . 10
Episode of a Rishi who had never seen a woman . . . 10
Narrative of the horse sacrifice of Dasaratha 10
The Maháraja determines to perform an Aswamedha to obtain a son 11
Acquiescence of his Bráhman preceptors 11
Delight of the three Ránís 11
Ancient prophecy that the Aswamedha was to be performed by Rishi Sringa 11

PAGE
Legend of the Rishi Sringa who had never seen a woman 11
Drought caused by the wickedness of the Raja of Anga . 12
The Raja advised by the Bráhmans to marry his daughter to Rishi Sringa 12
Refusal of the Raja's servants to bring Rishi Sringa from the jungle 12
Damsels sent to entice Sringa from his father's hermitage . 12
Gambols of the damsels in the absence of Sringa's father . 12
Sringa invites them into the hermitage . . . 12
Sringa fascinated with sweetmeats, wine, and caresses . 13
Alarm of Sringa's father on discovering what had occurred 13
Sringa carried away to Anga by the damsels . . 13
Rain falls on the approach of Sringa 13
Sringa married to the Raja's daughter Sántá . . 14
Review of the foregoing episode of Rishi Sringa . . 14
Power of procuring rain assumed by the Bráhmans . . 14
Indra, the Vedic deity who sent rain . . . 14
Bráhmans assert a superiority to Indra . . . 14
Brahmanical assumption in the legend of Sringa . . 14
Unconscious immorality in the temptation of Sringa . . 15
Narrative of the Aswamedha resumed . . . 15
The Maháraja goes to Anga and brings Sringa to Ayodhyá . 15
Preparation for loosening the horse . . . 16
Respectful homage of the Maháraja to the Bráhmans . 16
The Maháraja's directions to his Counsellor . . 16
Loosening of the horse 16
Preparations for the sacrifice of the horse . . 16
Place of sacrifice 17
Twenty-one posts 17
The eighteen sacrificial pits 17
The sacrifice 17
The Ránís placed with the dead horse 17
Presents of provinces refused by the Bráhmans . . 17
Second sacrifice performed by Rishi Sringa . . . 18
Assembling of the gods 18
The gods receive their shares and disappear . . . 18
The gods pray to Brahma for protection against Rávana . 18
Rávana, rendered invulnerable to the gods, had made the gods his slaves 18
Brahma conducts the gods to the abode of Vishnu in the sea of milk 19
Vishnu appears upon Garura with Lakshmí upon his knees . 19
Prayer of the gods to Vishnu against the oppression of Rávana 19
Vishnu promises to overthrow Rávana by mortals and monkeys 19
The gods become incarnate as monkeys 20
Apparition of an emanation from Brahma 20
Presents a cup of son-producing páyasa to the Maháraja . 20
Joy of the Maháraja 20

PAGE
Joy of the Ránís on sharing the páyasa amongst them . 21
The Ránís conceive 21
Birth of four sons, viz.: Ráma, Bharata, Lakshmana, Satrughna 21
Public rejoicings 21
Naming of the four Princes after eleven days . . 21
Meanings of the names 21
Review of the foregoing description of the Aswamedha . 22
Two sacrifices involved 22
Real character of the sacrifice of the horse . . . 22
Strange rite of the Ránís and the dead horse . . 22
Probably a later Brahmanical invention . . . 22
Flesh of the horse probably believed to stimulate conception 22
Substitution of the páyasa for horse-flesh 23
Extraordinary narrative of the offering of homa representing Ráma as an incarnation of Vishnu . . . 23
Object and character of the incarnation 23
Legend of Rávana, the great Rákshasa Raja . . . 23
Rávana oppresses the Vedic deities 24
Complaint of the Vedic gods, an acknowledgment of their inferiority to Brahma, and of the inferiority of Brahma to Vishnu 24
Vishnu becomes incarnate through the agency of the páyasa. 24

CHAPTER III.

THE CHILDHOOD OF RÁMA.

Life of Ráma from infancy to manhood 27
Hindú love of children 27
Realism in the descriptions of domestic life . . . 27
Progressive incidents in the infancy, childhood, and boyhood of Ráma 27
Narrative in the Rámáyana 28
Description of the four babies during the first year of infancy 28
Ráma identified by the priest Vasishtha as an incarnation of Vishnu 29
Distinguishing marks 29
Ráma and his brethren begin to run about 29
Anecdotes of Ráma 29
Story of Ráma crying for the moon and refusing to be comforted 29
Kausalyá fails to comfort him 30
The women of the palace fail 30
The Maháraja tries and fails 30
Sumantra, the chief Counsellor, pacifies Ráma with a mirror 30
Second year of infancy: Ráma and his brethren begin to talk 31

PAGE
Anecdotes of Ráma 31
Third year, ceremony of piercing their ears 31
Sports of Ráma and his brethren with other boys . 31
At five years of age Ráma and his brethren are educated by Vasishtha 32
Rites of initiation 32
Dress of the four boys 32
Daily attendance at school 32
Progress in their studies 32
Alphabet 32
Grammar 32
Arts and sciences 32
Examinations in the Council-hall 32
Exercises in arms and games 33
Hide-and-seek and mock battles 33
Ráma's play at being Mahárája, with playfellows for Ministers 33
Investiture with the sacred thread, and the attendant rites 33
Ráma and his brethren Brahmacháris for the day . . 33
Study the Vedas. 33
Virtues and accomplishments of the four Princes . . 34
Superiority of Ráma 34
Legend of the great bow of Siva preserved by Janaka, Raja of Mithilá 34
Review of the foregoing narrative of Ráma's early life . 34
The blue-coloured babe 34
The marks of Vishnu 35
Incidents connected with Ráma's crying for the moon common to modern Hindú life 35
Worship of Sustí 35
Exorcising 35
Hindú idea of the Chief Counsellor being called in to quiet Ráma 35
Realism of Hindú childhood as displayed towards the clay images 35
Life of Ráma a type of the modern Hindú . . . 35
Custom of becoming Brahmacháris at the investiture with the thread 36

CHAPTER IV.

WARS WITH THE RÁKSHASAS.

Interval between Ráma's boyhood and marriage employed against the Rákshasas 37
Confusion respecting the aboriginal inhabitants of India . 37
Different appellations 37
Regarded as ghosts or demons 37

PAGE

Represented as descendants from Bráhman sages, and as worshippers of Brahma 37
Origin of the opposition of the Rákshasas to the Bráhman's, and to the Brahmanical sacrifices 38
Brahmanical hermitages 38
Narrative in the Rámáyana of Ráma's expedition against the Rákshasas 38
Anxiety of the Maháraja respecting the marriage of his four sons 38
Visit of Viswámitra 38
Reverential reception of Viswámitra by the Maháraja . 38
The Maháraja volunteers to grant his request . . 39
Viswámitra originally a Kshatriya 39
Requests the Maháraja to send Ráma to protect his Brahmanical settlement against the Rákshasas 39
Sorrow of the Maháraja 39
Viswámitra claims the fulfilment of the Maháraja's promise . 39
Ráma and Lakshmana permitted to accompany Viswámitra 39
Departure of the three for the hermitage of Viswámitra . 40
Poetical description of autumn 40
Viswámitra acts as Guru 40
Journey to the Brahmanical settlement at the junction of the Sarayú and Ganges 40
Legend of Siva smitten by the love-inspiring arrows of Káma 41
Hospitable reception 41
Passage over the Ganges to the southern bank . . 41
Roaring of the waters 41
Dreadful jungle of Táraká 41
Viswámitra requests Ráma to slay Táraká the Rákshasi . 41
Combat between Ráma and Táraká 42
Ráma's unwillingness to slay a woman . . . 42
Slays Táraká at the instigation of Viswámitra . . 42
Divine weapons given to Ráma by Viswámitra . . 42
Two powerful mantras 43
Arrival at the hermitage of Viswámitra . . . 43
Legend of Vishnu in the Dwarf incarnation taking three steps for the destruction of Bali 43
Reception of Ráma by the sages at the hermitage of Viswámitra at Buxar 44
The sacrifice assailed by the Rákshasas 44
Victory of Ráma over Márícha and Suvahu . . 44
Ráma and Lakshmana proceed with Viswámitra to the sacrifice of Janaka in Mithilá 44
Country of Mithilá, the modern Tirhut 45
Legend of Kanouj 45
Legend of the descent of the Ganges on the head of Siva and thence on the earth 45
The party cross the Ganges and halt at Visálá . . 46
Legend of the churning of the ocean by the gods and demons for amrita 47

PAGE

Indra and the gods fly for refuge to Brahma, who refers them to Vishnu 47
Churning of the sea 47
Ascent of Váruní, the deity of wine 47
The Apsaras 47
Lakshmí, beautiful and youthful, rises out of the sea, and becomes the wife of Vishnu 47
The amrita 47
Indra and the gods quaff the amrita and overcome the demons 48
Hospitable entertainment of the party at Visálá . . 48
Journey to Mithilá 48
Legend of the adultery of Indra with the wife of Gautama, the sage 48
Indra cursed by Gautama 48
The wife of Gautama rendered invisible until the arrival of Ráma 49
Ráma enters the hermitage and frees Ahalyá from the curse 49
Review of the foregoing tradition of Ráma's expedition against the Rákshasas 49
Anomalous character of Viswámitra 49
General truthfulness of the geographical references . . 50
Large interpolation of unhistorical myths 50

CHAPTER V.

MARRIAGE OF RÁMÁ.

Interesting story of Ráma's marriage 51
General interest attached to marriages intensified in India . 51
The all-absorbing topic in Hindú households . . . 51
Paramount duty of Hindú parents to arrange the marriages of their children 51
Transcendant interest attached to the marriage of Ráma and Sítá 52
Religious ideas of their divine character 52
Especial religious sympathies of Hindú families . . . 52
Religious sentiment imperfectly expressed in the Rámáyana, but felt by every Hindú 53
Unquestioning belief in the incarnation of Vishnu and Lakshmí 53
Division of the story of the marriage of Ráma into three distinct narratives 53
1st. Tradition of the winning of Sítá by Ráma, and the subsequent marriage 54
Confusion of the women of Mithilá on hearing of Ráma's approach 54
Raja Janaka respectfully receives Viswámitra and inquires respecting Ráma and Lakshmana 54

PAGE
Exhibits the great bow of Siva 54
Sítá promised to that Raja who could bend the bow . 55
Ráma bends the bow 55
Raja Janaka sends messengers to inform Dasaratha . 55
The Mahárája goes to Mithilá, and is received by Raja Janaka 55
Recital of the ancestry of Ráma and Sítá 56
Propositions of marriage for all the four sons of Dasaratha . 56
Performance of a great Sráddha by Dasaratha . . 56
The Mahárája proceeds to the place of sacrifice . . 56
Preparations made by Vasishtha the priest for the nuptial ceremony 57
Janaka places Sítá before the altar 57
The bridegrooms take the hands of the brides, and are sprinkled with holy water 57
Walk three times round the fire 57
Joy of the gods 57
Ceremonies in the inner apartments 58
Review of the foregoing tradition of the marriages of Ráma and his brethren 59
Authentic character of the narrative 59
Marriage ceremony not performed by the Brhámans, but by Raja Janaka 59
Four rites 59
The procession 59
The sacred fire 59
The taking of the hand 59
The sprinkling 60
Resemblance between the ancient Aryan ceremony and the modern Christian rite 60
2nd. Return journey from Mithilá to Ayodhyá . . 60
Episode exhibiting the opposition of Ráma, the Kshatriya, to Parasu Ráma, the Bráhman 60
Nature of the opposition 60
Narrative of the return journey 61
Departure of the sage Viswámitra 61
Presents of Janaka to the brides 61
Departure of the Mahárája with his sons and their wives 61
Evil and good omens 62
Terrible appearance of Parasu Ráma, son of Jamadagni . 62
His wrath against Ráma for having broken the bow of Siva 62
Vasishtha and the Bráhmans present the argha . . 62
Parasu Ráma challenges Ráma to bend the bow of Vishnu . 62
Ráma bends the bow and discharges an arrow . . 63
Parasu Ráma acknowledges him to be Vishnu . . 63
Grand entry of the Mahárája into the city of Ayodhyá . 63
Rejoicings of the people 63
The newly-married pairs bow down to their mothers and worship the gods 63
Presents and feasting 63

PAGE

Review of the foregoing narrative: character of Parasu Ráma 63
Inference that his alleged extirpation of the Kshatriyas is historical 64
Refutation of the inference 64
Parasu Ráma the mere hero of some petty local tradition, originating in the theft of a cow 64
Cattle-lifting story exaggerated into a Brahmanical fable that Parasu Ráma extirpated the Kshatriyas 65
3rd. Story of Ráma's honeymoon 65
Its modern character 65
Contrast between the simplicity of the marriage ceremony, and the ornate story of the honeymoon 65
Hindú character of the narrative 66
Story of the honeymoon in the Rámáyana 66
Consummation of the marriages at Ayodhyá 66
Advice given to Sítá by her maids 66
Timidity of Sítá 66
Remonstrances of Ráma 66
Decorations of the bridal chamber 67
The bridal couch 67
Description of the honeymoon 67
Ráma and Sítá playing at dice 67
Ráma's joke 68
Ráma compares Sítá with different things in nature . 68
Sports of the married pair in the pond 68
Ráma and Sítá drink honey together 68
Review of the foregoing story of the honeymoon of Ráma . 69
Wide difference between a European and a Hindú honeymoon 69
Ráma and Sítá little better than children 69
Description of Ráma as a Hindú bridegroom of sixteen . 69
Description of Sítá as a Hindú bride of fourteen . . 69
Sports of the married Hindú lovers 70

CHAPTER VI.

RÁMA APPOINTED YUVARAJA.

Temporal prosperity of Ráma 72
Ancient appointment of the heir-apparent to be co-Raja during his father's lifetime 72
Threefold object of the custom:
(1.) Settling the succession 72
(2.) Assisting the reigning Raja 72
(3.) Educating the young Prince 72
Installed as Raja under the title of Yuvaraja 72
General political importance of the installation . . 73
Social importance in the Court and palace 73

PAGE
Natural appointment of the eldest son when the Maháraja had only one wife 73
Intrigues where the Maháraja indulged in polygamy . . 73
Jealousy of the wife inflamed by the ambition of the mother 73
Opposition of the youngest favourite to the first wife . 73
Partisanship of the slave girls of the palace 74
Intrigues embittered by the conditions of zenana life . 74
The passions stimulated by want of society and occupation . 74
Tenderness of the woman changed to the ferocity of the tigress 74
Vital importance of the question of succession in polygamous households 74
Involves the question of which wife shall rule the family 74
Anguish of an elder wife at being subordinate to a younger rival, and seeing her own son subordinate to the rival's son 75
Appointment of Ráma to be Yuvaraja an illustration of zenana life 75
Obscurity arising from the modification of the ancient tradition for the purpose of presenting Ráma as a model . 75
Probable nature of the real state of affairs 75
Opposition of Ráma to Bharata 76
Relative position of their mothers 76
Partisanship of Lakshmana and Satrughna 76
Progress of the intrigues 76
Opposition of Kaikeyí, the younger wife, to Kausalyá, the first wife 76
Views of the Maháraja 76
Preference for Ráma 77
Bharata sent to the city of his maternal grandfather . . 77
Tradition as related in the Rámáyana 77
Visit of Yudhájit, brother of Kaikeyí and uncle of Bharata . 77
The Maháraja determines to send away Bharata with Yudhájit . 77
Joy of Kaikeyí 77
Commands given by the Maháraja to Bharata . . 77
Departure of Bharata and Satrughna 78
Arrival at the city of Raja Aswapati 78
Public rejoicings 78
Bharata and Satrughna dwelt in the palace of Raja Aswapati . 78
Studies of Bharata 78
Question as to which of the Princes should be appointed Yuvaraja 79
Partiality of the Maháraja for Ráma 79
Virtues of Ráma 79
Resolution of the Maháraja to appoint Ráma to be Yuvaraja 79
Ministers, Counsellors, and people request the Maháraja to retire in favour of Ráma 79
Feigned anger of the Maháraja 79
A great Council summoned 80

PAGE

Speech of the Maháraja expressing a desire to retire in favour of Ráma, and to appoint Ráma Yuvaraja . 80
Joy of the assembly 80
Reply of the Chieftains that Ráma should be coadjutor with the Maháraja 80
The Chieftains recite the many merits of Ráma . . 81
His wisdom and bravery 81
His kind words 81
His truth, continence, and justice 81
Universal popularity 81
The Maháraja makes known his delight 81
Directs his two priests to prepare for Ráma's installation . 82
General acclamations 82
Vasishtha, at the request of the Maháraja, recites what will be necessary for the ceremony 82
The installation fixed for the morrow 82
The Maháraja sends for Ráma 82
Ráma arrives at the palace 83
Received graciously by the Maháraja 83
Speech of the Maháraja to Ráma 83
Requests Ráma to become Yuvaraja 83
His own planet threatened by three malignant aspects . 83
Passing of the moon on the morrow into Pushyá . . 83
Ráma directed to keep watch until the morning . . 83
Ráma proceeds to his mother's apartments . . . 84
Acquaints her of his coming elevation 84
Joy of Kausalyá 84
Ráma's kind address to his brother Lakshmana . . . 84
Goes home 84
Vasishtha, by direction of the Maháraja, visits Ráma . 84
Vasishtha's directions to Ráma 85
Ráma worships Vasishtha 85
Sacrifices to Vishnu 85
Keeps watch throughout the night in the temple of Vishnu 85
Rejoicings in the house of Ráma 86
Rejoicings throughout the city of Ayodhyá . . . 86
Illuminations and purifications 86
Adorning of the city at sunrise 86
Young and old exult in the installation of Ráma . . 86
Country people flock into the city to behold the installation 86
Review of the narrative in the Rámáyana 86
Brahmanical introduction of Vasishtha, a later interpolation 87
Dubious stress laid upon the worship of Vishnu . . 87
Remaining details a relic of the ancient tradition . . 87
Fears as regards Bharata 87
Democratic element evidenced in the popular movement in favour of Ráma 87
The deputation which waited upon the Maháraja . . 87
General assembly, or great Council, convened in consequence 88

PAGE

Popular interest in public affairs converted into a personal affection for Ráma 88

CHAPTER VII.

INTRIGUES OF KAIKEYÍ.

Acme of human felicity attained by Ráma 89
Conception of the avenging Nemesis 89
Brilliant preparations for the installation on the eve of the ceremony, throughout the night, and on the following sunrise 89
Painful scene enacted during the same interim in the palace of the Maháraja 90
Tradition recorded in the Rámáyana 90
Scenes within the palace of the Maháraja on the eve of the installation 90
Manthará, the old nurse of Kaikeyí 90
Her extreme ugliness 91
Beholds the preparations for the installation with great wrath 91
Attempts to rouse the jealousy of Kaikeyí in behalf of Bharata 91
Kaikeyí professes delight at the news of Ráma's installation 91
Manthará declares that Bharata will become a slave to Ráma 92
Kaikeyí dilates on the virtues of Ráma and his superior claim to the Raj 92
Manthará insinuates that Bharata and Satrughna have been sent away that Ráma might be installed 92
Again insinuates that Kausalyá is the favourite wife, and points out the coming elevation of Ráma and degradation of Bharata 93
Counsels Kaikeyí to persuade the Maháraja to install Bharata and exile Ráma 93
Kaikeyí aroused 93
Manthará reminds her of the two boons promised her by the Maháraja 93
Desires her to request the installation of Bharata and exile of Ráma 94
Kaikeyí runs away to the chamber of displeasure . 94
The Maháraja visits the apartments of Kaikeyí . . 95
Description of the apartments 95
Surprise of the Maháraja at the absence of Kaikeyí . . 95
The Maháraja proceeds in great distress to the chamber of displeasure 95
His affectionate speeches to Kaikeyí 95
Kaikeyí desires a favour 96
The Maháraja swears to perform her request . . 96
Kaikeyí calls upon the gods to witness his promise . . 96
Reminds the Maháraja of his previous promise to grant two

PAGE

favours, and requests the installation of Bharata and exile of Ráma 96
The Maháraja falls into a swoon 97
Kaikeyí's anxiety 97
Distraction of the Maháraja 97
He reproaches Kaikeyí for her cruelty 97
Implores Kaikeyí to withdraw her request 97
Remorseless obstinacy of Kaikeyí 98
She insists upon the fulfilment of the Maháraja's promise . 98
Wrath of the Maháraja 98
Reproaches himself for his uxoriousness, and insists upon Kaikeyí recalling her request 98
Kaikeyí insists upon the Maháraja keeping his word . . 99
Lamentations and remonstrances of the Maháraja . . . 99
Wicked persistence of Kaikeyí 100
Review of the foregoing narrative of the intrigues of Kaikeyí 101
Exaggerations in the dialogue respecting Ráma. 101
Real feelings of Kaikeyí 101
Real feelings of the Maháraja 101
Mythical character of the story of the two boons . . . 101
Malice of the old nurse 102
Cunning and obduracy of Kaikeyí 102
Artful mode of wheedling the Maháraja out of a promise 102
Obstinacy in insisting upon the fulfilment of the promise . 102
Curious Brahmanical interpolation that Ráma was required to become a religious devotee 103
Modern belief in the idea 103

CHAPTER VIII.

EXILE OF RÁMA.

Series of six touching events connected with the exile of Ráma 105
1st, Ráma's visit to the palace on the morning of the installation 051
Sunrise in the city: completion of all the preparations for the installation of Ráma 105
Sumantra sent by Vasishtha to hasten the Maháraja . . 106
Sumantra enters the inner apartments and approaches the door of the Maháraja's chamber 106
Praises the Maháraja 107
Kaikeyí desires him to bring Ráma 107
The Maháraja commands him likewise 107
Sumantra proceeds to the house of Ráma . . . 107
Beautiful house 107
Outer apartment guarded by young men 107
Inner apartments guarded by old men 107
Sumantra enters the presence of Ráma and declares his mission 107

PAGE
Ráma prepares to go to the Mahárája 108
Prayer of Sítá 108
Ráma ascends his chariot 108
Acclamations of the multitude 108
Ráma's progress to the palace of the Mahárája . . 108
Passes through the five courts and enters . . . 109
Review of the foregoing narrative of Ráma's visit to the palace 109
Obscure references to the installation ceremonies . . 109
Palace arrangements 110
Young men employed to guard the outer apartments and old men to guard the zenana 110
Hyperbolical address of Sumantra to the Mahárája . 110
Picture of Ráma fanned by Sítá 110
Hindú character of the procession 110
2nd, Ráma's interview with the Mahárája and Kaikeyí . 110
Scenes within the palace 111
Humiliation and sorrow of the Mahárája on seeing Ráma . 111
Kaikeyí informs Ráma of the promise made by the Mahárája, and of her own two requests in return . . . 111
Rápna's prompt and cheerful acquiescence 111
Kaikeyí insists on his immediate departure . . . 112
Ráma obeys 112
Ráma's perfect control of his passions 112
Review of the foregoing narrative 112
Self-control of Ráma 112
Stress laid upon the virtue by modern Hindús . . 112
3rd, Ráma's interview with his mother 113
Proceeds to the apartment of his mother . . . 113
Kausalyá's worship of Vishnu in behalf of her son . 113
Ráma finds her engaged in sacrificing 113
Her joy at seeing Ráma 113
Ráma informs his mother of his coming exile . . 114
Terrible grief of Kausalyá 114
Her bitter lamentations 114
Urges Ráma to seize the Raj, and slay the Mahárája . 115
Lakshmana seconds the counsel of Kausalyá . . . 115
Kausalyá again implores Ráma 115
Ráma refuses to transgress his father's commands . 115
Refuses to permit Kausalyá to accompany him . . 116
Refuses to blame his enemies 116
Review of the foregoing narrative 116
Perfect picture of a Hindú mother propitiating the gods in behalf of her son 116
Desperate character of Kausalyá's propositions to Ráma . 116
Noble spirit of Ráma in refusing to censure the measures of his parents 117
4th, Ráma's interview with Sítá 117
Ráma proceeds to take leave of Sítá 117
Sítá's loving anxiety 117

PAGE
Ráma informs his wife of his coming exile 117
Desires her to remain and devote her life to religion and the service of her mothers 118
Sítá replies that she must accompany him, and longs to roam with him in the forest 118
Ráma recounts the perils and sufferings of jungle life . 118
Hot sun 118
No servants 118
Stones and briars 118
Serpents, crocodiles, and sharks 118
Wild beasts 118
Bad food 119
Coarse garments 119
Mosquitoes and scorpions 119
Rákshasas 119
Solitude 119
Exposure 119
Ráma desires Sítá to remain, and urges that separation will increase their affection 119
Sítá replies that in his society all evil will become good . 119
Implores Ráma to permit her to accompany him . . 120
Ráma still unwilling 120
Wrath of Sítá 120
Taunts Ráma 120
Checks herself and weeps bitterly 120
Ráma yields to his wife's entreaties 121
Sítá's joy 121
Lakshmana permitted to accompany Ráma . . 121
Ráma and Sítá give all their jewels and goods to the Bráhmans and the needy 121
Remarks on Sítá's love for Ráma 121
5th, Farewell visit of Ráma, Sítá, and Lakshmana to the Maháraja 121
Profound sorrow of the people of Ayodhyá at the exile of Ráma 122
Ráma, Sítá, and Lakshmana walk barefooted to the palace . 122
The people reproach the Maháraja 122
Contemplate accompanying Ráma into the jungle . . 122
Reproach Kaikeyí 122
Scene in the palace. The Maháraja summons all his women to be present at his parting with Ráma . . . 123
Swooning of the Maháraja on beholding Ráma, Síta, and Lakshmana 123
The Maháraja desires Ráma to seize the Raj . . . 123
Ráma refuses 123
The Máháraja implores Ráma to stay one day longer . 124
Ráma urges that he must not delay 124
Seeks to console the Maháraja 124
Intense grief of all present excepting Kaikeyí . . 124
Sumantra heaps terrible reproaches upon Kaikeyí . . 124

PAGE

Threatens to accompany Ráma with all the people of Kosala, and leave the Raj uninhabited 125
Implores Kaikeyí to retract her determination . . 125
Kaikeyí unmoved 125
The Maháraja orders the army and treasures to accompany Ráma 125
Kaikeyí declares that Bharata will not accept an empty Raj 126
Urges that Ráma should go into exile as Asamanja had done 126
Tradition of Asamanja 126
Ráma refuses to accept the army 126
Calls for garments of bark, and a spade and basket . 126
Kaikeyí brings the bark clothing 126
Ráma puts it on 126
Lakshmana adopts the bark clothing 127
Sítá weeps over it 127
The Maháraja declares that Ráma alone is bound to wear the bark garments 127
Vasishtha reproaches Kaikeyí 127
The Maháraja presents Sítá with clothes and ornaments . 128
Orders his chariot for the exiles 128
Ráma, Sítá, and Lakshmana take leave of Kausalyá . . 128
Her speech to Ráma 128
Ráma's reply 128
Her speech to Lakshmana 128
Her speech to Sítá 128
Sítá's reply 129
Ráma takes leave of the other women 129
6th, Lamentations on the departure of Ráma . . 129
Ráma, Sítá, and Lakshmana depart in the chariot and are driven by Sumantra 129
Excitement in the city of Ayodhyá 129
The charioteer called upon to stop 130
Grief of the people 130
Affliction of the Maháraja 130
The Maháraja and Kausalyá command Sumantra to halt . 130
Ráma desires Sumantra to drive on, and to excuse himself by a falsehood 130
General mourning throughout the city and palace of Ayodhyá 130
The Maháraja falls to the earth, but is attended by Kausalyá and Kaikeyí 131
Refuses to be touched by Kaikeyí 131
Kausalyá raises him 131
His lamentations for Ráma 131
The Maháraja returns to the palace and is conveyed to the apartments of Kausalyá 132
Midnight scene 132
Lamentations of Kausalyá 132
Review of the foregoing narrative of Ráma's departure into exile 133

PAGE
Reason why Ráma, Sítá, and Lakshmana walked to the palace with bare feet 133
Demonstrative character of family affections amongst the Hindús 133
Sympathies of the people with the domestic life of the Raja in ancient times 133
Filial obedience of Ráma, a Hindú model for all time . 134
Conduct of Kaikeyí intended as a warning to younger wives 134
The lesson ineffectual 134

CHAPTER IX.

JOURNEY TO CHITRA-KÚTA.

Route followed by the exiles, divided into three stages . 135
1st, Sringavera, the modern Sungroor, on the left bank of the Ganges 135
2nd, Prayága, the modern Alláhabád, at the junction of the Ganges and Jumná 135
3rd, Chitra-kúta, to the south of the Jumná . . . 135
1st Route: from Ayodhyá to Sringavera. People of Ayodhyá follow Ráma to the Tamasá river 136
The halt 136
Encampment during the first night 136
Sunrise: Ráma, Sítá, and Lakshmana depart without awaking the people 136
Sumantra drives towards Ayodhyá to delude the people, and then returns by a detour to the Tamasá . . . 137
The people return to Ayodhyá 137
Mournful appearance of the city 137
Lamentations of the women 137
Passage over the river Tamasá into the beautiful country of Kosala 138
Poetical description of the river Ganges 138
Progress to Sringavera, the modern Sungroor . . 138
Border town between the Raj of Kosala and the Bhíl country 139
Guha, Raja of the Bhíls, entertains Ráma with great hospitality 139
Ráma's moderate request 139
Ráma's fasting and devotions 140
Night at Sringavera 140
2nd Route: from Sringavera to Práyaga 140
Sunrise: preparations for crossing the Ganges . . 140
Ráma dismisses Sumantra, the charioteer 140
His mild address to Sumantra 140
Lakshmana's angry message to Kaikeyí prevented by Ráma . 141
Sumantra's request to remain with the exiles refused by Ráma 141
Ráma and Lakshmana mat up their hair after the fashion of devotees 142
Ráma takes leave of Raja Guha and embarks with his wife and brother on the Ganges 142

PAGE
Sítá's prayer and vow to the goddess Gangá . . . 142
The trio land on the south bank of the Ganges . . 143
Order of march through the forest: Lakshmana in front and Ráma in the rear, with Sítá between them . . 143
Halt beneath a fig tree and partake of venison . . 144
Beds of grass and leaves prepared by Lakshmana . . 144
Lamentations of Ráma 144
Lakshmana administers consolation 144
Sunrise in the jungle: progress from the fig tree to Prayága, the modern Alláhabád, at the junction of the Ganges and Jumná 145
Arrival at the hermitage of Bharadwája . . . 145
Hospitality of the sage 145
Bharadwája counsels Ráma to dwell at Prayága . . 146
Ráma desires a more lonely locality . . . 146
The sage recommends the hill of Chitra-kúta in Bundelkund on the opposite bank of the Jumná . . . 146
3rd Route: from Prayága to Chitra-kúta . . 146
Departure from Prayága 146
Directions given by the sage for crossing the Jumná . 146
Preparation of a raft and passage over the river . . 147
Sítá's prayer and vow to the goddess Jumná . . 147
Sítá's prayer to the sacred fig tree 147
Progress along the banks of the Jumná . . . 147
Arrival at Chitra-kúta 147
Hermitage of Válmíki 148
Hut of branches and trees constructed by Lakshmana . 148
Propitiatory sacrifice to the god of the dwelling . . 148
Sacrificial rites performed by Ráma 149
Residence of Ráma, Sítá, and Lakshmana in the hut at Chitra-kúta 149
Review of the foregoing narrative of Ráma's journey to Chitra-kúta 149
The exiles part with Sumantra at the frontier town of Sringavera 149
Cross the Ganges to Prayága, and the Jumná for Chitrakúta 149
Worship of the Ganges and Jumná, and the sacred fig tree, by Sítá 149
Bráhman settlements, or hermitages, scattered amongst the aboriginal population 150
Bráhman settlements at the Junction of the Sarayú and Ganges; at Buxar; at the junction of the Ganges and Jumná; and at Chitra-kúta 150
Question of whether the hermitages really existed in the time of Ráma postponed 150

CHAPTER X.

DEATH OF MAHÁRAJA DASARATHA.

Division of the story of the death of Maháraja Dasaratha into four distinct scenes 151

PAGE
The narrative as it appears in the Rámáyana . . 151
1st, Scene in the palace after the return of Sumantra to Ayodhyá 151
Distress of the people, the ladies of the palace, and the Maháraja 152
Sumantra delivers Ráma's message 152
Prostration of the Maháraja 152
Kausalyá reproaches the Maháraja 152
The Maháraja implores the forgiveness of Kausalyá . . 153
Kausalyá acknowledges her transgression in having reproached her lord 154
2nd, Last words of the Maháraja to Kausalyá at midnight 154
Death of the Maháraja 155
3rd, Morning scene without and within the palace . . 155
Bards and eulogists praising the Maháraja . . . 155
Bráhmans chaunting the Vedas 155
Servants, male and female, performing their morning duties 155
Appearance of the Maháraja anxiously expected . . 155
Palace ladies discern that the Maháraja is dead . . 156
Kausalyá and Sumitrá awake from their swoon . . 156
Lamentations of all the women 156
The Ministers hasten to the chamber of the dead Maháraja 156
Funeral ceremonies delayed 156
Royal corpse preserved in a bath of oil 156
4th, Council of Bráhmans and Chieftains convened by the Ministers 156
Address of the assembly to the priest Vasishtha . . 156
Necessity for the immediate appointment of a Maháraja . 157
Poetical description of a country without a Maháraja . 157
Vasishtha implored to appoint a successor to the Raj . 157
Vasishtha despatches messengers to bring Bharata from the city of his grandfather 158
Directions to the messengers 158
Departure of the messengers 158
Review of the foregoing tradition of the death of Maháraja Dasaratha 158
Exaggeration of the dialogue between the Maháraja and Kausalyá 158
Resignation of Kausalyá 158
Picture of the dying sovereign 159
Picturesque scene at the palace on the morning following the death of the Maháraja 159
Assembling of the Ministers 160
A day of darkness 160
Constitutional form involved in the convening of the Council 160
Stress laid upon the importance of immediately appointing a successor 160
Claims of Ráma ignored 161

CHAPTER XI.

BHARATA REFUSES THE RAJ.

	PAGE
Five leading events in the narrative of Bharata's refusal of the Raj	162
The narrative	162
1st, Ominous dream of Bharata	162
2nd, Bharata's return	163
The Messengers arrive from Ayodhyá with the message from Vasishtha	163
Presents sent to Bharata's grandfather and uncle	163
Bharata takes leave of his grandfather	163
Presents given to Bharata by his grandfather	164
Seven days' journey of Bharata and Satrughna to the city of Ayodhyá	164
Bharata's surprise at the desolate state of the city	164
Bharata suspects that his father is dead	164
Picture of the popular sorrow	164
3rd, Scene between Bharata and his mother	165
Kaikeyí's affectionate address to Bharata	165
Bharata's reply	165
Kaikeyí explains with gladness that the Maháraja is dead	165
Bharata's grief at the news	165
Kaikeyí informs Bharata of the exile of Ráma	166
Bharata demands the reason	166
Kaikeyí explains her intrigues, and entreats him to perform the funeral rites and take the Raj	166
Bharata bitterly reproaches his mother	167
Proclaims the virtues of Ráma and declares his superior right to the Raj	167
His deep affliction	167
4th, Scene between Satrughna and the nurse Manthará	167
Sudden appearance of the wicked nurse	167
Satrughna falls upon Manthará, and drags her into the presence of Kaikeyí, and threatens to slay her	168
Bharata explains to him the guilt of killing a woman	168
Satrughna releases Manthará	168
5th, Scene between Bharata and Satrughna, and Kausalyá, the mother of Ráma	168
Kausalyá reproaches Bharata	168
Bharata declares his loyal attachment to Ráma	169
Bharata comforts Kausalyá	170
Exaggerated references to Bharata's affection for Ráma	170
Hindú ideas as regards dreams and presentiments	170
Exaggerated representation of Bharata's wrath against his mother	170
Barbarous character of Satrughna's treatment of Manthará	170

CHAPTER XII.

FUNERAL RITES FOR THE MAHÁRAJA.

	PAGE
Necessity for the immediate performance by Bharata of the funeral rites for Mahárája Dasaratha	171
Ancient date of the funeral ceremonies	171
Vasishtha requests Bharata to perform the funeral rites for the Mahárája	171
Bharata's reply	171
Procession to the chamber of the royal corpse	171
Preparations throughout the night	172
Bharata hailed at sunrise as the Mahárája, but delines the dignity	172
Grand assembly in the Council hall	172
Acclamations in favour of Bharata	172
Vasishtha declares that all is ready for the funeral ceremonies	172
Adornment of the royal corpse	173
The body placed on the litter	173
Procession from the palace to the place of burning	173
The eulogists, bards, and musicians	173
The royal widows	173
The royal servants bearing the litter	173
Bharata and Satrughna	173
The ensigns of royalty	173
The chariots of funeral gifts of gold and jewels	173
The people of the city	174
The place of burning	174
The funeral pile	174
The body on the pile	174
The sacrifices of the Bráhmans	174
Sacrificial articles cast on the pile	174
Sacrifice of an animal	174
Body covered with rice	174
Sacrifice of the cow and calf	174
Bharata fires the pile	174
Lamentations of the widows and citizens	174
Prostration of Bharata	174
Vasishtha consoles Bharata	175
Rite of sprinkling water for the soul of the Mahárája	175
Return to the city of Ayodhyá	175
Ten days of mourning on a mat of kusa grass	175
Sráddha performed on the twelfth day	175
Purification of the thirteenth day	176
Bones thrown into the river	176
Funeral rites completed	176
Review of the foregoing narrative of the burning of the royal corpse	176

PAGE
Picture of the funeral procession 176
Sacrifice of a cow and her calf an ancient rite . . . 176
Remaining ceremonies still performed by the Hindús . 176

CHAPTER XIII.

BHARATA'S VISIT TO RÁMA.

Thirteen days of mourning between the burning of the royal corpse and the Council at which Bharata declines the Raj in favour of Ráma 178
Route followed by Bharata in his journey from Ayodhyá to Chitra-kúta 178
Eight events in the narrative of Bharata's visit to Ráma . 179
The narrative 179
1st, Council held, and Bharata requested to become Raja . 179
Bharata's refusal to set aside the superior claim of Ráma . 180
Announces his intention of proceeding to the jungle and installing Ráma in the Raj 180
Acclamations of the people 180
2nd, Construction of a great road through the jungle . 180
Labourers employed 180
Clearing of a way through the jungle 180
Levelling 181
Bridges 181
Canals and wells 181
Booths and palaces 181
Decoration of the road with flowers, birds, and banners . 181
3rd, March from Ayodhyá to Sringavera 181
Assembling of the army 181
Preparations for the march 181
Bharata refuses to be treated as the Raja . . . 181
Departure of Bharata, accompanied by the Counsellors, priests, and army 181
Kaikeyí, Sumitrá, and Kausalyá 182
People of all ranks and conditions 182
Halt at Sringavera 182
4th, Proceedings of Raja Guha 182
His alarm lest Bharata should contemplate the death of Ráma 183
Preparations of Guha for opposing Bharata's passage over the Ganges 183
Raja Guha crosses to the northern bank with presents for Bharata 183
Interview between Guha and Bharata 183
Bharata desires to know the way to the hermitage of Bharadwája 183
Guha offers to accompany Bharata 184
Rejoices at hearing that Bharata is going to conduct Ráma to Ayodhyá 184

PAGE
Night passed in conversation respecting Ráma . . 184
5th, Passage of the river Ganges 184
Embarkation of Bharata and Satrughna, and the three chief widows of the Mahárája 184
Vasishtha and the Bráhmans 185
The female attendants 185
Stirring scene upon the river 185
Swimming of the elephants 185
Crossing of the people on rafts and jars 185
6th, March along the southern bank of the Ganges towards Prayága 185
Vasishtha and Bharata proceed in advance to the hermitage of Bharadwája 185
Their hospitable reception 185
Courteous exchange of inquiries 186
Fears of Bharadwája respecting Ráma allayed by Bharata 186
7th, Great entertainment given by Bharadwája to the army and people of Bharata 186
Invokes Viswakarma, the architect of the gods . . . 186
Invokes the gods, with Indra at their head . . . 186
Invokes the rivers, the Gandharvas, and the Apsaras . 186
The celestials obey the commands of Bharadwája . 187
Wondrous works of Viswakarma and the gods . . 187
The enamelled plain 187
The forest of Indra 187
The rivers flowing with liquors 187
The white houses 187
Beautiful palace prepared for Bharata 187
Preparations for the feast 187
Respect paid to the royal throne in honour of Ráma . 187
Vasishtha and the Bráhmans eat first . . . 188
Feasting of Bharata and the Counsellors 188
Wonderful rivers 188
Beautiful women sent by Brahma, Kuvera, and Indra . 188
Performances of the Gandharvas and Apsaras . . 188
Performances of the trees 188
Feasting of the army and people 188
Beautiful damsels 188
Intoxication of the soldiery 188
Servants, followers, and animals of all kinds, completely satisfied 189
General cleanliness 189
Couches 189
Wells of Páyasa 189
Exhaustless cows 189
Trees dropping honey 189
Ponds of wine 189
Flesh meat 189
Plates, vessels, and pots in abundance 189
Lakes of butter-milk, milk, curds, and butter . . 189

PAGE
Tooth-picks and sandal wood 189
Mirrors, clean garments, shoes, and combs . . . 189
Betel 189
Lakes for bathing 189
Sudden return of all things to their previous state . . . 190
Bharata acknowledges the hospitality of Bharadwája . 190
Bharadwája points out to Bharata the road to Chitra-kúta . 190
8th, Passage of the Jumná and journey to Chitra-kúta . 190
Order of march 190
The Captains in chariots 190
The elephants 190
The infantry 191
The ladies 191
Bhárata's litter 191
Alarm of the beasts and birds at the advance of the army . 191
Description of Chitra-kúta 191
Halting of the army and discovery of Ráma's dwelling . 192
Bharata proceeds, accompanied only by Satrughna, Sumantra, and Guha 192
Review of the foregoing narrative of Bharata's visit to Ráma 192
The great highway 192
Probably a reconstruction of the old road . . . 192
Poetic embellishments 192
Ancient custom of preparing a new road for the advance of distinguished personages 193
Curious picture of ancient life presented by the proceedings of Raja Guha 193
Picturesque description of the crossing of the Ganges . 193
Extraordinary character of the entertainment miraculously furnished by Bharadwája 194
Adaptation of the story to Hindú tastes 194
Marvellous transformations and creations 194
Distinction between the dreamy luxury of Bharata and his Counsellors, and the uproarious conviviality of the soldiers and common people 194
Strange anomaly that the description of the feast should be deemed a portion of inspired writ 195
The Kshatriya tradition partly overlaid by Brahmanical details 195
Opposition between rice and milk food and flesh meat . 196
The feast referred to the Tretá-yuga 196
Miraculous powers of entertainment ascribed to Bráhman sages 196

CHAPTER XIV.

RÁMA REFUSES THE RAJ.

Interesting character of the interviews between Bharata and Ráma 197
Stress laid upon the self-sacrifice of Ráma in order to fulfil his father's commands 197

PAGE
Three interviews between Bharata and Ráma . . 198
Seven leading incidents in the narrative 198
The narrative 199
1st, Description of the hill Chitra-kúta and the river Mandákiní, and of the sports of Ráma and Sítá amongst the flowers 199
Ráma descants on the beauties of Chitra-kúta . . 199
Ráma descants on the beauties of the river Mandákiní . 200
The fords 200
The holy sages worshipping the sun 200
The trees 200
The flowers 200
The red geese 200
Ráma invites Sítá to bathe 200
Declares that he has no wish for the Raj of Kosala . 201
Ráma and Sítá rest in a beautiful cave 201
Ráma requests Sítá to cling to him as the climbing plant clings to a tree 201
Ráma paints a red tíká on Sítá's forehead 201
Sítá alarmed by monkeys 202
The tíká on her forehead is stamped on Ráma's chest . 202
Wanderings in the asoka grove 202
Ráma and Sítá adorn each other with flowers . . 202
Ráma and Sítá return to the hermitage 202
Met by Lakshmana, who has slain ten antelopes . . 202
Sacrifice and supper of venison 202
2nd, Approach of Bhárata's army, and description of Ráma's hermitage 203
Terror of the beasts of the jungle 203
Lakshmana mounts a tree and sees the army 203
Advises the slaughter of Bharata 203
Reproved by Ráma 203
Conjectures that the Maháraja is approaching . . 203
Bharata approaches the hermitage 204
Description of the hermitage 204
The golden bow 204
The quiver 204
The two scimitars 204
The two shields 204
The altar 204
Ráma attired as a devotee, seated near the altar on kusa grass 204
3rd, First interview between Ráma and Bharata . . 204
Lamentations of Bharata on beholding Ráma . . 204
Ráma recognizes Bharata and embraces him . . . 205
Delivers a speech on the duties of Rajas . . . 205
Selection of Counsellors 205
Avoidance of sleep 205
Decisions 205
Procrastination 205
Secresy 205
Value of learned men 205

PAGE.
Incorruptible Counsellors 206
Respect of the people 206
Selection of a Minister 206
Selection of a General 206
Public rewards 206
Regular pay to the army 206
Selection of an Ambassador 206
Self-indulgent Bráhmans 206
Ignorant and presuming Bráhmans 206
Protection of the city 207
Protection of the country districts 207
Female counsel 207
Stock of elephants, cows, and horses 207
Forts 207
Finances 207
Corrupt administration of justice 207
Piety 208
Ráma demands the reason of Bharata's coming . . . 208
Bharata informs him of the death of Dasaratha . . . 208
Ráma's affliction at the news 208
His lamentations 208
4th, Ráma's offering of oblations of water and funeral cakes to the soul of his deceased father 209
The funeral cake made of the pulp of the fig tree . . . 209
Approach of the army to behold Ráma 209
Ráma's condescension 210
Grief of Kausalyá at seeing the coarse cake which Ráma had offered to his father 210
Grief of the other Ránís 210
Kindness of the Ránís towards Ráma, Lakshmana, and Sítá . 210
Ráma embraces the feet of Vasishtha 210
5th, Second interview between Bharata and Ráma on the bank of the Maudákiní 210
Bharata offers the Raj to Ráma 211
Ráma refuses to depart from the arrangement ordered by his father 211

Atheistical speech of Jáváli the logician :—

"Whilst your father was alive you obeyed his commands, but now that he is dead they are no longer binding. The relationship of parents to their children is only temporary, like that of the inn to the passing traveller. Take your pleasure in this mortal life of which we know something, and trouble not respecting the life hereafter of which we know nothing. I grieve for those who sacrifice the substantial happiness of this life for a visionary happiness hereafter. Men, it is true, offer cakes to their dead ancestors, but how can those ancestors eat them? If the soul is immortal it must have passed into a new form which cannot eat the cake. If, indeed, the eating of the cake by the cows satisfies the hunger of a dead father, it might also satisfy the hunger of a

PAGE

distant friend. Our existence in this mortal life is our chief good, but we have no proof of the future, and it is therefore nothing to us. Of those who are already dead we know nothing. The whole universe is in disorder, for the wicked are often happy whilst the good are often miserable. Therefore accept the Raj !" 211
Wrathful reply of Ráma :—
"I will not disobey my dead father, whom I obeyed when living. Your words are as deleterious as wine. If there is no future state why are the vicious censured? If you demand direct proof, a woman is a widow in her husband's absence, and astronomy teaches nothing. But Indra obtained sovereignty by his sacrifices, and sages have been glorified through their austerities. I will obey my father !" 214
6th, Third interview between Bhárata and Ráma . . 215
Ráma renews the discussion :—
"Jáváli confounds right and wrong, and if I did the same I should be censured by all, whilst the people of the Raj would follow my example. Truthfulness and benevolence are the eternal duties of a Raja. I regret that my father should have promoted a Buddhist and an atheist. No virtuous Raja will stand in the presence of an atheist." . . 215
Jáváli, convinced by Ráma's reasoning, recants his atheistical opinions 215
Vasishtha endeavours to persuade Ráma to accept the Raj . 216
Ráma dilates upon the claims of parents to the obedience of their sons, and refuses to disobey the Mahárája . 216
Bharata threatens to sit in dharná upon Ráma . . 216
Ráma reproves Bharata 217
Bharata appeals to the people to compel Ráma to accept the Raj 217
The people hesitate 217
Bharata offers to go into exile in the room of Ráma . 217
Ráma refuses to alter his determination, but promises to govern the Raj after his exile 217
The sages confirm the resolution of Ráma . . 218
Bharata presents Ráma with a pair of shoes, and requests him to wear them 218
Declares he will rule the Raj through the shoes . . 218
7th, Return of Bharata to Ayodhyá 218
Ráma dismisses Bharata and Satrughna . . . 218
Return of Bharata to Ayodhyá 218
Gloomy appearance of the city described in a succession of Hindú similes 219
Bharata resides at Nandigráma in the guise of a devotee, and rules the Raj under the authority of Ráma's shoes . . 219
Review of the foregoing narrative of Ráma's refusal of the Raj 220
Hindú idea of wedded happiness involved in the amusements of Ráma and Sítá upon the hill Chitra-kúta . . 220
Contrast of European and Hindú ideas . . . 220
Puerile character of the dialogue 221

PAGE
Pretty touches of nature 221
Mixture of military pursuits and religious worship involved in the description of Ráma's hut 221
Character of a devotee superadded to that of an archer . 222
Generous contest involved in the interviews between Bharata and Ráma 222
Strained and artificial character of the dialogues . . 222
Ráma's speech on the duties of Rajas an interpolation . 223
Simple character of the sprinkling of water and offering of a cake to the soul of the deceased Maháraja . . . 223
Character of Jáváli as a Bráhman of the Niyáya or logical school of Gétama 224
A representative of Buddhism and atheism 224
Drift of Jáváli's reasoning 224
No proof that death is anything but annihilation . . 224
If the soul exists hereafter it must be in another form, which destroys the relationship between parents and sons . 224
Review of the reasoning of Jáváli against the performance of a sráddha 225
Absurdity of supposing that the eating of cakes by cows is tantamount to the eating of the cakes by the soul of the deceased relative 225
Expressions put into the mouth of Jáváli to render his refutation more conclusive 225
Peculiar argument against sacrifice 225
Inutility of virtue 225
Strained application of Jáváli's views to Ráma's acceptance of the Raj 226
Phenomena that the wicked are often happy, and the good often miserable, an argument in favour of a future state . . 226
Dogmatic character of Ráma's reply to Jáváli . . 226
Confusion of happiness with pleasure 227
Rejection of inferential proof, the source of Jáváli's error . 227
Ráma's proofs of the immortality of the soul, to be treated as unduly assumed premises 227
Polemical character of Ráma as a champion of the Bráhmans against the Buddhists, superadded to his heroic character as protector of the Bráhmans against the Rákshasas . 227
Exaggeration in the account of Bharata's proceedings on Ráma's refusing the Raj 228
Threat to sit in dharná 228
Curious adoption of Ráma's shoes as symbolical of sovereignty 228

CHAPTER XV.

RÁMA'S EXILE.

Authenticity of the narrative of Ráma's wanderings 229
Locality of the wanderings: country between the Ganges and

PAGE
the Godáveri, from Chitra-kúta in Bundelkund, to Nasik near the western coast 229
Each Brahmanical settlement headed by a famous sage . 229
Existence of all the sages as contemporaries of Ráma, refuted 230
Long interval of time between the Rig-Veda and the Rámáyana 230
Sages said to have been contemporary with both compositions 230
Appearance of Atri as the first progenitor of the Lunar race . 230
Attempted reconciliation of the chronological difficulties by the Pundits 231
Sages probably introduced as types of the Bráhmans of the Dekhan 231
Inquiry into the real character of the Rákshasas of the Rámáyana 231
Not to be confounded with the aborigines, or to be regarded as mere creations of the imagination 232
The Rákshasa empire seated in Ceylon, but having military outposts to the north of the Dekhan 232
Religious and sectarian character of the opposition between the Bráhmans and Rákshasas 232
Rávana, a worshipper of Brahma 232
Identification of the Rákshasas with the Buddhists . . 232
Opposition between the Rákshasas or Buddhists, and the Asuras or aborigines 232
Three distinct characters of Ráma in the Rámáyana:
1st, Ráma, as a mortal hero 233
2nd, Ráma, as an incarnation of Vishnu 233
3rd, Ráma, as a champion of the Linga worshipping Bráhmans against the Buddhists 233
Contradiction involved between the incarnation of Vishnu and the worshipper of the Linga 234
Three elements in the Rámáyana corresponding to the three characters of Ráma:
1st, Ancient tradition of Ráma's exile 234
2nd, Myth of Ráma's incarnation as Vishnu . . . 234
3rd, Tradition of the invasion of the Dekhan by the worshippers of the Linga 234
Ten principal incidents in the narrative of Ráma's exile . 235
The narrative 235
1st, Departure of Ráma, Sítá, and Lakshmana from the neighbourhood of Válmíki's hermitage at Chitra-kúta . 236
The sages at Chitra-kúta complain to Ráma of the persecutions of the Rákshasas 236
Declare their intention of removing to another locality . 236
Solitude of the hermitage after the departure of the sages . 236
2nd, Ráma journeys southward to the hermitage of Atri . 237
Atri introduces his aged and devout wife Anasúyá . . 237
Miracles wrought by Anasúyá through the force of her austerities 237
Interview between Anasúyá and Sítá 237

PAGE
Anasúyá praises Sítá for her devotion to her husband, and dilates on the duty of wives 237
Sítá replies, praising Ráma 237
Ráma's virtuous conduct towards the Maháraja's women . 238
Anasúyá gives Sítá an ointment which will render her ever young and beautiful, together with jewels and ornaments . 238
Anasúyá describes the approach of night in poetic language, and requests Sítá to adorn herself with the divine ornaments 239
Ráma's delight at his wife's beauty 239
3rd, Ráma engages to defend Atri and the other sages from the depredations of the Rákshasas in the forest of Dándaka . 239
Rámá, Sítá, and Lakshmana enter the forest of Dándaka 239
Picture of a cluster of Brahmanical hermitages . . 240
The courts 240
The groves 240
Flowers and pools 240
The sages 240
The sages joyfully entertain Ráma, and declare that he is their Raja 240
Description of the forest of Dándaka 240
Horrible appearance of Virádha, the cannibal Rákshasa . 241
Virádha seizes Sítá 241
Taunts the two brothers with having only one wife . . 241
Virádha rendered invulnerable by Brahma in return for his religious austerities 242
Alarm of Sítá 242
Lamentations of Ráma at seeing his wife in the grasp of Virádha 242
Wrath of Lakshmana 242
Lakshmana threatens Virádha 242
Description of the battle between Ráma and Lakshmana and the Rákshasa Virádha 242
The two brothers unable to slaughter Virádha, because of the blessing he had received from Brahma 243
Burial of Virádha alive 243
Virádha assumes a beautiful form and rises out of the grave and ascends to heaven 243
Legend of his being originally a Gandharva, but cursed by Kuvera, on account of his love for Rambhá, to be a Rákshasa until delivered by Ráma 244
4th, Visit of Ráma, Sítá, and Lakshmana to the hermitage of Sarabhanga 245
Visit of Indra to the sage Sarabhanga 245
Description of Indra 245
Ráma admires the chariot, horses, and attendants of Indra 245
Indra departs, and the trio enter the hermitage . . 245
The sage explains that Indra had come to take him to heaven, but that he waited to behold Ráma 246
Directs Ráma to proceed to the hermitage of Sutíkshna . 246
Sarabhanga burns himself alive, and ascends to the heaven of Brahma in a youthful form 246

PAGE
5th, Ráma engages to defend the ascetics against the Rákshasas 247
Extraordinary description of the different ascetics who mortified the flesh 247
The sages pray Ráma to preserve them from the Rákshasas . 247
Ráma engages to protect the devotees 248
6th, Visit of Ráma, Sítá, and Lakshmana to the hermitage of Sutíkshna 248
The trio depart to visit the other hermitages in the neighbourhood 249
7th, Dialogue between Ráma and Sítá as to the propriety of waging war against the Rákshasas 249
Sítá reproaches Ráma 249
A Kshatriya bound to punish evil-doers only when he is a Raja, and not when he is a devotee 249
Legend of the devotee who was tempted by Indra to become a warrior 250
Sítá entreats Ráma to engage solely in religious austerities 250
Ráma's reply that he could not refuse the request of the Bráhmans to become their protector 250
Ráma praises Sítá for having admonished him . . . 250
8th, Ten years' wanderings amongst the sages in the neighbourhood of Sutíkshna's hermitage at Ramtek 251
Mysterious lake abounding with music and song . . . 251
Legend of the lake being the abode of the sage Mandakarni and five Apsaras 251
Hermitages of the sage Dharma-vrita 252
The trio remain ten years in the neighbourhood, visiting the different hermitages 252
The trio return to the hermitage of Sutíkshna after the ten years 252
9th, Visit to the sage Agastya, near to the Vindhya mountains 252
Journey through the forest towards the south . . . 252
Halt at the hermitage of the brother of Agastya . . . 252
Poetical description of the hermitage 253
Legend of Vátápi and Ilwala 253
Destruction of the Bráhmans by Vátápi in the form of a ram 253
The ram devoured by Agastya 253
Ilwala consumed by the fire of Agastya's eye . . . 253
Ráma, Sítá, and Lakshmana spend one night with the brother of Agastya. 254
Reach the hermitage of Agastya 254
Miracles performed by Agastya 254
Lakshmana informs a disciple of Agastya of the arrival of Ráma and Sítá 254
Joy of Agastya at the coming of Ráma 254
Sacred places in the hermitage of Agastya . . . 255
Ráma's profound respect for Agastya 255
Agastya directs his disciples to offer oblations to Ráma . 255
Acknowledges Ráma as Raja of the universe 255

PAGE

Agastya presents Ráma with the bow of Vishnu, the arrow of Brahma, two inexhaustible quivers, and a scimitar . 256
The coat of mail given to Agastya by Indra . . . 256
Agastya's encouraging words 256
Agastya praises Sítá 256
Evil nature of women in general 256
10th, Residence of Ráma, Sítá, and Lakshmana at Panchavatí, the modern Nasik 257
Agastya directs the trio to Panchavatí, near the river Godáveri 257
Ráma forms an alliance with Jatáyus, the great vulture, who was the son of Garura 257
Arrival of Ráma, Sítá, and Lakshmana at Panchavatí . 257
Ráma selects a site for a hermitage 257
Lakshmana builds a large hut with four rooms . . 257
Oblations to the god of dwellings 258
Termination of thirteen years and a half of the exile . 258
Commencement of the cold season 258
Poetical description of the cold season . . . 258
Characteristics of the cold weather in India . . 258
The day time 258
The night time 258
The west wind 259
The sunrise 259
The wild elephants 259
The water-fowls 259
The cranes 259
The dew-drops 259
Austerities of Bharata on account of Ráma . . . 259
Cruelty of Kaikeyí 259
Ráma reproves Lakshmana for reproaching Kaikeyí . 259
Ablutions in the Godáveri 260
Departure of the great vulture Jatáyus . . . 260
Review of the foregoing narrative of Ráma's adventures amongst the sages 260
Religious opposition of the Rákshasas to the Bráhmans . 260
Virádha, a worshipper of Brahma 260
Significance of the dialogue between Sítá and Lakshmana . 260
Sameness in the descriptions of the hermitages and Ráma's dialogues with the sages 261
Brahmanising of Kshatrya traditions 261
Married life of Atri opposed to the Buddhist rule of celibacy 262
Pious suicide of Sarabhanga compared with the burning of Calanus 262
Idea involved in the death of Sarabhanga 262
Strange fancy involved in Ráma's alliance with the vulture Jatáyus 262
Poetical and truthful character of the description of the cold season 263

CHAPTER XVI.

RÁMA'S WARS RESPECTING SÚRPA-NAKHÁ.

PAGE

Khara and Dúshana, the two Rákshasa commanders in the neighbourhood of Panchavatí 264
War with Ráma on account of their sister Súrpa-nakhá . 264
Hindú character of the fiction 264
Súrpa-nakhá, sister of Rávana, approaches the hermitage of Ráma 264
Admires the beauty of Ráma 265
Contrast between Súrpa-nakhá and Ráma . . . 265
Súrpa-nakhá determines to induce Ráma to marry her and desert Sítá 265
Súrpa-nahká assumes a captivating form, and asks Ráma who he is 266
Ráma relates his story, and asks why she is wandering in the forest 266
Súrpa-nakhá replies that she has left her brothers out of love for him, and invites him to marry her . . . 266
Ráma jests with Súrpa-nakhá by advising her to marry Lakshmana 267
Súrpa-nakhá offers herself as a wife to Lakshmana. Lakshmana refers her back to Ráma 267
Súrpa-nakhá again offers herself to Ráma, and rushes upon Sítá to devour her 267
Lakshmana cuts off the ears and nose of Súrpa-nakhá . 267
Súrpa-nakhá flies for refuge to her brother Khara . . 268
Wrath of Khara 268
Súrpa-nakhá relates the story of her disfigurement . 268
Khara sends fourteen Rákshasas to bring Ráma, Sítá, and Lakshmana before him 268
Ráma slays the fourteen Rákshasas 269
Khara assembles his army of fourteen thousand Rákshasas, and prepares to go against Ráma accompanied by his brother Dúshana 269
Description of the chariot of Khara 269
Khara and Dúshana lead the army against the hermitage of Ráma. 269
Evil omens on all sides 270
Khara in his infatuation disregards the omens . . 270
Ráma perceives that the omens portend a terrible war . 271
Directs Lakshmana to conduct Sítá to an inaccessible cave . 271
Ráma awaits the coming of the Rákshasa army . . 271
Fearful appearance of the Rákshasas before the hermitage of Ráma 272
Tranquillity of Ráma 272
Wrath of Ráma 272
Recoil of the Rákshasa army at the sight of Ráma . . 272

PAGE
Khara leads the Rákshasa army to the first charge against Ráma 272
Ráma discharges his terrible arrows 273
Second charge of the Rákshasa army against Ráma . 273
Ráma again effects fearful destruction . . . 273
Third charge of the Rákshasa army against Ráma . 274
Slaughter of the Rákshasas 274
Combat between Ráma and Dúshana 274
Death of Dúshana 274
Combat between Ráma and Khara 274
Ráma threatens and abuses Khara 275
Death of Khara 275
Rejoicings of the gods 275
Sítá returns to Ráma 275
News of the defeat of the Rákshasas carried to Rávana . 276
Rávana persuaded by the messenger to carry off Sítá . 276
Rávana consults his minister Márícha . . . 276
Márícha dissuades Rávana from the attempt . . 276
Review of the foregoing narrative of Ráma's wars on account of Súrpa-nakhá 277
Brilliant imagination displayed in the details . . 277
Divinity of Ráma manifested in his victories over the Rákshasa army 277
Impression of the story upon a Hindú audience . . 277
Reality of the descriptions to the Hindú 277
Reality of Khara's wonderful chariot 278
The Rákshasa army 278
Deep personal interest taken by the audience in Ráma's single combats 278
Exulting chorus of "Glory to Ráma!" 278

CHAPTER XVII.

RÁVANA'S ABDUCTION OF SÍTÁ.

Rávana, Raja of Lanká, appears upon the scene . . 279
His real character 279
Scope of the narrative 279
Popular belief in the power of the Rákshasas to assume new forms at will 279
Extraordinary conception that Rávana had ten heads and twenty arms, a substantive belief with the Hindús . 280
Probable origin of the conception 280
The narrative of the capture of Sítá by Rávana . . . 280
Súrpa-nakhá carries the news of Khara's defeat to Lanká 280
Description of Raja Rávana 280
His mighty powers 281
His wickedness 281
His exploits 281

PAGE
Conquered Vásukí and Kuvera 281
His religious austerities 281
Invulnerable to all excepting beasts and men . . . 281
Súrpa-nakhá's angry address to Rávana 281
Súrpa-nakhá describes Ráma to Rávana, and dilates on the beauty of Sítá 282
Counsels Rávana to carry away Sítá 282
Rávana again visits Márícha, and desires Márícha to assist him in carrying away Sítá 282
Entreats Márícha to take the form of a golden deer . 283
Alarm of Márícha 283
Márícha dilates on the power of Ráma 283
Remonstrates with Rávana against carrying away Sítá . 283
Relates the story of his being cast by Ráma into the sea . 283
Prophesies utter ruin if Rávana carries away Sítá . . 283
Rávana contemptuously replies that he requires no advice 284
Commands Márícha to take the form of a golden deer and gambol in the presence of Sítá 284
Márícha unwillingly obeys 284
Invited by Rávana to ascend his chariot 284
Journey of Rávana and Márícha to the hermitage of Ráma at Panchavatí 285
Márícha assumes the form of a very beautiful deer . . 285
Sítá sees the deer and requests Ráma to procure its skin for her 285
Ráma leaves Sítá in charge of Lakshmana, and prepares to chase the deer 285
Lakshmana reminds Ráma that Márícha could take a deer's form 285
Ráma chases the deer and slays it 286
Márícha returns to his proper form, and dies crying for Sítá and Lakshmana in a voice resembling that of Ráma . . 286
Ráma takes the skin and returns to the hermitage . . 286
Sítá hears the voice of the deer, and desires Lakshmana to assist Ráma 286
Lakshmana hesitates to leave Sítá 287
Sítá's wrathful reproaches 287
Lakshmana assures Sítá that Ráma is in no danger, and that the voice was that of a Rákshasa 288
Sítá charges Lakshmana with desiring to marry her . 288
Lakshmana reluctantly leaves Sítá alone and goes in search of Ráma 288
Rávana visits the hermitage of Ráma in the guise of a religious mendicant 288
His address to Sítá 288
Sítá, seeing Rávana in the guise of a Bráhman, treats him with respect 289
Rávana makes himself known to Sítá 289
Invites Sítá to become his chief Rání 289
Describes his city and palaces 289
Wrathful reply of Sítá 290
Rávana assumes his proper form 290

PAGE
Description of Rávana 290
Rávana remonstrates with Sítá 291
Rávana carries Sítá through the air and places her in his chariot 291
Cries of Sítá. Jatáyus, the Chief of Vultures, hears the cries of Sítá 292
Stops the chariot of Rávana, and demands the release of Sítá 296
Terrible conflict between Rávana and Jatáyus . . 296
Jatáyus mortally wounded 297
Rávana carries away Sítá through the air . . 297
Poetical contrast of the black complexion of Rávana with the golden complexion of Sítá 297
Lamentations of Sítá 297
Bitterly reproaches Rávana 297
Rávana approaches the mountain Rishya-múkha . . 298
Sítá drops her ornaments amongst the monkeys on the mountain 298
The monkeys preserve the ornaments . . . 298
Rávana conducts Sítá to his palace at Lanká . . 298
Appoints female attendants and gives them special instructions 299
Sends eight Rákshasas to be spies upon Ráma and Lakshmana 299
Rávana returns to Sítá 299
His caressing address to Sítá 299
Points out the beauties of his palace and gardens . . 300
Sítá's wrathful and threatening refusal of his addresses . 300
Rávana orders the female attendants to conduct Sítá to the Asoka garden, and to use four means to induce her to yield 301
Sítá shuts her ears to all entreaties . . . 301
Her deep sorrow 301
Review of the foregoing story of the capture of Sítá; its powerful effect upon the Hindús 302
Harrowing character of the outrage 302
Peculiarly affecting to Hindús 302
Fastidious idea of physical chastity 302
Play of the national sentiment in the story of Sítá . 302
Universal popularity of the story 303
Prominent scenes in the narrative 303
Rávana surrounded by his Counsellors . . . 303
Appearance of Rávana's sister 304
Departure of Rávana and Márícha in an aerial chariot . 304
The golden deer 304
Sítá taunting Lakshmana 304
Rávana as a Saniási 304
The outrage 304
The combat between Rávana and Jatáyus . . 304
Flight of Rávana with Sítá through the air . . . 304
Sítá's desolation 304
Strange sentiment of Sítá that she would have yielded to Rávana had he conquered Ráma 304
Hindú women superior to the rule 305

CHAPTER XVIII.

RÁMA'S SEARCH FOR SÍTÁ.

	PAGE
Narrative of Ráma's search for Sítá	306
Ráma's meeting with Lakshmana	306
They discover that Sítá has left the hut	306
Agony of Ráma	306
The search	307
Ráma's address to the Moon	307
Ráma and Lakshmana discover the body of the dying Jatáyus	307
Last words of Jatáyus	307
The soul of Jatáyus ascends to heaven in a chariot of fire	307
Ráma and Lakshmana perform the funeral rites for Jatáyus	307
Ráma and Lakshmana proceed towards the south in search of Sítá	309
Appearance of Kabandha	309
Ráma and Lakshmana cut off his arms	309
Legend of Kabandha	310
Kabandha burned in a pit, and assumes his original form	310
Relates to Ráma the story of Rávana	310
Counsels Ráma to ally with Sugríva, the Monkey Chieftain	310
Ráma and Lakshmana reach the hermitage of Matanga, the sage	311
Piety of Sarvarí, the female disciple of Matanga	311
Sarvarí relates her story	311
Taught the name of "Ráma" as a mantra	312
Sarvarí burns herself alive in the presence of Ráma	312
Ráma and Lakshmana proceed to the lake Pampá	312
Description of the lake	312
Ráma's continued affliction	312
Review of the foregoing narrative	313
Monstrosity involved in the conception of Kabandha	313
Buddhist character of Sarvarí, as a female devotee of low caste	313

CHAPTER XIX.

RÁMA'S ALLIANCE WITH THE MONKEYS.

Change in the character of Ráma from the divine to the human	314
Hypothesis that Ráma the son of Dasaratha, and Ráma the Linga-worshipper of the Dekhan, are different individuals	315
The alleged alliance with the Monkeys, a proof that Ráma must have suffered reverses from the Ráhshasas, or Buddhists	315
Literal interpretation of the Rámáyana believed in by the Hindús	316
Circumstances, which led to the Hindú belief in an alliance with Monkeys	316

PAGE
Extraordinary characteristics of Monkeys . . . 316
Habits of Monkeys in their wild state worthy of study . 316
The Monkeys in the Rámáyana identical with the aboriginal population of the south 317
Three hypotheses respecting the probable origin of the confusion 317
The aborigines regarded as Monkeys 317
The army of Ráma accompanied by Monkeys . . 317
The Monkey worshipped as a deity and adopted as a national emblem 317
Reason why the Monkey gods of the south may have been represented as fighting for Ráma 318
References to an army of Bears under Jámbavat . . 318
Three localities specified 318
Rishya-múkha 319
Kishkindhyá 319
Malyavana 319
The narrative 319
Ráma and Lakshmana proceed from the lake Pampá to the mountain Rishya-múkha 319
Sugríva and his Monkey Counsellors receive Ráma and Lakshmana 319
Sugríva shows Ráma Sítá's ornaments 320
Sugríva relates the story of his grievances against Báli . 320
Ráma engages to slay Báli 320
Ráma directs Sugríva to proceed to Kishkindhyá and challenge Báli 321
Combat between Sugríva and Báli 321
Ráma mortally wounds Báli 321
Sudden appearance of Tárá 321
Tárá's lamentations over her dying husband . . . 322
Funeral ceremonies for Báli 322
Sugríva installed as Raja, and Angada as Yuvaraja . . 323
Rainy season 323
Review of the foregoing narrative 323
Nondescript Monkeys of the Rámáyana 323
Traces in the narrative of an authentic tradition . . 324
Ráma's breach of the laws of fair fighting . . 324
Marriage of widows and divorced women amongst the Marawars of the Carnatic 324

CHAPTER XX.

HANUMAN'S ADVENTURES IN LANKÁ.

Expansion of the original tradition by the author of the Rámáyana 326
Neglect of Sugríva to assist Ráma 326
Assembling of the army of Monkeys and Bears . . 326

PAGE
Despatch of four Monkey armies 326
Hanuman's adventures in Lanká the product of pure imagination 327
Fifteen incidents in the adventures of Hanuman . . 327
The narrative 328
1st, Hanuman's march to the sea, and leap over the channel between India and Ceylon 328
Ráma gives his marriage ring to Hanuman 328
Meeting with Sampáti the Vulture Chief . . . 329
1st, Hanuman's leap. 330
2nd, Description of the city of Lánka 331
The seven canals and walls 331
Walls of iron, stone, brass, white metal, copper, silver, and gold 331
The city and palace within the seven walls 331
3rd, Hanuman reconnoitres Lanká in the form of a cat . 332
Hanuman enters Lanká 332
The gates 332
The streets 332
The houses 332
The bazaars 332
Description of the Rákshasas 332
Monstrous deformities 332
4th, Meeting between Hanuman and the Genius of Lanká 332
The combat 333
5th, Hanuman proceeds through the city to the palace of Rávana 333
Perceives Vibhíshana, the younger brother of Rávana, worshipping Vishnu 333
Hanuman enters the palace of Rávana 333
The canal 333
The golden wall, with jewelled gate, and pillars of black crystal 333
The music place 334
The stables, arsenals, gardens, kitchens, &c. 334
Hanuman fails to find Sítá 334
6th, Description of the inner apartments of Rávana . . 334
The walls, gates, and gardens 334
The sleeping-room 334
The couch 334
The women 334
Rávana sleeping upon a crystal throne 334
Hanuman still fails to find Sítá 335
7th, Description of Sítá in the Asoka grove . . . 335
Sítá surrounded by Rákshasí women 335
8th, Rávana's night visit to Sítá surrounded by his women. 335
Hanuman hides himself 335
Alarm of Sítá 335
Rávana's address to Sítá 336
Sítá's reply to Rávana 336

PAGE
Prays that she may be restored to her husband Ráma . 336
Rávana proclaims his superiority to Ráma 336
Sítá wrathfully declares Rávana's inferiority to Ráma . 337
Rávana threatens to devour Sítá unless after two months she becomes his wife 337
Sítá's bitter refusal 338
Rávana prepares to slay Sítá with his scimitar . . 338
Interposition of his wife Mandodarí 338
Rávana again threatens to devour Sítá after two months . 338
9th, Efforts of the Rákshasí women to induce Sítá to yield to Rávana 338
Sítá's terror 338
Trijatá prophesies the ultimate triumph of Ráma . 338
10th, Interview between Hanuman and Sítá 339
Hanuman gives Ráma's signet ring to Sítá . . . 339
Sítá's grief 339
Hanuman proposes to carry away Sítá 339
Proves his strength by swelling to the size of a mountain . 339
Sítá declines to be touched by any man save Ráma . 339
Hanuman leaves Sítá 340
11th, Hanuman destroys the grove 340
The guards complain to Rávana 340
Rávana sends eighty thousand Rákshasas who are destroyed by Hanuman 340
Combat between Hanuman and Jambu-málí 340
Hanuman slays seven Rákshasa Chiefs, five Commanders, and Aksha, the son of Rávana 341
Rávana sends his son Indrajit, the conqueror of Indra, to fight Hanuman 341
Indrajit goes out in a chariot drawn by four tigers . 341
The combat 341
Indrajit binds Hanuman in the irresistible noose of Brahma 341
12th, Tricks played by Hanuman upon the Rákshasas . 342
Progress of Hanuman to the Council-hall of Rávana . . 342
13th, Hanuman's appearance before Rávana . . 342
14th, The firing of Hanuman's tail 343
Hanuman escapes and sets Lanká on fire . . . 343
15th, Return of Hanuman and the Monkey Army to Ráma and Sugríva 343
Adventures of the Monkeys in the honey garden of Sugríva 343
Sugríva's joy at the return of the Monkeys . . 344
Meeting between Hanuman and Ráma 344
Hanuman gives Sítá's jewel to Ráma 344
Review of the foregoing narrative of the adventures of Hanuman 344
Picture of Hanuman's leap 345
Picture of the city of Lanká, with its fortifications and monstrous inhabitants 345
Picture of Hanuman stealing through Lanká at midnight in the shape of a cat 345

PAGE
Picture of the inner apartments 346
Widowed condition of Sítá in the Asoka grove . . . 346
Extraordinary picture presented by the night interview between Rávana and Sítá 346
Favourite pantomimic representation of Hanuman's setting Lanká on fire with his tail 346
Army of drunken Monkeys in the honey garden . . 346
Glimpses of historic truth 347
Sensuality practised by Rávana common amongst the Buddhist Rajas 347
Significant legend of sensuality and satiety in Gótama Buddha 347
Part played by Vibhíshana in the original tradition . 348
Religious significance of the alliance between Vibhíshana and Ráma 348
Ráma's genius for alliances 349

CHAPTER XXI.

RÁMA'S INVASION OF LANKÁ.

Division of the story of Ráma's expedition into two parts—
1st, The invasion 350
2nd, The war 350
Narrative of Ráma's invasion 350
Important incidents 350
Rupture between Rávana and Vibhíshana 350
Bridging of the channel between Ceylon and the main . 350
The Linga set up in the Island of Ramisseram . . 350
The narrative of Ráma's invasion 351
Progress of the Army of Monkeys and Bears to the sea-coast, accompanied by Ráma and Lakshmana . . . 351
Nikashá, mother of Rávana, requests her other son, Vibhíshana, to interfere 352
Vibhíshana goes over to Ráma 352
Ráma calls a Council 352
The god Varuna advises the construction of a bridge by Nala 352
Nala and the Monkeys build the bridge 352
The stones float on the water 352
Alarm of Rávana 352
Completion of the bridge 353
Ráma worships Siva and sets up a Linga in Ramisseram . 353
Ráma and Sugríva cross the bridge with the army of Monkeys and Bears 353
The two spies recognized by Vibhíshana 354
Ráma permits the two spies to survey his army . . 354
Ráma's message to Rávana 354
Description of Ravana seated upon his throne . . 354
Wrath of Rávana at the message from Ráma 354
Rávana surveys the army of Monkeys and Bears . . 354

PAGE
Dismisses Súka 355
Rávana prepares to withstand the attack of Ráma . 356
Nikashá, the mother of Rávana, prays him to restore Sítá . 356
Máliavat, maternal grandfather of Rávana, advises the same 356
Wrath of Rávana with his mother and her father . 356
Flight of Nikashá and Máliavat 357
Review of the foregoing narrative of Ráma's invasion . 357
The army of Monkeys and Bears on their march . . 357
The vast bridge across the sea 357
The Lingá, a monument of triumph and a religious symbol . 357
Origin of the Hindú conception of the bridge . . 357
Bridges of Xerxes and Darius matters of fact . . 357
Physical construction of the locality suggestive of the idea of a bridge 357
Causeway terminating at Ramisseram 357
Causeway terminating at Manar 358
Adam's Bridge connecting Ramisseram with Manar . . 358
Boulders supposed to have been dropped by the Monkeys 358
Description of the pagoda at Ramisseram . . 358
The gateway 358
The door 358
The quadrangle 358
The temples 358
The surrounding wall 358
The temple to Síva 359
The temple to Ráma and brazen Lingá 359
The temple of Sítá with brazen pillar surmounted by a Bird 359
The cars of the gods 359
The sacred character of the Island of Ramisseram . . 359
The Bráhmans supported at the public expense . . 359

CHAPTER XXII.

RÁMA'S WAR AGAINST RÁVANA

Story of Ráma's war against Rávana, forming the second portion of the narrative of the expedition . . 361
Character of the combats 361
Events and scenes in the story of Ráma's war . . 361
1st, Commencement of hostilities by Ráma's army . . 362
The Monkeys fill up the great canal 362
Ráma sees Rávana, and carries away his umbrella and ten crowns 362
2nd, A great battle between the Rákshasas and Monkeys without the city 362
Rout of the Monkey army 363
3rd, Indrajit's first sacrifice, and confinement of Ráma and Lakshmana in the noose of the snakes . . 364

PAGE
The gods send the Bird Garura to deliver Ráma and Lakshmana from the noose 365
4th, Rávana takes the field in person against Ráma . 365
5th, The awakening and death of Kumbha-karna . . 366
Extraordinary efforts to awaken Kumbha-karna . . 366
Success of the women 367
Rage of Kumbha-karna 367
His prodigious meal 367
Threatens to devour the Monkeys 367
Takes the field and carries away Sugríva . . . 367
Slain by Ráma 367
6th, Indrajit's second sacrifice and successful charge of the Monkey army 368
Ráma and Lakshmana feign to be dead 368
7th, Restoration of the dead Monkeys to life. . . . 368
Hanuman's journey through the air 368
Hanuman carries away the mountain by the roots . . 369
8th, Rávana shuts himself up in Lanká 369
Ráma orders Hanuman to fire the city of Lanká . . 369
9th, Third sacrifice of Indrajit 370
Lakshmana slays Indrajit 370
10th, Rávana again takes the field without the city . 370
Combat between Rávana and Ráma 370
Extraordinary arrows 370
Rávana pins Lakshmana to the earth with his infallible mace 371
11th, Hanuman's adventure with Kála-nemi . . . 371
Kála-nemi proceeds to the mountain and creates a magic hermitage 371
Hanuman's adventure with Bharata at Nundigráma . . 371
Kála-nemi plots Hanuman's death by a crocodile . . 372
Hanuman kills the crocodile 372
Legend of the crocodile 372
Hanuman hurls Kála-nemi into the Council-hall of Rávana . 372
Hanuman carries away the mountain a second time . 372
Lakshmana healed 373
12th, Rávana's sacrifice with closed doors . . 373
The Monkeys break open Rávana's apartment . . 373
Angada ill-treats Mandodarí 373
Rávana abandons the sacrifice 373
14th, Final overthrow of Rávana 374
Rávana cursed by Súrpanakha 374
Rávana reaches Ráma 374
Indra sends his own chariot to Ráma . . . 374
Combat between Rávana and Ráma 374
Second combat 374
Ráma cuts off Rávana's heads without effect . . 374
Ráma kills Rávana with a Brahma arrow . . . 374
The gods praise Ráma as Vishnu 374
Review of the foregoing narrative of Ráma's war against Rávana 375

PAGE
Character of the war 375
Rávana's reluctance to take the field 376
Number of single combats 376
Weapons endowed with supernatural powers . . 376
The noose of snakes 376
Fantastically-shaped arrows 376
Utterance of mantras over the arrows . . . 376
Belief in the efficacy of sacrifice to insure victory . 377
Sacrifices performed by Indrajit and Rávana in virtue of their being Bráhmans 377
Indrajit's sacrifice to Agni 377
Probable substitution of Agni for Kálí . . . 377
Human sacrifices in ancient times 377
Offering of human heads to Kálí 377
Agni substituted as the deity who can render himself invisible 378
Indrajit sacrifices for the purpose of becoming invisible . 378
Rávana's sacrifice 378
Authority of the priesthood increased by the belief in the efficacy of sacrifice 378
Modification of the belief in modern times . . . 378
Ancient belief 379
Popularity of the story of the awakening of Kumbha-karna 379
Capacity for eating and sleeping a subject of popular mirth . 379

CHAPTER XXIII.

TRIUMPHANT RETURN OF RAMA.

Death of Rávana the climax of the story of the Rámáyana . 381
Natural ending according to European ideas . . 381
Difficulty as regards Sítá's purity after her imprisonment in the palace of Rávana 381
Narrative of the ordeal of Sítá and return to Ayodhyá . 382
Lamentations of Vibhíshana 382
Lamentations of the widows of Rávana 382
Lamentations of Mandodarí 382
Vibhíshana removes the widows of Rávana . . 382
Vibhíshana performs the funeral rites . . . 383
Installation of Vibhíshana in the Raj of Lanká . . 383
Vibhíshana conducts Sítá to Ráma 383
Sítá's parting with Saramá 383
Sítá enters the presence of Ráma on foot . . . 383
Ráma's cruel words 383
Sítá's appeal 383
Sítá's requests Lakshmana to prepare a funeral pile . 384
Sítá offers up her prayers and enters the fire . . . 384
Ráma's remorse 384
Sudden appearance of the gods and Ráma's father Dasaratha 384
Agni bears Sítá upon his knees and attests her purity . 384

PAGE
Ráma receives Sítá as his wife 384
Ráma prepares to return to Ayodhyá in the Pushpaka chariot 385
The Monkeys and Rákshasas accompany Ráma . . 386
Ráma describes his adventures to Sítá 386
Ráma arrives at the hermitage of Bharadwája . . 386
Bharadwája entertains Ráma 386
Joy of Raja Guha at hearing of Ráma's arrival . . 387
Preparations of Bharata for the triumphant return of Ráma 388
Preparations of the people of Ayodhyá 388
Joy of Kaikeyí 388
The ladies, accompanied by all the people of Ayodhyá, go out to meet Ráma 389
Bharata carries Ráma's sandals 389
Meeting between Ráma and Bharata 389
Vasishtha and the Bráhmans offer the Raj to Ráma . 389
Ráma bows to his mothers 389
Dismisses the chariot Pushpaka to its master Kuvera . 390
Ráma casts aside the garb of a devotee and assumes that of a Raja 390
Ráma and Sítá proceed in a royal chariot surrounded by the insignia of sovereignty 390
Entry into Ayodhyá 390
Bharata requests Vasishtha to prepare for Ráma's installation 391
Vasishtha orders that all things be made ready for the ceremony 391
Worship of all the images of gods and goddesses . . 391
Ráma and Sítá fast and keep awake all night . . 391
The installation of Ráma 391
Arraying of Ráma and Sítá 391
The enthroning 392
Music and acclamations 392
The purification with sacred water 392
Water poured over the heads of Ráma and Sítá by all the castes 392
Ráma and Sítá change their garments and again take their seats in the Council-Hall 392
Paddy and kusa grass poured upon Ráma's head . . 392
Distribution of presents 392
Sítá gives her necklace to Hanuman 392
Happiness of Ráma and Sítá 394
Their mode of life in the palace at Ayodhyá . . . 394
Review of the foregoing narrative of the return of Ráma and Sítá to Ayodhyá 394
Picture of a Bráhman reading the Rámáyana to Hindú villagers 394
Deep interest of a Hindú audience 394
Preparations of the Hindús for listening to the story of the return of Ráma and Sítá to Ayodhyá . . . 395
Incidents immediately preceding the return . . . 395
Lamentations of Rávana's women 396
Site of the ordeal of Sítá still shown in the island of Ramisseram 396
The Pushpaka chariot introduced to remove a geographical difficulty 396

PAGE

Incidents connected with the triumphant return to Ayodhyá and installation of Ráma 396

CHAPTER XXIV.

EXILE OF SÍTÁ.

Sequel to the Rámáyana 398
The narrative 398
Sítá desires the sacrificial cakes of the Rishis . . 398
Complaint of a Minister that the people are poor because Ráma took back Sítá 399
Ráma hears a dialogue between a washerman and his son-in-law 399
The son-in-law refuses to take back his wife who had deserted him in the night-time 399
Ráma sees Sítá drawing a figure of Rávana . . . 399
Determines to put away Sítá 399
Commands Lakshmana to conduct her to the opposite bank of the Ganges 400
Sítá supposes she is going to visit the Rishis . . 400
The departure 400
Evil omens 400
Passage of the river Ganges 400
Chitra-kúta 400
Lakshmana abandons Sítá near the hermitage of Válmíki . 400
Sufferings of Sítá beneath the burning sun . . 400
Wild beasts guard her and the birds fan her . . 401
Taken into the house of Válmíki 401
Sítá gives birth to Lava and Kusa 401
The two brothers educated by Válmíki and taught the Rámáyana 401
Ráma prepares to perform an Aswamedha to atone for having slain Rávana 401
The golden image of Sítá 402
Lava and Kusa carry away the horse, and defeat the armies sent against them 402
Hanuman suspects that Lava and Kusa are the sons of Ráma 402
Ráma goes out against his sons, and asks their mother's name 402
Ráma reconciled to Sítá 403
Ráma and Sítá live in happiness in Ayodhyá . . 403
Review of the foregoing story of the exile of Sítá . . 404
Traces of the authentic tradition 405
Question of whether Ráma really took back Sítá . . . 405
Ráma ascends to heaven 405
Conclusion of the Rámáyana 406
Modern Hindú belief in the virtues of the Rámáyana . 406

PART V.

THE BRAHMANIC PERIOD.

CHAPTER I.

FOUR EPOCHS OF RELIGIOUS HISTORY.

	PAGE
Possibility of constructing a history of the Hindús	407
Materials	407
Mahá Bhárata, Rámáyana, Vedas, Puránas	407
Buddhist Legends	408
Manu	408
Hindú drama and poetry	408
Mackenzie MSS.	408
Miscellaneous vernacular records	408
Inscriptions, etc.	409
History of India distinct from that of Mussulman or British rule	409
Religious revolutions from within	410
Importance of the history	410
Division of the religious history into four epochs	410
1st, Vedic age, characterized by prayers and offerings to elementary deities for material blessings	411
Belief in ghosts	411
Process by which the Aryan mind arose from polytheism to monotheism	411
Exaggerated language of praise	411
Inquiry as to the origin of being	412
Identification of the Supreme Spirit with Agni and Prajápati	412
2nd, Brahmanic age characterized by austerities and sacrifices to expiate sin	412
Compromise between the Vedic and Brahmanic creed	412
Vedic deities recognized, but placed in a subordinate position to Brahmá	413
Agni and Prajápati identified with Brahma	413
Caste system rendered an engine of ecclesiastical oppression	413
Illustrations of the Vedic period furnished by the Brahmanic period	414
Distinguishing characteristics of the ages of Buddhism and Brahmanical revival	414
Commencement of the age of Buddhism in the sixth century B.C.	414

PAGE
Doctrines of Sákya Muni 414
Happiness a delusion 415
Existence an evil 415
Nirvána, or undisturbed repose 415
Age of satiety 416
Expulsion of Buddhism by the Brahmanical revival . 416
Failure of Buddhism to influence the masses . . 416
Appeal of the Bráhmans to the worship of the old gods of India 417
Vedic deities 417
Vishnu and Siva 417
Brahma 417
Ráma and Krishna, as incarnations of Vishnu . . 417
Animal worship 417
Linga worship 417
Parvatí, Durgá, Kálí 417
Káma, Kártikeya, Kuvera, Ganesa 418
Chronology of the four epochs 418
Vedic 418
Brahmanic 418
Buddhist 418
Brahmanic revival 419
Definite chronology impossible 419
Intermingling of religious ideas originating in different ages 419
Two points in connection with the Brahmanic age . . 420
1st, Probable duration of the Brahmanic age . . 420
Indefinite extension of Brahmanism throughout the Buddhist age 420
Brahmanism a religion of the people 421
Buddhism a religion of the nobles 421
Code of Manu a standpoint in the history of Brahmanism . . 422
No references in the code to the age of Brahmanical revival 422
Probable date of the code of Manu 422
2nd, Reflex light thrown upon the Vedic age by the Brahmanic age 422
Nine salient points 423
1st, Vedic and Brahmanic Geography 423
2nd, Rishis and Bráhmans 423
3rd, Conceptions of Manu 423
4th, Creations by Manu and Brahmá 423
5th, Vedic and Brahmanic chronologies 423
6th, Worship 423
7th, Marriages 423
8th, Sráddhas 423
9th, The Kshatriya and the Bráhman 423
Further evidence 423
Chronological sequence approximating to the idea of annals . 424

CHAPTER II.

VEDIC AND BRAHMANIC GEOGRAPHY.

PAGE

Comparison of the geographical data in the Vedic hymns and code of Manu 425
Vedic settlements and Brahmanic settlements separated by the Saraswatí river 425
Vedic gods identified with the Vedic Aryans, and the god Brahma with the Bráhmans 426
Opposition between the Vedic Aryans of the Punjab and the Bráhmans of Hindústan 426
Restricted areas described by Manu 427
Brahmávarta and Brahmárshi-desa 427
Historical origin of Brahmárshi-desa 428
Mythical origin of the term "Brahmávarta" . . . 428
Distinction between the age when the Saraswatí flowed to the Indus, and the age when it disappeared in the sand . 428
Opposition between the Vedic deities and Brahma . 428
Vedic geography of the country on the Saraswatí . . 429
Manu's geography 430
Origin of the caste system in Saraswatí 431
Origin of Brahmanism in Brahmárshi-desa . . 431
Progress of Aryan invasion and conquest of Hindústan before the time of Manu 432
Restricted area of the Bráhmans compared with the extensive area of the Aryans in the time of Manu . . 433

CHAPTER III.

RISHIS AND BRÁHMANS.

Distinction between the Vedic psalmists and Bráhman priests 435
Vedic religion restricted generally to the present life . 435
Genial character of the Vedic ceremonial . . . 437
Popularity and power of the Vedic psalmists . . 437
Daughters of Rajas bestowed in marriage upon Rishis . 438
Wide interval between Vedic and Brahmanical ideas . 438
Vedic bards resemble the Hebrew psalmists . . . 438
Opposition in the Vedic hymns between a peaceful community and a warlike community 439
Opposition between the worship of the Maruts and the worship of Indra 439
Further clue to the opposition between Rishis and Bráhmans, furnished by the distinction between Rájarshis, Devarshis, and Brahmarshis 440
First appearance of the Bráhmans as mercenary sacrificers . 441

PAGE
The Kshatriyas originally their own priests . . 441
Subsequent hiring of Bráhmans 441
Ascendancy of the Bráhmans secured by asceticism . 442
Vedic faith in the power of the Bráhmans . . . 442
Vedic sarcasms levelled at the Bráhmans . . 443
Bráhmans compared with frogs 443
Recapitulation 444

CHAPTER IV.

VEDIC AND BRAHMANIC CONCEPTIONS OF MANU.

Manu identified as the first man and divine lawgiver . 445
Vedic conception of Manu as the first man . . 445
Brahmanic conception of Manu as the divine lawgiver . 445
Laws of Manu a compromise between Vedic and Brahmanic ideas 446
Historical significance of the compromise . . . 446
Conflicting character of Manu's authorities . . 446
Four roots of the law 447
The Vedas 447
The Mantras and Bráhmanas 448
The Mantras of the Rig-Veda referred to the Vedic age, and the Bráhmanas to the Brahmanic age . . . 448
Aryanyakas and Upanishadas included under the term Bráhmanas 449
Three other roots of law 449
Later ordinances 449
Immemorial customs 449
Things indifferent approved by conscience . . . 450
Spirit of toleration 450
Distinction between Sruti, or revelation, and Smriti, or tradition 450
Buddhists denounced as atheists 451
Manu, the text book of the Bráhmans 451

CHAPTER V.

CREATION OF THE UNIVERSE BY MANU AND BRAHMÁ.

Obscurity of the Vedic idea of the origin of the universe . 452
Indra and Agni regarded as creators of the earth . 452
Conception of father Manu as the progenitor of men . 453
The Purusha hymn 453
Cosmogony of the Brahmanic period . . . 453
The Spirit moving on the waters . . . 454
The birth of Brahmá in an egg, and creation from the egg . 454
Manu's account of the creation 454

PAGE
The Supreme Spirit 454
The egg 454
Heaven and earth 455
Metaphysical existences 455
Viráj 455
Manu and the ten Manus 455
Cosmogony of Manu compared with that of Moses . . 455
Contrast between the Hindú idea of Brahmá sleeping on the waters, and the Hebrew idea of vivifying wind . 455
Conception of the mundane egg 456
Origin of the conception 457
Possible connection with the worship of the Linga . . 457
Conception of a metaphysical creation 457
Valuable as illustrative of Hindú thought 458
Four heads 458
1st, Three Gunas or Qualities—Goodness, Passion, Darkness 458
2nd, Mind and Consciousness 459
3rd, Perceptions of sense and Organs of sensation . 459
Threefold Egotism 459
4th, Elements and their Properties — Ether, Wind, Light, Water, Earth 460
Brahmá male and female 460
Introduction of Manu and the ten Rishis . . 460

CHAPTER VI.

SACRED CHRONOLOGY.

Bold attempt by the Bráhmans to map out eternity . . 463
A mere arbitrary arrangement of figures . . . 463
Division of Manu's system of chronology . . . 463
1st, Calculation of days, months, and years . . 464
Sub-division of the Hindú day 464
Four different days 464
Day of mortals 464
Day of Pitris, or mortal months 465
Day of gods, or mortal years 465
Day of Brahmá 465
2nd, Calculation of Yugas, or ages 465
Simplicity of the idea of four Yugas . . . 465
Mahá Yuga, or great age 466
The twilights 466
Conception of a Kalpa, or day of Brahmá . . . 467
Infinity of the Kalpas 467
Simplicity of the idea of a day and night of Brahmá . 467
Hindú and European ideas of chronology compared . 468
Influence of the different chronological systems upon the respective religious belief of Hindús and Europeans . . 468

PAGE

Chronological system of Manwantaras superadded to the Brahmanic system of Kalpas 469

CHAPTER VII.

RELIGION OF THE BRÁHMANS.

Religious system set forth in Manu 471
Exhibits both a development and a compromise . . 471
Brahmanical doctrine of rewards and punishments unknown in the Vedic age 471
Crude conception of sin 472
Rewards and punishments introduced to enforce Brahmanical laws 472
Dogma of merits and demerits 473
Future existences of the soul dependent upon merits and demerits 473
Distinction between the religious obligations felt in Europe and those which are felt in India 474
Causes of the universality of the belief in merits and demerits 475
Form of the conception in the Mosaic law 476
Inferior merit of duties performed in the hope of reward 476
Distinction between natural law and ecclesiastical law . 477
Manu's distinction between higher and lower motives . 477
Conception of Brahma and Brahmá 478
Decline of the worship 479
Religious worship of the Brahmans divisible into invocations and sacramental rites 479
Significance of the invocations as forming combinations of Three in One 479
1st, The three suppressions of breath with the mind fixed on Brahma 480
2nd, The word AUM 480
3rd, The Vyáhritis, comprising Earth, Sky, and Heaven . 480
4th, The Gáyatrí 480
Two questions involved 480
The "Three" 480
The "One" 480
Conclusions to be proved hereafter 480
The "Three" refer to the Vedic deities and the "One" to Brahma 481
Significance of the three suppressions 481
Significance of the letters A, U, M 481
Significance of the three words—Earth, Sky, Heaven, as representatives of the Vedic deities 481
Significance of the three measures of the Gáyatrí, as indicating the Vedic tendency to worship the Sun as the Supreme Being 482
Brahmanical identification of the Sun with Brahma . 483

PAGE
Literal translation of the Gáyatrí by Professor Wilson . 483
Paraphrastic translation by Sir William Jones . . 484
Chain of conceptions involved in the worship of the Sun . 484
Further developed by the combinations of "Three" in "One" 484
Religious significance of the combinations . . . 484
Daily repetition of the invocations enjoined by Manu . 485
Two questions 485
1st, Religious value of a daily ritual . . . 485
2nd, Relative effect of present and future punishment in the suppression of heresy 486
Five daily sacramental rites enjoined by Manu—Rishis, Pitris, Devatas, Spirits, and Guests 487
Anomalous Brahmanical basis 487
1st, Reading the Veda to propitiate the Rishis . . 488
Preparatory ceremonial 488
Effect of the ceremonial on the student . . . 489
Right of interpretation of the Veda claimed by the Bráhmans; essential for the promulgation of Brahmanism . 489
Mode of interpretation 490
Manu's canon for reconciling conflicting texts . . 491
2nd, Offerings of food to propitiate the Pitris . . 492
3rd, Oblations of ghee to propitiate the Devatas . . 493
Character of the worship of the Vedic deities as enjoined by Manu 493
Changes in the religion between the Vedic period and Brahmanic period 493
4th, Offerings of boiled rice to propitiate Spirits or Ghosts 494
Origin and character of a belief in spirits . . 495
Popular belief in spirits amongst the Hindús . . 495
Significant indication in the ritual of the unpopularity of the worship of Brahma 497
Propitiation of Ghosts 497
5th, Hospitalities in propitiation of mortal guests . 498
Review of the five sacramental rites 498
Curious association of religious worship with the daily meals 498

CHAPTER VIII.

EIGHT FORMS OF MARRIAGE.

Marriage laws in Manu 500
1st, Eight forms of marriage 500
2nd, Miscellaneous precepts 500
Historical significance of the eight forms . . 500
Vedic conception of marriage as expressed in the two Epics . 501
Marriages in a peaceful community, appertaining to Rishis or Bráhmans 501
Marriages in a warlike community, appertaining to Kshatriyas 501

PAGE
Polyandry in the Epics 502
Polyandry in the hymns of the Rig-Veda . . . 502
Polygamy in the Epics 503
Polygamy in the hymns of the Rig-Veda . . . 503
The Swayamvara in the Epics 503
The Swayamvara in the hymns of the Rig-Veda . . . 504
No allusion to the Swayamvara in Manu 504
Gandharva and Rákshasa forms of marriage . . . 504
Kshatriya law as regards Rákshasa marriages . . . 505
Gandharva and Rákshasa marriages restricted by Manu to the Kshatriyas 505
Manu's description of the eight nuptials 505
1. Brahma 505
2. Daiva 505
3. Arsha 506
4. Prajápatya 506
5. Asura 506
6. Gandharva 506
7. Rákshasa 506
8. Paisácha 506
Four valid and four invalid marriages 506
The four valid marriages ascribed to four different communities 507
Bráhmans 507
Vedic Aryans 507
Rishis 507
Prajápatis 507
Apparent confusion from the arbitrary distinction between the Devatas, Rishis, and Prajápatis 507
Bráhman form referred to the Brahmanic age . . . 507
Mythical character of the Daiva mode 508
Repugnant to human nature and Kshatriya tradition . 508
Rishi mode referred to the old Vedic period . . . 509
Further proof of the radical distinction between Rishis and Bráhmans 509
Further consideration of the distinction between the marriage rite of the Rishis and that of the Bráhmans . . . 510
Significance of the distinction between the marriage rite of the Bráhmans and that of the Prajápatis . . . 511
Question of whether Prajápati and Brahma are different conceptions 511
Relative antiquity of the marriages of the Rishis, Prajápatis, and Brahmans 512
The four marriages treated by Manu as illegal . . . 513
Asura 513
Gandharva 513
Rákshasa 513
Paisácha 513
Asura and Paisácha strictly prohibited 513
The Gandharva and Rákshasa tolerated 513
Asura mode a degenerate form of the marriage of Rishis . 513

PAGE
Gandharva mode and expression of idyllic amours . . 514
Rákshasa mode a war custom of the Kshatriyas . . . 515
Paisácha mode originating in a belief in ghosts . . . 515
Significance of the law permitting Gandharva and Rákshasa marriages to the Kshatriyas 515
Respective merits and demerits of the eight forms of marriage 516
Significance of Manu's application of the doctrine . 516

CHAPTER IX.

THE SRÁDDHA, OR FEAST OF THE DEAD.

Origin of the idea of propitiating the ghosts of ancestors with food 518
The Sráddha a pleasing expression of natural religion . 519
Three distinct Sráddhas 519
Other Sráddhas 519
Daily Sráddha 520
Monthly Sráddha, considered under four heads . . 520
1st, Ceremonies to be performed at a monthly Sráddha . 520
Oblation to the Vedic deities 520
Offering of the three cakes of rice or pindas, to the paternal ancestors 521
Feast to the Bráhmans 521
Disposal of the cakes 521
Feast of the kinsmen 521
2nd, Persons to be invited to the Sráddha . . . 522
3rd, Catalogue of persons to be excluded from the Sráddha 522
(1.) Persons disqualified on moral grounds . . . 522
(2.) Persons disqualified on religious grounds . . 523
(3.) Persons disqualified on physical grounds . . 523
(4.) Persons disqualified on account of their trade or profession 523
Punishment for inviting disqualified persons . . . 524
Significance of the catalogues of disqualifications . 524
Confusion of sin and disease 524
Peculiar usages 524
Prohibition of the marriage of a younger brother or sister before that of an elder brother or sister 524
Prohibition of the re-marriage of widows . . . 525
Prohibition of the worshippers of inferior gods . . 525
Prohibition of Kshatriyas 526
Gambling 526
Sellers of wine and flesh-meat 526
Makers of weapons and tamers of horses 526
4th, Relative merits of different victuals offered at a Sráddha 527
Funeral Sráddha 527
Modifications of the old Vedic belief in the Sráddha by the Bráhmans 528

CHAPTER X.

THE FOUR CASTES.

PAGE

Division of classes of society into four castes, and of lives of individuals into four stages 529
Probable origin of the four castes 529
Traces of caste in the Vedic age 530
Stratification of the caste system in the Brahmanic age . 530
Vedic myth that the four castes were created from the limbs of Purusha 530
Extracts from the Purusha hymn 531
No Brahmanical superiority asserted in the Purusha hymn . 531
Vedic myth distorted in Manu's code, to represent the Bráhmans superior to the Kshatriyas 531
Bráhmans, the chief of the creation 532
Expression of caste distinctions 532
In salutations 533
In administering oaths 533
Marriages between castes 533
Marriage with a first wife of a low caste prohibited . 534
Caste emblems 534
Later prohibition of all marriages between different castes 534
Five groups of illustrations of the caste system . . 535
1st, Veneration for Bráhmans 535
2nd, Privileges of Bráhmans 536
3rd, Occupations of Bráhmans 537
4th, Diet of Bráhmans 538
Compromise involved in the laws respecting the diet of the twice-born castes 538
Opposition between the milk and vegetable diet of the Bráhmans and the flesh-meat of the Kshatriyas . . 539
Repugnance of Manu to flesh-meat 539
Toleration of the usages of Kshatriyas and Vaisyas . . 539
Abstinence from lawful pleasures to be rewarded in another life 540
5th, Scale of punishments for slander 540
Chandálas or outcastes 541

CHAPTER XI.

THE FOUR STAGES OF LIFE.

Two objects of the code of Manu already unfolded . . 543
1st, The establishment of a national ritual . . . 543
2nd, The establishment of the caste system . . . 543

PAGE
Question of four stages in the life of individuals treated in the present chapter 543
Four stages or orders still recognized but not accepted . 544
Ideal of Brahmanical life 544
The four orders 544
1. The Brahmachári, or student 544
Rites prior to the investiture with the thread . . 545
Significance of the thread 545
Details 545
Nature of the thread of the three twice-born castes . 545
Age of investiture 545
Ceremony of begging for alms 546
Origin of the ceremony 547
Purification of daughters by marriage, instead of by the thread 547
Rules for the conduct of a Brahmachári after investiture 548
Their object 548
Result 548
Duties of a Brahmachári in connection with religion . 549
Reverent study of the Veda 549
Worship of the gods 549
Service to a preceptor 550
Three classes of Bráhmans 550
1st, The Achárya, or Guru 550
2nd, The Upádhyá, or schoolmaster . . . 550
3rd, The Ritwij, or sacrificer 551
Respect due from a Brahmachári to his preceptor . 551
Maintenance of a strict control over the passions . . 552
Brahmanical disquisition on earthly happiness . . 552
II. The Grihastha, or householder 553
Obligation to marry incumbent upon all men . . 553
Necessity for a son to offer the funeral cakes to a deceased father 553
Marriage regulations for producing a healthy progeny . 553
Four classes of precepts 554
1st, Ceremonies connected with the close of student-life . 554
Relative age of bridegroom and bride 554
Festivities associated with the return of a bridegroom to his father's house 555
Present of a cow 555
2nd, Prohibited marriages 555
Degrees 555
Unsuitable families 555
Non-observance of religious duty classified with physical defects 556
Unsuitable damsels 556
3rd, Qualified damsels 558
Opposition between the Kshatriya and Brahman ideal of female beauty 558
4th, Marriage ceremonies 559
Eleven leading rites 559

PAGE
Procession 559
Hospitality 559
Gift of bride 559
The binding 559
Gift to the bride 559
The tying 559
Oblations to Agni 559
The hand 559
The steps 559
Walk round the fire 559
The seven final steps 560
Domestic life of the Grihastha 560
Means of livelihood and moral conduct 560
Respective occupations of the three twice-born castes . 560
Idea that the Bráhmans should be maintained by the public 561
Significance as regards the gifts to be accepted by Bráhmans 561
III. The VÁNAPRASTHA, or hermit 561
Distinction between the Vánaprastha and Sannyásí 561
Religious austerities of the Vánaprastha, or hermit 562
IV. The SANNÁYSÍ, or devotee 563
Life of religious contemplation to obtain final beatitude . 563
Means of subsistence 564
Subjects of reflection 564
The Supreme Spirit 564
Inferiority of material existence 565
Resemblance between the Sannyásís and the Buddhist devotees 565
Spirit of inclusion displayed by the Brahmanical hierarchy 565
Ideal of Hindú life may have been partially derived from Buddhism, but not from the Vedic worship . . 565
Originated in a belief in a future state . . . 566
Expression of Vedic and Brahmanic ideas of life in modern humanity 566

CHAPTER XII.

HINDÚ WOMEN.

Condition of Hindú women in Vedic and Brahmanic times . 568
Marriage relations in the Vedic period . . . 568
Compensation to the female in the case of irregular unions . 568
Position of a damsel in a polygamous household . 569
Superior authority of the legitimate wife . . . 569
Natural tendency to monogamy 570
Polyandry and the Swayamvara 570
Pleasing idea involved in the Swayamvara . . 570
Exaggerated expression of chivalry 571
Marriage relations in the Brahmanic period . . 571
Polyandry and the Swayamvara ignored . . . 571
Social inferiority of women 571

PAGE
Dependence of females upon fathers, husbands, and sons . 571
Duty of a father to his daughter. 573
Cases when a damsel may choose her own husband . . 573
Duties of husbands towards their wives 573
Wives to be honoured and decorated 574
Duties of a wife 574
Duties of a widow 575
Duties of a widower 575
Restrictions to be placed on women 576
Vices of women 576
Maintenance and conduct of a wife in the absense of her husband 576
Question as regards the period of absence . . . 577
Forced explanation of Kullúka 577
Law respecting divorce 577
Supersession of a wife by a second wife to obtain a son . 578
Good wives to be superseded only with their own consent 578
Force of the religious obligation to beget a son . . 579
Laws against adultery 580
Punishment of unfaithful wives and their paramours . 581
Punishment of Bráhmans 581
Public women and female anchorites 581
Question of guarded wives 582
Punishment for visiting public women 582
Position of public women and private mistresses . . 582
Female anchorites placed in the same category with public women 583
Sarcasm levelled at Buddhist nuns 583
Conduct of a Hindú towards the wives of his brethren . 583
Law for raising up a son to a deceased brother . . 583
Custom recognized but not tolerated by Manu . . 584
Custom referred to the reign of Raja Vena . . . 584
Modern custom of adoption 585

CHAPTER XIII.

HINDÚ GOVERNMENT.

Contrast between the theory of government in Manu, and the patriarchal and feudal types in Vedic tradition . . 586
Absence of patriotism and public spirit 586
Religion the only political and national tie . . . 587
Political system of the Bráhmans based upon fear . 587
Hindú Government treated under four heads . . 588
1. The Raja, his Court and Ministers . . . 588
Hindú ideal of a Raja 588
Divine attributes 589
Just punishment of evil-doers the special duty of a Raja . 589
A good Raja 590

PAGE
A bad Raja 590
Daily duties of a Raja 591
Oblations to the gods 591
Attendance on Bráhmans 591
Control of the passions 591
Ten vices born of pleasure 591
Eight vices born of wrath 591
Public appearance of the Raja 591
Secret Councils 591
Noon-day meal 591
Precautions against poison and assassination 592
Women 592
Parades 592
Evening duties 592
Evening meal 592
Music 592
Modern life in Hindú courts similar to that described in Manu 592
City of the Raja in a level plain surrounded by mountains 593
The Fort 593
The Palace 593
A Rání 593
Domestic priest and sacrificing priest 593
Sacrifices and gifts to Bráhmans 594
Ministers 594
The Chief Minister to be a Bráhman 594
Officials 594
The Ambassador 595
Distribution of offices 595
Characteristics of Hindú sovereignty 595
Illustrations to be found in the Rámáyana and Mahá Bhárata 595
2nd, Government of the Provinces 596
A military occupation based upon the village system . 596
Hindú village comprising both a district and a town . 596
The village communities, or republics 597
Village officials 597
The Head-man 597
Village assemblies 597
The accountant 598
The watchman 598
The Bráhman priest 598
Astrologer and schoolmaster 598
Jeweller 598
Miscellaneous village servants 598
Emoluments of the village officials in land and fees . 598
Antiquity and permanence of the Hindú Village system . 598
Village system as indicated by Manu 599
Law respecting the surrounding pasture land . . . 599
Village boundaries and landmarks 600
Investigation of disputes respecting landmarks . . 600

PAGE
Government of villages as laid down by Manu . . 601
The head-man, or lord of one village . . . 601
The Purgunnah, comprising a hundred villages . . 601
Modern traces of other divisions 602
Emoluments of the District Officers in the time of Manu 602
Governors of cities 602
System of taxation in return for protection . . . 603
Tax upon traders 603
Assessment on yearly savings 603
Land revenue 604
Raja's share of products and manufactures . . . 604
Tax on petty traders and artisans . . . 604
Exemption of Brâhmans 604
Paramount duty of a Raja to protect his subjects . 604
3rd, Administration of justice 605
Brahmanizing of the old patriarchal system . . 605
Court of Brahma with four faces 606
Conduct of the Raja or Chief Judge . . . 606
Laws respecting property 606
Trusts 606
Property without owners 606
Lost property 607
Treasure trove 607
Stolen property 607
Patriarchal character of the law 607
Punishment of elephant trampling . . . 608
Miscellaneous law 608
Debts 608
Money-lending 608
Bottomry 608
Sureties 609
Deposits 609
Exorbitant rates of interest in India . . . 609
Sea voyages of the Hindús proved by the law of Bottomry 609
Moral significance of the laws respecting sureties . 610
Artifice in the law respecting deposits . . . 610
False testimony 610
Oaths 610
Ordeals 610
Pastoral law respecting damage to cattle . . . 611
Neglect of land by cultivators 611
Undivided and divided families 612
Criminal law 613
Severe punishment of thieves and cheats . . . 613
4th, Laws of war 613
Four conflicting elements 613
Difficulty of tracing each element to an individual community 614
Division of the laws of war under four heads . . 614
Duties of a Raja in defensive warfare . . . 615
Incongruity of Brahmanic and Vedic ideas . . . 615

PAGE
Duties during actual operations 615
Advance and retreat 615
Alliance 616
Duties of a Raja in offensive warfare 616
Invading an enemy's territory 616
The march 616
Secret friends and emissaries 616
Tactics 616
Blockades 616
Rules of fair fighting and quarter 617
Prohibited weapons 617
Individuals who are to receive quarter 617
Policy to be pursued in a conquered country . . . 617
Its failure 618

CHAPTER XIV.

HISTORICAL RESUMÉ.

Absence of perspective in the ancient history of India . 619
No chronological sequence beyond the distinction between the Vedic and Brahmanic epochs 620
Possibility of discovering a clue to a sequence . . 620
Limits of the inquiry 620
Questions passed over in the present history . . 620
Unsatisfactory character of modern modes of interpretation 621
References to natural phenomena in the Vedic hymns . 621
Objections to the interpretation of Epic traditions by reference to natural phenomena 621
Reduction of traditions of heroes into allegorical histories of clans applicable only to mythological legends, and not to traditions of heroes 622
First scene in Indian history:—the Vedic Aryans in the Punjab 623
Second scene in Indian history:—the Aryan conquest of Hindústan 624
Vast unrecorded interval between the two 624
Classification of different phases of civilization in Epic traditions:—the patriarchal, heroic, and monarchical . 624
Modification of the three stages of civilization by human nature 625
Instincts 625
Democratic yearnings 625
Religious aspirations 625
Action of human nature upon the three stages of political development the essence of history 625
1st, Patriarchal age of Hindú history illustrated by the war of Bhárata and adventures of the Pándavas at Virata . 626
Family settlement at Hastinápur involved in the tradition of the war of Bhárata 626

PAGE
Pursuits of the settlers 626
Agriculture 626
Keeping cattle 626
Training in the use of arms 626
Feuds 627
Breach between two rival branches of the family . 627
Migration of the Pándavas to Indra-prastha . . 627
Laxity as regards marriage in the family traditions . 627
Polyandry of the Pándavas 627
Colonial life at Indra-prastha 628
Clearing the jungle 628
Possession asserted by a great feast 628
Pándavas lose their wife at a gambling match . . 628
Feud between the Pándavas and Kauravas settled by a war to the knife 628
Horrible revenge 629
Absence of Satí 629
Return of the Pándavas to Hastinápur, and celebration of an Aswamedha 629
Allegorical myths referring to wars against the Scythian Nágas 630
Free play of the instincts in the patriarchal age . 630
Democratic struggles of young men against the elders . 631
Sacrifices associated with the possession of land and assertion of sovereignty 631
Sentiments in reference to war 631
Force of the Oriental passion for revenge . . 631
Native rule in India characterized by bloody feuds . . 632
Patriarchal basis of the story of the adventures of the Pándavas at Viráta 632
Absence of the rite of Satí from the Vedic hymns . . 633
Idea of the rite involved in the tradition of Viráta . 633
Scythian custom of strangling a concubine at the grave of a king 634
Viráta a Scythian settlement 634
Difference between the Aryan and Scythian treatment of widows 635
Difference between the later Brahmanical rite of Satí and the early Scythic form 635
Connection of the later rite with a belief in the immortality of the soul 636
Phase in the civilization of India in which Satí originated 636
Exceptional circumstances tending to the extension of Satí 636
Glorification of the Satí by the Bráhmans . . 637
2nd, Heroic age of Hindú history identified with the Aryan conquest of Hindústan 637
Pictures of the heroic age furnished by Hebrew history 637
Meagre relics of the heroic age in India . . . 638
Nursery fiction 638
Mythological wars 638
Glimpses of Rájas reigning as lords paramount . 639

PAGE
Two inferences respecting the heroic period . . 639
Aryan conquest of Hindústan completed before the rise of the Brahmanical hierarchy 639
Extended employment of the Bráhmans as annual sacrificers in the heroic age 640
Early antagonism of the Bráhmans to the Maháraja . 640
Worthless character of the mythological myths shown by reference to the myth of Indra and Nahusha . . 641
Limited analogy between the heroic age of the Hindús and Hebrews 642
Absence of a theocracy in India 643
3rd, Monarchical age of Hindú history 643
Vast interval between the patriarchal and monarchical periods 643
Distinction between the era of constitutional monarchy and that of despotism supported by the Brahmanical hierarchy . 644
Ecclesiastical hierarchies fatal to constitutional forms . 644
Illustrations of the early monarchical period furnished by the tradition of Ráma 645
Moral aim of the old Kshatriya story; the mischief of setting aside the son of the first wife for the son of a younger favourite 645
A favourite theme with the old Kshatriya bards . . 645
Points in the original Kshatriya tradition . . . 646
Family of Dasaratha 646
Ráma's marriage 646
Zenana intrigue respecting the appointment of a successor . 646
Interference of the Chieftains and people . . . 647
Decision that Ráma should be installed 647
Maháraja persuaded to set aside Ráma in favour of Bharata 647
The denouement 648
Exile of Ráma and Sítá 648
Death of the Maháraja 648
Picture of palace life 649
Constitutional forms 649
Picture of the funeral rites of the Maháraja . . . 649
Close of the original tradition 650
Play of the instincts 650
General use of flesh-meat 650
Question of superior physique of flesh-eaters over vegetarians 650
Pictures of married life: polygamy contrasted with monogamy 651
Character of Sítá 652
Ráma and Sítá without children 652
Probable cause of the abandonment of Sítá . . . 652
Democratic element manifested in the popular Councils 652
Religious ideas in the tradition 653
Flesh sacrifices 653
Vows of flesh and wine to the river goddesses . . 653
Further illustrations of the monarchical period furnished by the story of Nala and Damayantí 653
Absence of polygamy and reference to gambling . 653

PAGE
Apparent age of the story 653
Play of the instincts 654
Pure connubial affection 654
Modified revenge 654
Manifestations of the democratic element . . . 654
Religious ideas 655
Appearance of the gods in the heaven of Indra . . 655
Signs of deity 655
Stages in Hindú history prior to the spiritual domination of the Bráhmans 655
Probable means by which the Bráhmans attained supreme power 656
Evil results of Brahmanical ascendancy . . . 657
Aggravated by the caste system 657
Beneficial influences exercised by the Bráhmans . 658
Spiritual teaching 658
Brahmanical aspirations after monotheism . . 658
Political condition of Hindústan in the Brahmanic age . 659
Growing opposition between the Bráhmans and the Buddhists 659
Subsequent religious convulsions 660

INTRODUCTION TO VOL. II.

THE previous volume of the History of India comprised an introductory sketch of the Vedic period, and a condensed version of the Mahá Bhárata. The present volume comprises a similar version of the Rámáyana, together with a detailed review of what is termed, somewhat arbitrarily, the Brahmanic age.

The Rámáyana is the second of the two famous Epics, which have been justly regarded by Sanskrit scholars, and by the people of India generally, as the great national treasuries of the traditions and legends of the Hindús. They are indeed the repositories of all that has been preserved of Vedic ideas and institutions, as well as the expression of that later Brahmanical system, which forms the basis of the existing religion and civilization of the masses, ramifying as it does more or less throughout the entire body of Hindú literature. In the authoritative language of the learned Professor T. Goldstücker, "the Mahá Bhárata is the source of all the Puranas, *the* Purana emphatically so called."[1] But

[1] *Westminster Review*, April, 1868. The author must acknowledge his sense of the kindness and liberality which so eminent a Sanskrit scholar as Pro-

the Rámáyana differs very considerably in character and scope from the Mahá Bhárata. The main traditions of both Epics are decidedly Vedic, but they appear to belong to totally different periods. The story of the war of Bhárata refers to the very dawn of Hindú history, when the Aryan invaders had only reached the upper courses of the Ganges and Jumná, and when the plains of Hindústan were a *terra incognita* to be converted by the later Brahmanical compilers into a land of myths and fables. The main tradition of the Rámáyana refers, on the other hand, to a comparatively recent period of Aryan conquest, when an Aryan empire had been established in Oude, and when Vedic rites and institutions had advanced from the Punjab, or land of five rivers, into the very heart of Hindústan. Moreover, the Rámáyana comprises four distinct phases of religion and civilization. First, there is an old Kshatriya tradition, replete with Vedic ideas and institutions, of the exile of Ráma from the Raj of Ayodhyá, or Oude; and the incidents of this portion of the narrative must be referred to a much later date than the patriarchal and barbarous age of the war of Bhárata, although still belonging to the Vedic or pre-Brahmanic period. Secondly, there is a yet more modern Brahmanical tradition of a Ráma, who apparently flourished as the champion of the Brahmanical Linga-worshippers of the Dekhan against the Rákshasas of the peninsula of India and island

---

fessor Goldstücker has displayed in reviewing the labours of one, who lays no claim to philological learning, but strictly confines himself to historical investigation and criticism. As regards the Puranas generally, however, it will be seen, from the opening chapter of the Brahmanic period in the present volume, that they have by no means been neglected by the author.

of Ceylon; and the incidents of this portion of the narrative must be referred to the Brahmanic or post-Vedic age. Thirdly, there is a Buddhist element, inasmuch as the so-called Rákshasas were evidently Buddhists; and it will be seen, notably in the case of a casuist named Jávali, that Buddhist doctrines are mooted in the presence of the Ráma of the Dekhan, for the purpose of being refuted by that Brahmanical warrior. Fourthly, there is a religious element, belonging to the age of Brahmanical revival; an age when the Brahmans set up the god Vishnu as a higher conception of deity than the old Vedic devatas, and represented the Ráma of the two traditions as an incarnation or avatar of that spiritual divinity.

Here it may be explained that the ancient history of India is divisible into four great religious eras, namely, the Vedic, the Brahmanic, the Buddhist, and the Brahmanic revival. First, the Vedic period was a joyous age of Swayamvaras and Aswamedhas, when Agni, Indra, and other personifications of spiritual existences, were propitiated with feasts and invoked with the enthusiastic hymns of the Rig-Veda. Secondly, the Brahmanic period was a gloomy sacerdotal age, in which the feasts of the Kshatriyas were converted into sacrifices for the atonement of sins against Brahmanical law; and in which divine worship was reduced to a system of austerities and meditations upon the Supreme Spirit as Brahma; whilst the Bráhmans appeared as a great ecclesiastical hierarchy, and established that hateful priestly dominion which still continues to debase the mind and soul of the Hindú, and renders a foreign rule a necessity to the people at large.

Thirdly, the Buddhist period was characterized by the advent of Sákya Muni as Buddha, and the rapid spread of his peculiar dogmas, that existence was an evil to gods and men; and that there was no deliverance of the soul from the vortex of successive transmigrations, excepting by the annihilation of the passions, and the hushing of the spirit into an eternal rest of dreamy and contemplative repose.[2] Lastly, we have the period of Brahmanical revival; an age when the Bráhmans seem to have abandoned the unpopular worship of their god Brahma, and to have invoked the aid of the old national gods and heroes of the Vedic Aryans against the practical atheism of Buddha, by severally representing Ráma and Krishna as incarnations of the Supreme Being who was named Vishnu.

Válmíki, the author of the Rámáyana, appears to have flourished in the age of Brahmanical revival; and the main object of his poem is to blacken the character of the Buddhists, and to represent Ráma as an incarnation of Vishnu. Before, however, attempting to explain the particular phase of religious belief which existed in the age when the Rámáyana was composed, it may be as well to glance at the general development of religious ideas in India. The earliest stage in the development of

[2] The Buddhist period cannot be clearly separated, either from the Brahmanic period which partly preceded it, or from the period of Brahmanical revival which partly succeeded it. Indeed, it will be seen in the so-called history of the Brahmanic age, which forms a portion of the present volume, that Buddhism and Brahmanism flourished side by side. It may, however, be gathered from the traditions connected with the life of Sákya Manu that the worship of Brahma preceded the Buddhist heresy; and consequently it has been found convenient to review the main characteristics of the old Brahmanical period, whilst it was still replete with Vedic ideas and institutions, and before it had passed through a Buddhist crucible.

the religious instinct in the human race appears to be the worship of the elements, such as fire, water, and wind, which in their various manifestations contribute so much to the general well-being of man, as well as to his occasional injury. As, however, individual experience advances, the religious worship extends to every conceivable thing, visible or invisible, which has been seen or imagined by the untutored mind; and such objects are personified or spiritualized, and propitiated with offerings of food and drink, and other simple gratifications. Gradually, as men separate into families and tribes, they adopt family and tribal gods, which may ultimately become the deities of nations and empires. Meantime the exaggerated language of the bards, who praise their Chief as the Raja of Rajas, and their Deity as the God of gods, engenders the idea of monotheism; and this idea rapidly assumes the form of a substantive conception as it becomes blended with the idea of a universal ruler. But having reached this point, the idea of monotheism is apt to fade away in the progress of human thought into a mere abstract conception of the Creator of the universe, the invisible Soul which pervades all things and animates all things. This is a critical period in the development of monotheism. So long as the idea of deity is blended with that of a supreme ruler, who is invested with human sympathies and national associations, so long his worshippers will pray to him for all the good things of this life, as children would address a father. But the mere abstract idea of a Supreme Deity as the Soul of the universe, can only be apprehended by the philosophic few; and is so devoid of all human interest,

that it may be approached with childlike awe, but will never be addressed in the language of devotional fervour. A link is wanting between the human and the divine; a deity incarnate in man, who is invested with sufficient humanity to sympathize with the sorrows and aspirations of human beings, and at the same time so nearly allied to deity that he can mediate between the human race and the Almighty Father.

Such were the conditions of the age in which Válmíki composed the Rámáyana. During the Vedic period religious ideas had been gravitating towards monotheism, in connection either with the worship of Indra as the sovereign of the gods, or with the worship of the Sun as the Supreme Soul. In the Brahmanic age the notion of a Supreme Soul had reached the form of an abstract idea, which was identified with Brahma, who appears to have been the peculiar god of the Bráhmans. But this idea of Brahma was divested of all those human sympathies and historical associations which were connected with the adoration of Indra; and utterly failed to kindle those glorious emotions of nature-worship which were poured forth in the daily invocations to the Sun. The great truth was unknown, or altogether ignored, that it is as impossible to adore the ideal of deity, as it is to adore the ideal of female beauty, excepting through the medium of the concrete. The worship of an abstract idea like that of Brahma could thus excite neither enthusiasm nor devotion. The human element was altogether wanting.

At this juncture Buddhism stepped in with its peculiar dogma, that existence was only another

name for pain and sorrow. Sákya Muni, the new prophet of Buddhism, appeared as an embodiment of universal benevolence, deeply moved with compassion for suffering humanity, and pointing out the only way by which the soul could be delivered from the vortex of successive transmigrations, and obtain eternal rest. Buddhism thus supplied those human sympathies which were wanting to the worship of Brahma. It denounced the caste system, and admitted Súdras, as well as twice-born men, into the ranks of the priesthood. It thus effected an easy conquest over the worship of Brahma, and for centuries was the dominant faith in Hindústan. The Bráhmans vainly attempted to supply the missing link between man and deity by representing their ancient sages as incarnations of Brahma, the mind-born sons of Brahma; beings who had emanated from the Supreme Soul as Athene had sprung from the intellect of Zeus. But the haughty Kshatriya, the wealthy Vaisya, and the oppressed Súdra, appear to have been alike estranged from the Bráhmans. The worship of ancient sages had no charm for men who were busily engaged in the practical duties of life; and thus the worship of the Supreme Soul rapidly resolved itself into a metaphysical dream.

It was at this epoch that the Bráhmans called in the aid of the gods of the Rig-Veda, and even the gods of the aboriginal races and ancient heroes of the Kshatriyas, as their allies against the power of Buddha. Men had apparently grown weary of the practical atheism of the Buddhists, and yearned after the worship of their time-honoured deities. Moreover Buddhism proved to be a religion for monks and not for soldiers; and the time came

when the Kshatriyas, the descendants of the old Vedic Aryans, began to scoff at the Buddhist mendicant, and to engage in schemes of war and conquest. Meantime the struggle between the Bráhman and the Buddhist, aggravated by the religious hate of centuries, burst forth into religious wars and persecutions of the burning and destroying type. But the story of this period still remains for investigation. It will suffice to say here that no records remain of the great conflict, save the charred relics of Buddhist cities and monasteries, and a few vague traditions that in days of old the Buddhists of Hindústan and the Dekhan were driven beyond the seas to Burmah and Ceylon.

When this great conflict was nearly over, and when religious and political ideas in India were in a state of revolutionary chaos, Válmíki appears to have composed his immortal poem of the Rámáyana. The frame-work of his story, as already indicated, was an old Vedic legend of the exile of a Ráma who flourished in Hindústan, combined with a later narrative of the exploits of a Brahmanic champion of the same name, who had helped to drive the Buddhists out of the Dekhan. The people of the south, by whose assistance this Ráma of the Dekhan had achieved his conquest, were popularly regarded as so many Monkeys and Bears, but Válmíki raised them to the rank of divine beings. In like manner the hostile Buddhists were declared to be Rákshasas or demons; and were identified with the Rákshasas or evil spirits of old Vedic tradition. Meantime Ráma was raised to the highest rank of deity as an incarnation of Vishnu.

The conception of Vishnu, as it presents itself to

the mind of the Hindú, is one of the most important of all the religious ideas that have ever been formed by the people of India. An old Vedic personification, known as Vishnu, which was more or less connected with the primitive worship of the Sun, was invested with the attributes of the Supreme Spirit; and the most famous of the national heroes, such as Ráma and Krishna, and even the most popular of the old animal gods of the pre-Aryan races, such as the fish, the tortoise, the boar, and the lion, were associated with the worship of this Supreme Being by being represented as incarnations or avatars of the great god Vishnu. The complicated mythological system connected with the worship of Vishnu through his ten incarnations, will be treated in the third and concluding volume of the present history. It will suffice to state here that the idea which pervades the Rámáyana of Válmíki is that Ráma is an incarnation of Vishnu, who was sent into the world at the earnest entreaty of the Vedic deities, to deliver the Bráhmans from the oppressions of the Buddhists or Rákshasas. The plan of the Epic will be found simple enough; and it will be seen that the presence of supernatural details furnishes the same clue to the discovery of what is and what is not Vedic tradition, as it does in the story of the Mahá Bhárata. The success of the attempt of Válmíki to set up a god-man as a representative of the Supreme Being will of course be questioned by the European, who peruses the poem free from all the subjective influences of hereditary teaching and superstitious fear; but it cannot be denied by those who are aware that a hundred millions of human beings are imbued with an unquestioning faith in the divinity

of Ráma, and the firm belief that such faith in the heart, accompanied by the frequent invocation of the holy name of Ráma, is sufficient to secure eternal happiness for the soul in the heaven of Vishnu.

But although the historical student may find it necessary to analyze the process by which the national traditions of Ráma have been converted into vehicles for the promulgation of a theological and ecclesiastical system, it by no means follows that the author of the Rámáyana is to be regarded as a mere priestly impostor. On the contrary, the same high religious purpose, which characterizes other great Epics such as those of Homer and Milton, is fully expressed in the Rámáyana of Válmíki. Here it may be remarked that the ordinary conception of the Epic, as an elaborate narrative in elevated poetry, in which free scope may be given to the imagination so long as a moral or religious end be kept in view, has led to a very imperfect estimate of the important part which has been played by the Iliad and Paradise Lost in the history of religious development. The true Epic is the creation of the bard who can elevate his intellect and imagination far above the jarring conflicts of his generation, and afford consolation to the soul in those eras of religious and political revolution, when the progress of human affairs seems entirely opposed to all ideas of a divine government of the universe of being. Such was the age of Milton, and such appears to have been the age alike of Homer and of Válmíki.

The object of these three immortal bards thus appears to have been to exhibit and reconcile the relations between man and deity in accordance with the current religious belief of the ages in which they

respectively flourished. It has already been shown that the religious yearnings which are common to every race and creed, namely, the passionate longing to acquaint deity with our sufferings and sorrows, and to induce deity to take a direct and intelligent interest in our well-being, can never be satisfied with any monotheism, which takes the form of an abstract idea. But the Iliad, the Paradise Lost, and the Rámáyana have each furnished in turn a solution of the great religious enigma, the relations between God and man. The conception of these relations differs widely in each case, inasmuch as each one drew his theological ideas and personifications from a different mythological system. But still the same underlying conviction seems to have been common to all three, that a necessity existed for reconciling the ways of God to man. In the days of Homer the Greeks appear to have invoked and propitiated the Olympic deities much after the fashion in which the Vedic Aryans invoked and propitiated the personified gods of the Rig-Veda. Accordingly in dealing with the tale of Troy, which had apparently inflicted so much misery on Greek and Trojan, the popular mind was consoled by the representation that all the deities of Hellas had taken an active part in the events which preceded and accompanied the siege; and that all the sufferings and sorrows, which were associated with that contest, were to be ascribed to the warm interest which was taken by the national deities in the proceedings of the national heroes. Milton we know to have been cast upon an evil age, in which the religious mind found no consolation save what was to be derived from a living faith in Christianity.

The bard of Paradise Lost must have perceived that the Commonwealth had failed to save the nation from civil and religious oppression; and to his pure mind the restoration of the Stuarts must have been a restoration of the rule of the sons of Belial. Under such circumstances the Christian bard naturally sought to justify the ways of God to man, not by introducing the action of Deity into history, but by reproducing, with all the pomp and circumstance of Epic poetry, the sacred legends which were associated with the expulsion of the evil angels, the creation and fall of man, and the final redemption of the human race. The task accomplished by Válmíki was somewhat different. Like Homer, he drew the groundwork of his Epic from national traditions, and his divine personages from a national Pantheon; but he had to reproduce Vedic traditions in a Brahmanical dress, and to represent the human actions of Ráma as the divine actions of the incarnation of Vishnu. It will also be remarked that there is a considerable change in the deification as it appears in the story of the exile of Ráma of Ayodhyá, and in the story of the conquests of Ráma of the Dekhan. In the narrative of the exile the Vedic element predominates with its horse-sacrifices and Swayamvaras; and whilst the language and incidents have been Brahmanized throughout with considerable skill, the deification of the hero is artificial and unsatisfactory. Ráma is indeed represented as a Hindú model of a good son and true husband, but not as a high ideal of youthful deity. Indeed the interest of this portion of the Rámáyana turns almost entirely upon the mere human details, such as the picture of the city of Ayodhyá, the

Aswamedha which resulted in the birth of Ráma and his brethren, the marriage of Ráma and Sítá, the claim of Ráma to the succession on the throne, and the intrigues of his mother-in-law Kaikeyí by which those claims were set aside, and he himself condemned to many years' banishment in the jungle. The subsequent narrative of Ráma's conquest of Lanka is altogether of a different character. Here the human element almost disappears, and it is difficult to arrive at even glimpses of historical truth beneath the confused overgrowth of fable and exaggeration. Moreover the character of Ráma of the Dekhan appears to have differed widely from that of Ráma of Ayodhyá. The Dekhan hero was apparently a champion of the Bráhmans, but he was evidently cruel and unscrupulous in the attainment of his ends; and the bard often appears to labour under the feeling that it is necessary to explain away the conduct of this Ráma, and he does not always succeed in the attempt. The deification of the Ráma of the Dekhan is wild and fantastic, the product of a superstitious and oppressed age, when the popular mind could find no hope for relief excepting in the conception of a friendly warrior, invested with supernatural power and possessed of supernatural weapons. The reckless introduction of fabulous details tends to confirm the theory that the tradition of the exile and that of the conquest originated from different sources. Thus it is possible that the wanderings of years could carry a hero from Ayodhyá to Ceylon, as it has carried Hindú pilgrims for generations; but the notion of carrying back a warrior and his conquering army from Ceylon to Ayodhyá was more than the Hindú bard

could explain away. Consequently the conception was introduced of a large chariot, which moved through the air at the will of its driver, and passed like a winged city from the straits of Manaar to the banks of the Gogra. It is also curious to notice that the main plot of this latter tradition, namely, the abduction of Sítá and the siege of Lanka, bears a strong resemblance to the abduction of Helen and the siege of Troy; saving that whilst the purity of the Hindú heroine was testified by the gods, and she was even then abandoned in the jungle on mere suspicion, the Spartan heroine yielded to every temptation, and was even then received back with favour by her first husband. Again, the war between Ráma and the Rákshasas bears a similar resemblance to that war between the good and evil angels, which finds expression in Paradise Lost; and which appears to have been borrowed from those ancient legends of the war between Iran and Turan, good and evil, light and darkness, Ormuzd and Ahriman, which still linger in the primitive traditions of the Zoroastrian era.

The abridged version of the Rámáyana now presented to the public is not derived exclusively from the poem of Válmíki, and indeed it is scarcely likely that the story of Ráma's conquests, as related by Válmíki, could ever be rendered acceptable to European readers, nor is such a process necessary for historical purposes. There are three Rámáyanas which are supposed to have been respectively the works of Válmíki, Tulsee Dass, and Vyása. The Rámáyana of Válmíki, as translated by Messrs Carey and Marshman,[3] from the commencement of the

[3] The best thanks of the author are due to Mr George Smith of Serampore

poem to the abduction of Sítá by Rávana, has been adopted with some revisions and modifications as the basis of the greater part of the present condensed version. The remainder is given in brief outline from the Bengali version. Moreover a few extracts have been introduced in the text from what is understood to be the north-western version, which furnish particulars not to be found in the poem of Válmíki, respecting the early life, education, and marriage of Ráma, and serve to illustrate the more modern ideas upon these subjects, which are current amongst the Hindús.[4] Again, throughout the present version considerable extracts have been added in the form of foot-notes from the work which is popularly ascribed to Vyása, and which is known as the Adhy-átma Rámáyana. These extracts will be found valuable from the light which they throw upon the modern belief in the deity of Ráma; but this important point will form a subject of further discussion in the third and concluding volume.[5]

The so-called history of the Brahmanic age, which occupies a large portion of the present volume, requires a few words of explanation. The previous volume opened with a sketch of the Vedic period, which, although somewhat brief, really contained all

---

for having kindly furnished him with a considerable number of sheets of Carey and Marshman's translation which had been printed but never published.

[4] For this portion of the work I am much indebted to the assistance of the same young Sanskrit scholar, Baboo Obenash Chunder Ghose, who had helped me with the Mahá Bhárata. The young Baboo aided me in making a tolerably full translation, which has been subsequently filtered down to suit European tastes.

[5] For the use of this Adhyátma Rámáyana I am indebted to Mr Alonzo Money of the Bengal Civil Service, who has in his possession a beautiful manuscript translation illustrated with native pictures, which appears to have been made about the end of the last century, and which for some months was kindly placed at my disposal.

the results which could be gathered from really Vedic sources; in other words, from the hymns of the Rig-Veda, so far as they had been translated by the late Professor H. H. Wilson. So far this sketch of the Vedic age served in some measure as a test wherewith to trace out such Vedic elements as could be discovered in the Epics, and to separate them from the Brahmanical interpolations with which they were closely intertwined. In the present history of the Brahmanic age this process has been carried much farther; and consequently it will be found to throw a reflex light upon the Vedic age; inasmuch as the main result of the critical inquiry into the so-called Brahmanic age is the separation of the ideas and institutions of the old Vedic period from those which prevailed in the later Brahmanic period. Hitherto these conflicting elements have been blended together in the national literature and belief of the Hindús, in the same way that they have been blended together in the Mahá Bhárata and Rámáyana. The publication of the Hymns of the Rig-Veda first furnished the clue to this separation, inasmuch as they may be regarded as the most authoritative expression of the Vedic age, just as the laws of Manu may be regarded as the authoritative expression of the Brahmanic age which immediately succeeded. This comparison of the Hymns of the Rig-Veda with the Laws of Manu, has of course been carried out by the light of the data already gathered from the Epics, and from a tolerably comprehensive investigation of the Puranas; and by this process results have been gained which may possibly be regarded as discoveries, or at any rate may perhaps be received by Sanskrit scholars as confirmatory of similar results which have been

worked out by comparative philology. It will be seen that from this simple comparison of the Hymns of the Rig Veda with the Laws of Manu, without any reference to the important results which have been worked out by the great schools of modern philology, it appears to be established that the Rishis belonged to the Vedic age, and the Brâhmans to the Brahmanic age; that polyandry, or the marriage of several brothers to one wife, which is explained away by the Brahmanical compilers of the Mahâ Bhârata as purely exceptional and confined to the sons of Pandu, was in fact an old Vedic institution which finds expression in the hymns of the Rig-Veda; and that the Aswamedha, or sacrifice of a horse, and the Swayamvara, or self-choice of a husband by a marriageable maiden, were purely Vedic institutions; originally unknown to Brahmanism, and finding no place in the laws of Manu, but forming prominent features in Epic traditions, and being duly recognized in the Vedic Hymns. From these data it may be easily inferred, that if an investigation of the Brahmanic period can throw so much light upon the period which preceded it, so in like manner further materials for the earlier history of India may yet be gathered from an investigation of the ideas and institutions of the Buddhist period, and of the later age of Brahmanical revival through which the national mind has been slowly passing, since the downfall of Buddha in India, to emerge, it is to be hoped, in the dawn of a brighter and purer day.

J. Talboys Wheeler.

Calcutta, 12th January, 1869.

HISTORY OF INDIA.

PART IV.

THE RÁMÁYANA.

CHAPTER I.

THE CITY OF AYODHYÁ.

THE story of the Rámáyana opens at the famous city of Ayodhyá, the modern Oude, which is situated upon the river Sarayú, the modern Gogra, about three hundred and fifty miles to the south-east of the great city of Delhi. In the present day the city of Ayodhyá has disappeared, and little is to be seen of the ancient site beyond a shapeless heap of ruins, a mass of rubbish and jungle, which stretches along the southern bank of the Gogra river. But in olden time this city was one of the largest and most magnificent in Hindústan,[1] and its memory is still preserved in

Opening scene of the Rámáyana at Ayodhyá, the modern Oude.

Present appearance of the ruins.

Ancient magnificence.

[1] Abul Fazel, in 1582, thus describes the city: "Oude is one of the largest cities in Hindústan. In ancient times this city is said to have measured 148 coss (296 English miles) in length, and 36 coss (72 miles) in breadth. Upon sifting the earth which is round this city, small grains of gold are sometimes found in it. The town is esteemed one of the most sacred places in antiquity."

HISTORY OF INDIA. PART IV.

every quarter of the Indian peninsula. Its geographical position is highly significant of the progress of Aryan invasion between two great epochs, namely, that of the war of Bhárata, and that of the birth of Ráma. In the Mahá Bhárata the Aryans had apparently advanced no farther towards the south-east than the neighbourhood of Delhi; but in the Rámáyana they seem to have established a large and substantial Raj in the very centre of Hindústan, and to have founded a metropolis which must ever be famous in the ancient history of India.

Geographical position indicative of Aryan advance from Delhi to Oude.

The Raj of Kosala.

The Raj thus indicated was known as the Raj of Kosala. Its boundaries cannot be strictly defined, but it evidently covered a considerable area. In one direction it certainly stretched from the banks of the Gogra to those of the Ganges; for there is distinct mention of a frontier town which was seated on the Ganges, and which separated the territory of Kosala from the country of the Bhíls. The early history of the Raj of Kosala is, however, almost a blank. The Rajas claimed to be descendants of the Sun, in the same way that the Rajas of Bhárata claimed to be descended from the Moon; and the Bráhmans improved the genealogy by representing the Sun to have sprung from a Rishi named Kásyapa, who in his turn was the grandson of Brahma. Thus while the Rajas of Kosala retained their ancient claim of being descendants of the Sun, an attempt was made in the national epic to represent them as children of the peculiar deity of the Bráhmans. But scarcely a trace of an authentic family tradition is to be found in the Rámáyana earlier than Dasaratha, the father of Ráma; and in this respect the story of Ráma differs somewhat widely from that of the Kauravas and Pándavas. The poem com-

Lack of family traditions.

Rajas descended from the Sun.

The Sun descended from Brahma.

Earliest tradition connected with Dasaratha, the father of Ráma.

mences with a glowing description of the Raj of Kosala, the city and people of Ayodhyá, and the virtues and accomplishments of the reigning Mahá-raja, the mighty Dasaratha; and this description may now be presented almost exactly as it stands in the original Sanskrit, with all those Brahmanical exaggerations of ancient Hindú glory and caste distinction, which could scarcely have had any existence excepting in the profuse imagination of a Brahmanical bard:—

Commencement of the Rámáyana.

Description of the Raj of Kosala and city of Ayodhyá.

In ancient times there was a great country named Kosala; and that country was happy and joyous, and abounded in cattle, and grain, and riches. And in that country on the banks of the river Sarayú, was a famous city named Ayodhyá; and there all the houses were large and beautifully arranged, and the streets were always watered, and there were very many temples richly decorated, and stately palaces with domes like the tops of mountains, with pleasant gardens full of birds and flowers, and shady groves of trees, loaded with delicious fruits, and above all there were the sacred and resplendent chariots of the gods. And the tanks in that city were magnificent beyond all description, and covered with the white lotos; and the bees thirsted for the honey, and the wind drove the white lotoses from the bees, as modesty drives away the coy bride from her husband. And the ducks and the geese swam upon the surface of the tanks, or dived under the clear waters; and the brilliant kingfishers were wroth as they beheld their own reflection in the bright wave, and under pretence of catching the fish they beat the water with their wings. And the plantain trees round the tanks were bending with the weight of the fruit, like reverential pupils bowing at the feet of their preceptors. The whole city was adorned with gems, so that it resembled a mine of jewels, and it was like unto Amarávati, the city of Indra. It was perfumed with flowers and incense, and decked out with gorgeous banners; and it was ever filled with the sweet

Houses, streets, temples, palaces, gardens, groves, and chariots of the gods.

The tanks.

The lotoses.

The wind and the bees.

The ducks and geese.

The kingfishers.

The plantain trees.

Gems.

Flowers, incense, and banners.

sound of music, the sharp twanging of bows, and the holy chaunting of Vedic hymns. The city was encompassed round about with very lofty walls, which were set in with variously-coloured jewels; and all round the walls was a moat filled with water, deep and impassable; and the city gates were strongly barred, and the porticoes of the gates and the towers on the walls were filled with archers, and stored with weapons of every description. Every quarter of the city was guarded by mighty heroes, who were as strong as the eight gods who rule the eight points of the universe, and as vigilant as the many-headed serpents who watch at the entrance of the regions below.

Fortifications.

The moat.

The gates.

The guards.

The people of Ayodhyá.

The city of Ayodhyá was full of people, and every one was healthy and happy, and every one was well fed upon the best of rice; and every merchant in that city had store-houses filled with jewels from every quarter of the earth.

The Bráhmans and their three classes of disciples, viz.:

The Bráhmans constantly kept alive the sacrificial fire, and were deeply read in the Vedas and Vedángas, and were endowed with every excellent quality; they were profusely generous, and were filled with truth, zeal, and compassion, equal to the great sages, and their minds and passions were under perfect control. All these Bráhman sages had three classes of disciples; first, the youths who served them as servants serve their masters; then the students who were receiving instruction; and then the Brahmacháris who maintained themselves and their preceptors by collecting alms. Next to the Bráhmans were the Kshatriyas, who were all warriors, and were constantly exercised in the practice of arms in the presence of the Maháraja. After these were the Vaisyas, or merchants, who sold goods of every description, and who came from every corner of the earth. Last of all were the Súdras, who were ever engaged in devotion to the gods, and in the service of the Bráhmans. Besides these there were jewellers and artificers, singing men and dancing women, charioteers and footmen, potters and smiths, painters and oilmen, sellers of flowers and sellers of betelnut. In all that city of well-fed and happy people, no man was without learning, or practised a calling

Servants,

Students,

Brahmacháris.

The Kshatriyas.

The Vaisyas.

The Súdras.

Virtues of the people.

that did not belong to his family or caste, or dwelt in a mean habitation, or was without kinsmen. There were no misers, nor liars, nor thieves, nor tale-bearers, nor swindlers, nor boasters; none that were arrogant, malevolent, mean, or who lived at another's expense; and no man who had not abundance of children, or who lived less than a thousand years. The men fixed their affections upon their wives only; the women were chaste and obedient to their husbands; and all were patient and faithful in the discharge of their several duties. No one was without a marriage crown, or ear-rings, or a necklace, or jewels for the hands. No one was poor, or wore tarnished ornaments; and no one was without fine raiment and perfumes, or was unclean, or fed on unclean things, or neglected the sacrifice, or gave less than a thousand rupees to the Bráhmans. All the women in Ayodhyá were extremely beautiful, and endowed with wit, sweetness, prudence, industry, and every good quality; and their ornaments were always bright and shining, and their apparel was always clean and without a stain. In all Ayodhyá there was not a man or woman who was unfortunate, or foolish, or wretched, or uneasy, or diseased, or afflicted with fear, or disloyal to the Maháraja. All were devoted to truth, practised hospitality, and paid due honour to their superiors, their ancestors, and the gods. All the four castes—the Bráhmans, the Kshatriyas, the Vaisyas, and the Súdras, were devoted to the Maháraja. No caste intermarried with any other caste; and there were no Chandálas[2] in all the city, either by birth or as a punishment for crime.

Palace of the Maháraja.

In the midst of that great city was the magnificent and resplendent palace of the Maháraja, encompassed by walls, which were so high that the birds could not fly over them, and so strong that no beast could force its way through them. And there were two gates in the palace walls, one on each side; and over the gateways the music of the moho-

Temples and treasures.

[2] Chandálas strickly speaking were the offspring of a Súdra father by a Bráhman mother, but the name is generally applied to all low-caste or out-caste tribes. Manu says:—"Even as a Súdra begets on a Bráhmaní woman a son more vile than himself, thus any other low man begets on women of the four castes, a son yet lower."

bat was playing at every quarter of the day and night; and within the walls and round about the palace were many temples to the gods, and hundreds of treasuries filled with treasure. In the midst of the palace was the throne of the Maháraja, set upon pillars, and many other pillars were round about the throne; and all the pillars and the throne were covered with precious stones. And the palace was guarded by thousands of warriors who were as fierce as flames of fire, and as watchful as the lions that guard their dens in the mountains.

Throne of the Maháraja.

Palace guards.

In this palace reigned the mighty Dasaratha, the Mahá-raja of the country of Kosala, and of the city of Ayodhyá; and he was the son of Aja and descendant of Ikshwáku. And Dasaratha was very wise in the Vedas and Vedangás,[3] and had great foresight and ability, and was beloved by all his people. He was a perfect charioteer, a royal sage, famous throughout the three worlds, the conqueror of his enemies, ever loving justice, and having a perfect command over all his passions. In riches and magnificence he was equal to Indra, and he protected his subjects like another Manu. In supplying the wants and necessities of the people, he proved himself to be their true father, rather than the real father who only begot them; and he took tribute from his subjects, not for his own use, but to return it to them again with greater beneficence, as the sun drinks up the salt ocean to return it to the earth as vivifying rain. His Ministers were likewise possessed of every excellence, wise, capable of understanding a nod, and constantly devoted to their beloved Maháraja. And Dasaratha had eight special Counsellors who were ever engaged upon his affairs, and the chief of all was Sumantra; and his two chosen priests and preceptors[4] were Vasishtha and Vámadeva. Possessed of such Ministers

Virtues of Mahárája Dasaratha.

Virtues of his Ministers.

Eight special Counsellors.

Two priests and preceptors.

[3] The Vedángas are not distinct treatises like the four Vedas, but sciences. Thus the six Vedángas comprise (1) pronunciation; (2) metre; (3) grammar; (4) explanation of words; (5) astronomy; and (6) ceremonial. Müller's *Hist. of Sanskrit Lit.* p. 108 *et seq.*

[4] These two chosen Bráhmans, who are here called priests and preceptors, were perhaps Purohitas or family priests; although there are some indications that Vasishtha was regarded as a Guru.

and priests Dasaratha ruled the world virtuously, and rendered it very happy. Inspecting the world by his spies, as the sun inspects it by his rays, the great Dasaratha found no person of hostile mind, and he shone resplendent and illuminated the whole earth.

Review of the foregoing description of a Raj, a people, and a Mahá-raja.

Hindú ideal of a city.

The foregoing description of a city, a people, and a Mahárája is perhaps without a parallel in the whole range of Brahmanical literature. Ayodhyá is the Hindú ideal of perfection, in which the Kshátriyas and Bráhmans alike performed their respective duties of protection and worship, and the twanging of bows was heard as constantly as the chaunting of Vedic hymns. It was a city of large houses, well-watered streets, decorated temples, stately palaces, pleasant gardens, shady groves, spacious tanks, and impregnable fortifications. A poetical sympathy with external nature is also displayed both here and in other portions of the Rámáyana, which is singularly illustrative of the dreamy character of the Hindú, and is rendered doubly curious from its occasional subordination to Brahmanical ideas. The Brahmanical conception of marriage involves a display of extreme modesty on the part of a girl wife; and thus the wind that drives away the white lotos from the thirsty bees, is likened to the modesty which drives away a coy bride from her ardent husband. Again, the respect due to Brahmanical instructors is indirectly enforced by the simile that the plantain trees bent with the weight of their fruit, like reverential pupils bowing at the feet of their preceptors. Further on the three classes of disciples or pupils are distinctly indicated, namely, the youths who acted as servants, the students who received instruction, and the Brahmachárís who col-

Poetical sympathy with external nature subordinate to Brahmanical ideas.

Coy brides.

Reverential pupils.

Disciples of the Bráhmans.

lected alms for themselves and their preceptors. The description of the people is equally significant.

The people.

They possessed every moral and religious virtue; they were learned, well fed upon the best of rice, free from disease, and lived for a thousand years. Every man had abundance of children, jewels, and clean raiment. Above all, every one was so rich and so pious, that no one ever gave less than a thousand rupees to the Bráhmans. A great stress is also laid upon caste distinctions. Every man belonged to a family and caste; no man followed a calling that did not belong to his caste, and no child born of mixed castes was to be found throughout the city.

Stress laid upon caste distinctions.

Model of a Hindú Mahárája.

As for the Maháraja, although he subsequently appears in a very different light, he is praised here as possessing every virtue, military and Brahmanical. He was at once famous as a charioteer and as a sage, a mighty warrior and a controller of his passions, endowed with great foresight, and well versed in the Vedas and Vedángas. His court was of course intended as a model for all Hindú Rajas to follow.

Military and religious character.

His Counsellors.

He had eight chosen Counsellors, of whom his charioteer Sumantra was the chief; and he had two priests, who acted on all occasions as his particular guides and advisers. His palace was magnificent and resplendent, but in describing the walls the Brahmanical bard has indulged in a simile which furnishes a glimpse of the reality. They were so tall that the birds could not fly over them, and so strong that no beast could force its way through them. From this it is evident that the walls could not have

His two Purohitas.

Real nature of the palace enclosure.

[a] The name of Brahmachárí is generally applied to all religious students whilst living under a Bráhman master or Guru. All Brahmacháris wait upon their masters, study the Vedas, and collect alms.

been made of brick or stone; for in that case the attempt of a beast to force his way through them would never have entered the mind of the bard. In all probability the palace was surrounded by a hedge, which was sufficiently strong to keep out wild beasts or stray cattle. In other respects however, the picture is sufficiently imposing. The treasuries, which probably contained the land-revenue of rice and other grain, were placed for security within the inclosure;[6] and little temples to the different gods, each perhaps containing a single image before which the worshipper performed his devotions, were set up in the same area. In the middle of the palace was the throne of the Maháraja raised upon pillars, and surrounded by pillars, and both the pillars and the throne are said to have been adorned with precious stones. The statement that the Maháraja inspected the world with his spies, as the sun inspects it with his rays, may seem a dubious mode of government to the European; but a strict and universal system of espionage is perfectly in accordance with Hindú ideas, and its organization was considered to be one of the first duties of a Hindú sovereign.

Treasuries and temples within the enclosure.

Throne in the centre of the palace.

Hindú idea of the necessity for spies.

[6] In ancient times the land revenue seems to have been generally paid in kind; the Raja being entitled to a certain share of the grain, which was collected at harvest-time.

CHAPTER II.

THE HORSE SACRIFICE OF MAHÁRAJA DASARATHA.

Performance of an Aswamedha to obtain a son.

THE first act of Maháraja Dasaratha which is recorded in the Rámáyana, was the performance of an Aswamedha, or horse sacrifice, to obtain a son. Here it is curious to observe that the rite is invested with a meaning totally different to that which appears in the Aswamedha described in the Mahá Bhárata. The horse was loosened for an entire year, but no allusion whatever is made to any conquests over the neighbouring Rajas, nor to any other incident which would connect the ceremony with an assertion of sovereignty. The Aswamedha was performed for the sole and obvious purpose of procuring sons; and this point will be discussed at length after the ceremonial has been described. There is also a curious episode in the narrative which will require special notice. It is the legend of a young Rishi who had passed the earlier years of his life in the hermitage of his father in the jungle, and who had consequently never seen the face of a woman. This youthful Rishi was subsequently enticed by a number of young courtesans to accompany them to the city of Anga, where he married the daughter of the Raja, and was subsequently engaged to perform the Aswamedha of Maháraja Dasaratha. With this brief

Episode of a Rishi who had never seen a woman.

Narrative of the horse sacrifice of Dasaratha.

introduction, the narrative of the horse sacrifice may be related as follows:—

The Maháraja determines to perform an Aswamedha to obtain a son.

Now the Maháraja had three Ránís, and their names were Kausalyá, Kaikeyí, and Sumitrá; but no son was born to him to perpetuate his race. So he took seven hundred and fifty women into his palace, but still none of them gave birth to a son; and the thought arose in the mind of the Maháraja that he would perform an Aswamedha sacrifice, and thus propitiate the gods to give him a man-child. And the Maháraja told to his priests and preceptors that he would sacrifice the horse, and the priests bestowed great praises upon Dasaratha, and said to him:—"Let all things necessary be prepared, and the horse be let loose, and let a place for the sacrifice be appointed on the north bank of the river Sarayú: And you, O Maháraja, who have formed this holy resolution to perform an Aswamedha, will assuredly obtain the sons whom you desire." Dasaratha then rejoiced greatly, and he ordered his Counsellors to do as his preceptors had commanded; and he went to his beloved Ránís and said:—"I will perform a sacrifice to obtain a son; do you therefore commence the preliminary rites." And the beautiful faces of the Ránís brightened at his words, as the lotos is brightened at the coming of the spring.

Acquiescence of his Bráhman preceptors.

Delight of the three Ránís.

Ancient prophecy that the Aswamedha was to be performed by Rishi Sringa.

Then Sumantra, who was the chief of the Counsellors, said to Dasaratha:—"It was predicted in the ancient chronicles that you should perform an Aswamedha to procure a son, and that the sacrifice should be offered by the Rishi Sringa. Now Sringa was born in the forest, and lived in the hermitage of his father, who was a great sage; and he never saw any man save his father; and he never saw any woman, young or old. And it came to pass that the Raja of Anga desired to give his daughter Sántá in marriage to Sringa; so he sent young courtesans into the forest, and they allured Sringa away to the city of the Raja of Anga; and Sringa is still dwelling with the Raja of Anga."

Legend of the Rishi Sringa who had never seen a woman.

The Maháraja replied:—"Let the story of Sringa be told at length!" And Sumantra told the story thus:—

HISTORY OF INDIA. PART IV.

"In the Raj of Anga there was a great drought, because of the wickedness of Lomapáda, who was the Raja of Anga. And Raja Lomapáda called to the Bráhmans, and said:—'You are learned in the Vedas, and acquainted with the customs of men; tell me then, I pray you, how I may expiate my sin that the rain may again fall upon the land.' The Bráhmans answered the Raja:—'Bring the young Rishi Sringa out of his father's hermitage, and give him your daughter Sántá in marriage according to the ordinance.' The Raja agreed, but none of all his servants would go into the jungle and bring away Sringa, lest the father of Sringa should see them and pronounce a curse upon them. So the Bráhmans and Counsellors took counsel together, and they remembered that Sringa was an inhabitant of the forest, and that he had never beheld the face of a woman. Accordingly by their counsel the Raja prepared large boats, and planted fruit trees and sandal trees therein, and filled them with perfumed liquors and delicious fruits; and he collected together a number of beautiful young damsels and sent them in the boats to the hermitage of the Rishi to entice away Sringa from the abode of his father. When the damsels came to the hermitage they trembled with fear lest the father of Sringa should discover them, and they hid themselves in the forest beneath the wide-spreading creepers and climbing plants; but when they learned that the sage had gone out of his hermitage, and left his son alone, they came out of their hiding-place and went before the hut; and they were adorned with necklaces of flowers, and with musical bells upon their ancles, and they began to sing and play in the view of Sringa; and they indulged in many sportive gambols, and danced together, and pushed one another about, and threw garlands of flowers at each other and filled the air with music and perfumes. And Sringa, was amazed at the sight of beings of such slender waists and exquisite adornments; and when the damsels saw his surprise they sung a soft slow air, and approached him, and said:—'Who is your father, and why do you wander in this forest?' Sringa replied:—'My father is a great sage of

Drought caused by the wickedness of the Raja of Anga.

The Raja advised by the Bráhmans to marry his daughter to Rishi Sringa.

Refusal of the Raja's servants to bring Rishi Sringa from the jungle.

Damsels sent to entice Sringa from his father's hermitage.

Gambols of the damsels in the absence of Sringa's father.

Sringa invites them into the hermitage.

the family of Kásyapa, and his name is Vibhándaka: Why do you come here thus suddenly? Enter into the hermitage, I pray you, and I will entertain you all.' The damsels then went into the hut, and Sringa offered them seats, and brought water to wash their feet, and gave them fruits and roots; and they smiled upon him, and said in soft accents:—'O sinless son of the sage, if it be agreeable to you, eat now some of the fruits of our own abode!' And they gave him delicious sweetmeats resembling fruits, and wine as sweet as honey; and they smiled upon him and caressed him, and putting their fragrant mouths to his ears they whispered soft words to him; and when they departed they pointed to their boats in which they abode, and which were very near the hermitage.

Sringa fascinated with sweetmeats, wine, and caresses.

"When it was evening time the sage Vibhándaka returned to the hermitage, and he saw that his son Sringa was very melancholy and absorbed in thought, and he said:—'Why do you not rejoice at my coming? I perceive, my son, that you are immersed in a sea of anxiety, so tell me why you are changed.' Then Sringa said:—'O divine father, some men with beautiful eyes came here and embraced me very often, and sung soft and ravishing music, and sported before me, and moved their eye-brows in a surprising manner.' The sage replied:—'O my son, the Rákshasas have come to you in this manner to disturb your devotion; and it is not proper for you to trust them in any way.' The sage thus comforted his son, and he stayed in the hermitage all that night, but when it was morning he returned again to the forest.

Alarm of Sringa's father on discovering what had occurred.

"Then Sringa, seeing that his father had gone out, went away to the boats which the damsels had pointed out to him, and they entertained him as before, and led him to a very pleasant boat, and seated him therein, and carried him away to the city of Anga. And when Sringa entered the city, the clouds became black with rain, and Raja Lomapáda went out to meet the young Bráhman who had thus brought the rain, and worshipped him with his head bowing to the earth, and presented him with water for his feet, and with the

Sringa carried away to Anga by the damsels.

Rain falls on the approach of Sringa.

argha; and the Raja then with serene mind gave his lotos-eyed daughter Sántá in marriage to Sringa. And the father of Sringa, by the force of his devotions, knew all that had taken place, and he dismissed all anxiety from his mind, and abode in the hermitage as before."

Sringa married to the Raja's daughter Sántá.

Review of the foregoing episode of Rishi Sringa.

The foregoing episode is a specimen of those amusing stories which seem to have been occasionally converted by the Bráhmans into vehicles for the promulgation of their own peculiar ideas. The real object of the légend is to enforce the belief that drought is occasioned by the sins of a Raja, and that a young Bráhman Rishi could produce rain. It is perhaps scarcely necessary to dwell upon the vital importance of seasonable rains in every quarter of India. A long-continued drought implies the greatest calamity that can befall a nation. The Ryot loses his crop, the Raja loses his revenue, and parents and children are literally starving. In ancient times the god of the firmament was Indra; and the hymns of the Rig-Veda are filled with prayers to Indra for rain, or with praises of Indra as the giver of rain. But one of the earliest means by which the Bráhmans established their ascendancy over the masses was by arrogating to themselves a power to bring down rain, which was superior to that of Indra.[1] In the legend of Sringa the Bráhmans have endeavoured to enforce this view; and by their own showing appear to have taken a singular advantage of the superstitious fears of the Raja on account of the drought. They not only declared

Power of procuring rain assumed by the Bráhmans.

Indra, the Vedic deity who sent rain.

Bráhmans assert a superiority to Indra.

Brahmanical assumption in the legend of Sringa.

[1] The legend of Devayani (see vol. i. page 508) contains a curious picture of the arrogant pretensions of a Bráhman to bring down rain by the efficacy of his incantations; and of the ludicrous alarm of the Raja and his Council, lest he should depart out of the Raj, and leave them to procure rain by their own devices.

that the drought was occasioned by his sins, or in other words by his derelictions from Brahmanical laws and observances; but also urged that he could only expiate his sins by giving his daughter in marriage to the young Rishi; and the subsequent appearance of Sringa simultaneously with the rain cloud must have confirmed the general belief in the rain-procuring powers of the Bráhmans. The means by which Sringa was induced to leave the hermitage of his father are more than questionable; but the idea that they involved any immorality does not appear to have crossed the mind of the Brahmanical author.[2]

Unconscious immorality in the temptation of Sringa.

Having thus disposed of the episode respecting Sringa, the main narrative of the Aswamedha may be resumed as follows :—

Narrative of the Aswamedha resumed.

Now when Sumantra had related to Dasaratha the story of the Rishi Sringa, he said to the Maháraja :—"O Raja of Rajas, go now to the city of Anga, and bring hither the Rishi Sringa and his wife Sántá, and appoint Sringa to be your own Guru." So Dasaratha took counsel of his priest Vasishtha, and with his approval he went away to the delightful city of Anga, and was entertained for eight days by Raja Lomapáda; and having obtained the consent of Lomapáda he returned to his own city of Ayodhyá, taking

The Maháraja goes to Anga and brings Sringa to Ayodhyá.

[2] A similar legend has been adopted by the Buddhists. It is told not of Sringa, but of his grandfather Kásyapa, and is intended to enforce the sin of animal sacrifices. Kásyapa had acquired great religious merit by strictly keeping all the Buddhist precepts; and the Raja of Benares sent a nobleman to request him to come and offer a sacrifice in his behalf of all kinds of animals from the elephant downwards. Kásyapa refused, upon which the Raja sent his daughter in charge of the nobleman, to tempt the Rishi by offering him half the Raj and the hand of the Princess if he would comply. The scruples of the Rishi were overcome by the sight of the Raja's daughter, and he hastened to the place of sacrifice; but just as he lifted up his hand against the elephant, the affrighted beast set up a loud lamentation, in which all the other animals joined. This brought the Rishi to his senses, and he threw down the knife and fled back to the forest, and resumed his religious devotions. See Hardy's *Manual of Buddhism*, p. 50.

HISTORY OF INDIA. PART IV.

with him the Rishi Sringa and his wife Sántá.[3] Then the Maháraja approached Sringa with obeisance and adoration, and appointed him to be chief priest or Hotri in the Aswamedha.

Preparation for loosening the horse.

When the dewy season had passed away, and the spring had arrived, Sringa requested the Maháraja to collect all the things necessary for the loosening of the horse, and to bring together Vasishtha and Vámadeva, and all the most excellent of the Bráhmans. And when the Bráhmans had all assembled, the Maháraja paid them respectful homage, and spoke to them as follows:—"Although I have been ever most desirous of offspring, none has ever been granted me: I have therefore determined to perform an Aswamedha; and through the favour of the illustrious Rishi Sringa, and of you, O Bráhmans, I intend at this time to sacrifice the horse: In this thing, therefore, I pray you to be gracious to me, your humble dependant." At these words Vasishtha and the other Bráhmans cried out "Excellent! excellent!" And they did obeisance to the Maháraja and shouted forth his praise. Then the Maháraja said to Sumantra and his other Counsellors:—"Let abundance of all things necessary for the sacrifice be speedily provided by you under the direction of these Bráhmans: Let the horse be untied and suffered to go wherever he pleases, accompanied by a Bráhman."[4] And all the preparations were made as the Maháraja had commanded, and on the night of the full moon of the month Choitro, the horse was let loose for an entire year, and the preliminary ceremonies were all performed.

Respectful homage of the Maháraja to the Bráhmans.

The Maháraja's directions to his Counsellor.

Loosening of the horse.

Preparations for the sacrifice of the horse.

Now when the year was fully over, and the spring had again arrived, the horse was brought back to the city of

[3] It is stated in the Rámáyana that Sántá was only the adopted daughter of the Raja of Anga, and that her real father was Maháraja Dasaratha. But the passage must be regarded as an interpolation merely intended to associate the father of Ráma with the family of Kásyapa, of whom Sringa was the grandson. The adoption of daughters is foreign to Hindú ideas excepting perhaps in the case of dancing-girls.

[4] The statement that the horse was accompanied by a Bráhman, and not, as in the Aswamedha of Yudhishthira, by a warrior at the head of an army, is a curious instance of the Brahmanisation of the description of the ancient rite.

Ayodhyá, and all the preparations were completed for the sacrifice. Pavilions were set up for the accommodation of the Rajas, and hundreds of booths were constructed for the Bráhmans, and provisions were provided in great abundance. And amongst the Rajas that came to that sacrifice were the Raja of Mithilá, and the Raja of Kási, and the Raja of Anga, and the Raja of Magadhá, and the Raja of Sindhu, and the Raja of Saurashtra, and all the Rajas of the Dekhan. Thousands of Bráhmans were feasted by themselves, and the most delicious viands were served up to them on dishes of gold and silver by the Kshatriyas, who were superbly adorned with gems. And the place for the sacrifice was made ready on the northern bank of the river Sarayú. Twenty-one sacrificial posts were set up; and each post was twenty-one cubits high, and was overlaid with gold, and adorned with a cloth and fragrant flowers; and the birds and animals for the sacrifice were tied to the posts, and the horse was tied in like manner. And the sacrificial pits were prepared according to the ordinance, and they were eighteen in number and arranged in three rows, in the form of the bird Garura; and the pits that represented the wings of the bird were lined with bricks of gold. And the sacrificial fire was kindled by the Bráhmans, and the horse was led round the sacrificial fire and immolated with the sacred scimitar, whilst the Udgatri chaunted the Vedic hymns. And the first and second Ránís were placed by the side of the dead horse, and remained there all night. And the different portions of the horse were placed upon the fire according to the ordinance by the Hotri and the Brithi; and the Brithi repeated the appropriate mantras, whilst giving the flesh to the fire. Thus the Aswamedha was duly performed, and Maháraja Dasaratha gave large presents to all assembled; and he gave many provinces to the officiating Bráhmans, but they would not accept the land, because they were unable to rule, and were devoted to the study of the Vedas; and he gave them instead a million of cows, and a hundred million pieces of gold, and four hundred million pieces of silver.

Place of sacrifice.

Twenty-one posts.

The eighteen sacrificial pits.

The sacrifice.

The Ránís placed with the dead horse.

Presents of provinces refused by the Bráhmans.

Second sacrifice performed by Rishi Sringa.

Assembling of the gods.

After this Rishi Sringa said to the Mahárája:—"I will perform another sacrifice to secure you a son." And the Rishi proceeded to do as he had said. And there were collected all the gods, together with the Gandharvas, or celestial musicians, and the Siddhas, or saints who dwell in the sky, and the seven celestial Rishis; [and there came Brahma, the sovereign of the gods, together with Siva and Vishnu;[5]] and there also came Indra, the glorious one, surrounded by the Maruts. Then the Rishi began the sacrifice according to the ordinance, and supplicated the assembled deities that they would be pleased to grant four renowned sons to the Mahárája. And the gods replied:—"Be it so, O Bráhman, for thou art ever to be regarded by us as men regard a Raja." So saying, the gods received their shares of the oblation, and then disappeared with Indra at their head.

The gods receive their shares and disappear.

Now when Indra and the gods left the place of sacrifice, they proceeded to the heaven of Brahma, the lord of mankind and giver of blessings; and they went before Brahma with joined hands, and addressed him thus:—"O Brahma, that Rákshasa, named Rávana, to whom in your kindness you granted the blessing that he should be invulnerable to the gods and demons, has in his great pride oppressed all the universe, and deprived the gods of their shares of the sacrifices: O divine one, save us from Rávana, who fills the world with noise and tumult, and who has made the gods his slaves: By his power he has delivered his subjects, the Rákshasas, from the sway of Yama, and made Yama himself the cutter of grass for his steeds: He has compelled the Sun to shine mildly over his city of Lanká, and the Moon to be always at the full throughout his Raj: The six Seasons attend him as his servants, and appear whenever he commands them: Agni burns not in his presence; and Váyu blows gently in Lanká: He has compelled his brother Kuvera to quit Lanká, and take refuge in the Kailása mountain: No one can perform a sacrifice through fear of him: He is al-

The gods pray to Brahma for protection against Rávana.

Rávana, rendered invulnerable to the gods, had made the gods his slaves.

[5] This passage is so evidently an interpolation, that it is inserted in brackets. It will be seen presently that when the gods left the sacrifice they proceeded first to the heaven of Brahma and then to the heaven of Vishnu, in order to propitiate those deities.

ways oppressing the gods, the Bráhmans, and the cows: He has taken away several of our wives by force: Secured by your blessing, he treats us with disrespect and has no fear for us: O Brahma, we pray you to devise a scheme for delivering us from the oppression of this Rávana."[6]

Brahma conducts the gods to the abode of Vishnu in the sea of milk.

Brahma, hearing these words, conducted Indra and all the gods to the ocean of milk, the abode of Vishnu; and the gods propitiated Vishnu, whom they could not see, with loud praises. Then Vishnu the glorious, the lord of the world, arrayed in yellow raiment with ornaments of pure gold, riding upon Garura as the sun upon a cloud, appeared with his shell, chakra, mace, and lotos in his four hands; and his wife Lakshmí was sitting upon his knees. And all the gods fell prostrate before him, and choked with grief they thus addressed him with joined hands:—"O Vishnu, you who are able to remove the afflictions of those who are distressed, we entreat you to be our sanctuary: You are the lord of this universe, and you already know the reason of our coming; and we only give utterance to our wants that we may relieve ourselves from the burden which lies heavily upon our minds: Brahma has blessed Rávana the Rákshasa with a life which cannot be taken away by any celestial being; and Rávana in his pride has taken advantage of this blessing to oppress the gods, the Bráhmans, and the cows: Brahma is unable to recall the blessing which he has bestowed upon Rávana, and you are our only resource: Save us and your creation from the oppression of Rávana!"

Vishnu appears upon Garura with Lakshmí upon his knees.

Prayer of the gods to Vishnu against the oppression of Rávana.

Vishnu promises to overthrow Rávana by mortals and monkeys.

At this prayer, Vishnu smiled, and said:—"Be not terrified; I have already devised a scheme for delivering you from the oppression of Rávana: In his pride Rávana would not request Brahma to secure his life from men and monkeys, for he thought in his heart that they were beneath his notice: I will take advantage of this omission, and cause the destruction of Rávana without casting aside the blessing

[6] The ancient gods of the Vedas are here represented as supplicating Brahma, whose worship is of more modern origin, and thus virtually acknowledging his superiority. Yama is death; Agni is fire; Váyu is the wind; and Kuvera is wealth. The Asuras and Dánavas were aboriginal tribes, who were popularly regarded as demons.

which has been bestowed upon him by Brahma: I will go to Ayodhyá and divide myself into four parts, and take my birth as the four sons of Maháraja Dasaratha: Thus by becoming man I shall conquer in battle Rávana, the terror of the universe, who is invulnerable to the gods; go you meantime upon the earth, and assume the shape of monkeys and bears that you may render me service in my battle with Rávana."

The gods become incarnate as monkeys.

The gods, hearing those words, rejoiced exceedingly; and they sounded the praises of Vishnu, and went their way and did as he had commanded them.

Apparition of an emanation from Brahma.

Meanwhile the Rishi Sringa had performed the sacrifice for obtaining sons for Maháraja Dasaratha; and when he had finished, celestial music was sounded in the heavens, and a divine being came out of the fire arrayed in incomparable splendour; and he was as lofty as a mountain, as mighty as a tiger, as bright as the ardent flame, and his shoulders were like those of the lion. This wondrous being was clothed in red, and he wore ornaments on his hands, and on his neck was a chain of twenty-seven pearls, and his teeth resembled the stars in heaven. Thus glowing in brightness, this celestial being held in both hands, like a beloved wife, a large golden vessel filled with the divine páyasa, the rice and milk of the immortal gods.

Presents a cup of son-producing páyasa to the Maháraja.

This celestial being said to the Rishi Sringa, who was the Hotri at the sacrifice:—"O Sage, I am an emanation of Brahma come hither to you: Do you receive this vessel of páyasa from me, and present it to the Maháraja." The wise Rishi replied:—"Be pleased yourself to deliver this surprising vessel to the Maháraja." Then the emanation of Brahma spoke thus to Dasaratha:—"O Maháraja, I present to you this food of ambrosial taste; it is the fruit of the sacrifice: Receive, O Maháraja, this páyasa prepared by the gods which ensures prosperity: Let it be eaten by your beautiful consorts, and from them you will then obtain the sons for whom you have performed the sacrifice." And the Maháraja bowed his head, and received the golden vessel full of celestial food which had been given by the gods; and

Joy of the Maháraja.

he rejoiced like a poor man who has obtained wealth; and the emanation of Brahma became invisible to mortal eye.

Joy of the Ránís on sharing the páyasa amongst them.

The apartments of the ladies of the Maháraja were now illumined with joy, as the atmosphere is illumined by the bright autumnal moon; and the Maháraja entered therein with the son-producing páyasa, and he gave the half to Kausalyá and the other half to Kaikeyí; but when Sumitrá came forward, the Maháraja requested his two elder Ránís to give her a portion of their own shares. And Kausalyá and Kaikeyí each divided her portion with Sumitrá, so that whilst they each had one quarter of the páyasa, Sumitrá had two quarters. And when the Ránís had eaten of the sacrificial food, they each one conceived; and the Maháraja, beholding his wives about to become mothers, enjoyed a pleasure of mind equal to that of Vishnu when adored by Indra and the sages. After this the Ránís bore four sons; Kausalyá gave birth to Ráma, and Kaikeyí to Bharata; and Sumitrá having received two quarters of the páyasa food gave birth to two sons; from the quarter which she received from Kausalyá she gave birth to Lakshmana, who became the ever faithful friend of Ráma; and from the quarter which she received from Kaikeyí she gave birth to Satrughna, who became the ever faithful friend of Bharata. And on the birth of these four sons there were great rejoicings in the city of Ayodhyá amongst all ranks of people, and the streets were filled with dancers and musicians, and decked out with flowers and banners.

The Ránís conceive.

Birth of four sons, viz.: Ráma, Bharata, Lakshmana, Satrughna.

Public rejoicings.

Naming of the four Princes after eleven days.

Meanings of the names.

Eleven days after the birth of the four sons, the priest Vaśishtha performed the ceremony of giving them names. To the son of Kausalyá he gave the name of Ráma, which signifies "the delight of the people;" to the son of Kaikeyí he gave the name of Bharata, which signifies "filling the world with his name;" and of the two sons of Sumitrá he named the elder Lakshmana, which signifies "beautiful to behold," and he named the younger Satrughna, which signifies "the destroyer of his enemies." When the names had been thus given, the Maháraja feasted the Bráhmans, and all the citizens of Ayodhyá, and all the

HISTORY OF INDIA. PART IV.

people of the Raj of Kosala; and he gave abundance of jewels to the Bráhmans.

Review of the foregoing description of the Aswamedha.

The foregoing description of the Aswamedha comprises two distinct narratives of two different sacrifices, namely :—

Two sacrifices involved.

1st, The horse sacrifice.

2nd, The homa and páyasa.

The offering of homa is not indeed explicitly stated; but still it seems that the second sacrifice of Sringa involved no slaying of animals, but was simply an offering of oblations to the Vedic deities.

Real character of the sacrifice of the horse.

The sacrifice of the horse can be easily realized. The posts to which the birds and animals are tied, and the pits in which the meat is cooked, are perfectly intelligible, and in general conformity with the arrangements made in the Aswamedha of Yudhishthira. The object of the sacrifice, however, was not an assertion of sovereignty, but the birth of sons; and one of the rites for the attainment of this object was that the Ránís should pass the night with the dead body of the horse. Of this disgusting ceremony there is no reference whatever in the Rig-Veda;[7] and it is difficult to avoid the suspicion that the rite is a pure invention of the Brahmanical author intended to disguise the real meaning of the Aswamedha. At the second sacrifice, or offering of the homa, the object was attained by giving a portion of sacred food, known as páyasa, and consisting of rice and milk. The idea of food is here involved; of stimulating food which would promote

Strange rite of the Ránís and the dead horse.

Probably a later Brahmanical invention.

Flesh of the horse probably believed to stimulate conception.

[7] See Wilson's remarks in the introduction to his second volume of translations of the Rig-Veda. Some revolting impurities appear to have been connected with the rite which need not be particularized.

conception. Now the flesh of the horse was probably regarded as highly stimulating; and the sacrifice of a horse for the purpose of procuring such stimulating food for the Ránís appears to be equally probable. But such a belief would be very obnoxious to the later Bráhmans, who were opposed to the slaughter of animals; and hence the páyasa was substituted, a divine food which is still prepared and cooked at Brahmanical sacrifices.

Substitution of the páyasa for horse-flesh.

The narrative of the offering of homa is a very remarkable one. It exhibits the peculiar genius of Brahmanism in transmuting a mortal hero into the Supreme Being, with the ultimate object of converting his history into a vehicle for the promulgation of Brahmanical views. It is an attempt to represent the four sons of Dasaratha, and especially Ráma, as incarnations of Vishnu; to connect those incarnations with the offering of homa; and to exhibit the superior efficacy of the páyasa, or sacred food. The belief in the possibility of a direct incarnation of Deity in the womb of a woman is an important article of faith in many religions, and indeed is the foundation of Christianity itself. But the process by which that incarnation is effected has always been treated as a mystery or miracle. In the Rámáyana it is surrounded by circumstances which are well calculated to impress a simple and childlike people. The object of the incarnation is fully explained, whilst the incarnation itself is treated with singular delicacy. A terrible Rákshasa named Rávana devotes many years to the performance of religious austerities; and by the power of those austerities he secures the favour of Brahma, who thereupon, at his request, renders him invulnerable to gods and demons. Rá-

Extraordinary narrative of the offering of homa representing Ráma as an incarnation of Vishnu.

Object and character of the incarnation.

Legend of Rávana, the great Rákshasa Raja.

vana now considers himself to be immortal; the gods and demons are unable to harm him; and men and beasts are so much beneath his notice, that he has not stooped to pray for immunity from their attacks. Accordingly, he oppresses the gods; not indeed the great Brahmanical gods, Brahma, Vishnu, and Siva, but the ancient gods of the Rig-Veda, whom he compels to do as he pleases. Death is not allowed to afflict his subjects the Rákshasas; the burning Sun is required to shine mildly over his city; the Moon is obliged to be always at the full throughout his Raj; the Seasons come and go at his command; Fire burns not in his presence; and the Wind is forced to blow gently. Accordingly the gods complain to Brahma, who acknowledges the superiority of Vishnu, by conducting them into the presence of that deity; and since Rávana has not been rendered invulnerable to men and animals, Vishnu resolves to become incarnate as the four sons of Dasaratha, and especially as Ráma; and the gods descend on earth and beget monkeys and bears in order that their progeny may be ultimately formed into an army, and effect the destruction of Rávana under the leadership of Ráma.

Rávana oppresses the Vedic deities.

Complaint of the Vedic gods, an acknowledgment of their inferiority to Brahma, and of the inferiority of Brahma to Vishnu.

Vishnu having thus granted the prayer of the gods, takes advantage of the sacrifice to become incarnate. An emanation of Brahma appears out of the sacrificial fire and presents the páyasa; and the Ránís conceive by merely eating the sacred food; a process which has the merit of preserving decency, although somewhat at variance with physiological laws. Henceforth the great difficulty of the author of the Rámáyana, and his subsequent editors, has

Vishnu becomes incarnate through the agency of páyasa.

been to bring the life and character of Ráma into harmony with his assumed incarnation.[8]

[8] The reconciliation of the divine character of Ráma with that of his mortal career upon earth, appears to have been a task of considerable difficulty. Certainly it has not always been effected by Válmíki, the author of the larger Rámáyana, which forms the text of the present paraphrase. There is, however, a remarkable abridgment of the story, the authorship of which is attributed to the mythical Vyása, in which the whole has been spiritualized, and every conflicting incident either explained away or omitted, whilst the greatest possible stress has been laid upon the character of Ráma as a saviour and deliverer. This work is entitled the Adhyátma Rámáyana, and may be regarded as the testament of the Vaishnavas, or worshippers of Vishnu. It is indeed chiefly valuable from a religious point of view; but still it may be convenient to exhibit occasionally some of its spiritualizations in connection with the traditional incidents to which they refer. The narrative is put into the mouth of the god Siva, who is supposed to be relating the Rámáyana to his wife Párvatí.

The following extracts exhibit the religious ideas which are popularly associated in the present day with the birth of Ráma :—

"Hear now, O Párvatí! an account of the sacrifice celebrated by Raja Dasaratha. The gods attended in their proper persons, and sitting in a row, took with their own hands their respective shares. The Tirthas, or places of pilgrimage, attended in person. There was such a crowd the earth trembled; the shock was so great that no one could withstand it. So much homa was thrown into the fire that at first it appeared inauspicious. When the sacrifice was completed, the god of Fire (Agni) appeared bearing in each hand a cup of rice and milk. Agni said to Dasaratha :—'Take this rice and milk, O Raja! from me: go into thy female apartments and give it to thy wives; the fruit of it is great, of its effect there cannot be a doubt.' The god of Fire then vanished. Vasishtha and Sringa then went into the female apartments, and gave a portion to the three wives Kausalyá, Kaikeyí, and Sumitrá. All three became pregnant, and when Vishnu entered into the body of Kausalyá, Brahma and the gods mounting their cars, stood on the heavens above the city of Ayodhyá, and repeated numberless praises to Ráma; and then returned to their own abodes in a transport of joy. At a most auspicious hour Ráma was born of Kausalyá. His body was like a cloud; on his head was a crown set with jewels; his four arms were extended; in one hand he held the holy shell, in another the circle, in the third the war mace, and in the last the lotos. In his ears were rings in the form of a crocodile; he had a string of rubies and Vaijayanti seeds on his neck; his forehead was ornamented with a stripe of saffron and sandal wood. A yellow cloth was girded round his loins, a veil of brocade covered his shoulders; his two locks of hair hanging down on his cheeks were like the waving spikenard. He was covered from head to foot with ornaments of gold, jewels, and pearls. The beauty of his person appeared with resplendent grace; his eyes were like the lotos. The figure of Lakshmana sat on his left hand, the form of the sage Bhrigu on his right. His lips were as red as the rubies of Badakshan. At his feet was the form of the lotos, because the whole world finds an asylum at his feet. A million suns and moons would hide their diminished heads before the light of his countenance. In this form he appeared before his mother Kausalyá, who knew him to be the godhead. With joined hands

she bowed down and began to praise and adore him. (Here follows a prayer of Kausalyá to the infant deity, concluding with the following words) :—

"'Thou, O Lord! hast now four arms, be pleased to assume the shape of an infant that I may nourish thee with maternal affection, my happiness will then be perfect.'

"Ráma, highly pleased, explained to his mother the cause of his assuming a human form, and then concealed his four-armed shape, and assumed the form of a new-born infant, and began to cry aloud. Raja Dasaratha heard the sound, and his joy was indescribable. He distributed innumerable treasures in alms. Vasishtha also caused him to perform such ceremonies as were necessary on this occasion. The rejoicings in the city of Ayodhyá were such as it is impossible to describe. On every gate kettledrums in thousands sounded the joyful tidings. The inhabitants placed the boughs of the mango-tree at their doors; they fixed flags and ensigns of brocade and embroidery on the tops of their houses. The sprightly dancers danced in every street; the shop-keepers went about uttering praises and thanksgivings; the eunuchs performed various dances and received great rewards.

"Brahma and the gods received intelligence of the birth of Ráma with joy unbounded. They stood on the heavens above Ayodhyá, and showering down Parijata flowers, they exclaimed with a loud voice,—'May thy prosperity endure for ever.' After giving praise to him they made obeisance and retired to their own abodes."

CHAPTER III.

THE CHILDHOOD OF RÁMA.

THE narrative of the Aswamedha of Dasaratha and subsequent birth of his four sons, is followed by an interesting account of the early years of Ráma, from the days when he lay a helpless infant upon his mother's knee, until the time when his education was completed, and his marriage was contemplated. This account is valuable on two grounds. First it exhibits that love of children and sympathy with childhood, which are almost peculiar to Hindú bards; and which find expression, not so much in conceptions of a boy-saint or infant deity, as in genuine pictures of infants and children drawn from a close observation of real life. Secondly it exhibits the domestic life of the Hindús in a succession of scenes representing every stage in the progress of the child from infancy to manhood; and Ráma appears in every character with a downright realism which may seem somewhat puerile to men of sterner mould, but which has endeared him to the hearts of Hindú mothers for countless generations. Every scene is perfect. Ráma trying to put his toe into his mouth; Ráma laughing and trotting away when called by his parents; Ráma snatching a morsel out of his father's hand and eating it with a laugh; Ráma pointing out

Life of Ráma from infancy to manhood.

Hindú love of children.

Realism in the descriptions of domestic life.

Progressive incidents in the infancy, childhood, and boyhood of Ráma.

his eyes, nose, mouth, and ears, when called upon by his mother; Ráma crying for the moon; Ráma beginning to say "pa" and "ma;" Ráma sitting on his father's knee in the Council-hall; Ráma and the other little boys making clay images and worshipping them after the manner of the family Bráhman; Ráma going to school with his brothers and learning his letters; Ráma and his brethren dressed in different coloured frocks, and carrying their satchels and ink bottles; Ráma's progress in grammar, science, and accomplishments; Ráma examined in his proficiency by the Maháraja in the Council-hall; Ráma playing in mock battles and at being Maháraja; Ráma invested with the sacred thread; and Ráma perfectly educated, and arrived at a marriageable age;—all these are described with a natural simplicity, of which perhaps no parallel can be found in European literature.[1]

Narrative in the Rámáyana.

The story of Ráma's childhood may now be related as follows:—

Description of the four babies during the first year of infancy.

Now the four infant sons of the Maháraja were exceedingly beautiful, and the three Ránís took very great delight in nursing their respective children. And Ráma, more than all the others, was a very lovely babe, and as he slept in a white cot he appeared like a blue lotos floating upon the pure water of the Ganges; and sometimes he would lift up his foot and put his toe into his mouth, as if to taste what it was in his toe which drew so much reverence from all who

[1] The incidents of Ráma's early life are probably a later interpolation. They are not to be found in the Bengal edition of the Rámáyana, but only in what is called the North-West recension. Accordingly, they are not reproduced either in Carey's English version, or in the French translation of M. Fauche, or in the Italian translation of Gorresco. Moreover, Professor Williams seems to make no allusion to this portion of the narrative in his useful analysis of the Rámáyana. In the Adhyátma Rámáyana there is some allusion to the youthful sports of Ráma, but they have evidently been borrowed from the life of Krishna.

beheld him. When Maháraja Dasáratha, accompanied by the priest Vasishtha, went to see his infant sons, the priest pointed to Ráma, and said:—"O Maháraja, I perceive from the marks on Ráma that he is no ordinary child; and I am nearly assured that he is an incarnation of Vishnu: Behold his beautiful colour, like green grass, his fine hair glossy and curled, his large head and high forehead, his brow radiant with the signs of royalty, his face smiling like the full moon, his large dark eyes, his lips red as the Bimba fruit, his nose like that of the green parrot, his neck like that of a shell, his long hands and red palms bearing the marks of the chakra, lotos, and circle on the tips of his fingers, his wide breast, his legs resembling plantain trees, his feet red as the rising sun, bearing the marks of the shell, the chakra, the mace, and the lotos: Behold all these, and you will see that he is full of marks belonging to Vishnu."

Ráma identified by the priest Vasishtha as an incarnation of Vishnu.

Distinguishing marks.

When the four little boys were sufficiently grown to be able to run about, they were the delight of their mothers and of the Máháraja. Sometimes the Maháraja would call Ráma, and Ráma would turn his back and laugh and run away; and if his mother Kausalyá or his father the Maháraja ran after him, he would run all the faster, and afterwards would come back to them of his own accord. Sometimes Ráma would snatch a morsel of his father's food, and going to a distance from him, he would eat it up and laugh at the Maháraja all the while. Sometimes his mother would ask him to point out his eyes, nose, mouth, ears, or other parts of his body, and he would do so by touching those parts with his forefinger. Sometimes the women of other households would come to the palace, and ask Ráma who his mother was; and then he would smile and run to his mother and sit upon her lap. And it so happened that one evening, whilst the Rání Kausalyá was nursing Ráma in the inner court of the palace, the full moon arose in the east in all its splendour, and Ráma felt a very strong desire to have the beautiful moon to play with as a toy. And he put out both his little hands towards the moon, in order to obtain it; but his mother could not understand what it was that he wanted, and thereupon he tried to

Ráma and his brethren begin to run about.

Anecdotes of Ráma.

Story of Ráma crying for the moon and refusing to be comforted.

beat her. And Kausalyá asked him many times what he wished to have, and he continued to point to the moon, so that at last she came to understand what it was that he wanted, and she then spoke to him in mild terms as follows:—"Do not desire, O my child, to possess the moon, because it is thousands of miles off, and it is not a plaything for children, and no child ever got it: If you wish I will bring you some jewels that are brighter than the moon, and you can play with them." So saying she brought some beautiful jewels, and placed them before the little boy; but Ráma threw them away in anger, and began to cry until his eyes were red and swollen with weeping. Now by this time a number of women were gathered around him, but no one could console him. One said:—"Perchance he is hungry;" and Kausalyá tried to give him suck, but this he utterly refused to take. Another woman said:—"Perchance he is sleepy;" and she took him in her lap and sung the lullaby, but she could not quiet him, and he still continued to cry. Then one of the women said:—"The goddess Sustí has become unpropitious, and must be propitiated with offerings of curds, plantains, and fried paddy." Another said:—"A ghost is troubling him; so send for a man who can repeat a mantra and drive the ghost out." But though all these means were tried they were all of no effect, and Ráma was still as unpacified as before. So the Rání Kausalyá sent for the Maháraja, and when the Maháraja heard that Ráma was ill he went to him immediately, and tried his utmost to console the child; but he could do no more than those who had tried before him, and Ráma continued to cry and would not be comforted. Then the Maháraja sent for his chief Counsellor and told him all that had taken place; and when Sumantra heard that Ráma was crying for the moon, he desired those about him to bring a mirror. So a mirror was brought and placed in the hands of Ráma; and when Ráma saw the image of the moon in the mirror, he was fully satisfied, and left off weeping, and was soon as merry as before, and the whole family were at ease.

Kausalyá fails to comfort him.

The women of the palace fail.

The Maháraja tries and fails.

Sumantra, the chief Counsellor, pacifies Ráma with a mirror.

When Ráma and his brethren had reached their second

year, they could not say the words "peeta" or "father," or "mata" or "mother," and therefore they called their parents "pa" and "ma." And if any one asked Ráma what his name was, he would answer "Ama," for he could not pronounce the letter "R." Sometimes the three mothers would sit together and make their four sons dance in a circle, whilst they clapped their hands. Sometimes the Maháraja would tell Ráma to bring him his sandals, and Ráma would take up the Maháraja's sandals with both his hands, and carry them to his father, to the great delight of all who saw him. At other times the Maháraja would take Ráma into the Council-hall, and keep the little boy on his knee during the Council; and Ráma listened to all that was going on, and as he sat upon his father's knee, he appeared as beautiful as a new rain-cloud when seated on the golden mountain of Sumaru. Meantime his mother the Ráni would be impatient at his absence, and would send her maid servant every minute to the Council to bring away Ráma; for a moment's absence from her son appeared like an age in her eyes.

Second year of infancy: Ráma and his brethren begin to talk.

Anecdotes of Ráma.

When the sons of Dasaratha were in their third year, the Maháraja performed the ceremony of piercing their ears; and the rite was celebrated with great magnificence. After this the brethren began to play with other little boys of their own age. They made images of clay, and offered clay offerings to the images, after the manner that they had seen the priest of their father offer up sacrifices to the gods in behalf of the household. They would first entreat the images to eat the offerings which they offered, and then when the images did not move they would put the offerings into their mouths; and when the images would not eat the offerings, they were very angry and broke up the images into pieces. Sometimes Ráma would see his own reflection in a crystal pillar, and he would say to his mother Kausalyá:—"A second Ráma is come, so keep him here that I may play with him." But seeing in like manner the reflection of his own mother, he would say:—"Why have you left me and gone to the other Ráma: Do not take him in your lap!"

Third year, ceremony of piercing their ears.

Sports of Ráma and his brethren with other boys.

And with these words he would take hold of her cloth and pull her away.

At five years of age Ráma and his brethren are educated by Vasishtha.

When Ráma and his brethren were five years of age they commenced their education according to the rule. Vasishtha was appointed to be their preceptor, and he initiated them in their studies in the accustomed form.

Rites of initiation.

He first worshipped the divine Saraswatí, the goddess of all learning, and afterwards directed the four brethren to make offerings of flowers and leaves of bale fruit to the goddess. He then took a chalk stone, and drew the vowels upon the floor, and directed the boys to run over each letter three times; and when this lesson was over, the Maháraja gave many rich presents to Vasishtha, and from that time they went every day to the house of Vasishtha, to receive his instructions.

Dress of the four boys.

And the four lads were dressed by their mothers in clothes of different colours; and Ráma was dressed in yellow, Lakshmana in purple, and Bhárata and Satrughna in green and red.

Daily attendance at school.

And they had hundreds of servants at their command, but still each one carried his ink bottle in his right hand, and over his left shoulder was his satchel containing books, reeds, and white palm leaves. In this manner they went out of the palace every morning, and proceeded with other school-boys to the house of their preceptor; and sometimes when a boy strayed away from school without the leave of his preceptor, they were commanded by Vasishtha to go out into the street and bring the truant in.

Progress in their studies.

Alphabet.

And when they knew all the vowels, they were taught all the other letters of the alphabet; and when they knew these also, they began to teach the smaller boys under the direction of Vasishtha. And Ráma never disobyeed his preceptor, nor did aught that would excite his displeasure.

Grammar.

And when he had learnt all his letters, he began to read the grammar; and in a short time he learnt eighteen languages, as well as the arts of singing, playing on musical instruments, dancing, and painting, and every one of the sciences.

Arts and sciences.

Examinations in the Council-hall.

And at certain times the Maháraja would send for his sons, and examine them in the Council-hall before his Council; and the boys always acquitted themselves to the admiration of all present, and the Ministers and

Chieftains expressed their great surprise at the proficiency of the sons of the Maháraja.

When the four brethren had passed out of their childhood, they were exercised in the use of arms and in military and royal games. At times, having obtained the permission of Vasishtha, they would go out and play at hide-and-seek; or they would form themselves into two parties, and engage in a mock combat; and it was agreed amongst them that the party who was defeated should carry the victor upon his shoulders for a hundred cubits; and when Ráma was defeated he was not excused on account of his being the son of a Maháraja, but he was obliged to carry his victor like any other boy. Sometimes, however, Ráma would play at being the Maháraja; and some of his play-fellows would be his Ministers, and others his subjects, and some would hold the umbrella of royalty over his head, whilst others fanned him with the chámara. Then some would bring offenders before him, and submit their complaints for his decision; and Ráma would listen to the whole of the case, and at the end he would deliver his judgment, and would award appropriate punishment to the guilty party.

Exercises in arms and games.

Hide-and-seek and mock battles.

Ráma's play at being Maháraja, with playfellows for Ministers.

Thus passed away the lives of Ráma and his brethren, until the time drew nigh when each one was to be invested with the sacred thread. Accordingly their heads were shaved by the barber, and they were clothed in red silk; and they went to the house of their preceptor Vasishtha, and were invested with the sacred string which was made of the skin of the antelope. Vasishtha then taught them the holy Gayatri; and throughout that day they became Brahmachárís according to the ordinance, and each one carried his bag amongst his kinsmen to receive alms. First, Ráma went to his mother Kausalyá, and she gave him the dole of rice, and with it many precious jewels; and in this manner all the brethren went round and received alms and rich gifts from all present, from the subjects of the Maháraja, as well as from the Ministers, Chieftains, and ladies; and all the riches they received they gave to their preceptor Vasishtha.

Investiture with the sacred thread, and the attendant rites.

Ráma and his brethren Brahmacháris for the day.

After the four sons of Dasaratha had been thus invested

Study the Vedas.

HISTORY OF INDIA. PART IV.

with the sacred thread, they began to learn the Vedas; and in due time they grew up like four heroes, and were possessed of every virtue and every accomplishment. They were bright as the moon, skilful in archery, expert in mounting the elephant, the horse, and the chariot; and they were devoted to all the wishes of their parents, and became deeply versed in the Vedas. But Ráma excelled all his brethren, and was as conspicuous amongst them as a flag upon a tower; and whilst all grew up in loving attachment to each other, Lakshmana was the special companion of Ráma, and rejoiced to perform whatever was pleasing to him.

Virtues and accomplishments of the four Princes.

Superiority of Ráma.

Now it happened one day that Ráma was shooting with a bow that belonged to a companion of his, and he bent the bow with so much strength that it broke in two pieces. And his companion said to him:—"You have strength enough to break my bow, but if you would manifest your full might, you should go to the city of Mithilá, and break the great bow of the god Siva, which is preserved in the household of Raja Janaka." And Ráma answered:—"Tell me the story of the bow." Then his companion said:—"Janaka, Raja of Mithilá, has a beautiful daughter named Sítá, or the 'white one,' and he has vowed to give her in marriage to that man who can break the great bow, which belonged in former times to the god Siva, and which the Raja worships every day with flowers and incense." And Ráma pondered over these words in his heart, but he said nothing, for the time had not yet come.

Legend of the great bow of Siva preserved by Janaka, Raja of Mithilá.

The foregoing narrative of the childhood of Ráma is so plain and simple as to require but little comment. The picture of the dark-coloured babe, lying in his white cot like a blue lotos floating upon the pure water of the Ganges, is perhaps somewhat foreign to European ideas accustomed to the pink complexion of western babies. Moreover the picture is somewhat marred by the description of the marks from which Vasishtha the priest is supposed to

Review of the foregoing narrative of Ráma's early life.

The blue-coloured babe.

have identified the infant as an incarnation of Vishnu. The story of Ráma crying for the moon is peculiarly Hindú. The inability of the mother to console the little boy, and the suggestions of the other women, are precisely the every-day occurrences in the houses of Hindús. When a child of tender years is fractious, and refuses to eat or to sleep, the women immediately begin to propitiate the goddess Sustí; a primitive household deity who finds no place in the Vedas, but who is largely worshipped by the females of Hindústan. If the child still refuses to be comforted, a Bráhman is sent for to exorcise him with mantras. Lastly, if these resources fail the husband is sent for to bring about a pacification. In the present instance the story turns upon the wisdom of the Chief Counsellor in sending for a mirror, and satisfying the child with a reflection of the moon. This idea again is essentially Hindú. No one but a Hindú, with his passionate fondness for children, and his traditions of patriarchal life, would conceive the idea of a sovereign sending for his Prime Minister to pacify a fractious child. In like manner the scene in which the little boys make clay images and propitiate them with clay offerings, in the same way that they had seen the family Bráhman propitiate the household gods, could only take place in an Indian household. But yet the realism of Hindú childhood in trying to make the idols eat the offerings, is paralleled by European children, who will give oats to a wooden horse, or bread and butter to a stuffed bird; and it is thus exquisitely true to human nature, whilst furnishing a significant travestie of the original ceremonial.

The marks of Vishnu.

Incidents connected with Ráma's crying for the moon common to modern Hindú life.

Worship of Sustí.

Exorcising.

Hindú idea of the Chief Counsellor being called in to quiet Ráma.

Realism of Hindú childhood as displayed towards the clay images.

The education of Ráma, which commenced

Life of Ráma a type of the modern Hindú.

according to rule in the fifth year of his age, is the exact routine pursued by Hindú preceptors; and the scenes enacted in Vasishtha's school-room are precisely such as still take place in purely Hindú schools.[2] So, too, the investiture with the sacred thread is celebrated in the present day, in the case of all Bráhmans and Kshatriyas, precisely as it is described in the Rámáyana; the boys becoming Bramacháris or religious mendicants for the day,[3] and carrying about bags in which they receive presents from their relatives and friends. The remaining details call for no remark, the incidents described in the narrative being sufficiently clear to explain themselves.

Custom of becoming Brahmacháris at the investiture with the thread.

[2] The worship of Saraswatí by Hindú students is dying away in English schools, and books are no longer regarded as sacred things; probably because the printed English volumes are treated as altogether different from the ancient manuscripts. Once a year there is a festival to the goddess Saraswatí, on which day most school-boys enjoy a holiday, for every book in the house should be laid before the image of the goddess and remain there for the day. English books, however, are not always offered, especially if the parents are anxious for their children's progress in education; but idle school-boys will on such occasions rise early in the morning and place all their books, English included, before the goddess; after which they are perfectly safe, as no one would be profane enough to remove the volumes which have been once offered.

[3] The Brahmachárí is a religious pupil who studies the Vedas, who also collects alms for his own subsistence, and for that of his master or Guru. In the present instance the Guru was Vasishtha.

CHAPTER IV.

WARS WITH THE RÁKSHASAS.

THE story of Ráma's boyhood is naturally followed by the story of his marriage; but an interval occurs during which he appears to have acted as the protector of the Bráhmans against the Rákshasas, or aborigines of the country, who seem to have persecuted the Bráhmans by polluting their sacrifices.

Interval between Ráma's boyhood and marriage employed against the Rákshasas.

It has already been seen that a considerable confusion exists respecting the aboriginal inhabitants of India. They are alluded to under different names, such as Rákshasas, Asuras, Daityas, and Dánavas. Sometimes they are popularly regarded as ghosts or demons. At other times they are represented as forming different families, who have descended from Bráhman sages, and have acquired supernatural weapons or supernatural powers by the worship of Brahma. Thus the terrible Rávana is said to have been the grandson of the sage Pulastya, who was the son of Brahma; and to have obtained invulnerability as regards gods and demons as a reward for his severe worship of Brahma. It seems probable that originally the names Rákshasa, Asura, Daítya, and Dánava were applied with some strictness to different tribes of aborigines, but that at a subsequent period the names were indiscriminately applied to the

Confusion respecting the aboriginal inhabitants of India.

Different appellations.

Regarded as ghosts or demons.

Represented as descendants from Bráhman sages, and as worshippers of Brahma.

HISTORY OF INDIA. PART IV.

aborigines in general. As, however, the popular belief attributed supernatural powers to the aboriginal inhabitants, the Bráhmans took care that those powers should be derived from the faithful worship of Brahma; although it is exceedingly improbable that the aborigines had any knowledge of Brahma, excepting that which they may have subsequently derived from the teachings of the Bráhmans.

Origin of the opposition of the Rákshasas to the Bráhmans, and to the Brahmanical sacrifices.

The origin of the opposition of the Rákshasas to the Bráhmans is no doubt to be referred to the natural opposition of the people of the country to the advancing tide of Aryan invasion. The opposition to the Brahmanical sacrifices seems to be more obscure, but may perhaps be ascribed to the superstitious fears of a race of savages at finding their country overrun by powerful invaders, whose irresistible might may have been derived from the rites in question.

Brahmanical hermitages.

The establishment of Brahmanical hermitages in the midst of an aboriginal population, also opens up a curious field of inquiry, but must be reserved for future discussion.

Narrative in the Rámáyana of Ráma's expedition against the Rákshasas.

The narrative of Ráma's expedition against the Rákshasas and of the circumstances which led to it, may now be related as follows:—

Anxiety of the Maháraja respecting the marriage of his four sons.

Visit of Viswámitra.

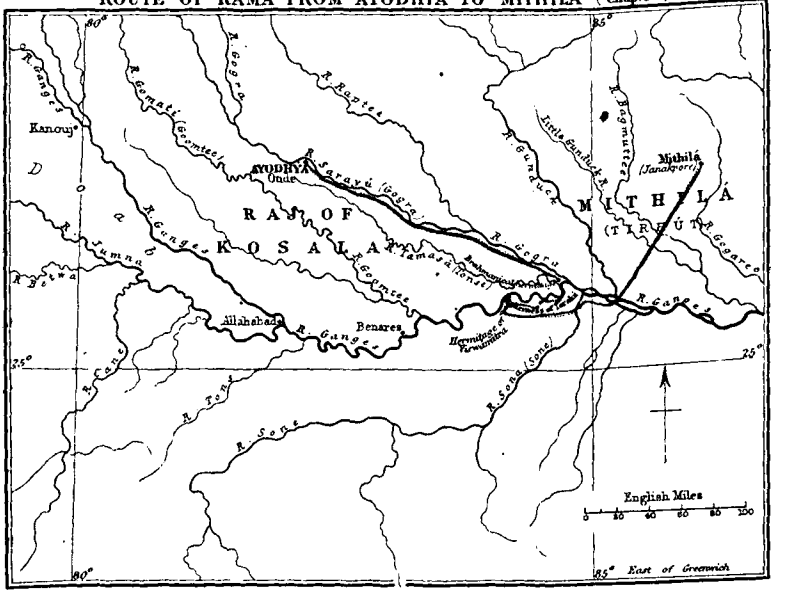
When Ráma and his brethren were approaching their sixteenth year, the Maháraja became very anxious respecting their marriage. It so happened that one day when he was discussing the subject with his Counsellors in the Council-hall, the great sage Viswámitra arrived at the gate of the palace, and desired the door-keeper to go within and tell the Maháraja that Viswámitra the son of Gádhi, was there.

Reverential reception of Viswámitra by the Maháraja.

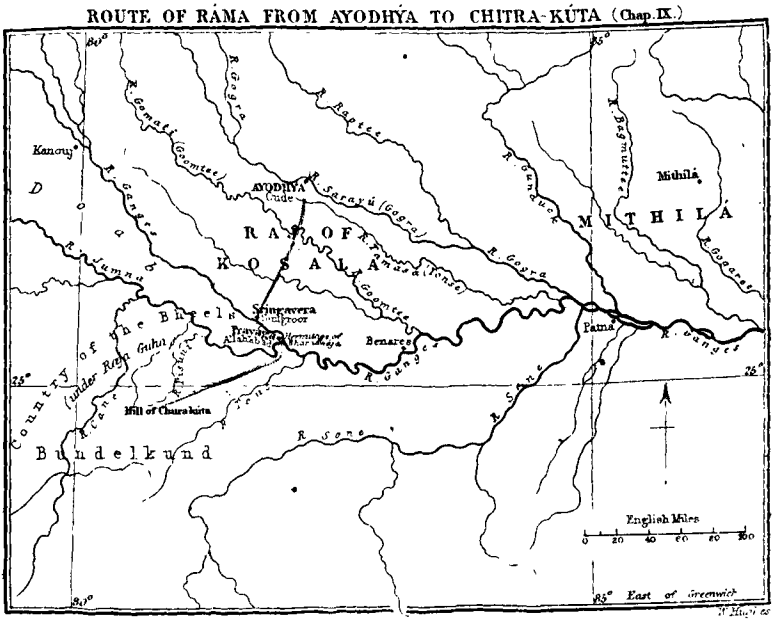
When the Maháraja received the message, he rose up with his two priests, and went out to meet the sage, rejoicing as Indra at the coming of Brahma; and he re-

ROUTE OF RÁMA FROM AYODHÝA TO MITHILÁ (Chap. IV.)

To face p. 37



ROUTE OF RÁMA FROM AYODHÝA TO CHITRA-KÚTA (Chap. IX.)



London N Trubner & Co 60 Paternoster Row

ceived Vaswámitra with every honour, and presented him with the argha, and said respectfully:—"Your coming, O great sage, is as grateful to me as amrita, as the fall of rain in the proper season, as the birth of a son to a childless father, as the recovery of lost treasure, as the dawning of a mighty joy! Tell me, I pray you, what important request you have to make, and I shall grant it with great delight."

The Maháraja volunteers to grant his request.

Now Viswámitra was a very illustrious sage, for in former times he had been a Kshatriya and a great warrior; but after practising many religious austerities in the Himálaya mountain he had become a Bráhman. His hermitage was situated on the southern bank of the Ganges river; and many other Bráhman sages dwelt there likewise, and passed their days in devotion and sacrifice. And Viswámitra said to the Maháraja:—"O Raja of Rajas, our sacrifices are spoiled by the Rákshasas, who pour blood and flesh upon the homa; and they are commanded by two chieftains, named Márícha and Suvahu, who have been commissioned by Raja Rávana to destroy all the sacrifices of the Bráhmans: I therefore pray you to suffer your son Ráma to return with me to my hermitage, for he is young, great, and valiant, and the Rákshasas will never be able to stand against him." At these words the Maháraja was exceedingly sorrowful, and he said:—"My son Ráma has not yet reached his sixteenth year: I will therefore send a great army with you, but I cannot give up Ráma." Then Viswámitra was in great wrath, and as fierce as a sacrificial fire when fed with abundance of ghee; and the whole earth was moved, and even the gods were in great fear. And he said:—"O Maháraja, you have given me your promise, and you cannot depart from your word: Make haste then, and send Ráma, and I will so protect him that he shall never be overcome by the Rákshasas." So the Maháraja sent for Ráma and Lakshmana, and delivered them up to the sage; and the two Princes took leave of their parents, and made ready to go with Viswámitra to the place of his abode.[1]

Viswámitra originally a Kshatriya.

Requests the Maháraja to send Ráma to protect his Brahmanical settlement against the Rákshasas.

Sorrow of the Maháraja.

Viswámitra claims the fulfilment of the Maháraja's promise.

Ráma and Lakshmana permitted to accompany Viswámitra.

[1] The following extract from the Adhyátma Rámáyana explains the circumstances which induced the Maháraja to part with Ráma in a somewhat different

Departure of the three for the hermitage of Viswámitra.

Poetical description of autumn.

Now it so happened that as the three went out of the city it was the beautiful season of autumn; and the pure sky was free from clouds, as the pure mind of the devotee is free from all passions; and the rains were over, and the high winds had ceased, and the breezes were blowing gently at the approach of the cold season, as the riotous and tumultuous assume a gentler aspect when they enter the company of wise men. The water in every river, lake, and pond was pure and transparent; and the beauty of the clear wave was increased by the presence of the full-blown lotos, as the beauty of a pure mind becomes increased by faith in God. Thus Ráma and Lakshmana, and the sage Viswámitra, journeyed along the south bank of the river Sarayú, towards the spot where that river joins its waters with those of the Ganges; and on their way they beheld the vast fields of rice bending down with the weight of the grain, like a modest man bending his head at the recital of his own praises. And

Viswámitra acts as Guru.

Viswámitra instructed Ráma on the way, and performed all the duties of a Guru. And when evening was come they slept on grass beds by the side of the river Sarayú.

Journey to the Brahmanical settlement at the junction of the Sarayú and Ganges.

Now when the light of morning began to dawn, the sage Viswámitra awakened the two young heroes as they lay upon their beds of grass, and directed them to arise and perform their morning ablutions, and repeat the holy Gayatri according to the ordinance. After this the three pro-

---

manner. "The Maháraja with troubled mind consulted his preceptor Vasishtha:—'If,' he said, 'Viswámitra should take Ráma away, I cannot survive the loss; If I should not permit him to go, this sage, who is a strenuous adorer of the deity, doubtless will utter a curse against me: This idea of danger afflicts my soul; besides Ráma is delicate in his frame, how then can he destroy that giant who resembles the mountain elephant?' Vasishtha answered:—'I will disclose this secret mystery; this son of thine, who is named Ráma, is the Omnipotent Being in whom the universe is comprehended.' The sage then told the Maháraja the whole story of Brahma's application to Vishnu, and spoke as follows:—'Know, O Maháraja, that Ráma is the Almighty, the Incomprehensible, the Supreme Soul; that Lakshmana is an incarnation of Sesha-nága; Bharata an incarnation of the shell, and Satrughna an incarnation of the circle: His primeval affection has assumed a female form, and is born in the house of Raja Janaka: Now if Ráma goes with Viswámitra he will obtain the hand of Raja Janaka's daughter Sítá in marriage: Be not therefore under any apprehensions or grieved in thy mind, no danger can accrue to Ráma: I have given thee that advice which I deemed most proper; keep it concealed in thy own heart.'"

ceeded on their journey as before, until they came to the place where the waters of the river Sarayú are joined with those of the Ganges; and there they saw a sacred hermitage where many holy Bráhmans practised religious austerities. And Viswámitra told the two Princes that here was the holy spot where the great god Siva was wounded by the love-inspiring Káma with the arrows of desire, and in return burnt up the god of love with the fire of his anger. And Viswámitra and the two Princes were hospitably entertained by the Bráhmans in that hermitage, and there they slept that night, and prepared to cross the river in the morning.

Legend of Siva smitten by the love-inspiring arrows of Káma.

Hospitable reception.

Now when the morning had come, the sage and the two Princes left the hermitage at the union of the two rivers, and entered a boat for the purpose of crossing the river Ganges, in order that they might proceed to the hermitage of Viswámitra, which was situated on the southern bank of the holy stream.[2] And as they crossed the river they heard the roaring of the waters, which is made by the conflict of the river Sarayú with the river Ganges; and having made obeisance to the two sacred rivers, they reached the other side, and entered a dreadful jungle which was called the wilderness of Táraká. And that jungle was as black as a cloud, and very dense, and filled with the voices of birds, and the notes of insects, and the noise of the wild deer, and the roaring of lions and tigers, and bears, and wild boars, and elephants, and rhinoceroses. Now in that jungle dwelt a terrible female Rákshasi, named Táraká, and she was the mother of Márícha; and Viswámitra said to Ráma:—"This cursed Táraká ravages all this country: Do you, O Ráma,

Passage over the Ganges to the southern bank.

Roaring of the waters.

Dreadful jungle of Táraká.

Viswámitra requests Ráma to slay Táraká, the Rákshasi.

[2] The route followed by Viswámitra and the two Princes on this occasion is easily traced. According to the Adhyátma Rámáyana the hermitage of Viswámitra was situated on the site of the modern town of Buxar, which is situated in the district of Shahabad. The distance from the site of the city of Ayodhyá, near Fyzabad, to the junction of the Sarayú (Gogra) and the Ganges, is about a hundred and seventy miles, a journey which must have occupied several days, although only two days appear to be indicated in the Rámáyana. From the junction of the two rivers to the modern town of Buxar, the distance is rather more than forty miles in a retrograde direction from east to west along the southern bank of the Ganges. This latter portion of the journey is said to have occupied two days, which approximates to the actual distance.

for the sake of the Bráhmans, destroy her: Such an act is not to be abhorred by you, as though it were the murder of a woman; but must be performed as a duty which all Rajas are bound to fulfil for the public good, whether it appear merciful or cruel, innocent or blamable." Ráma replied:—"I am bound to obey your command." And Ráma said to Lakshmana:—"Behold this misshapen Rákshasi: My heart relents at killing her because of her female nature, but I will deprive her of her strength and power." And the hero grasped his bow and twanged the string; and Táraká heard the sound, and was filled with wrath; and presently she came to that place, roaring out with a loud voice; and she rushed upon Ráma with her arms lifted high in the air, and she rained a shower of stones upon the two sons of Dasaratha. Then Ráma took a missile weapon and cut off her two arms, so that they fell upon the earth. Then Lakshmana cut off the ears and nose of Táraká, and she disappeared, and again by the power of sorcery caused a fearful shower of stones to fall upon the two heroes. Then Viswámitra cried out to Ráma:—"Your unwillingness to kill this impious sacrifice-destroying Rákshasi is very wrong: Instantly slay her, for the evening is coming on, and in the darkness it is difficult to overcome the Rákshasas." Then Ráma thus encouraged drew forth a powerful arrow, with a head shaped like a crescent, and he discharged it at the misshapen and vengeful Táraká as she advanced upon him; and she was dreadfully wounded by this tremendous arrow, and vomiting out blood, she fell down and expired. And Viswámitra rejoiced at the death of Táraká, and he kissed the head of Ráma, and said to him:—"To night, O Ráma, we will remain here, and on the morrow we will proceed to my own hermitage." And the sons of Dasaratha remained that night with the sage in the wilderness of Táraká.[3]

Combat between Ráma and Táraká.

Ráma's unwillingness to slay a woman.

Slays Táraká at the instigation of Viswámitra.

Next morning the sage Viswámitra gave Ráma many

Divine weapons given to Ráma by Viswámitra.

[3] In the Adhyátma Rámáyana everyone who is slain by Ráma, or who dies in his presence, or with the name of "Ráma" on his lips, ascends at once to the heaven of Vishnu. Accordingly a beautiful form, arrayed from head to foot with jewels, is said to have risen from the dead body of Táraká, and worshipped Ráma, and then to have ascended to the abodes of bliss.

famous weapons endowed with divine energies, and irresistible even against the gods; and he turned to the east and taught him two powerful mantras. By the utterance of the first mantra all the weapons appeared before their master, and awaited his orders; and by the utterance of the second mantra, all sense of hunger, or thirst, or desire of sleep, passed away from the body. So Ráma uttered the first mantra, and all the mighty weapons which had been given to him by Viswámitra presented themselves before him, and stood with joined hands, and said:—"Command us, O Ráma, of mighty arm!" And Ráma examined them all, and said:—"Whenever I call you to remembrance, then do you wait upon me." Then all those mighty weapons bowed their heads and went their way.

Two powerful mantras.

The two heroes and the sage then proceeded on their way until they saw a mountain which appeared like a cloud, and near it a most exquisitely delightful grove, filled with deer, and enlivened by a variety of tuneful birds. And Viswámitra said to Ráma:—"This is my hermitage, and it is thine even as it is mine." And Viswámitra related the following holy legend to the two young Princes:—

Arrival at the hermitage of Viswámitra.

"In ancient days, before the glorious Vishnu became incarnate as the Dwarf, this was his holy hermitage, and here he practised sacred austerities as an example to all others. And it came to pass that Bali, the mighty Raja of the Asuras, conquered Indra and the gods; and the gods came to this hermitage and prayed to Vishnu for succour: And Vishnu was born on earth in the form of a Dwarf, and he assumed the dress of a mendicant, and went to the abode of Bali, and prayed Bali to give him as much earth as he could step over in three steps: And Bali granted his request: Then Vishnu took upon himself a mighty form, and took three steps; and the first step covered the earth, and the second covered the heavens, and the third was on the head of Bali: And Vishnu bound Bali, and sent him and all his legions to the realms below the earth, and once more restored the universe to the rule of Indra."[4]

Legend of Vishnu in the Dwarf incarnation taking three steps for the destruction of Bali.

[4] The meaning of this myth is not very obvious. It is said to have originated

Reception of Ráma by the sages at the hermitage of Viswámitra at Buxar.

When Viswámitra had finished speaking, all the sages who were dwelling at his hermitage came up and welcomed Ráma, and they presented him with the argha, and with water to wash his feet, and entertained both him and his brother Lakshmana with every hospitality. And the two Princes dwelt at the hermitage of Viswámitra for six days, whilst the Bráhmans made preparation for the sacrifice. The altar was covered with kusa grass, and made ready, together with the sacrificial ladles, the wood and the flowers, and on the seventh day the sacrifice was begun. Then when the fire was blazing upon the altar, Márícha and Suvahu and their evil crew of Rákshasas rushed to the altar, and tried to defile the sacrifice with bones and blood, but were prevented by Ráma. And Márícha beheld the heroic Ráma, who was of the colour of azure, speaking to his brother Lakshmana, who was as resplendent as burning gold; and Márícha was filled with contempt, and began to seize the Bráhmans, when Ráma hurled a mighty weapon at the breast of Márícha, and drove him far out into the ocean.[5] Ráma then discharged a fire-producing weapon at the breast of Suvahu, and brought him to the ground; and he fell upon the sacrifice-destroying Rákshasas, and slew them all. Viswámitra then bestowed great praises upon Ráma; and Ráma and Lakshmana were honoured by all the sages, and passed the night in great satisfaction and joy.

The sacrifice assailed by the Rákshasas.

Victory of Ráma over Márícha and Suvahu.

Ráma and Lakshmana proceed with Viswámitra to the sacrifice of Janaka in Mithilá.

Now when the morning had dawned, and the sons of Dasaratha had performed their devotions, the sages, with Viswámitra at their head, spoke to the two Princes as follows:—"Janaka, the Raja of Mithilá, is about to perform a great sacrifice, which we shall attend, and you may ac-

in an obscure Vedic idea that Vishnu as the Sun took three steps; viz., first on the earth at his rising; secondly in the heavens at noonday; and thirdly on the underworld at his sitting. (See Wilson's Rig-Veda, Vol. I, p. 53, *note*.) The legend however is exceedingly popular, probably on account of the successful trick played against the giant; and a festival is still celebrated in memory of the so-called event.

[5] Márícha is an important character. He is not slain, but only driven some hundreds of miles out at sea. In the sequel he reappears in the character of Minister to Raja Rávana.

company us: And Raja Janaka will show you the great bow of Siva, which neither man nor god can bend." So Ráma and Lakshmana, and Viswámitra, and all the sages, journeyed from that place towards Mithilá, which is now the country of Tirhut. And the first night they slept on the bank of the river Sone, where Viswámitra told them a wonderful legend respecting the foundation of the city of Kanouj.[6] And the second night they approached the river Ganges,[7] and the sage told the sons of Dasaratha how the river Ganges had descended from the Himalaya mountain upon the head of the great god Siva. And Viswámitra said:— "The cloudless sky was illuminated by the porpoises, the serpents, and the fishes, as they darted through the air like bright sparks of lightning. The white foam of the flowing waters, and the flocks of water-birds, filled the air like autumnal clouds. The water falling from the head of Siva, and thence to the earth, ran in some places with a rapid stream, and at others in a tortuous current; sometimes it was widely spreading, and sometimes it descended into caverns and again spouted upward. The sages, the Gandharvas, and the inhabitants of the earth touched the holy water, knowing its purifying power. Those who had fallen from heaven to earth performed ablution in this stream, and became free from sin, and returned again to heaven. And all the people of the earth rejoiced in this illustrious river,

Country of Mithilá, the modern Tirhut.

Legend of Kanouj.

Legend of the descent of the Ganges on the head of Siva and thence on the earth.

[6] This legend is told at a wearisome length in the Rámáyana, but is utterly worthless. A sage has fifty beautiful daughters. Váyu, the god of wind, makes some amorous proposals which they very properly reject, declaring that they will only accept such husband as their father may give them, and will never receive any other. Váyu, in his wrath, renders them hunch-backed. Subsequently they are all married to a young sage who cures them by a touch; and the city in which they dwelt was henceforth called Kanya-kubja, which signifies the "hunch-backed" girl, and still goes by the name of Kanouj. The legend has been modified by the Buddhists, who say that in this city there was formerly the hermit of the great tree, who cursed ninety-nine damsels, so they all became hunch-backed; hence the name. See Fa Hian's Travels, chap. xviii. *Klaproth's note.*

[7] The route from Viswámitra's hermitage at Buxar can be distinctly traced. The party proceeded *vid* Arrah to the Sone river, which they crossed. Next they proceeded, still in an easterly direction, along on the bank of the Ganges, until they came to the neighbourhood of Patna, where they probably crossed the river to the northern side, and thus entered the country of Tirhut or Mithilá.

for by performing ablution therein, men became freed from all impurity and sin.[8]

When Viswámitra had finished his relation, it was early morning, and Ráma said to the sage:—"O Brahman, most astonishing is this admirable story of the sacred descent of Ganga: Revolving your words in my mind, the night has appeared but an instant." Then Ráma and the rest performed their morning ablutions, and crossed the pure river in a boat provided by the sages, and departed to the pleasant city of Visálá; and Viswámitra related to Ráma the wondrous story

The party cross the Ganges and halt at Visálá.

[8] The story of the descent of the Ganges is of no real value, excepting that it is universally believed by the Hindús. According to a primitive myth, the Himavat mountain had two daughters, Ganga and Uma; and Ganga is the river, whilst Uma, under the numerous names of Párvatí, Dúrga, &c., is the wife of Siva. The story of the descent is also connected with another legend, which fills up a great space in the Rámáyana. Sagara, an ancient Raja of Ayodhyá, determined on performing an Aswamedha. The horse was accordingly loosened, but was subsequently carried away by the great Serpent Anantra. The sixty thousand sons of Sagara sought throughout the universe for the horse, and at length beheld it feeding by the side of Kapila, the sage. Accordingly they charged Kapila with having stolen the horse, upon which he consumed them with the fire of his wrath, and reduced them to ashes. Subsequently Sagara discovered that his sons could only obtain salvation by being purified by the Ganges water. But Sagara died, and two or three generations passed away, and still his sixty thousand sons continued to be mere heaps of ashes. At length a Raja Bhagiratha entrusted the Raj to the care of his Counsellors, and spent a thousand years in severe austerities upon a mountain. In the hot season he surrounded himself with great fires, and had the sun over his head; in the cold season he laid himself in the water; and in the rainy season he exposed himself to the descending clouds; and he fed on fallen leaves, with his mind restrained, and his senses kept under the most perfect control. After a thousand years Brahma was propitiated, and referred him to Siva; and now Bhagiratha had to propitiate this deity, which he did by standing with uplifted arm day and night without support on the tip of his great toe, as immovable as a dry tree, and feeding only on air. Siva accordingly called upon the Ganges to descend upon his head, which she did, and was detained in the recesses of his jata, or knot of hair on the back of his head, and wandered there for ages. At length the river descended upon the earth, and all the gods and divine beings came to behold the wondrous sight. After descending to the earth the Ganges followed the car of Bhagiratha; and all the gods, demons, serpents, apsaras, fishes, and water-birds followed the car of Bhagiratha in like manner. Unfortunately the Ganges in its progress watered the sacrificial ground of the sage Jahnu, and Jahnu in his wrath drank up the whole river. However, the gods worshipped Jahnu, and he relented, and discharged the river from his ears. After this Bhagiratha moved his chariot towards the sea, and the Ganges followed and watered the sixty thousand sons of Sagara, who were at once purified by the sacred water from all their sins. Accordingly their souls ascended to heaven, and Bhagiratha performed their funeral ceremonies.

of the churning of the ocean by the gods and demons, and the production of amrita in the following manner :—

Legend of the churning of the ocean by the gods and demons for amrita.

"In days of old there was war between the gods and the demons; and Indra, the sovereign of the gods, was overcome in battle by the demons.[9] And Indra and the gods fled for refuge to Brahma, and Brahma conducted them to the abode of Vishnu in the sea of milk, and prayed to Vishnu. And Vishnu manifested himself to Brahma and the gods, bearing in his four hands the shell, the chakra, the mace, and the lotos. And Vishnu commanded the gods to ally themselves with the demons, and to throw every kind of medicinal herb into the sea of milk; and to take Mandara mountain for a churning stick, and the serpent Vásuki for the churning rope, and to churn the sea for the production of amrita, which should render them mighty and immortal. And Vishnu said :—'The demons shall share the labour of churning, but I will prevent their tasting of the amrita, which shall be drank only by Indra and the gods.' So the gods allied with the demons, and did as Vishnu had commanded; and as they churned there appeared many wondrous things rising out of the sea. The goddess Váruní, the deity of wine, arose in sweet intoxication, and was joyfully received by the demons. Next rose the beautiful Apsaras, who became the nymphs of Indra's heaven. Then rose the great goddess Lakshmí, radiant with youth and beauty; and a crown was upon her head, and bracelets upon her arms, and her form was covered with ornaments of pearls; and her jetty hair flowed in long ringlets, whilst her complexion resembled molten gold; and thus attired and decorated she took up her abode on the bosom of Vishnu. Lastly appeared the physician of the gods, bearing in his hand the golden cup which contained the divine amrita. Then the demons

Indra and the gods fly for refuge to Brahma, who refers them to Vishnu.

Churning of the sea.

Ascent of Váruní the deity of wine.

The Apsaras.

Lakshmí, beautiful and youthful, rises out of the sea, and becomes the wife of Vishnu.

The amrita.

[9] In the present myth the wars of gods and demons are plainly alluded to, just in the same way as gods and demons are implied in a previous myth, in which Vishnu promises the gods that he will become incarnate. But very often the gods are called Devatás, and seem to represent a superior tribe of mortal men; whilst the demons are termed Daityas, Dánavas, Asuras, or Rákshasas, and appear to represent the aborigines of India.

fought lustily; but Vishnu assumed the form of a captivating damsel, and stole away the amrita. Vishnu then gave the amrita to Indra and the gods; and Indra and the gods quaffed the amrita, and fought and overcame the demons, and Indra once again recovered his rule."

Indra and the gods quaff the amrita and overcome the demons.

Hospitable entertainment of the party at Visálá.

Now when Viswámitra had finished speaking, he told the two Princes that they would rest that night in the city of Visálá. And when they arrived at the city, the Raja of Visálá came out to welcome the sage, and presented him with water and the argha; and the Raja wondered as he beheld the two heroes, and at his request Viswámitra related to him who they were, and wherefore they had come to the city of Visálá; and they were hospitably entertained by the Raja, and passed the night there.

Journey to Mithilá.

When morning had come, Ráma and Lakshmana, accompanied by the sage Viswámitra, proceeded towards the beautiful city of Mithilá; and on the way Ráma saw a hermitage in the midst of a grove, and he inquired of Viswámitra respecting that hermitage, on which the sage related to him the sacred story, as follows:—

Legend of the adultery of Indra with the wife of Gautama, the sage.

"This holy hermitage, adorned with trees, fruits, and flowers, belonged in ancient times to the sage Gautama; and here the sage remained for many thousand years with his wife Ahalyá in the performance of religious austerities. One day when the sage was absent from his dwelling, the mighty Indra passed by, and burned with an impure passion for the wife of Gautama; and he entered the hut in the disguise of the sage, and began to entreat Ahalyá; and Ahalyá, knowing him to be the Raja of the celestials, in the wantonness of her heart yielded to his desires. Then the sovereign of the gods left the hermitage, but at that moment Gautama entered, and he was invincible even to the gods through the power of his austerities. Perceiving him, Indra was overwhelmed with sadness; and the sage, beholding the profligate lord of gods in his disguise, thus addressed him in words of dreadful anger:—'O depraved wretch, assuming my form you have perpetrated this great crime! Therefore from this moment do you become

Indra cursed by Gautama.

eunuch!' The great sage then pronounced this curse upon his wife Ahalyá:—'O sinful wretch, for thousands of years shall you remain in this forest, abandoned by all and invisible to all, until Ráma, the son of Dasaratha, shall enter here, and you from beholding him shall be cleansed from all sin, and again approach me without fear.' With these words the illustrious Gautama abandoned this hermitage, and performed religious austerities on the summit of the Himálaya mountain."[10]

The wife of Gautama rendered invisible until the arrival of Ráma.

Having heard this holy legend, Ráma entered the hermitage, preceded by Viswámitra; and at that moment, Ahalyá was released from her curse, and became visible to all; and a shower of flowers fell from heaven, and divine music was heard in the sky. Then the illustrious Gautama, beholding with divine eye that his consort was cleansed from all sin, repaired again to his hermitage; and having paid due honours to Ráma, he engaged in sacred austerities with his purified spouse. And Ráma proceeded to Mithilá with his brother and Viswámitra.

Ráma enters the hermitage and frees Ahalyá from the curse.

The foregoing narrative of Ráma's expedition against the Rákshasas, and subsequent journey to the city of Mithilá, offers but few points worthy of consideration. The character of Viswámitra is an anomaly. He is said to have been originally a Kshatriya, and to have subsequently practised so many religious austerities, that he ultimately became a Bráhman; but his case must be regarded as altogether exceptional, as no other similar change of caste appears to have been recorded.[11] The geo-

Review of the foregoing tradition of Ráma's expedition against the Rákshasas.

Anomalous character of Viswámitra.

[10] This curious myth of the seduction of the wife of a sage by Indra, the god of the firmament, probably originated in the opposition of the Bráhmans to the worship of Indra, to which reference has already been made, and which will form the subject of discussion hereafter. The prophetical curse pronounced by the sage, that his wife should remain in the forest until the advent of Ráma, stamps the whole as a mythical interpolation.

[11] The difficulty in connection with Viswámitra's change of caste, is to apprehend the reason why a Kshatriya should desire to become a Bráhman. In ancient times the Bráhmans were certainly regarded by the Kshatriyas with a certain

HISTORY OF INDIA. PART IV.

graphical references are generally exact, and present no difficulty; a circumstance which seems to indicate that the Rámáyana was composed in the neighbourhood of the scenes to which it refers. The main feature of the story is the abundance of wearisome and unmeaning legends, which Viswámitra persists in relating to Ráma at every opportunity, and in which Ráma professes to be deeply interested. These episodes, however, appear to be entirely devoid of historical value, and accordingly only a few have been retained in a condensed form as specimens of the remainder. Thus the legend of the descent of the river Ganges upon the head of Siva, and that of the churning of the sea by the gods and demons for the production of amrita, have been preserved in the foregoing relation, not because they possess any hidden meaning, or throw any light upon the religion or civilization of the people, but simply because they are wonderful products of Hindú imagination, which from some cause or other have been frequently brought before the notice of European readers, whilst traditions of infinitely greater importance and significance have been wholly ignored.

General truthfulness of the geographical references.

Large interpolation of unhistorical myths.

amount of contempt, and it is evident that Viswámitra is to be referred to a tolerably remote period, for he was the reputed father of Sakuntalá. It seems not unlikely that he was one of the Kshatriyas who had adopted Buddhism, but who from some cause or other deserted to the side of the Bráhmans, and henceforward became a favourite hero in Brahmanical tradition.

CHAPTER V.

MARRIAGE OF RÁMA.

THE story of the marriages of Ráma and his three brethren, naturally forms one of the most attractive and favourite portions of the Rámáyana. In all civilized countries the story of a marriage is universally interesting to young and old; and amongst western nations it is generally adopted as the climax of every romance and every drama. In India this interest is intensified from causes which are by no means difficult of apprehension. The sympathies which in Europe are permitted to spread through large communities, are concentrated in the family or household; and the consequence is that family events, such as births, deaths, and marriages, assume an importance in the family which is unknown elsewhere; whilst they are accompanied by a multitude of rites and observances which still further add to the gravity and significance of the occasion. Marriages especially are the all-absorbing topic in every Hindú household; from the little girl who is looking forward to the day when she will be arrayed in jewels and fine clothes, and be seated by the side of her future husband, to the aged matron who can remember every recurrence of the ceremony in the family for many generations. Indeed the marriage

Interesting story of Ráma's marriage.

General interest attached to marriages intensified in India.

The all-absorbing topic in Hindú households.

Paramount duty of Hindú parents to arrange the marriages of their children.

of sons and daughters is a paramount duty which every Hindú father must fulfil, who would escape the censure of his fellow-men and the anger of the gods; whilst it is the one great event in the life of every Hindú boy and girl, without exception, throughout the land.

Transcendant interest attached to the marriage of Ráma and Sítá.

But the marriage of Ráma and Sítá possesses attractions far above those of any ordinary tradition. It is not a mere union of a boy and girl, which can only be consummated in after years; but it is the union of a young hero to a marriageable maiden, and of a hero who has won his prize by a feat of arms. Moreover the holy legend calls up associations and sympathies which no other story can awaken. It describes not only the union of the heroic and beautiful, but the marriage of the greatest of gods with the kindliest of goddesses; of the personification of all that is handsome and glorious in the god-man, with all that is lovely and light and graceful in a goddess-maiden; of the divine incarnation of the immortal Vishnu with the divine incarnation of the equally immortal Lakshmí. Accordingly, that indescribable charm which is thrown round every marriage in which the lovers are young and fair, is invested with a higher interest from the deep religious feeling which is stirred within the breast of all who listen to the sacred song. The mother remembers when she too was a bride; the daughter sighs for the day when she too will be given to a husband; whilst the poor widow's heart is bursting at a glimpse of happiness which is denied to her for ever. But still with all these natural emotions, there is mingled a deep religious joy and exultation

Religious ideas of their divine character.

Especial religious sympathies of Hindú families.

in all the more important turns in the narrative; and especially when Ráma triumphantly bends the fabled bow, or takes the hand of his beautiful bride in the presence of the sacred fire.

Religious sentiment imperfectly expressed in the Rámáyana, but felt by every Hindú.

It must, however, be confessed that the religious sentiment above indicated is not expressed in the Rámáyana in the degree to which it is felt by a sympathetic audience of Hindús. Thus the narrative to a European reader is a mere ordinary story of a Hindú marriage, in which the allusions to the divinity of the married pair are strained and artificial. But in this respect the associations in the mind of the Hindús supply all that is wanting. From their earliest infancy they have been taught to repeat the sacred name of Ráma, and to believe in his divinity; and not a single doubt as to the truth of that divinity is ever felt or uttered. When, therefore, the Hindú poet fails, as he must fail, to indicate that incarnation of deity in which he fully believes, and which indeed he is desirous of enforcing, the belief of the reader or hearer is in no way affected by the deficiency. To him the divine Ráma is an incarnation of the eternal, the immortal, and the invisible; whilst Sítá is a personification of a corresponding female nature, who is mystically regarded as the primeval affection or divine love of Ráma.

Unquestioning belief in the incarnation of Vishnu and Lakshmi.

The story of the marriage of Ráma is comprised in three distinct narratives, as follows:—

Division of the story of the marriage of Ráma into three distinct narratives.

1st, The circumstances which led to the marriage, and the ceremony of the marriage, all of which took place in the city of Mithilá.

2nd, The return journey of Maháraja Dasaratha

from the city of Mithilá to the city of Ayodhyá, accompanied by his four sons and their respective brides.

3rd, The honeymoon of Ráma, which did not commence until after the arrival of the party at the city of Ayodhyá.

1st. Tradition of the winning of Sítá by Ráma, and the subsequent marriage.

The first portion of the narrative, comprising the story of how Ráma won his bride, and how the marriage ceremony was performed, appears to be a relic of the original tradition, and may now be related as follows:—

Confusion of the women of Mithilá on hearing of Ráma's approach.

When the women of Mithilá heard that the handsome and heroic Ráma was entering the city, they hastened out of their houses to behold him; and so anxious were they to gaze upon his countenance, that in the confusion some put their anklets on their arms and their bracelets on their ancles; and some put the ornaments for their heads on their bosoms, and others fixed the ornaments for their bosoms on their backs.[1] And when Raja Janaka heard that the sage Viswámitra had come to his city, he hastened to receive him with every token of great respect, and he said:—"O chief of sages, I am truly blessed, seeing that my place of sacrifice is thus honoured by your presence and that of the sages." And when the Raja saw Ráma and Lakshmana, he said to Viswámitra:—"Who are those two illustrious youths who are as majestic as elephants, as heroic as tigers, and as beautiful as the two Aswins?" Viswámitra replied:—"They are the sons of Mahárája Dasaratha, and the conquerors of the Rákshasas, and they are come hither to inquire about the great bow." And Janaka showed to the sons of Dasaratha the great bow with which Siva had destroyed the gods at the sacrifice of Daksha, and which had ever since that day been preserved in the royal

Raja Janaka respectfully receives Viswámitra and inquires respecting Ráma and Lakshmana.

Exhibits the great bow of Siva.

[1] This passage respecting the women is evidently a later interpolation, for it is scarcely possible that they should have been acquainted with the merits of Ráma, whilst their Raja Janaka was compelled to ask Viswámitra respecting his identity.

house of Mithilá, and worshipped with every honour.[2] And the bow was laid in a huge chest, which moved on eight wheels; and it was drawn into the presence of Raja Janaka and the two Princes by eight hundred men, who were tall and strong, so heavy and stupendous was that great bow. And Raja Janaka said to the two heroes:—"I have promised to give my beautiful daughter Sítá in marriage to that Raja who shall succeed in bending the bow; and all the Rajas of the earth have come hither, and not one has ever been strong enough to lift that bow from the ground." Now when Ráma saw the bow, he lifted it with one hand from the ground in a sportive manner; and a great multitude in deep amazement looked on. Then Ráma made the bow ready with a smile, and putting forth all his strength he bent the bow until it broke in the midst, and the noise thereof was like the crash of a falling mountain, or the roar of the thunder-bolt hurled by Indra. And all the people were stunned and fell down, excepting only Viswámitra and Raja Janaka, and the two sons of Dasaratha.

Sítá promised to that Raja who could bend the bow.

Ráma bends the bow.

Then Raja Janaka said to the sage:—"This deed of Ráma is without a parallel, and he shall receive my daughter Sítá in marriage: With thy permission, O sage, let messengers on swift horses go hence to the city of Ayodhyá, and acquaint Mahárája Dasaratha with all that has occurred, and bring him to this city." And Viswámitra agreed, and the messengers were mounted on swift beasts, and in three nights they arrived at the city of Ayodhyá; and they entered the royal palace, and delivered their message to the Mahárája. Then the Mahárája consulted Vasishtha and the other priests, and they were highly pleased, and said:—"On the morrow we will go to Mithilá." And the messengers from Raja Janaka were entertained in the palace with great respect, and remained there all that night.

Raja Janaka sends messengers to inform Dasaratha.

Early the next morning the happy Mahárája set out with his priests, and his treasures, and all his army, and in

The Mahárája goes to Mithilá, and is received by Raja Janaka.

[2] The story of the sacrifice of Daksha is connected with the worship of Siva. Daksha performed a sacrifice, and invited all the gods excepting Siva and his wife Sáti; and Siva, at the instigation of Sáti, became so highly offended at this omission, that he destroyed the sacrifice.

four days he arrived at the pleasant city of Mithilá; and Raja Janaka came out to meet him, and received him with every honour. And Raja Janaka said to Dasaratha:—"Happy am I this day, and delivered from every kind of distress, for by this alliance my family will be honoured and purified."

Recital of the ancestry of Ráma and Sítá.

On the morrow Raja Janaka commanded his Chief Counsellor to bring Maháraja Dasaratha together with his son Ráma and priest Vasishtha. Then the Maháraja, attended by his two priests, and all his friends, went to the place where Janaka was; and the great sage Vasishtha recited to Raja Janaka the names of all the ancestors of Dasaratha, and Janaka recited to the Maháraja the names of all his own ancestors.

Propositions of marriage for all the four sons of Dasaratha.

Then Janaka proposed to give his daughter Sítá in marriage to Ráma, and her sister Urmilá in marriage to Lakshmana; and he also proposed that the two daughters of his brother Kusadhwaja should be married to Bharata and Satrughna. And Viswámitra and Vasishtha approved of the marriages of the four damsels to the four sons of Dasaratha. Then Maháraja Dasaratha, having requested leave of the Raja of Mithilá, departed to his own lodgings, preceded by Vasishtha and all the sages; and

Performance of a great Sráddha by Dasaratha.

there the Maháraja performed a great Sráddha to the ghosts of his deceased ancestors, and gave four lakhs of cows with their calves to the Bráhmans, being a lakh for each son, and each cow was adorned with horns of pure gold.[3]

The Maháraja proceeds to the place of sacrifice.

When the night had passed away, and Maháraja Dasaratha had fulfilled his morning duties, he went out attended by his sons richly adorned with jewels, and preceded by Vasishtha and the other sages; and he proceeded to the place of sacrifice, and approached the Raja of Mithilá in due form, and thus addressed him:—"O Raja, peace be to you! We are come into your assembly to perform the nuptials, and now therefore introduce us and our friends into your own house." Then the eloquent Raja of Mithilá thus

[3] It is customary to perform a Sráddha, or feast to the souls of departed ancestors, on the eve of a marriage. For a description of the ceremonies of the Sráddha, see chapter xii.

replied to the generous words of Dasaratha:—"What porter have I placed at the gate, and who considers about entering his own house? My daughter is standing at the foot of the altar, and I am prepared and waiting for you."

Preparations made by Vasishtha the priest for the nuptial ceremony

Meanwhile Vasishtha had erected the altar in the chamber of the gods, and adorned it on every side with fragrant flowers. And there were cooling jars of water, and pots filled with branches of trees, and pots of incense, and vessels of shells, and spoons and ladles for pouring the homa upon the fire, and vessels of fruit, and milk, and honey, and rice, and parched barley. And the kusa grass was spread upon the floor, and the fire was lighted upon the altar with all the due formulas, and the homa consecrated with mantras was placed upon the flame. Then whilst Ráma stood on the eastern side of the altar, Raja Janaka brought his daughter Sítá, adorned with every ornament, into the presence of the sacred fire, and placed her opposite to the heroic son of Dasaratha; and he spoke to the lotos-eyed Ráma as follows:—

Janaka places Sítá before the altar.

The bridegrooms take the hands of the brides, and are sprinkled with holy water.

"This is my daughter Sítá, endowed with every virtue: Take her hand in yours, O son of Dasaratha, and she will ever attend you like a shadow: Maintain her for life, and be not offended if she ever commits a fault." Raja Janaka in like manner desired Lakshmana to take the hand of his other daughter Urmilá, and Bharata and Satrughna to take the hands of the two daughters of his brother Kuradhwaja. Raja Janaka then sprinkled the bridegrooms and their brides with water consecrated by the utterance of holy mantras; and the trumpets sounded, and each of the four sons of Dasaratha led his bride three times round the fire upon the altar, and round the Raja, and performed the nuptial ceremonies according to the ordinance. A shower of flowers then fell from heaven upon them all, and celestial music was heard in the sky, and the Apsaras danced for joy, and the Gandharvas played sweet and solemn music.[4]

Walk three times round the fire.

Joy of the gods.

[4] The marriage of Ráma and Sítá is somewhat differently related in the Adhyátma Rámáyana, as will be seen from the following extract:—

"Satánanda, the son of Gautama, the priest of Janaka, being satisfied as to the propriety of the day fixed for the marriage, said to Janaka:—'Let a proper canopy be erected in thy house; cause four pillars to be raised and adorned with

Ceremonies in the inner apartments.

Now when the ceremonies of the marriage had been all performed, the bridegrooms led their brides into the inner apartments, and each one seated his bride on his left side, and the women tied their garments together; and the women removed the veils from the brides, and desired both the brides and bridegrooms to look each other in the face for the first time; and each of the sons of Dasaratha gazed upon the face of his own bride, and she in like manner gazed upon the face of her husband; and they exchanged garlands

---

jewels, with fringes of pearls, embroidery, and brocade.' The marriage procession was then made ready; they first rubbed Ráma's body with meal and oil; after which he bathed and was dressed in clothes of gold brocade. He had a crown of pearls on his head; earrings of exquisite richness hung from both his ears; his eyes were rubbed with antimony, and his hands and feet with henna. He wore a string of pearls and flowers round his neck, and an ornament of pearls on his forehead; a stripe of saffron was marked in the centre of his forehead; and his two locks of hair hung in curls on his cheeks. Being thus adorned he mounted his horse, the kettle-drums and shells sounding on every side; lights innumerable accompanied him, and immense quantities of fireworks were displayed. The dancers performed various dances; the gods appearing in the heavens sounded their shells, and showered down flowers upon Ráma. Thousands of elephants resembling mountains, and of horses also swift as the wind, were led before him; horsemen and footmen without number attended him. In this manner was the marriage procession of Ráma conducted.

"The wife of Janaka, having adorned Sítá with jewels and rich clothes, placed her under the canopy. Millions of suns and moons would bow down in subjection before the faces of Ráma and Sítá. When the procession came to the palace, Janaka went forth to meet Ráma; he brought him and his attendants into the house, and having seated Ráma with Sítá under the canopy, the Bráhmans commenced reading the Vedas. At the sound of the Vedas the fire was kindled, and the sacrifice placed therein. The whole assembly walked round them seven times. The Rája then tied the clothes of the bride and the bridegroom in a knot, as having bestowed them on each other, and Janaka delivered Sítá to Ráma. At that time the world was filled with the sound of 'May thy prosperity endure for ever.' The gods sounded their kettle-drums and showered down flowers. Alms were distributed in such quantities that no one could complain of want in future, all were happy.

"On the second day Janaka assembled Vasishtha, Viswámitra, and the other holy men, and gave them an account of the birth of Sítá, saying:—'Sítá was not produced, holy men! from the body of any one. One day I cleared a spot of ground for a sacrifice, and turning up the earth with a plough-share, a silver vessel sealed on the top was rooted up. When I opened the seal, a virgin beautiful as a hundred moons rose from out of that vessel. I brought her to my house with the affection of a father, and my wife and I adopted her, and we considered her as our daughter.' Janaka then stated that Nárada had related to him the whole story of the incarnation of Vishnu in Ráma and his brothers, and the primeval affection in the form of Sítá, who was to be married to Ráma. He added that he had commenced the Swayamvara in order to discover Ráma."

together, and every other rite was performed according to the ordinance.

Review of the foregoing tradition of the marriages of Ráma and his brethren.

The foregoing narrative of the marriages of Ráma and his brethren, comprises some exaggerations as regards the great bow of Siva, and perhaps has been slightly Brahmanized by some later editor, but otherwise it bears the impress of being based upon an authentic tradition. That Ráma should have performed some wonderful feat of arms at the court of Mithilá, and by these means should have obtained the hand of the beautiful daughter of Raja Janaka, is perfectly in accordance with the traditions which have been preserved of the Swayamvara. Again, it will be noticed that the Bráhmans play little or no part in the ceremony. Vasishtha, indeed, is introduced as reciting the ancestry of Ráma, and even as preparing the altar and performing the homa; but it is Janaka, the father of the bride, who performs the actual ceremonies of the marriage; and this circumstance is alone sufficient to indicate that the original tradition refers to a period when the authority and dignity of the Bráhmans were by no means so firmly established as they were in later years.

Authentic character of the narrative.

Marriage ceremony not performed by the Bráhmans but by Rája Janaka.

Four rites.

As regards the ceremony itself, it seems to have included four important rites, viz.:—

The procession.

1st, The procession of the bridegroom and his relatives and friends to the house of the father of the bride.

The sacred fire.

2nd, The placing of the bride and bridegroom before the sacred fire which has been kindled on the altar.

The taking of the hand.

3rd, The bridegroom taking the hand of the bride in the presence of the fire.

HISTORY OF INDIA. PART IV.

4th, The sprinkling of the bride and bridegroom with water which has been consecrated by the utterance of verses from Vedic hymns.

The sprinkling.

Resemblance between the ancient Aryan ceremony and the modern Christian rite.

Here it is impossible to avoid noticing the striking resemblance between the ancient ceremony as it was performed by our Aryan forefathers in their private dwellings, and the more modern rite as it is performed in Christian churches. In Protestant countries the fire on the altar has been rejected as Jewish, and the use of holy water has in like manner been abandoned as Romish. But still in all essential particulars the ceremony is the same. The bridegroom and the bride are still placed before the altar; and the father of the bride still gives away his daughter; whilst the bridegroom takes her hand in his, and pledges his troth in the presence of the altar, although the fire is wanting.

2nd. Return journey from Mithilá to Ayodhyá.

The second section of the story of Ráma's marriage comprises the return journey of Maháraja Dasaratha from the city of Mithilá to that of Ayodhyá, in which he was accompanied by his four sons and their respective brides. This journey is of minor importance; but it contains a curious account of a meeting between the two Rámas; that is, between Ráma the Kshatriya and Ráma the Bráhman; or in other words, between the present Ráma, who was the son of Dasaratha, and another Ráma, who was the son of a sage named Jamadagni, and was known by the distinguishing appellation of Parasu Ráma, or Ráma "with the axe." This Parasu Ráma is said to have been a great warrior as well as a Bráhman. He was a worshipper of Siva, from whom he obtained his celebrated axe; and is especially renowned for his prowess against the Kshatriyas. These latter cir-

Episode exhibiting the opposition of Ráma, the Kshatriya, to Parasú Ráma, the Bráhman.

Nature of the opposition.

cumstances seem to have placed him in opposition to Ráma. As a worshipper of Siva he was opposed to Ráma as an incarnation of Vishnu; and as a Brahmanical slaughterer of the Kshatriyas he was opposed to Ráma as the son of Maháraja Dasaratha. A further inquiry into his real character will be attempted hereafter. For the present it will be sufficient to reproduce the simple narrative, which is as follows:—

Narrative of the return journey.

Now on the morning after the marriages of Ráma and his brethren, the sage Viswámitra took leave of the two Rajas and went his way to the northern mountain. And Maháraja Dasaratha also took leave of Raja Janaka, and Raja Janaka gave to each of the four brides many rich presents of clothes, deer-skins, jewels, soft silks, garments of various colours, beautiful ornaments, together with a hundred thousand cows.[5]

Departure of the sage Viswámitra.

Presents of Janaka to the brides.

Then Maháraja Dasaratha departed out of Mithilá in great splendour, preceded by his preceptor Vasishtha and the other sages, and accompanied by his sons and daughters-in-law. And as the Maháraja was returning to his own city of Ayodhyá, he saw the birds gathering together on his

Departure of the Maháraja with his sons and their wives.

[5] The author of the Adhyátma Rámáyana exhibits a much more brilliant imagination. He states that Sitá's portion consisted of the following articles:—

"One hundred crores of gold mohurs.

Ten thousand magnificent carriages.

Ten lakhs of horses, swift as the wind, with saddles ornamented with jewels.

Sixty thousand elephants, resembling mountains, covered with embroidery and brocade, and with gold chains on their four legs.

One hundred thousand male slaves, beautiful and obedient.

Fifty thousand female slaves, resembling the rising sun, adorned with jewels, and well versed in service.

Two crores of cows giving milk, and lovely as Kama-d'hena.

One crore bales of cloth, such as embroidery, brocade, silk and plain.

One hundred thousand gajmookta, or that species of pearl which is sometimes found in the heads of elephants.

An immense quantity of other kinds of jewels, such as diamonds, emeralds, rubies, topazes, sapphires, and cat's eyes.

Innumerable vessels of gold and silver.

Crores of maunds of sweetmeats and preserves.

Grain not to be reckoned."

right hand, and the peaceful deer of the forest encompassing him round about; and he was greatly alarmed and said to his preceptor Vasishtha:—"What mean these omens?"

Evil and good omens.

And Vasishtha replied:—"The birds, O Mahárája, inform you of the approach of something terrible, but the deer who surround you bid you not to be afraid."

Terrible appearance of Parasu Ráma, son of Jamadagni.

Whilst Vasishtha and Dasaratha were thus speaking, a fierce tempest arose which raised the sand in clouds, and caused the earth to quake; and the air was filled with darkness, and the sun lost its heat, and the country was filled with dust and ashes, and all were sore afraid, except Vasishtha, and the sages, and the sons of Dasaratha. Presently they saw a mighty being, with a jata on his head, drawing near unto them, tremendous as Indra, dreadful as Yama coming to destroy the world, arrayed in splendour greater than human eye could behold, and bright as the glowing fire. With a mace upon his shoulder, and a bow resembling the rainbow, and a fiery shaft in his hand, he

His wrath against Ráma for having broken the bow of Siva.

advanced like Siva going to destroy Tripura; and he was enraged with Ráma, the son of Dasaratha, for having broken the bow of Siva, and his wrath resembled a fire throwing out its flames through a cloud of smoke. And Vasishtha and the sages knew him to be the Bráhman Ráma, the famous Ráma who was the son of Jamadagni, and who in days of old had slain all the Kshatriyas in a single day. And they

Vasishtha and the Bráhmans present the argha.

said one to another:—"Will the great Ráma again destroy the Kshatriyas?" Thus foreboding, Vasishtha and the other Bráhmans presented him with propitiatory offerings, and said:—"O my lord, accept this argha! O sage, be not again angry!" And Ráma, the son of Jamadagni, accepted the argha without speaking to the sages; and he turned to Ráma, the son of Dasaratha, and spoke as follows:—"O son of Dasaratha, I have heard of your great prowess, and how you have broken the divine bow of Siva, which was made by

Parasu Ráma challenges Ráma to bend the bow of Vishnu.

Viswakarma: But another bow was made by Viswakarma and given to Vishnu, and with this bow I have conquered the whole earth. Take it now, and if you are able to draw it I will give you battle." Then the heroic son of Dasara-

tha smiled and took the bow, and fixed the arrow, and discharged it at the sky, saying:—"As you are a Bráhman I will not discharge this fatal arrow at you." Then the son of Jamadagni lost his strength, and knew that Ráma was Vishnu; and he respectfully saluted the divine hero, and went his way to the Mahendra mountain. And Dasaratha was in great joy, and all the sages bestowed many praises upon the heroic son of the Maháraja.

Ráma bends the bow and discharges an arrow.

Parasu Ráma acknowledges him to be, Vishnu.

After some days, Dasaratha approached his own city of Ayodhyá, and the city was adorned with banners, and the pleasant streets were watered and strewed with flowers, and the air was filled with the clangour of trumpets, and thousands of citizens went out to welcome back their Maháraja; and the Maháraja was filled with joy, as he saw his people anxious to behold him and to do him honour; and Kausalyá and Kaikeyí, and Sumitrá, together with the other wives of the Maháraja, were ready to embrace their daughters-in-law, the fortunate Sítá, Urmilá, and the two nieces of Raja Janaka. Then the sons of Dasaratha, with their newly-married wives, bowed down to the feet of their mothers; and the Ránís took their sons, and their sons' wives, to the different temples, that they might all bow down their heads to the gods and goddesses therein. Then the brethren and their wives bowed down to the feet of their elders and preceptors, and were conducted to the palace. And all the women of the neighbourhood came and saw the faces of the brides, and made them presents according to their rank; and the musicians, and the genealogists, and the eulogists, and all the dancers and singers, were dismissed with rich presents; and the Bráhmans and kinsmen, being well feasted, went their way, and the marriage was over.

Grand entry of the Maháraja into the city of Ayodhyá.

Rejoicings of the people.

The newly-married pairs bow down to their mothers and worship the gods.

Presents and feasting.

The only point in the foregoing narrative which seems to require consideration here is the character of Parasu Ráma. According to an extravagant myth, this Bráhman hero cleared the earth twenty-one times of every Kshatriya, and filled either five or seven lakes

Review of the foregoing narrative: character of Parasu Ráma.

with their blood.[6] From this wild statement it has been inferred that the extirpation of the Kshatriyas was an accomplished fact, to be compared with the downfall of the Greek tyrannies, and that the triumph of the Bráhmans was a counterpart of the rise of the Greek republics.[7] Such a view, however, appears to be contrary to probabilities, and is certainly discountenanced by actual facts. The conflict between the soldier and the priest, the Kshatriya and the Bráhman, belongs to the age of Buddhism. In the earlier age to which Parasu Ráma seems to belong, a conflict between the haughty Kshatriya and the mendicant Bráhman, could only have had but one result. Occasionally, however, there may have been trivial local feuds, in which some warlike son of a Bráhman may have triumphed over a Kshatriya, and such a feat would be duly preserved and exaggerated in Brahmanical tradition. Parasu Ráma was apparently the hero of some such village feud, which broke out respecting the theft of a cow, or as some authorities have it, the theft of a calf. The cow or calf of the Bráhman Jamadagni was stolen by a Kshatriya. In revenge Parasu Ráma, the son of Jamadagni, slew the Kshatriya. Then, by way of reprisals, the sons of the slaughtered Kshatriya attacked the hermitage of Jamadagni and murdered him. Finally Parasu Ráma slew the murderers of his father, and vowed that he would destroy the whole race of Kshatriyas. Henceforth it is said that he killed every Kshatriya whom he met; and, indeed, he appears to have be-

Inference that his alleged extirpation of the Kshatriyas is historical.

Refutation of the inference.

Parasu Ráma the mere hero of some petty local tradition, originating in the theft of a cow.

[6] The legend of Parasu Ráma, as it is related in the Mahá Bhárata, has been translated by Professor H. H. Wilson, and is inserted in his translation of the Vishnu Purána, p. 401, 4.to edition.

[7] See Professor Max Müller's Hist. of Sanskrit Literature, p. 17. Whilst doing full justice to the learning and critical ability of the eminent editor of the Rig-Veda, it may be remarked that some of his historical inferences appear to be open to question.

whom he met: and, indeed, he appears to have become so terrible with his axe, as to have been called Parasu Ráma, or Ráma with the axe. That this cattle-lifting story should be exaggerated into a legend that Parasu Ráma extirpated the whole race of Kshatriyas, is only a specimen of Brahmanical extravagance. The Kshatriyas were never extirpated. Those professing Buddhism were defeated, and perhaps driven out of India; but the Kshatriyas, or Rajas, are to this day dwelling as a people in their own country of Rajputána. The legend of Parasu Ráma's interview with Ráma is evidently a myth, introduced to exhibit the superiority of Vishnu over Siva; the comparison being probably invited by the similarity of name. This myth, however, is in singular opposition to another myth by which Parasu Ráma is represented as an incarnation of Vishnu. That the Bráhmans should have elevated their own caste hero to the rank of deity is by no means surprising; but it is impossible to reconcile this idea with the statement that Parasu Ráma was a worshipper of Siva; and as such came in conflict with Ráma, who, like himself, was an incarnation of Vishnu.

Cattle-lifting story exaggerated into a Brahmanical fable that Parasu Ráma extirpated the Kshatriyas.

The third section of the story of Ráma's marriage comprises the narrative of Ráma's honeymoon, and is especially curious as representing the Hindú ideal of perfect happiness in wedded life. It must, however, be treated as a modern interpolation, and indeed is only valuable as an illustration of modern customs and ideas.[8] The change in the whole tone of the Rámáyana will be at once perceptible; and in this respect the style is similar to

3rd. Story of Ráma's honeymoon.

Its modern character.

Contrast between the simplicity of the marriage ceremony, and the ornate story of the honeymoon.

[8] This section is only to be found in what is called the North-West recension of the Rámáyana.

that of the story of the childhood of Ráma. In the description of the marriage ceremony which was performed at Mithilá, there is a certain patriarchal simplicity, which evidently refers to a remote and primitive age. In the following narrative there is all the artificial prettiness and extravagant fancy which belongs to modern Hinduism. No one but a Hindú bard could have pictured forth such details; and perhaps no audience, which was not composed of orientals, could possibly appreciate the description of early married life which is here presented to the eye.

Hindú character of the narrative.

The story of Ráma's honeymoon is as follows:—

Story of the honeymoon in the Rámáyana.

Consummation of the marriages at Ayodhyá.

Now it was not until the day of the return of the brides and bridegrooms to the city of Ayodhyá that the marriages were fully accomplished. And when it was evening some of the maids said to *Sítá*:—"When your husband comes to see you, do not speak to him too soon, but let him entreat and flatter you for a long while before you open your mouth; and when you do speak you must say but little, for a husband soon becomes weary of a prattling wife." But the other maids said:—"This counsel is not good, and we advise you to talk to your husband, and do your best to please him; for the lotos is never weary of giving honey to the bee, and yet the love between them is never diminished; and if by your wit you can defeat your husband, it will give us all a power over him, and make mirth for the morrow." Sítá blushed at these words, and the maids then brought her to Ráma; but she was fearful of approaching her husband, like one who sees a radiant gem in the head of a serpent, but is fearful lest he should have a poisonous fang. The maids then said to her:—"Wherefore this reluctance? No one will force you into the presence of your husband, just as no one would force another to bathe in the water of the Ganges, but he must do so of his own accord." At that moment a lion roared out in the jungle, and Sítá trembled as she heard the roaring; and the cunning maids said to her:—"The

Advice given to Sítá by her maids.

Timidity of Sítá.

Remonstrances of Ráma.

roaring is that of a Rákshasa, and you must now take refuge with him who conquered Táraká and the other Rákshasas, for no one save Ráma can protect you from this great peril." So Sítá approached her husband, and sat blushing near him, and Ráma said to her:—"Why do you sit thus, O my beloved? Why do you not show your beautiful face to me, and turn upon me the light of your lustrous eyes? But if you will not look me in the face, at least gratify my passionate heart with the nectar of your words: Yet why be fearful of me? The lotos is never fearful of the bee." And he took her by the hand, and Sítá trembled like one who shrinks from plunging in a tank on a winter morning.

Decorations of the bridal chamber.

Meanwhile the bridal chamber was beautifully adorned with flowers and garlands. On the walls were wreaths of flowers shaped like trees, and deer, and birds of bright plumage, and cats, and snakes, and bees, and flags, and mimic gardens; and there also was the semblance of a pond, the water of which was formed of black crystals, and it was as it were filled with flowers, and on each of the four sides of it were steps for going into the pond. In the middle of the chamber was the bridal couch decorated with garlands, and the legs of it were of purest ivory, and the bed was very soft, and it was whiter than the moon, or the sacred shell, or the whitest of white flowers. Lamps of gold were lighted, and golden pots were filled with water as clear as crystal, and with camphorated and perfumed water; and betel was prepared, and pots of sandal, with garlands round the necks of the pots. And the entrance to the room was adorned with plantain trees, and with branches of the mango tree arranged in pots, which were adorned with flowers.

The bridal couch.

Description of the honeymoon.

When the night had passed away and the sun was rising in the heavens, the maids went in and awoke the sleeping pair, and they made much mirth at Sítá; and after this the honeymoon passed away in love and joy, and Ráma was ever happy in the company of his wife.

Ráma and Sítá playing at dice.

One day Ráma and Sítá sat down to play at dice, and Sítá said to Ráma:—"I do not like to play for nothing." So it was agreed between them that the one who lost the game should give a good gift

to the Dwija, or twice born.[9] And they sat down to play, and the board and the dice were made of ivory, and the balls were of gold. And Sítá won the game, and Ráma arose and gave her a kiss; and Sítá then said to her husband:—"What does this mean? I defeated you, and then you come and kiss me." Ráma replied:—"I duly paid the wager: I had to give a good gift to the Dwija, but Dwija signifies 'teeth' as well as 'twice born,' and in bringing my lips to your teeth I gave a good gift to the Dwija." Sítá replied:—"I shall not play such a game with you again, for you will ever be the winner; if you lose you will kiss me, and if I lose I shall have to kiss you."

Rama's joke.

Ráma compares Sítá with different things in nature.

One evening after this, the moon was at the full, and Ráma and Sítá went to the banks of a beautiful pond which was filled with lotos flowers, and Ráma began to compare her with the scenes before them. He said:—"The lotos resembles your graceful form, the moss is like your hair, the bees are like your eyes, the reflection of the moon upon the water is like your face, the stalks of the lotos are like your arms, and the buds of the lotos are like your bosom." Then they went down into the pond, and threw water at one another; and as their garments hung down from the water, Ráma threw lotos flowers upon his wife's bosom. Presently Sítá got out of her depth, and caught hold of Ráma's neck, and he was so happy to have his wife's arms round his neck that he was in no hurry to bring her out of the deep water. Then they played at hide-and-seek amongst the lotos flowers, and Ráma went first to hide, and he kept only his face above the surface of the water; and when Sítá went to search for him, she was doubtful whether she saw the face of her husband, or only a blue lotos; and she went to smell the flower, when their lips met, and Ráma kissed her. Then Sítá went and hid herself in like manner, and when Ráma saw her, he kissed her many times, but she remained perfectly still. At last they came out of the water, and each of

Sports of the married pair in the pond.

Ráma and Sítá drink honey together.

[9] The Bráhmans were known as the twice-born. Ráma and Sítá are here represented as playing to see who should give a handsome present to the Bráhmans.

them drank a cup of honey; and the heart of Sítá was exhilarated like one who has drank wine.[10] Thus the heroic Ráma and the beautiful Sítá lived in the highest felicity, even as Vishnu lives with the beautiful Lakshmí.

Review of the foregoing story of the honeymoon of Ráma.

To review such a narrative as the foregoing from a European point of view is simply impossible. Even an attempt to describe a honeymoon is perhaps scarcely in accordance with modern taste; for whatever may have been the custom of a past generation, modern manners seem to demand that a bride and bridegroom should retire from the view of their relatives and friends after the performance of the ceremony, and live in some degree of privacy until they have settled down to the calm routine of matrimonial life. Then, again, a European newly-married pair are supposed to have arrived at years of discretion, and to follow pursuits corresponding to a mature age. But the story of Ráma's honeymoon is little more than a description of the sportive play of a boy-husband and girl-wife, under conditions altogether foreign to European experience. The scene lies in the inner retreat of a Hindú palace. The complexion, age, dress, and manners of the young couple are all opposed to European ideas. The bridegroom is a handsome boy of sixteen with a blue complexion. He is arrayed in a coat of cloth of gold, and his trowsers are made of dyed cotton or silk embroidered with flowers. He has a golden tiara on his head, earrings in his ears, and necklaces of pearls or gems hanging down upon his bosom. The bride is a delicate young girl of fourteen with a complexion the colour of gold, but

Wide difference between a European and a Hindú honeymoon.

Ráma and Sítá little better than children.

Description of Ráma as a Hindú bridegroom of sixteen.

Description of Sítá as a Hindú bride of fourteen.

[10] In the original, Sítá is described as being really intoxicated, and as uttering an amount of gibberish which cannot be reproduced in English.

still very fair. She is arrayed in a light shawl-like garment of a rose-red colour, embroidered with gold. Her raven-black hair is wrought into platted locks on each temple, and drawn in graceful curves on either side from her forehead to her ears; whilst the jetty tresses are glistening with jewelled butterflies, and other gossamery ornaments. Her ears and nose are alike resplendent with jewels; her wrists and arms are adorned with bracelets; her slender ancles are circled round with golden rings; whilst little golden bells twinkle upon her toes as she walks with naked feet over the carpeted floor. Such is the model of a Hindú bride, who has only just been carried from the bosom of her family to the house of her husband, or her husband's father. In educational matters she is perhaps more ignorant than a parish girl in England, but in rank and blood and manners she is a perfect Princess, a royal lady, as graceful and charming as a nymph in Indra's heaven, but pure as the driven snow. Such then were the pretty bridal-pair, whose presence was the delight of the whole household; a pair of youthful Hindú lovers, who played at dice for kisses, or sported in the pond at moonlight, or drank honey together, with all the innocence of married children, surrounded by all the luxury of a Hindú zenana, and without a single care in all the world.[11]

Sports of the married Hindú lovers.

[11] The picture of the married life of Ráma and Sítá is presented in the Adhyátma Rámáyana in a more Brahmanical form, as will be seen from the following extract:—

"When Ráma had married Sítá, and had conducted her to Ayodhyá, he built apartments for her adorned with gold and gems. So great was the quantity of jewels, the reflection from them was far beyond that which could be produced by innumerable tapers; the darkness of night was not known in her mansion. In those apartments a throne studded with gems was erected, on which Ráma sat every day elegantly adorned. Sítá stood at his left side holding in her hands a fan orna-

mented with precious stones, with which she fanned him. The body of Ráma resembled the lotos; he wore on his shoulders a veil of yellow brocade; earrings in the form of fish were pendent from his ears; a crown of pearls was on his head, and a string of rubies on his neck. His clothes sparkled with every species of jewels, his countenance was luminous as a million suns and moons.

"He was one day sitting in this apartment eating the betel-leaf which he had received from the hand of Sitá; he looked on Sitá's face and smiled; Sitá also looking towards Ráma, smiled in the most affectionate manner. At this time the Bráhman sage Nárada came into the apartment. The body of Nárada resembled the purest crystal; the clothes he wore were as red as the rose. He played on the Vina, and he was chaunting a hymn in which the name of Ráma was frequently repeated, for his whole thoughts were bent on Ráma. Nárada is acquainted with the present, the past, and the future. When Ráma beheld him he descended from his throne, and conducted him into his apartment. Ráma and Sitá placing him on their throne, stood before him with joined hands; they worshipped him with pious affection, and walked round him three times. They washed his feet, they then threw the water on their own heads, saying:—'Thy condescension, Nárada! in exhibiting thyself before us, is unbounded; it is not in our power to account for our good fortune.' These words of respect paid him by Ráma filled the heart of Nárada with delight, and he praised Ráma as the Sovereign Lord and Deity, and identified Ráma and Sitá with each of the deities by name. 'What power,' he said, 'have I to relate thy former history: All the women of the world are stamped with the image of Sitá; all mankind with thine; thus the three worlds, which I have seen, are not in appearance different from Ráma and Sitá.' ....

"In this manner did Nárada rehearse the praises of Ráma, while tears of joy fell from both his eyes. Then with joined hands he again addressed him:—

"'Brahma, O Lord! has sent me to present sundry requests to thee; if it be thy pleasure I will mention them.' Ráma said:—'Speak.' Nárada answered:—'My request is this: Thou, Ráma! hast assumed an incarnation of the flesh for the purpose of destroying Rávana: Thou thyself declarest that thou wouldst perform this deed, and that thou wouldst descend into the world to remove the burden from the face of the earth: Now I understand that Maháraja Dasaratha proposes to resign his throne to thee: Whilst thou art engaged in the government of the kingdom, thou wilt forget to destroy Rávana, and this important event will not be accomplished: Thou, Lord! hast voluntarily entered into this compact, that thou wouldst appear on the earth, and that thou wouldst render light the burden of the world: Confirm the engagement into which thou hast entered: Thy promises ever have from the utmost period of time been sacred; whatever thou hast declared, whatever thou hast designed, that has been carried into effect: We are reduced to great distress; condescend to remove our sorrows: We have taken refuge at thy feet; comply, O Lord, with our petition, and afford us thy assistance without delay.'

"Ráma, on this address from Nárada, considered a little within himself, and thus spoke:—'Be not troubled in thy mind, Nárada! it is my firm and unalterable intention to carry into execution those engagements into which I have entered: Never will I retract my word: I recollect my promise; I will fulfil it in due season: Rávana shall obtain the full reward of such religious observances, charity, and good works, as he may have performed during former births; and when the benefits of his religious acts shall cease I will destroy him.'"

CHAPTER VI.

RÁMA APPOINTED YUVARAJA.

THE marriage of Ráma having been brought to a happy conclusion, there seemed to be only one thing wanting to complete his earthly prosperity, and that was his elevation to the throne. It appears to have been an ancient custom in Asiatic monarchies, for the heir-apparent to be solemnly recognized as such in the lifetime of his father, by being formally installed in the regal dignity, and admitted to a share in the administration. The object of this custom appears to have been threefold. In the first place, it settled the succession, and prevented any civil war between rival claimants for the throne, which might arise at the death of the sovereign. Secondly, it furnished an aged or infirm ruler with a youthful coadjutor, who might relieve him of all the more active duties of Government, military as well as civil. Finally, it familiarized the young Prince with the administration of justice and other branches of government, and enabled him on the death of his father to fulfil with efficiency all the duties of Asiatic sovereignty. Under such circumstances an heir-apparent on attaining his majority would be solemnly installed as Raja; and henceforth he would receive the title of Yuvaraja, or "little

Temporal prosperity of Ráma.

Ancient appointment of the heir-apparent to be co-Rája during his father's lifetime.

Threefold object of the custom.

(1.) Settling the succession.

(2.) Assisting the reigning Raja.

(3.) Educating the young Prince.

Installed as Raja under the title of Yuvaraja.

"Raja," and would be presumed to act in subordination to his father, who would still retain the title of Mahárája, or "great Raja."

General political importance of the installation.

The installation of a Yuvaraja would naturally be regarded throughout the Raj as an important political event; as the accession of a young and promising Prince would be expected to result in such an infusion of new blood into the administration as would materially affect the interests of both Chieftains and people. But in its social aspect such an event would not fail to excite a far deeper interest in the court and palace. In cases where the Mahárája was blessed with a single consort, the nomination of a Yuvaraja would be commonly attended with no difficulty, as the eldest son would naturally occupy the position; although exceptional cases might occasionally arise, as in the royal house of Bhárata, in which the claim of a nephew seemed to override that of a son, and the rivalry ultimately led to a disastrous war. But in families where the Mahárája was married to more than one wife, the nomination of a Yuvaraja would frequently be a source of intrigues which would keep the inner apartments in a constant turmoil. The enmities and heart-burnings of the rival women would be kept alive by the ambition of the mothers for the elevation of their respective sons. The apparently just claim of the first wife to see her son appointed Yuvaraja might in the case of an aged and uxorious Mahárája be set aside by a younger and more favoured rival. Meanwhile, any extra attention which the Mahárája might pay to a favourite consort would be construed into an intention to elevate her son to the throne, and would thus arouse both the

Social importance in the Court and palace.

Natural appointment of the eldest son when the Mahárája had only one wife.

Intrigues where the Mahárája indulged in polygamy.

Jealousy of the wife inflamed by the ambition of the mother.

Opposition of the youngest favourite to the first wife.

jealousy of the wife and the wrath of the mother. The slave girls of every Rání would also espouse the cause of their respective mistresses, and by their sympathies and tale-bearings would inflame their wrath to the utmost; until at last the pent-up feelings of the affronted wives would burst into flames, and the peace of the Mahárája would be lost for ever.

Partisanship of the slave girls of the palace.

Nor are these circumstances surprising when the conditions of zenana life are taken into consideration. Passions, such as pride, ambition, jealousy, and malice—which in Europe are subdued by the moral influence of general society—become intensified in the confined atmosphere of the zenana, in which that influence is generally wanting. Here a number of ignorant and passionate women are herded in separate apartments, without any accomplishment or duty that would serve to occupy their mind, without any society beyond that of their slaves and parasites who are more illiterate and cunning than themselves, and with all their energies concentrated into one pursuit of so influencing the mind of the Mahárája as to secure the welfare of their own sons at the expense of the sons of his other wives. Under such circumstances the feminine mind is left to brood at will over real or imagined wrongs, and the prospect of revenge, until sentiment, kindliness, and even humanity, are utterly crushed in the female bosom, and the woman grows into a cruel and relentless tigress. Moreover, the question of the succession, which under any circumstances would excite the antagonism of rival claimants, becomes of paramount importance on other grounds. The question is not merely whose son shall succeed to

Intrigues embittered by the conditions of zenana life.

The passions stimulated by want of society and occupation.

Tenderness of the woman changed to the ferocity of the tigress.

Vital importance of the question of succession in polygamous households.

Involves the question of which wife shall rule the family.

the throne, but which wife shall rule the royal household; for the mother of the Yuvaraja would naturally secure that position, whatever might be the claims of the eldest Rání; and it can easily be imagined that the mortification of an elder wife in finding herself subordinate to a younger and more successful rival would prove a fertile source of protracted misery, and perhaps would entail the most poignant anguish which a woman could be called upon to bear. The mortification of the son would add to the affliction of the mother. She would see him become the obsequious servant of the son of a hated rival, whilst she herself would be compelled to submit during the remainder of her life to the airs and caprices of a detested woman, through whom her son had lost his birthright, and she herself had been deprived of the affection of her lord.

Anguish of an elder wife at being subordinate to a younger rival, and seeing her own son subordinate to the rival's son.

The tradition of the appointment of Ráma to be Yuvaraja furnishes a graphic illustration of the inner life in the zenana of a Hindú Raja, under circumstances similar to those which have been indicated. It must, however, be borne in mind that the object of the author of the Rámáyana was not so much to exhibit the traditionary life of Ráma in all the truthfulness of authentic detail, as to represent Ráma himself as a Hindú model of goodness, who was equally beloved by all, by the people as well as by the Ministers and Chieftains, and even by all the wives and all the sons of the Mahárája. Glimpses however of the ancient and authentic tradition are sufficiently manifest throughout the whole narrative; and it is by no means difficult to perceive that the real state of affairs in the court of the Mahárája was somewhat of the following character. The two claimants for

Appointment of Ráma to be Yuvaraja an illustration of zenana life.

Obscurity arising from the modification of the ancient tradition for the purpose of presenting Ráma as a model.

Probable nature of the real state of affairs.

the dignity of Yuvaraja in Ayodhyá appear to have been Ráma the son of Kausalyá, and Bharata the son of Kaikeyí. The mother of Ráma was the first wife of the Maháraja, and consequently would have the first claim. The mother of Bharata, however, was the youngest wife of the Maháraja, and by means of her youth and beauty she appears to have exercised a considerable influence over the uxorious Maháraja. The two remaining sons, Lakshmana and Satrughna, appear to have had no prospect whatever of succeeding; and although born of one mother, they appear to have taken different sides; Lakshmana being the particular friend of Ráma, whilst Satrughna was the particular friend and follower of Bharata. This point, however, is not clearly stated in the Rámáyana, as, according to the Brahmanical author, both the young Princes, and even Bharata himself, fully recognized on all occasions the superior claims of Ráma.

Opposition of Ráma to Bharata.

Relative position of their mothers.

Partisanship of Lakshmana and Satrughna.

The progress of the intrigues in the palace at Ayodhyá may be inferred in like manner, although the particulars are rather obscurely related in the Rámáyana. The young and beautiful Kaikeyí, proud of her influence over the Maháraja, had probably determined from a very early period that her son Bharata should succeed to the Raj. On the other hand, the first wife, Kausalyá, had been nervously jealous lest her more favoured rival should tempt the Maháraja to commit an injustice by setting aside Ráma and appointing Bharata. As for the Maháraja he seems to have been disinclined to admit either of his sons to a share in the administration; and at length only yielded when he found that his Chieftains and people were determined to press the

Progress of the intrigues.

Opposition of Kaikeyi, the younger wife, to Kausalyá, the first wife.

Views of the Maháraja.

measure. Having seen, however, the necessity for appointing a Yuvaraja, he seems to have preferred Ráma; probably considering him to be the rightful heir as the son of the first wife. With this view he appears to have sent away Bharata and Satrughna to the distant city of Girivraja, which belonged to the father of Kaikeyí, in order that their presence might occasion no interruption to the installation of Ráma.

Preference for Ráma.

Bharata sent to the city of his maternal grandfather.

With these explanations the narrative of the appointment of Ráma to be Yuvaraja may now be related as follows:—

Tradition as related in the Rámáyana.

Now Ráma was the son of Kausalyá, and his brother Bharata was the son of Kaikeyí. And it came to pass that Yudhájit, the brother of Kaikeyí, came to Ayodhyá to visit his sister; and the Maháraja received him kindly and entertained him well. And when Yudhájit prepared to return to his father's city, the Maháraja determined that his son Bharata should accompany him; and he sent for Bharata and desired him to take leave of his mother Kaikeyí, and to prepare to go with his brother Satrughna to the city of Raja Aswapati, the father of his mother Kaikeyí. And Kaikeyí rejoiced exceedingly when she heard that her son Bharata was going with her brother to the house of her father. And the Maháraja said to Bharata:—"Go, my gentle one, to the house of your grandfather, accompanied by your brother Satrughna, and revere your grandfather as a deity: Serve the Bráhmans with the utmost assiduity, and ask counsel of them, for they are the gods of the earth: Constantly travel on horse-back, in a chariot, or on an elephant, and make yourself master of singing, and playing, and painting, and dancing, and never sit for a moment in idleness: Never speak a harsh word to any body, for one harsh word will spoil all your good qualities; and ever send messengers to me, as my heart will rejoice greatly to hear of your welfare."

Visit of Yudhájit, brother of Kaikeyí and uncle of Bharata.

The Maháraja determines to send away Bharata with Yudhájit.

Joy of Kaikeyí.

Commands given by the Maháraja to Bharata.

Departure of Bharata and Satrughna.

So Bharata took leave of his father and brethren, and then bowed to his mother Kaikeyí, and the other wives of his father, and departed with his uncle and his brother Satrughna; and after travelling many days, and passing many delightful forests, rivers and mountains, he approached the pleasant city of Girivraja, and the palace of his grandfather Aswapati. Bharata then sent on a trusty messenger to announce his arrival to his royal grandfather; and the Raja, hearing the words of the messenger, was greatly pleased, and caused the highly honoured Bharata to be introduced into the city. Then the people of the city watered their streets, and decorated them with garlands of wild flowers, and flags placed on high, and perfumed them with sweet-smelling drugs; and all the people went out with a number of beautiful dancing girls dressed in gay attire, and welcomed Bharata to the city amidst the sound of trumpets; and all the heralds and eulogists walked before Bharata and proclaimed the greatness of his name and lineage: In this manner Bharata slowly arrived at the palace of his grandfather, and there beheld the aged Raja, and did him obeisance, and inquired after his welfare. He then entered the inner apartments, and bowed to the ladies of the royal household. After this Bharata dwelt in the greatest felicity in the palace of his grandfather, who appointed instructors for him; and Bharata attended upon his instructors with all diligence; and he studied the Vedas, and the Vedángas, and the Sastras, and perfected himself in all the sciences and the mechanical arts. And he acquired a perfect knowledge of the whole science of archery, and was deeply versed in the duties of royalty, and very skilful in the management of elephants and chariots, and eminent in writing and composition, and accomplished in leaping and vaulting, and perfect in the knowledge of the stars. Then Bharata sent a messenger to his father Dasaratha to acquaint him with all he had done; and the Maháraja and the Ránís rejoiced greatly at the pleasing tidings brought by the messenger, and sent him back with proper presents to his sons Bharata and Satrughna.

Arrival at the city of Raja Aswapati.

Public rejoicings.

Bharata and Satrughna dwelt in the palace of Raja Aswapati.

Studies of Bharata.

And it came to pass that the Chieftains and people of Ayodhyá began to consider which of the Princes should be appointed Yuvaraja, to assist the aged Maháraja in the administration of the Raj, and on his death to succeed him on the throne.

Question as to which of the Princes should be appointed Yuvaraja.

Now Maháraja Dasaratha loved all his four sons, but he had the greatest regard for Ráma; for Ráma was a mine of excellence, eminent in wisdom and religion, learned, generous, of quick perception, pleasing in speech, heroic, but not elated with his own great valour, of incomparable address, reverencing the aged, devotedly attached to those who were devoted to him, the delight of all the people of the Raj, honouring the Bráhmans, compassionate to all who were in distress, and with all his passions under perfect control. And the thought came into the mind of the Maháraja that he would appoint his son Ráma to be Yuvaraja, and his associate in the government of the Raj. And all the Ministers and Counsellors, and all the people of the Raj, consulted together how they should entreat the Maháraja to appoint Ráma to be Yuvaraja. And the Ministers and Counsellors went to the palace, and said:—"O Maháraja, listen to the voice of your people! You are the Raja of Rajas; you are the greatest amongst men: At the sacrifice of your happiness you have governed us for nine thousand years,[1] and under your rule every one has been happy, and no one has ever dreamed even of any misery or misfortune: Now it is the wish of all, that Ráma should be placed upon the throne and entrusted with the government of the Raj, that you may retire from the duties of sovereignty, and spend the remainder of your years in sacrifice and religious ceremony, and so secure heaven in your next life." And the Maháraja was glad at heart to hear these words, but he feigned anger, and replied in severe terms, as follows:—"What faults have you discovered in me? Why do you wish my son to be Raja whilst I am alive? Have I ever deprived any one of his rights, that you now desire me

Partiality of the Maháraja for Ráma.

Virtues of Ráma.

Resolution of the Maháraja to appoint Ráma to be Yuvaraja.

Ministers, Counsellors, and people request the Maháraja to retire in favour of Ráma.

Feigned anger of the Maháraja.

[1] This is one of those palpable exaggerations as regards numbers which so frequently deface Brahmanical literature.

to retire?" Then the Ministers and Chieftains said that they meant no evil to him, but that they all loved Ráma. So the Maháraja called together a great Council of all his Ministers and Counsellors, and all the Chieftains of the Raj, to discuss the installation of Ráma; and all the officers of the army, and all the people of the city of Ayodhyá and the country of Kosala were in like manner gathered together.[2]

A great Council summoned.

Speech of the Maháraja expressing a desire to retire in favour of Ráma, and to appoint Ráma Yuvaraja.

Now when the Ministers, and Counsellors, and all the Chieftains were assembled in the Council hall, the Maháraja addressed them in a grave and majestic voice, as follows:—"This day I consider myself to be the happiest of all men, and I am assured that I cannot reward you sufficiently for the great joy you have given to me by your proposal: I myself have been for a long while desirous of placing Ráma upon the throne; but I would not discover my wish until I knew what were your thoughts upon the measure: Now that you have expressed your wishes, let there be no further delay in the matter: It is well known to all of you that this excellent Raj was nourished by my royal ancestors as a father nourishes his sons; and I have persevered in the path trodden by my ancestors, and have constantly and vigilantly preserved my subjects to the utmost of my power: But this frame of mine has become old under the shadow of the royal umbrella, and I am worn out with the weight of the duties of sovereignty, and I desire rest: My excellent son Ráma I wish to appoint Yuvaraja; to him I commit the government of the Raj; do you accept him for your Raja, or make known some other measure which will prove better for the common weal."

Joy of the assembly.

Then all the Chieftains there assembled rejoiced as the peacocks rejoice at the coming of rain, and a pleasing sound like the rushing of chariots ran through the whole assembly. Having heard the desire of the Maháraja, the Chieftains replied to him as follows:—"O Maháraja, you are many thousand years old, we pray you to appoint Ráma to

Reply of the Chieftains that Ráma should be coadjutor with the Maháraja.

[2] The proceedings in connection with the installation of Ráma seem to indicate an attention to constitutional forms. But this point will be noticed hereafter in reviewing the narrative.

be your associate in the Raj; we desire that the mighty Ráma, riding on an elephant, may be overshadowed with the royal umbrella." The Maháraja, hearing these words, was gratified in mind; but still being anxious to know more, he inquired of the Council as follows:—"O Chieftains, you desire that Ráma should become Yuvaraja; but tell me, I pray you, why do you desire to see my son associated with me while I govern the Raj in righteousness?" The Chieftains replied to the Maháraja in these words:—"O Maháraja, in every divine quality your son Ráma is equal to Indra: He transcends in excellence the whole race of Ikshwáku: In wisdom he is equal to the holy Vrihaspatí, the preceptor of the gods: His glory and renown are continually increasing, for he reveres the aged, the learned, and the Bráhmans: In war he is irresistible, whether against gods, or demons, or men; for he is skilful in the use of all weapons, whether human or divine: When he goes out against foreign enemies, accompanied by his brother Lakshmana, he always conquers their cities; and when he returns from the battle, whether he be seated on an elephant or in a chariot, he ever inquires after the welfare of the citizens, like a father inquiring after the welfare of his children, saying:—'Is it well with your sons, and your fathers, and your wives, and your servants?' Thus, O Raja of Rajas, does Ráma ever address us: He is afflicted at our distresses, and he rejoices in our joys: He is ever truthful, ever attentive to the aged, a famous archer, never speaking without a benign smile, and never inclining to the love of women. He is never angry without a just cause, and never bestows a favour on one who is unworthy: He upholds the law by protecting the innocent and destroying the criminal: All the people of the city and country pray for the health and strength and long life of the magnanimous Ráma, whether they be servants or bearers of burdens, citizens or ryots, young or old: We therefore supplicate you, O Maháraja, that you will install your excellent son Ráma as your coadjutor in the administration of the Raj."

The Chieftains recite the many merits of Ráma.

His wisdom and bravery.

His kind words.

His truth, continence, and justice.

Universal popularity.

The Maháraja makes known his delight.

The aged Maháraja then said to all his people:—"I am

transported with delight: It is your desire that my eldest and beloved son Ráma should be my associate in the Raj." Then turning to his illustrious preceptors, Vasishtha and Vámadeva, he said to them in the presence of all the people: —"This delightful month Chitra, in which the forests are adorned with flowers, is sacred and auspicious; prepare then all things for the installation of Ráma as Yuvaraja." At the words of the Maháraja a mighty shout arose among the people, and when the sound had somewhat ceased, the Maháraja said to Vasishtha:—"O chief of sages, it is proper for you to say what should be the ceremonies performed at the installation of Ráma." Vasishtha then said to the servants of the Maháraja:—"Prepare the gold and the jewels, the purifying bath of the gods, the incense, the garlands of white flowers, the parched grain, the honey, the clarified butter, the insignia of royalty, and all things necessary for the installation of the Yuvaraja, and place them in the house set apart for the sacred fire of the Maháraja: Provide also abundance of food, dressed and seasoned, together with curds and milk sufficient for the wants of a hundred thousand Bráhmans, and fill golden pots with water from the sacred rivers: To-morrow at sunrise the Bráhmans must strew the rice upon the earth, and invoke the blessing of the gods upon the installation of Ráma. Therefore let the Bráhmans be invited to attend, and the throne be prepared, and the banners be elevated on high, and the chief roads be well watered; and let musicians, and beautiful damsels gaily adorned, fill the inner court of the royal palace; and let rice and other food, with fees for the Bráhmans, and garlands of flowers, be placed on all the temples, and beneath all the sacred trees; and let heroic warriors, armed with long swords and clothed in clean raiment, enter the first court of the Maháraja."

Directs his two priests to prepare for Ráma's installation.

General acclamations.

Vasishtha, at the request of the Maháraja, recites what will be necessary for the ceremony.

The installation fixed for the morrow.

Then the Maháraja said to his chosen Counsellor Sumantra:—"Bring hither the accomplished Ráma!" And Sumantra brought Ráma in a chariot to the royal palace; and the Maháraja, adorned with jewels, and with gratified heart, was sitting in his palace as conspicuous amongst his Chief-

The Maháraja sends for Ráma.

tains as Indra among the Maruts, when he beheld his god-like son approaching. Presently Ráma descended from his chariot, and with joined hands followed Sumantra, and entered the palace, which was as resplendent as the summit of the Kailása mountain, and went into the presence of his father, and bowed at his feet. The Maháraja then took his son Ráma by his two hands, and drew him towards him, and clasped him in his arms, and commanded a throne to be set before him, lofty, brilliant, and adorned with gold and gems. Then the Maháraja, seeing his son standing before him adorned with jewels, like his own image reflected in a mirror, was the happiest of fathers; and he said to Ráma —

Ráma arrives at the palace.

Received graciously by the Maháraja.

"All men owe three great debts; the first to the gods, the second to the Rishis, and the third to their ancestors; the first I have paid by sacrifices and ceremonies, the second by learning the Vedas and the Sastras, and your birth has freed me from the third: I have now one wish remaining; listen to my words and promise that you will gratify me: You were born of my first wife, and you are the eldest of my four sons; and all my subjects and Chieftains and Counsellors are desirous of seeing you upon the throne: I wish you therefore to comply with their request: Do not hesitate to do so on account of my being alive, for it has always been the rule of my race that when a Maháraja grows old, he should give the Raj to his eldest son and retire to the forest: So I wish you to reign in my stead, and relieve me from all my cares, that I may retire to a holy place and worship Vishnu: Three planets are placed in malignant aspect to my star, namely, Súrya, Mungul, and Rahu; and the astrologers say that such aspects generally portend the death of a Raja, and will certainly subject him to dreadful misfortunes: But to-morrow is auspicious, for the moon passes into the favourable mansion of Pushyá; therefore to-morrow I will install you as Yuvaraja: Pass the night with your wife Sítá, sleeping on a couch of kusa grass with a stone for your pillar; and let your friends surround you on all sides, and remain sober, and watch with you: The absence of Bharata is the proper time for your installation; Bharata is obedient to his elder

Speech of the Maháraja to Ráma.

Requests Ráma to become Yuvaraja.

His own planet threatened by three malignant aspects.

Passing of the moon on the morrow into Pushyá.

Ráma directed to keep watch until the morning.

brother, but still the mind of man is inconstant; therefore keep watch until the morrow."

Ráma proceeds to his mother's apartments.

Ráma having received the instructions of the Máharaja, bowed his head, and went his way to the apartments of his mother Kausalyá; and there he beheld his devout mother, attired in silk, and supplicating the gods in silence, for the prosperity of her son; and Sumitrá, the youngest of the Ránís, and Sítá, and Lakshmana were attending on Kausalyá, as she sat with her eyes fixed in mental supplication to the gods, and contemplated the great Vishnu. Ráma approached her, and bowed with joy at her feet, and said:—

Acquaints her of his coming elevation.

"O mother, I am chosen by the Maháraja to govern the subjects of the Raj: To-morrow my installation will take place by the command of my father."

Joy of Kausalyá.

Now Kausalyá had been long desirous that her son should obtain the Raj, and she replied to Ráma with tears of happiness, saying:—"O my beloved son Ráma, may your life be long, and all your oppressors be destroyed: Favoured by Lakshmí, who is the goddess of all prosperity, all the kinsfolk of myself and Sumitrá will be filled with joy: O my dear son, surely you were born under an auspicious star, seeing that your father Dasaratha has been moved by your excellent qualities: My devotion to Vishnu has been effectual, since the good genius of the Raj of Ikshwáku[3] will condescend to reside with you."

Ráma's kind address to his brother Lakshmana.

Having been thus addressed by his mother, Ráma turned to his brother Lakshmana with a smile and said:—"O Lakshmana, share the Raj with me: Let my good fortune attend you as my second self: Enjoy, O son of Sumitrá, the pleasures that spring from royalty, for I desire life and a Raj for your sake."

Goes home.

Ráma then bowed to the feet of both his mothers, and gave directions to Sítá, and went his way to his own house.

Vasishtha, by direction of the Maháraja, visits Ráma.

Meanwhile the Maháraja called his priest Vasishtha, and said to him:—"Go now and cause Ráma to fast this day according to the ordinance." The divine Vasishtha, profound

[3] Ikshwáku was a celebrated ancestor of the Rajas of Kosala, and in all probability was the founder of the royal line; all his predecessors being of a mythical character, consisting of Rishis, who were either the ancestors or the descendants of the Sun.

in the knowledge of the Vedas, replied :—"Even so." And Vasishtha mounted his chariot, and quickly arrived at the house of Ráma, which was as resplendent as a bright cloud; and he entered the third court, and Ráma hastened to him, and assisted him to dismount from his chariot. Then the venerable Bráhman blessed Ráma, and said :—"O Ráma, your father is gracious to you: This day you must fast with Sítá, and on the morrow the Mahárája will install you as his associate in the Raj." Then Ráma respectfully bowed his head, and said :—"It is an auspicious and sacred day." And Ráma worshipped the sage, and presented him with ten thousand cows; and Vasishtha, having laid his injunctions upon him, took his leave.[4] Then Ráma bathed himself, and with devout mind he approached Vishnu with his beloved wife, and placing on his head the vessel containing the purifying liquids,[5] he offered clarified butter to the gods, and gave it to the fire according to the ordinance. He then meditated on the god Vishnu, and with his passions under

Vasishtha's directions to Ráma.

Ráma worships Vasishtha.

Sacrifices to Vishnu.

Keeps watch throughout the night in the temple of Vishnu.

[4] The narrative of Vasishtha's visit to Ráma is somewhat differently related in the Adhyátma Rámáyana for the purpose of laying more stress upon the divine character of Ráma. The passage is as follows:—

"Vasishtha then proceeded to wait on Ráma. The latter went to meet him, made his obeisance, and conducted him into his apartment, where he placed the spiritual guide on a seat, brought water to wash his feet, which he poured on his own head, and then spoke:—'This is a happy day to me, inasmuch as I have been able to sprinkle the water from thy feet upon my head; that thou hast visited me in my own apartment; I am by this means freed from the bondage of sin.' Vasishtha at these words considered a little time within himself, and thus answered:—'Wherefore hast thou, O Lord! thus forgot thyself? I know thee well: The Ganges which purifies all things, flowed originally from thy feet, and the great god Siva, knowing the excellence of it, received it on his head: My father Brahma ever sprinkles on his head the water with which thou hast bathed thy feet, being confident he shall be exalted from it: Thou art the Lord of all, and in accordance with the prayer of Brahma and the gods, hast assumed the human form to punish the evil-doers, Rávana and his iniquitous followers: I have taken upon myself an inferior position in this world, and taken upon myself the priesthood, having learned from Bráhma that thou wouldst appear among the descendants of the Sun.' . . . . . .
Sítá, the object of thy affection, has thrown the veil of delusion over the senses of the whole world; she has done it by means of thy divine power: Desire this delight of thy soul not to cast the veil over me, that my soul may always be inclined towards thee: This is the request I had to make."

[5] The purifying liquids are the five products of the sacred cow, viz. milk, curds, butter, urine, and ordure.

strict control, and his speech restrained, he lay in the temple of Vishnu, on a bed of well-spread kusa grass by the side of the fortunate Sítá, keeping watch the whole night.

Rejoicings in the house of Ráma.

All this time the house of Ráma was enlivened with joyful faces, as a lake abounding in water-lilies is enlivened by the inebriated bees; and as Vasishtha left the house and made his way to the royal palace, the high road of the city

Rejoicings throughout the city of Ayodhyá.

of Ayodhyá was crowded with a joyful multitude, which moved to and fro like the waves of the sea, whilst their noise was like that of the roaring of a tempest. Throughout the night

Illuminations and purifications.

the whole city was illuminated by clusters of lamps, and every road and pathway was cleansed from impurity, and every house was filled with men, women, and children, all longing for the installation of Ráma, and anxiously watching

Adorning of the city at sunrise.

for the rising of the sun. At the first dawning of the morning all the citizens of Ayodhyá began to adorn the city. They watered the streets with fragrant waters, and strewed the roads with flowers; and they set up glittering banners upon the bright temples of the gods, and at the corners of the streets, and on the sacred trees, and on the tops of stately houses, and at the bazaars and shops, and at the

Young and old exult in the installation of Ráma,

courts of justice and hall of assembly. And the multitudes, young and old, were exhilarated by companies of beautiful dancing-girls, and by singers and musicians; and everywhere the people conversed together respecting the installation of Ráma; and even the children, as they played together in the court-yards or under the porticoes, were ever saying the one to the other:—"This day Ráma is to be

Country people flock into the city to behold the installation.

anointed Raja." Meanwhile the glad tidings of Ráma's installation had been carried far away from the city into the country of Kosala; and the ryots and the husbandmen and the herdsmen were all eager to witness the ceremony, and they flocked into Ayodhyá from all quarters, so that the sound of the multitude was like that of the rushing of the flood-tide rolling in from the sea at the waxing and waning of the moon.

Review of the narrative in the Rámáyana.

In the foregoing narrative of the proceedings con-

nected with the appointment of Ráma to be Yuvaraja, a few of the details have been slightly Brahmanized. Thus Vasishtha, the priest, is introduced for the unnecessary purpose of giving to Ráma almost the same commands as those which had been previously given to him by the Maháraja; and for the significant object of representing him as receiving from the young Prince the reverence and worship which the author of the Rámáyana considered to be due to so celebrated a Bráhman. Again, considerable stress is laid upon the worship of Vishnu both by Ráma and his mother; although Ráma is himself said to be an incarnation of Vishnu. Moreover, the feigned anger of the Maháraja on hearing the proposition that he should retire from the Raj, and that Ráma should be appointed in his room, was, in all probability a sincere expression of displeasure. But in other respects the essential details may be regarded as a relic of the original tradition. The object of the Maháraja, in sending Bharata to the city of his maternal grandfather, is sufficiently manifest; and it will be noticed that the Maháraja expressly desired Ráma to keep watch during the night which intervened between the great Council and the day of installation; apparently lest Bharata should return during the interval, and create a disturbance for the purpose of enforcing his claim to the succession.

Brahmanical introduction of Vasishtha, a later interpolation.

Dubious stress laid upon the worship of Vishnu.

Remaining details a relic of the ancient tradition.

Fears as regards Bharata.

But perhaps the most interesting circumstances in the narrative are those connected with the popular movement in favour of Ráma's installation. Here a democratic element in the ancient Hindú despotisms is distinctly discernible. First of all a deputation of Ministers, Chieftains, and people wait upon the Maháraja to express the popular will, that he

Democratic element evidenced in the popular movement in favour of Ráma.

The deputation which waited upon the Mahá raja.

should retire from the active administration of the Raj, and that Ráma should be entrusted with the reins of power. Upon this intimation the Maháraja summons a great Council or Parliament at which he expresses his intention of appointing Ráma to be Yuvaraja. This popular demonstration in favour of Ráma seems to indicate a direct interest on the part of the people in public affairs; although the Brahmanical author for his own purposes has converted it into a demonstration of personal affection for the youthful hero. That the popular regard for Ráma was not so strong as Válmíki would seem to intimate will be proved in the sequel, in which it will be seen that the same assembly displayed considerable apathy as regards the rival claims of Ráma and Bharata, and were only bent upon a prompt settlement of the question as regards the succession. It should also be remarked, that there is at least one passage in the sequel which would intimate that there was a far greater difference in the ages of the four sons of Dasaratha than is indicated in the mythical account of their birth and origin.[6]

General assembly, or great Council, convened in consequence.

Popular interest in public affairs converted into a personal affection for Ráma.

[6] See especially a passage in chapter viii., in which Kausalyá requests Ráma to take care of Lakshmana, because the latter is a mere boy.

CHAPTER VII.

INTRIGUES OF KAIKEYÍ.

THE story of Ráma's appointment to be Yuva-raja, and the description of the imposing preparations for the ceremony of installation, would seem to indicate that the young Prince had arrived at the acme of human felicity. His infancy and boyhood had passed away without a cloud. He was happily married to the most beautiful and loving of wives. Another day, another sunrise, would see him installed Yuvaraja of Kosala. It was on the very eve of this brilliant success, that the ancient and mysterious conception of an avenging Nemesis, of the envy of the gods at the prosperity of a mortal, would seem to have found an expression in the Hindú tradition.[1] The city was one blaze of joy and exultation. Throughout the night every street was illuminated with endless clusters of lamps, whilst the vast multitude of citizens were unable to close their eyes for thinking of the approaching installation, and were

Acme of human felicity attained by Ráma.

Conception of the avenging Nemesis.

Brilliant preparations for the installation on the eve of the ceremony, throughout the night, and on the following sunrise.

[1] The conception of the avenging Nemesis does not literally find expression in the Rámáyana in its present form. Indeed the religious idea involved is rather that the gods were angry at an event which was calculated to interfere with the fulfilment of the mythical purpose for which Vishnu became incarnate as Ráma, namely, the destruction of the demon Rávana. (See extract from the Adhyátma Rámáyana in the next chapter.) But it is impossible to avoid the suspicion that in the original tradition the sudden adversity which succeeded to so much prosperity was invested with a moral meaning similar to that indicated.

eagerly watching for the rising of the sun. At last the white-robed dawn appeared in the sky, and immediately the people began to decorate the city. They watered the streets, they strewed the roads with flowers, and they set up gay banners in all directions. Meanwhile, fresh crowds of country people were pouring into Ayodhyá; and all the ministers of public rejoicing,—the singers, the musicians, and the dancing-girls,—were delighting the hearts of young and old with music, and song, and exhilarating dances. Even the little children were not forgotten by the Hindú bard, who pictures them sporting together in the court-yards, and under the porticoes, and saying to one another in the midst of their play:—"This day Ráma is to be anointed Raja."

Painful scene enacted during the same interim in the palace of the Maháraja.

Meantime, however, from the evening of the preceding day until the rising of the sun on the morning of the installation, a terrible scene had been enacted in the palace of the Maháraja; a scene which is never described to a Hindú audience without calling forth abundance of tears, and many sympathetic expressions of sorrow and condemnation. But here further remark may cease, and the Hindú bard may be permitted to tell his own story, as follows:—

Tradition recorded in the Rámáyana.

Scenes within the palace of the Maháraja on the eve of the installation.

Now on the night which preceded the day of installation, and whilst the city was filled with joy and exultation, the evil aspect of the stars was working woe and desolation in the palace of Maháraja Dasaratha. There was an old nurse named Manthará, who had been the servant of the Rání Kaikeyí, whilst Kaikeyí was still living in the house of her father Aswapati; and when Raja Aswapati gave his daughter in marriage to Maháraja Dasaratha, he presented her with this slave woman as part of her dowry, and Manthará

Manthará, the old nurse of Kaikeyí.

accompanied her mistress to the city of Ayodhyá. This Manthará was very ugly and deformed; her arms were long and thin, her fingers were very large, her chest was narrow, her neck was short, and her breasts were as small as figs, her legs were slender like those of a crane, her stomach was large and projecting, and her back bowed out like her stomach, for she was hump-backed.[2] Now this Manthará ascended to the roof of the palace, and saw all the preparations which were being made for the installation of Ráma, and the rejoicings of all the people of the city, and she inquired the reason thereof; and when it was told to her that Ráma was to be appointed Raja, she was much troubled, and her eyes were red with anger; for in by-gone years she had offended Ráma, and Ráma had smitten her with his foot, and she had deadly enmity against him.[3] So she hastened down from the roof of the palace in a great rage, and ran to the apartment of Kaikeyí, and found her reposing upon a couch, and she said to her:—"Rise up, you stupid one! Why do you sleep whilst a tremendous calamity is awaiting you? You are born of a royal race, but your husband has deceived you: The Maháraja is fair in speech but deceitful in deed: He has filled you with vain words, and Kausalyá with riches: He has sent your son Bharata to your father's city, which is far off, that to-morrow he may quietly install the son of Kausalyá in the Raj: You must now so act as to prevent your husband from installing Ráma."

Her extreme ugliness.

Beholds the preparations for the installation with great wrath.

Attempts to rouse the jealousy of Kaikeyí in behalf of Bharata.

At these words Kaikeyí was filled with surprise, and

Kaikeyí professes delight at the news of Ráma's installation.

[2] This description of Manthará is interesting as exhibiting the Hindú idea of female ugliness.

[3] That Ráma should have kicked the slave-girl in his boyhood is by no means unlikely, and the incident probably found a place in the original tradition. But such a proceeding was scarcely compatible with his divine character, and accordingly the author of the Adhyátma Rámáyana ignores the occurrence, and supplies the following pious myth as the reason for Manthará's interference:—

"When the gods heard the tidings from Ayodhyá of Ráma's approaching installation, they were overcome with terror. Indra and the rest held a consultation, and then went to Saraswatí and prayed her to obstruct the accession of Ráma. They said:—'Thy lord Brahma has informed us that there is a female slave named Manthará, who waits on Kaikeyí, the second wife of Dasaratha. Do thou visit the earth and enter her tongue.' Saraswatí, in obedience to the instructions of her husband, went instantly and took up her abode in the tongue of Manthará."

gave some ornaments to her nurse, and said:—"O Manthará, the information you have given is pleasing to me: There is no distinction between Ráma and Bharata, and therefore it pleases me that the Maháraja should install his eldest son as his coadjutor in the Raj: Let us go to the house of my eldest sister Kausalyá, and congratulate her on the installation of her son Ráma."

Manthará declares that Bharata will become a slave to Ráma.

Then Manthará, full of envy, and mad with disappointment, threw aside the ornaments given to her by Kaikeyí, and cried out:—"O woman, there is no one so foolish as you are in all the world: It would have been better for you to have been slain by the bite of a serpent, or the fall of a thunderbolt: Kausalyá is very fortunate, for her son is to get the Raj, and you will be her slave, and your son will be the slave of her son, and the wife of your son Bharata will be the slave of her son Ráma: What can be more unfortunate for you than this? And yet you consider it to be a cause for rejoicing."

Kaikeyí dilates on the virtues of Ráma and his superior claim to the Raj.

Kaikeyí replied:—"Why do you cherish so much hatred against Ráma, who is my beloved son, ever virtuous and truthful, and who has the best claim to the Raj: He is the son of the eldest Rání, he is the eldest of the sons of the Maháraja, and he is in every way fitted to have the Raj: He treats me with the same respect as he treats his own mother Kausalyá, and when he gets the Raj he will treat Bharata as his own son: Ráma is the eldest and Bharata the youngest of the four brethren; and there is no harm in Bharata becoming the dependent and servant of Ráma: Bharata could only get the Raj with the consent of Ráma: Why then do you pain my heart by speaking against such a happy event?"

Manthará insinuates that Bharata and Satrughna have been sent away that Ráma might be installed.

At these words of Kaikeyí, the nurse Manthará became thunderstruck, as if the heavens had fallen upon her head; and she began to verify the old proverb, that as a lame man and a blind man have each a hundred faults, so there is no limit to the faults of a humpback. She breathed hard, and in a tone half of anger and half of supplication, she spoke thus to her mistress Kaikeyí:—"O Rání, have you fallen

into such a misery that you can rejoice at that for which you ought to mourn? Ráma fears Bharata, because the Raj is the common property of all the four brethren; and Bharata, and his loving brother Satrughna, are sent to the city of your father, whilst Ráma remains here to be installed in the Raj; for Lakshmana is attached to Ráma, even as Satrughna is attached to Bharata: Kausalyá is indeed the beloved wife, and to-morrow her son will be installed when the moon enters Pushyá: What good then can attend you when your son Bharata loses the Raj? Like a slave you must henceforth stand with clasped hands before Kausalyá, and you will be her servant, whilst your son Bharata will become the servant of Ráma: All the women in the house of Ráma will be filled with joy, and all the women in the house of Bharata will be filled with sorrow: Ráma and his posterity will become Mahárajas, whilst Bharata will be driven from his father's house; but had Bharata remained in the city of Ayodhyá up to this day, no one but he could have been installed Yuvaraja: How will your son, deprived of wealth, live in subjection to his brother Ráma? It becomes you to save Bharata, who is about to be supplanted by Ráma, as the leader of a herd of wild elephants is driven off by a fierce and roaring lion: When Ráma becomes Raja he will certainly send Bharata into exile and secure the Raj for his own sons: Do you, therefore, procure the Raj for your own son Bharata, and persuade the Mahárája to send Ráma into the jungle: You are a woman of an extraordinary character; for any other woman would rather die than behold the prosperity of a co-wife."

Again insinuates that Kausalyá is the favourite wife, and points out the coming elevation of Ráma and degradation of Bharata.

Counsels Kaikeyí to persuade the Mahárája to install Bharata and exile Ráma.

Then Kaikeyí arose from her couch in great alarm, and said:—"How can I persuade the Mahárája to install my own son Bharata in the Raj, and send Ráma into exile?" Manthará, intent on evil, replied as follows:—"O Kaikeyí, hear from me how you may obtain the Raj for Bharata: Do you not remember that when Dasaratha went to the south to join the gods in the war against the demons, he was grievously wounded in the battle, and was carried

Kaikeyí aroused.

Manthará reminds her of the two boons promised her by the Mahárája.

off, and preserved by you? Then he promised you two boons, and do you now ask two favours of him, the Raj for your son Bharata, and fourteen years' exile for the son of Kausalyá: [4] Thus whilst Ráma is wandering in the woods, your son will acquire the affection of the people, and enjoy the Raj without molestation: O Rání, feigning anger, do you go into the chamber of displeasure, and the Raja will come to you and inquire the reason of your grief: You have ever been the beloved of your husband, and he will not dare to see you angry: Should the Maháraja offer you pearls, or gems, or jewels of any kind, pay no attention to him, but only ask for the two boons, the Raj for Bharata, and exile for Ráma; otherwise Ráma will obtain the Raj, and you and your son will become wanderers in the jungle."

Desires her to request the installation of Bhárata and exile of Ráma.

Thus excited by her wicked nurse, the beautiful Rání, intoxicated with wrath and jealousy, ran away to the chamber of displeasure, and threw off her pearl necklace and excellent jewels, and strewed them upon the ground; and she untied her hair so that it fell down dishevelled, and she covered her face with the darkness of anger.[5]

Kaikeyí runs away to the chamber of displeasure.

[4] This myth is differently related in the Adhyátma Rámáyana, where Manthará is represented as speaking to Kaikeyí as follows:—

"Heretofore, a very long time ago, when there was a bloody warfare between the gods and demons, Indra solicited the aid of Maháraja Dasaratha. At that time the Maháraja really loved thee; he never was separated a moment from thee. He seated thee on his own chariot; he took thee with him to a place where he entered into a dreadful conflict with the demons, during which an iron pin being broken in the wheel of the carriage on the field of battle, thou didst by putting thy hand into its place, prevent the carriage being overturned. He was then so much pleased with thy conduct that he declared he would grant whatever thou mightest request of him. Thou at that time didst require two things from the Maháraja, and having taken hold of each other's hands as a bond of agreement, thou didst say, when I require these two things, I will remind thee of thy promise. The time has now arrived; demand from the Maháraja the performance of his contract."

[5] Mr Ward states that an apartment is still maintained in Hindú houses to which the wife resorts when angry with her husband. This assertion must be taken with some qualification. The women will sometimes shut themselves up in a spare apartment, such perhaps as a lumber room; and this room may be called the chamber of displeasure with reference to the story in the Rámáyana. But such a chamber is not maintained as an institution. The dishevelling of the hair, which was carried out by Kaikeyí, is a more significant proceeding. She undid her platted locks, so as to resemble a widow, who is not allowed to wear platted hair.

Meantime, the Maháraja, having commanded the installation of Ráma, proceeded to the inner apartments to impart the news to his beautiful and beloved Kaikeyí. The palace was gay with parrots and peacocks, and vocal with tuneful birds. It was filled with beautiful maidens and slave girls, and adorned with clusters of climbing plants and flowers. The painted verandas were supported by pillars of gold, silver, and ivory. In the garden were trees over-laden with fruits and flowers, and tanks of transparent water, with beautiful seats upon the banks thereof. The Maháraja, full of love for his charming Rání, entered the magnificent inner apartment, which resembled the sky when covered with silver clouds during an eclipse of the moon; but lo and behold, he only saw the decorated couch, and the beautiful Kaikeyí was not lying thereon. And the heart of the Mahá-raja sank within him, for he was thirsting for the presence of his beloved; and ever before when he entered that apartment, his beautiful Rání had welcomed his coming with a smile. Then he thought in his mind that perchance she had gone to the apartment of Kausalyá, to wish her joy on the installation of Ráma; and he inquired where his beloved had gone. Then the door-keeper was terrified, and with hands respectfully joined, he said:—"O Raja of Rajas, the Rání is in a great rage, and she has fled in her haste to the chamber of displeasure." Hearing these words the Maháraja was exceedingly troubled, and he went to the chamber of displeasure, and saw his young wife, dearer to him than life, lying on the earth in sordid garments and imagining mischief; and he beheld her, as an elephant beholds his female mate who has been pierced by the poisoned arrow of the hunter. And he caressed her, and tried to arouse her, like one who endeavours to awaken a sleeping serpent who will cause his death; and he said to her:—"Why, my beloved, are you in the chamber of displeasure? Why are you without ornaments, and why do you wear sordid attire? I weep as I behold your misery, and surely I have never offended you by night or day: Say if you are sick that I may send for the most eminent

The Maháraja visits the apartments of Kaikeyí.

Description of the apartments.

Surprise of the Maháraja at the absence of Kaikeyí.

The Maháraja proceeds in great distress to the chamber of displeasure.

His affectionate speeches to Kaikeyí.

physicians, or that you have been affronted by any one that I may punish him according to your pleasure: I will do whatever you may command: I will slay the innocent or release the guilty, for I am a Raja of Rajas, and you are my most beloved: I will give you whatever you may request, even if it be my own life; there is nothing that you may want that I cannot satisfy." So saying, the Maháraja took her to his bosom, like one who takes up a snake by mistake for a garland, and he wiped her face, and asked her many times what it was that she desired.

Kaikeyí desires a favour.

Then the wicked Kaikeyí, seeing that her lord was pierced with the love-inspiring arrows of Káma-deva, and infatuated by his love for her, said these dreadful words:—"O Maháraja, I have neither been maltreated nor defamed, but I have formed a wish which I entreat you to gratify; and if you will solemnly promise to do as I desire, I will make known my request." Then the Maháraja, sick with love, smiled upon her, and taking her charming locks in his hand, he said to her as she lay upon the ground:—"Know, O haughty one, that no one is more beloved than you, excepting my son Ráma; and by Ráma, who is dearer to me than life, I swear, O desire of my soul, that I will perform your request: O my beloved, divulge the wish of your heart, and you will relieve mine: May I lose all the merit of every good deed I have done upon earth, if I do not perform your request."

The Maháraja swears to perform her request.

Kaikeyí calls upon the gods to witness his promise.

The merciless Rání then made known her evil intent, in words as terrible as those of Yama. She said:—"Grant me the boon even as you have sworn: Let all the gods, with Indra at their head, the sun, the moon, the gods of the household, and all the regents of the universe, bear witness to this promise of the illustrious, the upright, and the faithful Maháraja." Then laying hold of her lord, and entreating him while he was intoxicated with love, she said to him:—"Remember, O Maháraja, what happened in the war between the gods and demons, when you were surrounded by the enemy, and in peril of your life; then when you were preserved by me, you promised me two favours, and these

Reminds the Maháraja of his previous promise to grant two favours, and requests the installation of Bharata and exile of Ráma.

two favours I now claim: The first favour is that my son Bharata be installed this day in the stead of Ráma; and the second favour is that Ráma may embrace the life of a devotee, and clothe himself in the skins of deer and bark of trees, and go this day into the forest of Dandaka for fourteen years."

The Maháraja falls into a swoon.

The Maháraja, hearing these dreadful words, was filled with anguish, and he fell down prostrate upon the ground, like a plantain tree that has been thrown down by a strong wind.

Kaikeyí's anxiety.

Then Kaikeyí was anxious, and said within herself:—"I shall not be sorry for the death of the Maháraja, after he has installed Bharata in the Raj; but now I must try and restore him to his senses." With these thoughts in her mind, she attempted to awaken him, as a hunter awakens a sleeping antelope before he kills it.[6] Presently Dasaratha aroused himself, and said:—"Am I tormented by demons, or has my reason departed from me?"

Distraction of the Maháraja.

Then when he fully remembered all that Kaikeyí had said, he was as distracted as an antelope at the sight of a tigress, but felt as powerless as a serpent encircled by the spells of the snake-charmer.

He reproaches Kaikeyi for her cruelty.

After a long while the Maháraja, full of affliction and anger, and consuming Kaikeyí with his eyes, thus spoke:—"O cruel wretch, depraved in heart, and destroyer of this family, what has Ráma done to you? He has always paid the same reverence to you as to his own mother Kausalyá; why then are you bent upon his ruin? You, the daughter of a Raja, have crept into my house like a venomous serpent, in order to destroy me: For what fault should I abandon my beloved son Ráma? I could part with Kausalyá, or with Sumitrá, or with life itself, but I cannot part with Ráma: Among the thousands of female slaves and dependents, no charge has ever been brought against Ráma: He conquers mankind by his truthfulness, the Bráhmans by his generosity, his preceptors by his attention, and his enemies by his sword and bow: O Kaikeyí, have pity upon an old man, who is approaching the end of his days, and who humbly supplicates

Implores Kaikeyi to withdraw her request.

[6] It is a Hindú rule that no man shall kill a sleeping deer. Accordingly the hunter must awaken the animal before he may slay it.

you: It would be easier for a fish to live out of water than for me to live without Ráma: Relinquish then this intention, and never let me hear of it again: Moreover, your son Bharata is virtuous, and would never accept the Raj if his elder brother is to go into exile, so that your labour would be lost: The husband is the Guru of his wife according to the Sastras, so you must never violate my orders: Save my life by relinquishing your evil purpose: Take jewels instead, or a thousand cities, or anything else that will satisfy you."

Remorseless obstinacy of Kaikeyi.

Saying these words, the Mahárája fell prostrate at the feet of the Rání, but Kaikeyí was unmoved at his anguish; and such is the nature of a woman, for when she is bent upon increasing her own prosperity, she will sacrifice shame, honour, respect, or anything else to gain her end. At length Kaikeyí replied:—"I am prompted by no evil intention: I am in full possession of my senses: Every one calls you truthful, and it is said that you always adhere to your promise: You have promised me two favours, and the time has arrived for you to grant them: Why do you humble yourself in order to induce me to absolve you from your promise? Your saying that the husband is the Guru of his wife is perfectly true; but virtue is above all things, and never will I obey the words of my husband, if by so doing I lead him into vice: Grant me the two favours, and you are free."

She insists upon the fulfilment of the Mahárája's promise.

Wrath of the Mahárája.

At these words of Kaikeyí, Dasaratha became exceedingly wroth, and would hear no more, but cried out:—"Hard-hearted and wretched woman, what has my son Ráma done to you that you wish to send him into exile? For the sake of riches you are bent upon killing your own husband: Shame be upon that man who dotes upon his wife; there is no happiness for him in this world or the next: But how can Bharata obtain the Raj during the life of his father; for as the Sastras have said that a younger son should not marry before an elder brother, so a younger son cannot succeed to the Raj before his elder brother? Your purpose is equally opposed to law as to religion, and I therefore look to you either to relinquish it altogether or to take my life."

Reproaches himself for his uxoriousness, and insists upon Kaikeyí recalling her request.

When Kaikeyí heard these words of the Mahárája, she was furious with rage, and said:—"O Mahárája, if after making me two promises you now refuse to perform them, how will you be esteemed among men? You must say:—'I have broken my word even to her who saved my life;' and you will become infamous among the Rajas: If Ráma be anointed I will take poison this day: You know that, according to the Puránas, the earth can bear any weight except that of a liar."

Kaikeyi insists upon the Mahárája keeping his word.

Then the Mahárája remained for a time like one convulsed, and his eyes were fixed upon the Rání, and he said nothing; but after a while he remembered the dreadful oath he had uttered to Kaikeyí, and he fell to the earth like a tree that has been cut down by a woodman. At length he spoke these words:—"O Kaikeyí, in what evil hour have I entered your apartment? I have been entrapped by my love for you, as a mouse is entrapped by the bait: As the ocean contains worthless shells as well as rich gems, so compared with my illustrious ancestors I am but as a worthless shell amongst the gems: The race who have descended from the Sun have been hitherto without stain, but I am the first to pollute it: Never before was it heard that a father sent his eldest son into exile in order to gratify a capricious wife: A wife is bound to serve her husband, and where is the husband who promises her favours in return for her service? I would rather go to hell for violating my promise, than consent to the exile of Ráma: Be the consequence what it may, I shall place Ráma upon the throne as soon as it is morning: But I fear lest Ráma should hear of my promise: for then he would of his own accord go into exile, rather than send me who am his father to the pains of hell: O Kaikeyí, relinquish this cruel wish! How shall I behold the countenance of Ráma changed like the moon during an eclipse? How can I see my well-matured measure, which has been confirmed by all my people and Counsellors, thrown into confusion like an army which has been smitten by an enemy? What will the Rajas say, when I tell them that, tormented by Kaikeyí, I have given the

Lamentations and remonstrances of the Mahárája.

Raj to Bharata, and sent Ráma into exile? What will Kausalyá say to me, when Ráma is banished to the jungle? Can I survive the sight of Ráma departing to the dreary forest, and the agony of his weeping wife Sítá? You, a widow, will then govern the Raj with your son Bharata, and shall I discard Ráma for you? I am like a man who has drank good wines mingled with poison, or has seated himself on a beautiful carpet which has been spread over a deep well; and you have soothed me with deceitful caresses, like the murderous hunter soothing the antelope with the charms of music: The good will exclaim against me, as they would against a Bráhman who drank strong drinks: The whole world will abhor me, who for the sake of a woman has sent his beloved son into a jungle: If Ráma would refuse to go I should be happy, but at my command that dutiful son will proceed to the jungle without a word of complaint, and then death will soon convey me, execrated by all men, to the abode of Yama, and my beloved Kausalyá will follow me on the funeral pile: Then having sent us to hell you will govern the Raj, but if Bharata be gratified with the exile of his brother, he shall perform no funeral rites for me: But how can the dear Ráma, accustomed to ride in chariots and upon elephants, wander about on foot in a vast wilderness? How can my son, for whom cooks adorned with ear-rings prepared the most excellent food, subsist on the harsh and bitter fruits of the forest? How shall he who has been clothed in costly apparel sit on the bare ground clothed with thick kashaya grass? O Kaikeyí, seek not my destruction: I fall at your feet, be gracious to me: I would that the gods would cause my death this night, and strike with dhmbness all who know of these things, so that Ráma may never hear of my promise, and may become the Raja as determined upon by me."

Wicked persistence of Kaikeyí.

Thus did the illustrious Maháraja speak whilst prostrate at the feet of the contemptuous Rání; but the wicked Kaikeyí said:—"I have three times repeated my requests, and your promises must be fulfilled, or I will take poison in your presence." Then the Maháraja said to her:—"That

hand of yours, which was consecrated with mantras, and which I accepted in the presence of the fire, I now reject for ever, and with you I reject your son Bharata, albeit he was descended from me." Thus passed away the dreadful night in the palace of Maháraja Dasaratha.

Review of the foregoing narrative of the intrigues of Kaikeyi.

The picture of zenana life presented by the foregoing narrative furnishes a powerful illustration of the intrigues which were not unfrequently carried on in the Courts of Hindú Rajas. The dialogue has been somewhat marred by the palpable exaggerations of the author as regards the goodness and popularity of Ráma. It is impossible to believe that Kaikeyí could have felt all that gratification at the installation of Ráma, which she is said to have expressed to her old nurse on first hearing that he was to be appointed Yuvaraja; and it seems more probable that she was brooding over her imagined wrongs, when Manthará suggested to her the means by which she might work upon the affections of the uxorious Maháraja, and procure the elevation of her own son in the room of Ráma. In like manner it is difficult to believe that the Maháraja could have felt all that overweening affection for Ráma which he is said to have expressed to Kaikeyí; although no doubt he was greatly mortified at being betrayed into making a promise to Kaikeyí, which would upset the matured measure which had been proclaimed in the Council, and to which he was almost irretrievably committed. The story of the two boons is also apparently mythical, and was probably introduced for the simple purpose of strengthening the promise which the Maháraja was induced to make to Kaikeyí in the chamber of displeasure. But in other respects the narrative is marvellously

Exaggerations in the dialogue respecting Ráma.

Real feelings of Kaikeyi.

Real feelings of the Maháraja.

Mythical character of the story of the two boons.

35541

true to human nature. The malice exhibited by the old hag of a nurse, after witnessing the preparations which were being made for the installation of Ráma, is very well indicated, as well as the motives which she brought to play upon the mind of Kaikeyí. The proceedings of Kaikeyí are still more significant, and are precisely what might have been expected from the cunning and obduracy of a petted woman. Her first object was to wheedle the Maháraja into making a promise; her second was to insist upon the fulfilment of that promise. To effect the first purpose she determined to appeal to the affections of the Maháraja. She knew that Ráma was to be installed, and probably expected that the Maháraja would pay her a visit to cajole her into acquiescence with presents and caresses. She accordingly retired to another chamber, and literally sulked; throwing about her ornaments and jewels to show that no presents could console her, and dishevelling her hair to indicate her extreme anger and displeasure. When the Maháraja found her in this state of affliction, and protested his love and affection, and his great grief at her prostration, she said nothing whatever; but when she saw that his caresses had filled him with desire, she seized the critical moment for seducing him into making the promise. The Maháraja having thus committed himself, a woman's obstinacy compelled him to keep his word. He might implore and threaten and try to reason with her, but she was inexorable. He had made the promise and she insisted upon its fulfilment. To all he could urge she had but one answer: "Unless Ráma is exiled and Bharata is installed, you will be stigmatized as a liar, and I will take poison."

Malice of the old nurse.

Cunning and obduracy of Kaikeyí.

Artful mode of wheedling the Maháraja out of a promise.

Obstinacy in insisting upon the fulfilment of the promise.

The great stress which is here laid upon the performance of promises is somewhat remarkable, from the fact that it scarcely tallies with the charges which have been so frequently brought forward against the truthfulness of Hindús. But notwithstanding all that has been said upon this subject, it may be confidently asserted that the people of no nation in the world are better acquainted with the value of words, or display a higher regard for those who are scrupulous in keeping their promises.

Curious Brahmanical interpolation that Ráma was required to become a religious devotee.

There is one point in connection with the Brahmanizing of the original tradition, which is deserving of notice, as being connected with the later worship of Ráma as Vishnu. Kaikeyí not only demanded the exile of Ráma, but required that he should be clothed in the skins of deer and bark of trees, and lead the life of a devotee or Vánaprastha. Now the idea that a man should become a devotee as a punishment involves two conflicting elements, which appear to have escaped the attention of the Brahmanical author. That Ráma should be represented as a religious secluse was no doubt highly desirable, both as giving prominence to his divine character, and as reflecting a glory upon those Bráhmans who betook themselves to the same mode of life. But that Kaikeyí should have insisted upon Ráma's becoming a devotee is altogether incomprehensible; and moreover would destroy any religious merit which Ráma might be supposed to acquire by a religious life to which he was forced by the vindictiveness of his step-mother.

Modern belief in the idea.

However, the notion is so perfectly in accordance with the Brahmanical ideal of Hindú life, that it would be blasphemy to doubt it; and to this day

every fanatical worshipper of Ráma exults in picturing the divine hero arrayed in garments of bark, and with his hair braided into a knot on the crown of his head, as a holy devotee and incarnation of Vishnu.[7]

[7] The Bráhmans taught that every Hindú of the three superior castes,—the Bráhmans, Kshatriyas, and Vaisyas,—should pass through four orders or conditions of life: namely, that of the Brahmachári, or religious student; the Grihastha, or household and married man; the Vánaprastha, or hermit; and the Bikshuka, or Sanyási, who is a religious mendicant.

The life of a Vánaprastha is well described in the Vishnu Purána, as follows:—"When the householder, after performing the acts incumbent on his condition, arrives at the decline of life, let him consign his wife to the care of his sons, and go himself to the forests. Let him there subsist upon leaves, roots, and fruit; and suffer his hair and beard to grow, and braid the former upon his brows; and sleep upon the ground: his dress must be made of skin or of kasa or kusa grasses; and he must bathe thrice a day; and he must offer oblations to the gods and to fire, and treat all that come to him with hospitality: he must beg alms, and present food to all creatures: he must anoint himself with such unguents as the woods afford; and in his devotional exercises he must be endurant of heat and cold. The sage who diligently follows these rules, and leads the life of the hermit (or Vánaprastha), consumes, like fire, all imperfections, and conquers for himself the mansions of eternity."

CHAPTER VIII.

EXILE OF RÁMA.

THE sensational scene within the palace between the Maháraja and Kaikeyí, on the night before the expected installation, is followed by a series of touching events, which terminate in the exile of Ráma. This portion of the Rámáyana requires no preliminary explanation; and it will be sufficient to divide it into six sections, as follows:—

Series of six touching events connected with the exile of Ráma.

1st, Ráma's visit to the palace on the morning of the installation.

2nd, Ráma's interview with the Maháraja and Kaikeyí.

3rd, Ráma's interview with his mother Kausalyá.

4th, Ráma's interview with his wife Sítá.

5th, Parting scene, in which Ráma, Sítá, and Lakshmana take their farewell of the Maháraja and his wives.

6th, Lamentations on the departure of Ráma.

1st. Ráma's visit to the palace on the morning of the installation.

The narrative of Ráma's visit to the palace on the morning of the installation may be related as follows:—

Sunrise in the city: completion of all the preparations for the installation of Ráma.

Now when the morning had dawned, the sage Vasishtha, surrounded by his disciples, speedily carried the sacrificial articles into the excellent city, which was adorned with flowers and banners, and crowded with people. And all was

ready for the installation of Ráma. The golden throne had been set up, with the white umbrella which was the special sign of royalty; and there were the jewelled chámaras of white hair for brushing away the flies from the new Raja, and the sacred tiger's skin, and the bow and scimetar, and the sacrificial fire, and the elephants, and the chariots harnessed with four horses; and there also were the golden pots filled with Ganges water, and with water from other holy places, together with the parched grain, the limes, the ghee, the honey, the milk, the curds, the kusa grass, and the flowers. There too were the Bráhmans, and the Rajas that paid tribute, and the eight chosen damsels,[1] and the large white-humped bull begirt with a golden rope, and the shaggy lion, and the cows with golden ornaments on their horns, and very many musicians with all kinds of musical instruments, and beautiful dancing-girls exquisitely adorned, together with multitudes of people of all the four castes. And at the rising of the sun all were in the street leading to the palace, waiting for the coming of the Maháraja and the excellent hero Ráma.

Sumantra sent by Vasishtha to hasten the Maháraja.

Then Vasishtha said to Sumantra, who was the Chief Counsellor of Dasaratha:—"Go you and hasten the Maháraja, that Ráma may receive the Raj as the moon enters the mansion of Pushyá."[2] Sumantra, filled with pleasure, then entered the palace, and he saw that the gate of the inner apartments was surrounded with aged men armed with staves, and clad in mail and wearing turbans; but they gave way as he approached, for the inner rooms were always open to him. And Sumantra, not knowing what had occurred to the Maháraja, approached the curtain at the door of the chamber where Dasaratha had passed the night,

Sumantra enters the inner apartments and approaches the door of the Maháraja's chamber.

[1] At the installation of a Raja, at marriages, and at other seasons of festival, a number of young women are employed to rub turmeric on the body of the person or persons, on whose account the ceremony takes places. Eight are required at the installation of a Raja; on other occasions the number is optional. Widows are prohibited from assisting at this ceremony. Carey and Marshman's *note on the passage.*

[2] This command as given by the priest to the Chief Counsellor is probably a Brahmanical flourish introduced to show the authority of the priest in ancient times.

and praised the Mahárája thus:—"As the ocean when illumined by the rising sun gives pleasure to the beholders, so a great Raja by his benign presence diffuses happiness around him: As the charioteer of Indra addressed the mighty god before he went forth and conquered all the Daityas, so do I arouse you: As the Vedas and the Vedángas stirred up Brahma, so do I stir up you: As the moon awakens the earth, permit me this day to awaken you: The god of day rises propitious from his couch, may he and all the gods command that success attend you: O Mahárája, all is ready for the installation of Ráma: As feeble cattle without a keeper, as an army without a commander, as the night without the moon, as a herd of cows without the lordly bull, so is a country in which the Mahárája does not appear." At these words the venerable Dasaratha was speechless with anguish, but the heartless Kaikeyí said:—"Go you, Sumantra, and bring Ráma hither, for the Mahárája has something particular to communicate to him." Sumantra replied:—"How can I go unless I have the permission of the Mahárája?" Then Dasaratha said in his grief:—"O Sumantra, go and bring Ráma hither, as Kaikeyí has requested you."

Praises the Mahárája.

Kaikeyí desires him to bring Ráma.

The Mahárája commands him likewise.

Then Sumantra went out of the palace, and he said to all the tributary Rajas who were there assembled:—"I am going at the command of the Mahárája, to bring Ráma with all haste for the installation." And Sumantra went to the palace of Ráma, which was as resplendent as the palace of Indra; and the palace was adorned with garlands, and surrounded with deer and peacocks. And Sumantra put aside the servants who surrounded the doors, and entered the outer apartment which was guarded by young men who were sober and vigilant, adorned with bright earrings, and armed with swords and bows; and he then went towards the inner apartments which were guarded by ancient men dressed in red with canes in their hands. And Sumantra said to the old men:—"Quickly inform Ráma that Sumantra stands at the door." Then Ráma, hearing that the chosen Counsellor of his father was come, ordered that he should be conducted into his presence; and Sumantra be-

Sumantra proceeds to the house of Ráma.

Beautiful house.

Outer apartment guarded by young men.

Inner apartments guarded by old men.

Sumantra enters the presence of Ráma and declares his mission.

held. Ráma sitting on a golden couch elegantly adorned, perfumed with sandal and many excellent odours, with Sítá standing by his side fanning him with peacock's feathers.

Ráma prepares to go to the Maháraja.

Then Sumantra said to Ráma:—"O Ráma, your father Dasaratha and the Rání Kaikeyí desire your presence: Go thither without delay." And Ráma said to his wife Sítá:—"O divine one, the Maháraja and the Rání Kaikeyí have consulted together respecting my installation: This day the Maháraja will assuredly install me as his coadjutor in the Raj: I will go speedily to the Maháraja, and do you remain here and amuse yourself with your maids." The black-eyed Sítá followed her lord to the door, saying:—

Prayer of Sítá.

"May the Maháraja bestow the Raj upon you, and esteem you worthy to celebrate a Rajasúya: May the gods of all the four quarters of the universe protect you: May Indra, who wields the thunder-bolt, guard you on the east; may Yama, judge of the dead, guard you on the south; may Varúna, god of the waters, guard you on the west; and may Kuvera, lord of wealth, guard you upon the north." Ráma then

Ráma ascends his chariot.

went out with Sumantra, and ascended his bright and spacious chariot, which was lined with tigers' skins, and adorned with gold and gems, and drawn by horses like young elephants; and Lakshmana, his younger brother, attended him, standing behind him in the chariot with a chámara in

Acclamations of the multitude.

his hand resembling the moon. When Ráma came forth, the multitude filled the air with a prodigious burst of acclamations, like the shouts of two armies rushing to battle; and a mighty crowd surrounded his chariot, and thousands of horses and elephants followed him, whilst a company of heroes armed with bows and scimetars marched before him.

Ráma's progress to the palace of the Maháraja.

Thus amidst the glad sounds of music, and the praises of the eulogists, the heroic Ráma proceeded to the palace of the Maháraja; and the verandas and the house-tops were filled with slender-waisted women, beautifully adorned, who saluted him with eager praises, and threw wreaths of flowers upon him as he passed. Presently the royal palace appeared in view like a vast cloud; and the pleasure-houses around it were as resplendent as the milk-white cars of the gods.

And Ráma descended from his chariot and mounted his horse, and entered the gateway of the palace, and his form was as bright as the kindling flame. And Ráma rode through the three first courts, which were guarded by archers, and then he dismounted and went on foot through the two next courts, and having passed through all five, he ordered his people to halt, and entered into the presence of his father.

Passes through the five courts and enters.

Review of the foregoing narrative of Ráma's visit to the palace.

Obscure references to the installation ceremonies.

The foregoing narrative of Ráma's visit contains a few particulars which are well worthy of notice. The arrangements for the installation are somewhat obscure, inasmuch as the ceremony was not actually performed, but still they are very suggestive. The golden throne, the white umbrella, the jewelled chámara, and the tiger's skin are perfectly intelligible; the latter probably being laid on the ground before the throne, and being perhaps deemed a sign of royalty. The bow and scimitar were in like manner emblems of sovereignty and objects of worship. The elephants and chariots were probably required for a procession of the new Raja and the attendant Chieftains. The Brahmanical articles, such as pots of sacred water, grain, fruit, ghee, honey, milk, curds, kusa grass, and flowers, were all doubtless employed in symbolical rites similar to those which were practised at the installation of Yudhishthira, and at the actual installation of Ráma, which appears in a subsequent part of the Rámáyana. The part taken by the white humped-back bull, the shaggy lion, and the cows with golden horns, is somewhat obscure; unless, like the eight chosen virgins who were appointed to rub Ráma with turmeric, they were merely introduced to impart a sensational character to the ceremony.

Palace arrangements.

The references to the palace arrangements are very curious. The outer entrance seems to have been the resort of the house servants. The outer apartments in Ráma's palace were guarded by young men with bows and scimitars; whilst the inner apartments, or zenana, were guarded, not by eunuchs, but by old men with staves. Again, Sumantra does not venture to enter the apartment of the Maháraja, but stands without the door and addresses him in that high-flown language of flattery and religious hyperbole which is so generally affected by Bráhmans when approaching a sovereign.

Young men employed to guard the outer apartments and old men to guard the zenana.

Hyperbolical address of Sumantra to the Maháraja.

Picture of Ráma fanned by Sítá.

The references to Ráma are very striking, and perfectly in accordance with Hindú ideas. The representation of the divine hero sitting upon a couch, whilst his wife Sítá is fanning him with peacock's feathers, is a favourite picture with Hindú bards, who frequently preach the duty of wives to fan their husbands. The procession formed in full expectation that Ráma was to be installed Yuvaraja is of a very Hindú character. The hero and his brother drive along in a chariot lined with a tiger's skin. They are preceded by a body of soldiers, and followed by a number of horses and elephants. As Ráma drives along the eulogists chaunt his praises, the musicians fill the air with triumphant strains, and the women appear in the verandas in their gayest attire and throw down flowers upon his head. The progress to the palace is one of joy and exultation, and as such forms a bright contrast to the dark events which were about to be disclosed to the public view.

Hindú character of the procession.

2nd. Ráma's interview with the Maháraja and Kaikeyi.

The narrative of Ráma's interview with the

Mahárája and Kaikeyí may now be related as follows:—

Scenes within the palace.

While the whole multitude, filled with joy, were waiting without the palace, Ráma beheld his wretched father sitting with Kaikeyí on an elegant couch, his countenance withered up with sorrow. Then Ráma humbly bowed at the feet of his father, and at the feet of Kaikeyí; and the eyes of the Mahárája were overflowing with tears, and he could only exclaim:—"O Ráma!" Ráma, seeing his father's countenance filled with tears, was seized with fear as though his feet had touched a serpent; for Dasaratha was convulsed with grief, like the waves of the sea during a storm, or like the sun during an eclipse, or like a sage who has told a falsehood. And Ráma bowed to Kaikeyí, and said:—"O mother, tell me how I have offended the Mahárája!" Then Kaikeyí, void of shame, and relentless as a tigress, replied:—"The Mahárája is not angry, O Ráma, nor is he in distress; but he has something on his mind which he forbears to mention through fear of you, but it is necessary that you should know it: The Mahárája has made me two solemn promises, and confirmed them by oath, but he now repents, like one of low caste: In former times, when I preserved his life in the war between the gods and demons, he offered me two boons, and swore to perform them; and I have now requested that my son Bharata may be installed as coadjutor with the Mahárája, and that you may be sent into exile in the wilderness of Dandaka for fourteen years: If, therefore, you desire that your father should act according to his oath, you will go out of the city this day, and return not for fourteen years, and you will permit Bharata to govern the Raj."

Humiliation and sorrow of the Mahárája on seeing Ráma.

Kaikeyí informs Ráma of the promise made by the Mahárája, and of her own two requests in return.

At this merciless speech, the Mahárája was pierced with grief, but the words of Kaikeyí had no effect upon Ráma; they fell upon his mind like sparks of fire upon the ocean waves, and he felt no kind of sorrow, but replied:—"Be it so! I will depart into the forest that the Mahárája may fulfil the promise which he has made: But wherefore is he

Ráma's prompt and cheerful acquiescence.

distressed? Whatever my father, or my preceptor, or the Maháraja may command, that I will cheerfully perform: Let messengers on swift horses be despatched to bring Bharata from the city of Girivraja, and I will hasten to the forest of Dandaka, and abide there fourteen years." And Kaikeyí said:—"So let it be: Let not your father's shame affect you, but depart immediately, for until you are gone out of the city your father will neither bathe nor eat." Thus urged on by Kaikeyí, as a horse is urged on by a whip, Ráma replied to her thus:—"I obey the will of the Mahá-raja, for there is no act of virtue greater than that of obeying the command of a father and fulfilling his engagements: Bear with me whilst I take leave of my mother Kausalyá, and console my wife Sítá, and then I will this day depart to the wilderness of Dandaka." With these words Ráma bowed at the feet of his father, who was lying senseless from grief, and he prostrated himself at the feet of Kaikeyí, and went out from the inner apartments, followed by Lakshmana and all his friends. All excepting Ráma were bathed in tears, but not even the loss of the Raj, or the prospect of weary exile, could affect the dignity of Ráma, any more than the taking out of a pot of water can lessen the ocean, or pouring in a pot can increase it. Withdrawing his eyes from all the preparations for his installation and the insigni of royalty, he manifested neither the slightest change of countenance nor sign of sorrow.

Kaikeyi insists on his immediate departure.

Ráma obeys.

Ráma's perfect control of his passions.

The only point worthy of special notice in the foregoing narrative is the stress laid upon the stoicism of Ráma, or rather upon the perfect control which he maintained over his passions, at the very moment when the cup of happiness was dashed from his lips, and he was condemned to hopeless exile. The extent to which this virtue is carried by the Hindús is perfectly marvellous. The news of sudden and dire calamity will be received with a composure and dignity, which no one but an Asiatic could display:

Review of the foregoing narrative.

Self-control of Ráma.

Stress laid upon the virtue by modern Hindús.

and which arises partly from a belief in the inevitable and irresistible decrees of fate, and partly from a careful training in the habit of self-command.

3rd, Ráma's interview with his mother.

The next scene, namely, Ráma's interview with his mother, is even more touching, and may be related as follows:—

Proceeds to the apartment of his mother.

When Ráma left the presence of the Mahárája and Kaikeyí, he proceeded towards the apartments of his mother Kausalyá. And as he passed the first apartment, the ancient men standing at the door cried out:—"May he conquer gloriously." And as he passed the second apartment, he saw the Bráhmans, deeply versed in the Vedas, and he bowed to them. Then as he went to the third apartment he saw the maid-servants, and children, and matrons, and those expert at keeping the door; and the women, full of joy, rushed off to carry to Kausalyá the news of her son's approach. Now all that night the Rání Kausalyá had been engaged in religious mortification, and in the morning she was paying divine honours to Vishnu. Desirous of propitiating the bright god in favour of her son Ráma, she had clothed herself in silk, and performed all the ceremonies of thanksgiving and joy, and offered up the burnt-offerings, after they had been duly consecrated by mantras from the sacred Vedas.

Kausalyá's worship of Vishnu in behalf of her son.

Ráma finds her engaged in sacrificing.

When Ráma entered the elegant apartment of his mother, he beheld her fanning the fire of the sacrifice, and he saw all that she had prepared for the service of the gods; the curds, the rice, the ghee, the sweetmeats, the parched grain, the white garlands, the boiled thick milk, the sacrificial wood, and the jars of holy water. The pious Kausalyá had rolled up her silk garment like a rope, and thrown it over her left shoulder, and drawn it loosely under her right arm; and she was weary with religious observances and internal abstraction of mind, but still eager to propitiate the gods. Seeing her son Ráma, she arose full of pleasure, and as he bowed to her feet she embraced him, and kissed him, and said:—"May you attain the age, the renown, and the virtue of the royal sages of old, and the merit worthy of your race: O

Her joy at seeing Ráma.

Ráma, your father the Mahárája, faithful to his word, will this day install you into the office of coadjutor in the Raj."

Ráma informs his mother of his coming exile.

Then Ráma, with joined hands, bowed to his mother, and said:—"O mother, are you unacquainted with this heavy calamity now impending, which threatens sorrow to Sítá and Lakshmana? It is Bharata whom the Mahárája will install as his coadjutor, and as for me, I am to go into exile for fourteen years, and dwell in the wilderness of Dandaka, and perform all the duties of a Vánaprastha, and live on fruits and roots."

Terrible grief of Kausalyá.

When the Rání heard these terrible words she fell down to the earth, like the bough of a saul tree lopped by the axe of the forester, or like a god who had fallen from heaven; and Ráma raised her up, and gently stroked her with his hand. At length, in an agony of grief, she spoke as follows:

Her bitter lamentations.

—"O my son! O Ráma! If you had never been born I should have been saved this bitter sorrow: A barren woman has only the grief of being childless, and knows not what it is to lose a son: O Ráma, I am the chief Rání, yet whilst you are here I have been supplanted, and now what shall I have to suffer when you are gone? My death must be the consequence: Disliked and neglected by my husband, I am already contemned by the servants of Kaikeyí; and now those who serve me will see the son of Kaikeyí installed in the Raj, and will not vouchsafe me a word: O my son, how shall I, thus deeply afflicted, be able to behold the face of the wrathful Kaikeyí? Seventeen years, O Ráma, have I passed since your birth, hoping that my sorrows would one day end: O Ráma, I am worn with age, and I cannot sustain the loss of you, nor the persecution of my rivals: You, too, doomed to hunger and fatigue, are now sunk in misery with wretched me: Surely my heart is as hard as a rock, since it has not burst ere now like the banks of a river in the rainy season: There must be no room in the mansions of Yama, or death would have seized upon me this day, like a lion springing upon a trembling doe: What is life to me? The sacrifice performed for obtaining a son has been to me like seed sown upon a barren land: If you go into the wilderness

I will follow you, like a feeble cow following her calf: But, O Ráma, it is not pleasing to me that you should forego the Raj and go into the jungle: The Maháraja is subject to the words of a woman, and has become the slave of Kaikeyí: You, O Ráma, have committed no fault that you should be driven into exile; and what son who remembers the duties of a ruler, would regard a sovereign who has sunk into his second childhood? O Ráma, before this matter is noised abroad, do you assume the management of affairs! Who will oppose you? If, urged by Kaikeyí, your father should appear hostile, do you slay him without remorse; enslaved by Kaikeyí he has sunk into childhood, and rendered his old age contemptible in the eyes of men."

Urges Ráma to seize the Raj, and slay the Maháraja.

Lakshmana then said:—"O mother, your words are perfectly just: You have spoken what is in my mind: I long to see Ráma upon the throne, and should any one come to oppose him, I swear by you and my weapons that he should soon behold the mansions of Yama: So long as I, who am the servant of Ráma, am here, who will dare to give the Raj to any one else?"

Lakshmana seconds the counsel of Kausalyá.

When Kausalyá heard these words, she rejoiced greatly, and thus addressed Ráma:—"O son, you have heard the words of your brother: If you approve, do that which lies before you: It does not become you to depart hence at the unjust words of my rival, and to leave me a prey to grief: If you desire to act rightly hearken unto me! If the Maháraja is entitled to your respect and obedience, I am, according to the Sastras, entitled to even more; and I command you not to retire to the forest: If you leave me I will refuse all food, and you will sink into hell."

Kausalyá again implores Ráma.

Ráma then spoke thus to his mother:—"I cannot transgress my father's commands; and therefore I entreat your permission to depart to the forest: No one is degraded by obedience to the command of a father." Ráma then said to Lakshmana:—"O my brother, the distress of my mother is immeasurable, but truth is founded on virtue, and virtue consists in obedience to a father: Having engaged to obey my father, I cannot render my promise void."

Ráma refuses to transgress his father's commands.

Refuses to permit Kausalyá to accompany him.

The wretched Kausalyá still implored her son to remain, or else permit her to accompany him; but Ráma would not, and said to her:—"The authority of the Mahárája is superior to all other considerations: He is your husband, and he is to you as a deity; and how can you condemn yourself to become a widow whilst your husband is still alive?"

Refuses to blame his enemies.

He then took his leave, saying:—"Bharata incurs no blame by accepting the Raj, nor Kaikeyí by accepting the favour from the Mahárája, nor Dasaratha by giving the Raj to Bharata rather than break his word." But the words of Ráma could not remove the heavy grief of Kausalyá; for she loved her son very much, and she feared that when he was gone her wicked rival Kaikeyí would heap insults upon her; and her heart was much oppressed, and she could only pray for the welfare of Ráma, and engage in religious rites in the hope of propitiating the gods.

Review of the foregoing narrative.

Perfect picture of a Hindú mother propitiating the gods in behalf of her son.

The foregoing narrative furnishes a perfect picture of a Hindú mother whose whole soul is bound up in the well-being of her son. Her prayers and sacrifices to the gods in behalf of Ráma, are precisely such as Hindú matrons in the present day would offer up on similar occasions. But with her the bitter disappointment was overwhelming, and she was wholly unable to exercise that self-control which had been so nobly displayed by Ráma. In the agony of her sorrow she suggested disobedience, rebellion, and parricide; to which, however, Ráma turned a deaf ear; although the bare fact of her making such propositions would seem to indicate that such revolutions were by no means uncommon in the courts of Hindú Rajas. Next Kausalyá prayed that she might be permitted to accompany Ráma into the jungle, and thus escape from the contempt of the palace slave girls, and the exultant face of her detested rival. But Ráma still refused, failing not to

Desperate character of Kausalyá's propositions to Ráma.

remind her in Brahmanical language of the duty which she owed to her husband, who was to her as a deity. Lastly, in a noble spirit of filial obedience, he absolved his brother, his step-mother, and his father from all blame in the cruel measure which deprived him of a throne and condemned him to a lengthened period of exile.

Noble spirit of Ráma in refusing to censure the measures of his parents.

The next scene, comprising Ráma's interview with his young wife, forms another of those beautiful pictures of a wife's love and devotion, which are so frequent in Hindú poetry. The story is as follows :—

4th, Ráma's interview with Sítá.

When Ráma had taken leave of his mother, he departed out of the palace, and proceeded to his own house. Meanwhile, the beautiful Sítá, not knowing what had occurred, and rejoicing in her husband's coming installation, was standing in her own apartment with eyes fixed upon the door, anxious for the return of her lord. When Ráma, with saddened countenance and drooping head, beheld his beautiful wife, dearer than life, modest and adorned with humility, he could no longer restrain his sorrow. Seeing that Ráma was sorrowful, Sítá was anxious, and asked him the reason of his melancholy in these words :—"Why is it, O Ráma, that you are not as yet installed, or is it that the moon has not yet entered the mansion of Pushyá? Why have you not the royal umbrella over your head, and why are you not fanned by the chámara? Why do not the bards repeat your praises, and why are you not attended by your servants, and priests, and counsellors? Why do I not see any signs of your installation? Let me know all and be relieved from my suspense!"

Ráma proceeds to take leave of Sítá.

Sítá's loving anxiety.

At these words of Sítá, Ráma told her of the two promises which Dasaratha had made to Kaikeyí, and how Bharata was to be installed in his room, and he himself was doomed to fourteen years' exile in the jungle. And Ráma said :—"The Maháraja has appointed Bharata to be his perpetual coadjutor in the Raj; and he is therefore to be honoured by

Ráma informs his wife of his coming exile.

you: By the command of my venerable father I go this day into the forest; it will become you therefore to devote yourself to vows, and fastings, and acts of devotion: My aged mother, wasted with grief, demands your respectful attention; my other mothers must also be duly honoured by you according to their rank; and my two brothers, Bharata and Satrughna, should be constantly regarded by you as your own brothers or sons: O beloved one, I must depart to the great forest, and do you remain here obedient to the commands of Raja Bharata, and never praise me in the presence of Bharata, for a Raja cannot endure to hear the praises of any one beside himself."

Desires her to remain and devote her life to religion and the service of her mothers.

Sítá, angry but yet humble, replied as follows:—"O Ráma, what words are these? A wife must share the fortunes of her husband; and if you this day depart to the forest, I must precede you and smooth the thorns: Wherever the husband may be, the wife must dwell in the shadow of his foot: I shall live in the jungle with as much ease as in my father's house, and shall enjoy happiness with you in the honey-scented wood: I have no fear, and I long to roam in the forest with you, and view the lakes and rivers, and the flowers and water-birds: I will be no burden to you, but if you leave me I will die."

Sítá replies that she must accompany him, and longs to roam with him in the forest.

Then Ráma, wishing to turn the mind of his wife from going with him into the forest, spoke to her as follows:—"O Sítá, the forest is not always pleasant, but I know that it is always dangerous: You are very delicate, and the beloved daughter of a Raja: You have never been in the sun out of your own room; how then can you brave the dangers of the wilderness? You are surrounded and attended every day by your maids; how then can you go out into the jungle without a servant near you? Your feet are as delicate as the petals of the lily, and the pebbles and the briars will afflict you grievously: You are like butter which will be melted away by the sun at noonday: You will have to cross many rivers, in which there are serpents, and crocodiles, and sharks: The roaring of the lions and the thundering of the cataracts are terrible to hear: The roads are infested

Ráma recounts the perils and sufferings of jungle life.

Hot sun.

No servants.

Stones and briars.

Serpents, crocodiles, and sharks.

Wild beasts.

with wild elephants and filled with thorns; and the jungle is covered with rank weeds in which venomous snakes lie concealed, so deadly that their breath alone will kill a man: Sometimes you will have to subsist upon grass seed; sometimes upon bitter roots and fruits; and sometimes you will not find even these things, and will have to fast many days: At times you will be athirst, and there will be no water: For garments, you will have to wear the bark of trees, or the skin of the antelope; and at night you will have to sleep upon grass, or upon the bare earth: Reptiles, mosquitoes, flies, scorpions, and fierce birds, will bite and sting you, and afflict you in your sleep: Fearful Rákshasas infest the wilderness, and will eat up a whole man at a single meal: Your beautiful locks of hair will become a tangled mass, and will lose their colour from want of oil: Besides all this suffering you will be without friends; and how can this be endured by a woman? It is my knowledge of all that you will have to suffer that prevents my taking you with me: Exposure to the heat, cold, and wind renders the frame lean and emaciated: What enjoyment then can you experience in the forest, whilst I shall be filled with distress at the sight of your afflictions? You are dearer to me than my own life, and I cannot consent to your suffering pain on my account; so take my advice and remain at my house: Though I may be travelling in distant parts, yet still you shall always be present in my thoughts; and though separated in our eyes we shall never be separated in our hearts: Moreover, separation often increases affection, and he alone can perfectly enjoy the felicity of connubial love, who knows what it is to have been separated from his wife: So bear all these things in your mind, and relinquish your plan of accompanying me, and do you determine to remain here."

Bad food.

Coarse garments.

Mosquitoes and scorpions.

Rákshasas.

Solitude.

Exposure.

Ráma desires Sítá to remain, and urges that separation will increase their affection.

Hearing the words of Ráma, Sítá was greatly distressed, and her eyes were filled with tears, and she replied in a low tone thus:—"O Ráma, I am fully aware of all the evil things that have been described by you, but in your presence all that is evil will be turned into good: The fierce animals of the jungle, the elephants, the lions, the tigers,

Sítá replies that in his society all evil will become good.

and all the beasts of prey will fly away when they behold you: The grass and the seeds, the roots and the fruits, will in your presence be more delightful than amrita; and if I should fail to procure these things for food, I can never be deprived of the amrita of your words: As for garments of bark and antelope's skin, I am not sorry to wear them, for the goddess Párvatí wore them for the sake of her husband Siva: Sleeping with you upon a bed of grass will give me more delight than sleeping by myself upon a bed of the softest down: Without you my life is not worth preserving, but with you not even Indra could terrify me: O my lord, by following my husband through affection, I shall be faultless, for the husband is the chief deity of the wife: It is written in the Vedas that the woman who always attends upon her husband, and follows him like a shadow in this life, will in like manner follow him in the world of spirits: It becomes you, therefore, O Ráma, to take me with you that I may share in your pleasures and in your pains, for the desert with all its evils are far better in my sight than all the pleasures of this palace without you."

Implores Ráma to permit her to accompany him.

But notwithstanding all the entreaties of Sítá, Ráma was unwilling that she should go into the wilderness; and, beholding her weeping, he bowed down his head, and fell into a deep meditation. And Sítá saw that he was sad, and that he was not inclined that she should go with him; and her face reddened with anger, and the tears fell from her eyes like honey from the red lotos, and she said:—"Shame on my father who gave me to a husband who has no spirit within him! Those who say that Ráma is brave, courageous, and strong, speak falsely: He has no power to protect his wife; and surely the Maháraja has acted wisely in not giving him the Raj: Having once married me he now wishes to give me away; and to whom am I to go, and where am I to remain for fourteen years?" Then she suddenly checked herself, and repented the harshness of her words, and said:—"I have never given you any cause for offence, but if I have done anything wrong I pray you to forgive me: I can bear anything but separation from you: I entreat you to take me

Ráma still unwilling.

Wrath of Sítá.

Taunts Ráma.

Checks herself and weeps bitterly.

with you: Do not disappoint me, O Rama!" So saying, she fell at the feet of her husband, and wept very bitterly.

Rama yields to his wife's entreaties.

At these words, Ráma could no longer shut his ears to the prayer of Sítá. He took her by the hand, and wiped away her tears, and spoke to her in a mild voice thus:—"Why, my beloved, do you blame me without understanding me? My heart's desire is always to remain with you, and I would not care to attain the exalted position of Brahma should I be without you: But when I thought over the perils of the wilderness, and the delicacy of your frame, I desired for your own sake to prevent you from accompanying me: Now I am satisfied that you are determined at heart to go with me, and therefore it is not proper for me to leave you behind: Go you, therefore, and take leave of all your superiors, and of your mothers-in-law, and throw off all your ornaments, and present them to the Bráhmans, and to those who may be in need."

Sítá's joy.

Then Sítá was filled with joy, and did as she was commanded by Ráma.

Lakshmana permitted to accompany Ráma.

And Lakshmana approached his brother and entreated that he might be permitted to accompany them into the wilderness, and Ráma gave him leave.

Ráma and Sítá give all their jewels and goods to the Bráhmans and the needy.

Then Ráma and Sítá gave all their jewels and goods to the Bráhmans of their household, and to other Bráhmans, and to their own servants, and to all the needy who came from afar to receive presents from Ráma; and then they took off their shoes, after the manner of devotees, and went with bare feet to the palace of the Maháraja to take their leave of Dasaratha.

Remarks on Sítá's love for Ráma.

The foregoing dialogue is almost too beautiful for criticism. The delicate girl-wife not only compels her reluctant husband to take her with him into the jungle, but even pictures the delights of jungle-life; although, to one bred in the luxuries and seclusion of a zenana, such a life must have presented a thousand terrors.

5th, Farewell visit of Ráma, Sítá, and Lakshmana to the Maháraja.

Next follows the last scene, the farewell visit of Ráma, Sítá, and Lakshmana to take leave of the

Maháraja. According to European ideas, such a visit could scarcely have been expected under the circumstances; and yet it is strictly in accordance with Hindú ideas of the respect due to a parent and a superior, even in such a time of trial. The story proceeds as follows:—

Profound sorrow of the people of Ayodhyá at the exile of Ráma.

Meantime the rumour spread throughout the city of Ayodhyá, that Ráma, and his wife Sítá, and his brother Lakshmana were to be sent out as exiles into the wilderness of Dandaka; and all the people were thunderstruck at the tidings, for they had been expecting to see the installation of Ráma; and all of them were grieved to the heart, and became so senseless, that though they had eyes they could not see, and though they had ears they could not hear. And all the inhabitants of the city crowded around the gate-way of the palace; and even the women came out from their inner apartments, and sacrificed their shame and modesty, and stood round the palace gate-way. Presently the two Princes, and the wife of Ráma, were seen walking with bare feet towards the palace of the Maháraja; Ráma walking first, and Sítá close behind him, while Lakshmana brought up the rear. At this sight the whole multitude were filled with grief, and bitterly reproached the Maháraja.

Ráma, Sítá and Lakshmana walk barefooted to the palace.

The people reproach the Maháraja.

Some said that he was an old hollow tree, which had generated the fire which was destroying a blooming garden. Others cried out that he was possessed by demons, saying:—"Unless the Maháraja were possessed by demons he could not have sent his son into exile; since no father is capable of sending away his son, even if that son were full of faults, whilst Ráma is full of every kind of virtue." Some of the people thought of accompanying Ráma into the jungle, taking with them their wives and families, and leaving Dasaratha, and his wife Kaikeyí, and his son Bharata to rule the desert city of Ayodhyá. Others said:—"Why do you blame the Maháraja, when it is Kaikeyí who is the root of all this evil? She persuaded the Maháraja by sweet and coaxing words to send Ráma away, and to give the Raj

Contemplate accompanying Ráma into the jungle.

Reproach Kaikeyí.

to Bharata: Perchance Bharata is in the plot, and therefore remains in the city of his mother's father out of shame: If he felt so strong a desire to rule the Raj, he should have asked Ráma for it; and then he would have obtained the Raj without any misfortune befalling Ráma."

Scene in the palace. The Maháraja summons all his women to be present at his parting with Ráma.

Whilst the people were thus lamenting, Ráma approached the apartments of the Maháraja, and heard the lamentations of his father, and the imprecations which he continued to pour upon the wicked Kaikeyí. At length the chosen Counsellor Sumantra made known to Dasaratha that his son Ráma stood at the door; and the Maháraja ordered that all his women should be summoned to that apartment, and that Ráma should then enter the room, for he cared not to be alone when he took leave of his son. Then all the women advanced with a slow pace into that room, and their eyes were red with weeping, and Kausalyá was in the midst of them. Then Ráma, and Sítá, and Lakshmana were conducted into the presence of the Maháraja; and the Maháraja, surrounded by his wives, arose from his seat, and then fell upon the ground in a swoon; and Ráma and Lakshmana ran towards him and embraced him with their arms, and placed him on the royal couch; whilst the cries of that multitude of women filled the palace, and mingled with the clanging of their ornaments. Then Ráma, with joined hands, said to his father:—"I entreat you, O Maháraja, to look with a propitious eye upon me who am ready to depart to the wilderness of Dandaka: Permit also Lakshmana and Sítá to accompany me to the forest: O fountain of honour, command us even as Brahma commands his children."

Swooning of the Maháraja on beholding Ráma, Sítá, and Lakshmana.

The Maháraja desires Ráma to seize the Raj.

The Maháraja then gazed steadfastly upon Ráma, and said:—"O Ráma, I have been infatuated with Kaikeyí through the promises I have given to her: O Ráma, set aside my commandment, and become this day the Raja of Ayodhyá!" Ráma replied, with joined hands:—"My lord the Maháraja has yet a thousand years to live upon the earth, and I will abide in the forest without desiring the Raj: When fourteen years have passed away I shall have

Ráma refuses.

completed my vow and will again embrace your feet: Who in this earth will hereafter obey the commands of his father if I now violate them?" Then the distressed Maháraja said to his affectionate son:—"O beloved one, go without haste in a safe and good road, but go not away to-day: The evening is approaching, and refreshed by the sight of you, let me enjoy one good day more: Spend this night with your mother and me, and to-morrow do as it pleases you: O Ráma, I have been deceived by a woman, who has covered her evil designs, like a fire that is covered by ashes."

The Maháraja implores Ráma to stay one day longer.

Ráma urges that he must not delay.

Ráma replied:—"To depart hence is my only desire: Let the Raj, with its people and wealth, and waving fields of corn, be given to Bharata; for my resolution to embrace a forest-life cannot be shaken: O Maháraja, let the promise given by you to Kaikeyí be fulfilled to the very uttermost! Observing your commandment exactly as it was delivered, I will reside in the forest for fourteen years; and I swear, O Maháraja, that my only desire is that your word should be fulfilled, and your character be cleared from every stain of falsity: O my lord and father, I cannot stay longer, and I pray you to restrain your grief; it is no affliction for me to depart: Kaikeyí said to me:—"Ráma, go to the forest!" I replied:—"I will go!" I will therefore keep my word: O venerable father, be not distressed! We shall enjoy ourselves in the quiet forest, filled with gentle deer, and vocal with the song of birds; and when the fourteen years are expired you shall behold us again, and your promise will have been fulfilled."

Seeks to console the Maháraja.

Intense grief of all present excepting Kaikeyí.

At these words all the wives of the Maháraja wept bitterly, excepting only the remorseless Kaikeyí; and the Chief Counsellor Sumantra wept in like manner. And the Maháraja was overcome with anger, and he moved about his head, and sighed heavily; and he began to wring his hands, and to grind his teeth, and his colour changed, and his eyes reddened with rage, and he fell anew into the depths of anguish. Then Sumantra, seeing the deep sorrow of the Maháraja, tried to pierce the soul of Kaikeyí with sharp

Sumantra heaps terrible reproaches upon Kaikeyí.

words as terrible as thunderbolts, saying:—"You, who have abandoned Dasaratha, are the murderess of your husband and family; by your vile deeds you have afflicted him who is invincible as Indra, as immovable as a mountain, and as impassable as the sea: The will of the husband ought to prevail over the wife, far above the gratification of her children: Men succeed to a Raj according to their seniority, and is it your wish to annul this law? But let your son Bharata become the Raja, and let him govern the Raj: Where Ráma goes we will go: No Bráhman will remain in your dominions: We, the inhabitants of the city of Ayodhyá, and all the people of the country of Kosala, will certainly go into the jungle with Ráma: What pleasure then will you have in obtaining a Raj which has been abandoned by all your friends, by all the Bráhmans, and by every good and loyal subject? Your deeds are so heinous that I wonder the earth does not open at the sight of your abominable conduct: Who but you would fell a mango tree with an axe, and plant a tree of harsh and worthless berries in its room? O Rání, obey the will of your husband, and be not obstinate in transgression, for a husband is like the sovereign of the gods: Let the lotos-eyed Ráma, the virtuous, the first-born, the generous, the energetic, the mighty, be installed in the Raj; for bear in mind, O Rání, that if Ráma leaves his father and goes into the forest, your infamy will fill the whole world."

Threatens to accompany Ráma with all the people of Kosala, and leave the Raj uninhabited.

Implores Kaikeyí to retract her determination.

At these words of Sumantra the Rání Kaikeyí was neither moved nor distressed, nor was her countenance changed. So the Maháraja said to Sumantra:—"Speedily order the army, composed of four bands, and laden with wealth, to accompany Ráma; let beautiful dancing-girls, and musicians, and rich merchants adorn the train of my son; let the warlike engines follow Ráma, and the citizens also, and all kinds of carriages, with huntsmen and all who are skilled in the chase: Whilst hunting the antelopes, and the elephants, and drinking the wild honey, and beholding the flowing rivers, he will speedily forget the Raj: Let all my storehouses of grain and treasure accompany Ráma, so that he

Kaikeyí unmoved.

The Maháraja orders the army and treasures to accompany Ráma.

may dwell happily in the wilderness; and Bharata shall govern Ayodhyá until the prosperous Ráma shall have accomplished all he desires."

Kaikeyí declares that Bharata will not accept an empty Raj.

At these words of the Maháraja, the Rání Kaikeyí was greatly troubled and sore afraid; and she said to Dasaratha:—"My son Bharata will not accept of a Raj which has been stripped of its wealth, and become like wine which has lost its strength." Dasaratha replied:—"O you vile one, having loaded me with a grievous burden, will you afflict me whilst I am bearing it? What has become of your former pretended love for Ráma?" Kaikeyí said:—"It is meet that he should go into exile as Asamanja had done."[3] Dasaratha replied:—"Asamanja was a wicked prince; he caught the children of the people in the streets, and threw them into the river Sarayú; but what has Ráma done that he should be sent into exile? O Rání, to abandon a virtuous son would destroy the splendour of Indra; and I, with all the rest, will turn my back upon the Raj, and pleasure, and wealth, and will follow Ráma this day; and leave you with your son Bharata to enjoy the pleasures of the Raj."

Urges that Ráma should go into exile as Asamanja had done.

Tradition of Asamanja.

Ráma refuses to accept the army.

Then the humble Ráma supplicated Maháraja Dasaratha in these words:—"O Raja of Rajas, what occasion have I for soldiers or for followers, who have abandoned all society and enjoyment to live on the wild productions of the forest? Who, having given away an excellent elephant, is desirous of possessing the grass rope which binds it round? O lord of the world, what occasion have I for troops? Bring hither, I pray you, the raiment of bark, the spade wherewith I may dig for the roots, and the basket covered with leather in which I may carry them; these are for me who am to reside fourteen years in the jungle." Then Kaikeyí, devoid of shame, brought herself the dresses of bark, and said before all the people:—"Put them on!" And the mighty Ráma received the bark dress from Kaikeyí, and threw off his garment of fine linen, and all his ornaments, even the mar-

Calls for garments of bark, and a spade and basket.

Kaikeyi brings the bark clothing.

Ráma puts it on.

[3] This reference to the cruelty of Asamanja is remarkable from its being one of the very few traditions which appear to refer to the ancient Rajas of Ayodhyá.

riage ring given to him by the father of his wife Sítá, and he put on the habit of a sage. Lakshmana also in like manner put off his elegant and ornamented dress, and put on the habit of a devotee in the presence of his father. Sítá, accustomed only to a silken dress, started at the sight of the bark raiment, like a deer at the sight of a snare; and filled with shame, and deeply distressed, she received the habit from the cruel Kaikeyí. Then with tearful countenance she said to Lakshmana:—"What am I to do with these garments of bark? I have never worn such clothes, and I do not know how to use them." At these pitiful words of Sítá all the women began to cry, and Maháraja Dasaratha reproached Kaikeyí, saying:—"O shameless Kaikeyí, you are determined to ruin me; but answer me one thing: You asked me only for the exile of Ráma; why then do you give the bark raiment to Lakshmana and Sítá? Ráma is bound for my sake to wear the garments of a devotee according to your request; but Sítá and Lakshmana accompany Ráma of their own accord, and are not bound to obey your commands."[4]

Lakshmana adopts the bark clothing.

Sítá weeps over it.

The Maháraja declares that Ráma alone is bound to wear the bark garments.

The sage Vasishtha then said to Kaikeyí:—"O worthless woman, you are the disgrace of your own family, and you have imposed upon the Maháraja without the shadow of an excuse: It is improper for Sítá to go into the forest, and she ought to abide here in the house of Ráma: If Sítá goes into the wilderness we will attend her, and all the city will attend her likewise: Even Bharata and Satrughna will go when Ráma goes, and attend upon their elder brother: Govern alone then the country when it shall be empty and destitute of men: You wicked woman, there will be no city here unless Ráma resides in it, and the wilderness which he may inhabit will instantly become a great country: You, rapacious for your own son, have plunged him into misery, for there is no one in all the Raj who will not follow Ráma: O Kaikeyí, to-day you will see the beasts, and the serpents, and the deer, and the birds accompanying Ráma; and even the trees will turn their faces towards him: Present, then,

Vasishtha reproaches Kaikeyí.

[4] The garments here said to have been made of the bark of trees, in all probability, were made of a thick coarse cotton expressly for jungle wear.

O Ráni, excellent ornaments to your daughter-in-law, and take away the dress of bark, for she shall not wear it: The exile of Ráma was alone requested by you."[5]

The Maháraja presents Sítá with clothes and ornaments.

At these words of Vasishtha, the Maháraja ordered his storekeepers and treasurers to present Sítá with clothes and ornaments sufficient to last her for fourteen years; and the men did as they were commanded, and Sítá threw aside the garments of bark, and arrayed herself in excellent attire as before. The Maháraja then said:—"Bring the chariot and take Ráma in it; that he may appear to be going on a pleasure excursion rather than into exile."

Orders his chariot for the exiles.

Ráma, Sítá, and Lakshmana take leave of Kausalyá. Her speech to Ráma.

Then Ráma and Síta and Lakshmana turned to Kausalyá to take their leave of her; and Kausalyá said to Ráma:—"Sítá is unprotected, and Lakshmana is a mere boy: Do you take care of them in the wilderness, and above all take care of yourself, and never forget me, who am your unfortunate mother." Here she was choked with grief,

Ráma's reply.

and could speak no more; and Ráma said to her:—"Lakshmana is my right hand, and Sítá is my shadow; so you need have no fears on their account; For myself fear nothing, but engage yourself wholly in consoling my father Dasaratha: By your favour I hope to be successful at last, and to absolve my father from his promise, and return again to the Raj." Kausalyá then said to Lakshmana:—

Her speech to Lakshmana.

"I rejoice to see your attachment to Ráma; you should mutually protect each other, and Sítá should be the object of your common care: Consider Ráma as your father, and Sítá as your mother, and serve them as you have served us." Kausalyá then embraced Sítá, and kissed her, and said:—

Her speech to Sítá.

"The nature of women who have been constantly honoured by their beloved husbands, is to neglect their lords in time of trouble; but in the heart of a virtuous woman her husband is esteemed sacred, and regarded as the pure foun-

[5] The whole of this episode in which Vasishtha reproaches Kaikeyí is evidently an interpolation in the original tradition. The ideas expressed are almost precisely the same as those which had been previously expressed by Sumantra. In the original story the gift of the dresses to Sítá probably followed immediately after the declaration of the Maháraja that Sítá was not required to wear the garments of bark.

tain of happiness: Thus, though my son Ráma is exiled to the jungle, he is not contemptible in your sight, but is regarded as your deity, in poverty the same as in wealth." Then Sítá, with joined hands, replied thus to the mother of her husband:—"O excellent one, I will do all you have commanded; for I am acquainted with the duty of a woman towards her lord, and could no more depart from virtue than light could depart from the moon: The lute yields no music if it be divested of its strings; the chariot moves not without wheels; and a woman bereft of her husband has no pleasure though she have a hundred children: Scanty is the joy derived from a father, a brother, or a son; but who does not honour a husband, as the source of happiness without bounds: To the wife a husband is even as a god." After this, Ráma took leave of the other wives of his father, and he said to them:—"Whatever I have done amiss through ignorance while living with you, I entreat you now to forgive." When the ladies heard these pious and humble words, their hearts were penetrated with grief, and they filled the palace with their lamentation and wailing.

Sítá's reply.

Ráma takes leave of the other women.

The parting was now over, and the unfortunate trio were to be conveyed to the frontier in the chariot of the Mahárája. But the story may be related at once as it is told in the Rámáyana:—

6th, Lamentations on the departure of Ráma.

After this Sumantra said to Ráma:—"O Prince, ascend the chariot, and I will drive you whithersoever you desire to go." Then the weapons were placed in the chariot, and all the clothes and jewels which the Mahárája had given to Sítá, together with a strong basket covered with leather, and a spade; and Sítá ascended the chariot, and Ráma and Lakshmana did likewise, and Sumantra mounted the driving seat, and drove the willing steeds with the swiftness of the wind. Then the whole city of Ayodhyá was filled with tumult, and resounded with the noise of intoxicated elephants, the neighing of horses, and the clanging of ornaments; and all the people were in deep affliction, and ran after the chariot like persons running to plunge into water;

Ráma, Sítá, and Lakshmana depart in the chariot and are driven by Sumantra.

Excitement in the city of Ayodhyá.

and they cried out to Sumantra:—"Pull in the horses that we may behold the face of Ráma!" The distressed Mahá-raja in like manner rushed out of the palace crying:—"I will see my beloved son." And there was a great noise of weeping women like that of a female elephant when her mate is bound by the hunter. But Ráma commanded Sumantra to drive on, and the dust raised by the chariot-wheels was laid by the falling tears of the citizens. The whole city was steeped with water, for the people were frantic with grief; and the tears fell from the eyes of the women, as water falls from the lotos when struck by the leap of a fish.

The charioteer called upon to stop.

Grief of the people.

Affliction of the Maháraja.

The Maháraja, seeing that the city was overwhelmed with sorrow, fell down beneath the affliction like a tree which has been severed from its roots; and a tumultuous noise arose behind Ráma from the men who supported the Mahá-raja in his swoon. And Ráma looked behind him and saw his father Dasaratha, and his mother Kausalyá, running after the chariot, and heard them calling upon Sumantra to rein in the horses; but he commanded Sumantra to drive on; and the heart of the driver was torn by the conflicting orders as if it had been torn by the chariot-wheels. And Ráma said to Sumantra:—"When asked by the Maháraja wherefore you did not rein in the horses, say that you did not hear; my deep distress has driven me to this false-hood." So Sumantra drove on the restive horses, and the royal Counsellors said to Dasaratha:—"O Maháraja, no one follows far after him whom they expect to see return." But the wretched Maháraja, with a sad countenance, stood still with his Rání Kausalyá, watching the chariot as it was driven further and further from his eyes.

The Maháraja and Kausalyá command Su-mantra to halt.

Ráma desires Sumantra to drive on, and to excuse himself by a falsehood.

General mourning throughout the city and palace of Ayodhyá.

Meanwhile all the ladies of the royal household were filled with distress, like cows who have been bereft of their young. The priests who served the sacred fire made no oblation to the gods; the householders prepared no food; the moon forbore to shine; the sun disappeared while it was yet day; the elephants rejected their fodder; the cows refused to nourish their calves; mothers felt no pleasure even in the sight of their first-born; the planets approached

the moon in evil aspects; the stars appeared gloomy and moved backwards; the clouds were driven by the wind until they resembled a troubled ocean in the air; the city was moved out of its place; and the four quarters of the heavens were in great agitation and overspread with darkness. The whole city of Ayodhyá was thrown into mourning, and resembled the earth and mountains when deprived of Indra; fathers and mothers ceased to think of their children, wives forgot their husbands, and lovers failed to remember each other.[6]

The Maháraja falls to the earth, but is attended by Kausalyá and Kaikeyí.

Now so long as the Maháraja beheld any vestige of his beloved and virtuous son, he raised himself up on the earth to behold him; but when he could no longer see the dust of the chariot-wheels, he fell again to the earth in the deepest misery; and the beautiful Kausalyá attended him, holding his right hand, and Kaikeyí followed him on his left side. When the Maháraja saw that Kaikeyí was there, he said to her:—"O Kaikeyí, bent on evil, touch not me! I wish not to see you, for you are neither my wife nor my friend: You, who have abandoned virtue for the sake of wealth, I now abandon for ever: Your hand which I took in the presence of the sacred fire, I relinquish for ever, both in this life and the next: If Bharata, receiving this flourishing Raj, be pleased with what you have gained for him, he may present me with what funeral offerings he will, but none shall approach me." Then the Ráni Kausalyá, wasted with distress, raised the Maháraja from the earth, and wiped the dust from off him. And he repented on account of Ráma, like one who has murdered a Bráhman, or touched fire with his hand; and he vented his grief thus:—"The foot-prints of the excellent horses that have borne away my son are still in the road, but the great one is to be seen no more: My son Ráma, who has ever slept on soft pillows perfumed

Refuses to be touched by Kaikeyí.

Kausalyá raises him.

His lamentations for Ráma.

[6] The author of the Adhyátma Rámáyana here introduces a very extraordinary scene for the purpose of enforcing the belief in the divinity of Ráma. It will be remembered that the Maháraja had two priests, namely, Vasishtha and Vámadeva. Of these Vámadeva is said to have preached a long sermon to the people of Ayodhyá, explaining how Ráma was an incarnation of Vishnu for the destruction of Rávana. The matter of the sermon is so entirely theological that it is reserved for discussion in a future volume.

with sandal wood, and been fanned by damsels adorned with costly ornaments, will this night take shelter beneath a tree, with a block of stone for his pillow; and in the morning he will rise covered with dirt like a buffalo arising from a muddy pool: The inhabitants of the jungle will behold the valiant Ráma rising and departing like one forlorn: The beloved Sítá, ever worthy of happiness, will be wearied with the entangled thorns, and alarmed at the roar of the wild beasts of the forest: O Kaikeyí, be whatever you desire, and dwell a widow in the Raj; I can live no longer without the presence of Ráma." Thus lamenting, the Maháraja entered his beautiful palace, like one who enters the house of mourning after he has burned a deceased kinsman.

The Maháraja returns to the palace and is conveyed to the apartments of Kausalyá.

Seeing the city bereft of its people, the Maháraja entered the palace as the sun enters a cloud, and he said:—"Carry me speedily to the apartments of Kausalyá, the mother of Ráma, for nowhere else can my heart obtain ease." Then those who were waiting on the Maháraja carried him to the chamber of Kausalyá, and he ascended a couch and sank into

Midnight scene.

a delirium. And the night overspread all around, like the night of universal death; and at midnight the Maháraja said to Kausalyá:—"O excellent Kausalyá, I cannot see you; touch me I pray you with your hand, for my sight has gone

Lamentations of Kausalyá.

after Ráma." Then the Rání, seeing him lying on the couch mourning for Ráma, drew near and sat by the side of her afflicted lord, and thus addressed him:—"That female reptile Kaikeyí, having shed her poison upon Ráma and cast her slough, will now go about with ease, and will terrify me like a venomous serpent: Better would it have been for me, if Ráma had dwelt in the city as a wandering mendicant, or if he had been condemned to servitude; but the wicked Kaikeyí has cast him out to be a portion to the Rákshasas, as fuel is thrown to the sacrificial fire: The hero of mighty arm, attended by his wife and brother, has been condemned by you to exile in the forest, and what can await them but the direst distress? How can these tender ones drag on their wretched lives feeding on fruits? Alas! they are like the remains of a tree, which has been

devoured by elephants or destroyed by the jungle fire before its fruit has ripened: Yet even now the day may come when I shall again behold Ráma, and his wife Sítá, and his brother Lakshmana; but when will that day arrive? When will this renowned city of Ayodhyá, hearing that the two heroes have returned from the forest, once again be filled with gladness and be decorated with banners? When will the city be moved with joy at beholding these two heroes, like the sea at the new and full moon? When will the thousands of people scatter sweetmeats in the streets, as the two sons enter Ayodhyá adorned with beautiful ear-rings and holding up their scimitars? When will the daughters of Bráhmans joyfully go round the city with fruits and flowers? When will my son Ráma, who is old in understanding but endowed like the gods with perpetual youth, when will he return and revive us like a seasonable rain? O Maháraja, like a cow whose calf has been carried off by a lion, so have I been deprived of my offspring by the tigress Kaikeyí."

Review of the foregoing narrative of Ráma's departure into exile.

The foregoing story of Ráma's departure into exile is replete with many touching references, which to the European would appear to be exaggerations, but which are never for a moment doubted by the Hindú. Thus it seems difficult to understand why Ráma, Sítá, and Lakshmana should have walked to the palace with bare feet instead of proceeding thither in a chariot; but according to Hindú ideas the conduct of the exiles would have been regarded as contumacious and defiant had they approached the palace in a more ostentatious manner whilst suffering under the displeasure of the Maháraja. Again, the sorrow of the royal household may have been exaggerated by the bard; but still some allowance must be made for the overweening and demonstrative affections, which on all occasions are strongly manifested in Hindú families. The excitement of the

Reason why Ráma, Sítá, and Lakshmana walked to the palace with bare feet.

Demonstrative character of family affections amongst the Hindús.

Sympathies of the people with the domestic life of the Raja in ancient times.

people of Ayodhyá has also been described with much poetical extravagance and embellishment; but still it should be borne in mind that in ancient times, when the Hindú sovereignties had been as yet undisturbed by Mussulman invasion, the attachment between a people and their Raja was of a strong and patriarchal character; and the domestic incidents of palace-life were regarded with an interest and sympathy which finds but little expression in modern history, excepting in the fervent loyalty of the people of England towards the family of our sovereign lady Victoria.

Filial obedience of Ráma, a Hindú model for all time.

The filial obedience of Ráma is of course intended as a model for all time; and to this day his refusal to countenance any scheme of disobedience or rebellion, his patient self-sacrifice in order that the promise made by his father should be fulfilled in its integrity, and his loyal reverence towards the Mahá-raja and the Ránís, are regarded as bright examples to be followed when required in every Hindú family.

Conduct of Kaikeyí intended as a warning to younger wives.

The cruel and relentless conduct of Kaikeyí is in like manner intended as a solemn warning to a young and beautiful wife against exercising an undue influence over a fond husband, and causing him to commit the injustice of promoting her son at the

The lesson ineffectual.

expense of the elder branch of the family. But inasmuch as a favourite wife is more prone to ambition than a son is prone to disobedience, the lesson involved in the tradition of Kaikeyí apparently exercises but little influence in those households in which a husband is married to more than one wife; and it is by no means unfrequent even in the present day for the youth and beauty of a favourite wife or concubine to prevail over the better judgment of an uxorious Chieftain.

CHAPTER IX.

JOURNEY TO CHITRA-KÚTA.

THE journey of Ráma with his wife and brother, immediately after taking leave of the Maháraja, is described with considerable clearness in the Rámáyana. The route lay in a southerly direction from the city of Ayodhyá to the country of Bundelkund; and the three most important stages are as follows:—

Route followed by the exiles, divided into three stages.

1st, SRINGAVERA, the modern Sungroor, which is situated on the left or northern bank of the river Ganges. This was an important station, inasmuch as it formed the frontier town between the Raj of Kosala and the country of the Bhíls, and appears to have been the residence of the Bhíl Raja.

1st, Sringavera, the modern Sungroor, on the left bank of the Ganges.

2nd, PRAYÁGA, the modern Alláhabád, which is situated at a very holy spot according to Hindú ideas, being at the junction of the two sacred rivers, the Ganges and the Jumná. Prayága was the seat of a famous Bráhman named Bharadwája, who is said to have dwelt here surrounded by a band of Bráhman disciples, who led the ideal life of austerity, sacrifice, and devotion, which is so frequently described and lauded by Brahmanical bards.

2nd, Prayága, the modern Alláhabád, at the junction of the Ganges and Jumná.

3rd, CHITRA-KÚTA, a celebrated hill, which is situated to the south of the Jumná in the country of Bundelkund. This was the seat of Válmíki, the sage

3rd, Chitra-kúta, to the south of the Jumná.

and bard, who became famous in after years as the author of the Rámáyana; and who was surrounded by a society of disciples, and led the same mode of life as was pursued by Bharadwája. It was on this hill that the exiles ultimately took up their abode, and passed some pleasant years.

The narrative of the journey may be related as follows:—

1st Route: from Ayodhyá to Sringavera. People of Ayodhyá follow Ráma to the Tamasá river. The halt.

Now all this while, though the Maháraja had been carried back to the city of Ayodhyá, yet the people would not return from following the chariot of Ráma; and when the evening was come, Sumantra halted the chariot on the banks of the river Tamasá, and loosened the weary horses; and the horses drank of the water and rolled themselves in the dust, and then plunged into the flood, and began feeding on the banks of the river. And Ráma fixed upon a pleasant lodging on the banks of the Tamasá, and he said to Lakshmana:—"I will spend this night in feeding only on water; this is my choice, although there is abundance of wild fruits." Then, the sun being set, Sumantra tied up the horses and gave them plenty of fodder; and when all had performed their evening duties Sumantra and Lakshmana prepared a bed of leaves, and thither Ráma retired with his wife Sítá. And when Ráma and Sítá had fallen asleep, Lakshmana related to Sumantra the various excellencies of Ráma; and when the night had almost passed, the early dawn beheld Lakshmana and Sumantra still conversing respecting the merits of Ráma.

Encampment during the first night.

Sunrise: Ráma, Sítá, and Lakshmana depart without awaking the people.

In this manner Ráma and the people that were with him spent the night on the banks of the river Tamasá; and at early morning Ráma arose from the bed of leaves, and seeing the people very quiet, he said to his brother:—"O Lakshmana, behold these people devoted to us, and inattentive to their own houses, locked in sleep beneath the trees; these citizens have vowed to bring us back, and will never leave us while their lives remain: Let us therefore gently

mount the chariot while they are sleeping beneath the trees, and take our departure; lest they be overwhelmed with trouble on account of our distress." Then at the command of Ráma, Sumantra harnessed the horses to the chariot, and Ráma, and Sítá, and Lakshmana mounted it; and Ráma said to Sumantra:—"Turn back the chariot and drive it a short while the way we came, that the people may see the footprints of the horses, and think that I have returned to the city of Ayodhyá." So Sumantra drove the chariot back a short distance towards the city, and then turned round another way, and again came to the river Tamasá. And when the citizens awoke in the morning they were overwhelmed with sorrow at finding that Ráma had departed; but presently they saw the track of his chariot, and they followed it a little way, and then lost it, and they filled the air with their lamentations. After a while they approached the city weeping abundance of tears, and their grief broke out afresh. No one rejoiced, and no one was cheerful; the merchants ceased to expose their wares, the bazaars were empty of people, and no one was pleased at finding lost goods, or at the increase of wealth, or at the birth of a first-born son; every house was filled with weeping, and the husbands who had returned home full of distress, were tormented by their wives as the elephant is tormented by the iron hook of his driver. And the women of the city cried out in their grief:—"What are houses, or wealth, or children, or pleasure to us, who cannot behold Ráma: Blessed are the rivers and pools which Ráma shall purify by bathing therein: The forest abounding with beautiful groves, the rivers, the lakes, and the verdant sides of the mountain will all be adorned by the presence of Ráma: The greenwood shades and hills to which Ráma may resort, will honour him as a most beloved guest: The trees laden with flowers and blossoms, and covered with humming bees, will point out Ráma to one another: The mountains, through compassion for Ráma, will display their most beautiful flowers and fruits even out of the due season, and pour forth their varied cataracts of pure water: Let us follow Ráma; and we will

Sumantra drives towards Ayodhyá to delude the people, and then returns by a detour to the Tamasá.

The people return to Ayodhyá.

Mournful appearance of the city.

Lamentations of the women.

attend upon Sítá, whilst you, O husbands, wait upon Ráma." Then all the women wept aloud, for Ráma was dearer to them even than their own sons.

Passage over the river Tamasá into the beautiful country of Kosala.

Meanwhile Ráma and the others had crossed the river Tamasá, and journeyed far away from the place where they had slept, and viewed the villages cultivated to their utmost borders, and passed through the rich country of Kosala, which was plenteous in corn and wealth, and abounded with sacred groves and places of sacrifice, and was covered with pleasant gardens and mango trees, and filled with men generous and happy. Presently Ráma saw the divine Ganges flowing in three directions; the river which is frequented by holy sages whose hermitages adorn its banks; the river where the glad females resort at festive seasons, and lave in its cool and pleasant waters; the river which dashes against its strong banks with a terrific sound resembling a deep laugh, or smiling with its pure foam, now flows with a divided stream and anon is diversified with whirlpools; the river which abounds with the pure lotos, and where the gods perform their ablutions; the river which rolls on gently shelving shores, bordered with pure sand, vocal with geese and cranes, and adorned with flocks of playful birds; the river whose banks are decorated with trees growing in the form of garlands, and are here and there covered with the expanded lotos; the river which removing every load of impurity is itself clear and pellucid; the river whose surrounding forests are adorned with fruits, flowers, and leaves, like a damsel with excellent ornaments, and resound with the roar of elephants as mighty as those that guard the universe, and as sportive and generous as those which carry Indra, the sovereign of the gods; the river which fell from the feet of the divine Vishnu, and from the matted hair of the great god Siva, through the influence of the sage Bhagíratha; the river Gangá, wife of Sumudra, pure and destroying sin.[1] The valiant and dauntless Ráma, viewing this river full of waves,

Poetical description of the river Ganges.

Progress to Sringavera, the modern Sungroog.

[1] According to the Pundits, the chariot passed over this river through the air. Between the Tamasá and the Ganges, other rivers, including the Gomatí, are said to have been crossed by Ráma and his party in like manner.

and whirlpools, proceeded towards the city of Sringavera, which is on the borders of the Raj of Ayodhyá towards the country of the Bhíls. When he had reached Sringavera, he said to Sumantra :—"O charioteer, to-day we will lodge in this place under that Ingudí tree, which stands near the river: There I will contemplate the chief of rivers, whose waters are esteemed by the gods, the demons, and the Gandharvas, and prized by deer, serpents, and birds." So Sumantra drove the horses to the Ingudí tree, and there Ráma descended from the chariot with Sítá and Lakshmana, exclaiming :—"This is a delightful tree."

Border town between the Raj of Kosala and the Bhíl country.

Now Sringavera was the border town between the Raj of Kosala and the country of the Bhíls; and the Raja of the Bhíls was Guha, who was a valiant and renowned chieftain, and a friend to Ráma. When Raja Guha heard that Ráma had come into his dominions, he went out to meet him with all his kinsmen; and Ráma, seeing the Raja of the Bhíls approaching, went forward with Lakshmana to welcome him. Then Guha manifested great sorrow, and he embraced Ráma, and bowed down to his feet, and raised his joined hands to his head, and thus spoke to him:—"O Ráma, let this place be to you even as Ayodhyá! What shall I do for you? O valiant one, who ever was so fortunate as to obtain a guest so highly beloved?" Then this excellent Raja Guha brought the argha and various kinds of provisions to Ráma, and said:—"Welcome, O valiant one; my whole Raj is yours: We are your servants and you are our lord: Provisions, beds, and provender for the horses are all at your command." Ráma then embraced the Rája of the Bhíls, and said:—"O Guha, through my good fortune I behold you and your friends this day in good health: Is all well in your Raj? What you have brought through affection, that I accept, though I do not partake thereof: Know that I have assumed the dress of bark and the antelope's skin, and that my food is fruits and roots: Through my duty to my father I am become a devotee of the forest, and I request a little provender for the horses and nothing more: These are the horses of my

Guha, Raja of the Bhíls, entertains Ráma with great hospitality.

Ráma's moderate request.

father Dasaratha, and I shall be sufficiently honoured by the attention paid to them." Raja Guha then immediately ordered his men to provide what was necessary for the horses. Meantime Ráma bound his garment like a rope over his left shoulder and under his right arm, and performed his devotions to the setting sun, and drank a little water which Lakshmana brought to him. Lakshmana then washed the feet of Ráma, and the renowned one slept upon the ground beneath a tree, with his wife Sítá by his side. And Raja Guha, and the charioteer Sumantra, conversed with Lakshmana throughout the long night, and carefully watched Ráma; nor would Lakshmana betake himself to sleep, though earnestly entreated so to do by the Bhíl Raja.

Ráma's fasting and devotions.

Night at Sringavera.

2nd Route: from Sringavera to Práyaga.

Sunrise: preparations for crossing the Ganges.

When the goddess Night had retired, and the sun began to rise, and the call of the shrill peacocks was heard throughout the forest, Lakshmana said to Ráma:—"O excellent one, we will soon cross the swift Ganges river that falls into the sea." And Raja Guha prepared a stout and beautiful boat, furnished with oars and a helm, and capable of crossing the holy river with ease; and at the request of Ráma, he put the baggage and the weapons into the boat.

Ráma dismisses Sumantra, the charioteer.

Then Ráma took Sumantra the charioteer with his right hand, and said:—"O Sumantra, enough has been done for me; and we will now leave the chariot and go on foot to the great forest: Do you therefore speedily return to Ayodhyá, and be cautious in the presence of the Maháraja." At these words Sumantra was overwhelmed with distress and wept aloud; and Ráma in mild accents addressed him as follows:—"Amongst all the descendants of Ikshwáku, I esteem no friend comparable with you: As Mahá[illegible] Dasaratha has never caused me any distress, so I pray you not to distress him: Whatever the Maháraja through affection for Kaikeyí may command, do you perform without hesitation; for sovereigns should not be resisted in the management of their affairs: O Sumantra, act so that my father may not be absorbed in fruitless sorrow, nor even think of me: Present my dutiful regards to him, and to

His mild address to Sumantra.

Vasishtha, and to all the pious teachers of Ayodhyá, and say that I bow at their feet: Say also the same to Kaikeyí, Sumitrá, and my other mothers, and to the unhappy Kausalyá, if she has survived my departure: Then bow down to the excellent and aged Mahárája, and say to him from me:—'O Raja of Rajas, it does not become you to give way to sorrow and distress on account of me, or Lakshmana, or Sítá: In a virtuous cause we could spend a thousand years in the forest at the word of our father: Neither I, nor Sítá, nor Lakshmana, are objects of regret: We have relinquished Ayodhyá, and will reside in the great jungle; and when fourteen years are expired you will see us return: Let the mother of Bharata, the beloved consort of the Mahárája, enjoy happiness, and govern the Raj together with her son:' Having thus spoken to the Mahárája in my name, do you repeatedly say to my mother Kausalyá, and the other Ránís, and to Kaikeyí, that we are well and bow to their feet: And when Bharata is installed in the Raj, do you say to him from me:—'Pay every attention to your own mother Kaikeyí, and have regard likewise for Sumitrá the mother of Lakshmana, and speak graciously also to my mother Kausalyá.'"[2]

When the great Ráma had thus finished his commands to Sumantra, Lakshmana, enraged with Kaikeyí, delivered to the charioteer a very angry message to the Mahárája; but Ráma forbade him, and said to the charioteer:—"Let not the disrespectful words which Lakshmana has spoken be mentioned to the Mahárája: The venerable sovereign ought always to be addressed in an affectionate manner, accompanied with becoming prostration."

Lakshmana's angry message to Kaikeyí prevented by Ráma.

Then the faithful and distressed Sumantra prayed that he might remain with Ráma and Sítá during their fourteen years' sojourn in the forest; for it was the desire of his soul to convey them again to Ayodhyá in the chariot when the

Sumantra's request to remain with the exiles refused by Ráma.

[2] This language addressed by Ráma to the charioteer, is generally admired as a proof of the goodness and mildness of the divine hero. But when it is remembered that this language was addressed by a young Prince to the aged Minister of his father, the whole speech will appear affected and priggish to European eyes.

term of residence in the jungle had expired. But Ráma, full of compassion, thus addressed him:—"O beloved of your royal master! I know your perfect devotion to me; hear therefore the reason for which I wish to send you to the palace of Dasaratha: Seeing you returned to the city of Ayodhyá, the Rání Kaikeyí will be satisfied that I am gone to the jungle, and will enjoy the pleasant Raj governed by her son Bharata: For the sake then of gratifying both me and the Maháraja, return now to the palace and declare exactly the messages which I have entrusted to you."

Ráma and Lakshmana mat up their hair after the fashion of devotees.

After this, Ráma spoke these important words to Raja Guha:—"I will now mat my hair as a devotee and depart to the great forest of Dandaka: Bring me therefore speedily the milk of the fig tree!" So the Raja of the Bhíls quickly brought the milky juice, and Ráma formed the jatá for Lakshmana and himself.[3] The two heroes, of long and mighty arm, now appeared with their matted hair like two venerable sages; and taking the road towards the river Ganges, Ráma said to his friend Guha:—"If you wish for prosperity, attend to your army, your treasuries, and your fortresses, and the affairs of your Raj!" They then approached the boat, and Lakshmana, at the command of his brother, placed Sítá in the boat and entered it himself. Ráma then entered likewise, and bade farewell to Sumantra and Guha, who saw them depart with eyes overflowing with tears; and the boat guided by the steersman and propelled by the rowers then moved away with the velocity of the wind.

Ráma takes leave of Raja Guha and embarks with his wife and brother on the Ganges.

Sítá's prayer and vow to the goddess Gangá.

Now when the boat reached the middle of the river, Sítá, with joined hands, thus addressed the goddess Gangá:—

[3] The jatá, or knot of hair, on the head, is peculiar to Hindú devotees. According to the Adhyátma Rámáyana, Ráma chose this opportunity of withdrawing the real Sítá from the gaze of men, and substituting a false Sítá in her room. The reason for this will appear hereafter; but the passage may be quoted as follows:—"Ráma then turning towards Sítá, said to her:—'I have for ages past, my love! found a habitation for thee in my heart; enter and dwell therein; it is not proper that thou shouldst be exposed to view.' Sítá in obedience to her husband's order entered into his heart. Ráma, through his own power, created a form resembling Sítá, which he placed by his side; this form was so exact a resemblance of Sítá that there was not a single hair different."

"May this son of Dasaratha, keeping the commandments of the wise Maháraja, be preserved by thee, O Gangá; and after residing fourteen years in the forest, may he return again to the palace at Ayodhyá, with his brother Lakshmana and myself: Then, O excellent goddess Gangá, when we shall have returned in prosperity, with all our wishes gratified, we shall worship thee with great joy: Thou, O goddess, art one who flowing in three directions came from the world of Brahma: I bow to thee, O goddess; I offer praise to thee, O beautiful river: When Ráma, through your favour, returns and obtains possession of the Raj, I will, in gratitude to you, give to the Bráhmans a hundred thousand cows, besides raiment and ornaments: Having returned, O goddess, to the palace at Ayodhyá, I will offer to you a thousand jars of spirituous liquors, and rice mixed with flesh;[4] I will sacrifice to all the gods who inhabit your banks, and make offerings at all the sacred places whether small or great: O excellent goddess, may this sinless and valiant Ráma, together with his brother Lakshmana and myself, return from residing in the forest and again enter Ayodhyá!"

The trio land on the south bank of the Ganges.

Whilst the beautiful Sítá was thus praying to the goddess Gangá, the boat reached the south bank of the river, and the two heroes bowed to Gangá, and quitted the vessel accompanied by Sítá. And Ráma said to Lakshmana:—

Order of march through the forest: Lakshmana in front and Ráma in the rear, with Sítá between them.

"This day will Sítá have to experience the pains of sojourning in the forest, and endure the roaring of lions and tigers, and the grunting of wild hogs; so do you go on before, and I will follow Sítá." Then the two heroes entered the forest with their bows in their hands, whilst Sítá walked between them, having Lakshmana in front and Ráma behind; and at length they came to the sacred fig tree, with its numerous roots descending from its branches, and they sat underneath the shade of the fig tree. And as they sat there at their ease, they saw a beautiful lake of water thickly set with water lilies, and covered with geese and various kinds of

[4] This vow of an offering of flesh-meat and spirituous liquors to Gangá, is in accordance with the idea that a female delights in these things. In the Adhyátma Rámáyana, Sítá is represented as vowing an offering of cow's milk and sugar.

HISTORY OF INDIA. PART IV.

ducks; and they drank of the water [and killed a deer, and kindled a fire, and prepared a repast; and when they had dressed the deer, and given a portion to their ancestors and the gods, the two brothers and Sítá partook of the meat] and prepared for lodging beneath the tree.[5] And Ráma said to Lakshmana:—"This will be our first night in the forest, freed from our attendants; and we shall now resemble true devotees: Fear not, O hero, at being without attendants in this uninhabited forest, nor be dispirited at the departure of Sumantra: From this day it is my duty and yours to be ever careful to protect Sítá: Bring some grass, O Lakshmana, and prepare a bed for me here, and a bed for yourself at a little distance from me." Lakshmana then prepared the beds of grass and leaves beneath the lordly tree; after which Ráma addressed him as follows:—"Assuredly the Mahárája sleeps at ease to-night, attended by Kaikeyí; but what wise man is there upon earth, who for the sake of a woman would abandon an obedient and beloved son? Perchance, Kaikeyí, intoxicated with the wine of prosperity, has abused my mother Kausalyá, and your mother Sumitrá: Wherefore, O Lakshmana, go you to Áyodhyá, whilst I alone go with Sítá into the forest; Go, O sinless one, and be the protector of our mothers: Wretch that I am! my mother Kausalyá obtained me in her old age, and brought me up with difficulty; and now she has been deprived of me just as she was beginning to enjoy the fruits of her labour: What is she the better for having a son that assists her not?" Thus lamenting, Ráma gave way to his tears and wept aloud. Then Lakshmana said:—"O excellent hero, it is unworthy of you to grieve; your weeping answers no purpose, and fills Sítá and myself with sorrow: Suppress your feelings, O excellent one, and dismiss grief: It is for little minds when sunk in the mire of distress, to lament like an aged elephant sinking down in a muddy

Halt beneath a fig tree and partake of venison.

Beds of grass and leaves prepared by Lakshmana.

Lamentations of Ráma.

Lakshmana administers consolation.

[5] This passage in which the illustrious trio are represented as eating flesh-meat, as well as others of a similar character, are placed in brackets because they are omitted in the North-West recension. They are, however, of undoubted authenticity.

pool: Myself and Sítá, seeing you thus distressed, must soon expire like two fishes taken out of the water: O hero, I feel no desire to see my father Dasaratha, nor my brother Satrughna, nor my mother Sumitrá, nor heaven itself." Ráma, hearing these weighty words of Lakshmana, dismissed distress and embraced his brother, and said to him:—"I abandon grief!"

Sunrise in the jungle: progress from the fig tree to Prayága, the modern Alláhabád, at the junction of the Ganges and Jumná.

The two heroes and Sítá then passed a pleasant night under the fig tree; and when the cloudless sun had risen, they plunged into the vast forest, directing their course towards the hermitage of the sage Bharadwája at Prayága, where the holy Ganges unites with the river Jumná. When the day was nearly at an end, Ráma said to his brother:—"O Lakshmana, behold that smoke which ascends from the sacred fire at Prayága: We have assuredly found the junction of the Ganges and Jumná, for the murmuring sound can be heard of the two fierce streams dashing together, and I can already see the trees around the hermitage of Bharadwája." Then Ráma, and Lakshmana, and Sítá proceeded along, and when the sun cast a long shadow they arrived at the confluence of the two rivers, and approached the hermitage of Bharadwája; and they beheld the great sage offering the sacred fire, surrounded by his disciples and engaged in devotion. Ráma then advanced a little way, and bowed his head respectfully, and related his story to the sage; and Bharadwája having courteously inquired of Ráma respecting his journey, brought water and argha, and presented his guests with food, and wild roots, and fruits of various tastes, and prepared a lodging for them.[6]

Arrival at the hermitage of Bharadwája.

Hospitality of the sage.

[6] The meeting between Ráma and Bharadwája is somewhat differently described in the Adhyátma Rámáyana, for the purpose of imparting a religious significance to the interview. The passage is as follows:—"When Ráma, Sítá, and Lakshmana came near to the abode of Bharadwája, they beheld one of his disciples, and Ráma directed the disciple to inform Bharadwája of their arrival, and of their desire to pay their respects to him. Bharadwája was delighted. He selected such articles as were proper for religious ceremonies towards Ráma, and then went out to meet the three, and fell at their feet and worshipped them. He praised Ráma as the Supreme God, and incarnation of Vishnu, and said:—'I have passed through a long series of years in religious contemplation and worship in the hope of beholding thee, but without success; this day have I obtained the reward of my faithful adoration of thy name; I now see thee." Ráma, gratified at his ex-

Bharadwaja counsels Ráma to dwell at Prayága.

Ráma desires a more lonely locality.

The sage recommends the hill of Chitra-kúta in Bundelkund on the opposite bank of the Jumná.

3rd Route: from Prayága to Chitra-kúta.

Departure from Prayága.

Directions given by the sage for crossing the Jumná.

And the sage said to Ráma:—"This place is large, uninhabited, and pleasant, and rendered pure by the confluence of the two great rivers: I pray you therefore to dwell here at ease." But Ráma replied:—"O divine one, the people of the city of Ayodhyá and Raj of Kosala will often come hither to see us, and therefore I do not approve of staying here: O holy one, look out for a pleasant hermitage in a lonely place where Sítá may enjoy herself." Hearing these pleasant words of Ráma, the sage said to him:—"At a short distance hence, O my lord, is a mountain on which you may reside; a mountain prized by sages, and pure and beautiful to the sight: It is named Chitra-kúta: As long as men behold the peaks of Chitra-kúta they have prosperity and clearness of mind: Many sages, after spending hundreds of years there, have ascended by their austerities to heaven: I esteem this a proper residence for you, O Ráma, if you will not stay here and reside with me." Thus Bharadwája received Ráma and his wife and brother with every attention; and Ráma and Sítá spent the night pleasantly in the delightful hermitage of the sage.

At the dawn of morning Ráma presented himself before Bharadwája, and respectfully requested to be favoured with his commands; and the sage said:—"O most powerful one, depart to the pure and pleasant mountain of Chitra-kúta, which abounds with fruits and roots: There wandering with Sítá your mind will be gladdened with the view of rivers and springs, hills and valleys, greenland slopes and cool cascades." Then the two Princes bowed to the feet of the great sage, and prepared to depart, and the sage directed them as follows:—"At a short distance hence you will see a great number of huts; thence you will reach the river Jumná, and then you should make a raft and pass the great river which constantly abounds with crocodiles: On the opposite shore you will see a large green-leaved fig tree; let Sítá, joining her hands there, implore a blessing: A

pressions, said:—'We, priest! are Kshatriyas; thou art a Bráhman: It is our duty to serve thee, to obtain thereby our reward: He who serves the Bráhmans faithfully, will easily pass over the waters of this transitory world."

short distance further you will see a dark forest; that is the way to the hill Chitra-kúta."

The two Princes then bowed their heads, and went forward with Sítá to the river Jumná; and there they collected much wood, and made a large raft, and covered it over with dried bamboos; and Lakshmana cut down branches of trees and made an easy seat for Sítá; and Rámá placed his beloved upon the seat on the raft. Ráma then put the garments, the ornaments, and the spade and basket by the side of Sítá; and the two brothers took a pole each and pushed the boat across the swift stream. When they arrived in the midst of the river, Sítá thus addressed the river goddess:—"O goddess Jumná, blessings attend thee, I am passing over thee: May my lord accomplish his vow! I will offer to you a thousand cows, and a hundred jars of spirituous liquor, when Ráma returns in peace to the city which is protected by the race of Ikshwáku." Having crossed the river and arrived at the sacred fig tree, Sítá went up to it with joined hands, and thus addressed the tree:—"Salutation to thee, O great tree! May my husband accomplish his vow! May we again see Kausalyá and the renowned Sumitrá." Sítá then walked round the tree with joined hands. And Ráma beheld his beloved spouse devoted to his interests, and he said to Lakshmana:—"Do you take Sítá and proceed in front, whilst I will follow behind with the weapons; and whatever fruits or flowers Sítá may desire, do you collect them for her." Sítá then advanced between these two brothers like a female elephant guarded by two males; and she asked Ráma about every new flower and shrub and climbing plant which she beheld; and at her request Lakshmana brought her very many pleasant plants full of flowers. [Meantime, as Ráma and Lakshmana wandered on their way, they slew many animals that were fit for sacrifice and food.]

Preparation of a raft and passage over the river.

Sita's prayer and vow to the goddess Jumná.

Sita's prayer to the sacred fig tree.

Progress along the banks of the Jumná.

Having passed one night on the banks of the river Jumná, the two brothers, together with Sítá, set forward at early dawn on the road to Chitra-kúta; and as they beheld the trees bending with fruits and flowers, and the large

Arrival at Chitra-kúta.

honey-combs covered with bees, and the multitude of deer and birds, they rejoiced greatly, for they saw that there would be abundance of food. And they went on until they came to the hermitages on the hill where resided the great Válmíki and other distinguished sages; and they advanced with joined hands, and bowed to the feet of Válmíki; and the wise sage, full of joy, returned their salutation and bade them welcome; and Ráma related to Válmíki all that had occurred.[7] Ráma then determined to take up his abode on the hill of Chitra-kúta; and at his command, Lakshmana brought various kinds of wood and erected a hut of branches and leaves. Ráma then said to Lakshmana:—"Bring venison that we may sacrifice to the god of the dwelling: Those who desire long life should propitiate the god of their dwelling: Having killed a deer, bring it speedily, O Lakshmana." And Lakshmana did as his elder brother commanded; and Ráma again said to him:—"Dress the venison that we may sacrifice to all the other gods who preside over dwellings." And Lakshmana brought an excellent antelope that he had killed, and cast it on the fire; and when it was separated from the blood, and thoroughly dressed, the devout Ráma, skilled in sacrificial rites, per-

Hermitage of Válmíki.

Hut of branches and trees constructed by Lakshmana.

Propitiatory sacrifice to the god of the dwelling.

[7] The interview between Ráma and Válmíki is thus described in the Adhyátma Rámáyana:—"When the three exiles came to the river Jumná, Ráma put on a religious habit. He then proceeded to Chitra-kúta, at which place dwelt a holy saint named Válmíki, a fervent adorer of the deity. They arrived at his house, where they found a pleasant garden, in which water-fowl sported in the tanks; the trees were loaded with delicious fruits and sweet-smelling flowers; thousands of birds sang enchanting songs, especially those in praise of Ráma. Bráhmans were seated in all quarters reading the Vedas. Here were sages sitting with their eyes closed, absorbed in meditation on Ráma; others with rosaries of Tulsi leaves in their hands were calling on the name of Ráma. Others again with both hands raised towards heaven were performing the penance. Some held in their breath with religious fervency; others performed various ceremonies in honour of Ráma. Thus were all the sages engaged in contemplation on Almighty God. Válmíki's soul was filled with holy rapture on the approach of the three; especially when he perceived that Ráma had on a religious habit,—his hair braided in a knot on the crown of his head, a deerskin round his loins, his body rubbed over with the yellow earth, and having a bow and arrows in his hands. Válmíki was overcome with surprise at the brilliant appearance of the three, but led Ráma into his house, worshipped him, walked three times round him, and set before them the choicest fruits, of which they partook."

Válmíki is also represented as delivering a long religious discourse to Ráma, which will be considered hereafter.

formed the sacrifice according to the Sastras, and repeated the secret prayers, and performed his ablutions in the river. Ráma then made a place for an altar, and planted a grove; and he and his brother Lakshmana, and his wife Sítá, entered the delightful hut, as the gods enter their sacred assembly. Thus having arrived at the pleasant mountain Chitra-kúta, and at the river Mandákiní, that excellent place which was frequented by deer and birds, Ráma was filled with joy, and relinquished all grief on account of his exile.

Sacrificial rites performed by Ráma.

Residence of Ráma, Sítá, and Lakshmana in the hut at Chitra-kúta.

The foregoing narrative does not call for much remark. Sumantra, the charioteer, seems to have been directed to conduct the exiles to the frontier town of Sringavera; and this duty he accomplished, crossing the rivers Tamasá and Gomatí on the way. At Sringavera he took his leave and returned to Ayodhyá, whilst the exiles crossed to the southerly bank of the Ganges, and proceeded due eastward to the celebrated station at Prayága. At Prayága the exiles crossed the river Jumná, and proceeded southward into the country of Bundelkund, where they finally took up their abode on the hill Chitra-kúta; which is said to have abounded in game, fruit, honey, and other products of the jungle which were suitable for food.

Review of the foregoing narrative of Ráma's journey to Chitra-kúta.

The exiles part with Sumantra at the frontier town of Sringavera.

Cross the Ganges to Prayága, and cross the Jumná for Chitra-kúta.

The worship paid by Sítá to the rivers Ganges and Jumná, and to the sacred fig tree, is well worthy of notice. It may be a relic of the old fetische worship which undoubtedly prevailed in ancient India, and which, as such, will have to be considered hereafter; but still the picture of the faithful wife offering up prayers and vows on behalf of her beloved husband is ever regarded with deep admiration by the Hindús; and indeed the worship is

Worship of the Ganges and Jumna, and the sacred fig tree, by Sítá.

perhaps as largely practised by Hindú women in the present day as at any previous period.

Bráhman settlements, or hermitages, scattered amongst the aboriginal population.

Another important circumstance connected with Ráma's exile must also be duly noticed, namely, the assumed fact that a number of Brahmanical settlements, or hermitages, each under a distinguished sage, were scattered amongst the aboriginal population beyond the frontier of Kosala. Notice has already been taken of two of these settlements much further to the eastward, in the narrative of Ráma's expedition against the Rákshasas; namely, first, the hermitage at the junction of the Sarayú and Ganges rivers, which was famous as the spot where Siva was smitten by Káma, the Indian Cupid, with the arrows of love; and secondly, the hermitage of Viswámitra in the neighbourhood of Buxar, which was famous as the spot where Vishnu, incarnate as a dwarf, took the three steps which terminated in the overthrow of Bali. In the present narrative of Ráma's exile two other Brahmanical settlements are described, namely, the hermitage of Bharadwája at Prayága, and the hermitage of Válmíki at Chitra-kúta. Whether these hermitages did or did not exist in the days of Ráma, is a question which can scarcely be settled definitely; but the tradition that Brahmanical settlements were formed in the midst of an aboriginal and hostile people is highly significant; and illustrates an important phase in the history of the Bráhmans, namely, the mode by which their influence was extended throughout India. This subject, however, will be discussed hereafter.

Bráhman settlements at the junction of the Sarayú and Ganges; at Buxar; at the junction of the Ganges and Jumná; and at Chitra-kúta.

Question of whether the hermitages really existed in the time of Ráma postponed.

CHAPTER X.

DEATH OF MAHÁRAJA DASARATHA.

Division of the story of the death of Maháraja Dasaratha into four distinct scenes.

THE exiles having been settled down in quiet residence on the hill of Chitra-kúta, the story of the Rámáyana once more reverts to the city of Ayodhyá; and the melancholy events are related which followed the return of Sumantra, and the delivery of Ráma's dutiful message to the Mahá-raja. The narrative comprises four distinct scenes, namely:—

1st, Palace scene, including the conversation between the Maháraja and Kausalyá after the return of Sumantra with Ráma's message.

2nd, The death of the Maháraja at midnight.

3rd, The morning scene without and within the palace.

4th, The summoning of the Council, and despatch of messengers to bring Bharata to Ayodhyá.

The narrative as it appears in the Rámáyana.

These events are highly suggestive of ancient Hindú life, but demand no preliminary explanation; and the narrative, therefore, may be reproduced from the Rámáyana as follows:—

1st, Scene in the palace after the return of Sumantra to Ayodhyá.

Meantime the charioteer Sumantra had taken leave of Raja Guha, and returned with a heavy heart to the joyless city of Ayodhyá. The people seeing him return without

Ráma filled the air with their cries; and he drove his chariot through the chief street, with his face covered, until he came near to the palace of Maháraja Dasaratha. Then Sumantra descended from his chariot, and passed through the seven enclosures of the palace; [1] and all the ladies of the Maháraja, seeing him return without Ráma, were filled with anguish, and their bright eyes streamed with tears. And Sumantra quickly entered the eighth enclosure of the palace, and beheld the wretched Maháraja in the white house, wasted with grief on account of his son; and he approached the Maháraja and bowed to his feet, and delivered the message which had been entrusted to him by Ráma.

Distress of the people, the ladies of the palace, and the Maháraja.

Sumantra delivers Ráma's message.

When the Maháraja heard the dutiful words of his eldest son, he fell down in a swoon; and the Rání Kausalyá, with the aid of Sumantra, raised him up, and thus addressed him:—"Arise, O Maháraja, for no help can come out of this sorrow! O my lord, Kaikeyí is not here, and you need not fear to converse about Ráma." Kausalyá then began to heap bitter reproaches upon Dasaratha, saying:—"Who ever abandoned a beloved and innocent son after having engaged to install him in the Raj? If you had promised to grant two boons to Kaikeyí, why did you promise to give the Raj to Ráma? If you exiled your son for fear of violating your word, why did you not fear to break the promise that you had made to your Counsellors to install Ráma? Enslaved in your old age by the love of a woman, you break your promise either way; by giving Ráma the Raj you would have broken your promise to Kaikeyí, but by sending him into the jungle you have broken your promise to your Counsellors: The oath given to a favourite wife, and the exile of Ráma to the forest, are crimes which I rank with the murder of an unborn infant: Happy is it for me that Kaikeyí did not solicit the death of Ráma, for you would have granted that also without hesitation: Then Ráma would have been seized by the strong arm of power,

Prostration of the Maháraja.

Kausalyá reproaches the Maháraja.

[1] Five courts or quadrangles are specified on a previous occasion. See *ante*, p. 109.

like a victim bound by its owner for a sacrifice; for in this world the weak sink beneath the grasp of the strong, as elephants in the forest are seized in the grasp of lions: Should Ráma return after his exile is accomplished, I cannot expect that Bharata will abandon the Raj and the treasures, nor would Ráma receive them at his hand: If people first entertain their new friends at a funeral feast, and afterwards invite the Bráhmans, they will find that the Bráhmans will not look with pleasure even on amrita when it has been left by others: Will Bráhmans sit down before other Bráhmans have finished their meat, and eat that of which they have eaten? Will an elder brother accept of a Raj which has been enjoyed by a younger brother? Will a tiger eat the prey which has been caught by another? No oblations, nor ghee, nor sacrificial articles, nor sacred kusa grass, nor sacrificial posts, are ever again employed in a new ceremony; and in like manner Ráma will never look with pleasure on a Raj which resembles stale wine at a feast, or spoiled homa at a sacrifice: Ráma will no more endure such disrespect than a fierce tiger would suffer his tail to be pulled with impunity."[2]

The Maháraja implores the forgiveness of Kausalyá.

The Maháraja, hearing this angry speech of Kausalyá, thus spoke to her:—"O Kausalyà, I entreat your forgiveness with joined hands: Tenderly affectionate toward your son, do not pour salt into my wounds! My heart is bursting with sorrow for my son, and your words are to me as thunderbolts: The husband of a chaste wife, whether virtuous or worthless, is her deity, her refuge, and the grand object of her veneration: Pardon my transgression, O Rání; in excess of agony do I supplicate you: Do not again wound me, who am already smitten and wounded by the gods: O goddess, I know you to be wise, and acquainted with the different passions of men; let me not again hear these bitter reproaches from you!"

[2] This speech which has been put into the mouth of Kausalyá contains several similes which may be regarded as so many inferential lessons in Brahmanical law. The most important is that which refers to the especial claim of the Bráhmans, which is still observed at all feasts, of being served before those of any other caste, and of being served all at one time.

When Kausalyá, ever affectionate towards her husband, heard those words of the afflicted Maháraja, she abandoned her distress on account of her son, and applying her joined hands to his, she bowed her head even to his feet, and replied:—"O Raja of Rajas, pardon my transgression! Through distress for my son, I have said what I ought not to have said: She who is supplicated by her husband with joined hands, and does not relent, is cursed both in this life and in the life to come: Pardon, O Maháraja, this fault of a distressed woman; you are the lord and deity both of myself and Ráma: I know what is right, I know that you are acquainted with your duty, and are a speaker of truth; and what I have spoken has been through my affliction on account of my son: Grief destroys the understanding, and the memory, and the patience; there is no enemy more destructive than grief: The touch of fire may be borne, and the stroke of a dreadful weapon; but, O Maháraja, the distress which arises from grief is not to be endured; even the sages when smitten with grief have sunk beneath the stroke: These five days which have passed away since the departure of my son, are to me, by reason of my sorrow, even as a thousand years: My grief for my exiled son increases like the waters of the Ganges after the departure of the cold season."

Kausalyá acknowledges her transgression in having reproached her lord.

Whilst Kausalyá was thus speaking, the day declined and the sun set; and the Maháraja, composed by her words and wearied by reason of his mourning, sunk into the arms of sleep. And in the middle of the night the Maháraja awoke weeping and terrified, and said to his wife:—"O Kausalyá, I am now giving up the ghost through grief for my son: My eyes are unable to see you, so do you come near and touch me; those men can perceive nothing who are departing to the mansions of Yama: Could Ráma once touch me, and receive the Raj from me, I might even yet live: O Kausalyá, I cannot behold you; my eyes and memory are gone, and the messengers of Yama are hastening me away: What affliction can exceed this, that when my soul is departing I cannot behold Ráma: My grief dries up

2nd, Last words of the Maháraja to Kausalyá at midnight.

my heart as the heat of the sun dries up pools of water: They are not men but gods who see the shining face of Ráma adorned with his beautiful ear-rings; and happy will they be who shall again behold his fragrant face after he shall have returned from exile: O Kausalyá, my heart is dying away; I am sinking into imbecility like the expiring light of a lamp which has been exhausted of its oil." While thus lamenting, the eyes of Maháraja Dasaratha became fixed in death, and he gave up the ghost in the presence of Kausalyá the mother of Ráma, and of Sumitrá, the mother of Lakshmana; and the two Ránís swooned away until the morning, and no one knew what had occurred.

Death of the Maháraja.

Now when the night had passed away, the bards and eulogists assembled, according to their custom, at the palace of the Maháraja. And they sounded aloud the praises of the Maháraja, and invoked the gods for blessings on his head; and the sound of these hymns and prayers spread through the whole palace; and louder than all was the noise of those who declared the great deeds of the Maháraja and clapped their hands in harmony. The birds who were sleeping on the branches of the trees, or in the hedges, or on the roofs of the palace, were awakened at that mighty sound, and began to utter their cheerful notes. The Bráhmans also filled the palace with the music of the Vedas, and the sacred chaunting of the Vedic hymns. The servants were assembled in great multitudes; the men-servants brought water in golden jars mixed with the fragrant yellow sandal wood for the morning ablutions; whilst a number of chaste young damsels brought articles of food, and those for ornament, all prepared according to the ordinance, and all of excellent appearance and quality. After a while the sun arose, and every one stood with great respect and attention, waiting for the coming of the Maháraja; and when they saw that he did not appear, they looked with anxiety one at the other and said:—"Why does he not come forth?" Then the ladies, who attended near the bed of the Maháraja, approached to awaken him; and they touched his bed with becoming reverence; but even then they knew not what had

3rd, Morning scene without and within the palace.

Bards and eulogists praising the Maháraja.

Bráhmans chaunting the Vedas.

Servants, male and female, performing their morning duties.

Appearance of the Maháraja anxiously expected.

occurred. At length they saw that his eyes were fixed, and that his pulse had ceased to beat, and they began to tremble for his life. They also saw that Kausalyá and Sumitrá, overcome by distress, were lying in a swoon, their eyes swollen with grief. Then they wept with a loud voice, like that of female elephants when their leader has disappeared; and Kausalyá and Sumitrá awoke from their heavy slumber, and seeing that the Maháraja was dead, they fell to the earth with loud cries. Then Kaikeyí and all the other Ránís came forward and filled the palace with their lamentations; and they all wept and screamed, and smote themselves with their hands. The Ministers, hearing that the Maháraja had died during the night, hastened to the chamber of death, and removed the distressed and devoted Kausalyá, who was embracing the lifeless body of her lord, and pouring bitter words upon the cruel and remorseless Kaikeyí. But no funeral ceremonies could be performed at that time for the dead Maháraja, for all his four sons were dwelling at a distance from the city of Ayodhyá. So the Ministers, directed by the Bráhmans, would not burn the royal body, and they placed it in a bath of oil, whilst all the Ránís wept aloud and cried :—"Our lord is dead!" And the illustrious wives of Dasaratha, overwhelmed with sorrow, walked up and down as if bereft of their all; and Ayodhyá appeared as a widowed city, like the sky without the sun, or a night without the stars; and the sun having finished its course suddenly retired, and darkness fell on all around.

Palace ladies discern that the Maháraja is dead.

Kausalyá and Sumitrá awake from their swoon.

Lamentations of all the women.

The Ministers hasten to the chamber of the dead Maháraja.

Funeral ceremonies delayed.

Royal corpse preserved in a bath of oil.

When that night had passed away in Ayodhyá, and the sun had again risen, the Ministers of the Raj called together an assembly of Bráhmans and Chieftains; and those renowned sages and courtiers delivered their opinions in the presence of the chief and excellent priest Vasishtha, as follows :—"The past night has been to us like a hundred years: Distressed on account of the exiled Ráma, the Maháraja has given up the ghost: Dasaratha is now in heaven, but none of all his sons remain in the city of Ayodhyá: Ráma has departed to the forest, and the illustrious Lakshmana has gone with him; and Bharata and Satrughna are dwelling in

4th, Council of Bráhmans and Chieftains convened by the Ministers.

Address of the assembly to the priest Vasishtha.

Girivraja, the royal city of the Kaikeyas: It is necessary this day to appoint some one to be our Maháraja, that our widowed country may not fall into ruin: In countries destitute of a Raja the rain-cloud ceases to pour forth its showers upon the earth, and the husbandman fears to sow his seed; the sons and women of the deceased sovereign are under no subjection; no man is secure of his wealth, nor even of his life; all becomes anarchy; no councils are held; the pleasant houses and gardens are destroyed by the dissolute; the Bráhmans make no offerings; the sacrificing Bráhmans refuse to give the others their share of the sacrificial fees; the glad leaders of the sacred song and dance cease to exalt the fame of the Raja by their social and joyous assemblies; disputants are no longer gratified with pleasing discussions; renowned orators are no longer surrounded with applauding audiences; young damsels adorned with gold do not flock to the gardens in the evening for the sake of amusement; rich men, even when well-guarded, are unable to sleep with their doors open; husbandmen and those who attend cattle are unable to enjoy repose; young men and maidens can no longer repair in swift chariots to the grassy plains; elephants adorned with bells can no longer walk at large on the high roads; those who are joyfully practising with the sword and bow, the mace and the spear, are no longer to be heard; merchants travelling to distant places cannot carry their goods in safety along the high-way; the holy and subdued sage goes not out of his house meditating with his mind fixed upon the all-pervading spirit; soldiers cannot overcome their enemies in war; the people do not assemble in rich attire, and ride on chariots, or on excellent horses; men learned in the Sastras are not found conversing with each other in the roads and gardens; garlands of jewels, and portions of choice viands, are no longer offered to the gods: O Vasishtha, a Raj without a Raja is like a river without water, a forest without vegetation, or a cow without a keeper; and men mutually devour one another like the fishes of the sea: O chief of the twice born, this day our Raja has departed to the mansions of Indra, and our Raj is

Necessity for the immediate appointment of a Mahárája.

Poetical description of a country without a Mahárája.

Vasishtha implored to appoint a successor to the Raj.

HISTORY OF INDIA. PART IV.

becoming a wilderness; do you appoint another Prince to be Raja, a son of the family of Ikshwáku."

Vasishtha despatches messengers to bring Bharata from the city of his grandfather.

The sage Vasishtha having heard these words, replied thus to the Counsellors, the Bráhmans, and all the friends of the deceased Maháraja:—"As Bharata, to whom the Raj is given, remains at ease with his brother Satrughna in the house of his grandfather, Aswapati, speedily send swift messengers to bring the two brothers hither: Why look ye on the ground?" All present then replied to Vasishtha:—

Directions to the messengers.

"Let messengers be sent!" Vasishtha then appointed certain messengers, and said to them:—"Attend to what it becomes you to do: Go with all speed on swift horses to the royal city of Girivraja, and dismissing all signs of grief, speak thus to Bharata:—"Vasishtha the priest, and all the Counsellors, send to you salutations of peace, and entreat you to hasten without delay to the city of Ayodhyá: But do not inform Bharata that Ráma is in exile, that the Maháraja is dead, and that the royal race is ruined by this woman Kaikeyí: Bring out of the treasury with all speed the excellent apparel and jewels for the new Raja, and then depart

Departure of the messengers.

for the abode of Bharata." Then the messengers, being provided with victuals for the journey, mounted their horses, and going by the way of the river Malini, they crossed the Ganges at Hastinápur, and proceeded through the country of Panchála, and at length approached the excellent city of Girivraja, which is the royal city of the Kaikeyas.

Review of the foregoing tradition of the death of Maháraja Dasaratha.

The foregoing narrative of the death of the Maháraja, and of the events which immediately preceded it and followed after it, contains some valuable illustrations of ancient Hindú life and manners.

Exaggeration of the dialogue between the Maháraja and Kausalyá.

The dialogue between the Maháraja and Kausalyá is perhaps too much exaggerated for modern tastes; but yet the touching resignation of the mother of

Resignation of Kausalyá.

Ráma, and her self-reproach at having used bitter words towards her husband, is highly significant of the perfect subordination which is expected to be

displayed by Hindú wives to their husbands. The description of the death of the Maháraja is, however, exquisitely true to human nature. The old sovereign, bowed down by deep sorrow, wakes up at midnight weeping and terrified, and with a certain presentiment that his last hour has arrived. His eyes are dim with approaching death, and he begs his wife to touch him as he cannot see her; and in this manner he feels his soul dying out of his body, until he at last gives up the ghost, and the timid surviving women swoon away until the morning.[3]

Picture of the dying sovereign.

The description of the palace at sunrise, when the death of the Maháraja is still a secret confined to a single chamber, is graphic in the extreme. The bards and eulogists are there, all sounding the praises

Picturesque scene at the palace on the morning following the death of the Maháraja.

[3] There is a curious episode in the original, in which Dasaratha declared that all his misfortunes had arisen from his having been cursed by a pious recluse whose son he had accidentally slain. The story is told at considerable length, but the main points are comprised in the following extract from the Adhyátma Rámáyana:—"Being in his younger days fond of hunting, the Maháraja went one night to the side of a pond, where the sage Serwan was procuring water. Serwan attended on his father and mother with the purest affection. Both parents were blind, and Serwan was in the habit of placing each of them in a separate basket, and slinging them across his shoulders; and in this fashion he conveyed them to all the places of worship then existing in the world. On the present occasion his parents had complained of thirst, and Serwan had slung the baskets over the branch of a tree and gone down to the pond with a vessel to procure water. The Maháraja, hearing the footsteps, thought it must be a deer, and shooting an arrow in the darkness towards the sound, it pierced the breast of Serwan, who thereupon fell to the ground. The Maháraja, perceiving he had shot a man, hurried to the spot and was at once thrown into the deepest affliction. Serwan, however, said:—'Be not distressed, O Maháraja, I am a Vaisya, and not a Bráhman, so that the heinous sin of the murder of a Bráhman will not fall upon thy head: My parents, however, have performed sundry religious observances, and should their anger be raised against thee, they would reduce thee to ashes: Give them first a little water to allay their thirst, and then address them with humility and respect.' The Maháraja then drew out the arrow and Serwan expired. The Maháraja then did as he was directed, and explained the circumstances to the bereaved parents, and expressed his deep contrition. At the request of the parents he then collected wood for the funeral pile, and they then sat upon it and, directing the Maháraja to fire it, were consumed with their son. Before this was accomplished, however, the old man uttered the malediction that he, like them, would die out of sorrow for the loss of a son."

of the Maháraja, in order that at the moment of awakening his ears may be greeted with pleasant words. The birds on the roofs of the palace, and on the branches of the neighbouring trees, are pouring forth their cheerful notes. The Bráhmans are said to be chaunting Vedic hymns. Meantime, the servants are engaged in their customary morning avocations. The men are bringing in jars of water; and the women are ready with the light food, and the articles of decoration, which are required upon awakening. Suddenly a wild cry of lamentation is heard from the inner apartments, and very speedily it is known that the Maháraja is dead. Another commotion soon prevails throughout the palace. The Ministers assemble and take the necessary steps for preserving the body of the sovereign, until the funeral rites can be performed by one of the sons, who at that moment are all absent from the city of Ayodhyá. But otherwise the scene is one of weeping and desolation; and the author of the Rámáyana indulges in the poetical license of declaring that the sun became suddenly eclipsed, and that darkness prevailed throughout the melancholy day which followed the decease of the Maháraja.

Assembling of the Ministers.

A day of darkness.

Constitutional form involved in the convening of the Council.

Stress laid upon the importance of immediately appointing a successor.

On the second day, the Council was summoned, in accordance with those constitutional forms of which many traces are observable in both the Mahá Bhárata and Rámáyana. The proceedings are so intelligible as scarcely to call for remark. The greatest possible stress is laid upon the fact that the Raj was without a Raja; and upon this point the author has given wings to his imagination, and described the desolation of a country without a

sovereign in language which could scarcely have found expression amongst the Counsellors themselves. Meantime the claims of Ráma are ignored. His exile is accepted as a disqualification, and messengers are sent to bring Bharata, the son of Kaikeyí, who was nominated by the Maháraja to succeed to the Raj.

Claims of Ráma ignored.

CHAPTER XI.

BHARATA REFUSES THE RAJ.

THE narrative of the return of Bharata to the city of Ayodhyá, and his subsequent refusal of the Raj, contains nothing which seems to demand a preliminary explanation. It comprises the following events :—

Five leading events in the narrative of Bharata's refusal of the Raj.

1st, The ominous dream of Bharata.

2nd, Bharata's departure from Girivraja and arrival at Ayodhyá.

3rd, Scene between Bharata and his mother Kaikeyí.

4th, Scene between Satrughna and the nurse Manthará.

5th, Scene between Bharata and Satrughna and the mother of Ráma.

The narrative.

The story of these events may be related as follows :—

1st, Ominous dream of Bharata.

Now in the night, when the wearied messengers entered the city of Girivraja, an ominous dream was seen by Bharata, and he was greatly distressed. His beloved companions, youths of his own age, seeing that he was melancholy, endeavoured to remove his trouble; some repeated jests and mirthful stories, whilst others danced, and played on musical instruments; but Bharata received no pleasure therefrom. Then the youths said to him :—"Why are you troubled, and why will you not join in our mirth?" And

Bharata answered :—"I have had a dream, and in that dream I saw my father standing with his head downwards, immersed in oil; and then the earth was rent in great grief, and women dressed in black placed my father on a seat of black wood; and he also was dressed in black, and adorned with garments of red flowers, and went towards the south in a chariot drawn by asses; and a woman clothed in blood-red garments was also deriding my father, and I saw a female Rákshasí of deformed visage fastening upon him: Either myself, or Ráma, or the Maháraja, or Lakshmana will certainly die; for when men are seen in a dream riding in vehicles drawn by asses, the curling smoke of their funeral pile will soon ascend."

2nd. Bharata's return. The Messengers arrive from Ayodhyá with the message from Vasishtha.

Whilst Bhárata was relating this dream, the messengers, with their weary steeds, were crossing over the deep moat which surrounded the royal city of Girivraja; and being received with all respect, they embraced the feet of the Raja, and afterwards addressed Bharata thus :—"Vasishtha the priest sends you the salutation of peace, as do all the Counsellors: Speedily depart from hence, for there is immediate occasion for your presence at Ayodhyá: O lotos-eyed! taking these costly clothes and ornaments, present them to your maternal uncle: These, O Prince, to the value of twenty crores, are for your grandfather the Raja, and those to the value of ten crores are for your uncle Yudhájit."

Presents sent to Bharata's grandfather and uncle.

Bharata accepted the presents, and was congratulated by his friends; and he entertained the messengers with all they could desire, and said to them :—"Is my father the Maháraja well? Are Ráma and Lakshmana well? Are my mothers well?" The messengers replied :—"O Prince, all are well whose welfare you desire; the goddess Lakshmí, who dwells in the lotos, is favourable to you: Speedily yoke the horses to your chariot." Then Bharata, urged by the messengers, spoke thus to his grandfather :—"O Raja, entreated by these messengers, I wish to return to my father: I will come back again when you shall call for me."

Bharata takes leave of his grandfather.

Then Raja Aswapati kissed the head of his grandson, and said :—"Go, O beloved, at my command: In thee is my

daughter Kaikeyí blessed with an excellent son: Give my blessing to your mother, and bow down at her feet: Salute also your father and the priest Vasishtha, and the other excellent Bráhmans; and give my blessings to the two great archers, your brothers Ráma and Lakshmana."

Presents given to Bharata by his grandfather.

Raja Aswapati then gave to Bharata excellent elephants, variegated woollen cloths, deer-skins, and other presents; he also gave him certain large dogs, brought up in the inner apartments of the palace, which were as strong and ferocious as tigers, and well armed with teeth; together with twenty-two thousand pieces of gold. The Raja also appointed chosen Counsellors to attend him. But Bharata was in no way elated at the sight of these riches, for his mind was filled with fear on account of his dream, and because of the great haste of the messengers in coming from Ayodhyá.

Seven days' journey of Bharata and Satrughna to the city of Ayodhyá.

Bharata then mounted the full-wheeled chariot, together with his brother Satrughna, and setting his face towards the east, he departed out of the palace of the Raja, followed by hundreds of cattle, kine, asses, and servants, guarded by an army, and attended by the Counsellors of his grandfather. When seven nights had been passed upon the road, Bharata beheld the city of Ayodhyá; and he said to his brother:—"O Satrughna, this is Ayodhyá, but it excites no pleasure in me: I do not hear the noise of the men and women, nor see the people sporting about in the gardens: To-day the city appears to me like a wilderness; I hear not the voices of the joyful birds and beasts, nor the glad sounds of the drum and the tabor: I see portentous signs and tokens, and my heart sinks within me."

Bharata's surprise at the desolate state of the city.

Thus fearing evil, Bharata entered the city; and the people who were sitting at the gate inquired after his welfare, and rose to salute him; and he spoke again to his brother, saying:—"O Satrughna, my heart is full of apprehension: All the appearances which portend the death of Rajas I behold here: The houses of my kinsmen are not cleansed, and the doors are open: I perceive no signs of enjoyment, no sacrifices, and no incense; and the people seem to be bereft of

Bharata suspects that his father is dead.

Picture of the popular sorrow.

all cheerfulness: The temples of the gods are deserted and their courts are unswept: The images of the gods, the places of sacrifice, and the shops where garlands are sold, are all neglected and desolate: The bankers and merchants appear dejected, as if in pain at the stagnation of trade: The birds which inhabit the temples and sacred groves appear to be wretched: I behold the people of the city, men and women, their eyes filled with tears, absorbed in thought, and wasted with grief." So saying, and filled with anguish, Bharata entered with a downcast countenance the palace of the Maháraja.

3rd, Scene between Bharata and his mother.

When Bharata saw that his father the Maháraja was not in the palace, he went to the apartments of his mother Kaikeyí, and kissed her feet. Kaikeyí, seeing him returned after his long absence, rose with glad heart, and kissed his head, and clasped him to her bosom, and said:—"How many nights have passed since you left the house of your grandfather? Are you not wearied with the speed of your coming? Is your grandfather in health and prosperity, and is your uncle well? Tell me, O son, all the pleasures you have enjoyed during your visit!" Bharata replied:—"O mother, this is the seventh night since I left the house of my grandfather: My grandfather and uncle are both well; the wealth which they gave me as presents are on the road, for the beasts were weary, and I came on before: But, O my mother, the family of Ikshwáku wears not the face of cheerfulness, and I cannot find the Maháraja: Is he at the house of my chief mother Kausalyá?" Then Kaikeyí related to him the unwelcome news, as though it had been glad tidings. She said:—"That which is the lot of all creatures has befallen your magnanimous father!" At these words the pious and pure Bharata instantly fell to the ground in an agony of grief; and he wept very bitterly and covered his face with his garment. Kaikeyí raised him up, saying:—"O Prince, why are you prostrate? The pious, who like you are honoured in the assembly, should not give way to grief." Bharata, filled with sorrow, replied thus:—"I was joyful when I asked leave of my grandfather to

Kaikeyí's affectionate address to Bharata.

Bharata's reply.

Kaikeyi explains with gladness that the Maháraja is dead.

Bharata's grief at the news.

return to Ayodhyá, for I thought that the Maháraja desired to install Ráma and perform a sacrifice; but suddenly deprived of the sight of my father, my soul is torn with anguish: O mother, by what disease was the Maháraja carried away! Happy are Ráma and the others who have performed his funeral rites! If the great and renowned Maháraja knew of my return, would he not kiss me, gently bowing his head? Would he not with his soft hand have cleansed my face from the dust? But where is Ráma, my elder brother, who has now become my father?"

Kaikeyí informs Bharata of the exile of Ráma.

Kaikeyí, asked thus particularly, related the mournful story as though it had been pleasant news. She said:—"Ráma has undertaken a long residence in the jungle, and has gone with Sítá to the wilderness of Dandaka, and Lakshmana has followed him." Hearing these words, Bharata was greatly alarmed on account of his brother, and concerned for the glory of his family, and he replied:—

Bharata demands the reason.

"What! Has Ráma taken away the wealth of a Bráhman? Has he injured a poor man who is worthy and innocent? Or has he fixed his mind upon the wife of another? Wherefore is he exiled to the wilderness of Dandaka, like one who has killed a Bráhman?" Then the feeble Kaikeyí, vainly esteeming herself as able and wise, thus addressed the magnanimous Bharata:—"No Bráhman has been deprived of his wealth by Ráma; no poor man, worthy and innocent, has been injured by him; and never has he fixed his eye upon the wife of another: But when I heard, my son, that the Maháraja proposed to install Ráma in the Raj, I requested him to give the Raj to you, and to send Ráma into exile; and your father, having formerly made me a promise to grant whatever I desired, did according to my request: The renowned Dasaratha has now resigned his breath, and royalty is to be sustained by you: For your sake have I done all this: O my son, this is not a time to grieve; the city and Raj are now yours; and when you have performed the funeral rites for the dead Maháraja, you will be quickly installed in the Raj by Vasishtha and the Chiefs of the Bráhmans."

Kaikeyí explains her intrigues, and entreats him to perform the funeral rites and take the Raj.

When Bharata heard of the death of his father and the exile of his two brethren, he was deeply afflicted, and said:—"What will a Raj avail me who am mortally wounded with grief? Me, who am bereft of a father, and of a brother equal to a father? You have added affliction to affliction, as if you had rubbed salt upon my wounds: You have placed the Mahárája among departed souls, and the exiled Ráma among the devotees of the forest: Are you come hither for the extinction of the family, like the darkness which destroys the universe? My father, the Mahárája, who suspected no one, has embraced burning coals, and met his death through you! O you, who are bent upon evil! through your infatuation has happiness been taken away from this family! Wherefore is my father destroyed? Wherefore is Ráma exiled? The pious and excellent Ráma has never acted improperly towards you; viewing you as entitled to the highest respect, he has ever treated you as a son should treat a mother: In like manner my eldest mother, the prudent Kausalyá, has ever acted towards you as a sister: How can I ever govern the Raj, now that I am deprived of Ráma and Lakshmana? The Mahárája ever reposed all his confidence in Ráma, even as the sun rests on Mount Meru: The eldest among the sons of a Raja is ever anointed to the Raj; and this is the rule amongst all Rajas, and particularly among those of the race of Ikshwáku: But I will bring back Ráma from the wilderness of Dandaka: I will bring from the forest the darling of the people of Ayodhyá." Thus speaking, the illustrious Bharata roared aloud, like a lion in the caves of Mandara; and he fell upon the ground breathing like a serpent, his eyes red with sorrow, and his ornaments shaken from his body.

Bharata bitterly reproaches his mother.

Proclaims the virtues of Ráma and declares his superior right to the Raj.

His deep affliction.

Meanwhile, Satrughna, the younger brother of Ráma, had been informed of all that had occurred, and he spoke out his indignation in hot words; when suddenly there appeared at the eastern gate of the palace the wicked nurse Manthará, who had caused Kaikeyí to request the exile of Ráma. This deformed old woman was adorned with glittering ornaments, and perfumed with sandal and aloes wood,

4th, Scene between Satrughna and the nurse Manthará.

Sudden appearance of the wicked nurse.

and arrayed in costly garments; and she had small bells tied on with parti-coloured ribbons, and resembled an elephant in its trappings. The porter at the gate, seeing this wicked and deformed slave, instantly seized her, and said to Satrughna:—"This is that cruel wretch through whom Ráma is gone to the forest, and your father has resigned his life; do to her according to your will." Satrughna was then filled with rage, and he seized Manthará by the neck, and threw her upon the ground, and dragged her along the earth; and he said to the other women in the inner apartments:—"This contemptible wretch, the cause of the troubles of my father and my brethren, I will send to the mansions of Yama!" The aged slave, being thus threatened, set up a loud cry; and all the women of the palace were greatly distressed, and entreated Satrughna not to kill her. But the eyes of Satrughna were red with wrath, and he dragged her along the ground hither and thither, while all her trinkets and jewels were scattered on the floor. At length he drew her with great fury into the presence of Kaikeyí, and poured forth bitter reproaches; and Kaikeyí was filled with terror, and fled for safety to her son Bharata. And Bharata said to his brother Satrughna:—"Among all creatures, women are those who are not to be killed: Desist, therefore, I pray you! I would myself kill the wicked Kaikeyí, were it not that the pious Ráma would forsake me as a matricide: Restrain your rage, and she will be destroyed by her own deeds: If the pious Ráma hears that this deformed creature has been killed, he will never converse more with me or you." So Satrughna listened to the counsel of Bharata, and restrained his anger, and released Manthará; and she went away full of alarm, and took refuge at the feet of her mistress Kaikeyí.

Satrughna falls upon Manthará, and drags her into the presence of Kaikeyí, and threatens to slay her.

Bharata explains to him the guilt of killing a woman.

Satrughna releases Manthará.

5th, Scene between Bharata and Satrughna, and Kausalyá, the mother of Ráma.

Bharata and his brother Satrughna then went, afflicted and weeping, to the apartment of the distressed Kausalyá; and the excellent Kausalyá, prostrate with anguish, spoke thus to Bharata:—"The Raj now belongs to you, who are so desirous of the royal dignity, easily obtained by the cruel deed of Kaikeyí!" The guiltless Bharata was pained with

Kausalyá reproaches Bharata.

these reproaches, as if a tumour had been opened with a knife;[1] and he fell at her feet, and bewailed himself in many ways, and thus replied to Kausalyá:—"O excellent one, why do you reproach me who am guiltless and even ignorant of this matter? Know that my affection towards Ráma is great and firm: If I have ever consented to the exile of the renowned Ráma, may I become the messenger of the wicked: May I kick my foot against a sleeping cow: May all the injustice of a master, who withholds the wages of his servant, be imputed to me: May the guilt of those, who are traitors to a virtuous Raja, fall upon me: May the guilt of that Raja, who takes the sixth part of the harvest without protecting his subjects, fall upon me: May the guilt of those, who withhold the sacrificial fees which they have promised to the devotees, fall upon me: May the guilt of those cowards, who will not face the enemy upon the field, fall upon me: May the guilt of those who pervert the Sastras, fall upon me: May the guilt of those magistrates, who unjustly favour one party, fall upon me: May the guilt of him, who gives no gifts on the pure days of Ashara, Kartika, and Magha, fall upon me: May I eat sweetmeats alone in my own house, surrounded by my children, wives, and servants: May I die childless, without having married a wife of my own caste, and without having performed a virtuous action: May I support my family by selling wine, flesh, iron, or poison: May I be taken by enemies in the heat of battle, and be killed when about to fly: May I wander about with a skull in my hand, covered with an old dirty cloth, and begging my subsistence like a fool: May I be given up to liquor, women, and gaming: May I never have my mind set on right things: May I always practise that which is wrong, and present all my gifts to improper persons: May my wealth be destroyed by robbers: May I incur the guilt of one who sleeps both at the rising and at the setting of the sun; or of one who sets fire to the property of another; or who commits adultery, or betrays a

Bharata declares his loyal attachment to Ráma.

[1] This is a curious simile, but tumours are not unfrequent in India, and are extremely painful.

friend: May I never serve the gods, or my ancestors, or my immediate parents: May I speedily fall from the heaven of the righteous, and lose the merit of all the good deeds I may have performed: May I be poor, old, and diseased, and have a large family to support: May I be deceitful, profligate, impure, and the companion of those who constantly riot in vile pleasures: May I destroy the articles designed as a gift for a Bráhman: May I milk a cow which has a young calf." Bharata, having thus comforted Kausalyá, fell down in distress; and Kausalyá embraced him who loved his elder brother, and wept aloud.

Bharata comforts Kausalyá.

Exaggerated references to Bharata's affection for Rámа.

Hindú ideas as regards dreams and presentiments.

Exaggerated representation of Bharata's wrath against his mother.

Barbarous character of Satrughna's treatment of Manthará.

The foregoing narrative is characterized by so much exaggeration in reference to Bharata's affection for Ráma, that it may be dismissed with little consideration. His dream that his father was dead, and the presentiment of evil which troubled him on his return to Ayodhyá, are all in accordance with Hindú ideas, but have almost grown out of date in more enlightened countries. His wrath against his mother Kaikeyí is carried beyond all bounds, and is altogether unnatural; especially when he declares to his brother Satrughna that he would have slain her, only in that case he feared Ráma would forsake him as a matricide. Satrughna's conduct towards the nurse Manthará may perhaps have some foundation in fact; but if so, his treatment of the old woman was savage and cowardly, and merited a far severer reproof than was administered by his brother Bharata.

CHAPTER XII.

FUNERAL RITES FOR THE MAHÁRAJA.

THE question of the succession was thus virtually settled by the refusal of Bharata to supplant Ráma; but before any further steps could be taken for inducing Bharata to change his mind, or for appointing one of the other brothers to the throne, it was necessary that Bharata, being present on the spot, should perform the funeral rites for the deceased Maháraja. The description of these ceremonies is very interesting, as it evidently refers to an ancient period in Hindú history, when animal sacrifices were still largely in vogue; but the narrative requires no preliminary explanation, and may now be related as follows:—

Necessity for the immediate performance by Bharata of the funeral rites for Maháraja Dasaratha.

Ancient date of the funeral ceremonies.

After this Vasishtha the sage addressed Bharata as follows:—"The man who cannot restrain himself under misfortune is without wisdom; but that man is regarded as truly wise who attends to his duties whilst under affliction: It becomes you, therefore, to restrain your grief and shake off distress, and set yourself to perform the funeral rites of your father." Bharata replied:—"O sage, how can the Raj devolve on me while Ráma is living? But take me whither my father lies, and I with you will perform his obsequies." All the Counsellors of the deceased Maháraja, with Vasishtha at their head, then conducted Bharata to the place where lay the body of the Maháraja; and all the Ránís of Dasaratha went in like manner to behold the

Vasishtha requests Bharata to perform the funeral rites for the Maháraja.

Bharata's reply.

Procession to the chamber of the royal corpse.

remains of their deceased lord; and Bharata filled the air with his lamentations, whilst all the women wept aloud. The two excellent sages, Vasishtha and Jáváli, then said to Bharata:—"O wise Bharata, grieve not for the departed Mahárája: He is no longer an object for grief, and too many tears from his friends may bring him down from that heaven to which he has gone: Rise, therefore, and cast aside your sorrow, and perform the funeral rites according to the ordinance." Then Bharata directed the Counsellors of his father to bring all the articles that were necessary for the funeral ceremonies; and he passed the whole of that night conversing with the Counsellors and priests of his father; and the night appeared to him as though it had been lengthened out to a hundred quarters. When it was morning the eulogists and bards, whose duty it was to awaken the sleeping sovereign, began with melodious voices to utter the praises of Bharata; and the kettle-drums, and the shrill shell, and the flute, and the loud trumpet filled the palace with their sounds. But Bharata was disquieted thereby, and forbade the exhilarating sounds, saying:—"I am not the Raja!"

Preparations throughout the night.

Bharata hailed at sunrise as the Mahárája, but declines the dignity.

Then the sage Vasishtha, eminent in the knowledge of the Vedas, desired to consult with Bharata on what was proper to be done; and, accompanied by Bharata, he entered the Council hall, which was adorned with a hundred golden pillars, and with gems wrought in various devices, as Vrihaspati, accompanied by Indra, enters the assembly of the gods.[1] Having taken their seats on a carpet ornamented with jewels, and overshadowed with a splendid canopy, Vasishtha caused all the Counsellors to be summoned, and all the chief servants of the Mahárája. A large multitude of citizens also came together from all quarters to see the young Princes; and beholding Bharata, with the priest Vasishtha, in the assembly, they shouted for joy as if they had seen Dasaratha himself. The sun being now risen, Vasishtha thus addressed Bharata and the Counsellors:—

Grand assembly in the Council hall.

Acclamations in favour of Bharata.

Vasishtha declares that all is ready for the funeral ceremonies.

[1] Vrihaspati was the priest and preceptor of the gods. Here Vasishtha is compared to Vrihaspati and Bharata to Indra.

"The principal citizens are here present with the articles necessary for the funeral ceremonies of the Mahárája: Arise, O Bharata, and perform the rites according to the ordinance: The sacrificing priests of your father, well versed in the Vedas and Vedángas, have brought hither the sacred fire, and are standing here with Jáváli at their head: The servants have already been sent on with the fragrant woods collected for the funeral pile, and are now expecting us: Jars of ghee, and oil, and wine, are all prepared; and so too are the chaplets of sweet-smelling flowers, the sweet ointment, the perfumes, the incense, and the aloes: The litter for your father is also ready, adorned with jewels: Place, therefore, the body of the Mahárája upon the litter, and speedily carry him to the place of burning."

Adornment of the royal corpse.

Meanwhile the dead body of the Mahárája had been adorned according to the precepts in the Sastras, and wrapped in cloth of the finest description. And Bharata and Satrughna, with loud lamentations, placed the body of the Mahárája on the litter, and threw the garlands over it, and sprinkled it with incense of the best kind, and went forward, repeatedly exclaiming :—"O Mahárája, where art thou gone?" The royal servants, commanded by Vasishtha, took up the litter, and a great procession moved on towards the place of burning. First went the eulogists, bards, and musicians, chaunting in melancholy tones the praises of the deceased Mahárája. Next walked all the royal widows, with their black hair falling dishevelled over their shoulders, filling the air with their shrieks and screams. Then came the royal servants bearing the litter, whilst Bharata and Satrughna took hold of the litter and followed it weeping. Other royal servants carried the ensigns of royalty; the white umbrella over the litter, the jewelled chámara to wave over the dead Mahárája, and the sacred fire, brightly flaming, which had been daily fed by Jáváli and the Bráhmans. After them came many chariots filled with gold and jewels, which the servants scattered amongst the multitude that had gathered together,

The body placed on the litter.

Procession from the palace to the place of burning.

The eulogists, bards, and musicians.

The royal widows.

The royal servants bearing the litter.

Bharata and Satrughna.

The ensigns of royalty.

The chariots of funeral gifts of gold and jewels.

as funeral gifts of the Maháraja; and all the people of the city of Ayodhyá went out with their wives and daughters, and followed the remains of the Maháraja.

The people of the city.

The place of burning.

The funeral pile.

When they came to the bank of the river Sarayú, where no man dwelt, and which was covered with green grass, they raised the funeral pile of the Maháraja with fragrant woods; and the friends of the deceased sovereign took the body with distressed minds, and laid it upon the pile. The Bráhmans then placed the sacrificial vessels upon the pile; and they put fire to the sacrifice, and repeated the mantras in their minds, and took up the sacrificial ladles to pour clarified butter thereon. Then the Bráhmans cleansed all the sacrificial vessels, and cast them on the pile; and also the ladles, and the rings of the sacrificial posts, and the wooden mortar and pestle, and the pieces of wood by which the fire was produced, which were all perfectly pure. And they took a purified beast, which had been consecrated by the proper formulas, and slew it and threw it on the funeral pile. And they threw boiled rice on all sides of the royal body; and they made a furrow round about the place where the pile was erected according to the ordinance; and they offered the cow with her calf, and scattered ghee, oil, and flesh on all sides.

The body on the pile.

The sacrifices of the Bráhmans.

Sacrificial articles cast on the pile.

Sacrifice of an animal.

Body covered with rice.

Sacrifice of the cow and calf.

Bharata fires the pile.

After this, Bharata and his friends set fire to the pile; and the fire instantly blazed up and consumed the body of the Maháraja. Thus the Maháraja, consecrated by his spiritual teachers, went to the blissful abodes of those who perform meritorious deeds; and the widows seeing the blazing pile, renewed their shrieks and screams; and the thousands of citizens burst out with lamentations, together with the friends and sons of the Maháraja, exclaiming:—"O great protector, O sovereign of the earth, why have you departed and left us helpless here?" And Bharata walked round the pile, and staggered like one who had drank poison; and bowing at the feet of his father, he tried to prostrate himself, but fell to the earth; and his friends took hold of him tenderly, and raised him up; and when he saw

Lamentations of the widows and citizens.

Prostration of Bharata.

the fire kindling round every part of his father's body, he threw up his arms and lamented aloud, saying:—"O my father, since you have gone to heaven, and Ráma is gone to the forest, I have no wish to live, and I will enter the fire: I will not return to the empty city which is bereft of my father and my brother, but I will perish on the funeral pile." Then the sage Vasishtha said to Bharata:—"Everything in this world is ever attended with pain and pleasure: What is to be will come to pass, and it is not therefore becoming of you to grieve: The death of everything that is born, and the reproduction of everything that dies, must of necessity take place; and it is improper for you to bemoan what cannot be prevented."

Vasishtha consoles Bharata.

Bharata and Satrughna then wiped away their tears, and were directed by the Counsellors to perform the funeral libations of water for the refreshing of the soul of the deceased Maháraja. They proceeded with all their friends to the pure and sacred river Sarayú, which is frequented by the great sages; and there having bathed in the stream, Bharata poured water with the palm of his hands in memory of his father, and refreshed the soul of the Mahá-raja in heaven. Thus having performed the rite of fire and the rite of water, the mourners all returned to the city of Ayodhya. And the city was full of distressed persons, and resounded with the cries of the wretched; and its courts and streets were empty, and the bazaars were destitute of wares. Thus the afflicted Bharata, surrounded by his kins-folk, entered the palace of his father, which, bereft of the Maháraja, was overspread with gloom.

Rite of sprinkling water for the soul of the Maháraja.

Return to the city of Ayodhyá

After this, Bhárata spread a mat of kusa grass and lay thereon until the tenth day of his father's death; and on the tenth day of the mourning he purified himself according to the ordinance; and on the twelfth day he performed the Sráddha, and offered cakes and other articles of food to the soul of his deceased father, and gave abundance of provisions to the Bráhmans. Bharata also gave to the Bráhmans, as funeral gifts, very many goats and multitudes

Ten days of mourning on a mat of kusa grass.

Sráddha performed on the twelfth day.

of cows, and many male and female slaves, and much silver, and horses, and chariots. Then on the thirteenth day, at early dawn, the mighty Bharata returned again to the bank of the Sarayú for the purpose of purification; and seeing the place where the body of his father had been consumed, strewed with ashes and burnt bones, he broke out afresh into lamentation. The excellent and wise Vasishtha, the priest of Dasaratha, then said to Bharata: —"This, O Prince, is the thirteenth day since the death of your father: Do you collect the bones which now remain, and throw them into the river." And Bharata and Satrughna did so, and thus finished the funeral rites of their deceased father.

Purification of the thirteenth day.

Bones thrown into the river.

Funeral rites completed.

Review of the foregoing narrative of the burning of the royal corpse.

The foregoing description of the burning of the royal corpse furnishes a graphic picture of the funeral rites which were performed in honour of a deceased sovereign. The procession from the palace of the dead Maháraja to the desolate place of burning is singularly suggestive. In front were the bards, eulogists, and musicians, filling the air with melancholy strains. Next followed the widows with dishevelled hair, shrieking and screaming. After them, the royal corpse was carried upon a litter surrounded by the ensigns of sovereignty, the umbrella and the chámara. Lastly followed the chariots, from which the servants of the deceased Maháraja scattered the funeral gifts, and which appear to have been surrounded by the whole body of citizens.

Picture of the funeral procession.

Sacrifice of a cow and her calf an ancient rite.

Remaining ceremonies still performed by the Hindús.

The sacrifice of a cow and her calf, probably for the purposes of feasting, is an ancient rite which has long fallen into disuse;[2] but in other respects, the ceremonies are much the same as those which are performed in the present day. The funeral pile is

[2] At marriage ceremonies a cow and her calf are still always present, and probably in ancient times were sacrificed for the purposes of an entertainment.

set on fire by the son, or nearest kinsman, of the deceased; and after the burning is over, the mourners bathe in the river for the purposes of purification, and then sprinkle water to refresh the soul of the dead man. The days of mourning and the performance of a Sráddha are still observed in the manner described.

CHAPTER XIII.

BHARATA'S VISIT TO RÁMA.

Thirteen days of mourning between the burning of the royal corpse and the Council at which Bharata declines the Raj in favour of Ráma.

On the thirteenth day after the burning, the time of purification and mourning seems to have been accomplished; and on the fourteenth day a great Council was held at Ayodhyá, at which Bharata was formally requested to accept the Raj. Bharata, however, again declined the throne, declaring that it belonged of right to Ráma, and announcing his intention of proceeding into the wilderness and installing Ráma as Raja of Kosala.

Route followed by Bharata in his journey from Ayodhyá to Chitra-kúta.

The narrative of Bharata's journey from Ayodhyá to the hill of Chitra-kúta, where Ráma was residing, is exceedingly interesting and curious. Bharata was accompanied by his army, and apparently by a large caravan of people, as well as by his mothers and Counsellors; and he followed precisely the same route which had been taken by Ráma himself when going into exile. In the first instance, a new road was constructed through the jungle, by which Bharata proceeded to the frontier town at Sringavera. On arriving at Sringavera, he had a curious interview with the Bhíl Raja, and then crossed the Ganges, and proceeded to the hermitage of Bharadwája at Prayága. Here the holy sage entertained Bharata, and all the army and people who accompanied him,

in a most extravagant fashion; and the description of this feast will demand special consideration hereafter. From Prayágá the party proceeded across the Jumná river, and thence marched towards Chitra-kúta, where they ultimately discovered the residence of Ráma.

Eight events in the narrative of Bharata's visit to Ráma.

The narrative of these transactions comprises the eight following incidents:—

1st, The great Council held at Ayodhyá, at which Bharata formally declined to accept the Raj, and announced his intention of going into the jungle and installing Ráma.

2nd, The construction of a great road through the jungle.

3rd, March from Ayodhyá to Sringavera.

4th, Proceedings of Raja Guha on seeing Bharata's army encamped at Sringavera.

5th, Passage of the river Ganges.

6th, March along the southern bank of the Ganges towards Prayága.

7th, Grand entertainment given by Bharadwája to the army and people of Bharata.

8th, Passage of the Jumná and journey to Chitra-kúta.

The narrative.

The story of these circumstances, as recorded in the Ramáyána, is as follows:—

1st, Council held, and Bharata requested to become Raja.

Now on the morning of the fourteenth day, when the time for mourning was over, a great Council was held in the Court hall of the royal palace; and when all the Counsellors had gathered together, they thus spoke to Bharata:—"Our most venerated sovereign, Mahárája Dasaratha, having sent his eldest son Ráma, together with Lakshmana, to the great forest, has now departed to the mansions of Indra: We therefore pray you, O illustrious Prince, to become this day our Raja; for as long as you delay accepting this office,

our Raj is without a head: O descendant of Ikshwáku, all the articles for the installation are now ready; and your kinsmen and all orders of men look up to you: Accept therefore, O Bharata, the Raj which has so long pertained to your paternal ancestors, and cause yourself to be installed Raja, and become the protector of us all." The illustrious Bharata, who was now purified, walked round all the jars designed for the installation, and thus addressed the Council:—"O excellent men, it is improper for you to address me thus: In our family the Raj has ever been esteemed the inheritance of the eldest son, and it is right that my elder brother Ráma should become your Raja, and that I should reside fourteen years in the forest: Therefore prepare a large army, and I will fetch my elder brother Ráma from the wilderness: Preceded by all the sacred articles requisite for the installation, I will go to the forest and there install Ráma, and he shall be your Raja: Let the rough roads be made smooth by the proper artisans; and let pioneers go forward and explore the difficulties of the way." Then all the people were filled with joy, and replied to Bharata in these auspicious words:—"May the goddess of prosperity, even Lakshmí, ever attend you, who are thus desirous of giving the Raj to your elder brother." And big tears of joy fell from the eyes of Bharata; and the glad Counsellors dismissed their grief, and said to him:—"O chief of men, your devoted servants, the artisans, are preparing the road at your command."

Bharata's refusal to set aside the superior claim of Ráma.

Announces his intention of proceeding to the jungle and installing Ráma in the Raj.

Acclamations of the people.

Now when it was fully known that Bharata was determined to bring back his brother Ráma, and install him in the Raj, a mighty crowd of mechanics and labourers of all descriptions were sent forward to prepare the way for Bharata through the great wilderness. There were men acquainted with the ways frequented by former travellers, accompanied by strong men who were diggers of the ground, wheelwrights, carpenters, pioneers, hewers of trees, workers of bamboos, cooks and confectioners; and the vast multitude moved along with great haste for this joyous purpose, resembling the sea at a spring tide. Some

2nd, Construction of a great road through the jungle.

Labourers employed.

Clearing of a way through the jungle.

began to form the highway, cutting through trees, brushwood, and rocks, with hatchets, axes, and bill-hooks; some planted trees in places where there was no shade; whilst those skilled in the use of engineering, and the making of machines, emptied the ponds, and turned streams, and removed every obstruction. Others levelled the difficult places, setting fire to the clumps of long grass, and filling up pits and ravines. Others constructed bridges, and cut their way through large rocky masses which they reduced to powder. Some made canals which contained abundance of water; and where there was no water they dug wells, and surrounded them with benches. Houses and booths were erected at different places for the accommodation of the army; and stately palaces for the reception of Bharata, and his kinsfolk, and friends. The road abounded with trees adorned with flowers, and was enlivened with gladsome birds, and decked with gay banners; and thus decorated, the way through the wilderness resembled the highway of the gods.

Levelling.

Bridges.

Canals and wells.

Booths and palaces.

Decoration of the road with flowers, birds, and banners.

Meanwhile the pious Bharata had commanded Sumantra to assemble the army in order for the purpose of bringing back Ráma; and all the officers and soldiers, and all the people of the Raj, rejoiced in the hope of bringing back Ráma. And all the women of Ayodhyá hastened their husbands in every household. And horses, and bullock carriages, and chariots were prepared as swift as thought, together with camels, and asses, and elephants; and an abundance of excellent provisions was likewise provided to subsist the vast multitude in their journey to bring back Ráma.

3rd, March from Ayodhyá to Sringavera.

Assembling of the army.

Preparations for the march.

Now on the eve of this auspicious journey, it came to pass that the bards and eulogists praised Bharata in congratulatory strains; and striking the kettle-drums with golden sticks they played melodiously thereon; whilst hundreds of others blew the shrill-sounding shell and the piercing trumpet, until the air was filled with the noise. But the clangour of the music only excited the distress of Bharata, and he commanded them all to cease, saying:—"I am not the Raja!"

Bharata refuses to be treated as the Raja.

At the dawn of morning Bharata ascended his chariot,

Departure of Bharata, accompanied by the Counsellors, priests, and army.

HISTORY OF INDIA. PART IV.

and commenced his journey to the abode of Ráma. All the Counsellors and priests preceded him in carriages vying in splendour with the chariot of the sun; and he was attended by nine thousand elephants richly caparisoned, and sixty thousand chariots with archers, and a hundred thousand horsemen, and a million of footmen. Kaikeyí and Sumitrá, together with the renowned Kausalyá, also accompanied Bharata in splendid vehicles, being greatly pleased to bring back Ráma. All the people of the city went out in like manner with Bharata, to meet Ráma. There were potters, jewellers, garland-sellers, weavers, and those who lived by practising arms; also husbandmen, tamers of peacocks, snake-catchers, charmers, tanners, carpenters, workers in gems, workers in glass, workers in ivory, perfumers, goldsmiths, wool-manufacturers, boilers of water, bathmen, physicians, dealers in incense, distillers, fullers, tailors, dancing-men and dancing-women, fishermen, and thousands of Bráhmans of subdued minds, learned in the Vedas, and contented with their incomes. All were apparelled in clean raiment and mounted on vehicles newly painted.[1] This mighty multitude proceeded in chariots, and on horses and elephants, until they arrived at the bank of the Ganges, near the town of Sringavera, where dwelt the friend of Ráma, the renowned Guha, the Raja of the Bhíls. Bharata then said to his Counsellors:—"Let the army halt at this spot, and rest for the night, and on the morrow we will cross this river Ganges." So the army encamped near the town of Sringavera, on the northern bank of the Ganges.

Kaikeyí, Sumitrá, and Kausalyá.

People of all ranks and conditions.

Halt at Sringavera.

4th. Proceedings of Raja Guha.

Now it so happened that Raja Guha was dwelling on the southern bank of the river, and seeing the army of Bharata en-

[1] That the description of the camp of Bharata is in accordance with Hindú ideas, may be gathered from the following description of a Mahratta camp in the last century, extracted from Forbes's "Oriental Memoirs:"—"Ragoba's encampment covered a space of many square miles; the bazaar, or market-place, belonging to his own division and to the principal Generals, contained many thousand tents, where every trade and profession was carried on with as much regularity as in a city. Goldsmiths, jewellers, bankers, drapers, druggists, confectioners, carpenters, tailors, tent-makers, corn-grinders, and farriers, found full employment; as did whole rows of silver, iron, and coppersmiths; but those in the greatest and most constant requisition, were cooks, confectioners, and farriers."

camped on the opposite shore, he said hastily to his kinsmen: —"This vast army appears to me like an ocean overflowing its bounds: I cannot guess wherefore this foolish Bharata has come hither: I am afraid he is desirous of obtaining the complete possession of the Raj, and is going to kill Ráma, who has been sent into exile by his father: But Ráma is both my protector and my friend, so on his account do you, my kinsmen, remain here in arms on this side of the Ganges; and let all my servants remain here lining the bank of the river; for I will not allow Bharata to cross over until I know his intention as regards Ráma: Let the strong keepers of the river, who feed on flesh, roots, and fruits, remain here: Let a multitude of fishermen, young, stout, and armed, the crews of five hundred boats, be also commanded to remain here: If however Bharata be at peace with his brother Ráma, his army may cross the Ganges this day."

His alarm lest Bharata should contemplate the death of Ráma.

Preparations of Guha for opposing Bharata's passage over the Ganges.

When Raja Guha had thus explained his intentions to his Counsellors, he took presents of fish, honey, and flesh, and crossed over to the northern bank of the river to wait upon Bharata; and when he approached the Prince, the charioteer Sumantra, who was well acquainted with the proper forms of address, spoke thus to Bharata:—"This Raja of the Bhíls is eminent in his knowledge of the forest of Dándaka, and he is the friend of your elder brother Ráma: Therefore, O Bharata, let Raja Guha be admitted to your presence, for he assuredly knows where Ráma and Lakshmana are abiding." So Raja Guha was introduced to Bharata, and he bowed his head, and said:—"This country is covered with jungle, and your coming has taken us by surprise; but still we entreat you to stay with all your army and attendants at the house of your servant: I have fruits and roots, both fresh and dry, which have been laid up in store by my Bhíls; and I have also flesh meat, and everything that is produced in the forest: I pray you therefore to remain here to-night with all your army; and to-morrow, when you have been furnished with all you desire, you can cross the river and go onward." Bharata replied:—"O my friend, your kindness towards me is very great, since you desire to entertain so vast an army as that which accompanies me: But tell me the way by

Raja Guha crosses to the northern bank with presents for Bharata.

Interview between Guha and Bharata.

Bharata desires to know the way to the hermitage of Bharadwája.

which I should proceed to the hermitage of Bharadwája! This country is very difficult to traverse, for it is full of thickets and deep forests; and this side of the Ganges is marshy and flooded with water: Every road abounds with difficulties, and is infested with serpents, and filled with thorns and trees." Then Raja Guha, who was well acquainted with the forest, replied to Bharata with joined hands, as follows:—"O valiant Prince, my servants armed with bows shall carefully attend you, and I also will accompany you: But tell me, I pray you, are you going forth in anger against Ráma? This mighty army which accompanies you, leads me to fear that you are an enemy to Ráma." Bharata said:—"O Guha, may the time never come in which I shall give distress to Ráma! There is no cause for you to be afraid of me; Ráma is my eldest brother, and I esteem him as equal to my father: I go to bring back Ráma to the throne of Ayodhyá." Guha replied:—"Happy are you, O Bharata! In the whole world I do not know one who is equal to you, since you desire to relinquish a Raj which has fallen to you without any scheming of your own; and on this account your fame will spread throughout the whole universe."

Guha offers to accompany Bharata.

Rejoices at hearing that Bhárata is going to conduct Ráma to Ayodhyá.

While Guha was thus conversing with Bharata, the sun began to decline in the heavens, and Bharata encamped his army, and rested that night with Satrughna. And Bharata, filled with solicitude for Ráma, said to Guha:—"I wish to hear particularly from you where Ráma was lodged, together with his wife Sítá and his brother Lakshmana: What words did he speak, and what food did he eat, and in what place did he lie with Sítá?" And Guha told him the whole of what had occurred whilst Ráma halted at Sringavera, and how Lakshmana kept watch for the protection of Ráma and Sítá. And when Bharata and Satrughna had heard the whole of the sorrowful story, they wept aloud, and their mothers wept with them.

Night passed in conversation respecting Ráma.

Now when it was morning, Bharata was desirous that his army should be conducted across the river Ganges to the southern bank; and Raja Guha presented himself to Bharata, and said:—"My people have brought five hundred boats, adorned with flags and great bells, and furnished with oars

5th, Passage of the river Ganges.

Embarkation of Bharata and Satrughna, and the three chief widows of the Maháraja.

and rowers." And Guha brought a boat on which a chamber had been erected: and the chamber resembled a temple, and was lined with white, and filled with a band of joyful musicians; and Bharata ascended that boat, together with Satrughna, and all the widows of Maháraja Dasaratha. Then Vasishtha the priest, and the other Bráhmans, entered the boats set apart for them; and the female attendants entered their boats, together with the baggage which had been brought on carts. Meanwhile the noise of those who were burning the booths and huts of the encampment, and the uproar of those who were plunging into the river, and of those who were carrying the baggage to the boats, ascended to the very sky. The boats adorned with flying streamers, on which the servants had embarked, sailed swiftly over the river; some being filled with women, others with horses, and others with carriages, cattle, and treasure; and when they had reached the opposite bank they landed the people, and returned for more. The elephants, also adorned with flags, swam across the broad stream like winged mountains. But the mighty army and the multitude of people could not find sufficient room on the boats which Raja Guha had prepared; and some crossed on rafts, and others upon jars and pots, whilst some swam over the river with their hands and arms; and thus every one that came with Bharata was conveyed over the river Ganges by the care of the servants of Raja Guha.

Vasishtha and the Bráhmans.

The female attendants.

Stirring scene upon the river.

Swimming of the elephants.

Crossing of the people on rafts and jars.

Now when they all had passed over the river, Bharata marched his army some distance into the jungle, towards the hermitage of Bharadwája at Prayága, and then he commanded it to halt. And he laid aside his arms and ornaments, and put on two silken garments, and proceeded with Vasishtha the priest, and the Bráhmans and Counsellors, to pay his respects to that great sage, who was the chief of Rishis, and the priest of the gods. And when he beheld the delightful hermitage of Bharadwája, and the huts made of leaves, he left the Counsellors, and, preceded by the priest Vasishtha, he went forward and entered the presence of the great Bráhman. Then Vasishtha and Bhárata saluted Bharadwája in the most respectful manner, and Bharadwája rose

6th, March along the southern bank of the Ganges towards Prayága.

Vasishtha and Bharata proceed in advance to the hermitage of Bharadwája.

Their hospitable reception.

from his seat, and commanded his disciples to bring the argha; and he then presented them both with the argha, and with water to wash their feet, and refreshed them with fruits. Then Bharadwája inquired separately of Bharata and Vasishtha respecting their welfare, and also about Ayodhyá, and the army, the treasury, and the Counsellors of the Maháraja; but knowing that Dasaratha was dead, he made no inquiries concerning him. In return, Vasishtha and Bharata inquired respecting the health of Bharadwája, and how far his body had been wasted by his austerities; and also regarding his sacred fires and his disciples, and the trees, beasts, and birds by which he was surrounded. After this the renowned sage, fearful lest Bharata contemplated the slaughter of Ráma, questioned Bharata as to the reason of his coming; and Bharata replied that he came "to bring back Ráma to the city of Ayodhyá, and to bow at his feet." So Bharadwája rejoiced, and said:—"I know Ráma and his wife Sítá, and his brother Lakshmana, and they dwell on the famous hill of Chitra-kúta: Go thither on the morrow, but to-day do you stay here with your army and Counsellors."

Courteous exchange of inquiries.

Fears of Bharadwája respecting Ráma allayed by Bharata.

After this, the great Bharadwája commanded Bharata to bring his whole army to the hermitage, that he might feast them; and the sage then entered the house where the sacred fire was kept, and having sipped water and wiped his lips, he invoked Viswakarma, the architect of the gods, as follows:—"I invoke the great artist Viswakarma to acquaint him that I desire to entertain guests, and I pray that all things may be made ready for me! I invoke the gods, with Indra at their head, to acquaint them in like manner that I desire to entertain guests, and I pray them to supply me with all that is necessary! Let all the rivers which flow towards the east come hither! Let some flow with wine and sweet liquors, and let others bring cool waters as sweet as the juice of the sugar-cane! I call upon the Gandharvas, the divine musicians, to come hither with all their instruments of music! I call upon the beautiful Apsaras, the divine nymphs of paradise, to come hither with all their dresses and ornaments! Let a beautiful grove be formed resembling that

7th, Great entertainment given by Bharadwája to the army and people of Bharata.

Invokes Viswakarma, the architect of the gods.

Invokes the gods, with Indra at their head.

Invokes the rivers, the Gandharvas, and the Apsaras.

of Kuvera, the leaves of which shall consist of jewels, and fine apparel, and lovely damsels shall be the fruit thereof! Let some prepare every kind of food that can be eaten, sucked or licked! Let garlands appear ready formed upon the trees; and let intoxicating liquors be produced in great abundance, together with flesh of various kinds!"

The celestials obey the commands of Bharadwája.

Thus spoke in words of authority the mighty sage who had all his passions under perfect control, and who was invested with divine power. All the celestials then entered his presence, together with the fragrant zephyrs; and flowers fell in showers from heaven, and the divine kettle-drums were heard in the sky, filling the air in every direction; whilst the Apsaras danced, and the Kinnaras sang, and the Gandharvas played sweet music. Then when the divine harmony had ceased, Bharata beheld the wondrous deeds which were wrought by Viswakarma and the gods. For many miles on every side the ground became level, and was covered with a carpet of tender grass, and enamelled with sapphires and onyxes; and in it were trees loaded with every variety of fruits. A forest abounding with enjoyments came from the mansions of Indra. Many excellent rivers also came attended by the various productions of their banks; whilst other rivers came flowing with various liquors. White houses, with four apartments to each, rose from the ground to receive the immense number of guests; together with stables for elephants and horses, and great numbers of palaces, and temples, and arched gateways.

Wondrous works of Viswakarma and the gods.

The enamelled plain.

The forest of Indra.

The rivers flowing with liquors.

The white houses.

Beautiful palace prepared for Bharata.

Then Bharata, the valiant son of Kaikeyí, entered a palace which was as resplendent as a white cloud; and the portals thereof were adorned with white garlands, and sprinkled with fragrant perfumes; and the square courts of that palace were covered with excellent carpets, and furnished with beds, couches, and every kind of seats. And there was an abundance of agreeable liquors of every kind, and sweetmeats of every variety, and provisions of all sorts, as well as clean dishes and new apparel. There also was the royal throne, with the white umbrella, and chámara of white hair; but Bharata and the Counsellors walked round the

Preparations for the feast.

Respect paid to the royal throne in honour to Ráma.

throne, and bowed respectfully towards it, in honour of Ráma; and Bharata took the chámara and placed himself on one of the seats set apart for the Counsellors. All the Counsellors and priests then seated themselves according to their respective rank, and last of all the general of the army took his seat with a reverential bow. Then Vasishtha and the Bráhmans partook of the entertainment, and when they had finished, Bharata and the Counsellors sat down to the feast. And all the rivers, which ran with choice liquors, passed before Bharata at the command of the sage Bharadwája; and the beds of the rivers were so clean and pure that the white earth could be perceived at the bottom as well as at the sides. And the banks of the rivers were adorned with excellent houses produced by the prayers of the great Bráhman. At the same instant came twenty thousand women adorned with excellent ornaments, who were sent by Brahma; and twenty thousand more, adorned with gold, and gems, and coral, who were sent by Kuvera; and twenty thousand more issued from the forest of Nandana, which is the garden of Indra. And the Rajas of the Gandharvas, as resplendent as the sun, played and sang before the assembly, whilst the Apsaras danced with great joy. And many trees came hither and played on musical instruments, whilst some beat time and others danced; and the clusters of fruits in the forest assumed the form of beautiful damsels, and cried: —"O you that are thirsty, drink strong wine! O you that are hungry, eat juicy meat!"

Vasishtha and the Bráhmans eat first.

Feasting of Bharata and the Counsellors.

Wonderful rivers.

Beautiful women sent by Brahma, Kuvera, and Indra.

Performances of the Gandharvas and Apsaras.

Performances of the trees.

Meanwhile the army of Bharata and the people of Ayodhyá were feasted in like manner. Eight beautiful damsels waited upon each man, and these damsels and the men caused each other to drink liquid honey. And there were other beautiful damsels, and many excellent musicians, all with garlands round their necks; and they danced, and played, and sang, until the warriors, horsemen, and footmen, cried out:—"We will not go forward to the wilderness of Dándaka, nor will we go back to the city of Ayodhyá, but we will remain and dwell here: Peace be to Bharata, and happiness attend Ráma!" And the soldiers ran about

Feasting of the army and people.

Beautiful damsels.

Intoxication of the soldiery.

in crowds, and they danced, and laughed, and sang songs, and adorned themselves with the garlands which had been given them by the damsels; and they were so drunken that the elephant-keepers could no longer discern their elephants, nor the grooms behold their horses. The messengers also, and the servants, and the wives of the soldiers, and those who followed the army, dressed themselves in every kind of fine cloth, and were completely filled. The elephants, horses, asses, cows, goats, sheep, deer, and birds, were likewise all completely satisfied, and none wished for more. No one was there whose clothes were not white; no one who was dirty or hungry, or whose hair was defiled with dust. Innumerable couches were supplied, furnished with excellent coverlets and rich carpets. By the side of the soldiers were wells filled with páyasa, made of milk, rice, sugar, and spices; and there were cows yielding every desire of the heart, trees dropping honey, as well as large oblong ponds full of spirituous liquors, and bordered with sweetmeats and choice viands. There were thousands of dishes of various metals, garnished with flowers and ornaments, and filled with venison, peacocks, partridges, mutton, and pork, accompanied with the proper sauces, and boiled in pots, or roasted on ivory spits. There were likewise thousands of plates, and millions of golden vessels, and of pots well cleansed, together with lakes of butter-milk three hours old; and other lakes of milk, and white curds, and prepared butter, with large heaps of sugar round about resembling mountains. There were also all the vessels and articles necessary for ablution, and great numbers of white tooth-picks with their ends bruised, and vessels filled with the powder of white sandal wood; together with thousands of mirrors, and clean garments in abundance, and shoes and sandals in endless quantity, and combs for the head and beard. There also were mountains of betel, and lakes full of liquors to promote digestion, and lakes abounding with lilies of a sky-blue colour, into which the descent was easy, and in which it was grateful to bathe. Thus passed away the night, while these men enjoyed themselves in the pleasant hermitage of

Servants, followers, and animals of all kinds, completely satisfied.

General cleanliness.

Couches.

Wells of páyasa.

Exhaustless cows.

Trees dropping honey.

Ponds of wine.

Flesh meat.

Plates, vessels, and pots in abundance.

Lakes of butter-milk, milk, curds, and butter.

Tooth-picks and sandal wood.

Mirrors, clean garments, shoes and combs.

Betel.

Lakes for bathing.

Bharadwája, like a night spent by Indra in his garden of Nandana. At length at the command of Bharadwája, all the beautiful females and musicians and singers returned to the places from whence they had come; and the flowers composing the various kinds of garlands, and those scattered round and trampled under-foot by men, returned to their former state as if the whole had been a dream.

Sudden return of all things to their previous state.

At early morning, Bharata went to the sage Bharadwája; and when the sage saw the Prince approaching him with joined hands, he came out of his hermitage and said:—"O Bharata, was every one gratified with this mighty entertainment?" Bharata then bowed his head, and replied:—"O divine one, myself with all my army, and the very animals, were made completely happy: Servants and all have been lodged in the most agreeable manner, and have lost all sense of fatigue and pain: We have been plentifully feasted, and have slept in excellent houses: But I ask of you one favour more: O divine sage, look with a friendly eye upon me, and tell me how far it is to the hermitage of my pious brother, and which is the way thither." Bharadwája said:—"At a short distance from here, in an uninhabited forest, is the delightful mountain Chitra-kúta: On its north side is the river Mandákiní, overshadowed with trees, covered with blossoms, and skirted with flowery woods: O my lord, beyond that river, at the mountain Chitra-kúta, your two brothers are residing in their leafy hut on the south road."

Bharata acknowledges the hospitality of Bharadwája.

Bharadwája points out to Bharata the road to Chitra-kúta.

Bharata having thus accomplished his wish, bowed at the feet of the sage, and took his leave. And Bharata and all his army crossed over the river Jumná in like manner that they had crossed the Ganges; and when they had reached the opposite bank every preparation was made for marching to the hill Chitra-kúta. The various Captains commanded their horses to be yoked, and mounted their excellent chariots adorned with gold. Male and female elephants, furnished with golden howdahs, and decorated with beautiful flags, stood roaring like clouds in the rainy season; and the various kinds of vehicles, small and great, went

8th, Passage of the Jumná and journey to Chitra-kúta.

Order of march.

The Captains in chariots.

The elephants.

forward, whilst the footmen marched on foot. The ladies of the royal house, with Kausalyá at their head, were filled with joy; and went forward in different vehicles, earnestly longing to see Ráma. Bharata likewise ascended a beautiful litter, as resplendent as the moon or the rising sun, and began his march with the priests and Counsellors. The innumerable army, accompanied by a multitude of elephants and horses, covered the earth like a vast cloud rising in the south. At the sight of that great army marching with banners flying, the herds of wild animals and the flocks of birds fled away in great consternation. The bears, the wild boars, and the spotted antelopes, which appeared in view on all sides grazing among the hills and rivers, were terrified, and hastened into the depths of the jungle. Greatly pleased, the pious son of Dasaratha marched on, whilst this large army filled the air with their shouts, and covered the earth like a widely-spreading sea, or as the clouds cover the sky in the rainy season. At length, having advanced a long way, Bharata said to the sage Vasishtha:—"We must be now approaching the dwelling-place of Ráma: Yonder hill must be Chitra-kúta, and this river must be the Mandákiní: The forest appears in the distance like a blue cloud, and my mountain-like elephants are even now treading upon the pleasant table-lands of Chitra-kúta: The trees are shedding their flowers upon the mountain, as the dark clouds pour forth their store of rain when the hot season is passed: Behold the mountain-side covered with horses, as the sea is covered with crocodiles: The swiftly running deer, driven away by my army, appear like the clouds which are driven away in autumn by the winds: The soldiers putting flowers on their heads, resemble the people of the south who cover their heads with blue shields: The forest, which was silent and dreadful to behold, is now through my coming suddenly filled with men like the city of Ayodhyá: The bamboos, shaken by the winds, send forth a pleasant noise, and shade the heavens from view: The beautiful peacocks run about on the mountain, whilst the joyful birds hop from spray to spray: How captivating does this country appear to me!

The infantry.

The ladies.

Bhárata's litter.

Alarm of the beasts and birds at the advance of the army.

Description of Chitra-kúta.

It is the abode of holy devotees, the manifest road to heaven: Let the army halt at this spot and make a search throughout the forest, that the two chiefs of men, Ráma and Lakshmana, may be found."

Halting of the army and discovery of Ráma's dwelling.

Hearing the words of Bharata, the many warriors, with their weapons in their hands, entered the forest, and they beheld smoke ascending; and they returned and carried the news to Bharata, saying:—"Fire is not seen in a place that is destitute of men; and doubtless Ráma and Lakshmana are dwelling there." Then Bharata, pleased at the news, said to the whole army:—"Let the soldiers remain here perfectly silent: Ráma and Lakshmana cannot be far from hence, and I will go with my brother Satrughna, and the charioteer Sumantra and Raja Guha, and find out Ráma."

Bharata proceeds, accompanied only by Satrughna, Sumantra, and Guha.

Review of the foregoing narrative of Bharata's visit to Ráma.

The foregoing narrative comprises some graphic pictures of Hindú life well worthy of consideration. The account of the Council at which Bharata declined the Raj includes perhaps no details requiring special notice; but the description of the construction of the great road by which Bharata and his army passed through the jungle, is very curious and suggestive. With the exception of one or two trunk lines, the absence of roads was a peculiar feature of India until a comparatively recent period; and it was generally impossible for wheeled carriages to proceed, especially after the rainy season, without sending precursors to level the hills of sand and mud, and fill up the chasms and ravines. The road constructed by Bharata cannot be regarded as altogether a new one, as Ráma was driven by Sumantra in a chariot along the entire distance when going into exile. Neither can it have been carried all the way to the frontier, as Bharata complained at Sringavera of the badness of the way. Moreover, the story of the construction of the road has appar-

The great highway.

Probably a reconstruction of the old road.

Poetic embellishments.

ently received some considerable embellishments from the Hindú bard. But even if the description is not literally true, it indicates the difficulties to be overcome in constructing a road through the jungle, and the ancient custom of preparing the way for distinguished personages which finds full expression in Messianic prophecy:—"Prepare ye the way of the Lord, make straight in the desert a highway for our God. Every valley shall be exalted, and every mountain and hill shall be made low; and the crooked shall be made straight, and the rough places plain."[2]

Ancient custom of preparing a new road for the advance of distinguished personages.

The march from Ayodhyá to Sringavera calls for no remark; but the proceedings of Raja Guha on perceiving the army of Bharata encamped on the opposite bank of the Ganges, furnishes a curious picture of ancient life. Fearing that Bharata was pursuing Ráma for evil purposes, he ordered his fishermen and servants to line the banks of the river, whilst he himself carried over propitiatory presents of fish, flesh, and honey, with the view of learning the real object of Bharata's expedition. The passage of the river is very picturesque, and perfectly true to modern Hindú manners in the north-western quarter of India. The burning of the booths on leaving the encampment, the uproar of embarkation, the boats adorned with gay streamers and enlivened with musicians, the sing-song of the rowers, the multitude crossing the river on rafts or empty jars, and the elephants swimming slowly from shore to shore, are all scenes which will be readily realized by those who are familiar with the

Curious picture of ancient life presented by the proceedings of Raja Guha.

Picturesque description of the crossing of the Ganges.

[2] Isaiah xl. 3, 4. Forbes's "Oriental Memoirs," Vol. II., p. 59.

conditions of Hindú life under similar circumstances.

Extraordinary character of the entertainment miraculously furnished by Bharadwája.

But the most extraordinary picture connected with this expedition, and perhaps the most extraordinary in the whole of the Rámáyana, is the weird-like entertainment given by the sage Bharadwája to the army and followers of Bharata. The whole scene is one of enchantment, and consequently has special charms for the Hindú. All that he can desire or imagine, as a source of pleasure and gratification, are here said to have been produced in abundance at the mere prayer of a holy Bráhman. The jungle was not merely transformed to a level plain covered with soft grass, but the turf is said to have been radiant with precious stones; whilst the plain was shaded by trees loaded with fruits, and watered by rivers running with the choicest liquors. White and beautiful palaces rise upon the enamelled plain in all the glory of oriental magnificence or gorgeous pantomime. Garlands of flowers are hanging on the portals; sweet odours are issuing from the rooms; whilst the inner courts are furnished with everything that can please and gratify the senses. There are rich carpets and soft couches on which to repose, whilst exquisite wines, choice viands, and delicious sweetmeats are served up in abundance. There, too, are divine musicians to please the ear, celestial dancing-girls to gratify the eye, and beautiful women without number to enliven the guests by their potent charms. Even the clusters of fruits that hang from the trees take the form of bewitching damsels, who press every one to eat the juicy meat and drink the strong wine.

Adaptation of the story to Hindú tastes.

Marvellous transformations and creations.

Distinction between the dreamy luxury of Bharata and his Counsellors, and the uproarious conviviality of the soldiers and common people.

But such a picture of dreamy luxury is only pleasing to the confirmed voluptuary, and conse-

quently is confined to the palace in which Bharata and his Counsellors are entertained. In feasting the soldiers and camp-followers it was necessary to introduce coarser elements, indicative of profuse hospitality and a more uproarious conviviality ; and in this respect it must be confessed that the bard has described a scene equally true to Hindú ideas and to a lower order of human nature. Here are couches, clean garments, new shoes, mirrors, combs, and toothpicks, for every one. Here are ponds full of spirituous liquors, bordered with sweetmeats; thousands of dishes of meat, either boiled in clean pots or roasted on ivory spits ; together with lakes of butter-milk and curds, and mountains of betel. The female element was much the same as at the more aristocratic banquet; but the men grew more intoxicated and noisy ; and to repeat the language of the poem, the soldiers ran about in crowds, and danced and laughed, and sang songs, and adorned themselves with the garlands which were given to them by the damsels, until at last they were so drunken that the elephant-drivers could no longer discern their elephants, nor the grooms behold their horses.

Strange anomaly that the description of the feast should be deemed a portion of inspired writ.

But the most extraordinary fact connected with these scenes, is not their truthfulness to human nature, but the anomaly that they should have been described by a Brahmanical bard, and have found their way into what the Hindús believe to be inspired writ. If, however, the narrative is critically examined, it will be seen that a Kshatriya tradition of a feast in which juicy meat and strong drink formed the prominent features, has been partially overlaid by Brahmanical details, in which more stress

The Kshatriya tradition partly overlaid by Brahmanical details.

is laid upon wells full of rice and milk, and lakes of butter, curds, milk, and butter-milk. Here the opposition is manifest, for the same revellers who feasted on venison and peacocks, mutton and pork, are scarcely likely to have feasted on rice, milk, and curds. The anomaly that flesh meat and spirituous liquors were served up at a Brahmanical feast given by a holy sage, is explained away by the assertion that the event took place in a former age, known as the Tretá-yuga, when such indulgences were allowable. In other respects the miracle is intelligible; and indeed the idea of a Bráhman sage being able to entertain armies through the supernatural powers which he had acquired by the force of his devotions, seems to have been a favourite fancy with Hindú bards, and finds expression in more than one myth of a Brahmanical origin and character.

Opposition between rice and milk food and flesh meat.

The feast referred to the Tretá-yuga.

Miraculous powers of entertainment ascribed to Bráhman sages.

CHAPTER XIV.

RÁMA REFUSES THE RAJ.

Interesting character of the interviews between Bharata and Ráma.

THE narrative of the interviews which took place at Chitra-kúta between Bharata and Ráma contains some highly interesting scenes which throw a curious light upon the inner life of the Hindú, and upon the standing-point from which he contemplates the world around. The general aim of this portion of the poem is to exhibit the noble self-sacrifice which Ráma firmly carried out in obedience to the expressed commands of the deceased Maháraja. The narrative opens with a poetical description of the hill Chitra-kúta, and the river Mandákiní, accompanied by a pretty, but somewhat child-like, picture of Ráma and Sítá taking their pleasure among the flowers, during which Ráma frequently declares that he cares not for the Raj so long as he can enjoy the society of his wife upon so pleasant a mountain. This disclaimer, however, must be accepted with some reservation. The Hindú bard was evidently desirous of furnishing an ideal picture of conjugal happiness and affection, and in doing so was perhaps compelled to represent the possession of the Raj as a minor consideration. But that Ráma should have literally preferred a jungle to a throne, a leafy hut surrounded with perils and deprivations, to the luxury of a palace and pride of sovereignty, seems never to have

Stress laid upon the self-sacrifice of Ráma in order to fulfil his father's commands.

been understood by the Brahmanical bard for a moment. Indeed, the greatest possible stress is laid by Válmíki upon the filial obedience of Ráma in refusing to accept the Raj. In three distinct interviews between Bharata and Ráma, the former appears to exhaust every argument to induce his elder brother to accept the Raj; and in so doing is supported by his mother Kaikeyí, and by the sages Jáváli and Vasishtha; but Ráma never hesitates for a moment as to the duty which he owes to his deceased father, and at length the people and the great sages acknowledge the righteousness of his resolution.

Three interviews between Bharata and Ráma.

The incidents and speeches which arise in the course of the narrative are very significant, and well worthy of consideration. In the present place, however, it will be sufficient to indicate the seven leading events as follows:—

Seven leading incidents in the narrative.

1st, Description of the hill Chitra-kúta and the river Mandákiní, and of the sports of Ráma and Sítá amongst the flowers.

2nd, Approach of Bharata's army and description of Ráma's hermitage.

3rd, First interview between Ráma and Bharata, comprising Ráma's inferential speech upon the duties of Rajas.

4th, Ráma's offering of oblations of water and funeral cakes to the soul of his deceased father.

5th, Second interview between Bharata and Ráma on the bank of the Mandákiní river, comprising Jáváli's atheistical speech against the belief in a future state, and Ráma's reply.

6th, Third interview between Bharata and Ráma, comprising Vasishtha's appeal.

7th, Return of Bharata to Ayodhyá, and resi-

dence at Nandigráma, where he subsequently ruled the Raj under the authority of Ráma's shoes.

The narrative of Ráma's refusal of the Raj may be reproduced from the Rámáyana as follows:— The narrative.

1st. Description of the hill Chitra-kúta and the river Mandákiní, and of the sports of Ráma and Sítá amongst the flowers.

Now on the very day that the army of Bharata was approaching the hill of Chitra-kúta, the heroic Ráma, who was attached to the pleasant hill, and who was as desirous of gratifying Sítá as Indra is desirous of gratifying his spouse Sachí, was showing Chitra-kúta to his beloved. And Ráma said to Sítá:—"O excellent woman, neither my fall from the throne of Ayodhyá, nor the separation from my friends, give me any pain so long as I behold this pleasant mountain: See this hill, O my beloved, frequented by various kinds of birds, adorned with peaks, abounding in metals, and penetrating the skies: It is covered with trees and flowers, and filled with spotted deer and tuneful birds, as well as with tigers, leopards, and bears: Behold the charming retreats! The mountain with its cool cascades, and bubbling springs, and purling streams, appears like an elephant spouting up inebriating liquors: Who would not feel delight, whilst the zephyrs, coming from the valleys laden with fragrance, salute and gratify the senses? O peerless one, were I to spend an age here with you and Lakshmana, still grief would never consume me: In this mountain, O beautiful one, radiant with fruits and flowers, and vocal with tuneful birds, I feel awakened to all the tender emotions of love: O Sítá, rejoice with me on Chitra-kúta: The royal sages have declared that retiring to the forest from the cares of royalty, is as delightful as amrita: The stones of different colours, of blue, yellow, purple and white, adorn the mountain on every side: The medicinal herbs upon this prince of mountains shine in the night like the flames of a burnt-offering: Some portions of the mountain resemble palaces, others are like gardens, and others are wrapped in deep gloom: Chitra-kúta fixes its foundations deep in the earth, and exalts its head on high: See here and there the beds of the celestial damsels, devoted to soft delights, formed

Ráma descants on the beauties of Chitra-kúta.

of the leaves of the lotos and covered with various flowers: See here the garlands of water-lilies pressed down, which have been thrown at each other by these damsels: This mountain Chitra-kúta, abounding with roots, fruits, and water, excels the garden of Kuvera and the abode of Indra: O beloved Sítá, having spent the appointed time with you and Lakshmana, I shall have accomplished a work which will exalt the family of Ikshwáku."

Ráma descants on the beauties of the river Mandákiní.

Descending from the rock, the godlike son of Dasaratha then showed his beautiful wife the pleasant river Mandákiní. He said:—"Behold the river Mandákiní, with its various islands frequented by geese and crows, and abounding with

The fords.

flowers: See the pleasant fords where the herds of deer have drank, and where for a moment they have made the water

The holy sages worshipping the sun.

muddy! There at stated seasons the holy sages bathe in the stream, wearing matted hair, clothing of bark, and the thong of leather rolled up like a cord, which passes over the left shoulder and under the right arm; and there, bound by their vows, they stand with uplifted hands repeating hymns

The trees.

to the sun: The trees, agitated by the winds, scatter their flowers and leaves on every side of the river, and cause the mountains to appear as though they were dancing: Behold,

The flowers.

O slender-waisted, the heaps of flowers, shaken down by the wind, spreading abroad upon the earth or driving through

The red geese.

the air! See the red geese sitting on the shallows and uttering their pleasing sounds! O lovely one, the sight of Chitra-kúta and of Mandákiní, in company with you, I esteem

Ráma invites Sítá to bathe.

far beyond a residence in a palace: Bathe with me in the stream which is constantly frequented by perfect men, who are washed from their sins, and who are devoted to austerities and self-denial: O charming Sítá, do you bathe in the river Mandákiní, and throw red and white water-lilies into it, as one companion throws flowers at another! O beloved spouse, esteem this mountain as Ayodhyá, this river as the Sarayú, and these animals as the people of the city: The virtuous Lakshmana, who is devoted to my commands, and whose heart, O Sítá, is ever in union with mine, constitutes all my happiness: Performing the appointed duties of religion

three times a day, and living with you upon honey, roots, and fruits, I feel no wish for the Raj of Kosala: Where is the man whose fatigue is not removed, and whose mind is not exhilarated by bathing in this pleasant river, which is frequented by monkeys, elephants, and lions, and adorned with such a profusion of flowers?"

Declares that he has no wish for the Raj of Kosala.

Thus Ráma showed to Sita the river Mandákini flowing through the villages, and the beds of water-lilies, and the mountain Chitra-kúta; after which he saw on the north side of the mountain a pleasant cave, which abounded with stones and metals, and was covered with a profusion of trees in flower, and afforded a delightful shade, and was frequented by joyful birds. Beholding this cave, and the thicket which concealed it from the view of every creature, Ráma said to Sítá:—"O my beloved, if this cave is pleasing to your sight, sit here a little while and rest from your fatigue: These smooth stones by the side of this tree loaded with flowers are placed here for you." Sítá, devoted to her lord, humbly replied in tender words:—"O my lord, it becomes me to regard your words: In order to show me the beauties of this mountain, you have this day wandered a long way, and must be much fatigued." The beautiful one, filled with tenderness, then seated herself upon the stone; and Ráma, conversing with her as she sat by him, said as follows:—"O goddess, see this climbing plant, bending with blossoms, clasping this blooming tree! Do you, my beloved, imitate this charming plant and cling to me with your arms." Then Sítá, resembling a daughter of the gods, sitting in the arms of her husband, clasped her lord, rejoicing the soul of Ráma, who was filled with unutterable affection. Now there was a red clay, washed by the mountain stream, which yielded a crimson dye; and Ráma rubbed his finger on the dye and adorned the forehead of his beloved; and Sítá appeared like the newly-risen sun, or like the ruddy sky at the close of day; and the affectionate Ráma, rubbing the flowers of Káma in his hand, completed the ornament on the forehead of his spouse.[1] Then Ráma arose, and taking

Ráma and Sítá rest in a beautiful cave.

Ráma requests Sítá to cling to him as the climbing plant clings to a tree.

Ráma paints a red tiká on Sítá's forehead.

[1] The tiká, or mark on the forehead, is very general amongst the Hindús. It

Sítá with him, went to another place; and there a troop of monkeys came up, and Sítá in her alarm took refuge in the arms of her husband, and closely embraced him; and Ráma embraced Sítá, and consoled her, and drove the monkeys away. Then the bright ornament on the forehead of Sítá appeared imprinted on the breast of the full-chested Ráma; and Sítá laughed to see the mark on her own forehead imprinted on the breast of her lord. Presently Sítá beheld a grove of asoka trees loaded with flowers; and desirous of an asoka flower, she said:—"O my lord, let us go to that grove." The happy Ráma, devoted to the pleasure of his beloved, went with her to the asoka grove; and they traversed the grove as the great god Siva traverses the wood of Himavan with his beloved Párvatí, the daughter of the mountain. The two lovers, the bright grass-complexioned Ráma and the ruddy slender-waisted Sítá, now adorned each other with asoka flowers; and they wreathed garlands, and made floral ornaments for their ears, and for the tuft of hair on the crown of their heads; and their presence seemed to heighten the beauty of all the mountain.

Sítá alarmed by monkeys.

The tiká on her forehead is stamped on Ráma's chest.

Wanderings in the asoka grove.

Ráma and Sítá adorn each other with flowers.

At length the amiable Ráma, having shown various scenes to his beloved Sítá, returned at length to their leafy hermitage. And Lakshmana came out to meet his brother, who, adorned with flowers, was walking with his arm round the neck of his tender spouse; and Lakshmana showed them what he had done during their absence, and how he had killed ten pure antelopes with a clean arrow, and was drying their flesh in the sun. And Ráma was pleased, and said to Sítá:—"Let the offering be made to the gods." Then the beautiful Sítá first offered a portion to the gods and Pitris, and gave plenty of honey [and flesh to the two brothers; and Ráma said to Sítá:—"This is juicy flesh; it is of delicious taste, and has been well roasted by the fire." When

Ráma and Sítá return to the hermitage.

Met by Lakshmana, who has slain ten antelopes.

Sacrifice and supper of venison.

consists of a round painted spot, or a patch of gold, placed on the centre of the forehead, either as an ornament, or as a sectarial distinction, or as a mark of high rank. Amongst the Rájput Princes, the conferring the tiká upon a subordinate or feudatory Chief is the privilege and indication of supremacy.—See Wilson's *Glossary*.

Sítá had satisfied the two heroes she took her own meal; and then at the desire of Ráma she guarded the remainder of the flesh, which had been cut into pieces and laid out to dry, from being devoured by the crows.][2]

2nd, Approach of Bharata's army, and description of Ráma's hermitage.

At this moment, the noise and dust of Bharata's army approaching the leafy hut arose even to the sky. The wild elephants of the forest left their afflicted companions and fled on all sides, being affrighted at the great uproar. Ráma heard the noise and beheld the wild elephants of the forest running away; and he said to Lakshmana:—"O excellent son of Sumitrá, do you not hear this warlike sound, as deep and terrible as thunder? The herds of elephants, and the buffaloes and startled deer, are hastily running off in every direction; are they affrighted by lions, or is some Raja come hither to hunt? Then Lakshmana hastily mounted a tree, and looked around, and saw coming from the northern quarter a large army composed of elephants, chariots, horsemen, and well-armed infantry; and he said to Ráma:—"O chief of men, this must be the army of Bharata, the son of Kaikeyí: Being desirous of enjoying the Raj without a rival, he is coming to destroy us both: I see his flag upon the chariot, the selfsame chariot in which we left Ayodhyá: We must certainly kill him, and then you may govern the Raj in peace." Ráma replied:—"What evil has Bharata ever done to you, or what fear have you of Bharata, that you desire to kill him? I have engaged to fulfil my father's promise, and what should I do with the Raj? Perchance Bharata has been drawn hither by affection only; or he has come hither to surrender the Raj to me; and it is improper for you to speak so harshly of him." Thus addressed by his pious brother, Lakshmana was abashed, and said:—"Perchance, our father the Maháraja has come to see you." Ráma, seeing that Lakshmana was ashamed, replied:—"Dasaratha may have come to see us, and to take us home again: I see

Terror of the beasts of the jungle.

Lakshmana mounts a tree and sees the army.

Advises the slaughter of Bharata.

Reproved by Ráma.

Conjectures that the Mahárája is approaching.

[2] The passage in brackets has been omitted in the North-West recension. Its genuineness, however, is undoubted.

the great and aged elephant marching before the ar... I cannot see the white umbrella of my divine father."

Bharata approaches the hermitage.

Meanwhile, the army commanded by Bharata had prepared their lodgings on every side; and Bharata entered the forest on foot, and seeing the smoke arising from the hermitage of Ráma, he rejoiced like one who has passed a dangerous stream. Presently he descried a large and pleasant hut, sacred to some devotee, made of branches of trees, and covered with wide-spreading leaves, as an altar is covered with kusa grass. It was adorned with a large bow, covered with gold, resembling the bow of Indra; and with a large quiver of arrows, as bright as the rays of the sun, and as keen as the faces of the serpents in the river Bhagavatí. This hermitage, which filled an enemy with dread as deer are frightened at a lion's den, was likewise adorned with two scimitars wrapped in cloth of gold; and with two shields which were studded with gold, and the guards for the arm and the fingers were also covered with gold. In that hermitage Bharata also saw a large pure altar sloping towards the north-west, and on it was a blazing fire; and after a little time he beheld his elder brother Ráma sitting in the hut of leaves on a seat of antelope's skin, dressed in the garb of a devotee, with a weight of matted hair on his head. And Ráma was seated near the altar, within a sacrificial enclosure strewed with kusa grass, and he was attended by Sítá and Lakshmana; and he was as resplendent as the fire, and his shoulders resembled those of a lion, and his eyes were like the water-lily; Ráma, the nourisher of the sea-girt earth, the valiant one of mighty arm, the righteous one resembling the eternal Brahma!

Description of the hermitage.

The golden bow.

The quiver.

The two scimitars.

The two shields.

The altar.

Ráma attired as a devotee, seated near the altar on kusa grass.

3rd, First interview between Ráma and Bharata.

Lamentations of Bharata on beholding Ráma.

When Bharata thus beheld Ráma, he wept bitterly, and said:—"This is my elder brother, who in former times was ever attended by his faithful subjects, but who is now the associate of beasts: This magnanimous one, who formerly had thousands of suits of apparel, now wears two vestments of bark: This Ráma, whose head was so delicate that he felt pain even when adorned with flowers, now endures the weight of matted hair: He whose meritorious deeds were

increased by costly sacrifices, has now embraced a course of bodily austerities: The body of that excellent one, which was formerly perfumed with costly sandal wood, is now covered with the dust of the forest: Ráma, worthy of all happiness, has undergone all this distress because of me."

Ráma recognizes Bharata and embraces him.

Meanwhile Ráma recalled to mind his brother Bharata, and embraced him, and clasped him to his bosom, and said:—"O beloved brother, where is your father Dasaratha that you are come to this forest? What, my dear brother, is the cause of your coming? Is the Maháraja alive, or has he departed from the world.[3] O Bharata, do you regard the words of our preceptor Sudhana, who is alike skilled in the science of arms and eminent in the law?[4] Have you appointed those men to be your Counsellors, who are like yourself heroic, learned, masters of their senses, noble, and capable of understanding a nod? Counsel which is kept secret by the Counsellors is the source of the good fortune of Rajas: Have you overcome sleep? Do you awake at proper times? Do you at the close of night think upon the way to become prosperous? Do you consult with yourself when alone, and do you also take counsel of many? Does your decision, when determined upon, spread abroad throughout the Raj? When, O Bharata, you have determined upon any affair, small in its origin but great in its consequences, do you speedily begin it? Do you not put it off to a future day? Are other Rajas acquainted with your opinions as to what is most proper to be undertaken? Are they acquainted with the works which you are about to undertake? Are the secret plans concerted in the Councils of other Rajas, known to you and your Counsellors? Do you prefer one learned man to a thousand of the illiterate multitude? In difficult situations a learned man may prove of infinite advantage to a Raja; but if a Raja retain about

Delivers a speech on the duties of Rajas.

Selection of Counsellors.

Avoidance of sleep.

Decisions.

Procrastination.

Secresy.

Value of learned men.

[3] The remainder of Ráma's speech is apparently an interpolation, inserted for the purpose of enforcing the duties of Rajas. That Ráma should have delivered such an oration at his first interview with Bharata in the jungle is scarcely in accordance with human nature.

[4] Ráma here speaks of his preceptor Sudhana. Now his real preceptor was Vasishtha, and Sudhana seems to have been a Buddhist.—See Prof. H. H. Wilson's Works, Vol. II. p. 24.

him thousands and tens of thousands of ignorant [illegible] derives no assistance from them: Do you employ [illegible] servants in great affairs, lower ones in common bus[illegible] mean ones in a mean capacity? Do you appoint Counsellors to great employments who will not open out their hands to receive bribes, and who were engaged in the service of your father and grandfather? O son of Kaikeyí, do the people, oppressed by severe penalties, despise you? Do your own Counsellors disregard you in your Raj? Do the priests contemn you as one who has fallen into sin, or as a virtuous woman contemns one who is drawn after a harlot? He who does not destroy a Minister, who is deep, artful, and ambitious, and who delights in accusing other Ministers, is himself destroyed: Have you appointed one who is heroic, patient, determined, pure, noble, able, and devoted to your person, to be your General? Have you honoured with proper rewards those persons who are valiant and distinguished, eminent in war, and of tried abilities? Do you issue the pay and food of your troops in proper manner, and immediately they have become due? When the distribution of pay and provisions is protracted beyond the proper time, servants become enraged against their masters, and great undertakings are often frustrated: Are all those who are of good family and the chief among the people, well affected towards you? Would they unite in sacrificing their lives for you? O Bharata, is your Ambassador learned and active, able to reply on the spot to any question? Is he a man of judgment, and one who will repeat a message in the terms in which it was delivered to him? Do you know the officers of Government to be on your side when you send them to a foreign country, and when they are unacquainted with each others' commission? Do you think lightly of foes who are weak and driven away, and who are yet always returning? Do you disregard those Bráhmans who are given up to the pleasures of the senses, and who are so much engrossed in the pleasures of the world that they have no time to look after things divine? Do you disregard those who are eminent in useless knowledge, babes

Incorruptible Counsellors.

Respect of the people.

Selection of a Minister.

Selection of a General.

Public rewards.

Regular pay to the army.

Selection of an Ambassador.

Self-indulgent Bráhmans.

Ignorant and presuming Bráhmans.

esteeming themselves learned, who whilst they have all the chief treatises on the duties of men before them, are stupidly ignorant; who having gained a smattering of logic, proclaim themselves to be wise without learning? Do you protect the fair and extensive city of Ayodhyá, justly termed invincible; which was inhabited in former times by our heroic predecessor, whose name is truth; and which is defended by strong gates, and filled with horses, and with thousands of excellent Bráhmans, Kshatriyas, and Vaisyas, all cheerful, intent upon their proper calling, and superior to their appetites; which city is also adorned with temples of various forms, and inhabited by men skilled in the Vedas? O Bharata, are the country districts duly protected? Are the husbandmen and herdsmen duly esteemed by you? Are their circumstances easy? Are they protected by officers of justice duly appointed by you? Are all the householders duly protected? Do you behave with courtesy to all women? Do you disregard the counsel of women and refrain from communicating your secrets to them? Is the forest well kept where the royal elephants are maintained? Have you a stock of new milch cows? Are you well furnished with female elephants and horses? Do you rise at the early dawn, and constantly show yourself adorned to the people? Are all the workmen in your presence without fear, and do they attend to their business when you are absent? Are your Forts well stored with riches, grain, arms, water, and machines; and are they well furnished with artificers and bowmen? Is your expenditure smaller than your income? Are your treasures spent among persons unfit to receive them? Do you expend your wealth among the Bráhmans, and needy strangers, and the soldiers, or do you squander it amongst your friends? If a Chieftain be apprehended is he set at liberty by a bribe? In a cause between a rich man and a poor one are the learned judges above the desire of gain? O Bharata, the tears which fall from those who are unjustly condemned will destroy the children and the cattle of him who governs with partiality? Do you seek to gain the affections of young and old, and try to increase your Raj, and

Protection of the city.

Protection of the country districts.

Female counsel.

Stock of elephants, cows, and horses.

Forts.

Finances.

Corrupt administration of justice.

Piety.

acquire land and wealth by every lawful mea[illegible] Do you bow to your spiritual guide, to the aged, to de[illegible], to the gods, to strangers, to sacred groves, and to [illegible] Brahmans who are perfected by education? Do you sacrifice wealth to virtue, or virtue to wealth, or both to favouritism, avarice, and sensuality? O Bharata, do you divide your time with due regard to recreation, public business, and moral duties? Do the Bráhmans, as well as the citizens and people of the country, express their wishes for your good? Do you abhor atheism, deceit, and anger, and guard against any neglect of your own affairs? Do you perform all the duties of Rajas? A Raja who govern with justice a Raj which is surrounded with difficulties, will gain heaven when he leaves this world."

Ráma demands the reason of Bharata's coming.

When Ráma [illegible]nus addressed Bharata, he began also to say :—"I wish to hear on what account you have come into this country in the habit of a devotee: Tell me, I pray you, why you have abandoned the newly-acquired Raj, and entered the forest with the antelope's skin and matted hair?" Bharata replied with joined hands :—"O excellent one, my valiant father, having sent you into exile at the instance of my mother Kaikeyí, has departed to heaven overwhelmed with grief: O chief of men, I pray you to accept the Raj, but first arise and perform the rites of water for thy father: Satrughna and myself have already offered water: O Ráma, you were indeed the beloved of your father; through grief on your account, and the desire of seeing you, he has departed to the mansions of Indra."

Bharata informs him of the death of Dasaratha.

Ráma's affliction at the news.

At this afflicting account of his father's death, as dreadful as the thunderbolt cast by Indra at the Dánavas, Ráma sank upon the ground like a tree which has been felled by the axe. Sítá and his brothers sprinkled him with water, and when he was somewhat revived, he said to Bharata :—

His lamentations.

"What shall I do in Ayodhyá now that my father has gone to heaven? Who shall nourish Ayodhyá, now that she is bereft of the best of Rajas? Happy are you, O Bharata and Satrughna, by whom his funeral ceremonies have been performed! When my forest residence is over, from whom

shall I hear the words with which my father was accustomed to cheer me?" Ráma then turned to Sítá, and said:—"O Sítá, your father-in-law is dead! O Lakshmana, you are fatherless! Bharata has related the afflicting story of the departure of the Maháraja to heaven!" And whilst Ráma was thus speaking, the tears fell in abundance from all eyes.

4th, Ráma's offering of oblations of water and funeral cakes to the soul of his deceased father.

At length the younger brethren said to Ráma:—"Let the funeral libations of your father, the Maháraja, be now performed!" Then Ráma, accompanied by his brethren, walked down into the beautiful river Mandákiní, and descended into that sacred stream which is free from mud, and sprinkled water on account of the Maháraja, saying:—"O Dasaratha, may this be thine!" Ráma then filled his two joined palms with water, and turning his face to the south quarter, sacred to Yama, he said:—"O Raja of Rajas, may this pure imperishable water given to you by me always quench your thirst in the region of spirits!" Afterwards, the renowned Ráma came out of the sacred waters of the river, and performed the customary offering together with his brethren. Having made a cake of the pulp of the fig-tree, and of such other materials as could be procured in the forest, he spread it upon the sacred kusa grass, and said:—"O Maháraja, eat with pleasure the viands which we eat ourselves; for that which is the nourishment of man is likewise the nourishment of his deity." Ráma then left the bank of the river, and returned to the door of his hut, taking hold of Bharata and Lakshmana with both his hands.

The funeral cake made of the pulp of the fig-tree.

Approach of the army to behold Ráma.

Meanwhile the army of Bharata heard the lamentations of the brethren and of Sítá re-echoed from the mountains like the sound of roaring lions; and the soldiers were greatly alarmed, and said:—"Bharata has met with Ráma, and the brethren are bewailing their departed father." Then leaving the animals and baggage, they set their faces towards the sound, and hastened towards the place, being all with one mind anxious to behold Ráma. The noise of their chariot-wheels was like the rolling of thunder; and the

beasts and the birds were terrified with fear and [illegible]. At length those soldiers beheld Ráma sitting on the [illegible] ground; and they all execrated Kaikeyí and Ma[illegible] and burst into tears.

Ráma's condescension.

Ráma, viewing them all deeply afflicted, embraced them like a parent; and treated all his ancient friends with the respect due to each. Meanwhile, the priest Vasishtha, being eager to behold Ráma, proceeded with the widows of Dasaratha to the place where the heroes were. Presently the Rání Kausalyá saw upon the ground the funeral cake laid in order which Ráma had prepared for his father Dasaratha, together with the kusa grass laid with their points towards the south; and Kausalyá said:—"Behold this coarse cake which the magnanimous Ráma has prepared according to the ordinance! How should the great Dasaratha, who on earth was equal to Indra, relish such an offering as the pulp of the fig-tree? There does not appear to me to be a greater wretchedness than that the mighty Ráma should offer a cake made of the pulp of the fig-tree to the spirit of his deceased father! Verily it is a true saying:—'The food which is eaten by a man is the food also of his god.'"

Grief of Kausalyá at seeing the coarse cake which Ráma had offered to his father.

Grief of the other Ránis.

All the widows of the deceased Mahárája then went forward and beheld Ráma, who was like a god who had fallen from heaven: and when they saw him they wept aloud overpowered with grief. The heroic Ráma then arose and fell down at the lotus-like feet of his mothers; and the Ránís with their fair and soft hands, pleasing to the touch, wiped the dust from his back. Then Lakshmana, also beholding his afflicted mothers, bowed slowly to their feet with great affection; and all the Ránís manifested the same respect towards him as they had previously shown to Ráma. Sítá also, filled with grief, bowed down to the feet of her mothers-in-law, and stood before them; and the afflicted Ránís embraced her, who was emaciated by her residence in the jungle. Meanwhile Ráma embraced the feet of the priest Vasishtha, even as Indra embraces the feet of Vrihaspati.

Kindness of the Ránis towards Ráma, Lakshmana, and Sítá.

Ráma embraces the feet of Vasishtha.

5th. Second interview between Bharata and Ráma on the bank of the Mandákini.

Now when the night had passed away and the morning had dawned, and the brethren and their friends had per-

formed their religious devotions on the bank of the river Mandákiní, they all sat down in a profound silence, no one uttering a word. At length Bharata addressed Ráma in the presence of all assembled, and said:—"My mother Kaikeyí having given the Raj to me, is now satisfied: This Raj, which is like a bridge broken down by a violent stream in the rainy season, I now give to you: O Ráma, wipe off the guilt of my mother's anger, and deliver your father from sin: I entreat you with my head bowed: Show that pity to me which the great Supreme shows to all his creatures: But if you turn your back upon me, and persist in going hence to the forest, lo, I will go with you!"

Bhárata offers the Raj to Ráma.

Ráma then replied to Bharata, in the presence of all his friends and kinsmen, as follows:—"O Bharata, our father Dasaratha, at the request of your mother Kaikeyí, has appointed that I should go into exile and that you should possess the Raj: O Bharata, release the Maháraja from his obligations! Save your father and rejoice your mother: Go with Satrughna to Ayodhyá and console the people; whilst I with Sítá and Lakshmana enter the forest without delay: Be you, O Bharata, the Raja of men; I will be the Raja of the wild beasts: Go you this day to the chief of cities, and I will enter the thickets of Dandaka: The royal umbrella shall shade your head from the sun, while mine shall be shaded by the trees of the wood: Satrughna of unequalled understanding will be your attendant; and Lakshmana, renowned for fidelity and friendship, shall be mine.

Ráma refuses to depart from the arrangement ordered by his father.

At this time the sage Jáváli, the renowned logician of the deceased Maháraja, and a pious Bráhman of the highest rank, came forward, and expressed the following vicious sentiments to Ráma:—"O chief of men, may prosperity attend you: Let not the understanding of a pious devotee such as you are, be rendered as useless and contemptible as that of common people! Having obeyed the commands of your father, you have already fulfilled all that was incumbent upon you: It ill becomes you now to prefer a life of sluggishness and stupidity, merely through attachment to virtue and austerities, and contempt for the possession of a Raj: Attend,

Atheistical speech of Jáváli the logician.

"Whilst your father was alive you obeyed his commands, but now that he is dead they are no longer binding.

my lord, to my words! Bharata, to whom the Raj [illegible] by your father, himself entreats you to take pos[illegible] of it: Kaikeyí, on whose account this injury was done to you by your father, herself gives the Raj to you: Accept, therefore, the Raj in the presence of your subjects, and render your own people happy: It is not right for you to cherish any longer this false idea of obedience to the dead, which is disapproved by the wise, and is the mere offspring of your own imagination: It is not becoming that your father, who has departed to heaven, should be kept in continual expectation of your performing the duties of a son: His soul has left this body and now resides in another; how then can he who inhabits another body have any claim upon you? A man is born alone and perishes alone; his parents resemble an inn, at which he resides for a time and then departs; and silly is he who fixes his heart upon a temporary abode: As a traveller sleeps for one night under a mango tree and next morning takes his departure; so the parents, and the possessions, and the wealth of a man are as a mere temporary residence: Why then, O Ráma, forsake a road which is smooth, free from dust, and secure from all danger, for an evil road abounding with thorns? Cause yourself to be installed in the rich city of Ayodhyá: The city, like a wife whose husband is absent, is anxiously expecting your return; and it is for you to taste the choice delights of the Raj: Take your pleasure then, O hero, as Indra takes pleasure in his celestial abode: Dasaratha is nothing to you, nor are you anything to him, he is one person and you are another; follow therefore the advice of your friends: A father is the production of an animal, man is produced by his father and mother: Our mortal life in this world is the whole of our being, and by your refusal of the Raj you are destroying yourself in vain: I grieve not for those who aspire to wealth and happiness in this world, but I grieve for those who despise these solid blesings whilst living, and waste their time for the sake of happiness in a future life which has no existence; for after a life of trouble and distress they only sink at death into utter annihilation:

"The relationship of parents to their children is only temporary, like that of the inn to the passing traveller.

"Take your pleasure in this mortal life of which we know something, and trouble not respecting the life hereafter of which we know nothing.

"I grieve for those who sacrifice the substantial happiness of this life for a visionary happiness hereafter.

Men, it is true, offer funeral cakes in honour of their departed ancestors, but this is merely a spoiling of food: Say, what will a dead man eat? Can what is eaten by one go into the body of another? How can the soul of a father eat the funeral cakes which are offered by a son? It will not stand to reason, and is merely the work of fancy: If the soul is immortal, the moment it leaves one body it goes to animate another: How then can it eat the cake when it inhabits another form, and when that cake is in commemoration of the old form? If you say that the cakes being eaten by the cows is tantamount to their being eaten by the soul of the father, then a cake offered to the memory of a friend who is still living but in a remote country, and afterwards given to a cow, and eaten by it, will thereon satisfy the hunger of that distant friend: Books have been written by learned men for the sake of inducing others to make offerings and presents, and their doctrine is: 'Perform sacrifices and make offerings, and consecrate yourselves, and undertake religious austerities, and bestow gifts:' But a future state has no existence save in this world, and it is the present state which is the chief good: O Ráma, be wise! That which is manifest to the senses is the grand object of pursuit, because of such things we have direct proof; and those which are not present to the senses may be thrown behind your back; because the only proof we have of their existence is indirect and inferential: Adopting the sound judgment of the wise, and regarding that which is sought by all, do you accept the Raj: Rajas and heroes of great renown have left their beloved children and wives, and sunk under the stern hand of death; but we have no assurance, O Ráma, whether they have become Gandharvas, or Yakshas; we know not what they are nor whither they are gone: Their names and lineage are rehearsed, and wherever any one would fain have them, there he conceives them to be: The whole universe is involved in uncertainty: Men eminent for virtue fail to obtain happiness: The virtuous suffer great afflictions, while the wicked appear to be happy indeed: Everything that exists will pass away, and the whole world is in a state

"Men, it is true, offer cakes to their dead ancestors, but how can those ancestors eat them? If the soul is immortal it must have passed into a new form which cannot eat the cake.

"If, indeed, the eating of the cake by the cows satisfies the hunger of a dead father, it might also satisfy the hunger of a distant friend.

"Our existence in this mortal life is our chief good, but we have no proof of the future, and it is therefore nothing to us.

"Of those who are already dead we know nothing.

"The whole universe is in disorder, for the wicked are often happy whilst the good are often miserable

of disorder: Therefore, O Ráma, do not despise [illegible] fortune which has approached so near to you, but [illegible] session of this great Raj, which has no equal in all the world."

"Therefore accept the Raj!"

Wrathful reply of Ráma:—

"I will not disobey my dead father, whom I obeyed when living.

Ráma, slow to anger, was filled with wrath at these atheistical arguments of the subtle Jáváli; and thus he answered the skilful Bráhman:—"Trained up to filial obedience, I will no more depart from my father's commands than a well-disciplined horse leaves the road, or an obedient wife forsakes her lord: If, after obeying the words of my father while he was living, I were to act otherwise now that he is dead, should I not be deemed devoid of all principle? But I can no more be moved by your vain words than a mountain can be moved by the wind: Your words resemble a pot of wine, which is pleasant and delicious to the taste, but most injurious in its effects: You have even pleaded that there is no such thing as future happiness; that all the happiness we can enjoy we enjoy in this mortal life: If that be the case, why should men censure the vicious and the debauched, for they are only carried away by their love of pleasure, that most contemptible of all the affections: Why do the sages then live upon roots and fruits, instead of enjoying flesh and wine? If you admit of no inferential or indirect proof, a woman ought, according to your notions, to be a widow the moment her husband is out of her sight: Astronomy and other sciences would fall to the ground, for most of their laws are based upon inference: Did not Indra, the sovereign of the gods, obtain his celestial Raj by the performance of a hundred sacrifices? How can this proof be evaded by you? Kusika, the son of Atri, is another proof; he and other great sages have obtained an eminent degree of glory by the performance of sacrifices and practice of religious austerities, which, according to what you say, are useless pursuits: But be it even as you say, I will still adhere to the commands of my father, as a great sage inflexibly adheres to his vows: Let Bharata govern the Raj which has been given to him! I desire not the Raj which has been prohibited to me by the Mahárája."

"Your words are as deleterious as wine.

"If there is no future state, why are the vicious censured?

"If you demand direct proof, a woman is a widow in her husband's absence, and astronomy teaches nothing.

"But Indra obtained sovereignty by his sacrifices, and sages have been glorified through their austerities.

"I will obey my father!"

Whilst the sons of Dasaratha were thus conversing, surrounded by their friends, the day was spent and the night also passed away; and when the brethren had separately performed their morning devotions, Bharata went again to Ráma, and entreated him to accept the Raj. Then Ráma, still bearing in mind the words of Jáváli, thus spoke:—"Jáváli applauds as right both the noble and the ignoble, the real hero and the pretended one, the pure and the impure: According to him the bad man is equal to the good one, the evil disposition with the good disposition: If I, deceived by false reasoning, were thus to confound good and evil, I should abandon that which is good, and sink into a state of lawless confusion: Who would then look with approval upon me, and how should I obtain heaven? Moreover, the whole nation would then have no other rule but their own passions; since the principles of a Raja, whatever they may be, become the principles of his subjects: Truthfulness and benevolence are the eternal duties of a Raja; by these virtues an example is set to the whole Raj, and the nation is established in truthfulness: The gods and sages esteem truth as invincible; and the man who always speaks the truth in this world obtains an imperishable reward: I recollect with pain, O Jáváli, the act of my father which accepted you, a man of grovelling mind, who art governed by these infidel ideas; an atheist who has fallen from the path of rectitude! As a thief is, so is a Buddhist; after them are the Hastikas or atheists. He who is seeking the good of his subjects, will not, if he be a man of understanding, stand in the presence of an atheist: The Bráhmans, constantly setting before them this life and the next, offer peace offerings and burnt offerings: Those sages also are revered by men, who are zealous in the cause of virtue, the companions of the good, full of sacred energy, pre-eminent in charity and every good quality, never doing evil towards others, and purified from all moral defilement."

6th, Third interview between Bhárata and Ráma.

Ráma renews the discussion.

"Jáváli confounds right and wrong, and if I did the same I should be censured by all, whilst the people of the Raj would follow my example.

"Truthfulness and benevolence are the eternal duties of a Raja.

"I regret that my father should have promoted a Buddhist and an atheist.

"No virtuous Rája will stand in the presence of an atheist."

The frank and magnanimous Ráma, having thus spoken words full of conviction, the Bráhman Jáváli thus addressed to him a speech fraught with propriety and religion:—"I

Jáváli, convinced by Ráma's reasoning, recants his atheistical opinions.

by no means speak the sentiments of an atheist, for I am no atheist: Now that the fitting opportunity offers I will lay aside my atheistical disguise: As atheistical sentiments were introduced by me, O Ráma, for the sake of turning you from your purpose, so sentiments of piety and religion are now uttered to conciliate your favour."

Vasishtha endeavours to persuade Ráma to accept the Raj.

Vasishtha then said to Ráma:—"Jáváli is deeply versed in the customs of the world; he has thus spoken, O Ráma, through his desire of turning you back to Ayodhyá: You are known to be the son and heir of Maháraja Dasaratha; accept therefore your own Raj, O Sovereign of the world, and look upon us with compassion: Amongst all the race of Ikshwáku, the eldest son is constantly Raja: A younger son cannot be anointed Raja whilst the elder son lives; the eldest must be Rája: It is not proper for you to violate this day the sacred custom of the family of Ikshwáku: There are three persons to whom every one who is born is bound to yield implicit deference; namely, his father, his mother, and his preceptor: A father begets, a mother nourishes, but a preceptor instructs; the preceptor is therefore said to be entitled to implicit regard: I was the preceptor of your father, and now I am your preceptor; and you will not transgress the Sástras if you obey my directions: Moreover, it is not right for you to disobey your pious and aged mother: O Ráma, in obeying her words you will not step out of the path of virtue; nor in acceding to the prayer of Bharata, will you violate truth, or justice, or abuse your power."

Ráma dilates upon the claims of parents to the obedience of their sons, and refuses to disobey the Maháraja.

Ráma, thus mildly addressed by his preceptor Vasishtha, who was seated near him, replied as follows:—"What parents constantly do for a son can never be recompensed: The tenderness of a father and a mother in rearing their children, in bathing and clothing them, in constantly giving them excellent counsel, and in training them up in virtue, can never be repaid: What, therefore, my father has commanded me, shall not be rendered ineffectual."

Bharata threatens to sit in dharná upon Ráma.

When Bharata heard these words of his elder brother, he said to Sumantra:—"O Charioteer, speedily spread kusa grass on this spot which has been prepared for sacrifice: I

will sit opposite to Ráma until he be gracious to me: As a Bráhman, deprived of his wealth, lies before the door of a creditor, without food and without beholding any one, so will I sit here until Ráma return with me to Ayodhyá." Then looking at Sumantra, who was spreading the kusa grass, Bharata seated himself upon the ground.[5]

Ráma reproves Bharata.

Then Ráma said to his brother:—"O beloved Bharata, what evil am I perpetrating that you thus seat yourself against me? For a Bráhman thus to confine a debtor by sitting down before him is right; but for Rajas to sit in dharná against each other, is not according to the law: Rise then, O chief of men, and abandon this cruel vow, and quickly return to the city of Ayodhyá." Then Bharata turned to the citizens of Ayodhyá, and the people of the Raj, who had accompanied him to Chitra-kúta, and said:—"Why, O people, do you not lay your injunctions upon Ráma?" The citizens and subjects replied:—"We well understand what is said by the magnanimous Ráma: You, O Bharata, also speak with reason: But Ráma is engaged in performing his father's word, and we are unable to say anything in haste." At those words Ráma said to Bharata:—"Rise, O valiant one, and touch me and also touch water, that you may be purified from the guilt of sitting down to starve out your brother." And Bharata arose and touched water, and said:—"Hear, all ye counsellors, and ministers, and people! I do not desire the Raj of my father, nor did I desire my mother to ask it for me, nor was I the cause of the exile of Ráma: If some one must fulfil my father's word and reside in the forest for fourteen years, let it be me." Then Ráma spoke in like manner to the people and citizens, as follows:—"Whatever was bought, pledged, or sold by my

Bharata appeals to the people to compel Ráma to accept the Raj.

The people hesitate.

Bharata offers to go into exile in the room of Ráma.

Ráma refuses to alter his determination, but promises to govern the Raj after his exile.

[5] Dharná was a strange custom, by which a creditor sat at the door or tent of a debtor, to compel payment of an ordinary debt, or of arrears owing by a public officer or prince. The person so sitting observes a strict fast, and under such circumstances the person from whom he demands payment is compelled to fast also, and abstain from his usual occupations and amusements. If the suitor perished, the guilt of murder fell upon the debtor. Originally, the person sitting in dharná was necessarily a Bráhman, either on his own behalf or on that of another, and the sin of Brahmanicide would be incurred by his death. The practice is obsolete in British territory, having been made a punishable offence.

father whilst alive, cannot be annulled by me or by Bharata. I have no occasion for a substitute to dwell in the forest in my place, for what was advised by Kaikeyí was well done by my father: I know Bharata has resigned the regal seeks the good of his superiors; and after my return from my exile, I shall be able with this pious brother to govern the Raj with honour: The Mahárája will then be discharged from his obligation to Kaikeyí, and his words will have been fulfilled by me."

The sages confirm the resolution of Ráma.

The great sages who were present at the meeting of the two most illustrious brothers, were astonished at the words of Ráma, and their hair stood erect with joy; and they came to Bharata, and said:—"O Bharata, if you regard your father, you must respect the words of Ráma: We wish that your father's Raj may be absolved from every debt: Dasaratha has ascended to heaven through his determination to discharge his obligation to Kaikeyí." Bharata then took a pair of new shoes, adorned with gold, and turned to his brother Ráma, and said:—"Put on these shoes, I pray you, and they shall furnish the means of securing the good of all." The heroic Ráma then put on the shoes, and pulled them off, and returned them to the magnanimous Bharata. And Bharata bowed to the shoes, and said to Ráma:—"O Ráma, I will for fourteen years assume the matted hair and the habit of a devotee, and subsist on fruits and roots: Waiting your return, I will commit the management of the Raj to your shoes, and reside without the city: and unless you return to Ayodhyá within five days of the completion of the fourteenth year I will enter the fire."[6]

Bharata presents Ráma with a pair of shoes, and requests him to wear them.

Declares he will rule the Raj through the shoes.

7th, Return of Bharata to Ayodhyá.

Ráma dismisses Bharata and Satrughna.

Return of Bharata to Ayodhyá.

Ráma then embraced his two brothers, Bharata and Satrughna, with great respect, and dismissed them; and Bharata took the shoes on his head, and mounted the chariot with Satrughna, preceded by Vasishtha, and Jávali, and all the counsellors. In this manner they left Chitra-kúta, and after visiting the sage Bharadwája in their way, they at

[6] In the Adhyátma Rámáyana, Bharata is represented as yielding only because Ráma privately imparted to him the mystery of his incarnation, and the divine necessity that existed for his destroying Rávana.

length came near to the city of Ayodhyá; and the dark and melancholy city resembled a gloomy night, and was traversed by cats and owls, and bereft of elephants. It was like the bright Rohini, when the hostile Ráhu is devouring her husband Chandra; or a mountain stream whose shallow waters have been dried up by the heat, when birds are faint with thirst, and when fishes have all disappeared; or the smokeless quivering flame of a sacrificial fire, after the sacrificial articles have been consumed; or an army stripped of its weapons, with its elephants, horses, and chariots destroyed, and all its valiant men slain; or the sea, when the foaming and roaring waves are hushed into silence by a calm; or an altar stripped of the sacrificial implements, and deprived of all its fat fruits after the sacrifice is ended; or the glad herds of kine feeding in their pasture upon young grass, when suddenly deserted by the bull; or a necklace stripped of all its most precious stones; or a star which has fallen to the earth when its merits are expended; or as a climbing plant, loaded with flowers and redolent with bees, when burnt up by a sudden fire in the jungle; or a troubled sky, when the traders fly from the bazaars in alarm, and leave their merchandise behind; [or a tavern, when the liquor is all expended, and the house broken down and nothing remains but the fragments of broken pots[7]]; or a resting-place where water is given to the thirsty traveller, when the building is levelled with the ground, and the water all spent; or a bow-string which drops from the bow when cut with a swifter arrow; or a war-horse ridden by a warrior eager for the battle, which is suddenly slain by an enemy; or a fiery colt heavily laden and fallen under his burden; or the clear light of the sun when obscured by a dark cloud in the rainy season. The afflicted Bharata, having thus brought all his mothers back to Ayodhyá, then said to his preceptors:—"I will now go to Nandigráma, which is without the city, and there I will dwell until Ráma returns and takes possession of the Raj." And the words of Bharata were praised by his mothers and his preceptors;

Gloomy appearance of the city described in a succession of Hindú similes.

Bharata resides at Nandigráma in the guise of a devotee, and rules the Raj under the authority of Ráma's shoes.

[7] This passage in brackets does not occur in the North-West recension.

and he speedily proceeded to Nandigráma with the shoes upon his head, and said to his assembled subjects,—"Bring hither the State umbrella! By these shoes of my elder brother is justice established in the Raj." Thus honouring the renowned but afflicted Bharata, together with the Counsellors, governed the Raj at Nandigráma. Assuming the bark dress and the matted hair of a devotee, the hero Bharata dwelt with the army at Nandigráma. Bharata, thus faithful to his word and promise, being installed together with the shoes, continued to reside at Nandigráma, waiting for the return of Ráma; himself holding the royal umbrella over the shoes, whilst the chámara was taken by Satrughna; and all affairs of the Government were transacted under the authority of the shoes. The fortunate Bharata, installed with the shoes of his elder brother, and paying homage to them, thus governed the Raj. All the presents that were brought, and all the business of State which occurred, he first laid before the shoes, and afterwards did as occasion required.

Review of the foregoing narrative of Ráma's refusal of the Raj.

The incidents in the foregoing narrative are so valuable and suggestive, as to demand a careful consideration. Fresh traces will be found of the process by which a Kshatriya tradition has been converted into a Brahmanical legend; whilst the vivid expression of ideas, which are as prevalent amongst the Hindús of the present day as at any former period, imparts a peculiar significance to the entire story.

Hindú idea of wedded happiness involved in the amusements of Ráma and Sítá upon the hill Chitrakúta.

The first picture presented to the eye is that of Ráma and Sítá taking their pleasure upon the mountain. The description of the amusements of the happy pair upon this occasion is undoubtedly pretty from a Hindú point of view, but it indicates the low conception which the Hindús have formed of the married state. A pair of lovers, to say nothing of newly-married couples, may doubtless find much

Contrast of European and Hindú ideas.

pleasure in wandering together in the country amongst trees and flowers; and under such circumstances they are highly susceptible of the beauties of natural scenery. But the language of Ráma is that of a priggish youth to a very young girl; whilst that of Sítá illustrates the utter want of mental culture in Hindú wives, beyond the rare art of listening with patience to the self-satisfied remarks of an ignorant and self-sufficient husband. But still wherever nature asserts herself through the affections, she always excites a sympathetic admiration; and the scene in which Sítá is called upon to embrace her spouse, as the climbing plant clings to the tree, and the gentle mirth of the young wife at seeing the painted ornament on her forehead impressed upon the chest of Ráma, are touches of nature which make the wide world kin. The scene in which Ráma and Sítá wreathe ornaments of flowers for each other to wear, is equally admired by an oriental audience, but falls far short of the European ideal, in which more rational pleasures are expected, even on a holiday, from all who have outgrown the age of childhood.

Puerile character of the dialogue.

Pretty touches of nature.

The description of Ráma's hut as it appeared to Bharata, is a curious specimen of that strange mixture of military pursuits and religious worship which finds expression in the Brahmanical conception of the Kshatriya hero. The bows and arrows, the scimitars and the shields, are all in perfect accordance with what is known of Kshatriya tradition, and conformable to the idea of Ráma as a warrior; but they will scarcely harmonize with the Brahmanical conception of a devotee with matted hair, arrayed in the garb of an ascetic, and sitting by the altar on

Mixture of military pursuits and religious worship involved in the description of Ráma's hut.

which the fire of sacrifice is supposed to be ever burning. Clergymen may have fought for King Charles, and Cromwell's Ironsides may have spent their leisure in preaching and prayer; but in the present instance it is obvious that the character of a devotee is superadded to that of the archer, for the artificial purpose of representing the hero who slew the Rákshasas as the divine incarnation of Vishnu.

Character of a devotee superadded to that of an archer.

Generous contest involved in the interviews between Bharata and Ráma.

The interviews between Bharata and Ráma are intended to exhibit a generous contest between the brothers, in which Bharata entreats the elder brother to accept the Raj, whilst Ráma insists upon the paramount duty of filial obedience which compels him to remain fourteen years in exile. The outline of the story comprises much graphic description. The approach of the army and alarm of the wild beasts; the blue smoke arising from the hermitage; the doubts and fears of Ráma and Lakshmana; and the approach of Bharata, accompanied only by Satrughna, Sumantra, and Guha;—are all described with considerable truthfulness to nature.[8] But the dialogues are strained and artificial, and are marred by the introduction of much extraneous matter. In the original also there is much repetition, which has, however, been cut away from the foregoing version. The speech of Ráma to Bharata at the first interview contains many suggestive references, but is altogether out of place under the circumstances in which it is

Strained and artificial character of the dialogues.

[8] The march of an army through an Indian jungle, which perchance has never been entered by soldiery within the memory of man, frequently excites the most ludicrous alarm in what are called great game. A huge beast will suddenly rush out of its lair, and face the advancing lines, in evident astonishment. It will then move on in front, occasionally turning round and gazing in wonder and indignation at the unexpected invaders, and then running on again, tossing its head in wrath and perplexity at the sudden intrusion.

said to have been delivered. The rules for the right conduct of Rajas are indicated in the form of questions with sufficient clearness, and in strict accordance with Brahmanical ideas. They include the necessity for appointing wise, intelligent, and trustworthy Counsellors; the evils of untimely sleep; the necessity for secresy; the advantage of employing learned men; the duty of appointing a good Minister and punishing a bad one; the duty of appointing an able General; the duty of giving rewards for eminent services; the very important and significant duty of issuing the pay and provisions with due punctuality and regularity to the troops; the qualifications necessary in an ambassador; the worthlessness of self-indulgent, ignorant, and heterodox Bráhmans; the duty of treating all women with courtesy, whilst neglecting their advice, and withholding from them all secrets. But to represent a young Prince of seventeen as questioning a brother of his own age as to the fulfilment of these duties, and this too at the moment of meeting him unexpectedly in the jungle, is an extravagance for which the Brahmanical bard is alone responsible.

Ráma's speech on the duties of Rajas an interpolation.

The distress of Ráma on hearing of the death of his father, and his simple offerings to the soul of the deceased Maháraja, are more appropriate to the occasion. The sprinkling of water, and the offering of a funeral cake or ball to the spirit of a deceased parent, are regarded as a paramount duty throughout India, and are supposed to refresh the soul of the departed, and ultimately release it from the hell or purgatory known as pát. The speciality in Ráma's case is, that in his wretched life in the jungle, he could find nothing better than the pulp of the fig-

Simple character of the sprinkling of water and offering of a cake to the soul of the deceased Maháraja.

tree from which to make his funeral cake; a circumstance which seems to have specially excited the sympathy of his mother Kausalyá. It is, however, difficult to reconcile the account of the misery and privations endured by Ráma and Sítá in the jungle, with the pretty picture of their sports upon the hill, and evening meal upon venison, which is described in the opening of the present chapter.

Character of Jáváli as a Bráhman of the Niyáya or logical school of Gótama.

The second interview between Bharata and Ráma, at which Jáváli, the free-thinking Bráhman, endeavours to shake Ráma's resolution to refuse the Raj, is apparently an interpolation, but is also one of a very valuable character. Jáváli is said to have been a logician, and therefore seems to have belonged to the Niyáya, or logical school of Gótama; and he is put forward as a representative of Buddhism and atheism, whose false doctrine is exposed by Ráma, and who is ultimately compelled to recant.

A representative of Buddhism and atheism.

Drift of Jáváli's reasoning.

No proof that death is anything but annihilation.

The drift of Jáváli's reasoning appears to be to the following effect. There is no proof whatever of a future state of existence; as far as we know, death is nothing but annihilation; consequently man is not justified in sacrificing the substantial pleasures of this life for the sake of a visionary happiness after death.

If the soul exists hereafter it must be in another form, which destroys the relationship between parents and sons.

Even granted that the soul does exist hereafter, it can only exist in a form different from that of its earthly body. In other words, if death does not annihilate the soul, it certainly destroys the relationship between parents and children; so that a parent who is dead, and who consequently has become somebody else, can have no claim to the obedience of his living sons, who remain as they were. Therefore it is absurd for Ráma to refuse the pleasures of sove-

sovereignty merely for the sake of fulfilling a duty to a father who has ceased to be a relation.

Review of the reasoning of Jáváli against the performance of a sráddha.

In the course of his argument Jáváli finds it necessary to indicate the utter uselessness of the general custom of performing a sráddha; that is, of offering funeral cakes to the souls of dead men. A dead body, he seems to say, cannot possibly eat cakes; and as for the soul, if it exists at all, it can only exist in another body; and how can the new body eat the cake which is offered up in commemoration of the old body? Jáváli next alludes to the custom of disposing of the cakes in question, by giving them to be eaten by cows; which custom was in accordance with a popular belief that the eating of the cakes by so sacred an animal was tantamount to their being eaten by the deceased ancestor. He says with some truth and considerable smartness, that if the eating of a cake by the cows will satisfy the hunger of a dead man, it might in like manner be made to satisfy the hunger of a friend in a distant country.

Absurdity of supposing that the eating of cakes by cows is tantamount to the eating of the cakes by the soul of the deceased relative.

Expressions put into the mouth of Jáváli to render his refutation more conclusive.

Some expressions, however, appear to have been put into the mouth of Jáváli, which such a philosopher could scarcely have uttered, and which were probably introduced for the purpose of rendering Ráma's subsequent refutation the more conclusive. Thus he is made to rail against sacrifices, not from the Buddhist point of view that the slaughter of animals was contrary to the eternal principle of benevolence; but because sacrifices and all other religious observances were utterly useless, inasmuch as they referred to a future state of the soul which had no real existence. Then again he is represented

Peculiar argument against sacrifice.

Inutility of virtue.

by inference as impugning the utility of virtue, because the wicked were often happy whilst the good were often miserable; and this argument seems to be adduced for the purpose of enforcing the view that Ráma would be justified in accepting the Raj, or in other words, that he would be justified in looking to happiness alone without regarding his duty to his father. But this particular application of Jáváli's views to the propriety of Ráma's acceptance of the Raj, seems strained and artificial throughout; whilst the form in which these views are expressed is a palpable misrepresentation of the school to which Jáváli belonged, and could only have been adopted for the purpose of rendering the sect hateful in the eyes of the populace. Moreover the phenomena that the wicked are often happy, whilst the good are often miserable, are usually brought forward by the believers in the immortality of the soul as proofs of the necessity for the existence of a future state, in which the inequalities which prevail in this present life might be finally corrected, and the great riddle as to the object of human existence be finally solved. On the other hand, a rational disbeliever in the soul's immortality would be more inclined to defend his scepticism by urging that a habit of virtue is a source of greater happiness to mankind in the present life than a habit of vice; and that the practice of either virtue or vice was wholly unaffected by a belief or otherwise in a future state of existence.

Strained application of Jáváli's views to Ráma's acceptance of the Raj.

Phenomena that the wicked are often happy, and the good often miserable, an argument in favour of a future state.

The reply of Ráma is couched in that dogmatic language which is so frequently employed in defending a conventional belief against the objections of sceptics. He denounces the insidious language of Jáváli; he dilates upon the duty of filial obedience; and he con-

Dogmatic character of Ráma's reply to Jáváli.

founds happiness with pleasure by insinuating that if mankind are to devote themselves to present happiness, the vicious would be no longer open to censure, since they would be only carried away by a love of pleasure.

Confusion of happiness with pleasure.

As regards the value of inferential proof, the reasoning of Ráma is of more weight. He says, unless inferential proof be admitted, a wife becomes a widow the moment her husband is out of her sight, and the science of astronomy falls to the ground. Indeed, there can be no question that the error of Jáváli arose from his ignoring those inferential proofs upon which mankind in general base their belief in the existence of the soul after death. But the proofs adduced by Ráma of the immortality of the soul are of an unsatisfactory nature, being drawn from the historical element in Hindú theology. He refers to Indra, who obtained the sovereignty of the gods by the performance of a hundred sacrifices, and to the sages who obtained great glory by those very sacrifices and austerities which Jáváli despised; proofs which might appear perfectly valid to the Hindú, but would be rejected as unduly assumed propositions by all who disbelieved in Hinduism. Finally he declares that Jáváli confounds virtue and vice, right and wrong; and that if he were himself to carry out the same views, and accept the Raj, his subjects would henceforth follow his example and obey no rule which interfered with the gratification of their desires.

Rejection of inferential proof, the source of Jáváli's error.

Ráma's proofs of the immortality of the soul, to be treated as unduly assumed premises.

The important point in this controversy, and one which will be further considered hereafter, is that Ráma is put forward as a champion of the Bráhmans against the Buddhists; and that this polemical character is superadded to his heroic character as pro-

Polemical character of Ráma as a champion of the Bráhmans against the Buddhists, superadded to his heroic character as protector of the Bráhmans against the Rákshasas.

tector of the Bráhmans against the Rákshasas. Accordingly the question arises of whether the Buddhists are not identical with the Rákshasas of the Rámáyana, and this question can only be solved by the production of further evidence which will appear in the sequel.

Exaggeration in the account of Bharata's proceedings on Ráma's refusing the Raj.

The proceedings of Bharata on receiving Ráma's final determination not to accept the Raj, are no doubt exaggerated for the sake of effect, but at the same time are characterized by one or two incidents which are deserving of notice. In the first instance Bharata threatened that he would sit in dharná against Ráma; a Brahmanical proceeding which in former days was a frequent source of oppression, but which in modern times has been put down by law. Ráma accordingly pointed out to Bharata that although a Bráhman might sit in dharná against a debtor, yet it was contrary to rule for one Raja to sit in dharná against another Raja. Subsequently when Ráma agreed to rule the Raj after the expiration of the fourteen years of exile, Bharata determined to govern Kosala in the name of Ráma; and this he did by carrying away a pair of shoes which had been worn by Ráma, and which he treated as symbolical of Ráma's presence. This proceeding does not appear to refer to any particular custom, but it serves to indicate the peculiar tendency of the Hindú mind to personify and symbolize. Thus Bharata is said to have held the royal umbrella over the shoes, whilst Satrughna fanned them with his chámara; and the administration of affairs during the remainder of Ráma's exile was conducted by Bharata in the presence and under the authority of the shoes.

Threat to sit in dharná.

Curious adoption of Ráma's shoes as symbolical of sovereignty.

CHAPTER XV.

RÁMA'S EXILE.

THE narrative of Ráma's exile in the jungle is one of the most obscure portions of the Rámáyana, inasmuch as it is difficult to discover any trace of the original tradition, or any illustration of actual life and manners, beyond the artificial life of self-mortification and self-denial said to have been led by the Bráhman sages of olden time. At the same time, however, the story throws some light upon the significance of the poem, and upon the character in which the Brahmanical author desired to represent Ráma; and consequently it deserves more serious consideration than the nature of the subject-matter would otherwise seem to imply.

Authenticity of the narrative of Ráma's wanderings.

According to the Rámáyana, the hero Ráma spent more than thirteen years of his exile in wandering amongst the different Brahmanical settlements, which appear to have been scattered over the country between the Ganges and the Godáveri; his wanderings extending from the hill of Chitra-kúta in Bundelkund, to the modern town of Nasik on the western side of India, near the sources of the Godáveri river, and about seventy-five miles to the north-west of Bombay. The appearance of these Brahmanical hermitages in the country far away to the south of

Locality of the wanderings: country between the Ganges and the Godáveri, from Chitra-kúta in Bundelkund, to Nasik near the western coast.

Each Brahmanical settlement headed by a famous sage.

the Raj of Kosala, seems to call for critical inquiry. Each hermitage is said to have belonged to some particular sage, who is famous in Brahmanical tradition. But whether the sages named were really contemporaries of Ráma, or whether they could possibly have flourished at one and the same period, is open to serious question. It is of course impossible to fix with any degree of certainty the relative chronology of the several sages, who are said to have been visited by Ráma; but still it seems tolerably clear that some belonged to an age far anterior to that in which the Rámáyana was composed, and probably to an age anterior to that in which Ráma existed as a real and living personage; whilst, at least, one sage is to be found who could only have existed in the age during which the Rámáyana was produced in its present form. The main proofs of these inferences are as follows. An interval of many centuries seems to have elapsed between the composition of the Rig-Veda and that of the Rámáyana; a conclusion which has long been proved by the evidence of language, and is generally accepted by Sanskrit scholars.[1] But three of the sages, said to have been contemporary with Ráma, namely, Viswámitra, Atri, and Agastya, are frequently mentioned in the hymns of the Rig-Veda; whilst Válmíki, the sage dwelling at Chitra-kúta, is said to have been himself the composer of the Rámáyana. Again, the sage Atri, whom Ráma visited immediately after his departure from Chitra-kúta, appears in the genealogical list preserved in the Mahá Bhárata, as the progenitor of the Moon, and consequently as the first ancestor of the Lunar

Existence of all the sages as contemporaries of Ráma, refuted.

Long interval of time between the Rig-Veda and the Rámáyana.

Sages said to have been contemporary with both compositions.

Appearance of Atri as the first progenitor of the Lunar race.

[1] See Müller's Hist. of Sanskrit Literature, *passim*.

race; whilst his grandson Buddha is said to have married Ilá, the daughter of Ikshwáku, who was himself the remote ancestor of the Solar race of Ayodhyá, from whom Ráma was removed by many generations. These conclusions are not perhaps based upon absolute proof, because they are drawn from untrustworthy authorities; but still the chronological difficulties have been fully apprehended by the Pundits, and an attempt has been made to reconcile all contradictions by representing the sages to have lived thousands of years, and to have often re-appeared upon earth in different ages widely removed from each other. Modern science refuses to accept such explanations; and consequently it is impossible to escape the conclusion that if Válmíki composed the Rámáyana in the form of Sanskrit in which it has been preserved, he could not have flourished in the same age as the sages who are named in the Rig-Veda. The most probable hypothesis appears to be that the sages said to have been contemporary with Ráma are merely introduced as types or representatives of the Bráhmans, who seem to have established their influence throughout a large portion of Hindustan and the Dekhan during the age of Brahmanical revival which accompanied and followed the decline of Buddhist ascendancy.

Attempted reconciliation of the chronological difficulties by the Pundits.

Sages probably introduced as types of the Bráhmans of the Dekhan.

The next question that requires consideration is that connected with the real character of the Rákshasas, who appear in the Rámáyana as the especial enemy of the Bráhmans. It has already been seen that the illustrious exiles of the royal house of Kosala were always entertained with the utmost respect by the Bráhman sages; and that Ráma is put forward as the especial protector of the Bráh-

Inquiry into the real character of the Rákshasas of the Rámáyana.

mans against the Rákshasas. It has also been seen that the Rákshasas are not to be simply confounded with the aboriginal population; and that although their appearance and attributes have been much embellished and exaggerated by the Brahmanical author, yet they are not to be regarded as mere creations of the imagination, like the cannibal Asuras who were conquered by Bhíma. They are described as forming an empire, more or less civilized, having its capital in Lanká, in the island of Ceylon; but having military outposts in different quarters of the Dekhan, and extending their operations as far to the northward as the right bank of the Ganges. Moreover, their opposition to the Bráhmans was of a religious character; not a radical opposition, like that of Christianity to heathenism; but a sectarian opposition, like that of Protestantism to Roman Catholicism, in which there is generally less toleration, and infinitely more virulence, than where the difference of religious belief is more thorough and complete. Rávana, the famous sovereign of the Rákshasas, is said to have been originally a worshipper of Brahma; and probably the Rákshasas may all be regarded as worshippers of the same orthodox deity. But yet the Rákshasas are described as being violently opposed to the sacrifices of the Bráhmans, and as being utterly wanting in faith in sacred things; circumstances which seem to identify them with the Buddhists, who flourished more or less in India for a period of twelve centuries, namely, from the sixth century before Christ, until the eighth century of the Christian era; and who established a seat of empire in Ceylon which has continued to the present day. Moreover, it will be seen by reference

Not to be confounded with the aborigines, or to be regarded as mere creations of the imagination.

The Rákshasa empire seated in Ceylon, but having military outposts to the north of the Dekhan.

Religious and sectarian character of the opposition between the Bráhmans and Rákshasas.

Rávana, a worshipper of Brahma.

Identification of the Rákshasas with the Buddhists.

Opposition between the Rákshasas or Buddhists, and the Asuras or aborigines.

to the complaint of the gods addressed to Brahma in reference to the incarnation of Vishnu, that Rávana oppressed not only the gods with whom the Bráhmans seem to be associated, but also the demons or Asuras, who were identified with the aborigines of the country.[2] Whilst, therefore, the Rákshasas and Asuras are occasionally confounded, yet in the present instance an opposition is indicated, such as might have been expected between the Buddhists and the aborigines of the country.

Three distinct characters of Ráma in the Rámáyana.

The polemical character of Ráma as an opponent to Buddhism, has already been put prominently forward in his controversy with Jáváli; and the light in which he will appear hereafter as a mortal enemy of Rávana, confirms the view that he was a champion of the Bráhmans against the Buddhists. Accordingly, it must for the future be borne in mind that Ráma appears in three characters in the Rámáyana, each of which has apparently no real connection with either of the others. These three characters are as follows:—

1st, Ráma as a mortal hero.

1st, Ráma as a mortal hero of an original and authentic tradition, in which the story seems to turn upon his being condemned to exile through the jealousy of a step-mother, and upon his being ultimately restored to the throne of his ancestors.

2nd, Ráma as an incarnation of Vishnu.

2nd, Ráma as an incarnation of Vishnu, sent down from heaven at the instigation of Bráhma and the other gods, for the express purpose of destroying Rávana and the Buddhists.

3rd, Ráma as a champion of the Linga worshipping Bráhmans against the Buddhists.

3rd, Ráma as a protector of the Bráhmans of the Dekhan against the Buddhists; in which capacity he

[2] See *ante*, page 18.

appears to have been in reality a worshipper of the Linga as a form of Siva; for it is certain that the Buddhists were driven out of the Dekhan by the worshippers of the Linga, and compelled to take refuge in Ceylon.[3]

Contradiction involved between the incarnation of Vishnu and the worshipper of the Linga.

The most significant feature in the threefold character of Ráma is the strange contradiction implied in his being at once an incarnation of Vishnu and a worshipper of Siva. In olden time the fiercest antagonism prevailed between the Vaishnavas, or worshippers of Vishnu, and the Saivas, or worshippers of Siva, or Mahadeva. Ráma's character as an incarnation of Vishnu has already been sufficiently indicated; but his character as a worshipper of Siva will be more fully delineated hereafter, when it will be seen that he set up the triumphant Linga in the island of Ramiswaram, which stands about half way across the channel that separates the continent of India from the island of Ceylon. From the opposition existing between these three representations of one and the same individual, it may be inferred that there are three distinct elements in the Rámáyana, originating in three distinct periods, namely:—

Three elements in the Rámáyana corresponding to the three characters of Ráma.

1st, Ancient tradition of Ráma's exile.

1st, The ancient tradition of Ráma's exile, including the loss and recovery of his wife Sítá.

2nd, Myth of Ráma's incarnation as Vishnu.

2nd, The Vaishnava version, claiming Ráma as the divine champion of all India against the Rákshasas.

3rd, Tradition of the invasion of the Dekhan by the worshippers of the Linga.

3rd, The Saiva version, claiming Ráma as the especial hero of the Linga worshippers, who appear to have invaded the Dekhan at a remote period, and to have finally driven the Buddhists into the island of Ceylon.

[3] See Colonel Sykes' learned report on the landed tenures in the Dekhan.

These points will form a subject of further discussion hereafter. For the present it will be sufficient to revert to the original narrative of the exile of Ráma, as it appears in the Rámáyana. This narrative comprises ten leading incidents, which may be indicated as follows:—

Ten principal incidents in the narrative of Ráma's exile.

1st, Departure of Ráma, Sítá, and Lakshmana from the neighbourhood of Válmíki's hermitage at Chitra-kúta.

2nd, Journey towards the south, and visit to the sage Atri, and his wife Anasúyá.

3rd, Ráma engages to defend Atri and the other sages from the depredations of the Rákshasas in the forest of Dándaka.

4th, Visit to the hermitage of Sarabhanga, who burns himself alive on a funeral pile.

5th, Ráma engages to defend the ascetics in the neighbourhood of Sarabhanga's hermitage against the Rákshasas.

6th, Visit to the hermitage of Sutíkshna at Ramtek, near Nagpore.

7th, Dialogue between Ráma and Sítá as to the propriety of waging war against the Rákshasas.

8th, Ten years' wanderings amongst the sages in the neighbourhood of Sutíkshna's hermitage at Ramtek.

9th, Visit to the sage Agastya, near the Vindhya mountains.

10th, Residence of Ráma, Sítá, and Lakshmana at Panchavatí, the modern Nasik, on the river Godáveri.

The narrative.

The story of these events may now be related as follows:—

When Bharata had returned to Ayodhyá, Ráma saw that the devotees and sages who dwelt round about Chitra-kúta were sorely troubled; and an aged sage came forward and said to him:—"O excellent one, the fear of these devotees arises from the Rákshasas, for the Rákshasas feed on men and assume various forms: O Ráma, the wicked chieftain Khara, the younger brother of that mighty Raja Rávana who dwells at Lanká, occasions us much alarm: Khara is a terrible Rákshasa, daring, fearless, and cruel, a cannibal who regards neither age nor sex: O beloved one, these vile and deformed Rákshasas inspire terror by their dreadful forms, and annoy the devotees with unclean things, and continually molest them: They gambol in the woods and hermitages, and throw about the sacrificial implements, and spoil the sacrificial articles, and pollute the offerings with blood on every side: At times of sacrifice these wretches, who are void of all faith, rush hastily forward making a loud cry in the ears of the believing and pious devotees: They take away the pots, the flowers, the sacrificial wood, and the sacred kusa grass of those who walk in the ways prescribed in the Vedas: The sages and devotees, haunted by these wicked ones, are anxious to leave these hermitages, and would fain consult with you respecting their departure to another place: A little way from hence, there is a beautiful forest abounding in fruits and roots, where I, with my companions, will take up our abode: But, O Ráma, when we have departed, Khara will fall upon you who are unprepared; if therefore it meets with your approbation, do you go with us." Having thus spoken, the venerable sage took his leave, and presently all the devotees humbly took their leave in like manner and departed out of Chitra-kúta. And when the hermitage was forsaken by all the devotees, it seemed to be inhabited only by deer and serpents; and after awhile it became overspread with gloom; and the heart of Ráma was saddened, and he said:—"I, too, will depart to another place."[4]

1st, Departure of Ráma, Sitá, and Lakshmana from the neighbourhood of Válmiki's hermitage at Chitra-kúta.

The sages at Chitra-kúta complain to Ráma of the persecutions of the Rákshasas.

Declare their intention of removing to another locality.

Solitude of the hermitage after the departure of the sages.

[4] In the Adhyátma Rámáyana the departure of Ráma is ascribed, not to the Rákshasas, but to the constant visits of the people of Ayodhyá in large numbers, which greatly disturbed the divine hero.

So Ráma departed out of Chitra-kúta, together with Sítá and Lakshmana; and they journeyed towards the south until they came to the hermitage of the sage Atri. And Atri received them with great joy, and commanded that he should be hospitably entertained; and he called to his aged wife, the virtuous and devout Anasúyá, who had also chosen the life of a devotee, and he said to her:—"Receive Sítá, and conciliate her by giving her everything that she desires." Atri then said to Ráma:—"O sinless one, this my wife is a Bráhmaní renowned for her vows, devoted to severe mortification, and ever performing pious deeds: Do you regard her as your mother: By the power of her austerities, fruits and roots were produced during a ten years' drought, and the holy Gangá was brought near to our dwelling; and by her interference ten nights passed without a rising of the sun: O sinless one, regard the gentle and aged Anasúyá as your own mother, and let Sítá come into her presence." Then Ráma said to Sítá:—"Do you hear the words of the sage? Go now into the presence of Anasúyá." And Sítá approached the aged and pious wife of Atri and eagerly bowed to her feet, and with hands most respectfully joined, inquired with joyful mind respecting her health. The venerable matron said to Sítá:—"Through your good fortune, O honourable Sítá, you have abandoned your kinsfolk, and followed your husband Ráma in his exile in the wilderness: That woman who loves her husband, whether he be in the city or in the forest, in prosperity or in adversity, will obtain a great reward hereafter: O Sítá, a husband is esteemed by a virtuous woman as her supreme deity; even though he be stripped of wealth, or possess an evil disposition, or go after other women: O Sítá, there is no friend greater than a husband; an incessant attention to a husband is everywhere comely: She who is unchaste, ignorant of right and wrong, and domineering over her husband, obtains only dishonour: She who is under the dominion of evil habits, and distinguished only by her uselessness, is ruined both here and hereafter."

2nd, Ráma journeys southward to the hermitage of Atri.

Atri introduces his aged and devout wife Anasúyá.

Miracles wrought by Anasúyá through the force of her austerities.

Interview between Anasúyá and Sítá.

Anasúyá praises Sítá for her devotion to her husband, and dilates on the duty of wives.

Thus addressed by the divine Anasúyá, Sítá replied as

Sítá replies, praising Ráma.

follows:—"What you have said to me I have known already: Though a husband be poor and wicked, he should ever be to his wife an object of the highest regard: But how much more ought she to reverence him when he is applauded for his virtues, compassionate and self-subdued, steady in his affection and loving as a parent: The virtuous Ráma conducts himself towards the other women of the deceased Mahárája, as he does towards his own mother Kausalyá: That hero, who bears the most affectionate regard to the memory of the Mahárája, has ever regarded as a mother the woman who was only once viewed by his father: The words of my mother-in-law, when I was coming to the desolate forest, are firmly fixed in my heart; and so, too, are the admonitions given to me by my mother when I gave my hand to my lord in the presence of the fire: The precept inculcated in me that 'a woman has no greater religious duty than that of honouring her husband,' has never, O pious Anasúyá, been forgotten by me: She who is assiduously attentive to her husband is as sure of heaven as if she were already there; such a one is the chief among women, a goddess in heaven; she resembles the goddess Rohiní, who is never seen for a moment without her husband Chandra." At these words of Sítá, Anasúyá was greatly pleased, and, kissing the head of Sítá, she replied exultingly:—"Through my many religious austerities I have acquired great powers: Depending upon these, O Sítá, I desire to confer a blessing upon you: O beloved wife of Ráma, anoint yourself with this divine ointment, and constantly adorn yourself with this apparel and these ornaments, and the bloom of youth shall remain with you for this day, and for ever: O Sítá, beautified by this ointment which is given to you by me, you shall ever be as charming as the goddess Lakshmí, and shall ever enrapture your husband with your beauty."[5] Then Sítá accepted the ointment and the jewels and the bracelets and the apparel, which were thus given to her as tokens of

Ráma's virtuous conduct towards the Mahárája's women.

Anasúyá gives Sítá an ointment which will render her ever young and beautiful, together with jewels and ornaments.

[5] The ointment given by Anasúyá to Sítá, which was to render her ever beautiful, is supposed by some Pundits to mean piety, or faith in Ráma, which renders all women beautiful.

friendship; and raising her joined hands to her forehead, she did honour to the pious devotee. After this, at the request of Anasúyá, Sítá related to her the whole story of her birth and marriage; and Anasúyá, having heard the pleasing narrative, embraced and kissed Sítá, and said:—"You have related the story to me in the most delightful language:[6] The sun is set, O bright one; the pleasant night, bespangled with planets and stars, has already commenced; the birds, who were scattered abroad throughout the day in search of food, are now softly murmuring in their nests; the sages, who have been to bathe, are now returning in wetted garments; the sacrifices of the sages have been offered according to the ordinance, and the blue smoke is rising tinged with the colours of the neck of the pigeon; the trees clothed with leaves are darkening on every side, and distant objects cease to appear; the wild beasts of the night are prowling on all sides, and the deer of the forests are sleeping on the altars and sacred places; the night adorned with stars has commenced; the moon clothed with brightness has risen in the sky; I therefore now give you permission to depart, but first gratify me by adorning yourself with the divine ornaments, and then go and attend upon Ráma."

Anasúyá describes the approach of night in poetic language, and requests Sítá to adorn herself with the divine ornaments.

Sítá, resembling a daughter of the gods, then put on the ornaments, and bowing her head to the feet of the aged matron, she went towards Ráma; and Ráma was highly pleased at the honour done to her by the pious devotee, and rejoiced as he beheld the celestial beauty of his wife Sítá.

Ráma's delight at his wife's beauty.

When the night had passed away, Ráma and Lakshmana bathed according to the ordinance, and then inquired of the devotees respecting the forest. The sages replied:—"O Ráma, the paths of this forest are overrun by man-devouring Rákshasas, and savage beasts thirsting for blood, who molest the devotees whenever they wander abroad: O Prince, depart in peace and put a stop to their depredations; and when you have returned after accomplishing your design, we shall behold you from this hermitage." Then the magnanim-

3rd, Ráma engages to defend Atri and the other sages from the depredations of the Rákshasas in the forest of Dándaka.

Ráma, Sítá, and Lakshmana enter the forest of Dándaka.

[6] The ordinary conversation of Hindú women may be inferred from the delight with which Anasúyá heard the story of Sítá's marriage.

ous and valiant Ráma, together with Sítá and Lakhsmana, entered the great forest of Dándaka; and after a while Ráma saw a cluster of hermitages, strewed with kusa grass, and

Picture of a cluster of Brahmanical hermitages.

illuminated with the habits of devotees, and the tokens of Brahmanical devotion, as the air is illuminated by the dazzling light of the sun. The courts before the several huts were laid out with all neatness, and were kept perpetually clean, and frequented by various kinds of deer, and by numerous flocks of birds; and they were constantly enlivened by the gambols of the Apsaras, and adorned with large sacrificial fires, ladles, pots, antelope skins, kusa grass, sacrificial wood, fruits and roots. The hermitages were surrounded with large forest trees, which yielded pure and delicious fruits; they were rendered sacred by oblations and sacrifices, and cheered with the sound of the Vedas; they were strewed with wild flowers, and supplied with pools abounding with water-lilies; they were inhabited by ancient sages who lived on fruits and roots, who were men of subdued passions, who wore the habits of devotees, and who were as bright as the sun or as the sacred flame. Thus adorned the hermitages resembled the habitation of Brahma. The illustrious Ráma, seeing this cluster of hermitages, unstrung his mighty bow, and went towards them, attended by Sítá and Lakshmana. The devout sages received those renowned ones with every mark of gladness; and they beheld with astonishment the striking symmetry, the beauty of face, the delicacy of form, and the amiable countenance of Ráma; and all were filled with wonder as they gazed upon the three, as though their eyes could never be satisfied. Those truly fortunate sages then led their guests into a hut of leaves, and brought water for them all, and offered them roots, flowers, and fruits; and they said to Ráma:—"You are the protector of the devotees, the renowned refuge, the object of our honour and regard, our Rája and our Governor: O sovereign of men, whether you are in the forest or in the city, you are still our Raja."

The courts.

The groves.

Flowers and pools.

The sages.

The sages joyfully entertain Ráma, and declare that he is their Raja.

Having been thus entertained by the sages, Ráma rose at sunrise on the following morning, and departed into the

Description of the forest of Dándaka.

forest of Dándaka with Lakshmana and Sítá. And that forest was full of different kinds of deer, and was frequented by large bears, and abounded with thickets of broken trees, and with climbing plants and bushes, and with lakes inhabited by ducks and water-fowls, and it was rendered vocal by the sweet warblings of various kinds of birds. In that deep wood full of wild beasts, there appeared a cannibal as tall as a mountain-top, with a deep voice, hollow eyes, a widely extended and monstrous mouth, and a tun belly. That cannibal was named Virádha, and he was hideous to the sight, and the terror of all beings; and he was seated on a tiger's skin, and was smeared with raw fat and blood, and continually cried out with a dreadful cry; and his mouth was widely gaping like that of Yama; and before him, spitted on a large iron spit, were three lions, four tigers, two wolves, ten deer, and a large elephant's head with the tusks smeared with fat. This Virádha, seeing Ráma and Lakshmana and Sítá, ran towards them as fierce as death, and he sent forth a roar which caused the earth to move, and he seized Sítá in his arms, saying:—"O little dwarfs, why do you come with your wife into the forest of Dándaka, clad in the habits of devotees, and armed with arrows, bow, and scimitar? Why do you two devotees remain with one woman?[7] Why are you, O profligate wretches, corrupting the devout sages? Know you not that Virádha, the Rákshasa, constantly traverses this forest, clothed in armour, and feeding on the flesh of sages?" Saying these words, Virádha leaped up into the air with Sítá in his arms, exclaiming:—"I have obtained a woman, who will be a delicious meal: Tell me instantly who you are, and whither are you going?" The magnanimous Ráma replied:—"Know you that we are two brothers, born of Kshatriyas and abiding in the forest: But who are you traversing Dándaka in this dreadful form, and perpetrating every abomination?" Virádha said:—"I am the son of Kala, and all the Rákshasas call me Virádha: By religious

Horrible appearance of Virádha, the cannibal Rákshasa.

Virádha seizes Sítá.

Taunts the two brothers with having only one wife.

[7] It is not impossible that this charge brought by Virádha referred to the polyandry which undoubtedly existed in India at an early period.

austerities I have obtained the promise from Brahma that I shall be invulnerable to all weapons: Give up your joint wife to me and expect her no more, but fly with haste wherever you choose! This beautiful woman shall be my wife, and I will drink the blood of you ill-favoured wretches unless you fly at once." Hearing the impious words of the cruel Virádha, the terrified Sítá trembled like the leaves of a plantain-tree shaken by the wind; and Ráma, seeing his beautiful wife in the grasp of Virádha, exclaimed to Lakshmana:—"See, O excellent one, the fearless daughter of Raja Janaka, my virtuous spouse, who has been brought up with the greatest delicacy, enclosed in the arms of this Rákshasa! O Lakshmana, see what evil Kaikeyí has brought upon us! There is no affliction greater to me than that Sítá should be subjected to the touch of another man: O Lakshmana, neither the death of my father, nor the loss of the Raj, affects me like this." While Ráma was thus lamenting, Lakshmana was distracted with rage, and snuffing the air like the serpent Rudra; and he replied to his elder brother:—"O Ráma, why do you, who are the lord of all, and the equal of Indra, suffer Sítá to be taken away, and grieve yourself thus as though you were unable to rescue her? Why are you thus afflicted while I am at your command? The earth shall drink the blood of this Rákshasa, who shall be slain by my arrow: The rage I felt towards Bharata for desiring the Raj, I will pour forth on Virádha, as the thunderbolt suddenly strikes the mountain." Lakshmana, his eye inflamed with anger, then said to Virádha:—"You base and diminutive wretch! By your evil act you are certainly seeking your own death! You shall not obtain Sítá, nor shall you depart alive from me." So saying, Lakshmana discharged seven arrows, golden-shafted and peacock-feathered, and as bright as fire; and they pierced the body of Virádha, and he fell upon the ground bathed in blood. Then the Rákshasa uttered a dreadful yell, and drew forth a bright and green dart, and hurled it in anger at Lakshmana; but Ráma, expert in arms, drew out two darts with heads resembling sharp

Virádha rendered invulnerable by Brahma in return for his religious austerities.

Alarm of Sítá.

Lamentations of Ráma at seeing his wife in the grasp of Virádha.

Wrath of Lakshmana.

Lakshmana threatens Virádha.

Description of the battle between Ráma and Lakshmana and the Rákshasa Virádha.

knives, and cut in twain the dart of Virádha. Then Virádha seized a spear as terrible as the flag-staff of Indra, and brandished it in the air, like Yama breathing universal ruin. Then the two brothers rained a shower of bright arrows upon the Rákshasa, but they fell harmless from his body, and he stood before them laughing. Next Virádha hurled his spear, but Ráma cut it by two darts, and it fell to the ground like a rock torn by a thunderbolt from Mount Meru. Then the two brothers drew their scimitars, which resembled two black serpents, and they ran upon Virádha and struck him with all their might. Upon this the terrible Rákshasa seized the intrepid heroes forcibly with his two arms, and threw them over his shoulders as though they had been children; and uttering a horrid yell he rushed into the depths of the jungles. Then the beautiful Sítá set up a loud cry, and Lakshmana broke the left arm of the Rákshasa, and Ráma broke the right arm; and Virádha fell to the ground; and the two brothers beat him with their fists, and their arms, and their feet, and lifted him up and dashed him against the ground, but he could not give up the ghost because of the blessing he had received from Brahma. Then Ráma, seeing that the mountain-like monster would not die, said to Lakshmana:—"This Rákshasa, reaping the fruit of his religious austerities, cannot be conquered with weapons in battle; therefore we will bury him alive: O Lakshmana, dig a large grave for this terrible Rákshasa!" Lakshmana replied:—"Let us burn this Rákshasa!" But Ráma said:—"The proper death of a Rákshasa is to bury him alive, and not to burn him." So Lakshmana took a spade and dug a large pit by the side of the huge Virádha; and Ráma who had kept his foot upon the neck of the Rákshasa now removed it; and the two brothers took up the loud-roaring Virádha, and threw him with mighty force into the pit, whilst the forest resounded with his fearful yells. Thus Virádha was put to death by being buried alive, but as soon as he was dead there arose from the grave a very beautiful person who began to ascend to heaven; and on his way he prayed to Ráma with joined

The two brothers unable to slaughter Virádha, because of the blessing he had received from Brahma.

Burial of Virádha alive.

Virádha assumes a beautiful form and rises out of the grave and ascends to heaven.

Legend of his being originally a Gandharva, but cursed by Kuvera, on account of his love for Rambhá, to be a Rákshasa until delivered by Ráma.

hands, as follows:—"I wish you all success, O Ráma, the son of Kausalyá, the protector of Sítá, and the fulfiller of the wishes of all your worshippers: I knew you from the first, and spoke to you harshly in order that I might excite your anger and die by your hands: I am a Gandharva; my name is Kosharee, and I used to sing in the court of Kuvera: One day Kuvera, perceiving that I was inspired with a passion for the beautiful Apsara, named Rambhá, cursed me for my misconduct, saying:—"Go and assume the shape of a Rákshasa, and live in the forest of Dándaka; and remain so until you are killed by Ráma, when you will resume your previous form:[8] This day I have been relieved by you:

[8] In the Adhyátma Rámáyana, the Rákshasa Virádha is represented as a female; and the following significant account is given of her life and resurrection:—When the soul of Virádhá quitted her body, a beautiful figure, resembling a celestial nymph, rose from the corpse adorned with jewels and rich garments. She prostrated herself at Ráma's feet, and walking three times round him she thus addressed him:—"Condescend, O Lord! to listen to an account of my former state: I was originally a dancer in the assembly of the gods: no one ever equalled me in beauty: I was once engaged in admiration of myself when the sage Durvása accidentally came that way. I, being so much taken up with my own charms, omitted to pay my respects to him. At which negligence his anger being roused against me, he uttered a curse on me, in consequence of which I became a demon. I was overwhelmed with distress, confessed my folly, and prayed him to have compassion upon me; on which Durvása, taking pity on my misery, said:—'In the Tretá-Yuga, the Almighty and Eternal God, the Supreme Soul, Vishnu, will assume an incarnation of the flesh in the house of Maháraja Dasaratha at Ayodhyá, and will take the name of Ráma: He will come to this forest, where you will be slain by his hand, then will you quit this shape and assume your own proper form. From that period I have been steadfast in the recollection of thy name, and in the worship of thee: This day I have been pre-eminently great, for I have seen thee; the dust from thy feet has fallen on my head: Thou art the only pure light; thou art one, there is nothing like unto thee: I praise, I adore thy name. Thou art styled the protector of the poor, take pity on me; consider the misery of thy slave. Grant that I may not forget thy name, and that I may sing thy praises."

Ráma said:—"I will bestow on thee, O dancer! this blessing; the forgetfulness of my name shall not take possession of your mind: From beholding me this day great benefit will accrue to thee; faith in me will be engendered in your heart, and from that faith pure worship will be produced: It is difficult to acquire this faith; the Vedas and Sástras declare that I do not bestow it on every one. This honour have I conferred on thee, that you may enjoy faith, wisdom, and meditation, and at the last day I will remember thee: Depart to your own abode, and when you shall quit this corporeal frame you will be absorbed into me."

In obedience to Ráma's orders, Virádhá departed singing his praises, and from that time was a faithful worshipper of Ráma.

Accept my prayers and thanks, and permit me to return to my master Kuvera." So saying, Virádha vanished away from the presence of Ráma.

4th. Visit of Ráma, Sítá, and Lakshmana to the hermitage of Sarabhanga.

Having thus killed the terrible Virádha, the heroic Ráma embraced Sítá and comforted her, and he said to Lakshmana:—"This forest is full of dangers, and we are not acquainted with it; we will therefore proceed to the hermitage of Sarabhanga." Then Ráma and his spouse and his brother proceeded to the hermitage, and as they approached the magnanimous god-like devotee Sarabhanga, they beheld a wonderful appearance in the heavens. The mighty Indra, the Raja of the celestials, mounted on a car as splendid as the sun or as a glowing fire, passed through the air followed by all the gods; and Indra was adorned with splendid ornaments, and arrayed in shining garments, and received the adoration of multitudes of the celestials, who were arrayed with equal splendour. And near unto the car of Indra was another chariot drawn by horses, resembling a thick cloud illuminated by the sun. And over the head of Indra was a splendid umbrella, adorned with a garland, and two beautiful Apsaras held each a golden chámara in her hand, and fanned the sovereign of the gods. Then Indra entered the hermitage of the sage, and conversed with Sarabhanga; and Ráma addressed his brother as follows:—"See, O Lakshmana, that wonderful and glorious chariot, resembling the descending sun! Surely these horses are the steeds of Indra! Behold also those celestial youths of ample chests, and arms like maces, who stand in hundreds on every side, with rings in their ears, and scimitars in their hands; and whose apparel is of the colour of topaz! They are terrible as tigers, and the necklaces on their breasts are as bright as the glowing fire: They all appear to be youths of twenty-five years of age, and that is the constant age of the gods."

Visit of Indra to the sage Sarabhanga.

Description of Indra.

Ráma admires the chariot, horses, and attendants of Indra.

At this time the mighty Indra took his leave of the sage, and departed to heaven in his car. Ráma and his spouse and brother then approached Sarabhanga, who was offering a burnt offering, and with his permission, they

Indra departs, and the trio enter the hermitage.

advanced and kissed his feet. Being then invited to a repast, and to a lodging which was prepared for them, Ráma asked the reason of Indra's coming; and Sarabhanga said:—"O Ráma, the sovereign of the gods is desirous of taking me to the heaven of Brahma, which I have gained by my severe austerities; but knowing, O my beloved guest, that you were not far off, I would not depart to heaven until I had seen you: Having now beheld you, O chief of men, I will go to the highest heaven: Receive, O Ráma, the worlds I have acquired by the merits of my austerities." Ráma replied:—"I am highly honoured by you, and I return to you the worlds you have acquired: Depart hence to the realms of bliss, but tell me, I pray you, where I may now take up my own abode?" Sarabhanga replied:—"O Ráma, a highly illustrious sage named Sutíkshna resides in this forest; he will point out where it is best for you to abide." Sarabhanga then said:—"Behold now, whilst I put off this body, as a serpent casts his slough!" Then the sage prepared a fire, and offered ghee, and entered the flame; and the fire consumed the hair of his body, and the skin, flesh, bones, and blood; and a youth bright as the fire was instantly produced; and in this shape Sarabhanga sought the heaven of the sages, who had devoted their lives to religious austerities, and passing by the heaven of the gods, he ascended to the heaven of Brahma.[9]

The sage explains that Indra had come to take him to heaven, but that he waited to behold Ráma.

Directs Ráma to proceed to the hermitage of Sutíkshna.

Sarabhanga burns himself alive, and ascends to the heaven of Brahma in a youthful form.

[9] The following account of the death of Sarabhanga is extracted from the Adhyátma Rámáyana:—"I have been engaged, O Lord! a long period of time in religious penances at this place in anxious expectation of beholding thee, who art the Supreme God, the Lord of all hearts, and from whom nothing is concealed: This day have I obtained the fruits of my pious austerities in having seen thee: I lay before thy feet the worship, charity, pilgrimages, and indeed every good work upon which I have been engaged throughout my whole life; I shall in thy presence depart from this transitory world." Having thus spoken he collected a quantity of wood, with which he erected the funeral pile, and seating himself thereon he set fire to it with his own hands. He prostrated himself before Ráma, Sítá, and Lakshmana; he worshipped them in silence, conceiving in his own mind that he should become like unto Ráma, with his hair braided in a knot on the crown of his head, a cloth made from bark of trees on his body, the colour of his body like the lotos, his eyes resembling the red and white lily, and attended by Lakshmana and Sítá in full beauty. While he thus represented himself to his

When Sarabhanga had thus departed from this world, the whole body of sages gathered together, and came before Ráma at the hermitage. There were those who possess no goods, those who feed on the rays of the sun and moon, those who subsist on raw food, those who feed on leaves, those who eat rice with its husks, those who stand in the water immersed to the neck, those who sleep on the bare ground, those who do not sleep at all, those who always stand on one leg, those whose food is water alone, those who feed on air, those who live always in the open air, those who sleep in places of sacrifice, those who reside on the peaks of mountains, those who always wear wet clothing, those who spend their whole time in repeating the name of some god, those who pass their lives in repeating the Veda, those who perform worship with fire on each of their four sides, and the sun over their heads, those who eat but four months in the year, those who never take food, those who remain suspended by their heels to the branches of trees, those who stand on their heads, some standing in the air upon nothing, or only supported by the thread of their meritorious deeds, and those who stand only on the point of one of their great toes. All these sages stood before Ráma with their hands respectfully joined, and addressed him as follows:—"You are the chief of the race of Ikshwáku, a great warrior, supreme on earth even as Indra is supreme among the gods: Your power and renown are celebrated throughout the world; filial obedience, truth, and justice reside in you: We, your subjects, would fain speak to you, and it becomes you not to disregard us: Great indeed is the injustice of that Raja who receives the sixth part of the harvest as his revenue, and yet protects not his people with paternal care: The stupid wretch who does not preserve his subjects as his own life, or as the lives of his own beloved offspring, is an object of detestation throughout the world: The Raja who governs his subjects by justice, as though they

5th. Ráma engages to defend the ascetics against the Rákshasas.

Extraordinary description of the different ascetics who mortified the flesh.

The sages pray Ráma to preserve them from the Rákshasas.

own imagination, and while he was pronouncing the name of Ráma, his mortal body was consumed. He obtained a new and pure frame, and ascended on a celestial car to the dwelling-place of Vishnu in the highest heaven.

were his own family, and who reduces the wicked by the terror of his power, obtains universal renown in this life, and an imperishable reward hereafter: The sage who lives on roots and fruits, and performs the exalted duties incumbent upon him, confers a sixth part of the merits of his good deeds upon that Raja, who governs his people with righteousness: O Ráma, the multitude of Bráhmans, who are devoted to a religious life in the jungle, are destroyed by the Rákshasas, and consider you as their only protector: The sages who reside near the river Pampa, and those on the border of the river Mandákiní, and those in the mountain Chitra-kúta, have been devoured by these cannibal Rákshasas: We cannot endure these dreadful persecutions, and have come to you for protection: O hero, we pray you to preserve us from these Rákshasas." Ráma replied:—"It ill becomes you to supplicate me, as I ought to be supplicating you, for I am at the command of the Bráhmans: I have entered the forest to fulfil the words of my father, and to remove the persecutions which you endure from these Rákshasas." Ráma having promised to defend the devotees then accompanied them to the hermitage of Sutíkshna.

Ráma engages to protect the devotees.

6th, Visit of Ráma, Sitá, and Lakshmana to the hermitage of Sutikshna.

Now when Ráma and his brother and his wife had travelled a great distance into the forest and crossed many rivers, they at length saw a hermitage which was purified with the clothing and garlands of devotees. There they beheld Sutíkshna covered with mud, and his head covered with matted hair; and he was without flesh in consequence of his austerities, and his body was reduced to bones and skin; and he was absorbed in deep meditation. And Ráma paid his respects, and the sage Sutíkshna embraced him, and addressed him as follows:—"O Ráma, has your journey been pleasant? The hermitage of which you have taken possession now enjoys its true owner: Waiting for you, I have forborne to relinquish the earth for the habitation of the gods: O hero, Indra, the chief of the celestials, and the great god Siva, also, have desired me to deliver to you all the worlds I have subdued by my merits: Enjoy yourself then, with your spouse Sítá, and your brother Lakshmana, in the god-frequented

worlds which have been conquered by my austerities." Ráma replied:—"I accept all the worlds, O great sage, and desire you to appoint me a place of residence in the forest." Sutíkshna said:—"Attended by the holy sages, and constantly supplied with fruits and roots, enjoy yourself in this pleasant hermitage." So Ráma took up his abode for that night in the pleasant hermitage of Sutíkshna, together with Sítá and Lakshmana.

The trio depart to visit the other hermitages in the neighbourhood.

Now when it was morning, and the ablutions had been duly performed, Ráma went to Sutíkshna, and said:—"O divine one, we have had a most refreshing night, and now ask permission to take our leave: The sages who have accompanied us are hastening to depart, and we are desirous of beholding the whole circle of hermitages belonging to the devoted Rishis who inhabit this forest; and we would fain commence our journey before the heat of the sun becomes as insupportable as an obstinate person in pursuit of gain." Sutíkshna replied:—"Go, O beloved one, and having viewed the pleasant hermitages of the pious inhabitants of the wilderness of Dándaka, do you return to this abode."

7th, Dialogue between Ráma and Sítá as to the propriety of waging war against the Rákshasas.

The brothers then departed accompanied by Sítá; when Sítá, full of tender affection, thus addressed her spouse Ráma:—"O beloved one, a great mind may contract guilt through the almost imperceptible distinctions of right and wrong; but he may avoid the danger by subduing the first risings of evil desire: O hero, you are devoted to truth, and never regarded the wives of others, but the vice of anger has been produced in you through inadvertence, and is now attendant upon you: You have come into the forest as a devotee, but now you have engaged to compass the death of the Rákshasas, for the sake of preserving the sages who inhabit the forest of Dándaka; and you and your brother have come into the wood for this purpose armed with your bows and arrows: O hero, this is not pleasing to me; for when the bow of the Kshatriya and the sacrificial fire of the Bráhman are placed near each other, their power and energy will increase exceedingly: If you say that as a Kshatriya you are bound to punish the wicked and protect the good, I say that

Sítá reproaches Ráma.

A Kshatriya bound to punish evil-doers only when he is a Raja, and not when he is a devotee.

this duty belongs to a Kshatriya who is a Raja, and not to one who has adopted the life of a devotee: When you have recovered your Raj, and become sovereign of Ayodhyá, then you may draw your bow for the sake of punishing the Rákshasas; but so long as you are a devotee, you ought not to wish injury to any fellow-creature: In ancient times there was a certain devotee, and Indra sought to interrupt his austerities, by assuming the form of a warrior, and leaving his scimitar as a deposit with the holy sage; and that devotee carried the scimitar ever with him as a sacred trust, until after awhile he too acquired a love of war, and ceased to perform his devotions, and at last through his connection with the weapon he sank into hell: O hero, the slaughter of Rákshasas in the forest of Dándaka, when they are without enmity towards you, will never be approved by the wise: In this sacred grove I pray you to constantly practise religious austerities, for happiness never springs from self-gratification: O excellent one, this has been spoken by me in the feeble language of a woman; you alone are able to understand your duty."

Legend of the devotee who was tempted by Indra to become a warrior.

Sítá entreats Ráma to engage solely in religious austerities.

Ráma, hearing these words of the devoted Sítá, replied thus:—"O goddess, you have given me good advice becoming your present situation; but I will mention one rule which has been stated by you: You have said that a Kshatriya must carry a bow, that the voice of distress be not heard: Now the sages are distressed by the cannibal Rákshasas in the forest of Dándaka, and relying upon me they have taken refuge with me: I said:—'It is a great shame to me, that Bráhmans should stand before me when I ought to stand with joined hands before them;' and having heard the address of the sages to become their protector, I cannot turn a deaf ear to them while life remains: I can relinquish life, and even you, O Sítá, with Lakshmana; but having once plighted my promise to these Bráhmans, it is my duty to protect them: But you have spoken to me through affection and friendship, and I am delighted with your frankness: O Sítá, a person who is not beloved is not admonished: You have spoken sentiments becoming your family, and you

Ráma's reply that he could not refuse the request of the Bráhmans to become their protector.

Ráma praises Sítá for having admonished him.

are my companion in virtue, and dearer to me than life itself."

Having thus spoken, Ráma entered the wood armed with his bow; and the beautiful Sítá went after him, while Lakshmana followed with his bow in his hand. And they beheld many mountains, and groves, and pleasant rivers, together with cranes and red geese; and they saw ponds covered with lilies and water-fowl; also herds of sportive deer, and buffaloes and hogs, and wild elephants. When they had proceeded far upon their way, and their shadows had become long on the ground, they beheld a sheet of water which was many miles round; and it was skirted with green meadows, and adorned with herds of elephants, and covered with the red and white lotos, and with cranes, geese, wild ducks, and other animals that live on water. Presently they heard the sounds of songs and music, but they saw no musician; and Ráma inquired of the sage Dharma-vrita respecting the cause of what they heard. The pious sage then related the wonders of the lake thus:—"This ancient lake, called Mandakarni, was formed by the sage Mandakarni through the powers of his religious austerities: Standing in a pool, and feeding on nothing but air for ten thousand years, the sage Mandakarni performed so severe a course of mortification, that all the gods were distressed, and assembled together with Indra at their head. And Indra said:—'This sage is bent on supplanting me, and obtaining the sovereignty of the gods:'—Indra then sought to tempt the sage from his devotions by sending to him five chosen Apsaras, the brightness of whose beauty exceeded that of the lightning; and the damsels came hither, singing and playing, and employing every act of fascination to entice the devotee: After awhile, the sage was ensnared into a love for the Apsaras; and the five damsels all became his wives, and still inhabit a concealed house in this lake; and there they pass their time in pleasure with the sage, who by his previous mortification and subjection, had again obtained youth; and the captivating sound of their songs and instruments of music is what you now hear." At these words,

8th, Ten years' wanderings amongst the sages in the neighbourhood of Sutikshna's hermitage at Ramtek.

Mysterious lake abounding with music and song.

Legend of the lake being the abode of the sage Mandakarni and five Apsaras.

Ráma was full of thought, and exclaimed:—"This is marvellous, indeed!"

Hermitages of the sage Dharma-vrita.

After a short while, Ráma beheld a pleasant cluster of hermitages which belonged to the sage Dharma-vrita, with whom he had been conversing; and the hermitages were bestrewed with kusa grass, and with garments worn by the sages, and were full of Brahmanical glory. Ráma then entered with Sítá and Lakshmana, and was received with due honour by all the sages, and looked around upon the pleasant place which adorned the forest. After this the mighty Ráma visited in succession those hermitages of the sages in which he had formerly lodged; and he remained two months with one, and a year with another, and four months with another, and five or six months with others; and thus he went on, sometimes abiding only a fortnight at one place, and sometimes remaining for more than a full year. Thus passed away ten years of exile, whilst Ráma resided in the hermitages of the sages and enjoyed great happiness therein; and when the ten pleasant years of exile had expired, Ráma returned with Sítá and Lakshmana to the hermitage of the sage Sutíkshna, and took up his abode there many days.

The trio remain ten years in the neighbourhood, visiting the different hermitages.

The trio return to the hermitage of Sutíkshna after the ten years.

9th, Visit to the sage Agastya, near to the Vindhya mountains.

After awhile, Ráma said to Sutíkshna:—"I continually hear that the sage Agastya resides in this forest of Dándaka, but through the extent of the forest, I know not the spot where he has taken up his abode. Sutíkshna replied:—"I wish to send you to Agastya with your brother and your wife: Go from hence towards the south, and you will behold the glorious hermitage of the brother of Agastya: There stay one night, O Ráma; and then, going forward, still towards the south, you will find at the skirt of the forest the hermitage of Agastya." Hearing these directions, Ráma bowed to the feet of the sage, and set out in company with Sítá and Lakshmana to search for Agastya. Seeing the variegated forest, and the mountains at a distance resembling clouds and lakes, and the rivers running beside the roads, Ráma went pleasantly along the road pointed out by Sutíkshna. At length he said to Lakshmana:—"This hermitage, which appears in view, must certainly be that of

Journey through the forest towards the south.

Halt at the hermitage of the brother of Agastya.

the pious brother of Agastya: The trees of the forest in thousands are bowed down by the weight of fruits and flowers; the scent of the pepper trees, wafted hither by the breeze, creates a pungent sensation: Bundles of sticks and kusa grass are thrown hither and thither on the road; the black smoke, resembling the peak of a mountain, rises from the sacrificial fires; and the leaves of the trees are black and oily from the smoke of the sacrificial homa: The Bráhmans, having bathed in these lovely and sacred retreats, are preparing offerings of flowers in blossom, which they have collected: In former times, two cruel Rákshasas, the devourers of Bráhmans, resided here, and their names were Vátápi and Ilwala; and Ilwala was accustomed to assume the form of a Bráhman, and speak the sacred tongue, and invite the Bráhmans under pretence of solemnizing a Sráddha: Then his brother Vátápi assumed the form of a ram, and was consecrated for the sacrifice by Ilwala; and when the Bráhmans had eaten the ram, Ilwala called to his brother to come forth, and Vátápi came forth out of the stomachs of the Bráhmans, bleating like a sheep, and tearing his way through their bodies: Thousands of Bráhmans were thus destroyed, when Agastya came to this spot, and accepted the invitation to a Sráddha; and Agastya had not eaten for many years, and he devoured the whole of Vátápi in the form of a ram, and then prayed to Gangá; and the goddess appeared in his alms dish, and he touched the water, and pronounced her divine name: Then when Ilwala called on his brother to come forth, Agastya laughed and said:—'Your brother has been eaten by me in the form of a ram and has now gone to the abode of Yama, and for him there is no coming forth:' Ilwala in a rage began to assail Agastya, but was immediately consumed by the fire which flashed from the eyes of the sage: This hermitage, which formerly belonged to the two Rákshasas, is now inhabited by the brother of Agastya."[10]

Poetical description of the hermitage.

Legend of Vátápi and Ilwala.

Destruction of the Bráhmans by Vátápi in the form of a ram.

The ram devoured by Agastya.

Ilwala consumed by the fire of Agastya's eye.

[10] This absurd myth is preserved here chiefly because it is widely known amongst the Bráhmans, who make a point of praying after a meal that they may be blessed with a digestion equal to that of Agastya.

Rama, Sitá, and Lakshmana spend one night with the brother of Agastya.

While Ráma was thus conversing with Lakshmana, the sun set, and the evening came on; and the brothers performed their evening devotions towards the west, and entered the hermitage of the brother of Agastya, accompanied by Sítá, and spent the night there. The next morning they took their leave, and departed towards the abode of Agastya himself; and as they went they beheld the trees of the forest in full flower, surrounded by climbing plants, broken by the trunks of sportive elephants, enlivened with playful monkeys, and vocal with joyous birds. Ráma, as he viewed the beautiful wilderness, said to his brother Lakshmana:—"The hermitage of Agastya appears in view: This is the abode of that sage who freed the southern quarter from the Rákshasas; at whose command the Vindhya mountain forbore to rise higher in the sky; who drank up the sea abounding in crocodiles and great fishes; who was entreated by the gods, with Indra at their head, to destroy the Dánavas: O Lakshmana, here will I spend the remainder of my exile: Here the perfect men, the great sages, cast off their old bodies, and ascend in new bodies to heaven on chariots as resplendent as the sun."

Reach the hermitage of Agastya. Miracles performed by Agastya.

Ráma, having arrived at the hermitage, said to Lakshmana:—"Enter the hermitage, I pray you, and inform the sage that I have arrived with Sítá." And Lakshmana entered, and said to one of the disciples of Agastya:—"Behold, the mighty hero Ráma, the eldest son of Mahárája Dasaratha, is come hither with his wife Sítá, to visit the sage; perchance their fame may have reached your ears." The disciple, having heard the words of Lakshmana, entered the house where the sacred fire was kept, and gave the information to the great sage; and Agastya replied:—"The coming of Ráma has been long desired by me, and now through my good fortune he is here this day to see me: Go, let the highly honoured Ráma, with his spouse and Lakshmana, be introduced to me!" Then the disciple bowed to the feet of the sage, and with joined hands spoke his ready acquiescence; and he brought in Ráma and Sítá and Lakshmana, in the manner prescribed in the ordinance.

Lakshmana informs a disciple of Agastya of the arrival of Ráma and Sítá.

Joy of Agastya at the coming of Ráma.

And they entered the abode of Agastya, and saw the places sacred to Brahma, to Agni, to Vishnu, to Indra, to the Sun, the Moon, and the other gods; and they beheld the sage Agastya, surrounded by his disciples, clothed in the skin of antelopes and vestments of bark. Then Ráma, seeing Agastya, the devotee, severe in austerities, and resplendent as the fire, said to his brother Lakshmana:—"He, who is Agni, Soma, Dharma, yea, the Eternal himself, is coming forth: Let us approach him with the greatest reverence; for he is without doubt the sage Agastya; he is the abode of sacred austerities, a mass of consecrated glory." With these words Ráma approached with devout affection and kissed the foot of the Bráhman; and the great sage kissed the head of Ráma. Agastya then inquired respecting their health and welfare, and said to his disciples:—"First offer oblations on the fire, and then present the remainder with appropriate ceremonies and the consecrating formulas to Ráma; and let it be eaten by him according to the statutes of the Vanaprasthas: Ráma is Raja over the whole universe, steady in the paths of virtue, a mighty warrior, and worthy of the highest respect and adoration: Come in, O beloved guest! Ráma is the asylum and the lord of all: I will worship the lord of the world who has arrived here, according to the ordinance." Thus Agastya and his disciples yielded due honours to their guest, saying:—"As a false witness feeds in the next world upon his own flesh, so he who fails to entertain a guest to the best of his ability, is stripped of all his merits, and receives all the sins of his visitant.[11]

Sacred places in the hermitage of Agastya.

Ráma's profound respect for Agastya.

Agastya directs his disciples to offer oblations to Ráma.

Acknowledges Ráma as Raja of the universe.

[11] The Adhyátma Rámáyana contains the following highly spiritualized description of the hermitage of Agastya and his reception of Ráma:—"The house of Agastya was a spacious building surrounded by pleasant gardens, abounding with fruits and flowers of every description, and resembling the bowers of paradise or Brahma's heaven. There thousands of sages, such as Bramha-rishya, or Bráhman saints; Deva-rishya, or heavenly spirits; and Raja-rishya, or princes turned saints, were engaged in religious pursuits. Such was the sanctity of that place, that lions, tigers, deer, sheep, and other animals fed promiscuously therein without fear of each other. Ráma remained at the gate of the garden, while Sutíkshna went in to inform the saint of his arrival. When Sutíkshna entered the gardens he beheld the saint surrounded by his disciples, to whom he

Agastya presents Ráma with the bow of Vishnu, the arrow of Brahma, two inexhaustible quivers, and a scimitar.

After this, when Agastya had entertained Ráma with fruits, roots, and flowers, he said to him:—"Receive, O Ráma, this divine bow of Vishnu, adorned with gold and diamonds, the work of Viswakarma; this excellent infallible arrow of Brahma, given to me by Indra; these two quivers of inexhaustible arrows resembling the glowing fire; and this golden-sheathed scimitar: O Ráma, with this bow Vishnu smote innumerable Asuras, and obtained the most splendid honours among the gods." The Bráhman, having thus given Ráma the bow, the arrow, the scimitar, and the two quivers, presented him also with an excellent coat of mail which had been given to the sage by Indra.

The coat of mail given to Agastya by Indra.

Agastya's encouraging words.

Agastya, having thus entertained his guests, discoursed with them in the most encouraging manner, saying:—"O Ráma, I am gratified! Peace attend you, O Lakshmana! I am greatly pleased with you both for having come with Sítá to bow at my feet: You are greatly fatigued by the length of the road: The weary Sítá is evidently afflicted: She, a delicate princess, who has never experienced privations, has come to a forest abounding in hardships out of love for her spouse: O Ráma, such is not the nature of women: They will fawn upon a husband in prosperity, and forsake him in adversity. They are as sudden and uncertain as the lightning's flash, as keen as the sharpest weapon, as swift in their course as the bird Garura, as fickle as the wind, and as fatal as the

Agastya praises Sítá.

Evil nature of women in general.

---

was expounding the actions of Ráma, of whom he was a strenuous adorer. Sutíkshna paid his respects to the saint, and said:—'Ráma, my spiritual guide! the exalted son of Dasaratha, with Sítá and his brother Lakshmana, is waiting at the gate; he is desirous of paying his respects to thee.' Great was the surprise and sincere the joy of Agastya when he heard these words. He said to his disciple:—'Auspicious indeed, Sutíkshna! is your destiny; the intelligence you have conveyed to me is equal to the wholesome breeze of the morning, it affords me the highest satisfaction: That master, to behold whom I have been so long engaged in religious penances, towards whom my soul is so fervently attached, has of his own accord condescended to visit my humble mansion: Who then in this world can equal me in good fortune?' Having thus spoken, he rose and went out to meet Ráma; he worshipped him with reverence and faith, and thus addressed him:—'This day, O Lord! my destiny is most exalted, for thou hast condescended to visit thy servant: Great and long have been my religious penances in the hope of beholding thee: this day have I obtained the reward of my piety and sufferings; I have seen thee.'"

most deadly poison: O Ráma, your spouse Sítá is free from all these evil qualities." Ráma replied:—"Happy am I, since the chief of sages is pleased with me, my brother, and my spouse."

10th, Residence of Ráma, Sítá, and Lakshmana at Panchavati, the modern Nasik.

Agastya directs the trio to Panchavati, near the river Godáveri.

After this Ráma said to Agastya:—"Direct me, I pray you, to a spot supplied with water and wood, where I can erect a hermitage, and constantly reside in safety." Agastya replied:—"Beloved one, at a short distance from here, near the river Godáveri, is a place called Panchavatí, which abounds with fruits and roots, and where there is water in abundance: Go thither, O hero, and fix your dwelling there." So Ráma, and Sítá, and Lakshmana took their leave, and departed out of the hermitage of Agastya, and went their way to Panchavatí.

Ráma forms an alliance with Jatáyus, the great vulture, who was the son of Garura.

Now, on the road from the hermitage of Agastya, Ráma and the others saw a vulture of enormous size, who said that he was a friend of their father Mahárajá Dasaratha; and this vulture was named Jatáyus, and he was the son of Garura, and his eldest brother was named Sampáti. And Jatáyus said to Ráma:—"When you, O beloved one, are gone abroad with Lakshmana, I will guard Sítá." And Ráma accepted his friendship, and embraced him with great joy, and he accompanied Ráma on his way to Panchavatí.

Arrival of Ráma, Sítá, and Lakshmana at Panchavati.

When the party arrived at the spot pointed out by Agastya, Ráma said to Lakshmana:—"O excellent one, this is the flowery forest of Panchavatí: Let a place for a hermitage be sought in some pleasant thicket, near a pool or a sheet of water, and where sacrificial wood, and flowers, and kusa grass, and water, may be easily procured." Lakshmana replied:—"I am your servant!" Then Ráma showed his brother a beautiful spot facing the river Godáveri; and there was a sheet of water near it, as bright as the sun and fragrant with lilies; and in the distance were high mountains abounding with glens, and vocal with peacocks. In this charming neighbourhood Lakshmana built a large hut on a high floor of earth, with firm posts of bamboos wrought together with wicker work; and he covered it and roofed it with branches of trees, and tied it with strong

Ráma selects a site for a hermitage.

Lakshmana builds a large hut with four rooms.

cords, and thatched it with grass and leaves; and he divided it into four rooms. When he had thus finished the dwelling-house of Ráma, he went down to the Godáveri and bathed, and then returned, bringing fruits and water-lilies; and he made an oblation of flowers to the god of dwellings, and sprinkled water according to the ordinance, to secure peace to the new habitation and remove all evil from it. After this, he showed the hermitage to Ráma; and Ráma and Sítá beheld the excellent habitation, and entered it with delight; and the pious Ráma dwelt in that fruitful country in perfect happiness, as Indra dwells in heaven.

Oblations to the god of dwellings.

Termination of thirteen years and a half of the exile.

In this manner thirteen years and a half of Ráma's exile passed away in delight; and at this time the rainy season had departed, and the exhilarating cold season commenced.

Commencement of the cold season.

One morning, when it was very early, Ráma went to the pleasant river Godáveri for the sake of ablution; and his brother Lakshmana, shivering with cold, followed him with a jar of water in his hand. And Lakshmana said to Ráma:—"The season so grateful to you has now arrived; and the season which crowns the year appears with peculiar beauty: Mankind are stiffened with cold; the earth is loaded with crops; water is unpleasant, and fire agreeable: The gods and ancestors are honoured with oblations of new corn: The cities are full of delicacies, and abound with the juices of the corn: Rajas eager for conquest now march forth to battle: The sun keeps on the south quarter sacred to Yama, whilst the north quarter appears with a sad countenance like a woman without her tíká: The Himálaya mountain, abounding with stores of cold, is now distant from the sun, and is rightly named the mountain of snow: The midday abounds with high pleasures, and delight attends whatever we touch: The sun is beloved in the daytime, and shade and water are not pleasing: In this season the heat is temperate, the days are short and cold, the forests are bare, and the snow is fallen: The nights forbid all sleeping in the open air; governed by the star Pushya they are whitened with hoar frost and lengthened by the cold: The full moon having gained the side of the sun esteems himself fortunate; his

Poetical description of the cold season.

Characteristics of the cold weather in India.

The day time.

The night time.

The moon.

face is whitened with cold, and he shines dimly like a mirror covered with human breath: The west wind is impregnated with frost, and its blast is doubly keen in the morning: At the rising of the sun, the fields of barley and wheat appear covered with fog; and the golden fields of rice, frequented by the paddy birds and cranes, appear covered with down: In the rice-fields the kine drink water with their eyes half shut, through fear of the sharp blades of the corn: The sun rises at a distance, and appears through the fog like the moon surrounded with its halo: In the forenoon he is devoid of strength, but at midday he beams with pleasure, and his countenance is ruddy: The wild elephant touches the cold water in his thirst, and then draws back his trunk in haste: The water-fowls sit upon the bank, devoid of resolution, and fear to launch themselves upon the cold stream: The rivers covered with steam are known by the voice of cranes, and their shores are indicated by borders of moistened sand: The drops of dew, through the weakness of the god of day, hang suspended from the ends of branches like globules of quicksilver: O Ráma, the pious Bharata, full of affliction, mortifies himself in the city of Ayodhyá, through devotion to you: Having relinquished the Raj, and the many enjoyments of life, he confines himself to spare diet and lives upon the ground: At this hour he is certainly going to bathe in the Sarayú, and perform his daily ceremonies: A tender youth, brought up delicately, how can he, wetted with the chilling dew of morning, again immerse himself in water? Your brother Bharata has subdued heaven by his devout austerities, and sets his mind upon you who are in the forest: It is said that men disregard the commands of their father, and obey those of their mother; but the reverse of this has been done by Bharata: Why is our middle mother thus cruel, whose lord was the good Dasaratha, and whose son was the excellent Bharata?"

The west wind.
The sunrise.
The wild elephants.
The water-fowls.
The cranes.
The dew-drops.
Austerities of Bharata on account of Ráma.
Cruelty of Kaikeyi.

Lakshmana having thus spoken, Ráma replied to him as follows:—"O beloved one, it is improper for you thus to reproach our middle mother: Speak indeed of Bharata; for though my heart is fixed upon a forest residence, it is

Ráma reproves Lakshmana for reproaching Kaikeyi.

pained through affection for Bharata: I remember the tender and sweet expressions of my brother, grateful as amrita, and rejoicing the heart: When, O Lakshmana, shall I again meet the magnanimous Bharata, and the hero Satrughna?"

Ablutions in the Godáveri.

Thus conversing, the brothers reached the Godáveri and made their customary offering to their ancestors and the gods. Ráma then performed his ablutions with his younger brother and Sítá; and he appeared like the divine Siva after bathing with the daughter of the chief of mountains.

Departure of the great vulture Jatáyus.

Thus Ráma dwelt in his hermitage of Panchavatí in company with his wife and brother; and Jatáyus, the Chief of Vultures, also dwelt there. But at this time Jatáyus requested permission to return to his own abode, saying:—"After visiting all my own friends, O chief of men, I will return." So Ráma gave him permission to take his leave, and the Chief of Vultures departed out of the hermitage.

Review of the foregoing narrative of Ráma's adventures amongst the sages.

The foregoing narrative of Ráma's wanderings amongst the sages is chiefly valuable for the proofs which it furnishes of the conclusions already laid down at the commencement of the present chapter. At the outset it will be observed that the Bráhman sages were compelled to leave the neighbourhood of Chitra-kúta on account of the opposition offered to their religious rites by the Rákshasas; and that the Rákshasas mustered strong in that quarter, and were under the command of a younger brother of Rávana.

Religious opposition of the Rákshasas to the Bráhmans.

Virádha, a worshipper of Brahma.

Again, Virádha is described as being both a terrible Rákshasa, and the faithful worshipper of Brahma; and as having received certain supernatural powers from that deity in return for his devotions. But perhaps the most significant passage connected with the identification of the Rákshasas with the Buddhists, is the dialogue between Sítá and Ráma respecting the propriety of waging war against the

Significance of the dialogue between Sítá and Lakshmana.

Rákshasas. The argument has evidently been garbled, but the drift of it may perhaps be gathered from the following facts. Buddha Sákya Muni was a Kshatriya. So was Ráma. Now although Sítá is represented as saying that Ráma ought not to fight because he was a devotee; yet inasmuch as his character as a devotee is altogether mythical, the speech may be regarded as mythical likewise. Sítá's language may therefore have been to the effect that Ráma was a Kshatriya, and as such was scarcely justified in interfering in the disputes between the Bráhmans and the Buddhists; whilst Ráma seems to have replied that having promised to protect the Bráhmans, or Linga worshippers, he was compelled to engage in war.

Sameness in the descriptions of the hermitages, and Ráma's dialogues with the sages.

The other portions of the narrative contain many descriptions which are interesting, but which scarcely call for comment. The pictures of the different hermitages are generally well drawn, but with considerable sameness; and the conversation between Ráma and the several sages is almost always of the same character. The Brahmanical tone of this portion of the poem betrays however, with startling clearness, the proclivities of the Brahmanical author. The appearance of Indra at the hermitage of Sarabhanga; the prominence given to the doctrine that a seat in heaven, and the possession of worlds, may be obtained by such merits as religious austerities; and the poetic effort to throw a halo of sanctity round the emaciated forms and religious pursuits of the Bráhmans in the jungle, whilst associating such sages with mythic accounts of supernatural weapons; all serve to indicate that Brahmanising of Kshatrya traditions which has been so frequently pointed out

Brahmanising of Kshatrya traditions.

in the narrative. The circumstance of the sage Atri living with his wife Anasúyá is curious, and perhaps illustrates a further opposition between the Buddhist priests and the Bráhmans; the former insisting upon celibacy, whilst the Bráhmans were not only permitted but required to marry. The pious suicide of Sarabhanga is very striking; and similar incidents appear to have been not uncommon in ancient times. Arrian, in his description of Alexander's expedition, relates the story of a sage named Calanus who burned himself to death upon a funeral pile in like manner;[12] and in Strabo's description of India, it is said that the sophists or Bráhmans considered disease of the body as most disgraceful, and that if any one apprehended its approach, he prepared a pyre, and destroyed himself by fire.[13] The idea involved in the account of the death of Sarabhanga is somewhat mythical, and accordingly seems to be of a different character. He had long waited for the coming of Ráma, and having at length been blessed with a sight of the incarnate deity, he had no longer any desire to live; and consequently destroyed his body upon the funeral pile, and ascended to the heaven of Brahma. The description of the ascetics in the neighbourhood of Sarabhanga's pilgrimage is illustrative both of ancient and modern times; although it may be remarked that such self-mortifications, whether real or pretended, appear to be gradually dying out in India.

Married life of Atri opposed to the Buddhist rule of celibacy.

Pious suicide of Sarabhanga compared with the burning of Calanus.

Idea involved in the death of Sarabhanga.

Strange fancy involved in Ráma's alliance with the vulture Jatáyus.

The strange alliance between Ráma and Jatáyus the Vulture is one of those eccentric ideas which

[12] Arrian's Exped. Alexand. lib. vii. c. 2.
[13] Strabo, lib. xv. c. 1.

abound to a considerable extent in the Rámáyana; and will be further illustrated when dealing with Ráma's subsequent alliances with monkeys and bears. For the present it will be sufficient to remark that these animals, like the serpents or Nágas, are treated in every respect, excepting that of form, as human beings; and there seems reason to believe that they were originally the deities of the aboriginal populations of the south of India, whom the Brahmanical author of the Rámáyana enlisted in the service of Ráma, for the purpose of facilitating the propagation of the worship of Ráma as an incarnation of Vishnu.

Poetical and truthful character of the description of the cold season.

The description of the cold season in India, which is put into the mouth of Lakshmana, is exceedingly poetical; and its truthfulness to nature will be readily admitted by all who are familiar with the country at that reviving period of the year. In one instance, indeed, a sense of humour is blended with truthfulness of description; and it is difficult to avoid a smile at the picture of the wild elephant who put his trunk into the water to quench his thirst, and then drew it back hastily from the cold.

CHAPTER XVI.

RÁMA'S WARS RESPECTING SÚRPA-NAKHÁ.

Khara and Dúshana, the two Rákshasa commanders in the neighbourhood of Panchavatí.

War with Ráma on account of their sister Súrpa-nakhá.

THE next event in the life of Ráma, was his wars against two brothers of Rávana, respectively named Khara and Dúshana, who appear to have commanded a Rákshasa army in the neighbourhood of the hermitage. The story can scarcely be regarded in any other light than that of a pure fiction. It is said that a sister of these brothers, named Súrpa-nakhá, fell in love with Ráma, and was jestingly referred by Ráma to Lakshmana, and again by Lakshmana to Ráma. In her jealousy she fell upon Sítá, on which Lakshmana cut off her ears and nose. She then fled to her brothers Khara and Dúshana, and prayed for revenge; on which ensued an extraordinary war, in which Ráma, single-handed, slaughtered a vast army of Rákshasas.

Hindú character of the fiction.

Notwithstanding the extravagance of this story, it furnishes a valuable illustration of the general character of many Hindú works of the imagination; such as the reckless sacrifice of probabilities for the sake of effect, the want of delicacy in the female character, and the frequent reference to Brahmanical ideas. These points, however, will be best considered hereafter. The narrative is as follows:—

Súrpa-nakhá, sister of Rávana, approaches the hermitage of Ráma.

After this, while Ráma was sitting in his pleasant four-

roomed abode conversing with Sítá, a certain female Rákshasí happened to come to the hermitage. The name of this Rákshasí was Súrpa-nakhá, and she was sister of the ten-headed Rávana, the mighty Raja of Lanká; and her two other brothers were Khara and Dúshana; and these two were mighty Chieftains, and had been appointed by Raja Rávana to command all that country. This woman Súrpa-nakhá approached the leafy hut, and beheld Ráma of resplendent countenance and substantial arm; and he appeared like a god in heaven, and his eyes resembled the lotos, and his step was as firm as that of an elephant, and on his head was a load of soft but matted hair; and he was evidently a great Raja, bearing all the marks of royalty; and his complexion was green like the new grass, and he was captivating as the god of love.[1] Seeing Ráma, the heart of the Rákshasí was smitten with the arrows of Káma, and she was distracted with the flame of desire. And she was of an evil and malignant disposition, of a base family and base in mind, and she was a female only in appearance. This damsel was very ugly, whilst the countenance of the portly and well-formed Ráma was most lovely; this one was squint-eyed, whilst the eyes of Ráma were beautifully elongated; her locks were the colour of copper, whilst his locks were black and curly; she was deformed in figure, whilst he was shaped with the most perfect symmetry; her voice was a horrid yell, while his accents were most melodious; she was rash and vague in speech, whilst his discourse was ever apt and prudent; her conduct was notoriously vile, whilst his conduct was ever exemplary. This Rákshasí, seeing that Ráma was a perfect model of beauty, began to reflect within herself:—"This is a most beautiful person, proud of his youth and blooming as a god: I am smitten with love, and will therefore assume another form, which shall be very beautiful: I will induce him to abandon his lawful and happy spouse Sítá, though she is in the bloom of beauty and prime of youth, and

Admires the beauty of Ráma.

Contrast between Súrpa-nakhá and Ráma.

Súrpa-nakhá determines to induce Ráma to marry her and desert Sítá.

[1] Ráma is frequently represented in Bengallee pictures as having a bright-green complexion; although as an incarnation of Vishnu his proper colour would appear to be blue. Indeed, in pictures procured from the Upper Provinces Ráma is painted blue.

lovely as Lakṣhmí; and I will cause him to direct all his attentions to me, whom he shall behold clothed with loveliness."

Súrpa-nakhá assumes a captivating form, and asks Ráma who he is.

Súrpa-nakhá then assumed a most captivating form, and approached the valiant Ráma, and thus addressed him :—"O devotee, with matted hair, why are you come bearing a bow and arrow, and accompanied by your spouse, to this place which is haunted by the Rákshasas? I presume that the sages on the banks of the Godáveri, who are as bright as flame, are trusting in the strength of your arm." Ráma replied with the utmost simplicity, for never did he utter a falsehood, especially near his hermitage, or in the presence of a woman :—"There was a Raja named Dasaratha: I am his elder son, known among men by the name of Ráma; yonder is my younger brother Lakshmana who is devoted to me; and this is my spouse Sítá: At the command of my father and mother, bound by a vow and desirous of fulfilling my duty, I am come to dwell in the woods; why do you in the bloom of youth and beauty, as charming as Lakshmí, wander about without fear in this most dreadful forest of Dándaka?" To these words Súrpa-nakhá replied as follows: —"O Ráma, I am a female Rákshasí, and my name is Súrpa-nakhá, and I can assume any form at will: Rávana is my brother, of whom you may have heard; my other brothers are Vibhishana, the virtuous, and Kumbha-karna, the sleepy, and the two mighty heroes, Khara and Dúshana: I have left my brothers, O Ráma, from the time I saw you; through desire I have come to you, O my spouse: Clothed with power, I traverse the woods with the greatest ease; do you become my husband by a lasting union: What occasion have you for Sítá? She is deformed and ugly, and not a fit match for you: But I am a spouse worthy of you, clothed in beauty and possessed of every accomplishment: Behold me of charming mien, adorned with glorious ornaments, elegant in form and plump in size: I will eat this unchaste creature, and then devour your second brother: O my spouse, with me you shall wander through the wilderness of Dándaka, and view the lofty mountain-peaks and the verdant woods."

Ráma relates his story, and asks why she is wandering in the forest.

Súrpa-nakhá replies that she has left her brothers out of love for him, and invites him to marry her.

Having heard the words of Súrpa-nakhá, Ráma cast a meaning look towards Sítá and Lakshmana, and then for the sake of the jest replied to her, with a smile, in smooth and gentle words, as follows:—"O Súrpa-nakhá, I am already married; this is my beloved spouse, and the presence of a rival wife would be painful to one like you: But, O charming female, my younger brother Lakshmana is youthful and engaging; he is intelligent, beautiful, fortunate, heroic, unmarried, and desirous of a wife; he is a fit match for you, and will become your husband: O full-eyed one, do you wait upon my brother as your husband, who is without a rival spouse, and attend him as the sun attends the Meru mountain."

Ráma jests with Súrpa-nakhá by advising her to marry Lakshmana.

Thus addressed by Ráma, the infatuated Rákshasí left the hut, and immediately addressed Lakshmana thus:—"I am very beautiful, and a fit wife for you; come and roam with me at your ease in the forest of Dándaka." Lakshmana replied with a smile:—"How can you desire to become a slave, the wife of a slave like me? O delicate fair one, I am the property of another, even of this my excellent brother Ráma: O full-eyed one, you should aspire to a higher station: Do you become the wife of my brother in whom is to be found every accomplishment: He will abandon his present wife, and devote all his attention to you."

Súrpa-nakhá offers herself as a wife to Lakshmana. Lakshmana refers her back to Ráma.

Súrpa-nakhá, considering that Lakshmana was serious, began to smile with studied art, and again addressed Ráma:—"Do you prefer Sítá to me? I will instantly devour her in your sight, and then I will roam the forest with you without a rival." Súrpa-nakhá then rushed towards Sítá in her rage, with eyes glaring like burning coals, when Ráma repelled her, and said to Lakshmana:—"O brother, it is not always proper to jest with those who are cruel and base: See Sítá is scarcely alive! O excellent one, disfigure this ugly Rákshasí!"

Súrpa-nakhá again offers herself to Ráma, and rushes upon Sítá to devour her.

The valiant Lakshmana then became exceedingly angry, and he seized his scimitar, and in the sight of Ráma he cut off the ears and nose of Súrpa-nakhá. Disfigured by the loss, the dreadful Rákshasí uttered a horrid shriek, and ran

Lakshmana cuts off the ears and nose of Súrpa-nakhá.

into the wood from whence she came. Smeared with blood, she threw out her arms, and yelled aloud, like the roaring of the clouds in the raining season. In this state she hastened to her brother Khara, who was surrounded by a multitude of Rákshasas, and she fell at length upon the ground like a star that has dropped from the sky.

Súrpa-nakhá flies for refuge to her brother Khara.

Wrath of Khara.

When Khara saw his sister smeared with blood and fainting on the earth, he exclaimed in great wrath :—"Arise and tell me plainly who has done this: Who is there, who, even in sport, would vex with his finger's end a black serpent full of venom? Who would take the rope of death and bind it round his own neck? Yet that man has done this who has approached you this day; that man has drank the deadly poison: What mighty one among the gods, or the great sages, can have disfigured you thus? I see no one in this world, who would dare to do a thing displeasing to me: To-day with mortal arrows I will drink up the blood of the thousand-eyed god Indra, as a crane drinks up milk that is mixed with water: There are none of the celestials who can preserve themselves in fight from my drawn scimitar!"

Súrpa-nakhá relates the story of her disfigurement.

At these words Súrpa-nakhá, in great grief, thus related the cause of her disaster :—"There are two brothers, Ráma and Lakshmana; they are young and beautiful, tender and yet strong, their elongated eyes resemble the water-lily; they are clothed in the habit of devotees, and feed on fruits and roots, and have subdued their passions, and practise devout austerities, and are of royal appearance, but whether they be Davatas or Dánavas I cannot say: Between them I beheld a beautiful young woman, of waist elegantly slender, and adorned with every ornament: By these two brothers have I thus been treated for the sake of that woman: I long to drink the frothing blood of that human female, and of these two brothers; and I pray you to accomplish my grand wish."

Khara sends fourteen Rákshasas to bring Ráma, Sítá, and Lakshmana before him.

While Súrpa-nakhá was thus speaking, the enraged Khara called fourteen powerful Rákshasas, as terrible as death, and said to them :—"Go and bring me two men, who are armed, and clothed in the habit of devotees, and who, with a woman, have entered the forest of Dándaka." The four-

teen Rákshasas thus commanded by Khara, went to the hermitage of Panchavatí accompanied by Súrpa-nakhá, like dark clouds driven before the wind; yet these Rákshasas, armed with sharp weapons, could no more subdue the valiant Ráma, than a wild elephant could oppose a forest when it is burning. Inflamed with rage, and filling the air with their terrible yells, they rushed upon the hermitage. Ráma with his arrows cut their weapons in twain, and then seizing fourteen arrows of iron, bright as the sun and sharpened on a stone, he discharged them fledged with golden feathers; and the arrows sped through the air like meteors, and pierced the hearts of the fourteen Rákshasas; and they fell dead upon the ground, whilst the arrows of their own accord returned to the quiver of Ráma.

Ráma slays the fourteen Rákshasas.

Then Súrpa-nakhá uttered a tremendous yell, and fled back to her brother Khara, and writhed upon the ground before him like a serpent. When Khara heard that the Rákshasas were slain by Ráma, he cried aloud in a voice of thunder:—"Wipe away your tears, and shake off your terror! This day I will send Ráma and his brother to the abode of Yama: This day you shall drink the blood of this feeble mortal Ráma." Then Khara said to his brother Dúshana:—"Equip the fourteen thousand Rákshasas, whose courage and heroism are equal to your own; who are as dreadful as the thunder-cloud and as valiant as tigers: Bring also my chariot, my bows, my arrows, my scimitars, my sharp javelins, and my iron clubs: I will myself go in front of the children of Pulastya[2] and kill the abominable Ráma." Then the white horses were harnessed to the chariot of Khara, which was as dazzling as the crest of Meru mountain, adorned with gold, fixed upon shafts of onyx, blazened with golden moons, set with various jewels, spacious as a city, painted with fishes, flowers, trees, rocks, birds and stars, and other devices expressive of joy. It was decked with banners, and hung with a hundred bells; and it moved at the will of him who rode thereon. Khara and Dúshana mounted the chariot, and the mighty army of

Khara assembles his army of fourteen thousand Rákshasas, and prepares to go against Ráma accompanied by his brother Dúshana.

Description of the chariot of Khara.

Khara and Dúshana lead the army against the hermitage of Ráma.

[2] The Rákshasas were said to be descendants of Pulastya the sage, and are consequently sometimes alluded to as the children of Pulastya.

Rákshasas went forth with a noise like the roaring of the sea, and they were armed with every kind of weapon dreadful to behold.

Evil omens on all sides.

But as the army of the Rákshasas marched out against Ráma, there were fearful omens on all sides. A large cloud in colour resembling an ass, poured down a shower of blood; the swift horses yoked to the chariot fell down of their own accord; the edges of the sun's face appeared of a bloody hue, and the middle of it was black; and a huge vulture came and perched on the flag raised on a golden staff in Khara's chariot. The flesh-eating birds and beasts shrieked and howled in various ways. At the rising of the sun, the jackals in the south quarter vomited fire and uttered dreadful yells; and the sky appeared red as blood, and the birds of the air uttered horrid screams. A sceptre without a head appeared near the sun. Ráhu seized the sun, and there was a great eclipse without the intervention of the new moon. The wind blew furiously; the stars twinkled like fire-flies; the water-lilies in the pools closed their flowers; the trees became destitute of flowers and fruits; the dust arose like a grey cloud; the minas uttered their plaintive notes; and meteors fell from the sky with a loud noise. The left hand of the experienced Khara trembled as he sat in his chariot; his sword fell from him; the tears dimmed his eyes whilst he was looking around, and his head began to be seized with pain. But Khara was infatuated, and would not return; and he laughed aloud and said to the Rákshasas:—"These omens, which are so terrifying to behold, are nothing in my eyes: To me, who am full of strength, they are but trifling things; with my sharp arrows I can smite even the stars from the sky; I can kill even Yama, and conquer death itself: I never will return until I have pierced Ráma and Lakshmana with my keen arrows, and my sister has fulfilled the wish of her heart and drank their blood: In my rage I can transfix the mighty Indra, the sovereign of the gods, who rides the inebriated elephant Airávata, and holds the thunderbolt in his hand: How much more easily then can I subdue two mortals!" The army of the Rákshasas re-

Khara in his infatuation disregards the omens.

joiced as they heard the extravagant boasting of their chief Khara; and rushed on eager for the fight to the hermitage of Ráma.

Ráma perceives that the omens portend a terrible war.

Meanwhile, the dreadful omens which Khara regarded so slightly, had greatly troubled the minds of Ráma and Lakshmana. And Ráma said to his brother:—"Behold, O Lakshmana, these portentous omens which are intended for the destruction of the Rákshasas: All my arrows emit a smoke as if anxious for the battle, and my golden bow begins to stir of its own accord: The birds of the forest are uttering their mournful notes, as if calamity and fear of death had already reached them: The trembling of my right arm tells me that a dreadful war and a great war are near: I hear the roaring of the Rákshasas, and the loud beating of their drums: O Lakshmana, take your bow and arrows in your hand and conduct Sítá to a cave in the mountain, which is difficult of access, and covered with trees: There shall she witness at a distance the alarming tumult of the battle, and you shall hear the sound of the bowstrings filling the air: Reply not to my words, O Lakshmana, but go without delay: You are a powerful hero, and are doubtless able to destroy all these Rákshasas, but it is my desire to kill them all myself." Thus addressed by Ráma, Lakshmana took his bow and arrows and conducted Sítá to an inaccessible cave.

Directs Lakshmana to conduct Sítá to an inaccessible cave.

Ráma awaits the coming of the Rákshasa army.

Then Ráma girt on his coat of mail, bright as the glowing flame; and he resembled a column of fire blazing in the midst of darkness. Drawing forth his mighty arrows, that heroic one stood filling all the quarters of the heavens with the sound of his bow. The gods, the Gandharvas, the Siddhas, and the Charanas, came down from heaven to behold the combat. The sages illustrious in this world, and the sages who inhabit the mansions of Brahma, said to each other:—"May peace attend the cows, the Bráhmans, and the various worlds: May Ráma subdue the night-prowling sons of Pulastya in the battle, as that mighty Vishnu, who wields the chakra, conquered the great Asuras." Vain of their powers, the shouting army of the Rákshasas had now

arrived at the hermitage of Ráma; and they collected together like a vast herd of elephants thronging each other, while Khara their Chief halted his chariot. Their shields and standards appeared on every side, while their loud roarings, screaming yells, and hideous laughter filled the whole forest. The beasts of the jungle fled away without looking behind them. The sun became dim and shrouded with darkness, and the wind blew furiously against the Rakshasas. The vast army poured down swiftly upon Ráma like the raging sea; but Ráma stood still with a smiling countenance, filling the heavens with the loud twanging of his bow-string. The face of Ráma blazed with the burning of his wrath, as terrible as the conflagration of the universe; and the gods and Dánavas were stricken with fear, as when the great god Siva arose with his bow to destroy the sacrifice of Daksha. The celestials in the air beheld with astonishment the face of the angry Ráma, which resembled the face of Yama at the end of a Yuga. The Rákshasas, eager as they were for the battle, were turned to stone with surprise, and stood immovable as mountains. Khara then said to his brother Dúshana:—"There is no river to be crossed, yet the army are all standing on one foot: Inquire, O great one, the cause of this!" Then Dúshana went forth and saw Ráma standing armed before him, at the sight of whom the whole army of the Rákshasas had recoiled on one foot from fear; and he returned to Khara, and said:—"Command me to combat with Ráma, that I with my arrows may send him to the abode of Yama." At these words Khara himself drove his chariot towards Ráma, as Ráhu rushes upon the god of day. The army of the Rákshasas were goaded to the battle by the sight of Khara, and they ran forward with a deep roaring; and their bows and ornaments, their chariots, and their fire-resembling coats of mail, appeared like a rushing of dark clouds at the time of sun-rising. Then Khara assailed Ráma with a thousand arrows, while all the Rákshasas poured on the dread-inspiring archer a mighty shower of iron clubs, javelins, darts, scimitars, and battle-axes. Then Ráma was surrounded by Rákshasas of horrid aspect, as the clouds

Fearful appearance of the Rákshasas before the hermitage of Ráma.

Tranquillity of Ráma.

Wrath of Ráma.

Recoil of the Rákshasa army at the sight of Ráma.

Khara leads the Rákshasa army to the first charge against Ráma.

surround the Raja of mountains with streams of rain, or as the great god Siva is surrounded on the lunar days by all his servants and courtiers. He received all the arrows of the Rákshasas as the sea receives all the rivers; and although wounded by their dreadful shafts, the hero felt no pain.

Rama discharges his terrible arrows.

Like a huge mountain pierced with many flaming thunderbolts, Ráma stood with his whole body streaming with blood, but shining like the evening sun surrounded by fiery clouds. Seeing the hero hemmed round by so many thousands, the gods, the Gandharvas, the Siddhas, and the great sages began to lament. At length Ráma, filled with anger, drew his bow even to a circle, and discharged keen arrows by thousands. The fatal shafts, dreadful as the snare of death, winged with the feathers of kingfishers and adorned with gold, were discharged by Ráma as if in sport. They pierced the bodies of Rákshasas, and then mounted the air and shone there with the splendour of fire. Some of the arrows cut in pieces the bows, the flag staffs, the shields, the coats of mail, and the long arms of the Rákshasas which were like the trunks of elephants adorned with various ornaments. Other arrows mangled and pierced the golden-saddled horses, the chariots and their drivers, the elephants and their attendants, and sent all the footmen to the abode of Yama. The Rákshasas, wounded by the sharp and burning bolts, uttered fearful yells, which reached the sky; and they found no more quarter from the heart-piercing arrows of Ráma, than a dry forest receives from a merciless fire.

Second charge of the Rákshasa army against Ráma.

Then some of the Rákshasas ran to Khara for refuge, and Dúshana, foaming with rage, led them on to another attack upon Ráma. Some were armed with trees, some with staves, spears, and clubs, and some with platted ropes or nooses; and they discharged thousands of arrows, and trees, and large stones at the dauntless Ráma; and the tumult of that dreadful battle made the hair of men stand erect from fear.

Ráma again effects fearful destruction.

Then Ráma uttered a tremendous shout, and fitted to his bow a brightly shining weapon named Gandharva, at which a thousand arrows flew from his well-drawn bow. The sun

was shrouded by those arrows and the air was darkened; whilst the earth was covered with wounded Rákshasas and fallen weapons. The exhausted, the killed, the wounded, and the mangled were scattered here and there in thousands. The field of battle, dreadful to behold, was strewed with turbaned heads, with hands and arms and legs adorned with ornaments, with horses and elephants and broken chariots, with chámaras and fans and flag staffs, with broken spears and scimitars, and with innumerable arrows and other weapons; and the few remaining Rákshasas fled deeply afflicted before the conqueringRáma.

Third charge of the Rákshasa army against Ráma.

After this the weakened remnant of the Rákshasas again put their trust in Khara and Dúshana, and arose in battle a third time against Ráma. The mighty hero, humble but steadfast in mind, once more stood against the arrogant few who still urged the fight. He received the dreadful shower of weapons like a bull catching the large drops of autumnal rain. At length, he seized a divine weapon to destroy in one moment the whole of the Rákshasas. Blazing like the fire, he scattered in an instant the whole of the forces of Khara and Dúshana. Then with his arrows he cut asunder the great bow of Dúshana, and slew the horses that were harnessed to his chariot; and with three more arrows he smote Dúshana on the breast, and took off the head of his charioteer. Then Dúshana seized a club which resembled a mountain-peak; it was encompassed with a golden band like that on the staff of Yama, and was full of sharp iron spikes, destructive to the armies of the gods, besmeared with the flesh of foes, rough to the toueh, dashing gates and doors to pieces, and terrific to all beings. Grasping this mighty club Dúshana flew at Ráma, but Ráma cut off both his hands; and Dúshana, deprived of his club, fell to the ground like an elephant of the Himálayas deprived of his tusks; and he was instantly killed by the heroic Ráma.

Slaughter of the Rákshasas.

Combat between Ráma and Dúshana.

Death of Dúshana.

Combat between Ráma and Khara.

Then Khara, seeing his brother slain, roared like the roar of a kettle-drum which has been wetted with water; and rushing towards Ráma, he discharged flaming arrows of iron as fatal as enraged serpents: but Ráma stopped the

shafts with his own arrows, as the foot-rope stops the elephant. Khara in his own chariot then approached Ráma, as a grasshopper leaps into the fire; but Ráma seized the bow of Vishnu, which had been given him by Agastya, and discharged innumerable arrows, and broke the chariot of Khara, and killed his horses and charioteer. Khara then leaped forward with a mighty club in his hand, and hurled it at Ráma like a flaming thunderbolt; but Ráma turned it back again and shivered it to pieces with a fire weapon of divine powers. Ráma now smiled at Khara, and said:— "You vile Rákshasa, your boasted might has now been seen, and you roar aloud in vain: You promised to wipe away the tears of these slain Rákshasas, but your promise has been broken: To-day I will take away the life of so mean a liar, even as Garura seized the amrita: To-day the earth shall drink your blood bubbling in foam from your throat: Your carcase shall roll in the dust, and you shall embrace the earth as a man embraces a beautiful spouse: To-day all the sages shall hear that you have been killed, and shall traverse the forest of Dándaka without fear: To-day all the women of the Rákshasas shall tremble with alarm at being deprived of their lords; they shall taste of the grief which they deserve for being united to such husbands: You ever cruel wretch, the terror of the Bráhmans, apostate from all virtue, saturated with every crime, you shall receive to-day the reward of your vile actions." Thus speaking, Ráma fought with Khara for the last time, and discharged a flaming arrow which pierced his mail armour even to the bone; and Khara fell upon the earth burnt up as with fire, and gave up the ghost. Then the sound of the divine kettle-drums was heard in the heavens, and flowers fell from the sky upon the head of Ráma; and the gods and sages, and all the celestial beings, poured praises and benedictions upon the conqueror of the Rákshasas. And Lakshmana and Sítá came out of the cave, and Sítá embraced her husband with great joy; and Ráma embraced the fawn-eyed Sítá, and appeared among the adoring sages as glorious as Indra in heaven.

Ráma threatens and abuses Khara.

Death of Khara.

Rejoicings of the gods.

Sítá returns to Ráma.

News of the defeat of the Rákshasas carried to Rávana.

Now a certain Rákshasa escaped from that dreadful battle, and hastened to Lanká, and told the melancholy tidings to the ten-headed Rávana. Then the eyes of Rávana were red with anger, and hearing that his two brothers, Khara and Dúshana, had been killed by Ráma, he snuffed up the air like the Raja of Serpents; and he said:—"I will go myself and kill Ráma and Lakshmana." And the Rákshasa replied:—

Rávana persuaded by the messenger to carry off Sítá.

"O ten-headed one, Ráma can no more be overcome by you in battle, nor by the world of Rákshasas, than heaven can be obtained by sinful men: Not all the gods and Asuras united can accomplish his death: But listen to my plan for his destruction: He has a beautiful wife whose name is Sítá; she is a woman of delicate shape, of golden complexion, and the most exact symmetry: Adorned with jewels, no goddess, nor Apsara, nor Nága can be compared with her; where then could be found her equal among mortals? Carry off this beautiful woman, and Ráma will be crushed in the great forest, for he cannot exist without Sítá." Rávana was pleased with this counsel, and said:—"To-morrow I will go with my charioteer, and bring Sítá to this great city." Then Rávana ascended his chariot which was drawn by asses, and was as splendid as the sun, and he went to the dwelling of Márícha who was his minister, and told him all that the Rákshasa had said; and he entreated Márícha to counsel him concerning his carrying away the wife of Ráma. Márícha however replied:—"What enemy in the guise of a friend has mentioned Sítá to you? The man who has thus stirred you up is undoubtedly your bitterest foe: He wishes to engage you in plucking out the fangs of a venomous serpent! O Rávana, Ráma is a furious elephant inebriated with energy; his tusks are full grown; he is the fierce man-lion destroying the wounded Rákshasas as though they were trembling deer: O Rávana, rouse not this sleeping lion whose body is full of arrows, and whose teeth are sharpened scimitars: Return in peace to Lanká, and enjoy yourself among your own wives, and let Ráma enjoy his spouse in the forest." So the ten-headed Rávana

Rávana consults his minister Márícha.

Márícha dissuades Rávana from the attempt.

listened to the words of Márícha, and returned to his stately palace at Lanká.

Review of the foregoing narrative of Ráma's wars on account of Súrpa-nakhá.

The foregoing narrative, as already indicated, is essentially Hindú. No one but an oriental bard would have ventured to depict a woman making such proposals to two men in succession, as were addressed by Súrpa-nakhá to Ráma and Lakshmana; and no audience, excepting an oriental one, would have appreciated the jesting replies of Ráma and his brother, or have applauded the savage proceeding of Lakshmana. The description of the wars that ensued is apparently the work of pure imagination, whilst the similes are often far-fetched; but still the details exhibit some brilliant coruscations of fancy, which although altogether unreal, serve to amuse the intellect in much the same manner as a display of fireworks amuses the eye. The slaughter of fourteen Rákshasas with fourteen iron arrows, bright as the sun and fledged with golden feathers, is an exploit on the part of the leading hero which would have satisfied most romance writers. But Ráma was to be represented as a god, and consequently the story was told of his triumphantly resisting three distinct charges of an army of fourteen thousand Rákshasas, as dreadful as the thundercloud and as valiant as tigers, and ultimately slaying them all. Such a narrative, half heroic and half divine, never fails to create a deep impression upon a Hindú audience. The fantastic character of the omens which preceded the battle, and the extravagant idea that the gods came down from heaven to witness the conflict, are perfectly understood and fully accepted by every Hindú. The descriptions

Brilliant imagination displayed in the details.

Divinity of Ráma manifested in his victories over the Rákshasa army.

Impression of the story upon a Hindú audience.

Reality of the descriptions to the Hindú.

again are very graphic, although exuberant beyond measure; and the pictures which they bring before the mind's eye are real and substantial forms to the Hindú, although they must appear as mere idle dreams to the European. Thus every Hindú audience accepts as a grand reality the marvellous chariot in which Khara and Dúshana ride to battle. Each one realizes the appearance of the vast car, spacious as a city, and moving at the will of its occupants, sparkling with jewels and golden moons, decked with banners and hung with bells, and resplendent with pictures of fishes, flowers, trees, rocks, birds, and stars. In like manner each one can perceive the army of Rákshasas rushing with yells and roarings upon the quiet hermitage of Ráma, and pouring a shower of iron clubs, javelins, darts, scimitars, and battle-axes upon the dauntless hero; whilst Ráma stands as bright and unmoved as a pillar of fire, and replies with countless arrows which carry death and destruction amongst the advancing host. Lastly, the audience always takes a deep personal interest in the single combats between Ráma and Dúshana, and Ráma and Khara. Every one exults and sympathizes in the abusive language which Ráma lavishly employs against Khara, and which is scarcely compatible with the divine character of the incarnation of Vishnu, although in strict accordance with the ancient usage of the Kshatriyas. Finally, when the story is told that Khara is slain by the flaming arrow amidst the rejoicings of the gods and sages, one and all rejoice in like manner, and the air is filled with the pious chorus of "Glory to Ráma!"

Reality of Khara's wonderful chariot.

The Rákshasa army.

Deep personal interest taken by the audience in Ráma's single combats.

Exulting chorus of "Glory to Ráma!"

CHAPTER XVII.

RÁVANA'S ABDUCTION OF SÍTÁ.

THE defeat of Khara and Dúshana now brings Rávana himself upon the scene. This powerful sovereign is said to have been not only a worshipper of Brahma, but a grandson of a Bráhman sage named Pulastya; consequently he does not appear as an aboriginal monarch, but as a heretic, a renegade, an apostate, who was employing against the Bráhmans the very powers which he had acquired by the worship of Brahma.

Rávana, Raja of Lanká, appears upon the scene.

His real character.

The narrative of the carrying away of Sítá by Rávana requires but a brief introduction. The design was first suggested to Rávana, as already seen, by a Rákshasa who had fled from the dreadful battle with Ráma; but he is said to have been dissuaded from the attempt by his Minister Márícha, the very Rákshasa whom Ráma had driven into the sea in the great battle near the hermitage of Viswámitra. Súrpa-nakhá, however, was resolved to be revenged alike on Ráma and Sítá; and she accordingly stirred up the rage of Rávana against the one, and excited his desires for the other. The story requires no preliminary explanation. It will be sufficient to bear in mind that according to the popular belief the Rákshasas had the power of as-

Scope of the narrative.

Popular belief in the power of the Rákshasas to assume new forms at will.

suming any form at will; and that Rávana in his normal shape possessed ten heads and twenty arms. However wild and unnatural this idea may seem to the European, it is a substantive conception to every Hindú, for it is formed in boyhood, and strengthened by the frequent sight of numerous pictures of the terrible Rákshasa. From the narrative Rávana would appear to be only a mortal sovereign of the ordinary human type as regards appearance and shape; and indeed, in his character as a lover of woman, it is difficult to conceive of him as any other than a mortal man. But the Hindú realizes him as a huge being moving along the earth like a vast tower, with ten crowned heads rising on separate necks, and twenty arms stretching out on either side. Such a monstrosity is the pure creation of a disordered brain; an unmeaning mass of incongruities; and probably arose from some childish idea that by multiplying the arms the physical strength of the demon was increased tenfold, and by multiplying the number of heads, the intelligence or cunning of the Rákshasa was increased in the same ratio.

Extraordinary conception that Rávana had ten heads and twenty arms, a substantive belief with the Hindús.

Probable origin of the conception.

The narrative of the circumstances connected with the capture of Sítá by Rávana is as follows:—

The narrative of the capture of Sítá by Rávana.

Now when Súrpa-nakhá, the sister of Rávana, saw that her brothers Khara and Dúshana, and the mighty army of Rákshasas, had been slain by the single mortal Ráma, she set up a horrid yell like the roaring of a thunder-cloud. She then hastened to Lanká, and beheld Rávana seated in front of his palace upon a throne of gold, as bright as the sun and as glowing as flame; and he was surrounded by his Counsellors as Indra is surrounded by the Maruts. He had ten heads and twenty arms; and his eyes were of the colour of copper, whilst his teeth were white like the new moon.

Súrpa-nakhá carries the news of Khara's defeat to Lanká.

Description of Raja Rávana.

His form was vast like a mountain, and his ten faces were each as terrible as that of the all-destroying Yama. He was a tall and heroic Rákshasa, possessing all the signs of royalty, and invincible to the gods. His body was as smooth as a polished onyx, and his ears were adorned with earrings; but his breast was scarred by the thunder-bolt of Indra, the tusks of Airávata, and the chakra of Vishnu. He could shake the seas with his strides, and rend asunder the tops of mountains with his brawny arms. He was the breaker of all laws, the ravisher of the wives of others, the murderer of the Bráhmans, the obstructor of sacrifice, the enemy of sacred vows. This was he, who went to the city of Bhagavati, the great city of resplendent serpents, and conquered Vásukí, and carried away the beloved wife of the snake Takshaka. This was he, who conquered Kuvera on the Kailása mountain, and carried away the chariot Pushpaka, which constantly obeys the will of the rider; who in his rage destroyed the divine forests of Chitra, Nalina, Nandana, and all the gardens of the gods; who by the strength of his mighty arms stopped the sun and the moon in their course, and prevented their rising. This was he who performed religious austerities in a vast forest for ten thousand years, standing on his head with his feet uppermost in the midst of five fires; who by permission of Brahma traversed the air in an instant, and assumed any shape at will; who offered his ten heads as a sacrifice to Siva; who caused the affrighted sun to rise upon his city with a subdued lustre. He was the cruel one, the wicked, and the furious; who by the blessing of Brahma was invulnerable to gods and demons, and to every being excepting beast and man.

His mighty powers.

His wickedness.

His exploits.

Conquered Vásukí and Kuvera.

His religious austerities.

Invulnerable to all excepting beasts and men.

When Súrpa-nakhá saw her brother Rávana, adorned with excellent ornaments and beautiful flowers, she approached him flaming with rage; and with wide-stretched fiery eyes, and a dejected countenance, and mad with fear and terror, she yelled out these horrid accents:—"Intoxicated with the pleasure of sense, you disregard the dreadful danger which has arisen: The Raja who is devoted to his lusts, even though he be lord of the world, is detested by

Súrpa-nakhá's angry address to Rávana.

his subjects, as men detest a fire in which the dead have been burned: The Raja who does not in due time attend to his own affairs, will perish together with his Raj: The Raja who listens not to his spies, and is incapable of governing himself, is avoided by men, as elephants avoid the swampy edge of a river: Know you not that Khara and Dúshana, with fourteen thousand fiery Rákshasas, have been slain by the single mortal Ráma? Know you not that Ráma has become the saviour of the sages, and has rendered the forest of Dándaka secure from the Rákshasas? O Rávana, you can discern nothing, since you have not learned from your spies of the terrible slaughter of the Rákshasas?"

Súrpa-nakhá describes Ráma to Rávana, and dilates on the beauty of Sítá.

Sitting among his courtiers, Rávana was enraged at these abusive speeches of Súrpa-nakhá, and cried out:—"Who is Ráma?" Súrpa-nakhá replied:—"Ráma, the son of Dasaratha, is of long arm and elongated eye; he is the chief of all those who wear the habit of a devotee; he is equal in form to Káma; he carries a bow resembling a rainbow, and discharges blazing iron arrows as fatal as poisonous serpents: I saw not the valiant Ráma draw his bow, but I saw the army falling by his arrows, as a full crop of corn is smitten by the rains sent by Indra: O Rávana, this Ráma has a beautiful wife, of charming face, and slender and delicate form, and complexion as bright as molten gold: He who is embraced by Sítá enjoys a felicity beyond that of Indra: O Rávana, it was because I wanted to bring away this beautiful woman to become your wife that my nose and ears were cut off by the cruel Lakshmana: When you behold Sítá, you will instantly be pierced by the arrows of the god of love: O Raja of the Rákshasas, revenge the death of your brothers upon Ráma and Lakshmana, and take the beautiful Sítá to be your wife."

Counsels Rávana to carry away Sítá.

Rávana again visits Márícha, and desires Márícha to assist him in carrying away Sítá.

Having heard these roaring words of his sister Súrpa-nakhá, Rávana ordered his chariot, and again proceeded to the abode of Márícha. And Rávana said:—"O Márícha, my father, I am distressed and you are my great refuge: That contemptible Ráma, the meanest of the Kshatriyas, expelled

by his father, has been the murderer of my army: This tame and ignorant fellow, intent on the evil of all creatures, by whom my sister was disfigured to show his powers in taking away her ears and nose, has a wife named Sítá, who is in the prime of youth and beauty, resembling Lakshmí without her lotos: Her I will bring away this day, and you must be my helper! Do you assume the shape of a golden deer studded with silver spots, and go to the hermitage of Ráma: Sítá, seeing your beauty, will ask Ráma and Lakshmana to procure you for her; and when you have beguiled the brothers from the hermitage, I will carry off Sítá through the air, as Ráhu takes away the light of the moon."

Entreats Márícha to take the form of a golden deer.

Hearing these words respecting Ráma, the countenance of Márícha became withered; and he licked his parched lips, and stared with fixed eyes at Rávana; and spoke with joined hands, as follows:—"O Raja of the Rákshasas, you have been deceived: Ráma is magnanimous and highly renowned; he was not abandoned by his father nor ever disgraced: He is not covetous, nor evil disposed, nor a mean Kshatriya; his subjects were not in distress nor were the Bráhmans averse to him: He is Chief of the universe, as Indra is sovereign of the gods: How can you desire to carry off his wife Sítá, whose virtue is her preservation, and whose splendour is equal to that of fire? If you carry away the wife of Ráma, your destruction is certain: In former times I traversed the wilderness of Dándaka with the might of a thousand elephants; and Ráma, then a boy of fifteen, came to the hermitage of Viswámitra to protect the Bráhmans: I assumed a form as vast as a mountain, and went to the hermitage without fear; but this beardless boy shot a dreadful arrow at my breast, and I was cast far away into the sea: My life was preserved because he desired not to kill me; but if when a child he overcame me, how shall I engage against him now? O Maháraja, if in wantonness you carry away Sítá, you will involve yourself in the most dreadful misery; the city of Lanká will be reduced to ruins; your Rákshasas will be slain in battle by Ráma; and your women

Alarm of Márícha.

Márícha dilates on the power of Ráma.

Remonstrates with Rávana against carrying away Sítá.

Relates the story of his being cast by Ráma into the sea.

Prophesies utter ruin if Rávana carries away Sítá.

will run away in all directions: Engaged in war with Ráma, you will soon lose your honour, your prosperity, your Raj, your wives, and your own life."[1]

Rávana contemptuously replies that he requires no advice.

When Rávana heard these words, he slighted the wise reasoning of Márícha, as one who is desirous of death refuses medicine. Considering Márícha as one speaking for his hurt, Rávana, impelled by his fate, thus contemptuously replied:—"Why, Márícha, speak these silly things to me? Your speech is as useless as seed sown upon salt: I cannot be affrighted by your words; I cannot fear Ráma; and most assuredly I will carry off the wife of the murderer of Khara: The sovereign of the world is not to be contradicted, but to be addressed in gentle and pleasing language: I did not ask you, O Rákshasa, respecting the good or evil of the undertaking, nor about my own ability, but I requested your assistance only: Assuming the form of a golden deer studded with silver spots, do you go into the view of Sítá and gambol in her presence: After performing this service, go where you will; and I will then give you the half of my Raj."

Commands Márícha to take the form of a golden deer and gambol in the presence of Sítá.

Márícha unwillingly obeys.

Márícha was sorely perplexed at the commands of Rávana, for he knew that his death was near; and he sighed repeatedly, and said:—"I will go, but I shall be slain; nor will you, O Rávana, return alive!" Rávana replied:—"Now I see that you are Márícha, but from your former speech I thought you must be some other Rákshasa: Speedily mount with me this resplendent air-traversing chariot, drawn by asses with the heads of Rákshasas: Having allured Sítá, go where you will; I will speedily carry her off from her protectors."

Invited by Rávana to ascend his chariot.

[1] These events are differently described in the Adhyátma Rámáyana. Both Márícha and Rávana are there said to have acknowledged that Ráma was an incarnation of the deity; and each is said to have believed that if he fell by the hand of Ráma he would obtain everlasting salvation. Rávana therefore argued that if conquered by Ráma he should obtain paradise; whilst if he became conqueror he would retain possession of Sítá. Márícha had another alternative. If he refused to comply with the request of Rávana, he would be killed by him, and would consequently go to hell. If on the other hand he assumed the form of a deer he would be killed by Ráma and go to heaven.

Journey of Rávana and Márícha to the hermitage of Ráma at Panchavati.

Rávana and Márícha then mounted the chariot which resembled a palace, and flew through the air over the forests, the mountains, the rivers, the countries, and the cities on their way, until they came to the wilderness of Dándaka, where stood the hermitage of Ráma. There the Raja of the Rákshasas alighted with Márícha from the gold-adorned chariot, and he looked round, and took Márícha by the hand, and said:—"Here is the hermitage of Ráma surrounded by plantain trees: O my companion, speedily do that for which we came hither." At these words of Rávana, the sage Márícha assumed the shape of a deer, and went to the door of the hut; and his horns were tipped with sapphire, his face was variegated with black and white, his mouth resembled the red lotos, and his azure eyes were like blue water-lilies. In this captivating form, adorned with various jewels, and grazing at its own will, the silver-spotted deer cropped the tender shoots of the trees, and at length entered the plantain grove to attract the eye of Sítá.

Márícha assumes the form of a very beautiful deer.

Sítá sees the deer and requests Ráma to procure its skin for her.

Now while this lovely deer was grazing and gamboling near the hut, the charming-eyed Sítá, eager to pluck flowers, went forth among the trees. There the beautiful one beheld that deer covered with fine hair, and adorned with jewels, and bespangled with pearls; its sides presenting a beautiful mixture of gold and silver colour. Then Sítá was filled with surprise, and repeatedly called to Ráma:—"Come, my beloved, and behold this golden deer with variegated sides: I long to repose at ease on the golden skin of this deer." Then Ráma was highly pleased, and said to his brother:—"Observe, O Lakshmana, the strong desire of Sítá for this deer-skin: Be on your guard this day respecting Sítá, while I go and pierce the deer with an arrow: Having killed it, I will speedily bring its skin hither; go not from home until I return: Obtaining this skin, Sítá will repose this day as magnificently as she did at Ayodhyá." The ardent hero then threw his golden bow over his shoulder, but Lakshmana, profoundly reflecting, said to him:—"It was formerly told us by the sages that Márícha, the mighty Rákshasa, who assumes illusive forms, sometimes assumes that of a deer; and

Ráma leaves Sítá in charge of Lakshmana, and prepares to chase the deer.

Lakshmana reminds Ráma that Márícha could take a deer's form.

in this form he has slain many Princes: O Ráma, consider if a deer exists made of gold, with horns of coral, and gems for its eyes! I believe this to be a factitious animal, or a Rákshasa in the form of a deer." But Sítá continued to pray Ráma to bring her the lovely deer, and he was equally desirous of securing it, and taking his bow and quivers he went forth into the jungle.[2]

Ráma chases the deer and slays it.

When Ráma approached the deer it bounded forwards, and sometimes it appeared before his eyes, and then it retired to different parts of the wood, until it had drawn him to a considerable distance from the hermitage. After a long time Ráma discharged a deadly arrow which pierced the heart of the deer-formed Márícha. Pained with the wound, Márícha leaped from out of the body of the deer to the height of a palmyra tree, and fell down in the shape of a monstrous Rákshasa, with vast teeth, and adorned with a golden necklace and various ornaments. Márícha then cried out with a voice resembling that of Ráma:—"O Sítá, save me! O Lakshmana, save me!" With these words Márícha expired, and Ráma, perceiving the illusion, exclaimed:—"I have killed Márícha!" Then he took the beautiful skin from the body of the deer, and remembering what Lakshmana had said, and pondering over the last words of the Rákshasa, he felt great alarm, and returned in all haste to his hermitage.

Márícha returns to his proper form, and dies crying for Sítá and Lakshmana in a voice resembling that of Ráma.

Rámá takes the skin and returns to the hermitage.

Sítá hears the voice of the deer, and desires Lakshmana to assist Ráma.

Meanwhile Sítá had heard the voice of Márícha in the forest, which resembled the voice of Ráma; and she said to Lakshmana:—"Go and learn how it is with Ráma: I have heard the piercing sound of his groan, and it becomes you to

[2] The following curious comment upon this event occurs in the Ádhyátma Rámáyana:—"Should any one say Ráma hath forgotten himself, he, with his eyes open and knowing the consequences, followed the stag, the answer is, Ráma being distinct from all things, no injury can occur to him. What power can delusion have over him? He hath performed various actions in this world for the sake of those who worship him; he fulfils the desires of those who adore him with sincerity: Besides, it was necessary Rávana should commit some crime that, when his guilt was confirmed, Ráma might slay him. Ráma then had no other object in view, for he is never influenced by worldly objects; he is the Supreme Soul, the everlasting Great One. Sítá loved him; for her sake therefore he undertook this task."

save your elder brother: Run quickly to Ráma who craves succour, and who lies in the power of the Rákshasas like a bull among lions."[3] Thus addressed Lakshmana forbore to go, and said:—"Why, O goddess, are you thus distressed? My elder brother cannot be vanquished by the three worlds; the Rákshasa cannot give pain to his little finger." Then Sítá was filled with wrath, and exclaimed:—"O Lakshmana, you are the enemy of your brother if you run not to his assistance: Surely you must be pleased with your brother's distress, or you would not stand here so carelessly: Is it for my sake that, disregarding my words, you desire the death of Ráma? Know, O hero, that I will not survive the

Lakshmana hesitates to leave Sítá.

Sítá's wrathful reproaches.

[3] The death of Márícha furnishes the author of the Adhyátma Rámáyana, with a further text for expatiating on the divinity of Ráma. It is said that when Márícha had uttered the dying words quoted above, he obtained salvation in the following manner:—"When Márícha had uttered these words his soul departed from his mortal frame; and a small flame issuing from his body entered into the foot of Ráma. So great, so exalted is the name of Ráma, that even this perpetrator of evil deeds, under the form of a demon, obtained salvation by being absorbed into the essence of the deity. Such a lot was his, as others who have passed thousands of years in religious penances could not attain. If any man, who may have committed during any of his lives the most heinous crimes, shall at his death with sincerity pronounce the name of Ráma, his sins, of whatever nature they may be, shall be forgiven; he will be absorbed into the divinity. Thus Márícha obtained his death from the hand of Ráma; he beheld him; what doubt then could exist, after pronouncing his name, that he should attain this heavenly bliss free from future birth and regeneration.

"Brahma and the spirits of heaven assembling in the heavens above showered down Parijáta flowers on Ráma. They conversed together, saying:—'Behold, brethren! how this sinner has been saved; such is the benevolence of Ráma. What good actions had this demon performed that he could deserve such happiness? Behold what supreme bliss Ráma hath conferred on him who was peculiarly guilty, who destroyed numbers of saints: Such is the reward granted to those who worship Ráma, who call upon his name: Great indeed is the excellence and purity of Ráma's name.' Brahma then said to the gods:—'This demon who has been slain by the hand of Ráma, during former births worshipped Ráma with sincerity and faith; even during his late existence he entertained the greatest dread of him: By the blessing of Ráma's name, and of his former faith, his sins have been remitted: He has, from having resigned his life at Ráma's feet, and beholding him, been absorbed into him: Attend to me, ye heavenly spirits! while I explain the cause of these things: If a Bráhman, or Chandála, or demon, or any other person, be he a Mahárája or a beggar, shall have been guilty of the most enormous crimes, if at his death he pronounce the name of Ráma, it is expressly stated in the Vedas that that person's sins will be remitted, and that he will obtain everlasting salvation." Brahma and the gods, having thus conversed together, paid their adorations to Ráma, and departed to their own abodes."

death of Ráma an instant; why then do you hesitate to go in quest of Ráma?" To Sítá, suffused with tears and timid as a doe, Lakshmana replied thus:—"O goddess, there is no apprehension to be felt for Ráma; he is invulnerable in battle: O Sítá, it ill becomes you to speak to me thus: You are a charge committed to my care by the faithful and magnanimous Ráma, and I cannot leave you: It was not the voice of Ráma that was heard by you, but the voice of some hostile Rákshasa: Were his danger ever so imminent, Ráma would never utter accents so despicable and so unworthy of him; never would the saviour of the celestials exclaim:—'O Sítá, save me.'" Sítá, her eyes reddened with rage, replied to Lakshmana as follows:—"You cruel wretch, do you aspire to obtain me for yourself? Have you followed Ráma into the jungle for my sake, or as a secret emissary from Bharata? But I tell you that I will never leave my husband Ráma, nor desire another man: I will enter the blazing fire, but not even with my foot will I touch any man beside Ráma." Sítá then began to beat her breast with both her hands, when Lakshmana filled with agitation, thus replied with joined hands:—"O Sítá, I cannot reply to you who are my deity: Such language from a woman is not surprising, for women are regardless of what is right, and often rouse discord between brothers: O Sítá, your words are like red-hot iron in my ears." Then repenting of this harsh language, Lakshmana said:—"O beauteous one, I will go to Ráma: May good attend you, and all the gods protect you; I tremble at the necessity to which I am reduced! When I return may I see you with Ráma!" Sítá, drowned in tears, replied:—"O Lakshmana, if I am deprived of Ráma I will enter the river Godáveri, and hang myself, or take poison, or enter the blazing fire, but never will I touch any man save Ráma." Having thus vowed to Lakshmana, Sítá continued to beat her bosom in an agony of distress; and Lakshmana tried to console her, but she would not speak another word; and he bowed to her feet and went out in the forest to seek for Ráma.

Lakshmana assures Sítá that Ráma is in no danger, and that the voice was that of a Rákshasa.

Sítá charges Lakshmana with desiring to marry her.

Lakshmana reluctantly leaves Sítá alone and goes in search of Ráma.

Rávana visits the hermitage of Ráma in the guise of a religious mendicant. His address to Sítá.

When both Ráma and Lakshmana had thus been drawn

away from Sítá, the wicked Rávana left his chariot, and assumed the form of a mendicant, and went speedily towards the hermitage. He was clothed in a thin red garment, with a tuft of matted hair on the crown of his head, an umbrella in his hand, shoes on his feet, a trident, a bag hanging by his side with his provisions, and a dish to receive alms.[4] In this garb the evil one approached Sítá, and said:—"You pleasing fair one, whose smile and eyes are captivating, you shed a radiance around you: You timid one in full flower, dressed in yellow silk and adorned with garlands, how came you to reside in this forest? Who are you and whither have you come?" Seeing Rávana in the guise of a Bráhman, Sítá showed him every respect, and welcomed him with all that was proper to entertain a stranger, and related to him the story of herself and her lord, saying:—"Expelled from the Raj by the word of Kaikeyí, we roam about the thick forest guarded by our power: Be content and remain here until the return of my husband: Ráma will receive you with great respect, for he is pleasing in speech and a lover of devotees."

Sítá, seeing Rávana in the guise of a Bráhman, treats him with respect.

When Sítá had thus spoken, the mighty Raja of the Rákshasas replied in these heart-appalling words:—"Hear who I am, and whence I come; for I have taken this assumed form to see you: I am that Rávana, the tormentor of the world, by whom gods and men have been driven hither and thither; and it was by my order, O beautiful one, that Khara guarded this wilderness of Dándaka: I am the brother of Kuvera, and grandson of Pulastya, who was the son of Brahma: I have received a blessing from the self-existent Brahma: I am able to assume any form, or go to any place: My name is Rávana, and I am known throughout the universe by my power: Your beauty, O smiling one, arrayed in yellow silk, eclipses in my eyes the beauty of all my own wives: O Sítá, numerous are my wives, be you my Ráni, and the chief of them all: Lanká, my delightful

Rávana makes himself known to Sítá.

Invites Sítá to become his chief Ráni.

Describes his city and palaces.

[4] This is an accurate description of a religious mendicant such as may often be seen in the present day.

city, is an island surrounded by the sea, situated upon a mountain-top adorned with seven elevated peaks, encircled by a deep moat, filled with palaces and magnificent edifices, and renowned throughout the three worlds like Amarávati, the city of Indra: This capital of the Rákshasas is a charming place built by Viswa-karmá: There, O Sítá, you shall walk with me among the groves, and feel no wish to return to this forest: You shall be the chief of all my wives, and five thousand handmaids, adorned with every ornament, shall attend you!"

Wrathful reply of Sítá.

The slender-waisted Sítá, enraged at this address of Rávana, replied to him with contemptuous words as follows:—"Know that I am the daughter of Raja Janaka, the daughter-in-law of Mahárája Dasaratha, the beloved wife of Ráma, and that I esteem my husband as a deity: Know that, faithful to my vows, I am the devoted follower of my husband, who at the command of his father resides in the forest of Dándaka: Know that I rest upon Ráma, who is as great as the sovereign of the gods, and the source of all happiness, as Sachí rests upon her husband Indra: Know that I am devoted to that great and fortunate one, the chief of devotees, as Arundhatí is devoted to Vasishtha: As a lioness attends a strong lion, so am I the constant attendant of the strong, the full-chested, and the majestic Ráma: Do you, a pitiful jackal, wish to obtain a lioness, who am to you as a ray of the sun is to a fire-fly? Do you wish to snatch a fawn from a furious lion and hastily devour it?"

Rávana assumes his proper form.

Having heard the words of Sítá, the ten-headed Rávana twisted his hands together through rage, and spoke as follows:—"Infatuated as you are, O Sítá, I can only suppose that you know not my heroism and power: Standing in the air I can sustain with my hands both the earth and the sea, and am able to kill Yama himself in battle: I can torment the sun, or pierce through the earth with my arrows: O foolish one, behold me changing my form, and assuming any shape at pleasure!" Saying this, the angry Rávana threw off the form of a mendicant, and assumed his own shape, as

Description of Rávana.

vast as a mountain and as terrible as Yama. He had red

eyes, a vast breast, huge arms like the fore-legs of a lion, huge shoulders like those of a bull, and a spotted body. The hair on his ten heads emitted streams of fire, whilst his body was covered with black bristles like a mountain covered with the skins of black antelopes; and he was arrayed in garments of a blood-red colour, and monstrous earrings of heated gold flamed in all his ears. Thus with ten heads and twenty arms, and eyes glaring with rage, Rávana, Raja of the Rákshasas, stood before Sítá like a huge black cloud, and again spoke to her thus:—"Why are you attached to Ráma, who is clothed in the habit of a mendicant, and weak in understanding? If, O fair one, you desire a husband renowned throughout the three worlds, recline on me! I am a spouse worthy of you: O excellent one, abandon all thoughts of Ráma, and think upon me with affection, and I will never do that which is painful to you: It is foolish to reject me because I am a Rákshasa: I will, O timid one, be constantly under your control; and for a full year whilst your heart is affected for Ráma I will not speak a word to you that shall be unpleasing to your mind." [5]

Rávana remonstrates with Sítá.

Then that most wicked Rákshasa, intoxicated with evil desire, approached and seized Sítá as Chandra seized Rohiní in the air. With flaming eyes, and bending his frightful brows, he grasped the lotos-eyed Sítá by the hair of the head, whilst she cried out:—"O Ráma! O Lakshmana! save me!" Then that wicked wretch mounted with her in the air, as Garura carried off the wife of the Raja of the serpents; and he seized her by the hand, as a Súdra seizes the Veda, and placed her on his chariot which was near by, and carried her away. Meanwhile Sítá cried out, like one distracted, for Ráma and Lakshmana; and threatened death to the evil-minded Rávana.[6]

Rávana carries Sítá through the air and places her in his chariot.

[5] The appearance of Rávana on this occasion is even more graphically described in the Adhyátma Rámáyana:—"Rávana in his rage extended his form to an immense size; his heads seemed shrouded in the heavens; his feet to descend to the bottomless abyss; his ten heads were as ten mountains; his twenty arms as the branches of the largest trees; his eyes as the caves in a rock."

[6] The story of the illusive deer, and the outrage committed upon Sítá, is so beautifully treated in the Dwipada Rámáyana, or Telugu version of the Rámá-

HISTORY OF INDIA. PART IV.

At this time the mighty Jatáyus, the Chief of Vultures, of vast energy and god-like strength, lay asleep on the

Cries of Sitá. Jatáyus, the Chief of Vultures, hears the cries of Sitá.

yana, as to be well worthy of notice, as exhibiting some of that charming play of language which frequently characterizes Telugu poetry. The following English translation of the passage is from the pen of a well-known Telugu scholar, Mr C. P. Brown, late of the Madras Civil Service, and is extracted from the Madras Journal of Literature for 1839:—

"The fairy hind was of extraordinary beauty; as it rambled about, chewing the cud, with a tail as freakish as that of the peacock; the whiteness of the belly gleamed through the bowers; again its reddish sides glistened like amber; when vaulting it looked like the rainbow; or, as it sprung up it flashed like lightning. The forest herds of deer were startled at its singular appearance; for it lay as in ambush, and its form was suddenly seen, now here, now there; one while it drew near, and then as though startled it bounded aloft, rushing through the thickets; then with a leap it took refuge in a bower. One while it put its nose to the ground, wagging its tail and pricking its ears at distant sounds. Then it pricked one quivering ear and flew like the wind; then it reposed on a grassy spot; then rising it drew near the hermitage; it scratched its ear with one foot, and shook the high flowering boughs with its horns so as to pour the blossoms on the soil.

"While it thus strayed among the bowers of the recluses, the blooming Sítá with tinkling anklets came out of the arbour to collect the opening flowers. At the sight of this fairy fawn she was filled with surprise; she called to the lord of men, her spouse, and thus addressed him:—'Never till this day did I see so charming a creature as this! how I long to recline, O Prince, on a couch formed of its skin: O thou leader of the solar race, pursue this creature, strike it, and bring me its hide; yet why? I wish thou couldst catch it without frightening it, which would be far better: O my spouse, we should keep it at our leafy dwelling, and when our appointed term finishes let us take the golden fawn home to the city and show it to the Mahúraja, and to my aunts and cousins; how they will be delighted at such a present.'

"Thus spoke Sítá in affectionate tones; Lakshmana listened to her, and thus addressed Ráma:—'Was there ever, brother, seen so bright-hued a fawn? Can it be that a brute creature has such wondrous colours? It must be a mere delusion, unfit to be credited! Surely it must be a vision raised by (Asuras) demons; besides, possibly it is the hermit Márícha who lives here, for he is a cruel demon and continually roams the forest in a superhuman form: Have not we heard so? possibly it is that fiend; perchance he has come here to tempt us into ruin: Do not then set your gentle heart on this and be disquieted, or entertain the thought of catching the fawn: Besides, though the lady of Mithilá (i.e. Sítá) should be so simple, be not thou so foolish, O prince of men!'

"At these words Ráma looked on the bright countenance of Sítá; he smiled, and thus addressed Lakshmana:—'Why be agitated at this, O son of Sumitrá? Though even it were a giant-raised vision, certainly will I bring the deer home, and I will slay the mightiest giants that can come: Believe these two points; one or the other will I do; for I will chase it, I will slay it, and give the hide to Janaka's daughter: After so long a time she has made only this one request: Can I neglect Sítá? Can I decline the deed she points out? Stay thou with her affectionately, and neglect not the lady of the bower.'

"He said and committed all to Lakshmana; and gently taking his bow from

beautiful peak of a mountain, with his back towards the resplendent god of day; and the cries of Sítá reached his

his brother's hand, he bent it, and duly set out, like Siva when he set out in pursuit of the *Lion-giant* who carried off the sacrifice.

* * * * * * *

"He went on stinking behind the bush stooping as he walked, bending and running alongside; whenever the deer looked back, he stood concealed; he was on the point of catching it, it escaped, and he was vexed. He held the bow and arrows ready to shoot, he laid his footsteps softly on the soil so as to make no sound, as he observed its traces; he eyed its path, and goings, and concealed himself. 'Here it is! I'll catch it! Here it comes! See! It's mine!' cried he merrily.

"Thus thought he, but the deer caught a glimpse of him from afar; it let him draw near; but as he stretched to seize it, it bounded from him and fled. 'Alas!' cried he in anger, as it stood to gaze at Ráma. Then it fled to the horizon, while the foam flowed from the corners of its mouth; it seemed out of heart; then looking at the huntsman it sprung up elastic and fled at speed, while the skies seemed to flash with its brightness; then it vaulted away; its tongue flashing like lightning bright as a waving torch; for it moved as rapid as a potter's wheel circling at speed. Then it paused as though faint; it seemed to drop close to him; then like a goshawk it flew up to heaven. Ráma was now wearied as well as astonished; he paused, he looked around; but now the creature to cajole him stood still; but as he formed the idea of shooting it, again it vanished; then as he gave up the hope and turned homewards, behold it was again at his side, like a vision; and carried him who was now wearying, farther and farther, for deluding his glance, it fled into inaccessible hills.

"Seeing this Ráma perceived that this was a fairy hind; he exclaimed:—'Whose, O my foe, wilt thou hide from me?'. . . .

"So saying he levelled the celestial arrow at the prey; which instantly rolled over, and now laying aside the fairy form, uttering a delusive shriek, cried:—'O Lakshmana! O Sítá!'

"Then stretching his prodigious giant corpse on the soil, the wretch gave up his life; it seemed as though all the giants and their prince Rávana fell; as though their capital, Lanká, perished.

"When this fairy deer fell on the earth, the lord of Sítá was well pleased; for he clearly saw it was indeed Márícha; he remembered with approbation the words of his brother. How deeply, thought he, will he and the bright-eyed daughter of Janaka grieve at hearing their names uttered in the dying shriek of this deluder: for he imitated my voice exactly; I marvel where they are and what has become of them.

"So saying he mournfully pondered. But the dreadful cry reached the ears of Sítá, and struck her with horror to the earth; then when she recovered her senses, she gazed wildly around and was utterly downcast.

"Then in her agitation she raised the weeping cry, and gazing on Lakshmana, she exclaimed:—'Alas! son of Sumitrá, what may this be that has befallen us this day; surely Ráma cries on thee with weeping voice: O hero, listen to that voice! Wilt not thou give ear to it? or does it not reach thy ear? thou shrinkest not; thou showest no terror, or horror, thou grievest not; what is this? while my heart heaves violently with horror and despair! Alas! he went alone into the forest: It is late, and he cometh not; surely he hath this day fallen into the hands of the giants: Delay not! go, I pray thee, to the prince!'

ears as though he had heard sounds in a dream, and they rent the heart of the Raja of Birds like the stroke of a

"She spoke pouring floods of tears, and Lakshmana replied thus to the child of Janaka:—'Mother, why art thou alarmed? Surely no evil shall ever befall thy spouse Ráma: Dost not thou know the valour of thy beloved lord? Is it right to give vent to words so agonizing? Surely this is the scream of some demon who wishes to terrify thy heart: What hath such a pitiful shriek to do with the hero of the solar race? O daughter of Janaka, wherefore art thou thus agitated? I will without hesitation follow the prince Ráma; and shall the giants who oppose him maintain their footing? They are no more than crickets that exult against wild-fire—They will in the end fall into it and turn to ashes; or like the mighty serpents that raise themselves against the eagle and perish in his talons; or like a herd of elephants that rush upon the lion: No, I am afraid to leave thee, no, be not weary of me; plant these my words in thy heart: Be not grieved, O daughter of the king of men.' At these words the fires of wrath arose in the heart of the lady, and grieved, she thus addressed the son of Sumitrá:—'Thou! art thou faithful towards Ráma? Why art thou this day so base? Even though thou hearest Ráma calling on thee by name, thou art, like a foe, filled with hatred in thy heart. Is this becoming?'. . . . . .

"Thus spoke Lakshmana with his eyes filled with tears, and as his heart could bear no more he exclaimed:—'Mother, I am gone, I will without delay bring thee thy lord; grieve not!'

"He said and departed. But first he drew seven circles round the bower, and said:—'Mother, pass not these limits, and should any one venture to cross these lines, the intruder shall instantly pay for it with his head.'

"Then he addressed the god of fire, saying:—'Be not careless. I commit the dame to thee!'

"Then he respectfully bowed to the dame, and anxiously bent his way towards Ráma. The god of purity (fire) guarded Sitá, and to delude her foes he formed a fairy image of her which shone most glorious; so that all would have taken her for the real Sitá.

"At that moment Rávana the giant arose with agitated heart. In one hand he bore a staff, in the other a scrip; in his forehead was an upright mark, and on his fingers he wore large rings of blessed grass with the sanctified thread across his broad breast; his right hand carried a large rosary; he was robed in clayed dust-colour vest, with a necklace of the blessed tulási tree, and he walked along stooping with the weight: His body was emaciated; he wore sandals, and a weather-beaten umbrella; his hair was rolled up in a large bunch; in all points indeed he was a Sanyási, and walked along counting over his beads and muttering his breviary: He dreaded lest the real Sanyásis should see and detect him; his head tottered with hoar antiquity; he sidled and stole along peeping to see where the fair one lay concealed. Then he would halt and exclaim Hari! Hari! Then a little recovering he drew near the skirts of the bower. At this sight the rural deities filled with alarm exclaimed:—'Alas, this sinful wretch is come to bear away the innocent Sitá!' He now stood at the door in the exact garb of a Sanyási. The daughter of Mithilá instantly arose, supposing that this hypocrite was in truth a real hermit; she folded her lily hands (and incautiously crossed the magic circles drawn around her. *These words are spurious.*) The lady paid him all due reverence, which he shuddering received, and as he viewed the damsel, he spoke thus:—'Lady, how is it that thou dwellest in this desolate retreat of the

thunder-bolt. Instantly arousing himself through the affection he bore towards Ráma, he heard the noise of

forests; how art thou left here alone? Art thou a goddess, or how can loveliness so divine be found among the dames of earth-roaming mortals. . . . Who art thou, O fair one, why art thou wearing away life in this wilderness? O tell me.'

"He spoke, and Sítá reverently replied:—'I am the spouse, O saintly one, of the stainless hero Ráma: My sire is Janaka, and Dasaratha is my uncle; my name is Sítá: As the exalted Dasaratha hath banished us, Ráma hath come to this wilderness, with me and Lakshmana; we three have taken up our abode in this retreat as steadfast recluses: But a golden hind appeared to me, and looking at the Prince I requested its hide; he is gone to seek it; after which I heard a dreadful cry of "O Lakshmana," which piereed and dwelt in my ear: In my grief I reviled Lakshmana and bade him begone: He is gone, and returneth not; I know not which way to turn.' She spoke, and looking at the hermit said:—'Reverend Sir, tell me your name, and why you are come to this place?'

"The prince of Lankâ scrupled not to lay aside for awhile his humble guise, and thus replied:—'Lady of the gentle eyes, hear! I am the ruler of Lankâ in the midst of the rolling Ocean: I am the Chief of giants, the son of Visravas, and brother of Kuvera, lord of Yakshas, and universally victorious; by name, Rávana, he who in battle faces and vanquishes both deities and giants: Lady! I heard of the riches of thy blooming face, and am come, full of eagerness, to behold it: Why, O dame, shouldst thou thus pining dwell with a paltry fellow in the wilderness? All my realm, O bright-eyed lady, shall be at thy command with its wealth; for thy comfort and pomp there are bright chariots, and all other princely vehicles; and in the palaces thou shalt be waited upon by the wives and daughters of fairies and demigods, genies and giants: When the light of thy footsteps shines on my realm it shall blaze as with a wall of rubies: O Lady, the lilies of thine eyes shall shed their radiance like a triumphal wreath over my gates: Thy sweet smiles shall shine as the summer moon over the ocean of my happiness: Come, come to my city of Lankâ.'

"At these words Sítá was indeed filled with alarm, but like a spirited woman she looked upon him with scorn, and plucking up a blade of grass, she turned her heart to Ráma, and bending her eyes on the grass she thus spoke, without even looking at the enemy of gods:—'Fellow! is it fit for thee to address me thus? Surely ambrosia was created for deities and not for dogs! What face hast thou to dare to speak to me who appertain to the god-like Ráma? Be decent and be gone to thy noble town: If thou wilt not go away by fair means, and if thou ponderest on any iniquity, know that my noble lord is matchless in archery; it was he who burst the bow of Siva and who smote the heads of the giants: He will reduce thee and thine to nothing! Thou art to him no more than a fox is to a lion, or a fly to an elephant, or a streamlet to the ocean, or a crow to an eagle! so vast is the difference between him and thee: Be wise then and retire to thy Lankâ.'

"She spoke, but the giant looked furiously at the daughter of Janaka, and throwing off his guise, in his insolence, as love stirred his heart, he shook with eagerness, and the gems that adorned his ten heads faded away; then had love more pôwer than his twenty arms! He shone glorious in gemmed panoply, as the flames of love lighted up his visage. Dreadful was his form, and at the horrid sight as he advanced to her, poor Sítá fainted before him; she sunk down like a

Rávana's chariot more terrible than the rolling of thunder; and he looked around him, and cast his eyes towards the heavens, and presently beheld Rávana carrying away Sítá in his chariot, and heard Sítá weeping aloud. Then Jatáyus was filled with rage and soared into the air; and he stopped the chariot of the furious Rávana, and poured forth these vituperations:—"O thou ten-headed monster, I am the ancient Raja of the Vultures, by name Jatáyus, of mighty strength, fixed in the path of virtue and devoted to truth: You are the famous Raja of the Rákshasas, of invincible energy, by whom the gods have been often vanquished in battle: O descendant of Pulastya, I am an aged bird, and am now destitute of strength, yet you shall see my valour in the combat, and shall not depart home alive: Ráma, the son of Dasaratha, equal to Indra and Varuna, and devoted to the good of all, is sovereign of the world: This beautiful woman is Sítá, his lawful spouse: How can a virtuous Raja dishonour the wife of another? It behoves a Raja above all men to protect the wives of others: O despicable wretch, abandon your design of carrying away the wife of another, lest I hurl you from your splendid chariot like fruit that is torn from a tree: Instantly release Sítá, lest Ráma consume you with his flaming eye, as Vrita was consumed by the thunder-bolt of Indra: I am old,—whilst you are young, and encircled by mail, and mounted on a chariot, and armed with darts,—yet I will never permit you to carry away Sítá: As a Súdra is never permitted to touch the Vedas, so you shall never carry away Sítá."

Stops the chariot of Rávana, and demands the release of Sítá.

At these words the eyes of Rávana were blood-red with anger, and he ran violently upon the Raja of Vultures. Then a mighty conflict ensued between Jatáyus and Rávana, like the conflict between a cloud and a lofty mountain. Rávana rained a tempest of winged arrows upon the Raja of Vul-

Terrible conflict between Rávana and Jatáyus.

forest blossom before the rushing gale. The ten-faced giant beheld her drowned in tears, and with panting bosom and dishevelled tresses and broken garland, while her whole form shuddered with anguish. He instantly seized the lady of the bright eyes, and placed her on his car; driven by fate to bear with him her who was to him the goddess of death, this foe of the gods sprung from earth, and hurried his steeds along the skyey road."

tures; but Jatáyus seized the arrows on their way, and mounting on the back of Rávana he lacerated him with his talons, and then destroyed his chariot and his asses. Then Rávana sprang from his car with Sítá in his arms, when Jatáyus pounced again upon his back, and tore him with his claws and beak until the Rákshasa appeared exhausted with agony and loss of blood. At length the ten-headed one set Sítá upon the ground, and belaboured Jatáyus with his fists for a full hour; and then cut off his wings and feet with a scimitar, and the valiant Bird fell upon the earth with mortal wounds. Seeing his enemy bathed in blood and nearly expiring, Rávana then approached Sítá. She with ornaments all in confusion, and countenance convulsed with grief, clung eagerly to the tall trees, crying out:—"Save me! Save me!" He, like the all-destroying Yama, seized her by her black locks and again mounted the air. Adorned with golden ornaments, and arrayed in yellow silk, Sítá appeared in the air like a flash of lightning, whilst Rávana seemed like a dark mountain illumined with fire. He being black, resembled a dark cloud driven by the wind; while she, bright as burnished gold, appeared like the lightning within the cloud. The divine raiment given to her by the holy Anasúyá, with the ointment and the necklace, shone with peculiar radiance; and her fair face in the arms of Rávana resembled the moon emerging from behind a black cloud. She, bright as the most burnished gold, appeared, while held by the black Raja of the Rákshasas, like a thread of gold round the loins of an elephant.

Jatáyus mortally wounded.

Rávana carries away Sítá through the air.

Poetical contrast of the black complexion of Rávana with the golden complexion of Sítá.

Then Sítá cried out:—"O my beloved husband, where are you? Your wife is being carried off by a Rákshasa, and why are you so cruel as to abandon her? If you do not destroy this wicked Rákshasa, it will ever be a stain upon your family and race: Where are you also, O Lakshmana, the brother of my husband? If you are offended at my bitter words in sending you for Ráma, I pray your forgiveness and implore you to deliver me from this Rákshasa!" Then turning to Rávana she again wrathfully reproached him:—"You pride yourself upon being a valiant hero, but

Lamentations of Sítá.

Bitterly reproaches Rávana.

you have acted like a mean coward: A hero never takes that which is another's, save by conquest; and if you had taken me after defeating Ráma, I would have considered you to be a hero, and would not have refused to become your wife: Even now, if you had the pride of a hero, you would wait here and fight Ráma; and if you defeated him, you might carry me where you pleased: Think not however to save yourself by flight, for rest assured that wherever you go, you must fall by the hand of Ráma: Your end is fast approaching, and the day is not far distant when you will be sent to the mansions of Yama, and float there in the river Bytarani, and be torn in pieces by the dogs of Yama, and endure everlasting misery."

Rávana approaches the mountain Rishya-múkha.

Whilst Sítá was thus filling the air with her cries and lamentations, Rávana approached the mountain named Rishya-múkha; and Sítá beheld five Monkeys seated upon the mountain, and she thought in her heart that she would throw her ornaments down amongst the Monkeys, in the hope that they might find their way to Ráma. Sítá then, unknown to Rávana, threw out all her ornaments, except the jewelled flower upon her head; and they dropped down to the earth like falling stars; and she threw out her veil in like manner. And the five Monkeys saw what was taking place, and they said one to the other:—"This is the mighty Rávana, who is carrying away by force some beautiful woman, and her lamentations can be heard on this mountain: She is calling out the names of Ráma and Lakshmana; and she is throwing down her ornaments and garments that we may take care of them, and make them over to those who shall come in search for her: Be it so or not, we will keep the things until we shall hear more of this matter." So the Monkeys kept the ornaments and the veil concealed in the valley.

Sítá drops her ornaments amongst the monkeys on the mountain.

The monkeys preserve the ornaments.

Rávana conducts Sítá to his palace at Lanká.

Meantime the wicked Rávana had crossed the ocean and descended with Sítá upon the island of Lanká; and he conducted her into his magnificent palace, and into one of the inner apartments. He then called for a number of female Rákshasís, and commanded them to attend upon Sítá night

and day; and to allow no man to enter her apartments save himself; and to procure her everything she might desire in the way of ornaments, or perfumes, or dresses, or beds, or food, and never to say an unkind word to her upon pain of death. Rávana then went out, and sent for eight of his bravest Rákshasas, and acquainted them with his enmity against Ráma; and he commanded them to go forth and become spies upon Ráma and Lakshmana, and to put them to death by any means in their power, but to bring him with all speed the news of any attempt that Ráma might take to avenge his wrongs.

Appoints female attendants and gives them special instructions.

Sends eight Rákshasas to be spies upon Ráma and Lakshmana.

When the wicked Rávana had despatched his spies to watch Ráma, he thought himself secure against every enemy. Accordingly he returned to the apartments in which he had left Sítá; and he found her sitting in the midst of the Rákshasí women, like a deer surrounded by tigers; and her head was downcast, and the tears flowed in torrents from her eyes, for her mind was ever fixed upon her beloved husband Ráma. And Rávana approached that wretched one, and began to address her in caressing terms as follows:—"O Sítá, hear what I am going to say, for if you attend to my words, it will make us both happy: Cast aside your grief and look upon me with a favourable eye: Lament no more for Ráma, for never again will you see him in this mortal life: An impassable ocean, a hundred miles in breadth, lies between Ráma and my palace; and no human being will ever be able to take you away from this place: Even the gods fear to enter my palace without my permission; and how should a being so contemptible as a mortal man attempt to enter? I have an invincible army composed of millions upon millions of mighty warriors, so that there is no one in the three worlds who can withstand my power: Abandon, therefore, all thought and anxiety respecting Ráma, and receive me as your husband: Your youth and beauty will not last for ever, and you should make the best use of them while they last, and not waste away your life in fruitless sorrowing: If you will be my first wife, all my other wives shall be your slaves, and you shall be the chief

Rávana returns to Sítá.

His caressing address to Sítá.

Ráni of this golden city of Lanká: Here you shall enjoy the choicest delicacies without fear and without care, and shall obtain to your heart's desire things which are rarities even in the court of Indra: O Sítá, consider yourself very fortunate that I have chosen you to be my spouse: See how my palace outshines in beauty the palace of Indra: It is a hundred miles round about, and is the work of Viswa-karma, who is the mighty architect of the gods: Behold the lofty mansions which reach the skies and seem to deride the heavens! The jewels which the gods wear upon their heads are employed here to decorate the roads of Lanká: View the many gardens and pleasure-grounds, compared with which the garden of Indra is as nothing: See that beautiful Asoka garden, which is the chief of all, and cannot be described: The joyous season of spring reigns there throughout the year, and the minds of all who enter it are delighted beyond measure, and especially enlivened with the song of bees: My chariot Pushpaka will take you wherever you please, and assume any shape you may desire: The riches in my treasuries are beyond all that the god Kuvera ever heard or conceived: All these shall be yours, and I myself will be your slave, if you will only condescend to take me for your husband."

Points out the beauties of his palace and gardens.

At these words of Rávana, the wife of Ráma was filled with wrath, and her eyes and countenance became red as the rising sun. Keeping some blades of grass between herself and Rávana, she said to that wicked Rákshasa:—"No words would have been necessary from me, O evil one, had you endeavoured to carry me away in the presence of Ráma or his brother Lakshmana; for then at that moment you would have been despatched to the abode of Yama: Even now do not consider yourself secure, nor place too much confidence upon the ocean which surrounds Lanká: Ráma regards the sea as a mere rivulet of water, which he can cross over or dry up by means of his arrows alone: For your offence you will fall by his arrows, and your body will become the food of dogs and crows: For your offence the whole race of the Rákshasas will be destroyed, and no one will be left in all

Sítá's wrathful and threatening refusal of his addresses.

your family to offer the funeral cakes: Boast not of your army; for had you the whole universe on your side, it could not save you from death: Your wicked desires will never be gratified either in this life or in the lives to come; for I will give up the ghost of my own accord rather than yield to you."

Rávana orders the female attendants to conduct Sítá to the Asoka garden, and to use four means to induce her to yield.

When Rávana heard this speech from Sítá, he was vexed beyond all measure; but he called for the female attendants, and bade them conduct Sítá to the Asoka garden, saying within himself:—"The beauties of that place will excite passion in her heart, and induce her in the end to yield herself to me." Rávana then said to the females:—"I leave you now to employ four different means for persuading Sítá to become my wife: *First*, you must use sweet and endearing words in speaking to her; *secondly*, you must give her good clothes and ornaments and delicious food; *thirdly*, you must praise me in her presence, and find every fault with her husband Ráma; and *fourthly*, you must threaten her with every evil unless she consent to become my wife: If you succeed in persuading her to yield herself to me, I will reward you handsomely." So saying Rávana left the apartment, and the women began to do as he had commanded, but they could make no impression upon the mind of Sítá. Every thought of her heart was fixed upon her beloved husband Ráma, and none of the words of the Rákshasís entered the doors of her ears. She would not sleep, she refused to take any food, her beautiful form wasted away, and her golden colour became dark; and she passed her days and nights in tears for her husband Ráma.[7]

Sítá shuts her ears to all entreaties.

Her deep sorrow.

[7] The Rákshasí women, or demon attendants upon Sítá, are described in far stronger language in the Adhyátma Rámáyana, as will be seen from the following extract:—"These demons were so horrid in their forms that the souls of mortals on beholding them would quit their bodies through dismay. The female demons constantly watched over her, while Sítá seated in the midst of them, overcome with agony and despair, passed her time in silent adoration of Ráma, and in meditation on his name. She never changed her clothes, she scarcely tasted food. As a rose withers when deprived of refreshing streams, so did Sítá languish from the absence of Ráma. The surrounding demons, as an eclipse before the moon, continually terrified her with their words and looks, while they attempted to persuade her to comply with Rávana's vicious inclinations. One said:—'Consent to

Review of the foregoing story of the capture of Sítá; its powerful effect upon the Hindús.

There is not perhaps in the whole range of Hindú literature any tradition which awakens so many sympathies in the minds of the people as that of the capture of Sítá by Rávana, and the subsequent efforts to procure her deliverance. The original departure of the exiles into the jungle is a powerful scene, but although it involves painful ideas of privation and distress, it is wholly disconnected with any idea of outrage or dishonour. The gambling scene in the Mahá Bhárata, in which Yudhishthira stakes and loses his wife Draupadí, is highly sensational; but Draupadí is not really separated from her husbands, nor is she, excepting for a very brief space of time, in the absolute power of another man. But the treacherous outrage committed upon Sítá is harrowing to the last degree. Indeed the idea that a wife is at the mercy of a barbarous and unscrupulous savage, of another race and another complexion, would be equally maddening to the European and the Hindú. But still the feelings of the Hindú would be wounded by a number of minor circumstances, which would scarcely enter the mind of the European whilst dwelling upon his larger sorrow. The idea of physical chastity is carried to such a fastidious excess by the modern Hindús, that it robs women of their personal freedom and deprives them of all mental culture, whilst it utterly fails to secure that purity of thought and feeling which finds expression in more enlightened communities. The play of this national sentiment is

Harrowing character of the outrage.

Peculiarly affecting to Hindús.

Fastidious idea of physical chastity.

Play of the national sentiment in the story of Sítá.

Rávana's wishes, or I will devour thee.' Another said:—'Banish all regard for Ráma or I will plunge thee into the fathomless ocean.' Others threatened to grind her between their teeth. In this manner the demons harassed her with their persecutions."

strikingly illustrated in the story of Sítá. It will be seen hereafter that Ráma bitterly lamented that his wife should have been even touched by a strange man; whilst Lakshmana declared that he could not identify the ornaments which Sítá had worn upon her neck and arms, because he had never ventured to look above the feet of his brother's wife. But yet it will already have been seen, that the delicate Princess who had been reared in the seclusion of the zenana, and who is indeed one of the purest creations of the Hindú bard, brings a direct and gross charge against her husband's brother, which could scarcely have entered the mind of a European lady, and certainly would never be put into her mouth in any drama or romance, without far stronger evidence of the justice of the suspicion.

Universal popularity of the story.

Under the circumstances indicated it will be easy to understand that the narrative of the outrage committed upon Sítá never fails to leave a deep impression upon the Hindú mind; and so universally popular is the story that every scene is indelibly fixed upon the imagination of almost every Hindú boy and girl, husband and wife, father and matron.

Prominent scenes in the narrative.

The pictures follow one another with a rapidity and vigour of painting which can scarcely be realized by a single perusal.

Rávana surrounded by his Counsellors.

First appears the terrible Rávana, with his ten crowned heads towering in the air, and his twenty arms glistening with jewels, and spreading out like the branches of a tree. He is seated upon a golden throne in front of his palace, and around him are seated his Rákshasa Counsellors; as Indra, the god of the firmament, is surrounded by the winds or Maruts, who are his advisers. Next

appears the dreadful sister of Rávana, with her ears and nose cut off, roaring aloud with cruelty and rage; who kindles such a fire of sensual desire in the heart of Rávana that he refuses to listen to all counsels and all warnings. Next is to be seen the departure of Rávana and Márícha upon a chariot which rides swiftly through the air. Then follows the strange picture of the golden deer, sparkling with silver spots and jewelled eyes, gambolling before the hermitage. Next the deer is mortally wounded by Ráma's arrow, and suddenly assumes the form of Márícha, and imitates the cry of Ráma. Then the eye reverts to the quiet hut, in which Sítá is carrying on an angry and sensational dialogue with Lakshmana, which terminates in her being left alone in the hermitage, exposed to all the designs of Rávana. Then follows the climax. The pseudo Sanniási presents himself clothed in a red cloth, with matted hair, an umbrella, a trident, a provision bag, and an alms dish. He finds his addresses disregarded, and suddenly assumes his own stupendous and monstrous form, and seizes the trembling wife and carries her away like a Súdra who has seized the Vedas. Then follows the desperate struggle between Rávana and the Vulture Raja, in which the Rákshasa is fearfully lacerated by the talons of the gigantic Bird, and the chariot is utterly destroyed. Lastly is to be seen the flight through the air of the golden-complexioned Sítá in the grasp of the black Rákshasa, like a golden thread round the loins of an elephant; the arrival of the hapless wife at the palace of Rávana, and her utter desolation in the inner apartments and the Asoka grove.

Appearance of Rávana's sister.

Departure of Rávana and Márícha in an aerial chariot.

The golden deer.

Sítá taunting Lakshmana.

Rávana as a Sanniási.

The outrage.

The combat between Rávana and Jatáyus.

Flight of Rávana with Sítá through the air.

Sítá's desolation.

Strange sentiment of Sítá that she would have yielded to Rávana had he conquered Ráma.

There is one circumstance in the narrative to

which allusion has already been made,[8] and which is well worthy of consideration. Sítá reproaches Rávana for his cowardice in not fighting Ráma; and declares that if he had conquered her husband she could not have refused to become his wife. This strange sentiment seems to have been fully in accordance with the ancient laws of war, by which the wife and possessions of a conquered Chieftain became the property of the conqueror. But although the rule was actually laid down, yet the history of India shows that the affections will occasionally override all such merciless laws; and that Hindú wives have preferred perishing by the hands of their husbands to becoming the prey of a victorious enemy.

Hindú women superior to the rule.

[8] See Vol. I. pp. 57, 201, 203.

CHAPTER XVIII.

RÁMA'S SEARCH FOR SÍTÁ.

Narrative of Ráma's search for Sitá.

THE narrative of Ráma's sorrow at the loss of Sítá, and his eager search for her in the jungle, contains nothing that demands any preliminary explanation. It comprises much poetical description, and a curious story of a female devotee named Sarvarí, who was of low caste, but obtained salvation through a mantra taught her by Mantaga the sage. The narrative is as follows:—

Ráma's meeting with Lakshmana.

Meantime the mighty hero Ráma had returned towards his hermitage after killing the deer-formed Márícha, and he carried the skin upon his shoulders to present it to Sítá. Presently Lakshmana appeared with a sad countenance, and told him why he had left Sítá alone in the hut. And Ráma became greatly alarmed, and said:—"O my brother, you have done wrong in leaving Sítá alone: Women are generally devoid of sense, and no wise man would attend to their words." So saying, Ráma ran with all speed to the hut, and his brother Lakshmana followed him; and when they came to the hut, they found that it was utterly deserted, and that Sítá had gone they knew not where. At this sight Ráma became speechless; his bow dropped from his hand, his hair became dishevelled, his girdle became loosened, and he sank upon the earth in a swoon. Lakshmana caught him in his arms, and fanned him with branches of new leaves, and splashed his face with water; and after a while he regained his senses and cried out for Sítá.

They discover that Sítá has left the hut.

Agony of Ráma.

Then Ráma and Lakshmana both rose up and went throughout the forest to search for the lost one; but they found her not, and they returned in great grief to the hermitage and saw that it was as desolate as before. When it was evening the full moon arose in the heavens, and Ráma said:—"O Moon, you can gaze over the whole world, and no corner of the earth is unknown to you; can you not therefore tell me where my beloved is gone?" And Ráma passed the whole of that night in the desolate hermitage.

The search.

Ráma's address to the Moon.

Early next morning Ráma and Lakshmana performed their customary devotions, and then went forth again in search of Sítá; and after awhile they came to the place where Jatáyus, Chief of Vultures, had fought against Rávana. And Ráma said to Lakshmana:—"O brother, here are signs that a battle has been fought in this place: Let us search this part of the forest, and find, if possible, the track of the conqueror." Ráma and Lakshmana then proceeded a little farther, and presently they came in sight of the huge Jatáyus, with streams of blood flowing from his mutilated wings. And Ráma said to Jatáyus:—"Tell me, O virtuous and pious Vulture, whither my wife has gone, and who it was that carried her away." Jatáyus replied:—"O Ráma, the wicked Rávana, the Raja of the Rákshasas, has carried away Sítá towards the south: O Ráma, I am losing all control over my body; I see not with my eyes, and my life is departing from my body." The mighty Chief of Vultures then looked up into the face of Ráma, and his eyes became fixed, and he gave up the ghost. At that moment, whilst Ráma and Lakshmana were still lamenting, a chariot of fire descended from Vaikuntha, which is the heaven of Vishnu, with four attendants therein; and one carried the shell, and another the chakra, and the third the mace, and the fourth the lotos; and the soul of Jatáyus arose from the dead body, and mounted the chariot at the will of Ráma; and offering up a long prayer to Ráma, he ascended to the world of Vaikuntha, and became absorbed in Vishnu.

Ráma and Lakshmana discover the body of the dying Jatáyus.

Last words of Jatáyus.

The soul of Jatáyus ascends to heaven in a chariot of fire.

When Ráma beheld the happy fate of Jatáyus, he said to his brother:—"O Lakshmana, though this Raja of Vul-

Ráma and Lakshmana perform the funeral rites for Jatáyus.

tures has ascended to heaven, still we should perform his funeral rites according to the custom of the inhabitants of the earth: Bring therefore rice and dry wood that I may prepare a funeral pile and burn the dead body." So Lakshmana did as his elder brother commanded, and the funeral pile was prepared, and the remains of Jatáyus were placed thereon; and Ráma produced a flame by rubbing together two pieces of wood, and set fire to the pile, and burned the dead body with all due ceremonies. Then the two brothers bathed in the river Godáveri, and sprinkled water for the soul of the departed. They then went into the forest and shot deer, and cut the flesh into small pieces, and gave them to all the birds of the jungle. Thus the soul of Jatáyus was secured in the enjoyments of heaven.[1]

---

[1] The account given in the Adhyátma Rámáyana of the death of Jatáyus and his ascension to heaven, is well worthy of consideration, and is accordingly extracted as follows:—"When the funeral rites had been concluded, Ráma called out, saying:—'Assume, Jatáyus! my form; ascend into paradise; I have granted salvation unto thee in my form, which is the highest rank thou canst obtain.' No sooner had Ráma uttered these words than Jatáyus became possessed of four arms as Vishnu. A car descended from heaven in which he seated himself to proceed to paradise. Such was the dignity and grandeur of his appearance, it was as if a thousand suns shone on his face. In his four hands he held a shell, a chakra, a mace, and a lotos; a crown of pearls adorned his head; his body was ornamented with jewels; a veil of brocade covered his shoulders; and four of Vishnu's attendants waved glittering chámaras over his head. The heavenly choristers sang hymns by his side; the nymphs of paradise danced before him.

"The soul of Jatáyus in obtaining this exalted station was animated with joy and gratitude, and thus addressed Ráma:—'Thou holdest, O Lord! a bow in thy hand, and therefore art thou distinguished by the title of the Archer,—as such I worship thee. Thou extendest thy mercy towards the oppressed, thou art the protector of the defenceless,—as such I adore thee. Brahma and the gods pour on their heads the dust that has been under thy feet, for that which thou touchest is sacred,—as such I honour thee. Thy praises are unbounded, they are beyond the powers of description: Before all things thou wert; the creation, the preservation, and the destruction of the world are in thy hands. Thou art the only God, the fountain of benevolence, enthroned in the hearts of all things animate and inanimate,—as such I offer my adorations unto thee. Thou hast a bow and arrows in thy hands, but the archers of this world yield to thee in skill. Thou art the first among the gods, the first among mankind,—as such I praise thee. Thou art the sole object of adoration to the gods, to the saints, to the serpents, to the Gandharvas, to the heavenly spirits, who prostrate themselves at thy feet,—as such I worship thee. Thou didst punish the Kshatriyas, whose hearts were hardened with pride and obstinacy against thee; thou didst humble their pride and they now fear thee,—as such I pay my devotions unto thee. Here

When the day was far spent, and the night was drawing nigh, the two brethren returned to the hermitage; but Ráma passed the night in lamentations, for he knew now that Rávana had carried away Sítá towards the south.

Ráma and Lakshmana proceed towards the south in search of Sítá.

When the morning had dawned, and the customary devotions had been performed, Ráma and Lakshmana departed out of the hermitage, and proceeded towards the south. When they had gone some distance, they came in sight of a vast and mighty demon named Kabandha, and Lakshmana beholding him, mistook him for a mountain. And Lakshmana said to his brother:—"Behold, my Lord, a great mountain resembling a black Rákshasa! It is very high and stupendous, and dark as lamp-black: See the discoloured plants on the top, and the tall peaks on its two sides!" Whilst he was thus speaking, Kabandha spread out his two arms of monstrous length to grasp in the two brothers; and Lakshmana exclaimed:—"My Lord, it is not a mountain, but a real Rákshasa: The discoloured plants on the top are nothing but his hair, and I mistook his two upstretched arms for mountain peaks: I see no neck or head, but his face is within his belly, and he has one eye only, and large teeth." At this moment the monstrous arms of the fearful demon, Kabandha, began to wind round the brothers, and the two heroes seized the arms, and began to pull them. Then Kabandha cried out:—"Who are you, and what do you do here? Have you no fear of death that you come hither and seize me by the arms? For my part I rejoice to see you, for I shall have a delicious feast this day." So saying, the demon prepared to devour them, when the two renowned heroes each cut off one of his arms with a

Appearance of Kabandha.

Ráma and Lakshmana cut off his arms.

Ráma appears to be identified with Parasu Ráma; or rather the destroyer of the Buddhists is identified with the destroyer of the Kshatriyas.) The waters of the Ganges, which purify the souls of mankind from sin, and which Siva, knowing the excellence of them, received on his head, flowed originally from thy feet,—as such I adore thee: In taking refuge at thy feet, the terrors of future birth, regeneration, and death, are done away,—as such I worship thee: Thou art Brahma, thou art Vishnu, thou art Siva, but thou art One; the universe is comprehended in thee as an ant in an elephant: Thou art the foundation of eternal bliss, thou art neither greater nor less; mankind are thy servants, thou art the lord of all.'"

scimitar, and the Rákshasa fell upon the ground. Then the wounded Kabandha cried out to the two brothers :—"What are your names, and the names of your fathers?" Ráma replied :—"We are the sons of Maháraja Dasaratha." And he told the Rákshasa all that had happened to them from their exile downwards.

Legend of Kabandha.

Kabandha then related his own story, how he had been originally a Gandharva, but in consequence of the curse of a sage, had been compelled to assume his present form until released by Ráma. And Kabandha thanked Ráma for his deliverance, and offered to serve him in any way; and Ráma asked him to relate the story of Rávana. Then Kabandha replied :—"I am still a Rákshasa, and I cannot tell what you desire to know, unless this body of mine be burned with fire." So Ráma threw the Rákshasa into a deep pit, and covered him with dry wood, and set fire to the pile; and while it was burning, a chariot descended from heaven, and Kabandha came out of the fire in his real shape as a Gandharva, and took his seat upon the chariot, and then spoke to Ráma, as follows :—"In the middle of the Southern Ocean is a wonderful island named Lanká, and Rávana is the owner of that island: This Rávana is a great warrior, and he has a mighty army of Rákshasas under his command; and if you desire to conquer him you must follow my counsel: At a little distance to the north of this place is a lake named Pampá; and near that lake is a mountain named Rishya-múkha; and on this mountain Rishya-múkha dwells a chief among the Monkeys, named Sugríva, and by the assistance of Sugríva you will obtain the victory over Rávana: Do you, therefore, form a friendly alliance with Sugríva: He is himself suffering from an injury inflicted upon him by his own brother; and if you assist him against his brother, he will assist you in recovering Sítá: On the road you will find the hermitage of the sage, Matanga; and a pupil of the sage is dwelling there, and awaiting your arrival: Fulfil all the desires of this pupil, and then proceed to the lake Pampá and the mountain Rishya-múkha." Having thus spoken, Kabandha took leave of

Kabandha burned in a pit, and assumes his original form.

Relates to Ráma the story of Rávana.

Counsels Ráma to ally with Sugríva, the Monkey Chieftain.

Ráma and Lakshmana, and ascended to the heaven of Vishnu.[2]

Ráma and his brother then took the road which had been pointed out by Kabandha; and, after travelling for some time in the jungle, they at last came to the abode of Matanga, and there they found an aged female named Sarvarí, who had been a pupil of that sage. Now Sarvarí had long been waiting to behold Ráma; and when she saw him, accompanied by his brother, she knew directly who they were; and she brought mats of new grass and cool water to wash their feet; and she presented them with flowers, perfumes, and the argha, and began to offer prayers to both Ráma and Lakshmana. And Ráma rejoiced to behold her piety, and inquired of her how she came to be the pupil of Matanga, and where the sage was residing at that time, and why she lived thus alone in the forest. Sarvarí said:—"I was born of the low caste which is called Sarvarí, and one day I came to this wilderness to gather wood, when I saw the sage, Matanga: A strong desire then rose in my heart to serve the sage, but I was afraid to make known my wish, because of the lowness of my birth: I was accustomed, therefore, to come hither every night, and sweep the path leading from this hermitage to the bathing ghat, so that not a stone or pebble was left in the way when the sage went to perform his morning ablutions: Seeing the path kept so clean, Matanga asked his disciples if they had been accustomed to sweep the way, but they could give him no reply: One night after this the disciples hid themselves, and when I came to sweep the path, they caught me, and took me

Ráma and Lakshmana reach the hermitage of Matanga, the sage.

Piety of Sarvarí, the female disciple of Matanga.

Sarvarí relates her story.

[2] In the Adhyátma Rámáyana the demon Kabandha is represented as making a long and pious address to Ráma, from which the following pantheistic description may be extracted:—"The seven upper regions are placed between thy head and thy loins; the earth is in thy loins, the seven lower regions are from thy loins to thy feet: Thine eyes are the sun, thy mouth is a flaming fire, thy hair the clouds, thy bones the mountains, thy belly the seven waters of the ocean, thy pores the vegetable creation, thy hands Indra, thy breast the fountain of mercy, thy back the source of punishments, thy hips Death, thy lips Kama-deva, thy nose the two Aswins, thy tongue Varuna, thy whiskers lightning, thy heart the moon, thy eyelids are constantly engaged in weighing these things together. Thus are all things comprehended in thy vast form; nothing is distinct from it."

before Matanga, and I related all my story to the sage: Then the holy man took compassion upon me, and taught me a mantra which raised me from my low caste, in the same way that it had already raised the sage Válmikí; and that mantra was only your name of RÁMA: From that time I have ever remained here; but a few days ago, Matanga told me that he was going to the heaven of Brahma; and he said to me:—"Remain here but a short time longer: Your Guru, Ráma, is come as far as Chitra-kúta, and he will be here in due time: Then do you enter the fire in his presence, and you will obtain the accomplishment of all your desires."

Taught the name of "Ráma" as a mantra.

Sarvarí having thus finished speaking, requested the permission of Ráma to enter the fire, as she had already prepared the funeral pile; and Ráma gave her leave, and she set fire to the pile, and entered the bright flame with her eyes fixed upon Ráma. Then whilst the pile was burning, a chariot descended from Vaíkuntha, and Sarvarí ascended the chariot, and was carried away to the mansions of Vishnu.

Sarvarí burns herself alive in the presence of Ráma.

When Sarvarí had thus expired, Ráma and Lakshmana departed out of the hermitage; and after journeying for some time, they came within sight of the lake Pampá. That beautiful lake was one mile round, and the water was transparent, and covered with the blooming lotos; and the ducks and geese were playing upon the surface of the water, and the bees were hovering over the lotos, and water-birds of radiant plumage crowded the lake and the green margin around it. And the banks on all sides were covered with trees, and loaded with fruits and flowers, which waved to and fro with the gentle wind, and spread a delicious perfume around. But, as Ráma beheld the beauty of the place, he was reminded more and more of his beloved Sítá, and his loss lay heavy upon his soul. And Lakshmana prepared for his brother a bed of lotos under the shade of a fig-tree, and brought some water for his feet. Then Ráma threw himself down upon the bed, and Lakshmana seated himself near him, and began to press the feet of his elder brother with his hand.

Ráma and Lakshmana proceed to the lake Pampá.

Description of the lake.

Ráma's continued affliction.

Review of the foregoing narrative.

The foregoing narrative calls for but little remark. The fanciful accounts of Ráma's sorrow, and the lamentations which the author puts into his mouth, are poetical according to Hindú ideas, but too demonstrative to please European tastes. The description of Kabandha is simply the creation of a distorted fancy. He is described as a hairy mountain, without head or neck, but with one glaring eye in his breast, and an immense mouth and teeth in the centre of his belly; whilst his arms were more than a mile long! The story of Sarvarí, the female ascetic, is worthy of consideration, because she was of low caste, and seems to have led a life of celibacy; circumstances which would seem to denote that she was a Buddhist, amongst whom caste was disregarded, and female devotees were not unfrequent in ancient times.

Monstrosity involved in the conception of Kabandha.

Buddhist character of Sarvarí, as a female devotee of low caste.

CHAPTER XIX.

RÁMA'S ALLIANCE WITH THE MONKEYS.

Change in the character of Ráma from the divine to the human.

AT this point in the Rámáyana, the character of Ráma seems to undergo an entire change. During his wanderings in the jungle he was pre-eminently regarded as a divine hero, who was received by every Bráhman sage as a deliverer long waited for, whose presence alone ensured salvation. Even the Rákshasa demons who opposed his progress, and who were slain by his arms, are said to have acknowledged his divinity in the hour of death, and to have been borne away in celestial chariots to the heaven of Vishnu. But in the narrative which now follows of the alliance formed by Ráma with the Monkeys, the divine character of the hero in a great measure disappears, and he becomes little more than a human warrior. After lamenting the loss of his wife in the language of an ordinary mortal, he seeks an alliance with Monkeys to carry on wars which he had previously sustained by his single arm. Moreover, it will be seen that his actions are not only those of a human being, but of a human being who is regardless of moral rule in the attainment of his ends; inasmuch as he killed one Monkey warrior contrary to the rules of fair fighting, and permitted another to take the widow of his deceased brother as a

second wife, contrary even to the modified law of the early Bráhmans.[1] This transformation of Ráma leads to the suspicion that the son of Dasaratha was a different individual from the Linga-worshipper of the Dekhan who made war against the Buddhists; and that two distinct traditions, referring to different circumstances and localities, have been amalgamated into a single poem. But whether this hypothesis be correct or no, it will certainly be necessary to bear some distinction in mind between Ráma, the incarnation of Vishnu, and Ráma, the worshipper of the Linga, which is always associated with the worship of Siva.

Hypothesis that Ráma the son of Dasaratha, and Ráma the Linga-worshipper of the Dekhan, are different individuals.

The alliance which Ráma is said to have formed with the Monkeys, tends to confirm this view. It excites a doubt whether Ráma was so invariably the conqueror of the Rákshasas as the Rámáyana represents him; whether he did not on some occasions suffer a defeat, although the victory has been given to him by the Hindú bard in order to bring his exploits into conformity with his assumed character as a divine incarnation. Indeed if Ráma had really been so victorious in his wars against Khara and Dúshana as the Rámáyana represents, it seems difficult to understand why he should have deemed it necessary to seek an alliance with the Monkey Chieftain. It appears therefore most probable that the Ráma of this portion of the Rámáyana, namely, the representative or leader of the Linga-worshippers, had sustained such severe defeats from the Buddhists, that he was compelled to strengthen himself by an alliance before he could renew the war. But whilst

The alleged alliance with the Monkeys, a proof that Ráma must have suffered reverses from the Rákshasas, or Buddhists.

[1] See Colebrook's Hindú Law, p. 466, *et seq.*

this hypothesis seems highly probable, it must be distinctly stated that it has no place in the national belief. The literal interpretation of this portion of the Rámáyana is indeed deeply rooted in the mind of the Hindú. He implicitly believes that Ráma is Vishnu, who became incarnate for the purpose of destroying the demon Rávana; that he permitted his wife to be captured by Rávana for the sake of delivering the gods and Bráhmans from the oppressions of the Rákshasa; and that he ultimately assembled an army of Monkeys, who were the progeny of the gods, and led them against the stronghold of Rávana at Lanká, and delivered the world from the tyrant Rákshasa, whilst obtaining ample revenge for his own personal wrongs.

Literal interpretation of the Rámáyana believed in by the Hindús.

Circumstances which led to the Hindú belief in an alliance with Monkeys.

One other point seems to demand consideration, namely, the possibility of such an alliance as that which Ráma is said to have concluded with the Monkeys. This possibility will of course be denied by modern critics, but still it is interesting to trace out the circumstances which seem to have led to the acceptance of such a wild belief by the dreamy and marvel-loving Hindú. The south of India swarms with Monkeys of curious intelligence and rare physical powers. Their wonderful instinct for organization, their attachment to particular localities, their occasional journeys in large numbers over mountains and across rivers, their obstinate assertion of supposed rights, and the ridiculous caricature which they exhibit of all that is animal and emotional in man, would naturally create a deep impression upon a credulous and superstitious people. Indeed the habits of Monkeys well deserve to be patiently studied; not as they appear in confinement, when

Extraordinary characteristics of Monkeys.

Habits of Monkeys in their wild state worthy of study.

much that is revolting in their nature is developed; but as they appear living in freedom amongst the trees of the forest, or in the streets of crowded cities, or precincts of temples. Such a study would not fail to awaken strange ideas; and although the European would not be prepared to regard Monkeys as sacred animals, he might be led to speculate as to their origin by the light of data, which are at present unknown to the naturalist whose observations have been derived from the menagerie alone.

The Monkeys in the Rámáyana identical with the aboriginal population of the south.

Whatever, however, may have been the train of ideas which led the Hindú to regard the Monkey as a being half human and half divine, there can be little doubt that in the Rámáyana the Monkeys of southern India have been confounded with what may be called the aboriginal people of the country. The origin of this confusion may be easily conjectured. Perchance the aborigines of the country may have been regarded as a superior kind of Monkeys; and to this day the features of the Maravars, who are supposed to be the aborigines of the southern part of the Carnatic, are not only different from those of their neighbours, but are of a character calculated to confirm the conjecture. Again, it is probable that the army of aborigines may have been accompanied by outlying bands of Monkeys, impelled by that magpie-like curiosity and love of plunder which are the peculiar characteristics of the Monkey race; and this incident may have given rise to the story that the army was composed of Monkeys. But perhaps the most probable hypothesis is that the people of the south originally worshipped the Monkey as a deity, and adopted it as their national emblem; and thus they may have become con-

Three hypotheses respecting the probable origin of the confusion.

The aborigines regarded as Monkeys.

The army of Rámа accompanied by Monkeys.

The Monkey worshipped as a deity and adopted as a national emblem.

founded with the animal in the same way that the Scythic tribe of Nágas became confounded with the Serpent, which was in like manner their deity and symbol. It is true that the Marawars in the present day worship Siva, but they may have been converted to this form of religious faith by the Linga-worshippers who are represented by Ráma. Should this last hypothesis prove correct it would furnish the reason why Monkey gods like Hanuman were introduced in the Rámáyana as fighting by the side of Ráma; namely, to represent the gods of the people as worshippers of Ráma, and subordinate to him; just in the same way as in the Mahá Bhárata, the Serpent-god of Manipura is represented as being conquered by the son of Arjuna.[2] Besides, however, the Monkeys, there are references to an army of Bears, under the leadership of Jámbavat, who is said to have been the father-in-law of Krishna.[3] These Bears do not appear upon the scene apart from the Monkeys, nor is the leader Jámbavat as famous and important as the Monkey Hanuman. It is therefore difficult to assign a reason for their introduction, unless it is assumed that Jámbavat is a representative of the worshippers of Krishna, giving counsel and support to the cause of Ráma.

Reason why the Monkey gods of the south may have been represented as fighting for Ráma.

References to an army of Bears under Jámbavat.

Three localities specified.

As regards the geography of this portion of the Rámáyana, it will be observed that three localities are distinctly specified; and although it is difficult to identify them with modern sites, they may perhaps be referred to the territory of Mysore, or the

[2] See *ante*, Vol. I. page 412.

[3] See *ante*, Vol. I. pages 384, 476.

country immediately surrounding it.[4] These three localities are as follows:—

1st, Rishya-múkha mountain, the residence of Sugríva, the Monkey Raja who had been dethroned, and with whom Ráma formed an alliance. Rishya-múkha.

2nd, Kishkindhyá, the Monkey city of Báli, the elder brother and enemy of Sugríva. Kishkindhyá.

3rd, Malyavana mountain, the residence of Ráma and Lakshmana during the rainy season. Malyavana.

The narrative of Ráma's alliance with Sugríva and the Monkeys may now be related as follows:— The narrative.

Ráma and Lakshmana proceed from the lake Pampá to the mountain Rishya-múkha.

After Ráma and Lakshmana had passed a night on the banks of the Pampá lake, they rose early in the morning, and performed their customary ablutions and devotions, and went towards the mountain Rishya-múkha; where dwelt the Monkey Raja, Sugríva, who had been dethroned by his brother Báli, and compelled to take refuge in the mountain. Meantime, Sugríva and his Monkey Counsellors were sitting on a bastion of a fort on the top of the mountain; and they beheld the approach of Ráma and Lakshmana. And Sugríva turned to his Counsellors, and said:—"Behold two persons are approaching from the direction of Pampá, who are apparelled as devotees, but yet appear to carry arms: I fear they are spies who have been sent hither by my brother Báli." But Hanuman, who was the chief of his Counsellors, said:—"Be of good cheer, O Sugríva, for these men are the sons of a Raja, and have come for our deliverance." And Hanuman descended from the mountain, and brought Ráma and Lakshmana into the presence of Sugríva. And when Ráma had related his story, Hanuman brought some pieces of wood, and kindled a fire; and Ráma and Sugríva confirmed their friendship before the fire,

Sugríva and his Monkey Counsellors receive Ráma and Lakshmana.

[4] Prof. H. H. Wilson remarks in a note on the Uttara-Ramacharitra, that the Rishya-múkha mountain, and the scenes in its vicinity, are said to be known by the same appellations in the neighbourhood of Anagundi in the Dekhan.

and in the presence of all the Monkeys. And when they had all taken their seats Sugríva said to Ráma:—"Some time back, when I was sitting with my Counsellors upon this mountain, I beheld a woman in the air who was being carried off by Rávana; and as she passed by she threw down her ornaments, and we have preserved them to this day." Sugríva then sent for the ornaments, and laid them before Ráma; but the eyes of Ráma were so affected with grief, that he could not tell whether they belonged to his wife or not. Then Ráma asked his brother if he could remember the ornaments, and Lakshmana said:—"Those silver bells I know, for Sítá wore them on her feet, but all the others are strange to me, for I never cast my eyes above the feet of my brother's wife." [5] At these words Ráma took the ornaments to his heart, and wept aloud; and Sugríva consoled him, saying:—"Now that we have made friendship together, vex not yourself about Sítá: Be assured that you shall soon rescue her."

Sugríva shows Ráma Sítá's ornaments.

When Ráma had somewhat recovered, he requested Sugríva to relate the story of his grievances. Sugríva replied:—"O Ráma, I have an elder brother named Báli, who has deprived me of my Raj, and taken away my wife Rumá; and now he seeks to take away my life; and through fear of him I have taken refuge in this mountain: O Ráma, I pray you to liberate me from this oppression!" [6] Ráma

Sugríva relates the story of his grievances against Báli.

Ráma engages to slay Báli.

[5] This reply of Lakshmana is taken from the modern version of the Rámáyana, and is in conformity with modern ideas. In earlier times a greater freedom of manners prevailed.

[6] A long mythical story is here related in the original respecting the origin of the breach between Sugríva and Báli, which it may be advisable to condense into a note. Báli was originally Raja of Kishkindhyá, and on one occasion he fought a certain Asura in the neighbouring plain, after which the Asura fled into a cave. Báli then directed his brother Sugríva to guard the entrance to the cave for one entire month, whilst he himself entered it in pursuit of the Asura. The month passed away, when blood issued from the mouth of the cave; on which Sugríva took it for granted that Báli was killed, and stopped up the mouth of the cave to prevent the Asura from coming out, and returned to the city of Kishkindhyá, where the Monkeys accepted him as their Raja in succession to Báli. Subsequently Báli having killed the Asura in the cave, returned to the city of Kishkindhyá; upon which he was very wroth with Sugríva, and deprived him of his Raj and wife, and would have killed him but for his escape to the Rishya-múkha mountain.

said:—"Cast aside, my friend, all fear of Báli! I promise to make you free: Báli is now dwelling in your city of Kishkindhyá: Put on your war dress, and repair to Kishkindhyá, and go to the gate of the palace, and challenge Báli to a single combat; and as soon as he shall come out against you, I will slay him with my arms."

Ráma directs Sugríva to proceed to Kishkindhyá and challenge Báli.

After this Sugríva set out for the city of Kishkindhyá, accompanied by Ráma and Lakshmana; and whilst the two brothers concealed themselves in the forest hard by, he went forward to the gate of the palace to challenge Báli. And Sugríva shouted with a voice like thunder; and Báli came out with all haste from the inner apartments, and saw that it was his brother Sugríva, who had challenged him to battle. Now Tárá, who was the wife of Báli, sought to prevent her husband from going out to Sugríva; but Báli refused to listen to her; and he went out to the palace gate, and abused Sugríva, and Sugríva abused him in return, and cried out:—"Vishnu is my protector, and you will fall by my hand this day." And Báli and Sugríva fought lustily against each other for a long while, and the battle went against Sugríva, and he fell down and Báli sat upon his breast. And Báli cried out:—"Where is the Vishnu who is your strong ally? Now is the time that you should seek his protection." Meantime, Ráma saw that Báli had gained the victory, and he discharged an arrow at Báli, and pierced his heart, so that he fell senseless upon the ground. Ráma and Lakshmana then came up, and Sugríva rose in great joy at seeing his enemy prostrate upon the ground.

Combat between Sugríva and Báli.

Ráma mortally wounds Báli.

Meanwhile, the sad tidings had reached the ears of Tárá that her husband had fallen in the battle with Sugríva; and

Sudden appearance of Tárá.

Báli dared not approach the Rishya-múkha mountain for the following reasons. On one occasion he had slain the great giant Dundubhi, and thrown his bleeding head upon the mountain; upon which a few drops of blood fell upon Matanga, the sage, who thereupon cursed Báli, that he should fall to pieces if he again approached the mountain. Nobody, however, could move the giant's head, until Ráma kicked it miles away, and moreover exhibited his skill in archery before Sugríva, by shooting an arrow with such force that it passed through seven palm trees, and then divided a mountain and descended to hell; after which it again returned to his quiver in the form of a shining swan.

she went forth out of the palace with dishevelled hair and loose garments, and all her ornaments in disorder; and she was followed by her son Angada, and a crowd of servants, Counsellors, and friends. When she beheld her husband prostrate upon the ground, she fainted for a while, and then striking her breast with her hands, she cried aloud as follows:—"O my beloved husband, sole protector of my helpless self, why do you thus lie upon the bare earth? Arise, and seat yourself, and call me your beloved as you used to do, and save me from death! You heard me not when I beseeched you not to go forth to this fatal field; and now you have fallen in battle with your enemy, and have lost your life by his dreadful arrow: Oh! why did you deprive your brother of his Raj and his wife? Surely my heart must be made of stone that it does not break at the sight of my husband! I can no longer endure to behold your pale face, and your body covered with the dust of the earth! O my beloved, look once again towards your slave, and take your son Angada to your breast! Why do you not reply, when I am weeping so bitterly at your feet?" So saying, Tárá took her husband upon her lap, and with loud lamentations addressed him thus:—"O my beloved, it is wrong for you to go to the next world, and leave me alone and helpless here: Shame be upon me that I thus be obliged to witness the death of my own husband! Shame be upon that woman who ever becomes a widow in this world! O ye ferocious birds and wild beasts of the jungle, act kindly towards me, and make me your prey, that I may follow my husband to the mansions of Yama."

Tárá's lamentations over her dying husband.

Now, when it was known that Báli was dead, the city of Kishkindhyá resounded with the cries of the Monkeys and their wives, whilst Sugríva and Angada and Tárá filled the air with their lamentations: Tárá threw away all her ornaments, and the female Monkeys, seeing her deep affliction, took her by the hand, and made her sit up. Then Ráma began to console Tárá, and at his words all present began to desist from further weeping, and to make preparations for the funeral pile. And the Monkeys placed the dead body

Funeral ceremonies for Báli.

of Báli upon a litter; and they perfumed the body with sandal and other perfumes, and decorated both the corpse and the litter with garlands, and covered the body with a richly-embroidered cloth. Then they took the litter upon their shoulders, and Sugríva and the other Monkeys followed it, crying very bitterly; while some of the Monkeys in front began to throw money to the right and left, and the women of the Monkeys walked last of all. When they reached the place of burning, the corpse was bathed and placed upon the funeral pile, and Angada, son of Báli, set fire to the pile; and when the burning was over, they all proceeded to the lake Pampá, and bathed themselves, and made oblations of water to the soul of the deceased.

Sugríva installed as Raja, and Angada as Yuvaraja.

After this, Sugríva took his own wife Rumá, and also took Tárá, the widow of Báli, to be his wife likewise. And it was agreed that Sugríva should be installed as Raja of Kishkindhyá, and that Angada should be installed as Yuvaraja. At this time the rainy season had commenced, when even the merchants stay at their own homes and go not to foreign countries; and Ráma requested Sugríva to take his pleasure until the rains were over, and then to join in the search for Sítá. So Sugríva was installed as Raja, and Angada as Yuvaraja; and Ráma and Lakshmana departed from that place, and took up their abode in the Malyavana mountain.

Rainy season.

Review of the foregoing narrative.

The foregoing narrative of Ráma's alliance with the Monkeys exercises a weird-like influence upon the imagination, wholly different from that produced by an ordinary fable in which animals of different kinds are represented as speaking to each other. The mind is called upon to deal with a nondescript being half Monkey and half man; having long tails and walking on all fours, and yet performing funeral rites for a deceased Raja, and installing a successor upon the throne, with all the form and ceremony of human beings. It was a Monkey Raja, surrounded

Nondescript Monkeys of the Rámáyana.

by his Monkey Counsellors, who beheld the approach of Ráma and Lakshmana from the Bastion of their Fort on the Rishya-múkha mountain. It was Hanuman in the form of a gigantic Monkey who carried Ráma and Lakshmana upon his shoulders up the side of the mountain. The combats between Sugríva and Báli are the combats of Monkeys; and the picture of Báli dying in the presence of his wife Tárá and son Angada, might easily be realized by those who have seen the painful caricature of a human being which a Monkey presents in a wounded or dying state. The scenes, however, are marred in the original by the lengthy dialogues which are placed in the mouths of the Monkeys, and which have been omitted in the foregoing text as being far too monotonous and artificial in tone to excite either interest or sympathy.

Traces in the narrative of an authentic tradition.

As regards the narrative, it certainly seems to refer to some real event amongst the aboriginal tribes; namely, the quarrel between an elder and younger brother for the possession of a Raj; and the subsequent alliance of Ráma with the younger brother. It is somewhat remarkable that Ráma appears to have formed an alliance with the wrong party, for the right of Báli was evidently superior to that of Sugríva; and is especially worthy of note that Ráma compassed the death of Báli by an act contrary to all the laws of fair fighting. Again, Ráma seems to have tacitly sanctioned the transfer of Tárá from Báli to Sugríva, which was directly opposed to modern rule, although in conformity with the rude customs of a barbarous age; and it is remarkable that to this day the marriage of

Ráma's breach of the laws of fair fighting.

Marriage of widows and di-

both widows and divorced women is practised by the Marawars, or aborigines of the southern Carnatic, contrary to the deeply-rooted prejudice which exists against such unions amongst the Hindús at large.

Divorced women amongst the Marawars of the Carnatic.

CHAPTER XX.

HANUMAN'S ADVENTURES IN LANKÁ.

Expansion of the original tradition by the author of the Rámáyana.

THE story of the assembling of the Monkeys and Bears, and the despatch of four armies in search of Sítá, has been expanded to an inordinate length by the author of the Rámáyana; but the bare outline is extremely simple, and may be briefly indicated as probably involving an authentic event upon which the Hindú bard has based his narrative. It seems

Neglect of Sugríva to assist Ráma.

that when Sugríva had regained possession of his Raj, he abandoned himself to sensual indulgences, so that when the cold season arrived for the commencement of operations, he was devoting himself to strong drink and the society of his wives. Accordingly Lakshmana was sent by Ráma to remind him of his obligations, and to punish him for his breach of faith if he displayed any further lukewarmness or delay.

Assembling of the army of Monkeys and Bears.

Meantime, however, Hanuman had already induced Sugríva to send out messengers for assembling his armies; so that after some explanation, Lakshmana was satisfied and returned to Ráma, accompanied by Sugríva. Subsequently the armies of Monkeys and Bears were marshalled in the presence of Ráma,

Despatch of four Monkey armies.

and sent out to the four quarters of the earth; but the army despatched to the south under the command of Hanuman, was the only one that met with

any success, and brought back tidings of the lost Sítá.

Hanuman's adventures in Lanká the product of pure imagination.

The story of Hanuman's adventures in Lanká is perhaps one of the best sustained efforts of pure imagination that is to be found in the Rámáyana. The exploits of the vast Monkey hero who could swell himself to the size of a mountain, or dwarf himself to the size of a man's thumb; the strength and magnificence of Lanká with its seven broad moats and seven stupendous walls of stone and metal; the extraordinary deformities of the Rákshasa population; the marvellous palace and gardens of Rávana; the devoted love of Sítá for Ráma and the impure advances of Rávana;—are all depicted with a magnificent exaggeration which is often grand, and but for the fantastic character of some of the incidents might be said to border on the sublime.

Fifteen incidents in the adventures of Hanuman.

The incidents and scenes in this portion of the narrative are so numerous, that it may be as well to indicate them under the following heads:—

1st, Hanuman's march to the sea, and leap over the channel between India and Ceylon.

2nd, Description of the city of Lanká.

3rd, Hanuman reconnoitres Lanká in the form of a cat.

4th, Meeting between Hanuman and the Genius of Lanká.

5th, Hanuman proceeds through the city to the palace of Rávana.

6th, Description of the Inner Apartments of Rávana.

7th, Description of Sítá in the Asoka grove.

8th, Rávana's night visit to Sítá surrounded by his women.

9th, Efforts of the Rákshasí women to induce Sítá to become the wife of Rávana.

10th, Interview between Hanuman and Sítá.

11th, Hanuman destroys the Asoka garden and is captured by Indrajit.

12th, Tricks played by Hanuman upon the Rákshasas.

13th, Hanuman's appearance before Rávana and his Counsellors in the Council Hall.

14th, The firing of Hanuman's tail.

15th, Return of Hanuman and his army to Ráma and Sugríva.

The narrative.

With this preliminary sketch it may suffice to reproduce the leading events in the adventures of Hanuman and his army as they appear in the Rámáyana:—

1st, Hanuman's march to the sea, and leap over the channel between India and Ceylon.

Now Hanuman was sent with the army of Monkeys to the southern quarter because of his superior intelligence, as it was known that Rávana reigned in the southern region. And when Hanuman was about to depart he prayed Ráma to give him a token, that if he should find Sítá, he might convince her that he came from her beloved husband. So

Ráma gives his marriage ring to Hanuman.

Ráma gave to Hanuman the ring bearing his name, which had been presented to him on the day of his marriage by his father-in-law Raja Janaka. Then Hanuman departed with his army of Monkeys towards the south, but one month passed away, and still no tidings could be heard of Sítá.[1]

[1] The adventures of the army of Hanuman are told at considerable length in the Rámáyana, but are all mythical. The following story extracted from the Adhyátma Rámáyana may serve as a specimen:—"Now while the Monkeys were proceeding towards the south, they were smitten with thirst, and searched for water on all sides, but as that wilderness was composed of sand, none could be found. At length they came to a mountain, at the foot of which they saw a grove of trees loaded with fruit, resembling the wealthy serving food to indigent travel-

Meeting with Sampáti the Vulture Chief.

And all the Monkeys were very melancholy, and began to despair. And it came to pass that after a while they came to a certain mountain, where they fell in with a Chief of the Vultures, whose name was Sampáti, and he was elder brother of Jatáyus, the mighty Bird who had given his life in the service of Ráma. And Sampáti told them that he had seen Rávana carry away Sítá, and that Rávana had taken her to his city and palace, which were situated on the island of Lanká, about sixty miles from the sea.[2] And Hanuman and all the Monkeys rejoiced greatly, and proceeded with all haste to the sea.

Now, when the Monkeys reached the shore of the sea, and beheld the island of Lanká, sixty miles from the shore,

lers. From a cave in this mountain numberless water-fowl issued, their wings dripping with water. The Monkeys seeing this were satisfied they should find water in the cave. They followed Hanuman in a line, holding each other by the hand as the cave was dark. When they had advanced a considerable distance, the darkness was in an instant dispelled; they beheld a pond full of pure water, near to which was a palace and a garden. In this palace were deposited jewels of great value, grain, fruits, oil, clothes, and an immense quantity of provisions, with sweetmeats of every kind. There was also a large town abounding with shops, but there were not any inhabitants. They were amazed, they consulted with each other what wonderful city this could be; they resolved to enter the palace, where they might meet with some human being. In one of the apartments they beheld a woman splendidly dressed and adorned, her eyes closed in meditation. That woman was a faithful adorer of Ráma; the veil of chastity was placed over her head; she was super-eminently pure. The Monkeys were terrified at the austerity of her penances; they paid their adorations to her at a distance. The chaste virgin, opening her eyes and seeing them, asked who they were. Hanuman then related the story of Ráma, and the thirst of the Monkeys, concluding:—'Thou art a faithful worshipper of the divinity; from beholding thee we are free from sin.' The holy virgin directed the Monkeys where to find food and water, with which they satisfied their hunger and thirst, and then returned to her.

"The female devotee then delivered a long discourse on the divinity of Ráma, and ultimately returned with the Monkey army to Kishkindhyá, and expired in the presence of Ráma."

[2] The real distance of Lanká from the mainland is but vaguely indicated in the Rámáyana. From shore to shore the distance is about sixty miles, and accordingly that has been set down in the text. But it would almost appear as if in times primeval the Island of Ceylon was really joined on to the main. About two miles from the Indian coast is the Island of Ramisseram, which is eleven miles long, and three centuries ago is said to have been joined to the main by a rocky causeway; whilst just off the opposite coast of Ceylon is the Island of Manar, about eighteen miles long. Moreover a low sandy ridge, impassable to ships of burden, connects the Island of Ramisseram with the Island of Manar, and is known in the present day as Adam's Bridge.

1st, Hanuman's leap.

not one of them would attempt to leap across the sea excepting the mighty Hanuman. And Hanuman took a gigantic spring, and by his prodigious strength, he leaped over the wide ocean, and reached the shore of Lanká, and alighted upon the mountain which is named Subala.[3] At that moment all Lanká trembled; and Raja Rávana sent for his Counsellors, and demanded the reason for the trembling. Some of the Counsellors then said:—"O Rávana, this trembling is an earthquake." But one Rákshasa, who was very wise, and whose name was Obindhya, said to Rávana:—"Whatever others may say respecting this trembling, I attribute it only to the presence of Sítá: From the moment that you brought Sítá into your palace, evil omens have constantly appeared in Lanká: I therefore advise you to send back Sítá to Ráma." Then Vibhíshana, who was the pious brother of Rávana, earnestly implored the Raja of the Rákshasas to follow the counsel of Obindhya; but Rávana could not be moved, and he dismissed the Council in great anger.

Meantime Hanuman was gazing from the summit of the

[3] A number of absurd stories are told of the adventures of Hanuman whilst flying through the air, which are utterly devoid of meaning. It is, however, remarkable that amongst others who opposed him was a female Rákshasí named Surasá, who was said to be the mother of the Nágas, an allusion which tends to identify the Rákshasas with the Buddhists. See *ante*, page 315.

There is, however, a graphic description of Hanuman's leap in the Adhyátma Rámáyana which is worth extracting:—"Hanuman then cried out with joy in a voice of thunder as if he would rend the world with the sound; the mountains trembled, the waves of the ocean were troubled, the earth shook, even Sesha-nája, the great Serpent on whose head the world rests, considered Hanuman's strength as equal to his own. Hanuman extended his form in size so that it equalled the Mandara mountain: his vigour and courage so agitated his soul that the hair on his head and body stood erect. He engaged to cross the sea to Lanká. He received the applause of the Monkeys, and exulting in their praises he departed to the top of Mandara. His form equalled in size that of a mountain; the colour of his body resembled the brightest gold; his face was as red as the rubies of Budakshan; his arms extended as the wings of a great dragon; his tail was so long that the end of it could not be seen. His great soul was unshaken at the danger and difficulty of the task he had undertaken; his eyes were inflamed with fury as if he would consume his enemies, as if he would in an instant overturn the foundations of Lanká, and cast them into the ocean. He cried:—'I am the ambassador of Ráma; his seal ring is in my hand; every hour, every moment, I repeat his holy name; I worship him, I entertain the fullest confidence that I shall with ease cross over this ocean.' He then roared out with a thundering voice, he extended his arms, he drew in his neck, he erected his ears, and then looking forward to the sea, he raised himself from the mountain, and sprang towards the south."

2nd, Description of the city of Lanká.

Subala mountain upon the beautiful city of Lanká. It was situated on the middle peak of the Trikúta mountain, and was the work of the divine Viswakarma, the architect of the gods. The city was a hundred miles in length, and thirty miles in breadth, and was completely surrounded with many walls and canals, one within the other. Within the great outer canal was a broad belt of thick forest, which was filled with beasts and birds of different species. Within the forest was a great wall of iron with four gates, one on each of the four sides. Each gate was guarded by hundreds of Rákshasas, and before each of the four gates was a deep moat with a bridge upon it; and several machines were placed upon each bridge, so that if an enemy approached the bridge, he was sure to be drowned. Within this iron wall, and at a little distance from it, was a great wall of stone; and within the wall of stone were five other walls, each one at a little distance from the other; and one wall was built of brass, and another of white metal, and another of copper, and another of silver, and the innermost wall of all was built of gold.[4] Inside these seven walls was the

The seven canals and walls.

Walls of iron, stone, brass, white metal, copper, silver, and gold.

The city and palace within the seven walls.

[4] The similarity between the seven-walled city of Lanká as described in the Rámáyana, and the seven-walled city of Ekbatana as described by Herodotus, is very striking (Herod. i. 98). Herodotus, however, lays more stress upon the difference of colour, whilst Válmíki indicates only the difference of material. Sir H. Rawlinson is of opinion that the story of the seven differently-coloured walls of Ekbatana is a fable of Sabæan origin, and he quotes a poem of Nizami, in which seven palaces are described of different colours, each of which was dedicated to one of the seven great heavenly bodies. (Journal of Geog. Soc. vol. x. Part i.) As far as colour is concerned the walls of Lanká would appear to represent in like manner one or other of the seven heavenly bodies, as will be seen from the following comparison :—

Walls of Lanká.	Seven heavenly bodies.	Colours as described by Nizami.
Iron	Saturn	Black
Stone	Jupiter	Orange or Sandal-wood colour
Brass	Mars	Scarlet
White Metal	Venus	White
Copper	Mercury	Azure
Silver	Moon	Green, a hue applied by Orientals to silver
Gold	Sun	Gold

Herodotus has slightly deranged the order of colours.

great city of Lanká, with ponds, and lakes, and artificial gardens, on all sides; and the city was traversed by four great thoroughfares, intersected with numerous cross streets; and there were halls and high places for music, and arsenals filled with weapons and stores, and stables for horses and elephants, and places for chariots. And in the centre of that city was the great palace of Lanká, as beautiful as Viswakarma could make it by expending upon it the utmost of his skill.

3rd, Hanuman reconnoitres Lanká in the form of a cat.

Hanuman enters Lanká.

When Hanuman had thus looked down upon Lanká, and seen all its moats and walls, he assumed the shape of a cat; and when the sun had set he entered Lanká in that form, and began to observe the different parts of the city.

The gates.

The gates were protected by thousands of Rákshasas skilled in war; but every one was allowed to enter; and the guards warned all spies and enemies that if they once entered the palace, they would never be allowed to return:

The streets.

The streets were adorned with gems of every colour; but such was the rule of Rávana that no man ventured to pick up a single stone, though it were set in ever so loosely.

The houses.

The houses on the two sides of the roads were beautiful

The bazaars.

beyond description, and there were large bazaars in every quarter between the houses, where everything could be obtained at any hour of the night or day.

Description of the Rákshasas.

The Rákshasas who were sleeping in the houses were of every shape and form.

Monstrous deformities.

Some of them disgusted the eye, whilst some were beautiful to look upon. Some had long arms and frightful shapes; some were very fat, and others were very lean; some were mere dwarfs, and others were prodigiously tall. Some had only one eye and others only one ear. Some had monstrous bellies, hanging breasts, long projecting teeth, and crooked thighs; whilst others were exceedingly beautiful to behold and clothed in great splendour. Some had two legs, some three legs, and some four legs. Some had the heads of serpents, some the heads of donkeys, some the heads of horses, and some the heads of elephants.

4th, Meeting between Hanuman and the Genius of Lanká.

Whilst Hanuman was beholding these things, the night became advanced, and the streets of the city were deserted;

so he descended from the wall, on which he was seated in the form of a cat. At that moment Uggra Chunda, the Genius of Lankú, stood before him in the form of a female; and she was hideous to behold, and in her right hand was a sword, and in her left was a basin containing the blood of those whom she killed. Seeing her, Hanuman resumed his Monkey shape; and she looked upon him with wrath, and said:—"Who are you, and why have you entered my city at this quarter of the night? You seem to be bent upon some evil purpose, and therefore you have come hither to fall before the fire of my anger." So saying Uggra Chunda forgot herself, and in her great wrath she gave a severe kick to Hanuman; and Hanuman dealt her a hard blow with his left hand, and she fell senseless on the ground, and vomited blood. When she recovered herself, she said to Hanuman:—"I know who you are; you are the messenger of Ráma, and have come hither to search for his wife Sítá: Go you therefore into the city, and you shall receive no further molestation."

The combat.

Having thus spoken, Uggra Chunda went her way, and Hanuman again resumed the form of a cat, and proceeded through the city. He entered several houses of the Ráksha-sas, and examined them in every quarter; and presently he entered the house of Vibhíshana, who was the younger brother of Rávana; and he saw Vibhíshana seated near a tulasí tree, singing hymns in praise of Vishnu and other gods.[5] And Hanuman was surprised to see so much piety in a Rák-shasa; and he said to himself:—"Verily this must be Vib-híshana, for he is renowned for his piety."

5th, Hanuman proceeds through the city to the palace of Rávana.

Perceives Vibhishana, the younger brother of Rávana, worshipping Vishnu.

After this Hanuman, still in the form of a cat, entered the palace of Raja Rávana. That resplendent abode was surrounded on all sides by a deep canal, the surface of which was covered with the lotos. Within the canal was a wall of gold, so lofty that the birds could not fly over it; and the gate of that wall was of gold set with diamonds and other precious stones; and the pillars on each side

Hanuman enters the palace of Rávana.

The canal.

The golden wall, with jewelled gate, and pillars of black crystal.

[5] The tulasi tree is sacred to Vishnu, and its leaves are employed in the worship of that deity. The bale fruit tree is in like manner sacred to Siva.

of the gate were made of black crystal; and the gate was guarded by thousands of Rákshasas, armed with spears and swords and other weapons of war; and over the gateway was the place for music, which ever sounded night and day. There also were stables for horses and elephants, and houses for chariots, and arsenals for weapons, and places for amusements, and artificial gardens and lakes, together with kitchens, and store-houses, and wine cellars. Hanuman was delighted at beholding all these wonders, and he said within himself:—"Surely this Raja Rávana must have been a very virtuous man in his former life, and on this account enjoys so much wealth in his present life." Hanuman then searched every quarter of the palace for the wife of Ráma, but could not find her anywhere.

The music place.

The stables, arsenals, gardens, kitchens, &c.

Hanuman fails to find Sitá.

6th. Description of the inner apartments of Rávana.

Now, when Hanuman had grown very impatient at not finding Sítá, he suddenly smelt a very sweet perfume; and following the scent, he arrived at the inner apartments of Rávana. They were surrounded on all sides by an inner wall of gold set with precious stones; and the gates were formed of diamonds, and guarded by eunuchs. Inside were artificial gardens with lakes and ponds covered with the white, red, blue, and yellow lotos. In the middle of all was the sleeping-room of Rávana; and the walls of that room were made of gold, and adorned with precious stones, and the floor was of black crystal. The couch was as beautiful as Viswakarma could make it; the pillars which supported it, and the steps for ascending it, were all of black crystal. The bedding was as soft and white as the froth of new milk. Golden pots of water were placed at the four corners of the couch, and lamps of precious stones were hung from the ceiling, though the apartment was already illuminated by the radiance of the gems. Hundreds of beautiful women were sleeping in that apartment. Then Hanuman saw a very rich carpet placed upon a crystal throne; and the carpet was a magnificent cloth inlaid with gold; and four lamps of gold stood on its four corners, and on one side was the chámara and royal umbrella. Hanuman then reduced himself to the size of a thumb, and jumped up, and sat upon the

The walls, gates, and gardens.

The sleeping-room.

The couch.

The women.

Rávana sleeping upon a crystal throne.

throne; and thence he perceived Rávana sleeping upon his couch, wearing a yellow cloth; and ten crowns of gold were upon his ten heads, and his twenty hands were adorned with sandal and ornaments, and strings of rich pearls decorated his breast. A thousand women were sleeping beside him, and the chief among them was Mandodarí, who lay upon his left side; and Hanuman looked carefully among them, but he could not find Sítá, for she was not there.

Hánuman still fails to find Sítá.

When Hanuman had searched throughout the inner apartments, it was about midnight; and he was very weary, and seated himself upon the top of a wall, and was very sad at not finding Sítá, for he feared that she was no longer alive. Suddenly he heard the noise of birds in the Asoka garden, and he entered therein, and concealed himself amidst the foliage of a large cotton tree. Thence he saw Sítá surrounded by hideous Rákshasí women, like a deer surrounded by tigresses. She was as pale and emaciated as the new moon, and her body was covered with dust; but nothing could conceal her beauty, which was like a live charcoal under a cover of ashes. Her hair was tied up in a single knot, and she had only one cloth, and no ornaments whatever. Suddenly she cried out the name of Ráma, and Hanuman prepared to approach her, when at that moment the bells sounded the third quarter of the night, and the music began to play.

7th, Description of Sítá in the Asoka grove.

Sítá surrounded by Rákshasí women.

Now just at this time Rávana arose from his bed, and Sítá came into his mind, and he ordered all his women to follow him into the Asoka garden; and some carried lamps in their hands, and some carried the chámara, and some carried the betel pot, whilst some carried pots of water. When Hanuman saw the mighty Rákshasa coming to the Asoka grove, surrounded by his women, he concealed himself where he might hear all that passed. When Rávana entered the grove, Sítá arose up in terror, like an antelope at the approach of a tiger, and then sat down with her face turned away from Rávana.[6] Then Rávana approached her, and

8th, Rávana's night visit to Sítá surrounded by his women.

Hanuman hides himself.

Alarm of Sítá.

[6] The scene is still more graphically described in the Adhyátma Rámáyana, as will be seen from the following extract:—"Hanuman was preparing to address

said:—"O beautiful damsel, why do you torment yourself and shed tears for nothing? Why are you much afraid of me, whilst I am your slave? Fear not being discovered by others, for no man can enter this palace; and dry up your tears, and look upon me with a smiling countenance: Let me send for women who will wash you with water, and tie up your hair in knots, and adorn you with ornaments and perfumes: Come and sit with me, and let us drink together, and pass the time in hearing songs and beholding dances: Be the mistress of all my other wives, and I too will be your slave, and do whatever you command, and give you whatever you may desire."

Rávana's address to Sitá.

To this speech of Rávana, the terrified Sítá answered thus:—"O lord of Lanká, cast aside your enmity against Ráma! You are renowned throughout the world for your wealth, strength, and valour; and should not soil your reputation by acts of wickedness: Look upon the wives of others as you do upon your own mother, and restore me to my husband Ráma, and entreat his forgiveness: My husband is my wealth, and I consider him better than anything you can offer me: I advise you to send me to Ráma, and thus save yourself and family from ruin."

Sitá's reply to Rávana.

Prays that she may be restored to her husband Ráma.

Rávana said:—"O Sítá, How can you compare me with the poor and helpless devotee, Ráma? I live in a palace of gold, whilst your Ráma dwells in a hut of leaves: I command

Rávana proclaims his superiority to Ráma.

Sítá, when he heard a noise with loud acclamations; on looking round he beheld a crowd of rosy-cheeked and lovely damsels, beautiful as fairies, ravishers of hearts, equal in splendour to the Sun and Moon, coming into the garden. This troop formed a circle, in the midst of which marched Rávana as a thorn among roses, a raven in the midst of nightingales, a giant amongst fairies, with ten heads and twenty arms as long as the branches of trees; the colour of his body was blue mixed with black."

Then follows a singular account of Rávana's secret worship of Ráma, which is deserving of consideration:—"Rávana was constantly meditating in anxious expectation of the period when he should obtain salvation from the hand of Ráma; that if Ráma did not come to Lanká to free Sitá from her confinement, he could not be released from his present miserable state. He worshipped Ráma in his heart, whether engaged in business, at meals, or in sleep; he adored Ráma, nor did he at any time forget his name. Whichever way he turned his thoughts he imagined he beheld Ráma with his bow and arrows in his hands, his hair braided in a knot on the crown of his head, a deerskin bound round his body, and accompanied by Lakshmana."

a numerous army of horses, elephants, chariots, and foot-men, whereas your Ráma is without a single ally: Even my servants wear cloths which are rare to the gods, whilst your husband wears the bark of trees: My women and slaves wear ornaments which are unknown to Ráma, and live upon food which would be regarded as delicacies even by Indra, whereas your husband lives upon fruits and roots: Behold the beds and furniture of my palace; Ráma has never even heard of their existence: How then can you prefer Ráma to me? Moreover it is doubtful whether Ráma is alive: I think that by this time he must have been devoured by some bird or beast of prey; but even if he is alive how is it possible for him to enter Lanká? How then can I ever fear that Ráma will rescue you? If thousands of Rámas were to assemble together they could not carry you away: Therefore cast aside your foolish hopes, and consent to be my chief Rání."

Sítá wrathfully declares Rávana's inferiority to Ráma.

Sítá replied in anger:—"I am now assured, O wicked Rávana, that you have not long to live: The day is not far off when your golden Lanká will be a heap of ashes, and your numberless army will fall under the arrows of Ráma: As for your bravery you need say nothing; for I know its worth from the stealth in which you carried me away: There is as much difference between you and Ráma, as there is between a mouse and a lion, a hedgehog and an elephant, a mosquito and a hawk; a glowworm and the noon-day sun, a grain of sand and a precious stone, a star and the full moon, the river Caramnasa and the Ganges, a burnt brick and a mountain, and a Chandala and the Bráhman Vrihaspati, who is the preceptor of the gods: Boast as long as you do not meet Ráma; but the moment he is here, consider yourself and your whole family as dead persons: You will then remember my counsel, and repent when it is too late."

Rávana threatens to devour Sítá unless after two months she becomes his wife.

Rávana was now angry in his turn, and his eyes turned round and flashed fire, and he gnashed his teeth, and said:—"O Sítá, if it were not sinful to slay a woman, I would put you to death this day: Your language is more like that of a master, than like one whom I can kill or save according to

my pleasure: I am determined, however, that you shall accept me as your husband, and I give you two months to think it over: If at the end of that time I find you still obstinate, I will devour you."

Sítá's bitter refusal.

Sítá replied:—"Even though you gave me thousands of years I would never become your wife; I will touch no man but Ráma."

Rávana prepares to slay Sítá with his scimitar.

At these harsh words of Sítá, the mighty Rávana was furious with rage, and he cried out:—"Never before have I heard such harsh words, and I cannot permit them to go unpunished." Then he took up a sharp scimitar, and raised it in the air to strike off her head, when his wife Mandodarí

Interposition of his wife Mandodarí.

suddenly appeared and caught him in her arms, and said:—"Be patient, my lord, and stain not your reputation by such a heinous offence: All the Sastras agree in condemning the slaughter of a female: You have women by hundreds, and I pray you go and take pleasure in their company: This woman is weak and melancholy, and has no inclination to become your wife: Do not, therefore, entertain any passion for her; for he who forces the inclinations of a woman will die an early death, or become the prey of endless disease."

Rávana again threatens to devour Sítá after two months.

At these words Rávana was somewhat quieted, but he desired the female attendants to persuade Sítá to become his wife within two months; and if when that time was over she still refused him, they were to cut her in pieces, and bring him the flesh for his morning meal. Having given these instructions, Rávana returned with his women to his own apartments.

9th, Efforts of the Rákshasí women to induce Sítá to yield to Rávana.

Meanwhile the Rákshasí women came and seated themselves round Sítá, and endeavoured to turn her heart towards Rávana; but their efforts were as vain as those of a child who endeavours to turn the current of the holy Ganges with a handful of sand. They then threatened to torture her,

Sítá's terror.

and even to devour her; and she was in an agony of terror,

Trijatá prophesies the ultimate triumph of Ráma.

and a virtuous woman named Trijatá, who had hitherto been asleep, was awakened by her cries. And Trijatá arose up and said to the others:—"If you have any desire

for your own safety, you will keep your hands from Sítá, for I have dreamed a dream which betokens victory to Ráma, and destruction to Rávana." Then all the women left Sítá, and crowded round the aged Trijatá to listen to the story of her dream; and when they had heard it, they departed out of the grove, and went to their own apartments.

10th, Interview between Hanuman and Sítá.

Whilst Sítá was thus left alone in the grove, she heard a voice repeating the story of Ráma; and looking up to see whence the voice came, she beheld nothing but a very small Monkey; and she thought that her ears had deceived her, and became as sorrowful as before. Then Hanuman said:—"O mother, I am not what you take me to be: I am the slave of Ráma, my name is Hanuman, and I am the son of Váyu; and I have been sent by Ráma to discover if you were here." So saying, Hanuman descended from the tree, and bowed himself before Sítá; and he put into her hand the signet ring which bore the name of Ráma, and which Ráma had given to him at the time of his departing with the army towards the south. Then the grief of Sítá burst forth afresh, and she placed the ring on her head, and then upon her bosom; but she began to rejoice greatly when she heard that a day of deliverance was nigh at hand.

Hanuman gives Ráma's signet ring to Sítá.

Sítá's grief.

Hanuman proposes to carry away Sítá.

When Hanuman had thus acquainted Sítá with all that had occurred to Ráma after she had been carried away by Rávana, he proposed to bear her away upon his shoulder, and restore her to her husband Ráma. Sítá said:—"How can so small a Monkey carry me over the broad ocean?" Then Hanuman increased his size, until he became as large as a mountain, and then he reduced himself to the same size as before. And Sítá looked on with wonder, and said:—"I now believe that you can carry me, but I will never of my own will touch any man but Ráma: Moreover, if you took me hence by stealth, all the world would say that Ráma is a coward, and is unable to punish Rávana." Sítá then dismissed Hanuman, saying:—"Only two months remain to me; and if within that time Ráma does not come and deliver me, I shall be devoured by these dreadful Rákshasas." She then gave to Hanuman the only jewel which she had re-

Proves his strength by swelling to the size of a mountain.

Sítá declines to be touched by any man save Ráma.

maining, and she put on Ráma's ring in lieu thereof, and she blessed Hanuman, and permitted him to depart at the rising of the sun.

Hanuman leaves Sítá.

11th, Hanuman destroys the grove.

Now when Hanuman left Sítá in the Asoka grove, he thought within himself that he had succeeded in discovering Sítá, and must now do something to injure Rávana. So he again assumed a large shape, and entered a beautiful grove of mango trees, and ravaged it in all directions, so that not a single tree remained in all the garden. The Rákshasas who watched in the garden were all fast asleep; but they were awakened by the terrible noise; and seeing that the garden was all destroyed, and that the countenance of Hanuman was fearful to behold, they went to Rávana, and told him that a large Monkey had entered Lanká, and destroyed the whole of the garden.

The guards complain to Rávana.

Rávana sends eighty thousand Rákshasas who are destroyed by Hanuman.

When Rávana heard what Hanuman had done, he called eighty thousand Rákshasas, and ordered them to bring that great Monkey before him, tied hand and foot. The mighty army of Rákshasas then went forth into the garden, but when Hanuman saw them approaching, he pulled down a crystal pillar, and whirled it over his head, and slew hundreds; and taking other pillars, he whirled them round also, until within a single hour he had sent the whole of the eighty thousand Rákshasas to the mansions of Yama. And Hanuman then destroyed all the guards that watched in the garden, excepting only a very few who escaped to Rávana, and told him all that the Monkey had done.

Combat between Hanuman and Jambu-málí.

When Rávana heard that his eighty thousand Rákshasas were destroyed, he sent for Jambu-málí, the son of the Commander-in-Chief, and told him to go out into the garden, and not to return until he had slain this bloodthirsty Monkey. So Jambu-málí went to his own chamber, and put on a red cloth, and over it a coat of mail; and he put a helmet upon his head, a string of pearls upon his neck, earrings in his ears, and an ornament upon his arms; and he armed himself with a sword, a club, and a leathern thong. He then ascended his chariot, and proceeded to the garden, where he found Hanuman seated upon the wall; and he dis-

charged many arrows, and pierced Hanúman upon his head, his two arms, and his breast. In return, Hanuman took up a large tree, and hurled it at the head of his enemy; but Jambu-málí cut the tree into pieces with his arrows. Then Hanuman took up a pillar and threw it at Jambu-málí, and dashed him and his chariot to pieces, and killed him and all his servants; and only one man escaped to carry the news to Rávana.

Hanuman slays seven Rákshasa Chiefs, five Commanders, and Aksha, the son of Rávana.

Raja Rávana was now in great dismay, and his eyes flashed fire with rage. And seven mighty Rákshasas appeared before him, and prayed that they might be sent against Hanuman; and Rávana gave them leave to go, and they went out and were all slain by Hanuman in the same manner as he had slain Jambu-málí. Then Rávana sent out five Commanders, but they too were slain by Hanuman. Then he ordered his own son Aksha to go forth, and he was slain in like manner.

Rávana sends his son Indrajit, the conqueror of Indra, to fight Hanuman.

When Rávana heard that his son Aksha was slain, he was filled with grief, and he sent for his famous and beloved son Indrajit, who had once conquered the all-powerful Indra, the sovereign of the gods. And Rávana said to Indrajit:—"O my son, nothing is impossible to you: Go you, therefore, and conquer this evil Monkey!" At these words Indrajit rose up and arrayed himself for the battle; and he ascended his chariot, which was drawn by four tigers, and went out at the head of a vast army to fight against the Monkey Chief. When Hanuman beheld Indrajit, he set up a loud shout like a roar of thunder; and Indrajit shouted in return, and drawing his bow pierced Hanuman all over with sharp arrows. Then Hanuman seized a pillar as before, and with one blow he put to death the charioteer of Indrajit. Then Indrajit took another chariot, and the battle was very hot, and lasted long. At length Indrajit thought within himself:—"This Monkey must be a god." And he loosened a powerful noose which had been given to him by Brahma, and which never failed of its object; and he threw it over Hanuman. And Hanuman thought within himself that he could break the strings of the noose, but would not do so

Indrajit goes out in a chariot drawn by four tigers.

The combat.

Indrajit binds Hanuman in the irresistible noose of Brahma.

lest he should offend Bráhma. And he permitted himself to be taken prisoner and bound.

12th, Tricks played by Hanuman upon the Rákshasas.

Then the Rákshasas commanded Hanuman to arise and go before Rávana; and they began to beat him with sticks to compel him to go; but Hanuman said:—"How can I arise and go before your Raja, when I am bound hand and foot! Take me up one of you upon your shoulders, for I am unable to stir of my own accord." And one Rákshasa then came forward and tried to take the Monkey up in his arms, but he could not raise him from the ground. Then one after another came forward, but not one was able to move Hanuman. And Indrajit was in great wrath, and he abused the Rákshasas very harshly, and ordered hundreds of Rákshasas to take the Monkey up. And Hanuman lessened the weight of his body, so that the Rákshasas lifted him upon their shoulders; but then he again assumed his former weight, and crushed the Rákshasas; so that they fell down dead beneath him. Seeing this, no Rákshasa would approach him, but he bade them loosen the bonds on his feet, and they did so; and he then rose up, and walked towards the court of Rávana, and the Rákshasas followed him holding the ends of the cords in their hands. Then the inhabitants of Lanká came forward, and some of them struck Hanuman on the face, and some pulled him by the hair, and others by the tail, whilst other threw ashes upon him. In this manner he was led into the Council-hall of Rávana.

Progress of Hanuman to the Council-hall of Rávana.

13th, Hanuman's appearance before Rávana.

When Hanuman was brought before Rávana and all his Counsellors, Ravana questioned him in great wrath; but Hanuman defied him to his face, and called upon him to restore Sítá to her husband, and to ask forgiveness at the feet of Ráma. Then Rávana was filled with anger, and ordered that the head of Hanuman should be immediately severed from his body. But Vibhíshana rose up and said:—"It has been laid down in all the Sastras, that an envoy is never to be put to death: He may be disfigured, or beaten with leathern stripes, or his head may be shaved,[7] for these are

[7] It will be remembered that the envoys of King David had the half of their beards shaved off by Hanun, King of Ammon. (2 Sam. x.) In the present instance there appears to be some confusion betwen a spy and an envoy.

the three punishments proper to an envoy: Do not therefore slay this Monkey, but let him go and make his report to those by whom he has been sent."

Rávana replied:—"What you say, O Vibhíshana, is perfectly true, and I will not therefore kill this Monkey: But I cannot permit him to depart unpunished: The tail is the chief ornament of the Monkey, and I shall therefore order his tail to be set on fire and burned." So saying, Rávana commanded his Rákshasas to cover Hanuman's tail with old cloths, and to dip it into ghee; and the Rákshasas did so, but Hanuman swelled out his tail to such a monstrous size that all the cloths in Lanká would scarcely cover it. The Rákshasas then dipped his tail in ghee, and set it on fire.

14th, The firing of Hanuman's tail.

Now, when Hanuman's tail had been set on fire, the flame blazed very fiercely, but he felt no pain, and he knew that he was preserved by the power of Ráma and Sítá. Then being intent upon committing evil against Rávana, he reduced his body to a very small size and escaped through the meshes of the noose; and again swelling out to a gigantic height, he seated himself on the top of a wall, and took a pillar in his hand. Then the Rákshasas hastened to recapture him, but with one stroke of the pillar he killed them all; and lashing about his flaming tail, he set all the houses in Lanká in a blaze of fire. Hanuman then went before Sítá, and related to her all that had taken place; and having obtained her permission to depart, he went out of the city, and set out to return to Ráma.

Hanuman escapes and sets Lanká on fire.

When Hanuman reached the sea-shore, he set up a loud shout which was heard by Angada and all the army of Monkeys and Bears who were encamped on the opposite side. He then took another tremendous leap, and passed over the ocean the same way as before; and having rejoined the Monkey army, he related to them the story of all that had occurred to him in Lanká. The whole army of Monkeys and Bears then set out with great joy to return to Ráma and Sugríva; and on their way they came to the honey garden of Sugríva, which was guarded by his uncle, the great Monkey Dadhi-múkha. And the Monkeys entered the

15th, Return of Hanuman and the Monkey Army to Ráma and Sugriva.

Adventures of the Monkeys in the honey garden of Sugriva.

garden, and they drank the honey until they were all drunken, and they made a great noise and tumult; and Dadhi-múkha heard their shouts, and ordered his attendants to drive them out of the garden. At this the Monkeys were in a great rage, and they fell upon Dadhi-múkha, and some beat him, and others kicked him, and others rubbed his face against the ground. Then Dadhi-múkha arose and fled to the city Kishkindhyá, and prostrated himself at the feet of his nephew Sugríva, and informed him of all that the Monkeys had done in the garden. And Sugríva consoled him, but rejoiced greatly, saying:—"Angada would never have permitted the Monkeys to drink the honey in my garden were he not returning with good news respecting Sítá." Sugríva then requested Dadhi-múkha to forgive Angada, and to go and bring the Monkey army with all speed to Kishkindhyá.

Sugríva's joy at the return of the Monkeys.

Meeting between Hanuman and Ráma.

Meanwhile the whole army of Monkeys and Bears, with Hanuman in front, proceeded to the place where they were to meet Ráma and Sugríva, and they filled the air with the name of Ráma. And Angada and Hanuman told all. And Hanuman said:—"Unless the army enters Lanká within one month from this day, Sítá will have put an end to her own life to escape from Rávana." And Hanuman gave to Ráma the jewel which Sítá had given to him in exchange for the ring; and Ráma knew it again, and bestowed great praises upon Hanuman.

Hanuman gives Sítá's jewel to Ráma.

Review of the foregoing narrative of the adventures of Hanuman.

The foregoing narrative is replete with strange pictures which have been familiarized to every Hindú from his childhood by nursery paintings and dramatic representations, but which the European must generally fail to realize by a bare perusal of the story. Accordingly it may be advisable to pause for awhile, and endeavour to call up the scenes in all their grand extravagance as they flash upon the imagination of the marvel-loving Hindú; to leave for awhile the area of truth and nature, and

yield to the witcheries of the Hindú bard, until the fantastic shapes which are shadowed forth by the poet's fancy cease to be the mere phrensy of poetic painting, and become vivid and substantial realities.

Picture of Hanuman's leap.

The first picture is that of the mighty Monkey Hanuman, with form as vast as a mountain and as tall as a gigantic tower. His complexion is yellow and glowing like molten gold. His face is as red as the brightest ruby; whilst his enormous tail spreads out to an interminable length. He stands on a lofty rock and roars like thunder. He leaps into the air, and flies amongst the clouds with a rushing noise, whilst the ocean waves are roaring and splashing below. He alights upon Lanká with a bound which makes the island tremble, and fills the Rákshasa Raja and all his demon Counsellors with mysterious alarm.

Picture of the city of Lanká, with its fortifications and monstrous inhabitants.

Next the fabled city of Lanká passes before the eye like a panorama of marvels. All that is monstrous and magnificent, all that is hideous and beautiful, are to be found in these marvellous houses and palaces, which are shut out from the outer world by lines of impregnable fortifications. Her seven walls and moats recall the vision of the city of Ekbatana; whilst the great streets, intersecting each other, awaken the old dream of the fabled city of Babylon, with its stupendous walls and brazen gates.

Picture of Hanuman stealing through Lanká at midnight in the shape of a cat.

Through this city of marvels Hanuman stealthily creeps at midnight in the form of a cat. The full moon is shining on the moats and battlements, the houses, the bazaars, and the gardens. The giants, the monsters, and the fair women, are all wrapped in deep sleep. After a strange encounter with the Genius of the city, Hanuman approaches the palace

of Rávana; and once more the Oriental bard gives full play to his imagination. The palace and garden, and especially the inner apartments, are described with a luxurious sensuousness which the European poet could scarcely reach. Contrasted with this voluptuous scene is the picture of the desolate condition of Sítá in the Asoka grove, pale, emaciated, and arrayed in the garb of widowhood, without ornament and without perfumes. It is night, but she is sitting beneath a tree, surrounded by the demon women. The bells sound the third quarter of the night, or about three o'clock in the morning. Suddenly an extraordinary incident occurs, which could scarcely have entered the imagination of any one but an Oriental. The ten-headed Rávana awakes in the night and thinks of Sítá; and accordingly descends from his couch, and goes out into the Asoka garden, surrounded by a crowd of beautiful damsels, to seek the object of his desires and induce her to become his wife.

Picture of the inner apartments.

Widowed condition of Sítá in the Asoka grove.

Extraordinary picture presented by the night interview between Rávana and Sítá.

The pantomimic action involved in the proceedings of Hanuman can be easily apprehended; and the European may even sympathize in the shouts of laughter which accompany the discomfiture of the Rákshasas. But the burning of Hanuman's tail is the prime favourite in dramatic representations, and is always hailed by a Hindú audience with a storm of delight. The false tail of the representative of Hanuman is of course stuffed with combustibles, and flares away with a display of fireworks, until the flimsy materials which indicate the streets and houses of Lanká are destroyed in the devouring flames.

Favourite pantomimic representation of Hanuman's setting Lanká on fire with his tail.

The scene in the honey garden is almost equally amusing in the eyes of the Hindús. The joke

Army of drunken Monkeys in the honey garden.

lies in the presumption of the Monkeys, who consider that as they have discovered Sítá, Sugríva will readily forgive them for revelling in his honey garden. But there is another amusing element which must not be overlooked. The Monkeys are said to have intoxicated themselves with the honey; and if the representation of a drunken man can furnish amusement to a mixed audience, it is not difficult to apprehend the intense enjoyment which is produced by the grotesque picture of an army of drunken Monkeys, playing every fantastic trick conceivable in animals that caper about sometimes on four legs and sometimes on two, whose countenances are always ludicrous, and whose very tails are provocative of laughter.

Glimpses of historic truth.

Amidst, however, all the wild extravagance of the poet's fancy, there are a few glimpses of historic truth which are well deserving of notice. Thus the picture of Rávana sleeping, surrounded by a number of beautiful women, is perfectly in accordance with the traditions of the sensuality which prevailed amongst the Buddhist Rajas, and thus tends to confirm the view that Rávana was a Buddhist sovereign. In the early life of Gótama Buddha there is a significant legend which serves to indicate the mistaken voluptuousness that appears to have been the rule, and the weary satiety which frequently followed. Gótama, like Rávana, was constantly taking his pleasure in the company of a large number of beautiful damsels; but one evening, whilst reclining upon his couch as usual, their charms failed to make any impression upon his heart. They danced, they sang, they displayed their graceful forms in every movement, but his thoughts were

Sensuality practised by Rávana common amongst the Buddhist Rajas.

Significant legend of sensuality and satiety in Gótama Buddha.

elsewhere, and at last he fell asleep, and they followed his example. About midnight Gótama awoke, and looking around him beneath the light of the fragrant lamps, he saw the various attitudes, and uninviting appearance of the damsels. Some were snoring, others were gnashing their teeth, others had their mouths wide open, whilst others were restlessly tumbling about in unseemly postures. Accordingly he arose from his couch, and determined from that moment to abstain from all the pleasures of sense, and to pass his life as a devotee.[8]

Part played by Vibhíshana in the original tradition.

The proceedings of Vibhíshana are also worthy of consideration, as he subsequently performed an important part in the story, and evidently belongs to the original tradition. It seems that although Ráma is represented as a god, yet he found it necessary to form an alliance with Sugríva; and in like manner it would now seem that he carried on negociations with a brother of Rávana who aspired to the throne of Lanká. A religious meaning is of course imparted to this transaction, which in itself would otherwise present a very suspicious appearance. Vibhíshana is represented as a faithful worshipper of Vishnu; and in a subsequent portion of the poem he is said to have been ill-used by Rávana for counselling submission to Ráma; and to have deserted the cause of his brother and joined that of the invaders, by whom he was at once recognized as Raja of Lanká. This arrangement, which will be further discussed hereafter, is of a singularly human character, and as such may be readily credited. As regards the religious aspect of the alli-

Religious significance of the alliance between Vibhíshana and Ráma.

[8] See Bigandet's Legend of Gótama. The subject will be referred to hereafter.

ance; it is easy to conceive that in a religious war between the Linga worshippers and the Buddhists, an ambitious and unscrupulous brother of the Buddhist Raja would perceive the expediency of adopting the religion of the invaders, as a step towards securing their support in the effort to supplant the reigning Raja, and obtain possession of the throne. On the other hand, Ráma's genius for alliances seems to have been quite equal to that of any modern sovereign, and to have been attended with extraordinary success. By aiding Sugríva in the struggle against Báli, he secured the assistance of a powerful ally on the mainland; and by espousing the cause of Vibhíshana, he secured the support of a strong party who came over to him from the island.

Ráma's genius for alliances.

CHAPTER XXI.

RÁMA'S INVASION OF LANKÁ.

Division of the story of Ráma's expedition into two parts — 1st, The invasion. 2nd, The war.

THE story of Ráma's expedition against Rávana may be divided into two separate narratives, the first comprising the events which immediately preceded the commencement of hostilities, and the second comprising the war which followed. Accordingly the present chapter will contain the first narrative under the head of "Ráma's invasion of Lanká;" whilst the chapter immediately following will contain the second narrative under the head of "Ráma's war against Rávana."

Narrative of Ráma's invasion.

Important incidents.

Rupture between Rávana and Vibhíshana.

The story of the invasion of Lanká includes some important incidents. It will be seen that the rupture between Rávana and Vibhíshana reaches a climax, and that the Queen-mother appears to have espoused the cause of Vibhíshana. But perhaps the most interesting legend is the alleged construction of a rocky bridge over the channel which separates India from Ceylon, and which is sixty miles across. To this day the tradition of Ráma's bridge is one of the most widely celebrated in all India; whilst the islands and causeways in that neighbourhood are still pointed out as relics of the marvellous structure. The setting up of a Linga in the island of Ramisseram is a significant event that throws valuable light upon a struggle between the Linga wor-

Bridging of the channel between Ceylon and the main.

The Linga set up in the Island of Ramisseram.

shippers and the Buddhists in Southern India, which appears to form the groundwork of this portion of the Rámáyana; and it is especially interesting from the fact that a magnificent pagoda at Ramisseram, containing a brazen Linga set up before an image of Ráma, exists to this day; whilst the locality is regarded as one of the most sacred in all India, and a favourite place of pilgrimage to devout Hindús from the remotest quarters of the Indian peninsula.

The narrative of Ráma's invasion of Lanká is as follows:—

The narrative of Ráma's invasion.

After this, at an auspicious moment, Ráma and Sugríva set out for the sea-shore with an innumerable array of Monkeys and Bears; and Hanuman carried Ráma on his shoulders, and Angada carried Lakshmana in like manner; and they speedily reached the ocean, and encamped in huts made of leaves, and began to consider how they should cross the sea, and reach the island of Lanká. [1]

Progress of the Army of Monkeys and Bears to the sea-coast, accompanied by Ráma and Lakshmana.

[1] The march of the army of Ráma is graphically described in the Adhyátma Rámáyana, as follows:—"Sugríva led the Monkeys, Jámbavat the Bears, and the other Chiefs took their stations at the head of their-respective divisions. The troops, well armed and appointed, formed a square with Ráma and Lakshmana in the centre, who exceeded in lustre the quickly-passing sun. The Monkeys and Bears, resembling the stars of heaven round the moon, dancing on all sides and rejoicing in their strength, covered the space of one hundred thousand miles, so great were their numbers. Each Monkey was invincible in prowess; he could in a moment assume whatever form he chose, and delighted in war. They all continually were crying out:—'Let us hasten our march that we may exterminate Rávana and his host of demons!' In this manner the armies proceeded towards the south, subsisting on the fruits and leaves of the forest, to desolate Lanká. These Monkeys and Bears were each of them an incarnation of one of the gods. Ráma in the midst of his army appeared in great splendour, as the moon among the stars. The heroic Monkeys sounded their shells, the earth trembled with the loudness of their shouts and the lashings of their tails. They passed over forests, mountains, wilds, and sands, without noticing the difficulties of the road. The race of Monkeys are always lively; they marched along swift as the wind in sprightly conversation with each other; they did not leave a single fruit, leaf, or root in any of the forests through which they passed.

"The vast armies of Monkeys and Bears, with Ráma and the rest, marched on day and night in the most regular order, until they reached the southern shore, where they looked with astonishment at the waves of the sea, rolling one after

Nikashá, mother of Rávana, requests her other son, Vibhíshana, to interfere.

Meanwhile Nikashá, who was the mother of Rávana, began to see ill omens on every side; and she was sorely troubled; and she sent for her other son, Vibhíshana, and requested him to advise Rávana to restore Sítá to her husband. And Vibhíshana proceeded to the Council Chamber, and spoke aloud to Rávana before all his Counsellors; but Rávana was wroth and abused him sorely, and commanded him to depart out of Lanká. So Vibhíshana returned to his house, and took leave of his wife Saramá, and directed her to attend upon Sítá, and serve her as a slave.

Vibhíshana goes over to Ráma.

He then went out of Lanká, and proceeded to the camp of Ráma; and four chief men of the city went with him. And when Ráma saw the men, and discovered who they were, he ordered a pot of water to be brought from the sea, and he vowed friendship with Vibhíshana; and he took the water and poured it upon his head, and declared him to be Raja of Lanká in the room of his brother Rávana.

Ráma calls a Council.

After this Ráma called together a Council to consider how they should cross the ocean so as to reach the island of Lanká; and he invoked the god Varuna, the regent of the waters; and Varuna entered the Council, and directed that

The god Varuna advises the construction of a bridge by Nala.

a bridge should be built over the sea. Varuna said:— "There is a Monkey in your army named Nala; he is the son of Viswa-karma, and whatsoever stone he touches will float upon the water." Then Ráma rejoiced, and directed

Nala and the Monkeys build the bridge.

Sugríva to order Nala to build the bridge; and in an auspicious moment the great work was commenced by Nala. And the Monkeys filled the air with their shouts, and incessantly called out the name of Ráma; and they brought trees, mountains, stones, and other articles, and gave them all to Nala; and Nala threw them into the sea, and by

The stones float on the water. Alarm of Rávana.

virtue of his touch all the stones floated upon the waves as though they had been boats.[2] And the news was carried to Rávana that Ráma was building a bridge of stones which

another with a tremendous noise, and seeming as if they rose to heaven and then sank to the lowest abyss, the opposite shore being imperceptible."

[2] According to the Adhyátma Rámáyana Nala engraved the name of Ráma upon every stone; and such was the virtue of Ráma's name that the stones would not sink, but floated on the sea and were united to form a bridge.

floated on the water as though they were planks; and Rávana called together his Counsellors, but they bade him fear nothing, for even if Ráma crossed to Lanká he would fall in battle. Meanwhile the bridge progressed day by day, and on the last day of the month it touched the shore of Lanká.

Completion of the bridge.

Ráma worships Siva and sets up a Linga in Ramisseram.

Then Ráma worshipped the great god Siva, who is the propitiator in all difficult undertakings; and he made a Linga, and worshipped it, and poured offerings over it; and when he was about to throw the Linga into the water, the gods came down from heaven, and presented themselves before him, and besought him to permit it to stay where it was that they might worship it every day. And this Linga remains to this day, and is named Ramesushur, which signifies "the lord of Ráma," or "the god whose lord is Ráma."[3] Then in an auspicious moment Ráma and Sugríva, with all the army of Monkeys and Bears, crossed the ocean upon the bridge which Nala had made, and encamped in the island of Lanká near the Subala mountain; and Ráma sent Hanuman to tell the happy tidings to Sítá, who was still abiding in the Asoka grove; and Sítá was filled with joy, and exulted in the hope of her speedy restoration to her beloved husband Ráma.

Ráma and Sugríva cross the bridge with the army of Monkeys and Bears.

Now when Rávana heard that Ráma and all his Monkey army had crossed the ocean and encamped without the city of Lanká, he sent for two of his Ministers named Súka and Sárana, and desired them to assume the shape of Monkeys,

[3] The setting up of this Linga is of considerable importance, as directly associating Ráma with the worshippers of the Linga. The following account of the circumstance is extracted from the Adhyátma Rámáyana:—"At the commencement of the work Ráma erected the Linga of Rameswara, and having established religious ceremonies he gave it the name of Rameswara, so that even to this day the place where the bridge commenced is termed Setubandha Ramiswara. Ráma issued these commands:—'Let every one born of the human race visit this spot to behold the Rameswara; and, having brought with him the Ganges water, let him pour it over the Linga; from these ablutions the most heinous sins, even the murder of a Bráhman, will be remitted; the performer of these ablutions will become pure as God, and at his death he will take up his everlasting abode in Paradise.' In this manner did Ráma establish the Rameswara on the sea-coast."

and to go and spy out the army of Ráma, and bring him word as to the names and characters of his chief heroes and Counsellors. And Súka and Sárana did as they were commanded, but when they joined the army of Monkeys, they were seized as spies and carried away into the presence of Ráma. But Ráma said to the two spies :—"Go you and count my armies, and learn what you will of my Commanders and Counsellors : and then return and tell all to Rávana, and say that I will reduce his city of Lanká to a heap of ashes, and slaughter him and all his sons and kinsmen, so that not a single one shall be left alive to offer the cake and water to his departed soul." So Súka and Sárana were shown all the armies of Ráma, and saw that the Commanders of the Monkeys and Bears were warriors of great might and skill; and they marvelled exceedingly, and went back to the city and informed Rávana of all that they had seen and heard.

The two spies recognized by Vibhíshana.

Ráma permits the two spies to survey his army.

Ráma's message to Rávana.

At that time Rávana was seated in pomp and magnificence on a throne studded with precious stones. Ten crowns of pearls and jewels were on his ten heads, and thousands of giants surrounded him on all sides. A rich canopy with fringes of the largest pearls was suspended over his throne. He was eating betel leaf, and held a cup of wine in his hand, whilst celestial nymphs were dancing before him. When he heard the message from Ráma he bit his lips and gnashed his teeth, and said :—"Not though all the world came out to fight against me, will I ever restore Sítá to Ráma." He then rose up and went to the roof of his palace, and saw all the armies of Monkeys encamped before his city; and Súka and Sárana pointed out to him the different armies, and told him the names of all their Commanders; and when he saw his younger brother Vibhíshana standing beside Ráma, he was filled with wrath.[4] Then Súka coun-

Description of Rávana seated upon his throne.

Wrath of Rávana at the message from Ráma.

Rávana surveys the army of Monkeys and Bears.

[4] In the Adhyátma Rámáyana the Monkeys are described as being of different colours,—white, black, blue, green, red, yellow, &c. The following description of the Monkey army, which is put into the mouth of Súka, is worthy of extract :—"He who stands at the right hand of Ráma, in splendour equal to the sun, in lustre as the purest silver, over whose head the canopy and ensigns of royalty are spread, is the wise and distinguished Raja Sugríva, under whose command are myriads of Monkeys drawn up in order and battle-array; he is the brother of

scheds Rávana to restore Sítá and make peace with Ráma; but the eyes of Rávana flashed fire, and he said:—"I would have killed you upon the spot, but for your long services: Depart out of this Lanká, and go wheresoever you please."[5] So Súka set off for the jungle, and passed the remainder of his life as a devotee.

Dismisses Súka.

Báli, the conqueror in battle, of the invincible arm. He, who stands on a rock, of mighty stature, whose body in colour resembles the water-lily, who lashes the ground in anger with his enormous tail, who bears a war-mace in his hand, is the valiant Prince Angada, the son of Báli; he is chief over millions of Monkeys. The strength of his body is equal to that of ten thousand elephants; he is next in authority to Sugríva. The next to the left is Níla, the mighty son of Agni, he has hundreds of thousands of Monkeys under him. He who stands close to Ráma, the colour of whose body shines like pure gold, is Hanuman, the son of Vayu, the beloved friend of Ráma's soul, the destroyer of thy son Aksha, the consumer of Lanká, the trusty and special servant of Ráma. He who casts his glaring eyes towards Lanká, who shouts with a voice like a roaring lion, whose thoughts are fixed on the destruction of the city, is the heroic Rambha; under him are a hundred thousand Monkeys. Next is Sarambha, of the yellow body, the commander of millions. He, with the white body, near to Sugríva, is the daring Vanara, the chief of ten millions of long-tailed Monkeys. He who stands by the side of Angada is the mighty Arundha, the chief of five millions. He with the black body, red face, and yellow tail, is Darvindha, of dreadful deeds; he has under him seven millions. He with the green body is Nala, the son of Viswakarma, well skilled in architecture, who built the bridge across the sea, and to whom there is none equal in strength. These are the principal commanders of the Monkeys. There is yet another near to Ráma, and that is the illustrious Jámbuvat, king of the Bears, who has forty crores of Bears under his command."

[5] After the banishment of Súka many evil omens appeared in Lanká, which, according to the Adhyátma Rámáyana, were duly reported to Rávana by the porter of the palace in the following language:—"The heavens appear inflamed from morning until night; the sun shows but little light, it is frequently clouded in total darkness and invisible; heavy thunder is heard in all quarters, lightnings flashing around fall upon the city. Showers of blood and flesh drop from the clouds, the demons are terrified, and no one enjoys his usual happiness. The images of the gods appear sorrowful, tears fall in streams from their eyes; they move from their pedestals, and blood sometimes issues from their bodies. Myriads of crows, kites, vultures, and animals feeding on carcases, hover round Lanká. The image of Kalika Bhaváni has a constant and horrible smile; she wanders from house to house, gnashing her teeth. Asses are born from the wombs of cows, cats from those of mice, and mice opposing cats fight with them, while the cats fly before the mice. These things are contrary to nature, yet are they daily seen. Serpents fight with Garuras, and though they are their food they fear them not. A man wonderful and formidable in his appearance, his head shaved, his body of the deepest black, his eyes yellow, a string of human skulls strung round his neck as a rosary, his arms and legs peculiarly short, the image of death, wanders from morn till night throughout the city, and displays

Rávana prepares to withstand the [illegible] of Ráma.

After this Rávana entered his Council-hall, and [illegible] informed by his Counsellors that Ráma was preparing to attack Lanká; and he immediately sent for Prahasta, who was his Commander-in-chief, and told him to make ready the army of Rákshasas, and to pay the soldiers whatever was due to them, and to collect all the supplies necessary for the war. Then the bugle was sounded, and all the Rákshasa soldiers [illegible]me before Rávana, and bowed their heads, to receive his [illegible]nands. At this moment, Nikashá, the mother of [illegible]a, entered the Council-hall; and Rávana rose up and [illegible]r every respect, and gave her his own seat, and bowed [illegible]her, and stood before her with joined hands. Then [illegible] said to him:—"O my beloved son, why have you [illegible]d to ruin your Raj for the sake of a woman? You [illegible]s of women at your disposal; why do you cast [illegible]r the sake of a single female: I pray you to [illegible]o Ráma, and conclude a treaty with Ráma, and [illegible]ny mind."

[illegible]ikashá had finished speaking, her father Máliavat [illegible]d and spoke as follows:—"O Maháraja, since the [illegible]áma all things have become changed; the Bráh[illegible]orm their sacrifices with impunity; they repeat [illegible]ed hymns from the Vedas, which terrify the [illegible]s; and the smoke of the homa rises high in the [illegible] almost burns the Rákshasas: From all these omens [illegible]e that our rule is nearly over; and it is not proper [illegible] time for you to go to war: My counsel is that you [illegible], and make peace with Ráma, otherwise no good [illegible]ou."

[illegible] speeches Rávana was greatly enraged, and he [illegible]the father of his mother in harsh language; [illegible]Nikashá and her father Máliavat saw that

[illegible] every door. Earthquakes occur seven times every day; dogs [illegible]ually howl and bray in the streets and narrow lanes; fires hourly [illegible]lie before their parents. Those stars such as Saturn, planets with [illegible] comets, which should not be visible at this season, are seen even [illegible]ne. The sun and moon are under a perpetual eclipse; the circle [illegible]noon seems a mass of blood; the sun is seen at night. Such are the [illegible]s which hourly are visible; their effects will, I fear, prove baneful

Rávana was greatly enraged, they fled from the Council-hall.

Flight of Nikashá and Máliavat.

The foregoing narrative of Ráma's invasion of Lankâ prior to the actual commencement of hostilities comprises a few scenes which never fail to create a deep impression upon the imagination of the Hindú. He sees in his mind's eye the vast army of Monkeys of different colours marching to the sea-coast, accompanied by an army of Bears, and filling the air with their thundering shouts of "Victory to Ráma." He beholds the vast bridge of rock and stone stretching over the broad sea which separ the Indian continent from the Island of C and he feels a pride, at once national and r in the idea that the innumerable battalions crossed the channel upon this marvellous Lastly, the Lingá which Ráma set up on t of Ramisseram is to him both a monu triumph and a mysterious symbol; and he it with so much religious awe that like Hero old he trembles as he speaks of it, lest he sh fall any irreverent words which might excit anger of the gods.

Review of the foregoing narrative of Ráma's invasion.

The army of Monkeys and Bears on their march.

The origin of the conception of Ráma's br forms a curious subject of inquiry. The fa bridge of boats by which the army of Xerxes pa over the Hellespont, and the bridges constru by Darius over the Thracian Bosphorus and ri Danube, are commonplace matters of fact in co parison with a bridge of stone sixty miles long tending over a deep sea. Strangely enough a ro causeway runs out from the Indian side of t channel, and terminates at the Island of Ramisseram

and although it is at present covered by the sea, it is said to have been formerly above the waves. A similar causeway runs out from the opposite shore of Ceylon, and terminates in the Island of Manar; whilst a sandy ridge, known as Adam's Bridge, connects Manar with Ramisseram. There can therefore be little doubt that the Hindú bard formed the idea of a bridge from a contemplation of the physical geography of the locality; and the conception once formed was readily believed and widely disseminated. To this day the huge blocks or boulders which are to be found in various parts of India are universally believed to have been dropped by the monkeys in the attempt to carry them southwards for the purpose of forming the bridge.

Causeway terminating at Manar.

Adam's Bridge connecting Ramisseram with Manar.

[redacted]sland of Ramisseram, and the pagoda which [redacted]to have been erected there as a memorial [redacted]a's crossing the sea, are naturally replete [redacted]terest to every reader of the Rámáyana. [redacted]goda is one of the most magnificent in India. [redacted]ateway is lofty and massive, a pyramidal [redacted] a hundred feet high, and covered with carv- of minute figures, amongst which the Lingá is [redacted]iently exhibited. The door is Cyclopean in its [redacted]arance, being forty feet high, and composed of [redacted] slabs of stone placed together perpendicularly [redacted]h cross slabs of the same material. Beyond the [redacted]eway is a cloistered quadrangle six hundred feet [redacted]are, the pillars of which are three feet deep and [redacted]vered with carvings. Beyond the cloisters are [redacted]eral temples with brick spires, profusely decor- [redacted]d. The whole precinct is surrounded by a [redacted]ofty wall, which is covered with minute carvings like those on the pyramidal gateway.

The entrance to the temples is on the south side. Here stands a temple to Síva, the god of whom the Lingá is a symbol. On the right is a large temple to Ráma, in which the figure of the god is to be seen with a large brazen Lingá before it. On the left is a smaller temple to Sítá, in which the goddess is represented richly dressed; and a brazen pillar ending in a vane of three cross bars stands before it, and is surmounted by a Bird, which may perhaps be intended to represent one of those Rajas of Vultures which are introduced in the Rámáyana as allies of Ráma. Without the doo[r] are the vast chariots of the gods, profusely covere[d] with carvings, in which the images are occasionall[y] placed, whilst thousands of worshippers assist t[o] draw them along.

The temple to Síva.

The temple to Ráma and brazen Lingá.

The temple of Sítá with brazen pillar surmounted by a Bird.

The Island of Ramisseram is regarded by t[he] Hindús as more sacred than the Island of Delos regarded by the Greeks. No labour or culti[va]tion of any kind is carried on in any part of it[,] Bráhmans, safely embosomed amidst the[ir] pass their time in idleness, or meditation, o[r] performance of religious rites, or in attendance the numerous pilgrims that visit this locality. live upon the contributions of the devout, and cially upon the large sums which the Poligar c[hie]fs of the neighbouring provinces on the mainland pend upon the establishment in this Island.[6]

The story of the preparations for the wa[r] either side is related at considerable length i[n] original, and swelled out by a number of relig[ious] discourses, similar in character to those which h[ave] already been extracted in the form of notes fro[m]

[6] See Travels of Lord Valentia.

the Adhyátma Rámáyana. Angada is also said to have been sent out with a message to Rávana, demanding the restoration of Sítá on pain of immediate destruction, and the transfer of the empire of Lanká to Vibhíshana; but the narrative of the mission has been so largely mixed up with mythical details, that it has been omitted altogether from the present text.

CHAPTER XXII.

RÁMA'S WAR AGAINST RÁVANA.

THE second portion of the narrative of Ráma's expedition against Rávana comprises the story of the actual war. The description of the combats, s like the description of the great war in the Mahá Bhárata, occupies a very large space in the origi poem, the narrative being interwoven w of supernatural detail which has bec away without damage to the narrati dents, however, have been preser their popularity amongst the Hin are otherwise devoid of historic

The principal events and s against Rávana are as follows:

1st, Commencement of h army.

2nd, Great battle between th shasas without the city.

3rd, Indrajit's first sacrifice, a Ráma and Lakshmana in the noos

4th, Rávana takes the field in p Ráma.

5th, The awakening and death of Kun karna.

6th, Indrajit's second sacrifice and successful charge of the Monkey army.

7th, Restoration of the dead Monkeys to life.

8th, Rávana shuts himself up in Lanká.

9th, Third sacrifice and death of Indrajit.

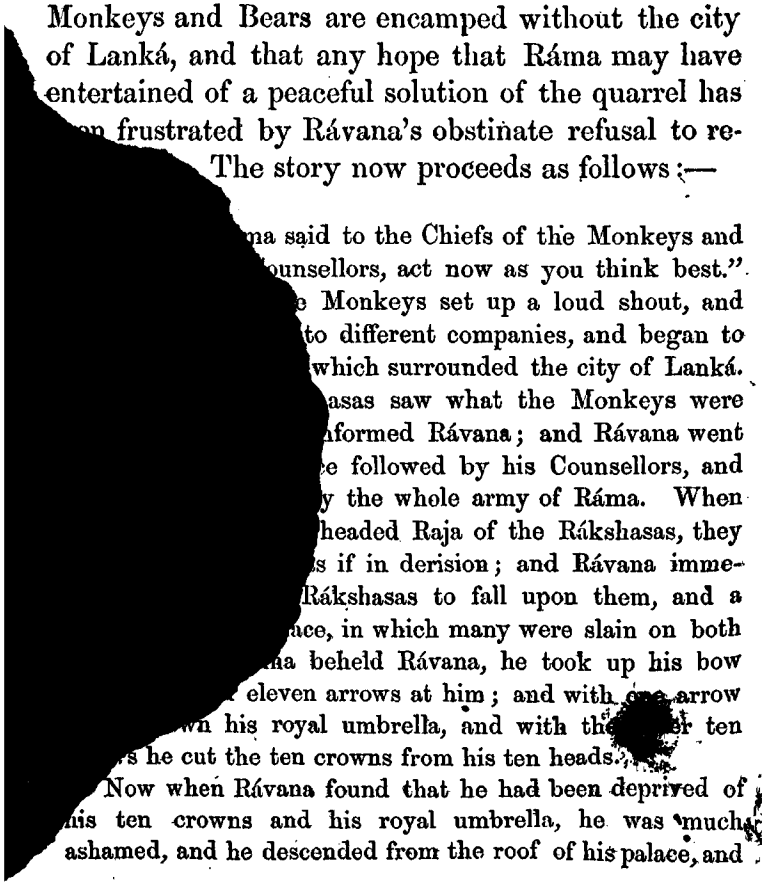
10th, Rávana again takes the field without the city.

11th, Hanuman's adventure with Kála-nemi.

12th, Rávana's sacrifice.

13th, Final overthrow of Rávana.

The narrative of these events may now be related. It will be remembered that the armies of Monkeys and Bears are encamped without the city of Lanká, and that any hope that Ráma may have entertained of a peaceful solution of the quarrel has been frustrated by Rávana's obstinate refusal to restore Sítá. The story now proceeds as follows:—



...ma said to the Chiefs of the Monkeys and ...ounsellors, act now as you think best." ...e Monkeys set up a loud shout, and ...to different companies, and began to ...which surrounded the city of Lanká. ...asas saw what the Monkeys were ...nformed Rávana; and Rávana went ...e followed by his Counsellors, and ...y the whole army of Ráma. When ...headed Raja of the Rákshasas, they ...s if in derision; and Rávana imme- ...Rákshasas to fall upon them, and a ...ace, in which many were slain on both ...a beheld Rávana, he took up his bow ... eleven arrows at him; and with one arrow ...wn his royal umbrella, and with the other ten ...s he cut the ten crowns from his ten heads.

Now when Rávana found that he had been deprived of his ten crowns and his royal umbrella, he was much ashamed, and he descended from the roof of his palace, and

ordered his army of Rákshasas to march out of the city and bring him the heads of Vibhíshana, Ráma, Sugríva, and Lakshmana. And the Rákshasas arrayed themselves for the battle, and marched out of the city into the plain; and Ráma and his army of Monkeys set out to meet them. And the two armies were arrayed against each other, and they abused each other for a long while; and at length the Monkeys attacked the Rákshasas with trees and huge stones, and the Rákshasas returned the charge with a shower of arrows. After fighting a long time, the two armies came to close quarters, and the Rákshasas gained the victory, for very many Monkeys were slain upon the field, and the remainder betook themselves to flight; but at this moment Sugríva seized a large tree by the roots, and hurled it forwards in the direction of Indrajit, the famous son of Rávana, and conqueror of Indra; and the tree crushed the chariot of Indrajit to pieces, and killed his horses and charioteer.[1]

Rout of the Monkey army.

[1] The story of the battle between the Rákshasas and the Monkeys is of interminable length in the Rámáyana. The following graphic description of the two armies, and of the encounter in the plain, which is extracted from the átma Rámáyana, will be sufficient to indicate the popular idea of the w army of demons marched out of the fort, striking up their kettledru like instruments, the sound of which resembled the thunder that will day of dissolution. Some were mounted on buffaloes, others on cam on elephants, on asses, on hogs, on hyenas, and on wolves. Their ar of swords, tridents, clubs, bows and arrows, maces, beams, spears, other offensive weapons. They marched forward in lines as the waves one rolling after another, while numerous bodies remained within the wa tect the town.

"Meantime Sugríva in obedience to the commands of Ráma had mars the Monkeys in ranks, and now placing himself at their head he led them to the attack. Some tore up trees by the roots, some carried in the immense rocks, while others depended on their teeth and nails, sharpe swords for the occasion. Some had teeth like long arrows, others seemed they had thirty-two pointed daggers in their mouths. Thus were the Monk drawn up in lines according to the colour, each line consisting of ten millions number, in complete order and array. They sounded their shells, they sang w songs on the plain, their flags and ensigns were displayed without number; ea Monkey as he advanced cried out, 'Victory to Ráma!' 'Victory to Lakshmana 'Victory to Sugríva!' So loud were their shouts, that the sound of them wa heard at the utmost extremity of the earth. Some leaped, some danced, such was their joy; each Monkey resembled a red, a white, a green, a black, or a blue mountain, according to his colour. The Chiefs, such as Raja Sugríva, Hanuman,

3rd, Indrajit's first sacrifice, and confinement of Ráma and Lakshmana in the noose of the snakes.

After this Indrajit himself took to flight, and resolved to make the offering of homa to the god of fire, before recommencing the battle. Arraying himself in red clothes and garlands of red flowers, he kindled the sacred fire with twigs of sacred trees. He then sacrificed a black goat, and taking its blood in an iron pot, he offered it as homa to Agni, and the sacrifice burned propitiously. Suddenly there came out of the fire a golden chariot drawn by four horses, and filled with every kind of weapon; and Indrajit rejoiced greatly, for he knew that when he was seated in that chariot he could see others whilst he himself remained invisible. Indrajit then mounted the chariot, and appeared before Ráma, and he discharged many arrows at Ráma and Lakshmana; and the two brothers could not perceive him, neither could they discern whence the arrows came. At last Indrajit took the noose which had been given to him by Brahma, and which was made of serpents; and he threw the noose

---

Nila, Nala, and others, beyond the power of calculation, placed themhe head of their respective lines. Beside them stood Ráma, the protectporter of them; he inspired them with a portion of his own mighty

rmy of Demons appointed by Rávana marched out of the Fort; the beholding them could not restrain their fury; they rushed forward to Some hurled trees and rocks on their foes; others confiding in their on the Demons, who fought with equal fury. The battle was tre- the sight; the Monkeys at every blow called out, 'Ráma! Ráma!' of Monkeys fell by the hands of the Demons, thousands of Demons ls of the Monkeys. By each tree ten enormous giants were felled to d, by each rock hundreds of Demons were crushed to atoms. Some of nkeys springing on their enemies tore them to pieces with their teeth and each party crying out, 'Strike! Strike! Kill! Kill!' The air resounded eir shouts. Millions of broken war-cars were scattered over the plain; nds of elephants, lions, hogs, and other animals, fled about covered with and deprived of their riders. A river flowed from the blood of the ons and of the Monkeys; a mountain was formed of their bodies; so great s the heap of bones and limbs as if an immense hill was formed in the sea. In s manner did the battle rage until mid-day, while Ráma looked on, and beheld heroes and warriors active in the combat. He knew them to be incarnations the gods, and the reflection of his favour shone upon them; through the blessing his kindness the strength of each Monkey was extended a hundred-fold. The rime of Rávana in stealing Sítá was about to receive its merited punishment; his fortune was on the decline; when the fortune of the sovereign is lost that of his army becomes hopeless. A fourth part of Rávana's troops were slain that day on the field of battle."

over the two brothers, and caught them in its meshes. After a while the gods in heaven perceived the condition of Ráma, and they sent Váyu to remind him that he was Vishnu, and to advise him to call for the aid of his own Bird Garura. Váyu did as he was commanded, and Ráma then remembered the name of his Bird Garura; and Garura instantly appeared before him; and the snakes that formed the ties of the noose fled at the smell of the mighty Bird, and the two brothers were released from the toils. Then Garura rose in the air, and went his way.[2]

The gods send the Bird Garura to deliver Ráma and Lakshmana from the noose.

After this Rávana ordered his army of Rákshasas to gather together, and prepared to go out with them and do battle against Ráma. And Mandodarí, who was his favourite wife, tried to dissuade him, but he refused to hearken to her words. And he marched out of Lanká with a vast array of horsemen and footmen, and elephants and chariots, and there was a great battle;[3] and the Rákshasas discharged

4th, Rávana takes the field in person against Ráma.

[2] Garura is worshipped as the sacred bird upon which Vishnu is accustomed to ride. Thus it was Garura who is said to have carried Krishna from Hastínapur to Manipura after the defeat and death of Arjuna. Garura is described as a great devourer of serpents, and was father of Jatáyus, the Vulture who was slain by Rávana. The myth in the text has a religious meaning, which is not without value. Indrajit was the conqueror of Indra, but still he could only gain a temporary ascendancy over Ráma by the aid of Brahma. But Brahma is inferior to Vishnu, and consequently his noose of serpents was devoured by the bird Garura. These puerilities are a characteristic of much of the popular religious teaching amongst the Hindús. It is a curious fact that no pious Hindú will commence the story of Ráma and Lakshmana being caught in the noose, unless he is enabled to continue it to the happy conclusion when the two heroes are delivered by the snake-devouring Garura. A native friend was on one occasion interpreting the story to the author as it appears in the Bengalee version; and was taken so unwell in the middle as to be unable to proceed. He appeared, however, the next day rather earlier than usual, and finished the remainder of the incident, much to his own satisfaction, disclosing at the same time his reasons for doing so.

[3] The appearance of Rávana on this occasion is described in the Adhyátma Rámáyana in the following graphic passage:—"A thousand horses were harnessed to Rávana's car, on which he deposited various weapons, the messengers of fate. As he passed through the gates thousands of kettledrums and shells sounded on the walls, and the shouts of his followers resembled those which will be heard on the last day. Clouds of dust hid the sun from the Demons, in the like manner as Ráma is concealed from the ignorant. Rávana marched out of Lanká in great pomp, state, and magnificence; his ten heads appeared as ten mountains, his twenty eyes as dark ovens, his teeth as anvils, his twenty arms as the branches of the largest trees, his breast as a broad terrace, his belly as an enor-

their arrows whilst the Monkeys hurled down trees, and stones, and mountains. And there were many single combats, and Rávana fought first with Hanuman, and then with Lakshmana, and last of all with Ráma. After a while Ráma discharged a crescent-shaped arrow which again cut off the ten crowns from the ten heads of Rávana; and Rávana was greatly ashamed, and left the field, and returned to Lanká.

5th, The awakening and death of Kumbha-karna.

Rávana then entered his Council-hall, and sat upon the throne, and he was much discomforted; and he thought upon the power of Ráma, and sighed heavily. He then sent for his Counsellors, and desired them to guard the city with the utmost vigilance; and he gave orders that his brother Kumbha-karna should be awakened from his deep sleep, saying:—"My brother Kumbha-karna is very brave and powerful, and I have no doubt but that the moment he wakes he will relieve us from the terror of Ráma: By the blessing of Brahma he sleeps for six months, and then wakes up for one day, and for that day he is invincible: Awake him, therefore, without delay: Fear him not, show him no mercy, but beat him, if it be necessary; only wake him up; for of what use can he be if he does not arise, and save us from destruction!"[4]

Extraordinary efforts to awaken Kumbha-karna.

At this command, the Rákshasas prepared enormous quantities of flesh meat, together with garlands of flowers, incense and other perfumes, and carried them to the apartment where Kumbha-karna lay sleeping. And they kindled a fire, and threw incense thereon, and began to dance and

mous jar, the colour of his body as a blue mountain, his eyebrows and whiskers as black serpents. On his ten heads he wore crowns of gold, studded with the richest gems. In his twenty hands he bore the following weapons:—1. A sword; 2. a shield; 3. a bow and arrows; 4. a battle-axe; 5. a trident; 6. a battering-ram; 7. a noose; 8. a wooden club; 9. a short lance; 10. a spear; 11. a bludgeon with an iron head; 12. a mace; 13. a fork; 14. a two-edged sword; 15. a poignard; 16. a dagger; 17. a javelin; 18. a tremendous scourge; 19. a circle; 20. a mace, the head of which was studded with long and sharp spikes.

[4] According to the legend Kumbha-karna had practised great austerities like his brother Rávana. Brahma then offered him a boon, upon which he asked for the power of long slumber; sleep being regarded by many Hindús as a state of happiness. After this Kumbha-karna slept for six months at a time; and at the expiration of every period awoke up and devoured an enormous meal, and then went to sleep again.

sing round his bed, but still he slumbered on. Then they began to shake the gigantic Rákshasa with all their might; and some sounded the shell of triumph in his ears, whilst others beat him with all sorts of weapons, but still they could not awaken him. They then brought in a thousand elephants, and permitted them to walk over his body, but still he continued sleeping. At last they brought in a number of beautiful women, and directed them to sing and dance round his bed, and to caress him with their arms; and when he felt their gentle touch, and smelt the sweet fragrance of their lips, he began to quiver, and presently he opened his eyes, and rose up with a loud roaring.

Success of the women.

Then Kumbha-karna, with eyes red with rage, demanded the reason of his being awakened, and the Rákshasas replied with joined hands:—"O Yuvaraja, you spend so much of your time in sleep, that you know nothing of the dangers which environ your elder brother: Arise now and satisfy your hunger." So saying, the Rákshasas spread the provisions before Kumbha-karna, and he began to make a prodigious meal. First he took an immense quantity of rice and vegetables, then in four mouthfuls he devoured a great many roasted hogs and deer, and then he ate two thousand human beings, and drank a thousand pots of wine. When he had finished, the Rákshasas informed him that the city of Lanká was threatened by two human beings and an army of Monkeys; and he cried out:—"Let me go and devour them." Then he proceeded to the Council-hall, and his stature was loftier than the walls of Lanká; and when the Monkeys saw him in the distance they were sore afraid. And Rávana told his brother Kumbha-karna all that had taken place; and Kumbha-karna rebuked him for having excited the enmity of Ráma. Nevertheless Kumbha-karna mounted his chariot, and went out against the Monkey army, and put them to rout; and he crushed Sugríva with a large stone, and carried him away in triumph to the city of Lanká. Then Kumbha-karna again took the field, and Ráma went out to meet him; and after much fighting Ráma severed the head of Kumbha-karna from his body, and the whole army

Rage of Kumbha-karna.

His prodigious meal.

Threatens to devour the Monkeys.

Takes the field and carries away Sugriva.

Slain by Ráma.

of Monkeys rent the air with mighty shouts of "Victory to Ráma!".

6th, Indrajit's second sacrifice and successful charge of the Monkey army.

When Rávana heard that his brother Kumbha-karna had been slain by Ráma, he was exceedingly grieved; but his son Indrajit arose and said:—"This is not a time for idle lamentations, for your enemies are roaring at your gate like lions: Behold, I will go out myself against Ráma, and kill him and all his army." Indrajit then determined to render himself once again invisible; and he drove his chariot towards the sacrificial pit, and ordered all things to be made ready for the homa, and performed the homa with the blood of a black goat; and the fire burnt propitiously, and Agni took the offerings with his own hands; and when the sacrifice was completed, a chariot filled with all kinds of weapons came out of the fire. Indrajit then mounted the chariot and again became invisible; and he returned to the field of battle, and dismissed his army, and ascended into the air, and discharged a heavy shower of arrows upon the Monkeys; and he slaughtered thousands upon thousands, for no one could tell whence the arrows came. Then Ráma and Lakshmana fell down upon the earth, and feigned themselves to be dead, and Indrajit returned in triumph to the city of Lanká.

Ráma and Lakshmana feign to be dead.

7th, Restoration of the dead Monkeys to life.

After this, Hanuman and Vibhíshana took torches, and surveyed the army of Monkeys, and found that they had been desperately cut to pieces by the arrows of Indrajit. Some were without heads, others without legs, others without arms, many were dying from thirst, and sixty-seven crores of Monkeys were dead. Then Sushena, the physician, came up and said to Hanuman:—"Go you to the northern mountain Gandha-mádana, and bring hither four different sorts of herbs which are growing there: The first will restore the dead to life, the second will drive away all pain, the third will join the broken parts, and the fourth will heal all wounds caused by the arrows: If you bring these herbs before sunrise, Ráma and Lakshmana and the whole army will recover; but if the sun rises before you return, nothing on earth can heal them." Hanuman replied:—"By the blessing of Ráma I shall accomplish this journey." Hanuman then rose up

Hanuman's journey through the air.

to the Subala mountain and swelled out his body to a prodigious size, and ascended into the air, and with a mighty leap he passed over mountains, forests, rivers, and cities, until he came in sight of the Himalaya mountains, sparkling with gems and medicinal herbs, and he alighted upon the medicinal ridge between Kailása and Rishava. There Hanuman looked for the herbs, but he could not find them; so he took up the mountain-ridge by the roots, and carried it with all its inhabitants to the battle-field before Lanká. And Sushena found the herbs; and when Ráma and Lakshmana and the Monkey army smelled the herbs, they were all immediately healed. And Ráma praised Hanuman; and Hanuman then carried back the mountain to its proper place.[5]

Hanuman carries away the mountain by the roots.

After this Rávana said to his Counsellors:—"All the Rákshasas I send against the Monkeys are slain upon the field, and never return to Lanká; but all the Monkeys who are slain by the Rákshasas are restored to life, and are again ready for battle: Such a war profits me nothing: Shut therefore the gates of the city, and we will remain within the walls." So the gates of the city were closed, and Rávana and his Rákshasas remained within the walls. Now when Ráma saw that Rávana would not come out to battle, he commanded Hanuman and the other Chiefs of the Monkeys to go into Lanká in the night-time with lighted torches, and to set the city on fire; and the Monkey Chiefs did so.[6] Then Rávana sent out the two sons of Kumbhakarna to fight against Ráma and Lakshmana, but they were slain by Sugríva and Hanuman. Then he sent out the son

8th, Rávana shuts himself up in Lanká.

Ráma orders Hanuman to fire the city of Lanká.

[5] An absurd story is told in the Rámáyana, respecting the difficulty which Hanuman experienced in bringing the herbs to the battle-field before the rising of the sun, according to the direction of Sushena. Whilst Hanuman was flying through the air he perceived that the sun was about to rise. Accordingly he requested the sun to conceal its light until he should reach Lanká, saying:—"Reflect upon Ráma's will, and dread his vengeance!" The sun granted Hanuman's request, and stood still and did not rise till mid-day.

[6] This firing of Lanká seems scarcely in accordance with the previous representation of the destruction of Lanká by Hanuman's tail. But such inconsistencies are by no means unfrequent in the Hindú epics, and are easily reconciled in the national mind by the arbitrary interpretations of the commentators.

HISTORY OF INDIA. PART IV.

of Khara; and he was slain by an arrow which was discharged by Ráma.

When Rávana heard that his nephews were slain, he sent once again for his favourite son Indrajit, the same who had conquered Indra; and Indrajit vowed that he would go forth to the plain, and never leave it until he had rid the world of Ráma. And his mother Mandodarí prayed him not to fight against Ráma; but he remonstrated with her, and told her not to be afraid for that he would speedily fulfil his vow. He then proceeded to a thick jungle to perform a sacrifice to the god Agni, which should ensure him the victory. But Lakshmana discovered his design, and let fly a shower of arrows at the Rákshasas who guarded the place; and the Rákshasas fled, and the Monkeys rushed in and spoilt the sacrifice. And Lakshmana and Indrajit abused each other, and then they fought for a long while, until Lakshmana took the arrow which had been given to him by Indra at the hermitage of Agastya, and repeated the proper mantras, and discharged it at his enemy; and Indrajit fell down dead, and his head was severed from his body. Then Lakshmana and all the Monkey army roared like lions and shouted:—"Victory to Ráma!" And the gods in heaven began to shower flowers upon the head of Lakshmana.

9th, Third sacrifice of Indrajit.

Lakshmana slays Indrajit.

When Rávana heard that his son Indrajit was dead he was seized with an agony of grief, crying out that he had now no son to perform his funeral rites. And he ordered his army of Rákshasas to make ready, and early on the morning of the new moon he marched out of the city; and he pressed through the Monkey army until he approached Ráma and Lakshmana. Then Rávana and Ráma abused each other for awhile, and at last fell too desperately; and they discharged arrows at each other which broke up chariots, or turned back other arrows, or possessed many wonderful powers which were marvellous to behold. Some arrows impelled an enemy to sleep, or to sing, or to dance, or to swoon away, or rendered him hungry or athirst; some had terrible mouths, such as the mouths of tigers, lions, bears, crows,

10th, Rávana again takes the field without the city.

Combat between Rávana and Ráma.

Extraordinary arrows.

jackals, dogs, vultures, herons, and hogs; some produced strange things, such as peacocks, snakes, Garuras, wind, water, fire, or rocks; some were shaped like the sun, whilst others resembled bells, comets, monkeys, maces, chakras, knives, swords, and hatchets. At length, after much fighting, Rávana took up a mace which had been obtained by virtue of a sacrifice, and was infallible. And Rávana threw this mace at Lakshmana, and it pierced his breast, and pinned him to the ground; and none of the Monkeys, nor Ráma himself, could draw out the mace from the heart of Lakshmana. Ráma then fought against Rávana, and compelled him to return to his city of Lanká.

Rávana pins Lakshmana to the earth with his infallible mace.

When it was midnight, Hanuman, at the request of the physician Sushena, set out once again to bring medicinal herbs before sun-rise from the mountain Gandha-mádana, which should recover Lakshmana; and a Rákshasa spy carried the news to Rávana. Then Rávana sent for his uncle Kála-nemi, and said:—"If you can put Hanuman to death I will reward you with the half of my Raj." And Kála-nemi went that moment to the Gandha-mádana mountain, and assumed the form of a devotee, and created a magic hermitage upon the mountain.[7] Meantime Hanuman was passing through the air, and soon reached the place called Nandigráma, which was without the city of Ayodhyá; and he saw Bharata there mourning the absence of his beloved Ráma; all else were asleep, but Bharata was awake, and was fanning the sandal of Ráma. Bharata saw Hanuman pass through the air, and would have shot an arrow at the strange animal; but Hanuman called out who he was, and told Bharata all that had taken place, and then went his way to the mountain.

11th, Hanuman's adventure with Kála-nemi.

Kála-nemi proceeds to the mountain and creates a magic hermitage.

Hanuman's adventure with Bharata at Nundigráma.

[7] The magic hermitage is thus described in the Adhyátma Rámáyana:—"Fruit trees and flowers of every kind and colour sprang up at his command to form an enchanting garden, and birds of every hue flew about chaunting the praises of Ráma. Kála-nemi assumed the form of a man rigorously devout, and by the force of charms he created others similar to himself, whom he stationed in various parts under the appearance of being employed in devotion. Some seemed to be deeply engaged in religious meditation, some in ceremonies of worship, others in reading holy books; some were praying over rosaries consisting of a thousand beads, and some entirely naked were employed in various occupations; in this manner he waited in expectation of Hanuman's arrival."

Kála-nemi plots Hanuman's death by a crocodile.

Now when Hanuman set his foot upon the mountain, he beheld the hermitage of Kála-nemi, and perceived Kála-nemi seated like a devotee upon a deer-skin, absorbed in meditation, with various rosaries round his neck, his body smeared with ashes, and his eyes closed. A form of the Linga was before him, so that Hanuman supposed that he was a devout sage worshipping the Linga. Presently Kála-nemi opened his eyes and beheld Hanuman, and welcomed him as his guest, and conducted him to his hermitage; but Hanuman would neither take food nor drink, but would only bathe in the pond which was near. Then Hanuman dipped his foot into the water, and it was seized by a crocodile; but he jumped out of the water and killed the crocodile; upon which a lovely figure arose from the body of the fish, and assumed the form of a beautiful Apsara, and told him how she had offended the sage Daksha by her pride, and had been cursed by him that she should become a crocodile until she should be delivered by Hanuman. She then thanked Hanuman for her deliverance, and bade him beware of Kála-nemi, and then took her leave and ascended to heaven.

Hanuman kills the crocodile.

Legend of the crocodile.

Meantime Kála-nemi being assured of the death of Hanuman, was pondering over the division of the Raj of Lanká, which had been promised to him by Rávana; when Hanuman suddenly appeared before him and said:—"O you false hermit, I know who you are; there is no use in your disguising yourself any more." So saying, Hanuman took him by the feet, and hurled him round his head, and suddenly let him loose; and he flew through the air, and fell before the throne of Rávana in the Council-hall of Lanká, to the utter surprise of Rávana and his Counsellors.[8]

Hanuman hurls Kála-nemi into the Council-hall of Rávana.

Meantime Hanuman had searched the mountain for the medicinal herbs, but could not find them; and he took up the whole mountain as before, and carried it to Sushena;

Hanuman carries away the mountain a second time.

[8] Kála-nemi is a Hindú Alnaschar. He counts upon the pleasure he shall enjoy when taking half the Raj, without considering that Hanuman may be still alive. To this day when a Hindú thinks of future profit without being sure that he will get it, he is often compared with Kála-nemi.

and Sushena took the herbs, and beat them into a paste, and put it to the nose of Lakshmana, and he was immediately healed as before. Then all the Monkeys shouted aloud:—"Victory to Ráma!"

Lakshmana healed.

After this Rávana sent several warriors, one after the other, against Ráma, but they were all slain; and he determined to go himself once again, and take the field against Ráma. But before going forth he went with joined hands to Súkra, who was the preceptor of the Rákshasas, and implored his aid; and Súkra taught him certain mantras, and directed him to offer sacrifice in a secret place, and repeat the mantras, whereupon certain weapons would come out of the fire, and render him invincible; but Súkra warned him that he must observe a strict silence throughout, or the sacrifice would be devoid of all power. So Rávana returned to his palace, and ordered that the gates should be shut; and he went to his own apartment, and placed guards all round it, and carried the sacrificial materials into the room, and barred and locked the doors; and he dug a large hole in the centre of the room, and commenced the ceremony. Meantime Ráma was informed by spies what his enemy was about to do; and he commanded Angada and Hanuman to go with an army of Monkeys, and obstruct the sacrifice. Then the Monkeys swarmed into Lanká, and forced their way into the palace, and defeated the Rákshasa guards, and broke open the doors of the Raja's apartment, and assailed Rávana on all sides, but still he persevered in the sacrifice. Then Angada went to the inner apartment, and seizing Mandodarí by the hair, he dragged her into the presence of Rávana, and ill-treated her before his face; and Mandodarí began to cry aloud for help, saying:—"Behold the difference between you and your enemy Ráma! See what he is doing for the sake of his wife, and what you are doing, while your own wife is being hurt and insulted?" At these words Rávana was aroused, and he abandoned the sacrifice, and drew his sword and struck a blow at Angada; and Angada having spoiled the sacrifice, relinquished his hold of Mandodarí, and returned with the other Monkeys to Ráma.

12th, Rávana's sacrifice with closed doors.

The Monkeys break open Rávana's apartment.

Angada ill-treats Mandodarí.

Rávana abandons the sacrifice.

Then Mandodarí again implored her husband to make his submission to Ráma, but he was still inexorable, and resolute to take the field.

14th, Final overthrow of Rávana.

Now, when Rávana was going forth to the battle, he met his sister Surpa-nakhá, and turned away from her; and she was enraged, and cursed him, saying:—"As you have turned away from me without sufficient cause, you shall never again return from the field of battle." But Rávana heeded not her words, but went forward in his chariot, and drove the Monkey army before him, until he came into the presence of Ráma; and the god Indra, looking down from heaven, and seeing that Ráma was without a chariot, sent him his own chariot with Matáli for his charioteer, together with his own armour and weapons. Then Ráma and Rávana fought on equal terms for a long while, and sometimes the victory inclined to the side of Rávana, and sometimes to the side of Ráma. At last Rávana became fatigued, and could no longer draw his bow, and he dropped down in his chariot, and his charioteer seeing him in that condition drove him back towards Lanká. When Rávana recovered his senses, he ordered his charioteer to return to the field, and there he renewed the battle with Ráma; and the conflict became very desperate. At length after much fighting, Ráma took up a sharp arrow and cut off one of Rávana's heads; but no sooner did the head fall upon the ground than another sprung up in its room. When they had fought together this way without intermission for seven days and nights, Matáli the charioteer advised Ráma to take up the Brahma arrow and discharge it at Rávana, as Rávana was destined to die by no other weapon. Accordingly Ráma took from his quiver the arrow which Brahma had made in former times from the spirit of all the gods, and which Indra had left for Ráma in the hermitage of Agastya. Ráma then propitiated the Brahma arrow by suitable mantras, and discharged it at Rávana; and it entered his breast, and came out of his back, and went to the ocean and washed itself, and then returned to the quiver of Ráma. Meanwhile Rávana fell to the ground and expired; and the gods

Rávana cursed by Súrpa-nakha.

Rávana reaches Ráma.

Indra sends his own chariot to Ráma.

Combat between Rávana and Ráma.

Second combat.

Ráma cuts off Rávana's heads without effect.

Ráma kills Rávana with a Brahma arrow.

The gods praise Ráma as Vishnu.

sounded celestial music in the heavens, and assembled in the sky, and praised Ráma as Vishnu, in that he had slain that evil Rávana, who would otherwise have caused their destruction.[9]

Review of the foregoing narrative of Ráma's war against Rávana.

The scenes in the foregoing narrative of the war between Ráma and Rávana, the besiegers and the besieged, can be realized with comparative ease.

Character of the war.

The armies of Ráma were encamped upon a plain or

[9] The rejoicings on the death of Rávana are thus described in the Adhyátma Rámáyana:—"The shout of victory, and the cry of 'May thy prosperity endure for ever,' resounded through the conquering armies. They erected their tails in triumph, and laughing and rejoicing they danced around. The gods showered down parijata flowers on Ráma and beat their kettledrums; the Gandharvas struck up their musical instruments; the Apsaras danced before Ráma. The gods who had experienced great oppression and injustice from Rávana rehearsed the praises of Ráma; their joy was unbounded. During this period, a small flame, bright as the sun, issued from the mouth of Rávana, and in the sight of all present it entered into Ráma's foot. The gods then descended to the plain and paid their adorations to Ráma, saying:—'Praise and glory be to thee, O Lord! blessings everlasting be upon thy Monkeys; we this day have been relieved from the hand of the oppressor, we are restored to new life.' They communed, however, among themselves, saying:—'This Rávana was the destroyer of the sages and of the Bráhmans who worshipped God, the persecutor of the gods, the violator of other men's wives; there never yet has been, nor will there ever be any one who committed such enormous crimes, yet have we seen his soul enter into the foot of Ráma, to obtain that distinguished degree of salvation which those who pass myriads of ages in worship and in meditation cannot hope to acquire. How can we account for this wonderful event?' Nárada, the sage, who had attended to their conversation, then addressed the gods as follows:—

"'Listen to me, ye spirits of heaven! while I explain this circumstance. Rávana, though outwardly bearing the appearance of enmity towards Ráma, ever worshipped him in his heart, and remembered his name. He listened with pious attention to the history of Ráma's wondrous works; he feared him; he has this day received his death from the hand of Ráma: On his soul's quitting his mortal frame he beheld the full form of Ráma standing before him, and his sins, how great soever they might be, were remitted: It ought not to be a matter of surprise that he should obtain so distinguished a mark of salvation: If any one, casting an evil eye on the possessions and on the wives of others, through fear or faith pronounces the name of Ráma, he will instantaneously be purified from sin, and at his death he will find a place prepared for him in an abode difficult even for the gods to reach. Such will be his fate who utters the name of Ráma; of the truth of this circumstance there cannot exist a doubt.'

"Ráma, having exterminated Rávana, stood on the plain in the height of beauty and of glory. In his left hand he held his bow, in his right an arrow which he was returning to the quiver. His hair, braided in a knot on the crown of his head, adorned his forehead, and the splendour of his countenance surpassed the light of the sun and moon."

maidan without the city, and there the battles appear to have taken place; whilst Rávana remained within the city, where he directed the sorties which were made by the Rákshasa army, and overlooked the combats from the roof of his palace. When, however, Ráma and Lakshmana escaped from the noose of Indrajit, Rávana took the field in person, and engaged in turns with Hanuman, Lakshmana, and Ráma; but he seems to have suffered so much on that occasion that he did not again go without the city walls until his cause had been rendered desperate by the deaths of his brother Kumbha-karna and his son Indrajit. The battles in general, like those in the Mahá Bhárata, involve a large number of single combats, in which most of the exploits performed are of a supernatural character. Many weapons are also used which are said to have been endowed by the gods with supernatural powers. In this direction indeed the Hindú bard has indulged in marvellous flights of fancy. Ráma and Lakshmana are said to have been caught in a noose which was made of snakes, from which they are delivered by a sacred bird, who is known in India as a devourer of snakes, and who is invested with a divine character as the vehicle of the god Vishnu. Arrows are described of the most fantastic forms. One shaped like a mace pierces the breast of Lakshmana; another shaped like a crescent carries away the ten crowns of Rávana. Mantras or incantations are uttered over the charmed arrow before it is discharged; a superstitious practice which is evidently of Brahmanical or priestly origin. The consecration of weapons by divine rites, and the utterance of spells or prayers over the consecrated arms, are customs

Rávana's reluctance to take the field.

Number of single combats.

Weapons endowed with supernatural powers.

The noose of snakes.

Fantastically-shaped arrows.

Utterance of mantras over the arrows.

which would naturally exist amongst a credulous and priest-ridden people; inasmuch as they directly tend to increase the power of the priestly hierarchy, and to establish their authority over the warrior class of the community. Besides the belief in the efficacy of mantras, there appears to have been another belief which was equally well calculated to exalt the authority of the priesthood; namely, faith in the efficacy of certain sacrifices to secure the victory over an enemy. In this respect the sacrifices offered by Indrajit and Rávana are very remarkable; and it should be borne in mind that these warriors perform such religious rites, not as patriarchal heads of a family or community, but as actual Bráhmans, the descendants of the sage Pulastya. As regards, however, Indrajit's offering of the blood of a black goat to Agni, the deity of fire, there appears to be some difficulty. In the hymns of the Rig-Veda there seems to be no reference to the sacrifice of goats to Agni, but only to the presentation of such simple offerings as ghee, soma wine, cakes, parched barley, and other similar materials. In all probability the deity to whom blood offerings were made was a god or goddess of war, who is generally supposed to delight in slaughter, and who consequently may be propitiated by the sacrifice of animals or even of human beings. Such practices were not unknown to the ancient Syrians, as is evidenced by the horrible story of the King of Moab, who offered up his eldest son as a burnt-offering upon the city wall in the presence of a besieging army. In India such offerings have been generally made to Kálí, the most blood-thirsty deity in the Hindú pantheon; and it may be remembered that during Hyder's war against the

Belief in the efficacy of sacrifice to insure victory.

Sacrifices performed by Indrajit and Rávana in virtue of their being Brahmans.

Indrajit's sacrifice to Agni.

Probable substitution of Agni for Kálí.

Human sacrifices in ancient times.

Offering of human heads to Kálí.

Poligars in the neighbourhood of Mysore, the Poligar of Chittledroog had set up a shrine to Kálí on the highest part of his citadel, to whom the heads of slaughtered enemies were offered in profusion, in the firm belief that so long as these bloody offerings were duly made, the place could never fall.

Agni substituted as the deity who can render himself invisible.

The substitution of Agni for Kálí in the sacrifices of Indrajit is also rendered probable by the following circumstances. According to the fancy of the Hindú bard, the sacrifices of Indrajit were performed, not so much for the direct purpose of ensuring victory, as for that of rendering himself invisible during his attacks upon Ráma's army. The god of fire is not merely the deity who blazes at the domestic hearth, or upon the sacrificial altar; but the deity of light of every description, who sometimes in the form of lightning conceals himself in the clouds, and thus renders himself invisible. Consequently, as the poet represented Indrajit as becoming invisible through the efficacy of sacrifice, it was necessary to represent him as sacrificing not to the deity of war, but to that god who possessed the power of rendering himself invisible. The sacrifice of Rávana seems to have referred more directly to victory; and its efficacy was evidently admitted by Ráma, inasmuch as its performance excited Ráma's alarm, and every effort was made for its obstruction.

Indrajit sacrifices for the purpose of becoming invisible.

Rávana's sacrifice.

Authority of the priesthood increased by the belief in the efficacy of sacrifice.

Modification of the belief in modern times.

A belief in the power of sacrifice to secure victory must have added largely to the authority and influence of the priesthood in ancient times. In the present day it is explained that such power has been neutralized by the national transgressions; that it has in a great measure passed away on account of the growing want of respect for the Brahmanical

caste, and to the increasing disregard of caste observances and other rules and regulations insisted upon by the Sástras. Indeed there seems to be no other way from an Hindú point of view by which it is possible to account for the inefficacy of Brahmanical sacrifices in the face of British Artillery and bayonets. But in olden time, when the Kshatriyas were a conquering race, the belief in the efficacy of sacrifice was universal and unquestioned; and thus it is that the obstruction of Rávana's sacrifice is regarded as one of the most critical scenes in the narrative of the war.

Ancient belief

The story of the awakening of Kumbha-karna is chiefly remarkable on account of its extreme popularity with the Hindus. In all dramatic representations of the siege of Lanká, the huge slumbering giant is one of the favourite characters; and in this respect he is almost a rival to Hanuman with the burning tail. Indeed immoderate powers of eating or sleeping have always been a subject of mirth with a primitive people; and Kumbha-karna is a pantomimic exaggeration of both capacities, which never fails to bring down shouts of laughter from young and old.

Popularity of the story of the awakening of Kumbha-karna.

Capacity for eating and sleeping a subject of popular mirth.

It is however by no means improbable that the episode of Kumbha-karna was originally intended as a satirical hit at the Buddhist dogma of Nirvána; and that the heavy slumbers of the gluttonous giant are a caricature of that state of eternal rest for the soul, which in the teachings of Sákya Muni was represented as the acme of felicity, and the final aim of every true follower of Buddha.

The remaining portion of the narrative is so largely mixed up with supernatural matter, that

much of what has been retained might have been omitted from the present version without detriment to the story. Glimpses of the original tradition are however occasionally perceptible, as in the account of the ill-treatment of the wife of Rávana by the Monkeys, which is related with considerable amplifications in the Rámáyana. Moreover, notwithstanding the mythical character of many of the incidents, they are deeply enshrined in the memories of the Hindú people; and consequently serve as illustrations of that love of the marvellous, which is peculiar to an ignorant and credulous population, and which has indeed been carried to such an extent as to induce some European critics to dismiss the whole mass of Hindú legend as mere fable or allegory.

CHAPTER XXIII.

TRIUMPHANT RETURN OF RÁMA.

THE story of the Rámáyana reaches its climax in the death of Rávana. The women of the deceased Raja indulge in bitter lamentations over the remains of their departed lord; but otherwise the air is filled with the rejoicings of gods and men and all living creatures, who alike exult in the downfal of Rávana and the victory of Ráma. Here, according to European ideas, the poem would be brought to a natural conclusion with the restoration of the faithful wife to her devoted husband, and the triumphant return of the happy pair to the city of Ayodhyá, there to be enthroned as Raja and Rání. But one hidden sore still remained, which may have had its origin in some Brahmanical scruple of the Hindú bard, but which more probably found a place in the original tradition, and festered as a sad reality in the jealous breast of Ráma. Sítá, although really as pure as snow, had nevertheless *resided many months* in the palace of Rávana, and had been touched, however involuntarily, by a man who was not her husband. The ideas of physical chastity which prevail amongst the Hindus have already been indicated; and now they will receive a further illustration from the cruel coldness which Ráma exhibited for a while towards his faithful and devoted

Death of Rávana the climax of the story of the Rámáyana.

Natural ending according to European ideas.

Difficulty as *regards Sítá's purity after her imprisonment* in the palace of Rávana.

wife. In this portion of the story the estrangement is said to have been only of a temporary character; and after a touching ordeal Ráma took Sítá to his bosom, and the royal pair proceeded in joy and triumph to the city of Ayodhyá. How far this happiness proved to be lasting will be gathered from the subsequent chapter.

Narrative of the ordeal of Sitá and return to Ayodhyá.

The narrative of the ordeal of Sítá, and the triumphant return of Ráma and Sítá to the city of Ayodhyá, may now be related as follows:—

Lamentations of Vibhíshana.

Lamentations of the widows of Rávana.

When Vibhíshana saw that his brother Rávana was slain, he fell down by the dead body, and began to lament loudly. Meanwhile the tidings that Rávana was dead reached the inner apartments of the palace at Lanká; and all the wives of Rávana came out of the palace with dishevelled hair and loose garments, and went out of the northern gate of the city, beating their breasts with their hands. When the women saw the dead body of Rávana lying prostrate upon the ground, they fainted away, but after some time they recovered, and began to caress him as though he had been alive. One would embrace him, another would take up one of his arms, and put it round her neck, another would put his hand to her breast, another would place his feet upon her bosom, another placed one of his heads in her lap, whilst others laid their heads upon his breast. All of them then began to cry:—"What miserable wretches are we to lose such a husband!" Whilst the lamentations of Mandodarí, who was the chief Rání, rose above them all. And Ráma was touched by her sorrow, and desired Vibhíshana to take the women back to the inner apartments, and to perform the funeral rites for his brother Rávana. And Vibhíshana took away the women, and returned to Ráma, and said:—"This Rávana was my enemy; he kicked me before all his Council, and I have therefore no desire to perform his funeral ceremony." Ráma replied:—"I am much grieved to hear these words

Lamentations of Mandodarí. Vibhíshana removes the widows of Rávana.

from you: Rávana is now dead, and he is therefore no longer your enemy, but your elder brother, and it is proper for you to perform all his funeral rites." So Vibhíshana listened to the commands of Ráma, and performed all the funeral ceremonies of his elder brother Rávana, with the grandeur and magnificence which befitted the Raja of Lanká.

Vibhíshana performs the funeral rites.

When the days of the mourning were over, Ráma threw off his war-dress, and dismissed Mátali with sweet words, and directed him to drive back the chariot of Indra to his master. He then commanded that Vibhíshana should be installed Raja of Lanká; and when this was done, he requested Vihhíshana to bring Sítá from the Asoka garden. Then Vibhíshana went away in great delight, and commanded thousands of women to attend upon Sítá, and to dress and adorn her. When all was ready, a litter was brought to the entrance of the Asoka garden, and Sítá took leave of Saramá, the wife of Vibhíshana, who had attended upon her ever since her own husband had been exiled by Rávana. And Sítá spoke affectionately to Saramá, and gave thanks for all the services and favours which Saramá had rendered her during her captivity. Sítá then took leave of the other women, and entered the litter, and in this manner she was carried from the Asoka garden to the plain without the city. Now as the litter approached the camp of Ráma, all the Monkeys gathered round to see Sítá; and Ráma commanded that she should alight and walk, so that the Monkeys could see her; and Sítá did so. When Sítá entered the presence of Ráma, she stood with joined hands, and bowed down to his feet; but Ráma heeded her not, and spoke with harsh words, saying:—"I have killed all my enemies, and I have delivered you from captivity; and now that I have removed my shame I care not to behold you: I can never again receive you as my wife, for you have lived in the house of Rávana."

Installation of Vibhíshana in the Raj of Lanká.

Vibhíshana conducts Sítá to Ráma.

Sítá's parting with Saramá.

Sítá enters the presence of Ráma on foot.

Ráma's cruel words.

At these cruel words of Ráma, the eyes of Sítá became red with fire, and raising her moonlike face, she said:—"O Maháraja, I do not deserve the harsh language which you have uttered to me: I swear by my own virtue that I am

Sítá's appeal.

chaste and unpolluted: If you had formed a wish to cast me aside, you should have told me so long ago, that I might have put myself to death, and thus have been spared this indignity."

Sítá requests Lakshmana to prepare a funeral pile.

Sítá then turned to Lakshmana and said:—"O you, who are the younger brother of my husband! prepare for me a funeral pile that I may put an end to all my sorrows by entering the fire." Lakshmana looked at Ráma for his commands, and Ráma assented; and Lakshmana prepared

Sítá offers up her prayers and enters the fire.

a funeral pile, and set it on fire. Then Sítá offered up her prayers to Agni, to Ráma, to her father and mother, and then to the father and mother of her husband; and she entered the fire in the presence of all the inhabitants of

Ráma's remorse.

Lanká and the whole Monkey army. Then all present reproached Ráma, and Ráma became lost in grief, and his mind wavered to and fro, and he said:—"Mad with rage I have committed a great sin: Having delivered Sítá after so much trouble and pains, I have become the cause of her untimely death: I reproached her for nothing: I shall

Sudden appearance of the gods and Ráma's father Dasaratha.

never find such a faithful wife again." At this moment the gods and the Gandharvas appeared in the air, and Ráma beheld his own father Dasaratha amongst them; and Ráma bowed down his head to the gods. Then, whilst all were

Agni bears Sítá upon his knees and attests her purity.

gazing upon the funeral pile, the god Agni came forth out of the flame, bearing Sítá upon his knees as his own daughter; and she was more beautiful than ever she had been before. And Agni gave her to Ráma, and said:—"Take her as your wife! She is without a stain! I know the hearts of all, and had she the shadow of a stain upon her chastity, she would never have passed in safety from

Ráma receives Sítá as his wife.

me." And Ráma took his wife, and said:—"I knew that my beloved Sítá was chaste and true, but I put her to the test lest men should blame me, and now I am free from all censure." And Ráma took Sítá by the hand, and made her sit upon his left side upon his own throne; and Hanuman offered flowers to Ráma and Sítá, and all the Monkeys and all the gods did the same.[1] After this Dasaratha pronounced,

[1] The story of Sítá's ordeal is somewhat differently told in the Adhyátma

blessings on his son Ráma, and then returned accompanied by the gods to the abodes of bliss.

Next morning Vibhíshana, who was now Raja of Lanká, prayed Ráma to abide for a while in that city; but Ráma said:—"My exile of fourteen years is drawing to a close, and I must return with all speed to Ayodhyá: My brother

Ráma prepares to return to Ayodhyá in the Pushpaka chariot.

Rámáyana, as will be seen from the following extract:—"Sítá burst into tears at the unkind expressions of Ráma, who then said to Lakshmana:—'Prepare without delay a large fire that I may cast Sítá into it to prove her chastity, and whether she has continued continent; she has dwelt a long time in the house of a Demon; it is therefore necessary that the purity of her mind and body should be ascertained.'

"Lakshmana, conceiving Ráma's design, prepared a fire, and when ready he informed him, on which Ráma remained silent. Sítá, acquainted also with her husband's intentions, rose up and having made her obeisance to Ráma she advanced towards the fire. The gods assembled in the heavens; the Monkeys and inhabitants of Lanká stood by the fire to behold the event; the Bráhmans and others of the four castes looked on. Sítá then raising her hands bowed to the spectators. She approached the flames, and paying her adorations to the god of Fire, she thus addressed him:—'Thou, Fire! art comprehended and included in all things in this world; from thee nothing can be concealed: If I have never erred in thought, word, or deed; if the recollection of Ráma has never even for an instant strayed from my mind; if my tongue has never ceased pronouncing his name; if I have never entertained a thought of any other man but Ráma; if all that I have said be just and true, I shall enter into and pass through thy element without sustaining the least injury: I call on thee, god of Fire! to bear witness to my truth, and to do away that shame which has fallen on me.' Having thus spoken she entered into the fire with undaunted steps. There is nothing in this world that purifies equal to fire. The gods from the heavens beheld with astonishment this wonderful event; they said to each other:—'Let us bear witness to the chastity and purity of Sítá, that her sorrows may be done away, and that the praises of Ráma's name may be spread abroad throughout all ages.'

"The thirty-three crores of the celestial spirits assembled in the heavens to behold the ordeal of Sítá's chastity, and sung the praises of Ráma. Brahma then rehearsed from his four mouths the noble endowments and praises of Ráma. When Brahma had concluded the repetition of Ráma's praises, the god of Fire rose from the flames, bearing Sítá on his knees, as if she had been his daughter, clothed in red garments and adorned with jewels. The god of Fire advanced towards Ráma, who is the witness and observer of the universe, and who had appointed him to prove the chastity of Sítá, and thus addressed him:—'Thou, O Lord! didst entrust the real Sítá to my care; thou didst through thine own power create a delusive form resembling her, which form Rávana carried off. Him hast thou slain with his children and his kindred; thou hast rendered light the burden of the world. The fictitious form has disappeared; receive from my hands the real Sítá, whom thou didst confide to my care.' Ráma then paid his adorations to the god of Fire, from whose hands he joyfully received his beloved Sítá. He placed her on his knee, and clasped her with sincere affection to his bosom. The gods beholding the joy of Ráma filled the heavens with their acclamations, and each god came in turn and paid his adorations to Ráma."

Bharata has vowed that he will enter the fire unless I return immediately after my exile has been fulfilled." After this Ráma commanded Lakshmana to destroy the bridge of rocks, lest there should be constant strife between the people of the Island and the people of the Main. And Ráma ordered the Pashpaka chariot to be made ready, in order that he might return to Ayodhyá with his wife Sítá. Then Sugríva and all the Monkeys, and Vibhíshana and all the Rákshasas, prayed Ráma that they might behold his inauguration at Ayodhyá; and Ráma bade them all ascend the Pushpaka chariot,[2] and he mounted the chariot likewise, together with his beloved Sítá, and the chariot rose high in the air, and flew towards the north. And Ráma described to Sítá the field of battle in which he had fought against Rávana; and he pointed out to her all the places whither he had journeyed from the day when Rávana carried her away from the hermitage at Panchavatí.

The Monkeys and Rákshasas accompany Ráma.

Ráma describes his adventures to Sítá.

Now on the fifth day, after the expiration of the fourteen years of Ráma's exile, the chariot Pushpaka arrived at the hermitage of the sage Bharadwája, which was at Prayága, near the Chitra-kúta mountain; and the sage welcomed Ráma, and informed him how his brother Bharata passed his days in a pit without the city of Ayodhyá, reigning in the presence of Ráma's shoes, subsisting on fruits and roots, lying on the bare earth, and allowing the hair of his head to grow into knots. Bharadwája also informed Ráma that Bharata would put himself to death on the morrow unless he heard that his elder brother was returning to Ayodhyá; so Ráma sent a swift messenger to inform him of his arrival, and prevent his entering the fire.

Ráma arrives at the hermitage of Bharadwája.

Then the sage Bharadwája summoned the divine architect Viswakarma, and desired him to prepare lodgings and entertainment for all the Monkeys and Bears. The sage then conducted Ráma, Lakshmana, and Sítá, to his own

Bharadwája entertains Ráma.

[2] The chariot named Pushpaka had been originally obtained by Kuvera from the great god Síva, as the reward of his austerities, but Rávana had deprived Kuvera of the chariot and appropriated it to his own use.

hut, and set before them fruits, roots, and water; for Ráma refused to partake of sweetmeats until he had seen his brother Bharata.[3]

Joy of Raja Guha at hearing of Ráma's arrival.

Next morning Ráma despatched Hanuman to inform Guha, the Bhíl Raja, of his arrival, and also to go on to Ayodhyá, and carry the glad tidings to Bharata. Then Hanuman went his way and told Guha of the coming of Ráma; and Guha gave himself up to delight, and his whole city was filled with rejoicings. Hanuman then proceeded

[3] The entertainment of the Monkeys and Bears at the hermitage of Bharadwája occupies an important place in the Bengali version of the Rámáyana, and may be reproduced here as a curious illustration of the modern Hindú sense of humour:—

"Now Viswakarma prepared the lodgings for the Monkeys and Bears in the twinkling of an eye. And hundreds of beautiful damsels went forth to attend upon the guests; but the Monkeys and Bears were affrighted at them, and fled away, and climbed the trees and began to grin. The damsels then pacified them, saying:—'Why are you fearful of us? At the command of Bharadwája we have come hither to attend upon you: Bathe yourselves therefore, and array yourselves in the rich apparel and ornaments we have brought for you: Then eat and drink to your heart's content, and behold us dance and sing before you, and we will pass the night with you.' At these words the Monkeys and Bears were greatly delighted, and they all came down from the trees, and permitted themselves to be bathed and perfumed. They then took up the ornaments, but as they knew not how to put them on, some of them began to wear anklets on their heads, whilst others put bracelets on their waists, and necklaces on their feet; and when they found that the jewels would not suit, they crushed them to pieces in their anger, and threw them away. At length when the time for eating arrived, the Monkeys and Bears were allowed rich carpets of gold, but were afraid to sit upon them because of their richness; so they lifted up the carpets and placed them upon their heads, and seated themselves upon the bare earth. Then, when they saw the different kinds of provisions that were placed before them, they first tasted the pungent dishes, and were afraid to partake of any more, thinking that they might be poisonous. Then they threw away some of the sweetmeats, because they resembled coiled snakes; and they mistook others for stones; and in this ridiculous manner they brought their repast to a close. Then the attendant damsels explained to the Monkeys and Bears the nature of the different kinds of sweetmeats, and they fell to and feasted sumptuously. Betel was next served to them; but when they had chewed a little, and saw what they thought was blood issuing from their mouths, they were greatly alarmed, and feared that Bharadwája desired to put them secretly to death; but the attendant damsels counselled them to wipe their mouths, after which their fears were over. When they had finished the betel, they entered the sleeping apartments, and saw their own reflections in the mirrors; and they prepared for battle and broke all the mirrors in the attempt to fight their own reflections; and then the matter was explained to them, and they retired to rest."

with all speed to Ayodhyá, and Ráma followed shortly afterwards, and was received with all joy by Guha, and then took his leave and departed for Ayodhyá.

Preparations of Bharata for the triumphant return of Ráma.

Meantime Bharata had heard from Hanuman that Ráma was approaching; and he summoned Vasishtha and all his other Counsellors, and imparted to them the welcome news; and he ordered the following proclamation to be made known throughout the city by the beating of drums:—"Know all men that Ráma is returning from his exile; that to-day he is with Raja Guha, and that to-morrow morning he will enter Ayodhyá: Cast aside all sorrow and grief, and prepare to receive Ráma: Let the whole city be adorned, and let worship be offered to every god: Let every horse and elephant and chariot be got ready, and let every man go out to meet Ráma on his return to Ayodhyá."

Preparations of the people of Ayodhyá.

When the people of Ayodhyá heard this proclamation they rejoiced with exceeding joy. They weeded and levelled all the streets and roads, and swept them very clean, and watered them with sandal water, and strewed them with flowers, and planted trees and betel nut on each side of the highway. And they placed golden pots of water at the foot of each tree, with branches of mangoes in the mouths of the pots, and cocoa-nuts upon them; and the necks of the pots were adorned with garlands. All the houses were made clean in like manner, and music sounded on all sides, and many coloured flags waved in the air throughout the city. Then the whole army of the Raj marched out of the city, and every one was happy, and arrayed in a rich dress. First went the chariots newly painted, then the elephants richly caparisoned, then the horses with embroidered saddles, and last of all the infantry. All the women of Ayodhyá put on their best clothes to receive Ráma; and every man placed auspicious things, such as plantains, mangoes, and pots of water, before his own door.

Joy of Kaikeyí.

When the news of these preparations reached the ears of Kaikeyí, and she heard that Ráma was about to return to Ayodhyá, she rejoiced exceedingly; and she went to the apartment of Kausalyá, and was received with every re-

spect. Next morning Kausalyá and Kaikeyí, and all the ladies and women of the palace, prepared to go forth and meet Ráma, some in chariots, and some in carriages drawn by bullocks. At the same time nearly all Ayodhyá went out in procession to Nandigrama to receive Ráma. First went the musicians sounding different instruments of music, then followed the dancing-girls, then the singing-men and singing-women, then the courtesans, then the heralds, eulogists, and bards, and then the Bráhmans singing Vedic hymns with Vasishtha at their head. After them went the people of the city of Ayodhyá, carrying every sort of auspicious thing, such as curds, parched paddy, garlands, ghee, flowers, fruits, red powder, and other festive articles. After them went Bharata carrying the sandals of Ráma upon his head, with the royal umbrella spread over the sandals, and two men fanning the sandals with milk-white chámaras; and Bharata was surrounded by the Ministers and Counsellors of the Raj, and by all the Rajas who had come to Ayodhyá to welcome back Ráma.

The ladies, accompanied by all the people of Ayodhyá, go out to meet Ráma.

Bharata carries Ráma's sandals.

Meantime Ráma had taken leave of Raja Guha, and was on his way to the city of Ayodhyá, when he met with the mighty procession which had come out to meet him. And all those who accompanied Bharata cried out with a loud shout:—"There is Ráma returning from his exile." And Ráma and Bharata approached each other, and embraced each other with their arms; and Ráma said to his brother:—"Is all well with your Raj, and your subjects, and with my mothers?" And Bharata replied:—"All is well!" Bharata then greeted Lakshmana, and Ráma greeted Satrughna and his father-in-law Janaka. And Vasishtha and all the other Bráhmans came forward with grass and grains in their hands, and blessed Ráma, and said:—"Now that you have served the gods by killing their great enemy, it is the desire of all that you take your Raj, and seat yourself upon the throne of your father." And all the people shouted "Victory to Ráma!" And Ráma went and bowed down to the feet of his mother Kausalyá, and to the feet of his mothers-in-law Sumitrá and Kaikeyí; and they embraced and

Meeting between Ráma and Bharata.

Vasishtha and the Bráhmans offer the Raj to Ráma.

Ráma bows to his mothers.

wept aloud for joy. Then when they reached Nandigrama, Ráma dismissed the chariot Pushpaka, and bade it return to Kuvera, who was its former master; and Bharata prayed Ráma to undertake the charge of the Raj; and Ráma agreed, but commanded Bharata to become once again reconciled to his mother Kaikeyí, and to treat her with the same kindness as he had done before the exile.

Dismisses the chariot Pushpaka to its master Kuvera.

Ráma casts aside the garb of a devotee and assumes that of a Raja.

After this Ráma and his brothers were anointed with fragrant oils, and bathed in perfumed water; and they cast aside their dresses of bark, and put on yellow garments, and adorned themselves with every variety of ornaments; and Sítá was arrayed in like manner by the ladies of the palace. Then Bharata commanded that all the chariots and horses and elephants and litters should be brought up; and Ráma directed the Monkeys to select what conveyances they pleased.[4] Ráma then took Sítá in his own chariot, and placed her by his left side; and Satrughna held the royal umbrella over their heads; and Hanuman and Lakshmana fanned them, with fans of rich embroidered silk cloth; and Sugríva and Vibhíshana waved the chámaras on either side, whilst Jambuvat and Angada in like manner waved the peacocks' tails. Then Bharata himself took the reins of the horses in his left hand, and the whip in his right, and acted as charioteer; and the music began to sound, and the singers and dancers followed the musicians, and in this manner the procession moved on towards the city of Ayodhyá. All those who had remained in the city now came out to behold the entry of Ráma; and the women threw flowers on Ráma and Sítá as they passed along the street; and when they arrived at the royal palace, Bharata ordered gold and jewels to be brought without stint, and distributed them amongst the poor, the Bráhmans, the eulogists, and the musicians.

Ráma and Sítá proceed in a royal chariot surrounded by the insignia of sovereignty.

Entry into Ayodhyá.

When Ráma entered the royal palace, his soul was op-

[4] In the Bengali version the proceedings of the Monkeys during the procession are described in a humorous manner. "Some of the Monkeys," it is said, "mounted the chariots, and some suspended themselves over the wheels, whilst others curled their tails round the tusks of the elephants, and rocked themselves, or hung themselves to the manes of the horses."

pressed with grief, as he called to mind his father Dasaratha. Meanwhile Bharata said to Vasishtha:—"O wise sage, it is our desire that Ráma should be installed in the Raj of Ayodhyá: Look, we pray you, for an auspicious day, and see that our wish is accomplished without delay." Vasishtha replied:—"The gods are propitious, for to-morrow is a very auspicious day, and all the Rajas are already assembled in Ayodhyá: Make all things, ready, therefore, for the installation of Ráma on the morrow: Bring hither the five purifying things of the cow: Bring also the white flowers, the white garlands, the honey, the parched paddy, the garments new and clean, the white chámaras, the white flags, the golden mace, the embroidered umbrella, the paddy, the grass, the different ornaments, the gold, the silver, the precious stones, the jewels, the golden pots filled with sacred waters from the holy rivers and the four oceans, and all other things which are necessary for the ceremony." And Bharata did as Vasishtha commanded, and he ordered that worship should be offered to all the images of the gods and goddesses throughout the city, and that all the Rajas assembled in the city should attend the installation on the coming day. And Vasishtha desired Ráma and Sítá to fast for that day, and to pass the night without sleep; and throughout that night Sítá was engaged in the inner apartments in reciting the whole story of her adventures to the ladies of the palace, whilst Ráma was in the outer chamber relating the story to Vasishtha the sage.

Bharata requests Vasishtha to prepare for Ráma's installation.

Vasishtha orders that all things be made ready for the ceremony.

Worship of all the images of gods and goddesses.

Ráma and Sítá fast and keep awake all night.

Next morning at early dawn the music was sounded, and the morning devotions were performed, after which all the inhabitants of Ayodhyá put on their best attire, and came out to witness the installation of Ráma; and the gods came down from heaven to behold the ceremony, and all the Rishis and Bráhmans assembled in like manner. When all was ready Bharata requested Vasishtha to install Ráma on the throne, and Vasishtha desired Ráma to array himself for the inauguration. Then Ráma was dressed by his mothers, and Sítá also was magnificently dressed by them; and Ráma and Sítá proceeded to the Court-hall of the palace, and all

The installation of Ráma.

Arraying of Ráma and Sítá.

the ladies of the palace looked on from places where they could not themselves be seen. Ráma then requested the permission of all the Rishis, Bráhmans, Rajas, Counsellors, and Ambassadors present, and seated himself upon the throne with his face towards the east, and Sítá sat upon his left hand. Then the music struck up from all quarters, and the assembled multitude shouted aloud:—"Long live Mahá-raja Ráma! May his reign be prosperous and endure for ever!" And celestial music was heard in the sky, and the gods showered down flowers upon the head of Ráma. Then Vasishtha and the other Rishis came forward with pots of sacred water, and repeated the proper mantras, and poured the water upon the head of Ráma. Then the Rishis poured the water over the head of Sítá in like manner. And when the Rishis had finished, the Bráhmans came forward, and poured water over the heads of both Ráma and Sítá; and after them came first the Kshatriyas, and then the Vaisyas, and then the Súdras, and then all the other people, and lastly the women, and each class in turn poured water upon the heads of Ráma and Sítá. Then Ráma and Sítá rose up and went away to change their garments, but they presently returned and took their seats in the Council-hall; and Lakshmana took up the royal umbrella, and held it over the head of Ráma, whilst Sugríva and Vibhíshana fanned him on either side with white chámaras. Then all the assembled multitudes filled the air with their joyful shouts and acclamations; and all the Bráhmans and all the other inhabitants of Ayodhyá, came to bless Ráma with paddy and kusa grass, and poured the paddy and grass upon the head of Ráma. And all the inhabitants of Ayodhyá gave themselves up to rejoicing. And Ráma dismissed the Bráhmans with rich presents of gold, cows, ornaments, clothes, lands, villages, and gardens; and he dismissed the dancing-men and dancing-women, and the musicians, eulogists, bards, and buffoons, in like manner, with similar presents; and to Sugríva he gave a set of rich gold ornaments, and to Angada he gave his own bracelets from off his waist. Then Sítá took the necklace from her own neck, and with the consent of Ráma

The enthroning.

Music and acclamations.

The purification with sacred water.

Water poured over the heads of Ráma and Sítá by all the castes.

Ráma and Sítá change their garments and again take their seats in the Council-hall.

Paddy and kusa grass poured upon Ráma's head.

Distribution of presents.

Sítá gives her necklace to Hanuman.

she gave it to Hanuman.[5] Ráma then made suitable presents to all the Monkeys and Bears who had assisted him in his war against Rávana; and then having installed Bharata as Yuvarája, he began to rule the Raj of Ayodhyá to the great happiness of all the people.[6]

---

[5] A strange myth is here added, that Hanuman broke every one of the pearls which composed the necklace, because they did not contain the name of Ráma.

[6] The following curious details respecting Ráma and his rule are extracted from the Adhyátma Rámáyana:—"From that time Ráma as an inhabitant of this world entered into the pleasures and enjoyments of life; in reality he delighted not in such amusements, but as he had assumed the human form he deemed it necessary to perform worldly actions as a man. . . . . .

"During the government of Ráma grief and trouble were unknown to mankind; the pillars of justice were raised and firmly established, they sustained no injury. Truth, internal and external purity, worship and charity, are the principal supporters of justice; these were kept up by Ráma. No one in the three worlds presumed to dispute his authority; loyalty and deference to his will reigned in every heart; mankind feared and loved him. The rain through his clemency fell in due season; all living creatures enjoyed happiness to its fullest extent. The age of man extended to ten thousand years, during which period no one died, children served their parents, wives were faithful and obedient to their husbands. Those trees which had hitherto been barren and unfruitful produced in abundance, the mines in the mountains abounded with jewels and treasures, and the sound of grief was never heard.

"Ráma and Sitá went from the city one day with their three brothers to take the air; on the borders of the wood they perceived a Bráhman bearing in his arms the dead body of his son, then only one thousand years old. The Bráhman lamenting over his son brought him to Ráma, and thus addressed him:—'Some sin, O Mahárája! must have been committed by our Prince, or how could my son have perished in his infancy?' Ráma at this speech remained some time absorbed in thought; at length he said:—'Preserve, learned Bráhman, the body of thy son for some days in oil, let it not be burnt; I will discover the cause of this misfortune, I will afford thee redress.' The Bráhman in obedience to these orders preserved the body of his son. Ráma, from whom the most hidden secrets of the world cannot be concealed, summoned the car Pushpaka, and leaving Ayodhyá he went towards the south. On entering a forest he observed a man of the Súdra tribe, who had concealed himself and was engaged in certain penances which are restricted to the Bráhmans. His feet were bound to the branches of a tree, his head on the ground, surrounded by four fires, the sun the fifth above him, and he took into his mouth the smoke as his only aliment. Ráma knew him from a distance to be a Súdra, nevertheless he sent forward a spy to ascertain who and what he was. The spy informed him that this person was a Súdra performing religious austerities, on which Ráma, irritated at his audacity, drew his sword, and smote off his head. From the body of this Súdra rose a beautiful form, which fell at Ráma's feet, who dismissed him to paradise. No sooner was the Súdra slain than the son of the Bráhman was restored to life.

"Whatever actions the pure and chaste Ráma performed they were for the

Happiness of Ráma and Sítá. Their mode of life in the palace at Ayodhyá.

After this Ráma reigned in the city of Ayodhyá in great felicity with his beloved Sítá. Every morning they were awakened by the eulogists who came to the palace and sounded their praises; and whilst Sítá joined her maidens, Ráma performed his morning devotions, and then sat upon his throne in the Council-hall, and administered the affairs of the Raj, assisted by his three brethren, and the aged Ministers and Counsellors of his father Dasaratha. When it was noon he went to the apartments of his mother Kausalyá, and then took his meal in her presence. In the evening he went to his garden-house, and sent for Sítá; and he sat upon the same couch with his beloved wife, and the maidens of the palace sang and danced before them until it was the hour for repose.

Review of the foregoing narrative of the return of Ráma and Sítá to Ayodhyá.

The foregoing narrative of the triumphant return of Ráma and Sítá to the city of Ayodhyá, and the installation of Ráma in the Raj, is received by a Hindú audience with an enthusiasm which is rarely exhibited in colder climes. To apprehend it aright the European should picture to himself a Hindú village far away from the noise and bustle of city life, where a Bráhman takes his seat every evening beneath a tree to read or chaunt to the villagers a portion of the divine poem, until in process of time the whole has been gone through. He should watch, day by day, the countenances of young and old, and especially those of the women, and observe the deep and lively interest which is taken by all

Picture of a Bráhman reading the Rámáyana to Hindú villagers.

Deep interest of a Hindú audience.

service of mankind. He established and set up a thousand forms of the Linga of Síva for the benefit of the world. He distributed justice in the mode prescribed by the Dharma Sástra. He conducted the affairs of his government according to the divine ordinances of the Vedas. Brahma and Mahadeva paid their adorations at his feet. During the ten thousand years he continued on the earth he never cast his eyes on any woman excepting Sítá; the idea of embracing other women was to him as the most deadly poison; he was eminent for his chastity. Mankind esteemed his government as the government of the saints, his operations were guided by the Vedas and Sástras."

present in every turn of the story, from the opening description of a glorious ideal of a Hindú city, and the promise of four sons to Dasaratha at the Aswamedha sacrifice, down to the exulting climax when Rávana is slain by Ráma amidst the rejoicings of the gods. He should see with his own eyes how the birth and boyhood of Ráma, the marriage, the exile, the abduction of Sítá, the lamentations of Ráma, and the invasion of Lanká, have each in turn roused the sympathies of the audience, and excited the smiles and tears,—hot indignation, dreamy wonder, and a deep mysterious awe.[7] Indeed so great is the enthusiasm that the whole of the villagers will identify themselves with every scene in the story; and when the evening approaches on which the triumphant return of Ráma and Sítá to the city of Ayodhyá is to be chaunted by the Bráhman, every preparation is made to enable the audience to imagine themselves actors or spectators on that exultant occasion. The neighbouring huts and trees are decorated with garlands of flowers and leaves, and all present are arrayed in clean garments and bridal ornaments; and in this manner the simple-minded people fondly make believe to take a part in the public rejoicings which accompanied Ráma's entry into the city of his fathers.

Preparations of the Hindús for listening to the story of the return of Ráma and Sítá to Ayodhyá.

The incidents which immediately precede this

Incidents immediately preceding the return.

[7] That such sympathetic emotions are not wholly wanting in Europeans, is proved by a story, which was told by Sir John Herschel, of a certain village blacksmith, who was accustomed to read aloud Richardson's novel of Pamela every evening, whilst his neighbours stood around and listened with child-like interest to the progress of the story. At length when the climax arrived, and the virtue of Pamela was rewarded by her marriage with the squire, the primitive villagers had so thoroughly identified themselves with the narrative, that they ran off to the church and rung the marriage-bells. Such enthusiasm is still exhibited by a Hindú audience in the story of the Rámáyana.

joyous climax call for but little remark. The lamentations of the women of Rávana for their departed lord, will excite the sympathies of Hindú wives and mothers, even while rejoicing in the downfall of the ten-headed giant. The description of the ordeal of Sítá is very affecting, and to this day the weary pilgrims, who perchance have journeyed a thousand miles to behold the sacred locality, are shown the very spot on the Island of Ramisseram where Sítá passed untouched through the fire, and never fail to bathe in the sea which washes the place, as if the efficacy of the waves in purifying souls from sin was more potent there than elsewhere. The chariot named Pushpaka is, of course, a mere creation of the imagination, and is probably introduced to remove the geographical difficulties connected with the vast interval which separates the Island of Ramisseram from the city of Ayodhyá; and which might otherwise have interfered with the amalgamation of the tradition of Ráma, the Linga worshipper of the Dekhan, with Ráma, the incarnation of Vishnu.

Lamentations of Rávana's women.

Site of the ordeal of Sítá still shown in the Island of Ramisseram.

The Pushpaka chariot introduced to remove a geographical difficulty.

But, as already indicated, the crowning event in the story is undoubtedly the triumphant entry of the city of Ayodhyá, and subsequent installation of Ráma; and every incident in that portion of the narrative is deeply impressed upon the memory of the Hindú like the pictured scenery in a panorama. The royal exiles throwing off their jungle garments and arraying themselves in regal attire; Ráma and Sítá seated in a chariot side by side, whilst the royal umbrella and chámaras are carried by the most distinguished Chieftains; the grand procession mov-

Incidents connected with the triumphant return to Ayodhyá and installation of Ráma.

ing into the city, accompanied by musicians and dancing-girls; the acclamations of the assembled thousands; the installation at which pots of sacred water are poured over the heads of the Raja and Rání, as well as green rice and sacred grass;—all pass before the mind's eye of the Hindú with a vividness and reality, which none but those who sympathize with human nature in all its varied manifestations can hope to apprehend.

CHAPTER XXIV.

EXILE OF SÍTÁ.

Sequel to the Rámáyana.

THE Rámáyana seems thus far to have been brought to a happy conclusion by the triumphant return of Ráma and Sítá to the royal palace at Ayodhyá, and their installation in the Raj of Kosala. But there is a sequel to the story, which would seem to imply that the reign of Ráma, like that of Yudhishthira, was not to end in this world in perfect felicity; and that both Ráma and Sítá were to be visited in the height of prosperity by an avenging Nemesis. The question of authenticity will be treated hereafter. For the present it will suffice to say that no doubt as to the truth of the narrative is felt by the Hindús. The story is rapidly passed over in the Bengali version, but merely on the ground that it is too affecting to be dwelt upon; whilst in the Adhyátma Rámáyana an attempt is made to explain away the tragic details as a divine mystery. The narrative itself calls for no preliminary explanation, and may be briefly related as follows:—

The narrative.

Sítá desires the sacrificial cakes of the Rishis.

When some months had passed away in perfect happiness, Síta felt that she was about to become a mother; and she said to her husband:—"I have no relish for any food in this world except the sacrificial cakes which the wives

of the Rishis offer in the forest; and I much desire to visit the Rishis once again that I may eat the cakes as we did when dwelling in the jungle." Ráma replied that he would think over the matter in his mind, and tell her what she was to do on the next day. And he went out of the inner apartment, and sat upon his throne in the Council-hall. Then one of his Ministers, who was very harsh in his language, arose and said:—"O Ráma, there is poverty amongst your subjects because of your sin in taking back Sítá after she had been ten months in the palace of Rávana; and it is proper that you should put Sítá away."

Complaint of a Minister that the people are poor because Ráma took back Sítá.

At these words Ráma was thunderstruck, but he said nothing; and when the Council broke up, he returned to the inner apartments, and went to bathe in the tank which was near the palace. Now a certain man dwelt on the opposite side of the tank, and he was a washerman; and this man had a daughter who was married. And it so happened that on the evening of the preceding day, the daughter had left the house of her husband, and passed the night in the house of her father. When Ráma was bathing in the tank he heard the father say to the husband of his daughter:—"Take back your wife, I pray you!" But the husband replied:—"Not so! Your daughter went from my house in the evening, and I know not where she passed the night, and I cannot take her back again to be my wife: Were I a great Mahárája like Ráma, then indeed I might receive her, even though she had been many months in the house of a strange man; but I am a poor man, and may not do this thing lest my kinsmen turn me out of my caste."

Ráma hears a dialogue between a washerman and his son-in-law.

The son-in-law refuses to take back his wife who had deserted him in the night-time.

When Ráma heard these words he was sorely troubled, and knew not what to do; and he returned to the inner apartments. And it so happened that at that time Sítá was describing Rávana to her maids, and she had drawn a figure resembling him upon the floor of the room. When Ráma saw the likeness of Rávana, he was enraged against Sítá, for he thought that she still carried the remembrance of Rávana in her heart. And he sent for his three brothers, and informed them that he had resolved to put away his wife; but

Ráma sees Sítá drawing a figure of Rávana.

Determines to put away Sítá.

they all interceded for Sítá, and reminded him how she had passed through the fire, and how the gods had testified to her purity. Then Ráma acknowledged that his wife was innocent, but said that he could not endure the taunts of the people; and he commanded Lakshmana, on pain of seeing him commit suicide, to take her out of the city very early in the morning, and conduct her to the opposite bank of the Ganges, and abandon her there.

Commands Lakshmana to conduct her to the opposite bank of the Ganges.

Sítá supposes she is going to visit the Rishis.

Then Sítá was told that Lakshmana would take her away in his chariot to the abodes of the Rishis, and she supposed that it was in fulfilment of her desire to eat the sacrificial cakes; and she took leave of all her mothers-in-law, and prepared to depart. When it was morning she ascended the chariot, and Lakshmana drove out of the city towards the river Ganges, and they met with many evil omens; the jackals appeared howling in open day, and the deer fled from them on the left hand, and many serpents appeared; and Sítá seeing these omens, prayed very heartily to the gods in behalf of Ráma, for she feared that she should never see him more. In this manner they arrived at the Ganges, and Lakshmana procured a boat, and they went over the river together; and when they landed on the opposite side, they pressed forward into a thicket near the hill Chitra-kúta, where they had resided in former times, but where the fruit trees were now decaying with age, and snakes had made holes to burrow themselves. And Lakshmana and Sítá went on until they came within four miles of the hermitage of Válmíki, and then Lakshmana wept very bitterly, and told Sítá of the cruel orders he had received from Ráma, and counselled her to take refuge in the house of Válmíki; and thus having obeyed the commands of his elder brother he left her in the jungle, and returned to Ayodhyá and prostrated himself before Ráma in silence and in tears.

The departure.

Evil omens.

Passage of the river Ganges.

Chitra-kúta.

Lakshmana abandons Sítá near the hermitage of Válmíki.

Sufferings of Sítá beneath the burning sun.

Meanwhile Sítá was in a panic of surprise and fear. She was already in the pains of travail, and in this condition she was left alone on the sandy plain in the hottest season of the year; and the mid-day sun was blazing like a

furnace over her head, and she walked slowly on in an agony of grief. Her feet, tender as the newly-blown rose, were torn with blisters; her throat was parched with thirst; and no tree was in sight to shelter her from the heat of the sun. Sometimes she walked a little way, and sometimes she fell to the ground. She had no friend near her to whom she could tell her sorrows, or from whom she could receive consolation. The wild beasts, who came from the jungles, and surrounded her on all sides, were her only guards. The birds descended from the sky to afford her shelter with their wings, while others dipped their pinions into the water of the Ganges, and fanned her with them, to prevent her fainting from the heat. Thus did she proceed by slow steps towards Chitra-kúta, but at last she fell down in a swoon, which was like death; and in this state she was found by Válmíki the sage, who had been the Bráhman preceptor of her father Janaka; and Válmíki restored her, and took her to his own house, and placed her in charge of his wife and female servants.

Wild beasts guard her and the birds fan her.

Taken into the house of Válmíki.

And Sítá gave birth to two sons in the house of Válmíki, and the splendour of their countenances surpassed the sun and moon. Válmíki gave them the names of Lava and Kusa, and brought them up, and educated them with the greatest care. At the age of five years he invested them with the sacred thread, and he taught them the Vedas and the Vedangas, and he also taught them to repeat his own work, the poem of the Rámáyana, which comprised the whole history of Ráma down to his capture of Lanká and triumphant return to Ayodhyá. And Válmíki likewise taught them the use of bows and arrows, so that they became invincible.

Sítá gives birth to Lava and Kusa.

The two brothers educated by Válmíki and taught the Rámáyana.

Now when Lava and Kusa were about fifteen or sixteen years of age, Ráma became troubled in his mind at having slain a Bráhman; for Rávana was the grandson of Pulastya, and consequently was by birth a Bráhman. Accordingly, by the advice of Vasishtha and other learned sages, he resolved on performing an Aswamedha, and all things were made ready for the occasion; and as it was necessary that he

Ráma prepares to perform an Aswamedha to atone for having slain Rávana.

should sleep with his wife for one entire year with a drawn sword between them, without so much as touching her, a golden image was made to resemble Sítá, and Ráma passed his nights with the golden image by his side. Then the horse was procured and let loose with the usual ceremonies; and Ráma's younger brother Satrughna followed the horse with an army. Then the horse went on until it came to the place in which Sítá was residing; and her two sons Lava and Kusa saw the horse, and carried it away, and defeated Satrughna and all his army, and so wounded Satrughna that he could not move. When Ráma heard what had occurred he was filled with wrath, and sent Lakshmana with another army to recover the horse, but he was defeated in like manner by Lava and Kusa, and left for dead upon the ground. Then Bharata set out to bring back his two brothers if he could not recover the horse, and Hanuman went with him; and they found Satrughna and Lakshmana on the other side of the Ganges, and sprinkled water upon them, and placed them in a chariot; but Lava and Kusa again came up and defeated them as they had done the others. Then Hanuman saw the two youths who had been so victorious, with their cheeks all on fire, and their hair flowing, and bows and arrows in their hands; and he told Bharata that they were the living images of Ráma, as he had known Ráma to be when of the same age.

The golden image of Sítá.

Lava and Kusa carry away the horse, and defeat the armies sent against them.

Hanuman suspects that Lava and Kusa are the sons of Ráma.

When Ráma heard the dismal tidings, he prepared to go himself to the field against an enemy so powerful; and when he reached the place he encamped his army, and went alone to meet the two youths, marvelling who they could be. Presently he beheld Lava and Kusa approaching him, and the moment he saw them he felt a tenderness for them in his heart; and when they beheld Ráma, they were instantly struck with awe and reverence for him, and made him a very respectful salutation. And Ráma asked them whose sons they were; and they replied:—"Our mother's name is Sítá, but we do not know the name of our father: We have been instructed by Válmíki the sage, who has been to us as a father." When Ráma heard these words he knew the

Ráma goes out against his sons, and asks their mother's name.

youths to be his own sons; and at that moment Válmíki came up and told him all, and prayed him to become reconciled to his wife Sítá. And Válmíki went and took Sítá by the hand, and told her what had occurred, and that she must go with him into the presence of Ráma; and for a long time she would not go, but Válmíki said to her:—"Your sons have revenged upon Ráma all the evil he has done to you, and unless you become reconciled to him I shall pronounce a curse." So Sítá went with Válmíki into the presence of Ráma, and made peace with him; and Ráma and Sítá returned with their sons to the city of Ayodhyá, and performed the Aswamedha, and passed the remainder of their lives in peace and joy.[1]

Ráma reconciled to Sítá.

Ráma and Sítá live in happiness in Ayodhyá.

[1] In the Adhyátma Rámáyana a totally different version is given of these incidents. Ráma is said to have discovered his two sons, from the exquisite manner in which they chaunted the Rámáyana at the Aswamedha, whilst his meeting with Sítá is described in the following manner:—'When Ráma knew that the two boys were the sons of Sítá, he ordered his attendants to bring Válmíki to him; and the sage returned with Sítá and her children. Ráma then spoke in an audible voice, saying:—'It is necessary we should prove the chastity of Sítá; let her make an oath in the presence of this assembly that the world may know she is pure, and that her chastity is without blemish: Mankind had an evil opinion of her, therefore I dismissed her from my presence: Forgive me, Válmíki! We know that Sítá is guiltless; let us, however, prove her innocence before all present: I am certain Lava and Kusa are my children.' When Ráma had thus spoken the people were assured that Sítá would again undergo the trial by ordeal. Brahma collected all the gods, and the people were assembled. Sítá having bathed, and being newly clothed in silken garments, was brought to the place of sacrifice. With downcast eyes, her hands raised towards those present, she thus spoke:—"If, O Earth, I never turned my thoughts towards any man but Ráma; if my truth and purity are known to thee, receive me into thy bosom, open a passage for me that I may pass in safety into thy bowels: I have undergone the slanders of mankind, I here pledge myself before thee never again to behold the face of any living creature.' On hearing these words, all present were overwhelmed with grief; the air resounded with their sighs.

"At that moment a wonderful and awful event took place. The ground opened, when a splendid throne, studded with gems and supported by four large serpents, rose from the chasm. The Earth, incarnate under a female form, came from the gulf, and with joined hands she thus addressed Sítá:—'I attend, Sítá! in obedience to thy commands, I am ready to obey thy orders: I love thee with the purest affection, and have brought this throne for thy conveyance; take thy seat on it that it may bear thee away to the Resatala, the sixth of the lower regions, and from thence to heaven.' She took the hand of Sítá, she led her to the throne, on which they both took their seats. The throne entered into the gulf before all present, and disappeared; the ground closed upon them. The gods gave vent to

HISTORY OF INDIA. PART IV.

Review of the foregoing story of the exile of Sítá.

The foregoing narrative appears to call for little comment. The story of this portion of the Rámáyana has been very much abridged in the present version, inasmuch as the original abounds with mythical matter which is absolutely valueless for the purposes of history, and which obscures rather than illustrates the original tradition. Indeed it is difficult to say how far the main feature of the story, the abandonment of Sítá, is to be regarded as

---

their joy in acclamations, and showered down flowers, but the other spectators, turning their eyes on Ráma, fell on the ground in an agony of grief. The inevitable decrees of fate are revealed to the enlightened mind of Ráma, but, as he had appeared on earth in the human form, he deemed it necessary his actions should accord with those of human beings. He appeared to be overwhelmed with affliction, he openly gave vent to his sorrows, Brahma and the gods did everything in their power to console him, saying:—'Thou, O Lord! knowest all things, wherefore shouldst thou give way to despair? This world is but a dream, a bubble of water.' Ráma at the entreaty of Brahma put an end to his sorrows, and the gods made their obeisance and departed. Ráma then distributed valuable presents among the Bráhmans, and completed his sacrifice."

A religious mystery is assigned for the reason why Sítá would not be reconciled to Ráma, which is explained by the following myth, which is supposed to have occurred some time before their previous separation, and which represents Sítá as the incarnation of Lakshmí:—Sítá, in the midst of his caresses, said to him:—"The gods serve thee, O Lord! with all their hearts and souls; thou art the Lord of the three worlds; thou art enthroned in the heart of all living creatures, the Greatest of the Great, ever joyful; thou hast neither beginning, nor middle, nor end: If it be thy pleasure I will mention one circumstance." Ráma affectionately desired her to speak her wishes. She said:—"The gods addressed me in private, saying:—'A long time has elapsed since Lakshmí quitted heaven to dwell on the earth, the regions of bliss are deserted: Without thy assistance the great thorn, which sprang up in the garden of the world, could never have been rooted out: Now that the earth has been restored to its usual fertility, thou hast conferred happiness on thy servants; we beseech thee to listen to our prayer, and grant to us again thy presence by returning to paradise, now become a desert through thy absence.' If it is thy pleasure, O Ráma, I should agree to their request." Ráma, after some reflection, answered:—"I was, previous to the application of the gods to thee, acquainted with their secret wishes; I will adopt a device to despatch thee before me. I will cause the inhabitants of the city to utter slander against thee; I will dismiss thee to the woods, where thou shalt bring forth two sons; thou wilt go to Chitra-kúta, the religious abode of the sage Válmíki, where thou wilt dwell in peace: Thou art now with child, and in his house wilt thou be delivered of two children, illustrious in their destiny: Thou, my beloved Sítá, camest through the earth into the world; thou must again return to heaven through the earth; rest assured I will soon follow thee."

Traces of the authentic tradition.

authentic or otherwise. It is certainly surrounded by improbable details, such as the episode of Ráma's sons learning to recite the Rámáyana, which is very suspicious; and yet the idea that Ráma could not receive Sítá as his wife after her protracted residence in the palace at Lanká, and the tradition that Ráma finally sent her out into the jungle, are true to the national sentiment, and have long formed a part of the national belief. Moreover the legend that Ráma did put away his wife harmonizes with another legend,[2] that he subsequently sent his brother Lakshmana into exile; and thus we might almost infer from the current of national tradition that Ráma, as he advanced in years, became jealous and peevish like Henry the Eighth; and that the pious author of the Rámáyana has invented mythical reasons for the equivocal proceedings of the divine hero. The question of whether Ráma was ever again really reconciled to Sítá after this second ordeal, must of course remain in doubt; but it is stated in the Adhyátma Rámáyana that he ultimately ascended to heaven on the bird Garura, and finally joined Sítá, who had returned to her original form as the goddess Lakshmí. As regards the two sons of Ráma, who were born in the house of Valmíki, and were named Lava and Kusa, it may be remarked that to this day the Kachwáka Rajpúts affect to derive their descent from Kusa, whilst another Rajpút tribe,

Question of whether Ráma really took back Sítá.

Ráma ascends to heaven.

[2] It is said that one day Time, as a messenger from Brahma, paid a visit to Ráma, and that Ráma ordered Lakshmana to keep the door shut against every one on pain of death. The sage Durvása, however, called shortly afterwards and threatened to curse Ráma unless admitted immediately. Lakshmana accordingly admitted the sage, and Lakshmana goes to the river Sarayú, suppresses his senses, and is conveyed bodily by Indra to heaven. It is worthy of remark that the name of Lakshmana appears to be still preserved in the modern name of Lucknow.

HISTORY OF INDIA. PART IV.

the Bádkuja, regard Lava as the founder of their race.[3]

Conclusion of the Rámáyana.

Here, then, ends the story of the Rámáyana. The divine poem concludes with the following religious promises, which serve to illustrate the widely-spread belief in the divinity of Ráma, and the blessings which are supposed to reward those who read or hear the pious legend of his earthly career:—

Modern Hindú belief in the virtues of the Rámáyana.

Whoever reads or hears the Rámáyana will be freed from all sin. Those who read it, or hear it read to them, for the sake of obtaining a son, will certainly have one. Those who read or hear it for the sake of riches will certainly acquire wealth. If a woman hears it she will obtain a good husband and enjoy happiness. A Bráhman reaps the advantage of reading the Vedas, a Kshatriya conquers his enemies, a Vaisya is blessed with riches, and a Súdra gains great fame by reading the Rámáyana, or having it read to them. The Rámáyana heals diseases, removes all fear of enemies, compensates for all loss of wealth or fame, prevents loss of life, and secures all that is desired. The mere utterance of the name of Ráma is equal in religious merit to the giving of a hundred ornamented cows to a Bráhman, or the performance of an Aswamedha. A follower of Ráma enjoys happiness in this world, and in the next is absorbed in Ráma in that Vaikuntha which is the heaven of Vishnu.

[3] See Prof. H. H. Wilson's introduction to his translation of the Uttara-Ráma-charitra in his Theatre of the Hindús. This drama is attributed to Bhava-Chúti, and is based upon the incidents already narrated as forming the sequel of the history of Ráma.

END OF THE RÁMÁYANA.

PART V.

THE BRAHMANIC PERIOD.

CHAPTER I.

FOUR EPOCHS OF RELIGIOUS HISTORY.

THE main points in the two great Hindú Epics have now been reproduced in a condensed form; and it remains to be seen whether it is possible to draw from these national treasuries of tradition and legend, as well as from other branches of Hindú literature, sufficient materials for constructing a narrative of the early progress of the Hindú people, which should correspond to the modern idea of history. Hitherto one great obstacle in the way of such an undertaking has arisen from the overwhelming mass of original materials which have been preserved in the Sanskrit language; and from the number and variety of the vernaculars in which much important information was supposed to be concealed. But of late years, in addition to the Mahá Bhárata and Rámáyana, a large portion of the Vedas and Puránas have been rendered available to the European reader; and especially a valuable series of translated extracts and analyses of the more important

Possibility of constructing a history of the Hindús.

Materials.

Mahá Bhárata. Rámáyana. Vedas. Puránas.

portions of the Puránas, which was carried out by the late Professor H. H. Wilson, has been preserved in twenty-six folio volumes of manuscripts in the Library of the Asiatic Society at Calcutta. A large number of legends and traditions connected with the life and teachings of Sákya Muni, better known as Gótama Buddha, have been collected and translated both in Ceylon and Burmah; and not only throw considerable light on the development of religious dogmas in India, but furnish some interesting pictures of life and manners at the advent of Sákya Muni, and during the period when Buddhism prevailed. Again, the celebrated Brahmanical code, known as the "Institutes of Manu," has been familiar to every English student in Hindú antiquities since the days of Sir William Jones; and will now be found to yield new and important results in the early history of the Hindú people by being brought face to face with the hymns of the Rig-Veda. Many translations of Hindú dramas and poetry have also appeared, which add largely to our knowledge of the ideas and sentiments which have prevailed at different periods amongst the masses. Rich stores of antiquarian information have likewise been opened up; including select translations from the more valuable documents in the Mackenzie MSS., which, like the Puránic manuscripts, have been preserved in the Library of the Asiatic Society of Calcutta in thirty-four thick folio volumes. To these may be added hosts of other Hindú productions, theological and otherwise, which have either been separately published, or have appeared in one or other of the journals devoted to Oriental literature. At the same time sites of ancient cities have been discovered, in-

Buddhist Legends.

Manu.

Hindú drama and poetry.

Mackenzie MSS.

Miscellaneous vernacular records.

scriptions have been deciphered, and genealogical lists have been examined and compared. In a word, it may now be asserted that these sources of information, as well as those which have been already indicated in preceding chapters, have served to render the necessary materials for the ancient history of India available to the historical student, who may not have possessed either the necessary leisure or predilections for a study of the many languages, living and dead, which appertain to the great Indian peninsula.[1]

Inscriptions, etc.

The history of the people of India, ancient and modern, should be considered as something distinct from that of Mussulman and British rule. Indeed

History of India distinct from that of Mussulman or British rule.

[1] The author would here venture to remark that his object is very different from that which appears to have been contemplated by the great modern schools of comparative philology, whether in Germany or elsewhere. He has not attempted to discover the origin and early history of the different Aryan peoples by the light of those special philological studies, which have hitherto so largely occupied the attention of Sanskrit scholars. He has confined himself to the humbler task of describing the people of India as they are; and he has consequently endeavoured to unfold the history of the past so far as it was necessary for a due apprehension of the history of the people in more recent periods. Those who desire to enter upon the larger field of inquiry must give their days and nights to the study of the critical labours of Goldstücker, Max Müller, Lassen, Weber, Benfey, Kuhn, Roth, Fitz-Edward Hall, Cowell, Muir, Aufrecht, Monier Williams, Gorresio, and many other scholars in Europe, as well as in this country, who have attained a widely-spread reputation as the pioneers in the study of a comparison of roots and grammars. It might also be added that human life under the most favourable circumstances is not sufficiently long to enable a single individual in the present day to be at once an Oriental philologist and an Indian historian. For instance, a study of the Puránas in the original Sanskrit would occupy very many years; whereas a twelve-months' patient analysis of Wilson's collection of translations at Calcutta has sufficed to show how much valuable light the originals appear to throw upon sectarian rites and creeds, and especially upon the antagonism between Bráhmans and Buddhists, but how little they really contribute towards a substantive knowledge of Indian history prior to the age of Buddhism. In like manner the salient points in the Mackenzie collection may be mastered after a few months' study of the manuscript translations; whilst the mere work of collection and arrangement, to say nothing of translation, seems to have occupied the whole of the leisure of the late Colonel Colin Mackenzie throughout a long Indian career, and may be said to have been the absorbing passion of a life-time.

neither Mussulman nor European can be said to have hitherto created any enduring impression upon the national mind. The religious revolutions which have stirred up the life of the Hindú to its uttermost depths, have been nearly all of indigenous growth. They have sprung up from within rather than from without; and must be generally regarded as the product of the Hindú mind. For ages the people have been shut in from the outer world by the Himálayas and the sea, and their religious faith has been formed from the consciousness alone. The history of the progress and development of religious thought in India is thus of the highest importance in the history of man; inasmuch as it illustrates the sources of many ideas and sentiments, which find expression in what has been termed natural religion. At the same time its range of development is more extensive than that of any other existing faith; for it rises with the dawn of consciousness as regards the existence of a superior being or beings with reference to the present life, and ascends to the highest dogmas in the conception of one Supreme Deity, who is over all and in all, not only in this life but in that which is to come.

Religious revolutions from within.

Importance of the history.

The history of the people of India, if considered as something distinct from the annals of conquest, is emphatically a religious history; and so closely has every act and duty been associated from time immemorial with religious belief in the mind of the Hindú, that we are enabled by means of the religious books which have been preserved, to obtain a tolerably clear insight into the important changes which have taken place at different intervals in the manners and ideas of the people at large. Reserving

Division of the religious history into four epochs.

all minor distinctions for discussion hereafter, it may in the first instance be convenient to map out the religious history of the people of India into four great epochs, corresponding with the four great changes in their religious belief, namely;—

1st, The Vedic age.
2nd, The Brahmanic age.
3rd, The Buddhist age.
4th, The age of Brahmanical revival.

1st, Vedic age, characterized by prayers and offerings to elementary deities for material blessings.

The religion of the Vedic age has been briefly sketched in the introduction to the preceding volume. It consisted in offerings of food and wine, accompanied by outpourings of prayers and praises to elementary deities and other personified abstractions, in the hope of obtaining thereby such material blessings as health, prosperity, long life, abundance of sons, prolific cattle, and overflowing harvests. It was also associated with a crude belief in the existence of the ghosts of ancestors, who might be propitiated with offerings of food and water; but it scarcely recognized that belief in the immortality of the soul, and a future state of reward and punishment, which has found such large expression in later creeds. It was in fact an early form of polytheism, when men saw deity in the clouds and heard him in the wind. The process by which the unenlightened but inquiring intellect of the Vedic Aryans rose from the idea of many gods to the conception of one Supreme Being, is of the utmost importance in the history of religious development, and is exhibited with considerable clearness in the hymns of the Rig-Veda. In the first instance the simple worshipper praised the immediate object of his adoration as the God above all gods, the almighty, the supreme;

Belief in ghosts.

Process by which the Aryan mind arose from polytheism to monotheism.

Exaggerated language of praise.

much in the same fashion as he belauded his own patriarchal Chieftain as the greatest of heroes, the mightiest of warriors, the Raja of Rajas, whose fame had spread throughout the three worlds. Familiarity with this form of thought may have subsequently led to the inquiry as to who was the Being who caused the life of the universe; and this question is propounded by the Vedic bard in the following language:—"From earth are the breath and blood, but where is the soul?"[2] Hence arose two conceptions of monotheism. The more ancient and material conception appears to have existed in the identification of the Sun as the Supreme Spirit of light and fire, which animated the whole universe, and which seems to have been associated with the worship of Agni. A later and more spiritual conception identified the Supreme Spirit with a deity named Prajápati, who was worshipped as the Supreme Soul.

Inquiry as to the origin of being.

Identification of the Supreme Spirit with Agni and Prajápati.

2nd, Brahmanic age characterized by austerities and sacrifices to expiate sin.

The Brahmanic religion seems to have been originally distinct from the Vedic religion. The religious ideas which characterized each faith seem to have originated from different sources, although they may have sprung up side by side. The Vedic worship is the expression of a child-like desire to gratify the national gods by offerings of food and wine. The Brahmanic worship is on the other hand an expression of fear at having sinned against deity, and an attempt to appease his wrath by austerities and sacrifices. When however the two classes of ideas came into contact, the old Vedic deities were not set aside by the Bráhmans, but were simply

Compromise between the Vedic and Brahmanic creed.

[2] See Vol. I. Part i. Introduction.

placed in subordination to the god Brahma; who was represented as the creator of gods and men, and the especial deity of the Bráhmans; and who was remotely associated with the dogma that goodness would be rewarded and sin punished both in this life and in the life hereafter. The Brahmanic age was thus emphatically an age of religious compromise. The Vedic deities were still acknowledged as inferior gods, but placed under the supremacy of Brahmá, as their creator; and the heaven of the Vedic deities was placed far lower in the ideal universe than the heaven of the eternal Brahma.[3] In like manner the monotheistic conceptions of the Vedic Aryans were amalgamated with those of the Bráhmans. Agni and Prajápati, Vedic idealizations of a Supreme Being, were each in turn identified with Brahma. By this process the early Bráhmans appear to have succeeded in super-adding a belief in endless transmigrations of the soul,—in austerities as a means of obtaining reward, and in sacrifices as expiation for sin,—to the old primitive worship of the Aryan deities, which looked only for material blessings. At the same time the Bráhmans seem to have reduced the primitive classes of society to a rigid caste system; and to have converted that system into an engine of ecclesiastical oppression, by which every action of a man as a husband, a father, a householder and a citizen, was brought under the tyranny of caste rule, and human passions and aspirations were pressed down until the Hindú

Vedic deities recognized, but placed in a subordinate position to Brahmá.

Agni and Prajápati identified with Brahma.

Caste system rendered an engine of ecclesiastical oppression.

[3] A distinction must be here laid down between Brahma the Supreme Soul, and Brahmá who is only the creator, or rather the creative energy of Brahma. Without any accent the word Brahma signifies the Supreme Soul; with an accent on the final letter, Brahmá signifies the creator only.

people were little better than religious automatons. The character of this important compromise between the simple forms of Vedic worship and the complicated system of Brahmanism, will form the main subject of inquiry in the present sketch of the Brahmanic age. But in investigating the various branches of the subject, it will be constantly necessary to refer to the Vedic period; inasmuch as such an investigation tends to indicate the opposition between the ideas and institutions of the Vedic age, and those of the Brahmanic age, which are rendered perceptible by a comparison of the hymns of the Rig-Veda with the institutes of Manu.

Illustrations of the Vedic period furnished by the Brahmanic period.

The characteristics of the two succeeding eras of Buddhism and Brahmanical revival will be brought under consideration in the next volume. But inasmuch as traces of both periods are to be found in the Mahá Bhárata and Rámáyana, it may be as well to indicate in the present place the broad features which distinguish each of those epochs from the remaining three.

Distinguishing characteristics of the ages of Buddhism and Brahmanical revival.

With the dawn of Buddhism a footing is established in modern chronology. The advent of Sákya Muni, who is generally regarded as the great teacher and founder of Buddhism in India; has been referred to the sixth century before the Christian era by a series of calculations which will be duly considered hereafter. This famous personage seems for a while to have effected a complete revolution in the religious belief of the Hindús. He threw contempt upon the simple prayers of the Vedic Aryans for the material blessings of this life, by enunciating an idea which has found expression amongst bards and prophets of all ages, namely, that the pleasures of this

Commencement of the age of Buddhism in the sixth century B.C.

Doctrines of Sákya Muni.

world are altogether unreal and unsubstantial, the mere creations of the imagination. He taught as a vital truth the sentiment which is involved in the words of a modern poet, and which is familiar to the current religious thought of the European :—

Happiness a delusion.

> "The world is all a fleeting show
> For man's delusion given;
> The smiles of joy, the tears of woe,
> Deceitful shine, deceitful flow."

Existence an evil.

But Sákya Muni went further. The modern European idea reposes upon the conclusion that there is nothing true in the universe of being, saving the life hereafter in heaven. The old Bráhmans taught that men were constantly committing sins, which could only be expiated by penances and sacrifices; and that the performance of penances and sacrifices, in excess of such expiation, would secure a corresponding amount of rewards either in this life or the life hereafter. But Sákya Muni cut at the very root of these creeds by proclaiming that existence itself was an evil to gods and men; that the one grand object of gods and men was not to prolong their miserable existence for the sake of such deluding phantoms as wealth, pleasure, or power, either in this life or in future existences; but rather to crush out all human passions and yearnings, and thus to deliver the soul from the vortex of ever-recurring transmigrations, and enable it to take refuge in a state of utter and eternal repose. Such repose is an Oriental idea of perfect and divine felicity, and is termed Nirvána; but in reality it is little more than an idea of utter annihilation, inasmuch as it involved the destruction of all individuality, until nothing was left but mere intellect in undisturbed

Nirvána, or undisturbed repose.

slumber. It may also be remarked, as a significant fact in the history of man, which will be further considered in the next volume, that this idea of repose, this longing after eternal rest, did not find its full force in an age of evil and tribulation, when afflicted humanity sought relief from the thousand ills that flesh is heir to; but in an age of sensual gratification, when profuse indulgence had produced a sickening satiety, which found expression in the words of the Preacher of old:—"All, all is vanity, and vexation of spirit."

Age of satiety.

Expulsion of Buddhism by the Brahmanical revival.

The circumstances which led to the expulsion of Buddhism from India, and the triumphant revival of Brahmanism, are still involved in some obscurity, which may however be possibly cleared up hereafter. In the present place it may suffice to say that the great Brahmanical revival seems to have originated in a democratic appeal to the sympathies and aspirations of the masses, who might reasonably be supposed to be less capable of apprehending the transcendental happiness involved in the idea of Nirvána, and to feel a livelier appreciation of the more substantial enjoyments of human existence as they are generally understood by the bulk of the community. Indeed it may be remarked that unless religion promises substantive blessings and rewards, or is associated with sectarian ideas which perpetuate it as a living principle by that force of antagonism which perpetuates so many dogmas, it soon fails to act as a motive power or spring of action. It is thus easy to comprehend that amidst the corruptions of a Buddhist priesthood, a religious belief which offered no spiritual consolation beyond rest or annihilation, and which ignored rather than satisfied the innate yearn-

Failure of Buddhism to influence the masses.

ings of the soul after a supreme good, soon failed to exercise an influence upon the general community, who hankered after the fleshpots of Egypt, and burned with the eagerness of youthful voluptuaries to receive material blessings from their old national gods in return for sacrifice and prayer. Under such circumstances the appeal of the Bráhmans to the popular sentiment could scarcely fail of success. The worship of the old Vedic deities, who had been held in derision during the age of Buddhism, was partially revived. The worship of Vishnu and Siva, which was unknown to the composers of the Rig-Veda, but which seem to have largely prevailed throughout Hindústan and the Dekhan, was recognized and adopted by the apostles of the Brahmanical revival. Vishnu and Siva were each identified with Brahma, and ultimately with each other. Ráma and Krishna, the traditional heroes of the people of India, whose histories have been household words for ages, were declared to be incarnations of the god Vishnu; whilst even the animals who were worshipped by the pre-Aryan races, such as the fish, the tortoise, the boar, and the lion, were represented as incarnations of the same deity. In like manner the worship of the Linga, which appears to have originated in a remote antiquity, was associated with the worship of Siva; and the deification of the female principle, the Earth goddess, which appears to have sprung up amongst many primitive tribes, and was supposed to grant abundant harvests and prolific cattle, became associated with Parvatí, the wife of Siva, under a variety of names of which perhaps Durgá and Kálí are the widest known. Numerous other deifications were in like manner admitted into

Appeal of the Bráhmans to the worship of the old gods of India.

Vedic deities.

Vishnu and Siva.

Brahma.

Ráma and Krishna, as incarnations of Vishnu.

Animal worship.

Linga worship.

Parvatí, Durgá, Kálí.

the pantheon of the Bráhmans; such as gods of love, of war, of wealth, and of good luck; as well as deified animals and things belonging to an ancient fetische worship, including cows, snakes, birds, trees, plants, rivers, mountains, books, stones and logs of wood; all of which were incorporated in the Brahmanical system under a variety of mythical interpretations and transformations, until the Hindús themselves have ignorantly believed that their gods were three hundred and thirty millions in number.[4]

Káma, Kártikeya, Kuvera, Ganesa.

Chronology of the four epochs.

The chronology of these four great epochs in the history of the Hindús may perhaps be indicated as follows:—

Vedic.

1st.—The Vedic age, which was characterized by the worship of the elementary deities, such as Agni and Indra, and appears to have prevailed in the Punjab prior to the disappearance of the Saraswatí river in the sand.[5]

Brahmanic.

2nd.—The Brahmanic age, which was characterized by the worship of Brahma, and appears to have prevailed between the disappearance of the Saraswatí in the sand, and the advent of Sákya Muni about B.C. 600.

Buddhist.

3rd.—The Buddhist age, which was characterized by the pursuit of Nirvána, and appears to have prevailed from about B.C. 600 to A.D. 800 or 1000.

[4] The names of all these deified personifications will be fully indicated in a subsequent volume. It will suffice to state that Káma is the god of love; Kártikeya the god of war; Kuvera the god of wealth; and Ganesa, the elephant-headed and big-bellied idol, the god of good luck and prosperity.

The age of the Brahmanical revival is sometimes styled the Puránic age, or the age in which the Puránas were composed. The Puránas certainly received their present form during this period, and the legends they contain are chiefly valuable as illustrations of the period of Brahmanical revival.

[5] The significance of the disappearance of the Saraswatí, as separating two eras from each other, will be pointed out in Chapter II., on Vedic and Brahmanic Geography.

4th.—The Brahmanical revival, which was characterized by the worship of incarnations of deities, and appears to have prevailed from about A.D. 800 to the present time.

Brahmanic revival.

Whilst, however, the attempt has been made to map out the religious history of the Hindús into four distinct periods, it by no means follows that such an arrangement of eras is to be regarded as an expression of definite chronology. On the one hand an attempt to arrive at approximate chronological data, and to calculate the probable duration of Hindú forms of religious belief by reference to what is known of the duration of modern revolutions in religious thought, carries back the imagination to a period so far removed from all recorded history, that synchronisms could only be found in astronomical calculations of the revolutions of the stars. Again, in dealing with revolutions brought about by the progress and development of religious thought, it is impossible to fix any chronological interval, less perhaps than a thousand years, between the time when an old faith passes away and the time when a new faith finds full expression, and fairly lays hold of the national mind. One age runs into its successor and mingles with its current; just as the heathenism of Greece and Rome continued to exist long after the advent of Christianity; and just as Roman Catholicism still continues to exist, and may exist for hundreds of generations yet to come, although at least three centuries may be said to have passed away since the advent of the Protestant Reformation. To this day very many traces of the old Vedic worship are still to be found in the popular faith and ritual of the masses in India; whilst the innovating doc-

Definite chronology impossible.

Intermingling of religious ideas originating in different ages.

trines of Buddhism, which were so hotly persecuted by the Bráhmans, still linger in many recesses of the Hindú mind. Stranger still, the fetische form of worship, which belongs to the remotest antiquity, still flourishes in India, and is especially to be found in the rural districts, where it exercises no small influence upon the minds and actions of the masses.[6]

Two points in connection with the Brahmanic age.

The following chapters will thus be immediately devoted to a consideration of the ideas and institutions of the Brahmanic age. Accordingly, before commencing the inquiry, it may be advisable to consider two important points, which bear upon the general subject, namely:—

1st—The duration of the Brahmanic age.

2nd—The light which the Brahmanic age throws upon the Vedic period.

1st, Probable duration of the Brahmanic age.

From the data already laid down it would seem that the old Brahmanic age intervened between the decline of the Vedic worship and the rise of Buddhism. In other words, between the reduction of the Vedic worship to an established ritual in association with the worship of Brahma, which seems to have taken place at some remote period more or less corresponding with the disappearance of the Sarasvatí river in the sand; and the early teachings of Sákya Muni, who seems to have flourished in the sixth century before the Christian era. But whilst for the sake of clearness the transition period between Brahmanism and Buddhism has been referred,

Indefinite extension of Brahmanism throughout the Buddhist age.

[6] Indra, one of the most celebrated of the Vedic deities, is still worshipped in the great annual festival in the south of India, known as the Pangol, or "boiling." Again, many traces of the worship of Buddha are to be found at Jagannáth; and missionaries in many quarters report that Buddhist doctrines have left a deep impression upon the rural population.

to the sixth century B.C., it seems certain that the current of Brahmanism flowed on until a much later date. When Sákya Muni began to promulgate the peculiar dogmas of Buddhism to the people of Hindústan, he found himself surrounded by Bráhmans, many of whom became his converts and disciples; and it was not until after his death that a hostile opposition arose between the Bráhmans and Buddhists, which eventuated in religious wars and cruel persecutions, that still find expression in local traditions, as well as in the burnt and charred remains of Buddhist monasteries of olden time. Indeed Brahmanism seems never to have been entirely subverted, for otherwise its resuscitation ten or twelve centuries after the death of Sákya Muni could have been scarcely possible. Moreover it will be seen hereafter that Brahmanism appears to satisfy the crude aspirations of mankind in an early stage of civilization; and is in accordance with a popular idea of divine justice in the government of the world, that every good act will be separately considered and rewarded, and that every sinful act will be separately considered and punished, either in this life or in the life hereafter. On the other hand Buddhism is essentially an aristocratic creed, suitable only to the philosophic yearnings of a rich and noble class, in whom self-indulgence in every gratification has produced a surfeit of pleasure; and who are consequently driven by sheer satiety to seek a life of abstinence and contemplation, which will ultimately tend to a dreamy spiritual existence of eternal repose and undisturbed slumber.

Brahmanism a religion of the people.

Buddhism, a religion of the nobles.

A further idea of the probable duration of the old Brahmanical period may perhaps be derived from

a consideration of the period in which the code of Manu appears to have been composed. It will be seen hereafter that whilst this code recognizes the worship of the Vedic deities as part of the great compromise between Vedic and Brahmanic rites, which characterized the Brahmanic period; it refers to the atheists and revilers of the Veda, who are to be identified with the Buddhists, and it directs that no Bráhmans should settle in their neighbourhood. At the same time it takes no cognizance of that worship of incarnations of deity which characterized the later era of Brahmanical revival; and especially it contains but slight referenee to Vishnu or Siva, the two great deities of the modern religion of the Hindús. Accordingly, although the date of the code is still involved in some obscurity, its composition may perhaps be referred to the centuries immediately preceding the Christian era, or to those which immediately follow that epoch.[7]

Code of Manu a standpoint in the history of Brahmanism.

No references in the code to the age of Brahmanical revival.

Probable date of the code of Manu.

As regards the reflex light which the following investigations into the history of the Brahmanic age will throw upon the Vedic age, it will suffice to remark that the illustrations to be traced among Brahmanic materials will be found to furnish new and important additions to the stock of information respecting the old Vedic settlements in the Punjab, which has already been gathered from the hymns of the Rig-Veda.[8] The grounds for the several conclusions will be exhibited in future chapters; but it may be desirable to note in the present place the

2nd, Reflex light thrown upon the Vedic age by the Brahmanic age.

[7] Reference is certainly made in the code to the Puránas and Upanishad; still the greater portion of the code seems to have been composed long before the Puránas received their present form.

[8] See *ante*, Vol. I. Vedic Period.

data which will be more or less established hereafter. The salient points are nine in number, and may be indicated as follows:—

Nine salient points.

1st, The geographical distinction between the Vedic settlements and the Brahmanic settlements; the former being referable to the Punjab and the latter to Hindústan. 1st, Vedic and Brahmanic Geography.

2nd, The distinction between the Rishis and the Bráhmans; the former being Vedic psalmists and worshippers of the Vedic deities, whilst the latter were sacrificing priests and worshippers of the god Brahma. 2nd, Rishis and Bráhmans.

3rd, The distinction between the Vedic conception of Manu as the first man, and the Brahmanic conception of Manu as the Hindú lawgiver. 3rd, Conceptions of Manu.

4th, The distinction between the creation of the universe by Manu and the similar creation by Brahmá. 4th, Creations by Manu and Brahmá.

5th, The distinction between the Vedic and Brahmanic systems of chronology; the former being apparently based upon a calculation of Manwantaras, or reigns of successive Manus, whilst the latter was based upon a succession of Kalpas, or days of Brahma. 5th, Vedic and Brahmanic chronologies.

6th, The distinction between the Vedic worship and the Brahmanic worship. 6th, Worship.

7th, The distinction between the Vedic forms of marriage and the Brahmanic rites. 7th, Marriages.

8th, The distinction between the Vedic Sráddha and the Brahmanic rite. 8th, Sráddhas.

9th, The distinction between the Kshatriya and the Bráhman, which especially characterizes the laws respecting the four castes. 9th, The Kshatriya and the Bráhman.

In addition, however, to these main points, many Further evidence.

other characteristics of the Vedic and Brahmanic periods will appear in future chapters, and further illustrate the radical distinction which exists between the two ages. Moreover, an attempt will be made in the concluding chapter of the present volume, under the head of "Historical resumé," to classify and arrange all available data in the Epic traditions, as will serve to illustrate the successive stages in the development of the Hindú people; and establish, if possible, a chronological sequence which shall approximate as nearly as may be to the current conception of historical annals.

Chronological sequence approximating to the idea of annals.

CHAPTER II.

VEDIC AND BRAHMANIC GEOGRAPHY.

Comparison of the geographical data in the Vedic hymns and code of Manu.

THE first point to be settled in the history of the Brahmanic age is the relative geographical position of the Vedic and Brahmanic settlements at the dawn of tradition. This point is of considerable importance, as in consequence of the systematic Brāhmanizing of all Vedic traditions, which characterizes the sacred literature of the Hindús, the early localities of the Vedic and Brahmanic peoples have been hitherto confounded together; and the geographical distinction between the two classes of settlements can only be ascertained after a critical investigation of the data which are to be found in the hymns of the Rig-Veda and laws of Manu.

Vedic settlements and Brahmanic settlements separated by the Saraswatí river.

According to Manu there were two ancient territories in the north-west quarter of India, which seem to have been more or less separated from each other by a once famous river known as the Saraswatí. This river might be roughly described as flowing from the Himálayas towards the south in a parallel line with the Sutlej and Jumná, and about half way between the two; and thus the Aryan invaders from the north-west would have to cross the Saraswatí on their way from the Punjab to Hindústan. The region to the westward of the river is

said by Manu to have been created or frequented by the Devatas, or gods of the Vedic Aryans. The region to the eastward of the river is said to have been the country of the ancient Bráhman priests, the worshippers of the god Brahma.[1] This distinction between the Devatas, or gods of the Vedic Aryans, and Brahma, or god of the Bráhmans, must be especially borne in mind in dealing with the history of ancient India. In Hindú traditions the gods are frequently identified with their worshippers. Thus the term "Devatas" often points to the Vedic people, whilst the term "Brahma" may sometimes point to the Bráhman people. It should also be added, that whilst the god Brahma was scarcely known to the composers of the Vedic hymns, no pains are spared in the code of Manu to represent Brahma as a deity distinct from, and far superior to, all the Vedic deities.

Vedic gods identified with the Vedic Aryans, and the god Brahma with the Bráhmans.

On the first glance at these geographical data, it would appear that the territory of the Vedic Aryans might be identified with the modern Punjab, and that the territory of the Bráhmans might be in like manner identified with that of Hindústan proper. Indeed it is by no means improbable that this conjecture involves an important geographical fact; namely, a distinction between the Vedic people and

Opposition between the Vedic Aryans of the Punjab and the Bráhmans of Hindústan.

[1] The distinction between the eastward and westward of the river is not clearly laid down by Manu, and the obscurity is rendered greater by a confusion as regards the real Saraswatí, which seems to have taken place in modern maps. The question will be discussed hereafter, in connection with a translation of the original texts in Manu. It will suffice to state here that a land-mark, known as the Vinasana, or disappearance of the Saraswatí, is fixed by Manu as the western boundary of the Middle region; and consequently it has been inferred that the same boundary separated the Brahmanic territory from the Vedic territory. That they were separated is certain, as Manu describes Brahmárshi-desa as being west of Brahmávarta.

Brahmanic people, corresponding to the distinction between the Punjab and Hindústan. In the hymns of the Rig-Veda frequent reference is made to the land of the seven rivers, created by Indra and Agni, which rivers seem to correspond to the seven rivers of the Punjab;[2] whilst it is plain from other allusions that the Aryan settlements extended southward along the main stream of the Indus or Sindhú towards the modern Kurrachee. In like manner it is certain that at a later period the Brahmans occupied the greater part of Hindústan, and became identified with that territory. Manu, however, restricts both the Vedic region and the Brahmanic region to a much more limited area, and distinguishes each one by a Brahmanical name. The Vedic territory is described as a small tract between the so-called Saraswatí and Dhrishadwatí, which have been identified with two little streams known in modern maps as the Sersooty and Caggar, and enclose between them a little territory about sixty miles long and from twenty-four to forty miles wide. The Brahmanic territory occupied in the mind of Manu a far larger area, but one which was still confined to western Hindústan, namely, from the bank of the Saraswatí to the bank of the Ganges in the neighbourhood of the famous city of Kanouj, an interval of about three hundred miles as the crow flies. The Brahmanical names applied by Manu to both regions, open up a question of some importance. The Vedic region he calls by the name of Brahmávarta, and the Brahmanic region by the name of

Restricted areas described by Manu.

Brahmávarta and Brahmárshi-desa.

[2] The seven rivers of the Punjab consist of the Indus and the Saraswatí, and the five rivers between them, namely, the Jhelum, the Chenaub, the Ravee, the Beas, and the Sutlej.

Historical origin of Brahmárshi-desa.

Brahmárshi-desa. The latter name of Brahmárshi-desa, as designating the country of the divine priests or Bráhmans, is probably historical; as the tradition is widely spread throughout India that the region indicated as Brahmárshi-desa is the mother-country of the Bráhmans. The name, however, of Brahmávarta, which Manu applies to the Vedic settlement on the Saraswatí, is apparently a mythical appellation of comparatively modern date. If both countries were named after Brahma, it seems difficult to understand why any distinction should have been laid down between them. Moreover, in the Vedic period, as will be seen hereafter, the river Saraswatí flowed on to the river Indus. In the Brahmanic period, however, when the code of Manu was promulgated, the same river disappeared in the sand long before it reached the Indus; and Vinasana, or the place of the disappearance of the river, was adopted by Manu as a land-mark which formed the western boundary of the middle region. Thus at the time when the river Saraswatí flowed to the Indus, the Vedic deities were alone worshipped by the Vedic Aryans. In the succeeding age, however, when the Saraswatí disappeared in the sand, the god Brahma was worshipped as the one Supreme Being, and the Vedic deities were either depreciated or neglected by the Bráhmans. Indeed, throughout the Institutes of Manu, the god Brahma is persistently represented as infinitely superior to the Vedic gods. He is described as the creator of the Devatas; and a day of Brahmá is said to have been equal to many thousand years of the Devatas.[3]

Mythical origin of the term "Brahmávarta."

Distinction between the age when the Saraswatí flowed to the Indus, and the age when it disappeared in the sand.

Opposition between the Vedic deities and Brahma.

[3] This alleged superiority of Brahmá to the Devatas is still more strikingly put forward in the Rámáyana, where the Vedic deities are represented as flying to Brahmá for protection against Rávana. See *ante*, p. 18.

Manu, however, has unconsciously revealed the real truth, as regards the mythical origin of the term "Brahmávarta." In speaking of the Vedic tract, he says:—"This country was created by the Devatas [i.e. Vedic gods], and therefore the sages [i.e. the Bráhmans of a later age, of whom Manu was the representative] gave it the name of Brahmávarta.[4]

Vedic geography of the country on the Saraswatí.

A comparison of the geographical data in the Rig-Veda, when the river Saraswatí flowed on to the Indus, with the geographical data in Manu, when the same river disappeared in the sand long before it reached the Indus, will fully confirm the conclusions which have been laid down. The Saraswatí river is known in the Rig-Veda as the seventh stream; because apparently it was the seventh and last stream which the Vedic Aryans had to cross in their way from the Punjab to Hindústan proper, or in other words from the banks of the Sutlej to the banks of the Jumná.[5] It was also called the mother of the Indus or Sindhú;[6] probably because it flowed into the Indus, and thus fed or nourished that river. Its praises are duly hymned in the Rig-Veda as the mightiest of rivers, the beautiful goddess, the protecting deity, the bestower of food and riches. "This Saraswatí, firm as a city made of iron, flows rapidly with all sustaining water, sweeping away in its might all other waters, as a charioteer clears the road: Saraswatí, chief and parent of rivers, flowing from the mountains to the ocean. . . . . May the auspicious and gracious Saraswatí hear our praises

[4] Manu ii. 17. It will be seen hereafter that the geography of Manu must be referred to a time when the Aryans had conquered the whole of Hindústan; and that even in his time the area of Brahmanism was by no means co-extensive with the area occupied by the Aryans.

[6] Rig-Veda, Mand. vi. Hymn 36, v. 6.

at this sacrifice, approached as she is with reverence and with bended knees: We present to thee, Saraswatí, these oblations with reverence; be gratified by our praise; and may we ever recline upon thee, as upon a sheltering tree."[7] These mantras evidently belong to a period anterior to Brahmanism. They are the expression of men who personified their river as a female deity, and poured out their souls in a fetische worship, combining poetical sentiment with self-interested devotion. But they are not the expressions of men under Brahmanical influences, for they contain no allusion whatever to such essentials in Brahmanical ideas as the doctrine of merits and demerits, of sacrifices and penances as associated with the conception of sin, the transmigrations of the soul, and the future states of punishment and reward.

Manu's geography.

Manu's geographical notices of Brahmávarta and Brahmárshi-desa are altogether of a different character.[8] Instead of indicating what would appear

[7] Ib. Hymn 95.

[8] The following translation of the texts in Manu will be found useful for reference. Besides Brahmávarta and Brahmárshi-desa, it will be found to refer to two other regions, namely, Madhya-desa, or the Middle region, and Aryávarta, or the Aryan pale, which will be noticed hereafter.

I.—BRAHMÁVARTA.—"The space between the two divine rivers, the Saraswatí and the Drishadwatí,—that God-created tract they call the Brahmávarta. The custom prevalent in that tract, received from successive tradition, concerning the castes and the mixed castes, is called the good custom."

II.—BRAHMÁRSHI-DESA.—"Kurukshetra, the Matsyas, the Panchálas, and the Surasenas. This land which comes to Brahmávarta, is the land of Brahmárshis (Brahmárshi-desa, or the land of divine sages). From a Brhámaṇ born in that district let all the men on the earth learn their several duties."

III.—MADHYA-DESA.—"The tract between the Himálaya and Vindhyá, to the east of Vinasana, and to the west of Prayága, is called the central region (Madhya-desa").

IV.—ARYÁVARTA.—"The space between those two mountain ranges to the eastern and the western sea, the wise know as Aryávarta (or the land of the Aryans.)"

"Where the black antelope naturally grazes is to be held as the proper land for offering sacrifices; all else is Mlechchha-land. Let the twice-born carefully keep within these countries; but a Súdra distressed for subsistence, may dwell

to be an important line of Aryan settlements westward of the Saraswatí, Manu simply defines a contracted little colony between the upper course of the Saraswatí, now called the Sersooty, and a tributary of the same river, named the Drishadwatí, but now known as the Caggar.[9]

But the texts of Manu quoted below contain two highly significant statements, which not only throw still further light upon the all-important distinction between Brahmávarta and Brahmárshi-desa, but also seem to point to the origin of caste as well as to that of Brahmanism. Speaking of the tract on the Saraswatí, Manu says:—"The custom prevalent in that tract, received from successive tradition, concerning the castes and mixed castes, is called the good custom." This remark seems to imply that the caste system originated in the Aryan colony, probably from the relations which subsisted between the conquerors and conquered. Again, speaking of Brahmárshi-desa, he says:—"From a Bráhman born in that district let all the men in the earth learn their several duties." This remark would seem to imply that Brahmárshi-desa was the mother country of the Bráhmans. Thus two important inferences may be drawn:—

Origin of the caste system in Saraswatí.

Origin of Brahmanism in Brahmárshi-desa.

First, that the caste system originated in the country to the westward of the river Saraswatí.

anywhere." Professor Cowell's translation of Manu, ii. 17—24, in Elphinstone's History of India, fifth edition, p. 225.

[9] Manu's misconception as regards the Aryan settlement in Vedic times seems to have led to some misrepresentation on modern maps. The name of Sersooty, as a corruption of Saraswatí, has been restricted to the upper course of the river before its junction with the Caggar; and the Sersooty has thus been converted from a main stream into a tributary. On the other hand the name of the Caggar has been extended over the whole course of the Saraswatí to the spot where it disappears in the sand.

Secondly, that Brahmanism originated in the country to the eastward of the river Saraswatí, that is, in the region between the Saraswatí and the Jumná.[10]

Progress of Aryan invasion and conquest of Hindústan before the time of Manu.

The curtain of Indian history thus rises upon two distinct regions, occupying opposite banks of the river Saraswatí, namely, Brahmávarta, or the land of Devatas, and Brahmárshi-desa, or the land of Bráhmans. But Manu describes two other regions, namely, Madhya-desa, or the Middle region, and Aryávarta, or the Aryan pale. The geographical data in connection with this mapping out of Hindústan are of considerable importance, inasmuch as they furnish a further illustration of the chronological interval between the hymns of the Rig-Veda and the laws of Manu; between the flowing of the Saraswatí into the Indus and the disappearance of the Saraswatí in the sand. The Middle region extended from the disappearance of the Saraswatí to the junction of the Ganges and Jumná at Alláhabád; but Aryávarta, or the land of

[10] The country which Manu terms Brahmárshi appears to have extended over the valleys of the Ganges and Jumná from the neighbourhood of Delhi and Hastinápur to the neighbourhood of Kanouj, an ancient city of great renown, which was situated on the Ganges about sixty-five miles to the westward of Lucknow. The localities indicated in the texts of Manu already quoted, may be identified as follows:—The plain of Kurukshetra must have been situated in the neighbourhood of the settlements of the Kauravas and Pándavas at Hastinápur and Delhi. The country of Matsya is dubious, but may have been the modern Jeypur. The identifications of Panchála with Kanyakubja or Kanouj, and of Surasena with Mathura, rest on the authority of Kullúka, the commentator of Manu, and may have been connected with the worship of Krishna; Kanyakubja being the name of the humpbacked woman who was healed by Krishna, and Sura being the Chieftain of the Yadavas at Mathura, and the reputed grandfather of Krishna. It has already been doubted whether the Raj of Panchála, possessed by Raja Drupada, really extended as far as Kanouj; but this by no means militates against Kullúka's representation of the extent of Brahmárshi, the land of the Brahman Rishis. See *ante*, Vol. I. *passim*.

Aryans, extended from sea to sea.[11] Thus in the time of the Rig-Veda the Aryans had advanced only to the "seventh stream" or Saraswatí; whilst in the time of Manu they had spread throughout Hindústan. It may also be added that the Institutes of Manu were composed prior to any conquest of the Dekhan; for Manu expressly forbids any men of the three twice-born castes from dwelling in any other country than Aryávarta.

Restricted area of the Brahmans compared with the extensive area of the Aryans in the time of Manu.

But there is another and still more significant point in the geography of Manu which must not be overlooked. In his reference to the most ancient period, which has been here termed the Vedic age, the area of the Aryans is a very small tract in comparison with the area of the Bráhmans. But it will be seen in his description of the Brahmanical period, in which he himself flourished, that the Aryan pale was a far more extensive area than the Bráhman pale. The country of the Bráhmans only extended from the Saraswatí to the Ganges; but the country of Aryávarta extended over the whole of Hindústan. In other words, the advancing tide of Aryans had poured through Brahmárshi-desa, and had doubtless carried with them much of the Brahmanical faith and ritual; although the orthodoxy and morals of a gallant race of heroes who had conquered Hindústan, must have appeared dubious in the eyes of a true Bráhman. They drove war chariots, tamed

[11] There is some vagueness in the expression from sea to sea, inasmuch as the latitude of both Brahmávarta and Brahmárshi on one side, and of Bengal on the other, lies far to the northward of the sea-coast. But we must not expect much geographical precision from Manu as regards latitude. It is, however, still a question whether Bengal is to be included in Aryávarta, or whether we may assume that in ancient times the Bay extended sufficiently far to the northwards to form an eastern boundary.

wild horses, and were proficients in the use of the bow and battle-axe; and so far their services were valuable as protecting the Bráhmans, Vaisyas, and Súdras,—the priests, merchants, and cultivators,—against the barbarous aborigines. But they were addicted to wine, gambling, and flesh meat, which were one and all an abomination to the Bráhman. Moreover, they seem to have been often led away by their love of beautiful women to contract unions with the fair maidens of the newly-conquered territory, which were contrary to all Brahmanical rule. Therefore Manu promulgated his code for their edification, and especially directed that all men should learn their duties from those Bráhmans only who were born in Brahmárshi-desa, or within the Bráhman pale.

CHAPTER III.

RIṢHIS AND BRÁHMANS.

THE distinction between the Vedic age and Brahmanic age has now been fully indicated, and will be further illustrated hereafter. The point to be established in the present chapter is the distinction between the Rishis, who composed the hymns of the Rig-Veda in the land of the seven rivers, and the Bráhmans of a later period, who performed sacrifices, and promulgated their complex code of rites and observances in the western quarter of Hindústan. In other words, between the joyous psalmists who poured out their souls in earnest and vigorous prayers to the Vedic deities for the material blessings of this world; and the gloomy race of priests, who promulgated the doctrines of religious austerities and future transmigration with especial reference to the life which is to come.

Distinction between the Vedic psalmists and Bráhman priests.

The composers of the hymns of the Rig-Veda appear to have had little faith in a life hereafter, in the immortality of the soul, or in a future state of rewards and punishments, beyond a vague conception of Yama as a god or judge of the dead. The Vedic Aryans also had some crude ideas, connected with the propitiation of the Pitris, or ghosts of deceased ancestors, with food and water; but this pro-

Vedic religion restricted generally to the present life.

pitiation seems to have been only an expression of affectionate remembrance, and to have been scarcely connected with religious ideas. In a few of the hymns, which appear to be of comparatively later origin, ideas of a spiritual life after death may have found expression; but such lofty aspirations are not to be found in the compositions of the more popular and genial psalmists. On the contrary, the Vedic bards were endowed with a large capacity for worldly enjoyment, and a healthy and human appreciation of material good; and their hymns in general are the early expressions of a child-like belief in the individual existence of superior and spiritual beings in the elements, which could work either good or evil. The sun could ripen the harvest or burn it up; the rain could nourish the crops or destroy them; the wind could blow in gentle zephyrs or rush along the earth in hurricanes. The necessity for propitiating such beings was therefore obvious. Accordingly the Vedic bard personified them into deities, and gratified them with offerings of strong drink and choice viands, and hymned them with praises as they were accustomed to hymn their own warriors and Rajas. Thus having feasted the gods and lauded them, the worshipper naturally expected in return such blessings as the gods had to bestow. Besides however the elementary deities, a host of other spiritual existences were personified into gods at the mere fancy of the imaginative bard. Heaven and earth, rivers, weapons, food, soma wine, the dawn, the sacrifice itself, and the priest who offered it, were alike invested with a spiritual life and converted into deities. The chief gods of all however were Indra and Agni, whose attributes have already

been described; Indra as the type of sovereignty and conquest, the giver of rain, and sometimes the creator of the rivers and mountains; and Agni, as light or fire in all its varied manifestations, as the creative or vivifying spirit which animated the entire universe like a Supreme Soul.

Genial character of the Vedic ceremonial.

It is perhaps difficult in a philosophic age to sympathize in the deep religious fervour with which the Aryan psalmists invoked such deities as those which have been described. But the natural selfishness which lies at the root of such religious enthusiasm, sufficiently explains the cause of the vitality of their devotion. So long as the people believed that material blessings were to be obtained by offerings of food and wine, and hymns of praise and prayer, so long they would continue to prepare the feast for the gods, and pour forth their souls in passionate laudation and supplication. The nature of the Vedic worship would also be specially acceptable to a convivial community; for its rites would be associated with every joyous gathering, if not with every family meal; and it would naturally be popular so long as the community believed that they could procure plenteous harvests, prolific cattle, abundance of sons, health, vigour, and long life, by the simple process of feasting and singing in the presence of their kind-hearted and generous deities.

Popularity and power of the Vedic psalmists.

At the same time the genius of the bard would be stimulated to a pitch never reached by the poet of a more enlightened and incredulous age. Riches, fame, and glory would be the reward of that Rishi, who personified a new deity or composed a new hymn, if his poetical flights only reached the ears of the god, and procured earthly blessings for the con-

gregation of worshippers. Sometimes a fair daughter was given in marriage to a young and successful bard. Thus the legend has already been related of the Raja of Anga, who gave his daughter in marriage to a young Rishi, who brought down the rain after a long-continued drought.[1] In like manner a legend has been preserved in the hymns of the Rig-Veda of another Rája, dwelling on the banks of the Sindhú or Indus, who gave ten daughters in marriage to a young psalmist named Kakshívat, together with rich dowries of cows, horses, and chariots.[2]

Daughters of Rajas bestowed in marriage upon Rishis.

Wide interval between Vedic and Brahmanical ideas.

It thus seems impossible to identify these ancient Védic bards or Rishis with the more modern Bráhman priests. The hymns contain many references to priests or cooks, and some isolated allusions to Bráhmans; but the god Brahma scarcely ever appears to have been recognized or worshipped. Again, while some of the hymns comprise speculations about the soul, the relative priority of earth and heaven, and the creation of the universe, which is ascribed to Indra or Agni, there is no expression of Brahmanical ideas, and no reference to the creation of the universe by Brahmá. Judging therefore from the analogy furnished by Hebrew history, the hymns might be referred to a class of minstrels of whom king David was a type, rather than to a sacerdotal class. But there is an opposition in the

Vedic bards resemble the Hebrew psalmists.

[1] See *ante*, Part IV. chap. ii.

[2] Rig-Veda, Mand. I. Hymn 126. There are several legends of a later date of Rajas giving their daughters in marriage to Bráhmans who are identified with Rishis; but the stories appear to have passed through a Brahmanical crucible, for the husbands in such cases appear as decrepit old Bráhmans rather than as youthful Rishis. Notwithstanding all the efforts of the Puranic authors to represent the young wives as loving and faithful under such circumstances, the idea is neither agreeable to poetical sentiment, nor to human nature, which finds a healthier expression in such ballads as "Auld Robin Gray."

hymns of the Rig-Veda between a peaceful community and a warlike community which might possibly indicate an opposition between the ancestors of the men who afterwards became Bráhmans and the ancestors of the men who afterwards became Kshatriyas. Such an opposition must be referred to a period long before the Aryans had crossed the Saráswatí, and entered Brahmárshi-desa; and consequently long before the names of Bráhman and Kshatriya had been applied to the priest and warrior castes. It has already been seen[3] that the majority of the hymns of the Rig-Veda are the expression of a peaceful community, who offered simple oblations of butter and milk to the deities of the elements, and other personified abstractions; and this class of priestly worshippers has been identified with the ancestors of the later Bráhmans. In like manner it has been seen that there are other hymns which appear to be the expression of a warlike class of the community; for they are connected with flesh sacrifices to Indra; and accordingly this class of worshippers has been identified with the ancestors of the later Kshatriyas. Traces are also to be found in these ancient hymns of an opposition between the worship of the Maruts, or winds, by a peaceful community, and the worship of Indra, as a hero, by a warlike community.[4] In one hymn Indra is represented as expostulating with the Maruts in the following language:—"Where, Maruts, has that food been assigned to you, which was appropriated to me alone for the destruction of Ahi? For I indeed am fierce, and strong, and mighty, and have bowed

Opposition in the Vedic hymns between a peaceful community and a warlike community.

Opposition between the worship of the Maruts and the worship of Indra.

[3] See *ante*, Vol. I. Introduction.

[4] See Wilson's Rig-Veda, vol. ii. pp. 145—162.

down all my enemies with death-dealing shafts."[5] Again, Agastya the sage, who appears to have especially upheld the worship of the Maruts, expostulates with Indra thus:—"Why, Indra, dost thou purpose to slay us? The Maruts are thy brethren! Share with them in peace; destroy us not in enmity."[6] In another hymn a worshipper thus expresses to the Maruts his alarm at the jealousy of Indra:—"Maruts, through fear of that violent Indra, I fly trembling; the oblations that had been prepared for you have been put away; nevertheless have patience with us."[7] Indeed some of the hymns which are addressed to Indra are wholly of a warlike and triumphant character, like the song of Miriam, or the Song of Barak and Deborah, and can scarcely be identified as belonging to a devotional psalmody. The potent god, the showerer of benefits, is invoked as the destroyer of the cities of the Dasyus, the conqueror of Sambara, the slayer of the black-skinned barbarians who gave him no libations, and who molested the white-complexioned Aryans, that were his friends and worshippers.

Further clue to the opposition between Rishis and Bráhmans, furnished by the distinction between Rájarshis, Devarshis, and Brahmarshis.

A further clue to the distinction between Rishis and Bráhmans seems to be furnished by the distinction laid down in the Puránas between Rájarshis, or king Rishis; Devarshis, or god Rishis; and Brahmarshis, or Bráhman sages. The king Rishis were probably Kshatriyas, who have always been designated Rajas. The god Rishis, termed Devarshis, or Rishis of the Devatas, were probably Rishis of the

[5] Rig-Veda, Mand. I. Hymn 145, v. 6. Ahi is another name for Vrita, who is sometimes treated as a personification of the rain cloud, and sometimes as a Daitya or warrior amongst the aborigines.

[6] Ib. Hymn 170, v. 2. [7] Ib. Hymn 171, v. 4.

peaceful community, or rather of the Aryan race in general, who are often alluded to as Devatas, or gods. Finally, the term Brahmarshis was apparently applied to the early Bráhman sages; and hence their country was distinguished from the Aryan country, or the land of Devatas, by the term Brahmárshi-desa.[8]

First appearance of the Bráhmans as mercenary sacrificers.

The advent of the Bráhmans, and the establishment of their ascendancy as a great spiritual hierarchy, must have been the work of generations if not of centuries. Traces, however, are not wanting of the circumstances under which they rose. They first appeared among the Aryan community as mercenary priests, or sacrificers, who were prepared to officiate at the great festivals or sacrificial sessions for the sake of hire. Here it should be remarked that in the Vedic period the Kshatriyas were their own priests; the term priest being employed to indicate the performers of sacred rites, as distinct from the Rishis or composers of sacred songs. In other words, the Chiefs of a family, a tribe, or a Raj, appear occasionally as performers of a sacrifice, and even as celebrating the rites of marriage. Thus at the famous Aswamedha of Raja Yudhishthira, the horse was not sacrificed by a Bráhman, but by Bhíma, the second Pándava; whilst the marriage rites of Nala and Damayantí were performed by the Raja of Vidarbha, and those of Ráma and Sítá by the Raja of Mithila. Subsequently the Bráhmans were apparently hired by Rajas to perform the laborious ceremonies at the great sacrifices; and in this capacity they were regarded with disdain by

The Kshatriyas originally their own priests.

Subsequent hiring of Bráhmans.

[8] Compare Vishnu Purána, Book iv. chap. 3.

the Kshatriyas. Thus the Kshatriyas at the Swayamvara of Draupadí expressed hot indignation that a Bráhman should have presumed to compete for the hand of the daughter of a Kshatriya; and Drupada and his son were much troubled at seeing Draupadí led away by Arjuna, who was disguised as a Bráhman. This implied inferiority of the Bráhman to the Kshatriya is the more extraordinary from the contrast which it furnishes to later myths of a Brahmanical origin, in which Rajas are represented as bestowing their own daughters in marriage upon Bráhmans.

Ascendancy of the Bráhmans secured by asceticism.

The weapon by which the ancient Bráhmans appear to have established their ascendancy was that of asceticism. A religious enthusiast or fanatic, who leads a life of abstinence and mortification, and voluntarily subjects himself to privations and sufferings for the ostensible object of subduing his appetites and instincts, and elevating himself to the level of divine beings, will naturally excite the ridicule of an epicurean hierarchy, but he will also be regarded with veneration and superstitious awe by the wondering masses. Amongst a people like the Vedic Aryans, who were imbued with a strong and healthy appreciation of the material enjoyments of human life, the rise of such a sect of ascetics, with their wearisome ceremonial and ostentatious austerities, must have been regarded either with a credulous belief in the efficacy of such observances, or with a philosophical indifference and contempt for such self-denying fanaticism. Traces of this ignorant faith and scornful satire are alike to be found in the hymns of the Rig-Veda. In one hymn, which appears to have been of Kshatriya origin, inasmuch

Vedic faith in the power of the Bráhmans.

as it was addressed to weapons and armour considered as deities, the worshippers are represented as saying:—"May the Bráhmans, presenters of Soma, protect us." Here the Bráhmans appear as priests presenting the Soma to the sacrificial fire, as distinguished from the Rishi, or composer of the hymn, which is addressed to the Bráhmans. Moreover, the protection of the Bráhmans is invoked by the worshippers, apparently from a belief in their supernatural powers. Another hymn appears as an expression of sarcasm. Under the guise of a panegyric upon the frogs, it is in reality a satire upon the Bráhmans, their penances and elaborate rites; and it is somewhat remarkable that the hymn should be ascribed to a famous Rishi named Vasishtha, who has always been represented in the Epics and Puránas as a true Bráhman. The whole hymn has been exquisitely translated by Professor Max Müller, and will be duly appreciated by those who have heard the demonstrative croaking of the Indian frogs on the approach of the rainy season. The following extracts will sufficiently indicate its character:—"After lying prostrate for a year, like Bráhmans performing a vow, the frogs have emitted their voice, roused by the showers of heaven. When the heavenly waters fall upon them as upon a dry fish lying in a pond, the music of the frogs comes together, like the lowing of the cows with their calves. . . . . Like Bráhmans at the Soma sacrifice of Atirata, sitting round a full pond and talking, you, O frogs, celebrate this day of the year when the rainy season begins."[9] Another hymn translated by

Vedic sarcasms levelled at the Bráhmans.

Bráhmans compared with frogs.

[9] Max Müller's History of Sanskrit Literature, p. 494. "It is curious," says this eminent scholar, "to observe that the same animal should have been chosen

Professor H. H. Wilson is more obscure, but seems to partake of the same satirical character.[10]

Recapitulation.

The results which may be drawn from the foregoing data appear to establish the conclusion, that in the old Vedic period there was a peaceful community and a warlike community; and that the former were inclined to the worship of the Maruts, whilst the latter were inclined to the worship of Indra. It accordingly follows that there were two classes of Rishis, who may be respectively referred to the same communities; namely, the domestic or family bards, who prayed for health and prosperity; and the warrior psalmists, who chaunted triumphant war songs in honour of the victorious Indra. The opposition, however, between these two is only imperfectly indicated in the Vedic hymns; and it is difficult to say how far it may have originated the opposition between the Bráhman and the Kshatriya. But the opposition of the Bráhmans to the Kshatriyas finds full expression in the Vedic period. The penances of the Bráhmans were likened to the croaking of frogs by the Vedic Rishi Vasishtha; whilst the Bráhmans themselves were held in contempt as mercenary sacrificers by the ancient Rajas.

by the Vedic satirists to represent the priests (Bráhmans), which was selected by the earliest satirist of Greece as the representative of the Homeric heroes."

[10] Rig-Veda, Mand. I. Hymn 179. This hymn contains a dialogue between Agastya and his wife, in which the latter seems to complain that her husband has neglected her in order to perform penance, contrary to the custom of the ancient Rishis. It has already been seen that Agastya appears in the Rig-Veda as the representative of the peaceful community, who worshipped the Maruts in opposition to Indra.

CHAPTER IV.

VEDIC AND BRAHMANIC CONCEPTIONS OF MANU.

Manu identified as the first man and divine lawgiver.

BEFORE proceeding to indicate the further distinction between the Vedic and Brahmanic ages, it will be necessary to distinguish between the Vedic conception of Manu as the first man, and the Brahmanic conception of Manu as the divine lawgiver.

Vedic conception of Manu as the first man.

The conception of Manu as the first man, the father of the Vedic Aryans, if not of the whole human race, finds sufficient expression in the hymns of the Rig-Veda.[1] Subsequently, in the Brahmanic period he is said to have been warned by a fish to build a ship, in which he ultimately escaped from a great flood; a legend which bears a curious resemblance to the Mosaic tradition of Noah and the deluge.[2] From these circumstances the famous Brahmanical code has been ascribed to Manu, and is still known as the Institutes of Manu. This association of the name of the Vedic Manu with the Brahmanical code may have arisen from the desire to assert the remote antiquity and divine authority

Brahmanic conception of Manu as the divine lawgiver.

[1] Rig-Veda, Mand. I. Hymn 45, v. 1. Ib. Hymn 30, v. 16.

[2] A translation of the legend, as it is related in the Satapatha-Brâhmana, is given by Professor Max Müller in his History of Sanskrit Literature, p. 425. Another version has been preserved in the Mahâ Bhârata, in which Manu is said to have taken seeds of grain and vegetables into his ark, just as Noah is said to have taken pairs of animals.

of Brahmanical law; but it may also have been deemed expedient to recommend that law to the worshippers of the Vedic deities, by referring its origin to the time-honoured progenitor of the Vedic Aryans.

Laws of Manu a compromise between Vedic and Brahmanic ideas.

The connection of the Vedic Manu with the Brahmanical law is accompanied by another significant fact, which has already been indicated. The so-called "Institutes of Manu" are the expression of an important compromise in the religious history of the Hindús; being, in fact, a compromise between the worship of the Vedic deities and the worship of the god Bráhma, between whom an opposition amounting almost to an antagonism seems at one time to have prevailed. The compilers of the code have certainly spared no pains to uphold the worship of the god Bráhma above that of the Vedic deities; but at the same time they have found it necessary to recognize Vedic rites and institutions to an extent which imparts a two-fold character to a large portion of the code; one referring to the Vedic period, and the other to the Brahmanic period. At the same time, however, the compromise has evidently been carried out by Bráhmans, who have done their best, as in the Mahá Bhárata and Rámáyaná, to Brahmanize every Vedic tradition.

Historical significance of the compromise.

Conflicting character of Manu's authorities.

The main object of the present chapter is to show that the opposition involved in this compromise, originated in the conflicting character of the authorities from which the so-called laws of Manu have been derived; and in order to carry out this object effectually, it will be necessary to indicate with sufficient clearness the character and scope of those authorities. Upon this point the compilers of

the code have been most explicit. There are, it is said, four roots of the law, namely :—

Four roots of the law.

1st, The whole Veda.

2nd, The ordinances and practices of such as understand the Veda.

3rd, The immemorial customs of good men.

4th, The approval of conscience in matters which are indifferent.[3]

The Vedas.

The first question for consideration in connection with the foregoing data, relates to the meaning which is to be attached to the term "Veda" as employed in the code of Manu. In reality there are four Vedas, corresponding to the four heads or faces of the god Brahma, who is popularly regarded as the divine author of the Vedas. But hitherto reference has only been made to the Rig-Veda, which is, however, the most ancient and important of the whole; and, indeed, the remaining three Vedas mainly depend upon the Rig-Veda, and may be regarded as Brahmanized versions of it, with later additions of a Brahmanical character.[4]

---

[3] Manu, ii. 6.

[4] The character of the four Vedas may be thus indicated :—

1st, The Rig-Veda, which is the oldest, consists of metrical hymns addressed to different deities in the language of praise or laudation.

2nd, The Yajur-Veda, which chiefly consists of nearly the same hymns in prose, taking the form of prayers, and being in fact a collection of liturgical formulæ, especially relating to oblation and sacrifice.

3rd, The Sáma-Veda, which consists of a re-cast, or re-arrangement, of very nearly the same hymns, for the purpose of chaunting.

4th, The Atharva-Veda, which, differing in some respects from the foregoing, consists of prayers, which are either employed at lustrations, or at rites intended to conciliate the deities, or as imprecations upon enemies. It comprises, however, many of the hymns of the Rig-Veda.

The foregoing description of the four Vedas refers only to what is called the Mantra portion, consisting of hymns, prayers, and chaunts. But there is another and a later portion known as the Bráhmanánam, which is also included under the term "Veda," and which is sufficiently described in the text. Colebrooke's *Essays on the Veda;* Wilson's *Introduction to the Rig-Veda.*

Again, each of the four Vedas is divided into two portions, namely:—

The Mantras and Bráhmanas.

1st, Mantras, or hymns and prayers, which appear to be the spontaneous outpourings of the devotions of a primitive people.

2nd, Bráhmanas, or formal rituals, in which hymns, prayers, sacrificial rites, and other mystic ceremonies, follow each other in established order; but they also include much explanatory matter of a mythical or theological character.

The Mantras of the Rig-Veda referred to the Vedic age, and the Brahmanas to the Brahmanic age.

Hitherto reference has only been made to the Mantra portion of the Rig-Veda; inasmuch as the Bráhmana of that Veda does not appear to yield any results which can be regarded as historical.[5] The distinction however between an age of spontaneous devotion, and one of formal ritualism, is one of considerable historical significance, as the former seems

[5] Some account of the Bráhmana of each Veda is to be found in Colebrooke's *Essays* and Wilson's *Introduction to the Rig-Veda*, Vol. I. The most interesting and important is the Bráhmana of the Rig-Veda known as the Aitareya Bráhmana. The text of this Bráhmana, together with an English translation, has been recently furnished by Dr Haug of Bombay. It furnishes valuable illustrations of what may be called the sacrificial phase of Brahmanism, which has long been dying out in India, and which indeed has already died out in many provinces under British rule; but it cannot be said to yield any results which can be rendered available for purely historical purposes. The following data, however, which are given on the authority of the learned translator, are worthy of notice.

The term Mantra, i. e. "the produce of thinking," is of a very early date, for it is to be found in the Zend-Avesta in the form of *Manthra*. Its meaning there is that of a sacred prayer or formula, to which a magical effect was ascribed; just in the same manner that a similar effect was ascribed to the Vedic mantras. The Bráhmanam however is a later production, referring to the Mantra and based upon the Mantra; and indeed without the Mantra it would have no meaning, nay, its very existence would be impossible. It contains speculations on the meaning of the Mantras, gives precepts for their application, relates stories of their origin in connection with that of sacrificial rites, and explains the secret meaning of the latter. It is in short a kind of primitive theology and philosophy of the Bráhmans. The name Bráhmanam is altogether unknown to the Zend-Avesta, and therefore must have originated after the migration of the Vedic Aryans from Central Asia, and probably after the advent of the Vedic Aryans in Hindústan. Haug's *Aitareya Bráhmanam*, vol. i. *Introduction.*

to refer to the Vedic age and the latter to the Brahmanic age. The term Veda, as employed in Manu, thus seems to have generally included the whole of the Mantras and Bráhmanas of all the four Vedas; although three Vedas only are actually mentioned by Manu.[6] The term Bráhmana, however, is sometimes employed in a larger sense, and comprises a still later class of writings, which contain much metaphysical and mystical speculation respecting the Supreme Soul and the creation of the universe. These writings are termed Aryanyakas and Upanishads, and are apparently included in the term Veda as employed by Manu; inasmuch as it will be seen hereafter that the Hindú lawgiver has borrowed some of the ideas which they convey in his account of the creation of the universe by Brahmá.

Aryanyakas and Upanishads included under the term Bráhmanas.

Besides the Veda thus defined, Manu indicates three other roots of law. He speaks of the ordinances and practices of those who understand the Veda; and by this expression he either refers to the Bráhmanas, or dicta of Bráhmans, already described; or to the more ancient commentators upon the Vedas, the fathers of the Brahmanical religion, who might be supposed to interpret the more simple hymns of the Rig-Veda according to their own peculiar dogmas, and impart to the child-like ceremonial of the Vedic Aryans a mystic meaning never contemplated by the primitive Rishis on the banks of the Saraswatí. He also speaks of the immemorial customs of good men; under which head he appears to include the usages of different countries, tribes,

Three other roots of law.

Later ordinances.

Immemorial customs.

[6] Manu mentions the Rig-Veda, which is held sacred to the gods; the Yajur-Veda, which relates to mankind; and the Sáma-Veda, which concerns the spirits of ancestors. Manu, iv. 124.

and families. To these he adds those acts, which refer to things indifferent, and which have received the approval of conscience. In this description of three roots of the law in addition to the Veda, may be found the full expression of that spirit of toleration and compromise which accounts for the spread and success of Brahmanism. The Bráhmans rarely attempted to ignore or denounce the traditions of any new people with whom they came in contact; but rather they converted such materials into vehicles for the promulgation of their peculiar tenets. In like manner they did not rashly attempt the suppression of immemorial customs, but they tolerated them; condemning them however when opposed to their own ideas of morality, and leaving time to do the rest. This course must have greatly assisted in the promulgation of a new and foreign faith; inasmuch as a people will frequently cling to its time-honoured customs with a tenacity which is only increased by opposition, but which if left alone will gradually die out with the progress of enlightenment and refinement.[7]

Things indifferent approved by conscience.

Spirit of toleration.

Another point which Manu notices in connection with his code, is the distinction between Sruti, or revelation, and Smriti, or tradition; in other words, between the Veda which is regarded as a revelation, and what is called the whole body of the law, which is regarded as tradition.[8] This distinction may be of some importance as an illustration of the national belief in inspiration; and it may throw some light

Distinction between Sruti, or revelation, and Smriti, or tradition.

[7] It will be seen hereafter, that this toleration is fully illustrated by the laws of Manu as regards Gandharva and Rákshasa marriages, by which such marriages were permitted to the Kshatriyas, but still were condemned by the Hindú lawgiver.

[8] Manu, ii. 10.

upon that era in the history of Sanskrit literature when inspiration was supposed to end and tradition to begin; but at present the question is somewhat obscure, and moreover furnishes no clue to the ancient condition of the people at large.[5] In connection with this subject Manu indulges in certain denunciations against those atheists who followed after heretical books, and threw contempt upon revelation and tradition, which appear to be of some historical significance, inasmuch as they were apparently directed against the Buddhists, who denied the authority of the Veda.[6]

Buddhists denounced as atheists.

But whilst the code of Manu is to be regarded as a compromise, it is emphatically the expression of Brahmanism, and the text book of the Bráhmans. It was the duty and privilege of every Bráhman to study it; and it was strictly enjoined that no one but a Bráhman should teach it to his pupils or disciples, and that no one but a member of the twice-born castes should be permitted to read it at all.[7] At the same time its authority was supreme, for it was regarded as a divine revelation from Manu, the son of Brahmá.

Manu, the text book of the Bráhmans.

[9] The religious aspect of the question has been discussed by Professors Max Müller and Goldstücker; in Max Müller's "History of Sanskrit Literature," and Goldstücker's "Panini, and his place in Sanskrit Literature."

[10] Manu, ii. 11.

[7] Manu, i. 103.

CHAPTER V.

CREATION OF THE UNIVERSE BY MANU AND BRAHMÁ.

Obscurity of the Vedic idea of the origin of the universe.

THE Vedic idea of the creation of the universe, and the origin of the human race, seems to have been confused and obscure. Speculations on such subjects rarely belong to an age of primitive belief, when the first expression of philosophic inquiry would be satisfied with the simple dogmas that the earth was created by the gods, and that the traditionary ancestor of the tribe was the first man. Sometimes in the exaggerated language of poetry the Vedic bards ascribed the creation of the earth to Indra, or Agni; but they appear to have had no definite idea of a universe of being, or of the creation of a universe. Their homes were in the Punjab, and the Punjab was their little world. Accordingly, the child-like credulity of the masses readily acquiesced in the pious vauntings of the Vedic bard, that the seven rivers of the Punjab were brought down from the Himálayas by the god Indra, the ancient warrior and leader of the Aryan invaders; whilst the more thoughtful and inquiring minds might have been occasionally lost in that sea of metaphysical speculation, which ascribed the origin of life and being to the god Agni, or, in other words, to the element of fire in all its various forms and manifestations. The

Indra and Agni regarded as creators of the earth.

Vedic Aryans, however, appear to have arrived at some conception of the first man, who was known in the familiar phraseology of the hymns as father Manu; but even there Manu scarcely appears as a creator of the human race, but simply as the progenitor of men.[1]

Conception of father Manu as the progenitor of men.

There is, however, a Vedic hymn, known as the Purusha hymn, which is said to be a comparatively late composition, in which the gods and Rishis are supposed to offer up Purusha, or the Supreme Spirit, as a sacrifice, and to dismember him for the purpose of creating the earth out of his limbs.[2] This conception was apparently derived from an ancient myth, which also finds expression in the Scandinavian mythology; and it will be necessary to refer to it hereafter in connection with the origin of the four castes; but it can scarcely be regarded as a definite Vedic idea of the origin and creation of a universe of being.[3]

The Purusha hymn.

The account of the creation which is given in the Brahmanical code is altogether of a different character from that which finds expression in the Vedic hymns. The age of Aryan conquest had been succeeded by an age of Brahmanical contemplation; and thus a theory of the origin of the universe was evolved out of the moral consciousness, which presents a curious combination of two opposite ideas, namely, the creative faculty of a Supreme

Cosmogony of the Brahmanic period.

[1] Rig-Veda, Mand. I. Hymn 80, v. 16.

[2] Muir's *Sanskrit texts*, vol. i. chap. 1, sect. 2.

[3] When the sons of Bör had slain the giant Ymir they dragged his body into the middle of Ginnungagap, and of it formed the earth. From Ymir's blood they made seas and waters; from his flesh the land; from his bones the mountains; and his teeth and jaws served to make the stones and pebbles. Prose Edda, Part I. s. 8, *Blackwell's Translation.*

Spirit, and the ordinary operation of physiological laws. The first idea bears a strong resemblance to the Mosaic cosmogony, and indicates four distinct stages in the creative process, viz.:—

The Spirit moving on the waters.

1st, The universe existing in darkness, or chaos.

2nd, The darkness dispelled by the light of the Supreme Spirit.

3rd, The creation of the waters by the light of the Supreme Spirit.

4th, The Supreme Spirit moving upon the waters.

The birth of Brahmá in an egg, and creation from the egg.

The second idea resembles the Orphic cosmogony, and indicates five further stages in the creative process, viz.:—

1st, The productive seed placed in the waters by the Supreme Spirit, and expanding into the mundane egg.

2nd, The birth of Brahmá in the egg.

3rd, The division of the egg and formation of the heavens and the earth.

4th, The creation of Mind and Consciousness, the three Moral qualities, the five Senses, and the great Elements.

5th, The creation of Manu and the ten Manus, from whom all the created things were produced.

Manu's account of the creation.

Manu's account of the creation is as follows:—

The Supreme Spirit.

"In the beginning the universe only existed in darkness; upon which that Supreme Spirit, whom no man hath seen, whom no man can comprehend, and whom the mind alone can perceive, appeared with undiminished glory and dispelled the gloom. And the Supreme Spirit created the waters by his will, and placed in them a productive seed. And the

The egg.

seed became an egg as bright as gold and as luminous as the sun; and in that egg the Supreme Spirit was born in

the form of Brahmá, the divine male, the great forefather of all spirits. And the waters are called Nárá, because they were the production of Nárá, or the Supreme Spirit; and as it was on the waters that the Supreme Spirit first moved, he is named Náráyana, or he whose place of moving was the waters. And Brahmá sat in that egg during a whole year; and then he caused the egg to divide itself; and from the egg he framed the heavens and the earth and the great waters. From the Supreme Spirit emanated Mind and Consciousness; and all vital forms endued with the three Moral qualities of Goodness, Passion, and Darkness; and the five Perceptions of Sense, and the five Organs of Sensation; from which also proceed the great Elements, and their several Properties. Then Brahmá divided himself, and became half male and half female, and from that female he produced Viráj. Know that I (Manu) am that person whom the male Viráj produced by himself; and I, Manu, am the framer of all things. I created ten Manus, or Lords of created beings, and they produced all beings, vegetable and animal. When Brahmá awakes the universe expands; but when he sleeps the universe passes away."[4]

Heaven and earth.

Metaphysical existences.

Viráj.

Manu and the ten Manus.

It will now be seen that the first four stages in the cosmogony of Manu, namely, darkness, light, water, and the Spirit moving on the water, present a remarkable similarity to those which appear in the Mosaic account; excepting that Manu seems to represent the light as existing before the waters, whilst the Mosaic account seems to imply that the waters were created first and the light afterwards. But the conception of the Supreme Spirit moving in or on the waters, demands a passing

Cosmogony of Manu compared with that of Moses.

Contrast between the Hindú idea of Bráhma sleeping on the waters, and the Hebrew idea of vivifying wind.

[4] Manu, i. 1—69. The translations from Manu, both here and elsewhere throughout the present work, are generally given in a condensed form, so as to avoid the repetitions and verbiage which are to be found in the original. A considerable amount of useless matter has also been often excluded altogether, as utterly devoid of either significance or interest.

inquiry, inasmuch as it exhibits a radical difference between the working of the minds of the Hebrew and Hindú. The Mosaic account of the creation is as follows:—"The earth was without form and void; and darkness was upon the face of the deep. And the Spirit of God moved upon the face of the waters. And God said:—'Let there be light;' and there was light."[5] Here the term "Spirit" implies the breath of Deity; and the conception of the breath of life animating the waters can scarcely be said to run counter with an enlightened idea of creative force. But the Hindú conception is that of a Supreme Being reposing or sleeping upon the waters, creating the universe in idea only. This idea furnishes a striking illustration of the dreamy character of the Hindú intellect, but is altogether opposed to that notion of the wakeful and all-seeing energy of the Almighty, which is common to Hebrew and European thought. The conception of Brahmá sleeping upon the waters was naturally formed by a people, who consider rest and quietude beneath the shade of a tree, or by the side of still waters, to be the acme of bliss, and the proper sphere of devotional exercises. But an ardent and energetic race could no more imagine Deity to slumber than it could suppose the tides to stand still, or the monsoons to cease to blow.

Conception of the mundane egg.

The next conception in the order of creation is that of a productive seed, which is placed in the waters and expands until it becomes a vast and luminous egg, in which Brahmá is born, and from which the heavens and earth are created. This

[5] Genesis i. 2, 3.

conception corresponds with the famous Orphic idea of a mundane egg, which appears to have been familiar to the Greeks.[6] In all probability it arose from a contemplation of the vault of heaven, which may be said to resemble the inside of the upper part of a vast egg; whilst the idea might be formed that the under part of the universe was arched over in a like fashion. It is, however, not impossible that the Hindú idea of the universe springing from an egg, may have had some connection with the conception of the Supreme Being as a primeval male which finds expression in the Puránas; but it may also have been associated with the worship of the Linga, or phallus, which apparently belongs to a period of remote antiquity.

Origin of the conception.

Possible connection with the worship of the Linga.

The next stage in the cosmogony is of a metaphysical character, and has apparently been taken from the Sánkhya school of philosophy. It comprises the creation of Mind and Consciousness; the three Moral qualities; the perceptions of Sense and the Organs of Sensation; and the great Elements. This creation might perhaps be passed over in

Conception of a metaphysical creation.

[6] See the Orphic fragment in the "Birds" of Aristophanes quoted in Cory's Fragments. The extract is as follows:—

"First was Chaos and Night, and black Erebus and vast Tartarus;
And there was neither Earth, nor Air, nor Heaven; but in the boundless bosom of Erebus.
Night, with her black wings, first produced an aerial egg,
From which, at the completed time, sprang forth the lovely Eros,
Glittering with golden wings upon his back, like the swift whirlwinds.
But embracing the dark-winged Chaos in the vast Tartarus,
He begot our race (the birds) and first brought us to light.
The race of Immortals was not, till Eros mingled all things together:
But when the elements were mixed one with another, Heaven was produced, and Ocean,
And Earth, and the imperishable race of all the blessed Gods."

In the Comedy the Birds deliver the cosmogony, and thus claim the priority of birth over the gods as well as men. Birds sometimes play a curious part in Hindú legend. See especially the Márkandiya Purána.

silence, as a bewildering jargon by which the later Bráhmans sought to account for the origin of existences, which could scarcely be ascribed to generative force.[7] Still it will be found of some value as illustrating the character and tone of the intellectual exercises of the later Bráhmans; and although perhaps it properly belongs to the period of Brahmanical revival, it may be desirable to furnish the following brief explanation, which is based upon the tedious disquisitions that appear in the later Puránas, and which may perhaps serve to throw a clearer light upon the obscure statement of Manu.[8]

Valuable as illustrative of Hindú thought.

Four heads.

This metaphysical creation may be considered under four different heads, viz.:—

1st, The Mind or Consciousness.

2nd, The three Qualities—Goodness, Passion, and Darkness.

3rd, The Perceptions of Sense and Organs of Sensation.

4th, The Elements and their Properties.

1st, Three Gunas or Qualities—Goodness, Passion, Darkness.

The three Qualities or Gunas, which are comprised under the second head, should perhaps be considered first, as they are to a large extent mixed up with all the other creations. The conceptions of these three Gunas are larger than the names would seem to imply. Thus Goodness includes purity,

[7] The myths respecting Chronos, Eros, Chaos, and other ancient personifications, would seem to militate against this view; but it is difficult to conceive how a sexual origin could be ascribed to moral qualities, or to the organs of sense. In the later sectarian writings, connected with the pantheistic worship of Krishna, such sensuous personifications certainly find a place; and the Brahma Vaivarta Purána contains a myth in which Brahma is represented as begetting upon his wife Savitri the science of logic, the modes of music, days, years and ages, religious rites, diseases, time and death. But this Purána would seem to be many centuries later than Manu.

[8] Compare particularly the Vishnu Purána.

and is attended with happiness and productive of virtue. Passion, or foulness, implies the idea of activity, whilst it is attended with misery and productive of vice. Darkness includes the idea of dulness, illusion, and obstructiveness, and is productive of stolidity. These three Gunas hold an important place in the religious and philosophical ideas of a later age.

2nd, Mind and Consciousness.

The creation of Mind or Consciousness now proceeds as follows. Matter becomes invested with the three Gunas in equilibrio, and is united with Spirit. From these Intellect is produced, and like them is invested with the three Gunas. From Intellect proceeds Egotism, or the principle of individual existence which appropriates perceptions. Intellect and Egotism may be regarded as identical with Mind and Consciousness.[9]

3rd, Perceptions of sense and Organs of sensation.

The creation of the Perceptions of Sense, the five Organs of Sense, and the great Elements, is even more obscure. Egotism being invested with the three Gunas becomes threefold, namely;—Egotism pure, from the quality of Goodness; Egotism passionate, from the quality of passion or activity; and Egotism elementary, or rudimentary, from the quality of darkness.

Threefold Egotism.

1st,—Pure Egotism produced the ten divinities who preside over the five Organs of Sense, and their corresponding Perceptions or Actions.

2nd,—Passionate Egotism produced the Organs of Sense and their corresponding Perceptions.

[9] English equivalents for the Sanskrit terms are employed in the text to prevent confusion; but for the convenience of reference it may be as well to notice them here. Matter is called Pradhana; and sometimes Prakriti, or Nature. Spirit is called Purusha. Intellect is Mahat. Egotism is Ahankara.

3rd,—Rudimentary Egotism then produced the five Elements,—ether, wind, light, water, and earth; and their five Rudiments, or Properties,—sound, touch, colour, taste, and smell. In the first instance the rudiment of Sound was produced from Rudimentary Egotism, and then the remaining work of creation proceeded in the following order:—

4th, Elements and their Properties.

Ether. (1.) Ether was produced from Sound and engendered Touch; whence originated Wind, of which Touch is the property.

Wind. (2.) Wind was produced from Touch and engendered Colour, or form; whence originated Light, of which Colour is the property.

Light. (3.) Light, or fire, was produced from Colour and engendered Taste; whence originated water, including juices, of which Taste is the property.

Water. (4.) Water was produced from Taste and engendered Smell; whence originated Earth, of which Smell is the property.

Earth. (5.) Earth thus originated from Smell, and was invested with Smell as a property.[10]

Brahmá male and female. The next stage in the creation is the separation of Brahmá into male and female, and the production of Viráj, who thus appears to have become the progenitor of all created things. This myth scarcely calls for remark, but the one which immediately follows it, and which brings the whole narrative to a conclusion, demands consideration. Manu is introduced as being produced from Viráj by some creative process which is not distinctly indicated; and Manu then creates ten Manus, who appear in later myths

Introduction of Manu and the ten Rishis.

[10] Compare Manu, i. 74—78. According to the Vishnu Purána the egg included all these Elements and Properties, together with the Mind and Consciousness, the three Qualities, and the five Organs and their Perceptions.

as Bráhman sages. It would seem however that the narrative of the creation was previously complete without the introduction of Viráj; for when Brahmá had become separated into male and female, the creation by generation might have followed as easily as the generation of mankind followed the creation of Ádam and Eve in the Mosaic narrative. The creation of Manu and the ten Manus thus appears to have been a separate and independent cosmogony, which has been incorporated with a Brahmanic cosmogony. In other words, the code contains two accounts of the creation of the human race; one being a Vedic tradition of Manu, as a progenitor; and the other being a later and Brahmanic dogma of the creation of the universe by Brahmá.[11]

[11] It is difficult to say how far this legend of ten Manus, and their ten reigns in succession, which are termed Manwantaras, finds expression in the Vedic hymns. Indeed the point has yet to be determined. (See Wilson's Rig-Veda, Vol. II. p. 61 *note*.) The names of the Manus are as follows:—Maríchi, Atri, Angiras, Pulastya, Pulaha, Kratu, Daksha, Vasishtha, Bhrigu, and Nárada. Most of the names are to be found in the hymns of the Rig-Veda; and all of them figure largely in those Brahmanical editions to the Epics to which attention has already been drawn. Maríchi was the father of the famous Kasyapa, who appears in the Rámáyana as the mythical progenitor of the Sun, and consequently as the Brahmanical ancestor of the Solar race of Ayodhyá. Atri appears in like manner in the Mahá Bhárata as the mythical progenitor of the Moon, and consequently as the Brahmanical ancestor of the Lunar race of Bhárata. Angiras is an ancient personification of the Vedic deity Agni in the person of a Bráhman. Pulastya was the mythical grandfather of Rávana, the Rákshasa Raja of Lanká. Pulahu, Kratu, and Daksha are more obscure personifications; but the latter is celebrated as the performer of a famous sacrifice, in which he appears as an opponent of the god Siva. Vasishtha appears prominently in the Rámáyana as the priest of Maháraja Dasaratha, and religious instructor of the hero Ráma. Bhrigu is frequently introduced into the Mahá Bhárata for the purpose of delivering many Brahmanical discourses. Lastly, Nárada is found playing an important but equally mythical part in both Epics. He settled the delicate terms on which Draupadí was to live with her five husbands; he was present with other Rishis at the mythical Council of the Kauravas, which was summoned to receive Krishna; he was one of the three Rishis who pronounced the curse against the Yadavas, which culminated in the massacre at Prabhása and destruction of Dwáraká; and he even appears in the beautiful episode of Nala and Damayantí, as carrying the news of the Swayamvara of Damayantí to the heaven of Indra.

In another part of the code there is incorporated a still more obscure tradition of Manu, under the name of Swáyambhuva, having six descendants who are also termed Manus. (Manu, i. 61—63.) The names of these seven Manus are Swáyambhuva, Swárôchisha, Uttama, Támasa, Raivata, Khákshusha and Vaivaswata. As Vaivaswata is said to have been a child of the Sun, this account may be connected with some solar myth. It is worthy of remark that this latter account forms the commencement of that part of the code in which Manu delegates the further recitation of the laws to his son Bhrigu. These lists are differently filled up in the later Puránas.

CHAPTER VI.

SACRED CHRONOLOGY.

THE account of the creation of the universe is followed in the Brahmanical code by a description of those extraordinary durations of time, by which the ancient sages boldly attempted to map out eternity; and which excited so much discussion in the last century from the marked contrast which they present to the more limited calculations which are based upon the so-called Mosaic chronology. This daring reckoning includes millions of years before the dawn of recorded history, and millions of years yet to come; and under such circumstances it might seem to possess some germs of truth from its approximation to those vast astronomical periods, which are indicated by the apparent infinity of the universe, and the revolutions of distant stars round mysterious centres. But in truth it is a mere arbitrary arrangement of figures; a play upon the relations of days, months, and years, multiplied by thousands of millions at the mere fancy of an arithmetical dreamer. Such a chronological scheme is of course childish and unmeaning; but yet it has exercised considerable influence upon the religious belief of the Hindús.

Bold attempt by the Bráhmans to map out eternity.

A mere arbitrary arrangement of figures.

Manu's system of chronology may be separately considered under two different heads, as follows:—

Division of Manu's system of chronology.

HISTORY OF INDIA. PART V.

1st, The calculation of days, months, and years.
2nd, The calculation of Yugas or Ages.

1st, Calculation of days, months, and years.

The calculation of days, months, and years all turns upon the systematic multiplication of the ordinary human notion of a day, that is, of a single revolution of the earth upon its own axis. The Hindú day thus corresponds to the European day, but its subdivisions are different. The Hindú hour or muhúrtta consists of forty-eight minutes only, and thus there are thirty hours in the day instead of twenty-four. The minimum of time is the twinkling of an eye. Eighteen twinklings of an eye make a moment, or káshthá; thirty moments make a kalá, which consists of about a minute and a half; and thirty kalás make a muhúrtta, or hour. Thus there are about half a million of twinklings of the eye in every Hindú hour. The conceptions of days, months, and years are naturally formed from the revolution of the earth upon its axis, the revolution of the moon round the earth, and the path of the sun along the ecliptic. But four different kinds of days are specified in the code; and this arbitrary division seems to have been introduced for one significant purpose, namely, the exaltation of the god Brahmá both over the Vedic deities, and over the Pitris,[1] or spirits of deceased ancestors, who were also worshipped by the Vedic Aryans. These four days were as follows:—

Sub-division of the Hindú day.

Four different days.

Day of mortals.

1st,—A day of Mortals, which is divided into day and night by the rising and the setting of the sun; the day being set apart for mortal action and the night for mortal slumber.

[1] The worship of the Pitris, or ancestors, still forms an important element in the Hindú religion, and will be found elucidated in chap. ix.

2nd,—A day of Pitris, which lasts for a lunar month; being divided into the bright fortnight which is called day, and the dark fortnight which is called night; the day beginning with the new moon, and the night with the full moon.[2]

Day of Pitris, or mortal months.

3rd,—A day of the Vedic gods, or Devatas, which lasts for a solar year; being divided into the summer half which is called day, and the winter half which is called night; the day beginning with the vernal equinox and the night with the autumnal equinox.

Day of gods, or mortal years.

4th,—A day of Brahmá, which involves some large calculations connected with the Yugas or ages, and will therefore be considered separately hereafter.[3]

Day of Brahmá.

This system of days, months, and years, is followed by a calculation of Yugas or ages. The primary object of the code, namely, the exaltation of the worship of Brahmá as the creator of the universe, thus appears abundantly manifest. The contemplative spirit and astronomical knowledge of the Bráhmans impelled them in the first instance to consider the universe as enduring for myriads of years; and at a subsequent period their religious tendencies seem to have led them to represent the duration of the universe as only equivalent to a single day of Brahmá.

2nd Calculation of Yugas, or ages.

The original idea of the Yugas or ages was that

Simplicity of the idea of four Yugas.

[2] According to Kullúka's gloss (Manu, i. 63), the Pitris inhabited the moon. According however to the Vishnu Purána, the Pitris had a heaven of their own which was called Prajápati Loka. The division of the lunar month into a bright and a dark fortnight will appear strange, until it is remembered that after the new moon the evenings become rapidly lighter, and that after the full moon they become rapidly darker.

[3] Manu, i. 63 *et seq.*

there were four Yugas succeeding each other in a descending series of arithmetical deterioration as 4, 3, 2, and 1, each of which was multiplied by a thousand. These four Yugas were respectively named Krita, Tretá, Dwápara, and Kali. Thus the first, or Krita Yuga, lasted for 4000 years; the second, or Tretá Yuga, lasted for 3000 years; the third, or Dwápara Yuga, lasted for 2000 years; and the fourth, or Kali Yuga, lasted for 1000 years. But all these years were years of the gods, each of which consisted of 360 mortal years. The aggregate was called a Mahá Yuga, or great age; and a thousand Mahá Yugas formed a Kalpa, or a day of Brahmá.[4]

Mahá Yuga, or great age.

The twilights.

The four Yugas thus represented the units 4, 3, 2, and 1 in arithmetical descent multiplied by a thousand. But in addition to these thousands of years, each Yuga has two twilights, one preceding it and the other following it; and each of these twilights consists of the same series of 4, 3, 2, and 1, but multiplied by a hundred only. Again, these years of the gods have each to be multiplied by 360, in order to reduce them to mortal years. The following table will perhaps exhibit with sufficient clearness the calculations connected with the number of years of the Vedic gods which are included in each Yuga:—

1ST YUGA.

	Years of the Gods.	
Twilight	400	
Krita Yuga	4,000	
Twilight	400	
		4,800

[4] Manu, i. 69 *et seq.*

2ND YUGA.		
Twilight	300	
Tretá Yuga	3,000	
Twilight	300	
		3,600
3RD YUGA.		
Twilight	200	
Dwápara Yuga	2,000	
Twilight	200	
		2,400
4TH YUGA.		
Twilight	100	
Kali Yuga	1,000	
Twilight	100	
		1,200
Total comprising a Mahá Yuga . .		12,000

Conception of a Kalpa, or day of Brahmá.

One thousand Mahá Yugas form a Kalpa, or a day of Brahmá, or twelve millions of years of the gods, which may be converted into mortal years thus:—

$$12{,}000{,}000 \times 360 = 4{,}320{,}000{,}000.$$

Infinity of the Kalpas.

Here the imagination can scarcely follow the arithmetic, for even this period must be doubled. Whilst the creative energy of Brahmá lasts for one day, his slumber lasts for a whole night, and the night of Brahmá is equal in duration to his day. Thus a day and night of Brahmá extends over nearly ten thousand million of years. This sum total must again be multiplied to an almost infinite extent, for the year of Brahmá comprises three hundred and sixty of his days and nights; and he is said to live for a hundred years. In later Puránas he is described as immortal.

Simplicity of the idea of a day and night of Brahmá.

The simplicity of the idea which represents the universe as only lasting for a day will now be mani-

fest. Brahmá is sleeping on the ocean. He awakes in the morning, and the universe springs into existence and endures throughout the day. He slumbers in the evening, and the universe passes away and all is darkness and chaos, until the night is over and he awakes and recreates as before. Thus the day of Brahmá is the period during which his creative power is in full activity. The night of Brahmá is the period during which his creative power is in perfect repose.[5]

Hindú and European ideas of chronology compared.

The significance of this daring attempt to reduce eternity to a system of chronology will be readily apprehended by bringing it face to face with western ideas. In Europe the popular idea of the period of time, which separates the creation of the universe from our own generation, scarcely extends over six thousand years; and according to a Rabbinical dogma, which prevailed very generally until a comparatively recent period, the six thousand years were to be followed by a millennium, or sabbath, of one thousand years, after which the universe was to be brought to a close and time was to be no more. This Rabbinical theory has perhaps yielded somewhat to the advance of natural science, but still it has left a deep impression upon the religious belief of western nations. In India, on the other hand, the idea of time has been altogether untrammelled by any restricted system of chronology; and material existence has been regarded as practically eternal.

Influence of the different chronological systems upon the respective religious belief of Hindús and Europeans.

The result has been the universal spread of dogmas such as the endless transmigrations of the soul, the

[5] In the age of Brahmanical revival this conception of the creation by Brahmá underwent a further change, in order to bring it into harmony with the modern doctrine of a Hindú trinity consisting of Brahmá, Vishnu, and Siva.

successive incarnations of deity separated from each other by vast intervals of time, and a chain of Buddhas stretching far back into a remote past, which can only be indicated by a long line of numerals and ciphers. Thus amongst western nations, which have been brought under the influence of a religious belief in a more restricted chronology, the mind of man is perpetually turned upon his material life as the alpha and omega of his own present existence, and as the period upon which depends the salvation of his soul throughout an undefined eternity of spiritual being. But amongst the Hindús the imagination is in a great measure weaned away from a consideration of the individual life, and is lost in a dreamy contemplation of an infinity of future existences in which the present life is but as a mortal day.

Chronological system of Manwantaras superadded to the Brahmanic system of Kalpas.

The foregoing system of Hindú sacred chronology may be called the Brahmanic system; and by laying down a distinction between the day of the Devatas and the day of Brahmá, it furnishes additional proof that the worship of Brahmá overlaid the more primitive worship of the Vedic Aryans. But besides this mapping out of eternity by Kalpas, or days of Brahmá, there is a recognition in the code of another system of chronology based upon Manwantaras, or reigns of successive Manus. Whether the second system was handed down from the Vedic age, or sprung up during the transition period between the Vedic and Brahmanic ages, must for the present remain a question.[6] That it was independent of the Brahmanic system is evident from the abortive efforts which are

[6] See Wilson's Rig-Veda, vol. ii. p. 61 *note*.

made to reconcile the duration of the Kalpas with the duration of the Manwantaras. Manu does indeed say that seventy-one Mahá Yugas constitute a Manwantara;[7] but in the Puránas it is stated that fourteen Manwantaras, with some additional years, are equal to a day of Brahmá; and the necessity for such additional years sufficiently indicates that the two computations are independent of each other.

[7] Manu, i. 79, 80.

CHAPTER VII.

RELIGION OF THE BRÁHMANS.

THE simple religious ideas connected with the Vedic worship have already been indicated. It will now be necessary to unfold and explain the religious system which finds expression in the Institutes of Manu. In attempting this task, two objects will be kept in view, namely :—

Religious system set forth in Manu.

1st, To exhibit the religious development which accompanied the rise of Brahmanism and establishment of the Brahmanical ascendancy.

Exhibits both a development and a compromise.

2nd, To illustrate the compromise which was effected between the worship of the Vedic deities and the worship of Brahma.

Before, however, entering upon this branch of inquiry, it will be necessary to consider the doctrine of rewards and punishments, both in this life and in a series of lives, or transmigrations, hereafter, by which the Bráhmans endeavoured to enforce their particular tenets. This dogma found little or no expression in the hymns of the Rig-Veda, beyond what was involved in a conception of Yama, as god or judge of the dead; and indeed it could scarcely have been necessary to enforce the spontaneous worship of the Vedic deities by the same promises and threats, which were requisite to insure the observ-

Brahmanical doctrine of rewards and punishments unknown in the Vedic age.

ance of new and artificial rules introduced by a priestly hierarchy. In primitive times, when fathers of families and heads of tribes performed their own religious rites without the interference of priests, they were actuated by an unquestioning faith, which to them was as old as the hills, that they would thereby obtain from their gods the material blessings of this life; and that if they did not so propitiate the deities of the elements with hymns and sacrifices, their harvests would fail, their cattle would perish, their wives would bear no sons, and their own bodily health and vigour would pass away. Under such circumstances religious indifference or apathy must have been unknown. On the contrary, there was most likely a display of warmth and fervour, which could scarcely be expected in more artificial and complex devotions, and which indeed characterize the greater portion of the Vedic hymns which were sung on the banks of the Saraswatí.

Crude conception of sin.

Moreover the conception of sin must have been singularly crude in the Vedic period. A deity might be offended by the poverty of the worship, such as inferiority in the cakes, butter, or wine, or imperfections in the hymns of praise. But the consciousness of having offended deity by the breach of some arbitrary moral rule seems to have been rarely experienced by this genial race, who rather exulted in pleasures and gratifications which were an abomination to the Bráhmans. It was however amongst such a community that the Bráhmans promulgated their religious rites and moral rules, which must have been often unintelligible or repugnant to the masses. The Vedic Aryans were distinguished by a love of wine and women, of flesh

Rewards and punishments introduced to enforce Brahmanical laws.

meat and high play, which were radically opposed to the tenets of asceticism; and it was apparently on this account that the Bráhmans found it necessary to enforce their precepts by promises of punishment, which were unknown to the composers of the hymns of the Rig-Veda.

Dogma of merits and demerits.

This theory of future rewards and punishments lies at the root of all Brahmanical laws and observances, and was accepted by the authors of the code as an established dogma; and indeed it has prevailed amongst the people of India down to the present day. Almost every act, however trivial, is considered as a merit or a demerit; and the individual is rewarded or punished hereafter according to the sum of his merits and demerits.[1] In this belief there is not the slightest vagueness or ambiguity; for besides the threats and promises which refer to the present life, it is associated with the doctrine of transmigration of the soul through a vast number of existences on earth, and the occasional departure of the soul to a heaven or a hell for periods of different duration. It is assumed that in all cases the balance is rigidly drawn. If the merits exceed the demerits, the individual will be rewarded in proportion to the balance in his favour; either by noble birth, prosperity, comeliness, physical strength, in-

Future existences of the soul dependent upon merits and demerits.

[1] "The householder should collect virtue [*i. e.* merits] by degrees, in order that he may obtain a companion to the next world, as the white ant by degrees builds his nest; for in his passage to the next world, neither his father, nor his mother, nor his wife, nor his son, nor his kinsmen, will remain in his company, but he will be accompanied by his merits alone. Single is each man born; single he dies; single he receives the reward of his good deeds, and single the punishment of his evil deeds. When he leaves his corpse, like a log or a lump of clay, his kinsmen retire with averted faces; but his merits accompany his soul. Let a man therefore continually, and by degrees, collect merits, so that he may secure for himself an inseparable companion; and, with his merits for his guide, he will traverse a gloom which is hard to be traversed." Manu, iv. 223–242.

tellectual power, long life, or abundance of sons in future transmigrations; or by elevation to a heaven, where the soul would dwell in bliss until its merits were sufficiently rewarded, after which it would return to earth and pass through another series of transmigrations. In like manner, if the demerits exceed the merits, the individual will be punished in proportion to the balance against him; either by low birth as a degraded man or inferior animal, or by adversity, deformity, physical weakness, mental incapacity, premature death, or a family of daughters; or by being cast down to one of the many hells, there to remain until the balance of demerits was wiped away, after which it would return to earth to pass through another series of existences.

Distinction between the religious obligations felt in Europe and those which are felt in India.

The difference between the religious obligations which are felt in Europe and those which are felt in India, may now be easily apprehended. In Europe the fear of the Divine displeasure, either in this world or the next, undoubtedly exercises a considerable influence; especially upon those who are sincerely desirous of bringing every action of their lives into strict conformity with what is understood to be the Divine will. But not even the fear of eternal punishment will restrain the mass of the people from the commission of acts, which they themselves believe to be directly opposed to the dictates of religion and morality. Moreover there is a popular belief in the mercy of God towards his erring creatures, in the efficacy of repentance, and in the general forgiveness of all minor offences, that exercises a counter-influence to the doctrine of eternal punishment, which no amount of religious teaching seems calculated to remove. In India, on

the other hand, the anxiety of the individual is concentrated more or less upon every action of his life; for nearly every act that can be committed may serve to outweigh a merit or wipe away a demerit, and thus insure good fortune, or bring about misfortune, either in this life or in a future existence. There is no prospect of the Divine forgiveness of sins in the event of repentance on the part of the sinner, and no belief in an atonement, excepting by means of sacrifices and penances which may be regarded as so many additional merits placed to the credit of the individual. Meantime religious worship and austerities are generally regarded as the chief merits; whilst the prominent demerits are supposed to consist in the breach of caste observances and in indulgences in forbidden things. By such arch-merits individuals might escape from transmigration altogether, and enjoy a happy eternity in heaven; whilst by such arch-demerits individuals might be doomed to endless transmigrations in the lowest scale of existences, or endure a horrible eternity in hell.

Causes of the universality of the belief in merits and demerits.

This conception of a future state of rewards and punishments, although it involves no idea of a beneficent and merciful deity, contains an element of apparent justice, which is readily apprehended by the popular mind. Moreover it serves to account for one of the most inscrutable problems in human life, namely, the unequal distribution of the blessings and pains of earthly existence. Happiness and prosperity are regarded as the reward of virtues displayed in a previous life; and misery and adversity are regarded as the punishment of sins committed in a previous state of being.

Form of the conception in the Mosaic law.

Again, the compilers of the code are by no means unmindful of the force of that obligation, which is involved in promises of rewards or punishments to the posterity of an individual; and which finds a fitting and forcible expression in the Mosaic law. In Manu however the obligation generally refers to breaches of mere caste rules, which could only affect posterity so long as the caste system continues to trammel the minds and bodies of the people of India. But the Hebrew lawgiver has laid down the far grander dogma, which may be opposed to a human idea of justice, but which nevertheless involves an eternal truth that may be traced back to the creation of man. He has authoritatively declared that the iniquity of fathers will be visited upon the children to the third and fourth generation; and this doctrine is not only in accordance with the existing facts that many of the crimes of parents do affect their children in the eyes of the world, but it is also in conformity with what is known of hereditary disease.[2] Indeed, in a future age, when the laws of physiology are more generally apprehended, the obligations to obey the moral law for the benefit of posterity will increase in strength; and the justice of a punishment which is inflicted upon the descendants of a delinquent, as well as upon himself, will become more and more manifest in the eyes of men.

Inferior merit of duties performed in the hope of reward.

Turning from this general element in Hindú belief to the special observations of Manu as regards

[2] A similar conception finds expression in the New Testament narrative in the story of a man who was born blind. The Jews asked Jesus whether it was the sin of the man in a previous life, or the sin of his parents, which had caused his blindness.

his code, it will be seen that he raises another question, which is popularly supposed to have originated in comparatively modern thought, but which yet appears to have formed a subject of discussion from the day when the theory of a future state of rewards and punishments was first mooted amongst mankind. That a good man should receive some reward for a virtuous life was no doubt an ancient idea; and so long as goodness consisted in the fulfilment of all the duties of a son, a husband, a father, and a good citizen, such a claim to reward would probably remain unchallenged. But when the natural law became amplified and modified by ecclesiastical law, and goodness consisted in a great measure in the performance of rites and ceremonies, alms-giving and penances, which may have possessed a religious meaning but which were certainly devoid of moral significance, the question naturally arose as to the motive which led to the fulfilment of duty; whether such a duty was performed from a sense of right, or from the hope of reward; and whether the motive in one case was more praiseworthy than in the other. This question is raised by Manu, but he does not attempt to discuss it; and indeed such a discussion can scarcely lead to a practical result, inasmuch as it deals with what passes in the minds of other men, of which we can have no consciousness, and of which we can otherwise know nothing, excepting from inferences drawn from our experience of the motives by which we ourselves may have been actuated under like circumstances.[3] Manu simply states

Distinction between natural law and ecclesiastical law.

Manu's distinction between higher and lower motives.

[3] The assumption of inferior motives has been carried to a vicious extent in India, and has done much towards exciting that suspicious feeling with which Hindús at the Presidency capitals but too often regard Europeans in their social capacity. The ostentatious charity, the public subscription lists, and the testa-

what appears to be the bare fact, namely, that whilst the fulfilment of duty for the sake of reward is not a praiseworthy motive, man will not perform any duty, such as sacrifice, religious austerities, or abstinence from sin, excepting in the hope of reward. As a solution of the difficulty, which will reconcile it with the popular idea, Manu enunciates a new dogma. Assuming that the fulfilment of religious duty will be always rewarded to some extent, whatever may be the motive, he says that if a man fulfils his duties without regard to the rewards which follow the fulfilment, he will enjoy the highest happiness in this life and eternal happiness hereafter.

Conception of Brahma and Brahmá.

Before however considering the daily worship enjoined by Manu, it will be advisable to glance at the Hindú conception of the god Brahma, from whom the Bráhmans appear to have derived their name. Here a distinction must be laid down between Brahma, the Supreme Spirit, and Brahmá, the creator of the universe, or creative energy of Brahmá. The god Brahmá is generally represented with four heads, as the divine author or inspirer of the four Vedas; but this representation must be of comparatively recent origin. Manu, who upholds the worship of both Brahma and Brahmá, speaks only of three Vedas.[4] Again, Kullúka explains that in one Kalpa, or previous age, the Vedas proceeded from Fire, Air, and the Sun; and that in another Kalpa they proceeded from Brahmá.[5] Here a glimpse is

mentary endowments which are so common in England, are often ignored, whilst the charitable acts of wealthy Hindús, especially in the construction of tanks, ghats, and resting-places, and the feeding of the poor and afflicted, are but too frequently ascribed to the mere love of fame and applause, rather than charitably attributed to a higher motive of real benevolence towards the human race at large.

[4] Manu, iv. 124.

[5] Kullúka, quoted in Colebrooke's Essay on the Vedas.

obtained of the supersession of Vedic ideas by Brahmanic ideas, of which abundant proofs appear elsewhere. It is however a curious circumstance worthy of note, that notwithstanding the efforts of the Brahmanical compilers of the code of Manu to exalt the monotheistic conception of Brahma as the God of gods, the worship of this deity has never been popular with the people of India, who have ever hankered after their old Vedic personifications. The consequence has been that the Bráhmans have long abandoned the worship of the god from whom they obtained their distinctive name; and it will be seen hereafter that, in the age of Brahmanical revival, they actually set up Vishnu and Siva as superior to Brahma.

Decline of the worship.

With these preliminary observations it will now be necessary to review the daily ritual which is laid down in the Institutes of Manu. It must be remarked in the first instance, that such worship was to be performed every day, and was apparently confined to the three twice-born castes, namely, the Bráhman, the Kshatriya, and the Vaisya. This worship may be considered under two heads, namely, invocations and sacramental rites.

Religious worship of the Bráhmans divisible into invocations and sacramental rites.

The daily invocations laid down in the ritual of Manu, are involved in some obscurity, but on a critical examination will be found to yield results of considerable importance in the history of ancient India. They furnish a significant illustration of the process by which the old Vedic religion was moulded into Brahmanical forms of thought, until the polytheistic worship of the gods of the elements was resolved into the monotheistic worship of Brahma or Brahmá. They comprise certain mystic combina-

Significance of the invocations as forming combinations of Three in One.

tions of Three in One, which however bear no resemblance whatever to the Christian conception of a Trinity. These combinations are four in number, consisting of three suppressions of the breath, three letters, three words, and three measures. Each of these combinations may now be considered separately, as follows:—

1st, The three suppressions of breath with the mind fixed on Brahma.

1st, The three suppressions of the breath, each being equal in time to five short vowels, which are to be made with the mind fixed on Brahma, the Supreme Being. These suppressions are said by Manu to be the highest devotion.

2nd, The word AUM.

2nd, The letters A, U, and M, which form the word Aum, pronounced Om. This word is said by Manu to be the symbol of Brahma, or lord of creatures.

3rd, The Vyáhritis, comprising Earth, Sky, and Heaven.

3rd, The three words—Earth, Sky, and Heaven, or Bhúh, Bhuvar, Swar—which are collectively termed the Vyáhritis.

4th, The Gáyatri.

4th, The three measures included in the sacred verse known as the Gáyatrí, which could only be uttered by the twice-born.[6]

Two questions involved.

The inquiry into the origin of these combinations of Three in One, naturally separates itself into two questions, viz.:—

The "Three."

First, what were the "Three" who were to be combined into "One"?

The "One."

Secondly, who was that "One" into whom the "Three" were resolved?

Conclusions to be proved hereafter.

For the sake of clearness it may be advisable in the first instance to state the conclusions; and then to indicate the data by which those conclusions appear to be proved. The conclusions to be estab-

[6] Manu, ii. 74—84.

lished hereafter are, that the "Three" comprised the deities of the Vedas; and that the "One" referred either to Brahmá, the creator of the universe, or to Brahma, the Supreme Soul.

The "Three" refer to the Vedic deities and the "One" to Brahma.

As regards the three suppressions of breath, which formed as it were the preliminary of the devotions, nothing need be said. Their significance can be gathered from what follows. It will be sufficient to observe that during their performance the mind of the worshipper was to be fixed upon Brahma as the Supreme Soul.

Significance of the three suppressions.

As regards the three letters A, U, and M, little can be gathered, excepting that when brought together into the word Aum they are said by Manu to form a symbol of the Lord of created beings—Brahma. According, however, to the Nirukta, which is an ancient glossary of the Vedas, the syllable Aum (Om) refers to every deity.

Significance of the letters A, U, M.

As regards the three words—Bhúh, Bhuvar, Swar, or Earth, Sky, Heaven—more positive data can be inferred. The respective deities of these three localities were Fire, Air, and the Sun; or Agni, Váyu, and Súrya. These three are among the oldest deities of the Rig-Veda. It also appears from the Nirukta that all the Vedic deities were resolvable into these three—Fire, Air, and the Sun; and it is twice asserted that there are but three gods. Further, it is distinctly stated in the Nirukta, as well as in the Bráhmana, that these three gods were considered as one.[7] From these data it may

Significance of the three words—Earth, Sky, Heaven, as representatives of the Vedic deities.

[7] The references to the Nirukta may be found in the following extract from Colebrooke:—"The deities invoked appear, on a cursory inspection of the Rig-Veda, to be as various as the authors of the prayers addressed to them; but, according to the most ancient annotations on the Indian scripture, those numerous names of persons and things are all resolvable into different titles of three deities,

be inferred that in the Brahmanic age, or in the transition period between the Vedic and Brahmanic age, the Vedic gods were classified under three heads and resolved into their original elements; and that in this manner the Vedic deities, although frequently and separately invoked in a ritual which was essentially a compromise, were stripped of their ancient theological significance, and rendered subordinate to the worship of Brahmá as the creator of the elements, or to the still higher and more spiritual worship of Brahma, or the Supreme Soul.

Significance of the three measures of the Gáyatrí, as indicating the Vedic tendency to worship the Sun as the Supreme Being.

The three measures which form the celebrated text known as the Gáyatrí, throw a still further light upon this Brahmanizing process. The tendency towards monotheism is clearly marked in hymns of the Rig-Veda, which are free from all reference to Brahmanism, and which are the expression of a re-

---

and ultimately of one God. The Nighánti, or glossary of the Vedas, concludes with three lists of names of deities: the first comprising such as are deemed synonymous with fire, the second with air, and the third with the sun. In the last part of the Nirukta, which entirely relates to deities, it is twice asserted that there are but three gods. The further inference, that these intend but one deity, is supported by many passages in the Veda; and is very clearly and concisely stated in the beginning of the index to the Rig-Veda, on the authority of the Nirukta and of the Veda itself:—

"The deities are only three: whose places are, the earth, the intermediate region, and heaven: [namely] fire, air, and the sun. They are pronounced to be the deities of the mysterious names [i.e. bhúh, bhuvar, and swar] severally; and (Prajápati) the lord of creatures is [the deity] of them collectively. The syllable Om intends every deity: it belongs to (Paraméshthi) him who dwells in the supreme abode; it appertains to (Brahma) the vast one; to (Déva) God; to (Adhyátmá) the superintending Soul. Other deities belonging to those several regions are portions of the [three] gods; for they are variously named and described, on account of their different operations; but [in fact] there is only one deity, the Great Soul (Mahán átmá). He is called the sun; for he is the soul of all beings: [and] that is declared by the sage:—'The sun is the soul of that which moves, and of that which is fixed.' Other deities are portions of him: and that is expressly declared by the text:—'The wise call fire, INDRA, MITRA, and VARUNA.'"

"This passage," says Colebrooke, "is partly abridged from the Nirukta, and partly taken from the Bráhmana of the Veda."

ligious faith that appears to have been long anterior to the advent of the Bráhmans. But whilst it can scarcely be asserted that one Deity was specially considered as superior to all the others as the God of gods, it is certain that attributes of a spiritual and divine character were especially awarded to Súrya or the Sun. Indra, indeed, stands prominently forward as the god of the firmament and sovereign of the Devatas; but the Sun seems to have had a higher rank as an ethical conception, for he was the illuminator of the universe and enlightener of men's minds. In the transition period to which attention has been drawn, the Vedic tendency to regard the Sun as a Supreme Being was developed still further in the direction of monotheism by a Brahmanical tendency to identify the Sun with the Supreme Soul, or Brahma. This theological process will be sufficiently apprehended by comparing the primitive text of the Gáyatrí as it appears in the Rig-Veda, with the interpretations of later commentators. A literal translation of the Gáyatrí is thus given by Professor H. H. Wilson:—

Brahmanical identification of the Sun with Brahma.

Literal translation of the Gáyatrí by Professor Wilson.

"We meditate on that desirable light of the Divine Sávitrí (the Sun), who influences our holy rites." [8]

Here the simple meaning appears to be that the worshipper desired to meditate upon the Sun, who caused or enabled him to offer oblations; or, as Wilson remarks, the last words may be rendered "who may animate, or enlighten, our intellects." [9] The later Hindú commentators seem to be agreed in understanding Sávitrí to signify the soul as identical with the Supreme Soul of the universe, or Brahma.[10]

[8] Wilson's Rig-Veda, vol. ii. p. 110. [9] Ib. p. iii., note.

[10] Sáyana considers the passage to admit of two interpretations, namely, the

This interpretation finds full expression in Sir William Jones's paraphrastic translation, which is as follows:—

Paraphrastic translation by Sir William Jones.

"Let us adore the supremacy of that divine sun, the godhead, who illuminates all, re-creates all, from whom all proceed, to whom all must return, whom we invoke to direct our understandings aright in our progress towards his holy seat."

Chain of conceptions involved in the worship of the Sun.

If this paraphrase be analyzed it will be seen to comprise several distinct conceptions. First and foremost is the worship of the Sun as the Supreme Deity; next, the worship of the Sun as the Godhead, or Brahma; and lastly, the worship of the Sun as the illuminator and enlightener of the universe, physically as well as spiritually. Here, again, may be perceived the same current of thought which flows through the combination of the three letters—A, U, and M; the three words—Earth, Sky, and Heaven; and the three suppressions of breath with the mind fixed on Brahma. The Sun may be regarded as the type of all the Vedic deities, who is again resolved into the later conception of Brahma.

Further developed by the combinations of "Three" in "One."

Religious significance of the combinations.

By bringing together the different points in these four combinations the religious significance of the devotional form may be sufficiently apprehended. First of all the worshipper made three suppressions of his breath, which may perhaps be regarded as symbolical of the three classes of spiritual and deified existences, which were comprised in the conception of Brahma as the Supreme Soul. Next follows the mystic "Aum," which apparently comprises all the

light, or "Brahma, constituting the splendour of the Supreme Ruler, or creator of the universe;" or "the light or orb of the splendid sun." Sáyana, *quoted by Colebrooke.* Sáyana's remarks are alone sufficient to indicate the fusion of ideas as regards the Sun and Brahma.

Vedic deities in one word. Then the worshipper utters the mystic words Bhúh, Bhuvar, and Swar, or Earth, Sky, and Heaven; which seem to comprise all the deities who dwell on Earth, Sky, and Heaven, under the three conceptions of Fire, Air, and the Sun. Finally, the Gáyatrí is pronounced, which appears to be an expression of the Vedic idea of the supremacy of the Sun god, moulded by Brahmanical commentators into the monotheistic conception of the Supreme Soul as Brahma.[11]

Daily repetition of the invocations enjoined by Manu.

The frequent repetition of this simple ritual is a point which is strongly insisted upon by Manu.[12] By such frequent repetitions a large amount of religious merit was to be obtained by the twice-born; but should a twice-born man neglect to repeat the Gáyatrí at sunrise and sunset, he was to be degraded to the condition of a Súdra. Two religious questions are involved in this law, which call for a few general remarks, namely:—

Two questions.

First, the religious value of a daily repetition of the same ritual in maintaining and confirming a belief in any particular creed.

Secondly, the relative effect of punishment in the present life, and the threat of punishment hereafter, in the suppression of heresy.

1st, Religious value of a daily ritual.

On the first question it may be remarked that, notwithstanding all that has been urged against the

[11] The following texts in Manu seem to indicate that this moulding of the Vedic worship into a Brahmanical form was the work of Brahma himself:—"Brahma, the Supreme Being, milked out from the three Vedas the three letters A, U, M, which form the monosyllable 'AUM.' He also milked out the three words—'Earth, Sky, and Heaven.' And he likewise milked out the three measures of that ineffable text entitled 'Gáyatrí.' The triliteral syllable 'AUM,' the three words 'Earth, Sky, and Heaven,' and the three measures of the Gáyatrí, must be considered as the mouth, or principal part of the Veda." Manu, ii. 76, 77.

[12] Manu, ii. 84—87.

vain repetition of formal words and prayers by the Hindús, a ritual which is bound up with the routine of daily life and duty can never fail to exercise a powerful influence upon the religious faith of the worshipper. Indeed, it may be asserted that so long as the repetition continues, so long the faith will remain present in the conscience; and that when the repetition is discontinued the faith itself begins to die away. Moreover, it should be borne in mind that whilst a ritual may be purely formal, it is not necessarily cold and lifeless. Day by day the utterances are the same, but if they are associated with the more impressive phases of human life, with times of danger and sorrow as well as with the day of prosperity and rejoicing, with the pains of sickness and the horrors of death, with the celebration of marriage rites and the birth of a first-born son, such a ritual will ever stir the heart with religious emotions.

2nd, Relative effect of present and future punishment in the suppression of heresy.

The relative effect of punishment in the present life, and of the threat of punishment in the life hereafter, is a question of great importance in the history of religious development. But in India it assumes even larger proportions, because it must be considered in connection with the mighty engine of oppression which is involved in the institution of caste. Fear of punishment hereafter can obviously exercise but little effect upon a heretic, who disbelieves in the sinfulness of heresy, or in the existence of a future state of rewards and punishments. Hence religious lawgivers in general have enacted temporal punishments for those who refuse to observe the established rites and ordinances. But neither imprisonment, nor exile, nor dragooning,

nor even the stake, will exercise such a powerful effect upon the imagination as a caste degradation, which is remorseless in its results, and which may be visited upon the children through countless generations. The terrible significance of every law of Manu upon this point may thus be generally apprehended; and especially the force of that injunction which ordains that he, who neglects to repeat the Gáyatrí at sunrise and at sunset, will be precluded like a Súdrá from any participation in the rites of the twice-born.[13]

Five daily sacramental rites enjoined by Manu.

The daily sacramental rites prescribed in the Brahmanical code are five in number, and are connected with the worship of five orders of beings, namely:—

Rishis.

1st, The Rishis, or Vedic bards, who were propitiated by the daily study of the Veda.

Pitris.

2nd, The Pitris, or departed ancestors, who were propitiated by the daily offering of cakes and water.

Devatas.

3rd, The Devatas, or Vedic gods, who were propitiated by daily oblations of ghee.

Spirits.

4th, The Spirits, or ghosts, who were propitiated by daily offerings of rice.

Guests.

5th, The Guests, or mortal men, who were propitiated by the exercise of a suitable hospitality.

Anomalous Brahmanical basis.

These simple rites may have originated in Vedic times, but they are placed by Manu upon a Brahmanical basis of a somewhat anomalous character; namely, the dogma that they were to be performed in expiation of the unconscious slaughter of small living creatures at five domestic slaughter-houses,

[13] Manu, ii. 103.

namely, the kitchen hearth, the grindstone, the broom, the pestle and mortar, and the water-pot.[14] It will however be remarked that there seems no possible connection or association between the places in question and the beings propitiated; between such utensils as the grindstone and broom on the one hand, and such deities as the Pitris and Devatas on the other.

1st, Reading the Veda to propitiate the Rishis.

The so-called sacramental rite of the Rishis consists in the daily reading of the Veda. The ceremonial to be observed and which is still observed in connection with this study, is well worthy of consideration, inasmuch as it exhibits the extraordinary efforts which were made by the Bráhmans to enforce a profound reverence for the sacred books, and to subject the mind of the student to an implicit and unquestioning faith in their divine inspiration. The Veda was never to be read by any one but a Bráhman. It was never to be read in the presence of a Súdra, or at any time when the attention was likely to be distracted from the sacred duty.[15] The preparations to be made by a Bráhman student, before reading the Veda in the

Preparatory ceremonial.

[14] Manu, iii. 68—81.

[15] The Bráhman householder must never read the Veda without pronouncing well the accents and the letters; nor must he ever read it in the presence of Súdras; and should he have begun to read it in the last watch of the night, he must not go to sleep again afterwards, even though fatigued. A reader of the Veda, and a teacher of it to his pupils, must always avoid the reading of it on the following times, namely, when dust is collected by the wind, when the rains are falling, when lightning flashes and thunder rolls, when a preternatural sound is heard from the sky, when there is an earthquake, when there is an eclipse of one of the heavenly bodies, when an offensive smell prevails, when a corpse is being carried past, when the sound of weeping is heard, or when a son is born to the Raja. Again, a Bráhman must not read the Veda whilst the perfumes of an entertainment remain upon him; nor whilst he is lolling on a couch; nor whilst his feet are raised on a bench; nor shortly after he has swallowed meat, or the food given at the birth or death of a relative; nor whilst he is seated on horseback, or on a tree, an elephant, a boat, an ass, a camel, or a carriage. Manu, iv. 99 *et seq.*

presence of a priestly preceptor, were of a very solemn character. The student first purified himself with water, according to an elaborate ritual, which treated different parts of the hand as pure or impure. He next put on a clean cloth, in order that the reading might be conducted with decency as well as with purity. Next he consecrated his hands, as it were, by rubbing them with the stalks of the holy kusa grass. Then he composed all his members, and took his seat upon stalks of kusa grass having their points turned towards the east. Finally he joined his hands together in token of worshipping the Veda; and in this posture he awaited the command of his preceptor. When that command was given, the student was to clasp the feet of his preceptor in token of reverence, and then make the three suppressions of breath, and pronounce the sacred monosyllable AUM. It was only after these preliminaries that the student was allowed to commence the reading of the allotted portion. When the lesson was over, and the preceptor ordered him to take rest, the student again performed the ceremony of clasping the feet of his master, making three suppressions of his breath, and pronouncing the tri-literal syllable Aum. Instructions which are imparted in this solemn manner, and which are still followed, can scarcely fail to be received as the mysterious teachings of the Supreme Being; whilst not a doubt is felt as regards the interpretation of the Veda which is furnished by the preceptor. The Veda is the expression of deity; the interpretation is the expression of infallible tradition.

Effect of the ceremonial on the student.

This teaching of the Veda, as already indicated, was exclusively confined to twice-born youths;

Right of interpretation of the Veda claimed by the Brâhmans;

and only to those twice-born youths who were considered worthy of receiving such instruction. These restrictions sufficiently manifest the care and jealousy with which the ancient scriptures were regarded, and the great stress which was laid upon the interpretation and right understanding of those scriptures. Such jealous care will always be exhibited in that stage of religious development in which a new belief and ritual, like Brahmanism, has been superadded to an ancient faith and ceremonial, like that of the Rig-Veda. It is associated with a claim to an exclusive right of interpretation; a right which has been held by the Bráhmans since the first establishment of their ascendancy, with the persistent object of interpreting the Vedas by the light of Brahmanical ideas. Such a right naturally ceases to exist when the scriptures are allowed to be indiscriminately read by the masses of the laity; and when an appeal can thus be made to the authority of those scriptures against the authority of traditional interpretation. But such an exclusive right to read and interpret the ancient scripture is naturally retained and guarded with jealous care by every true Bráhman; inasmuch as it is absolutely essential for the promulgation of Brahmanical dogmas, which are theoretically based upon the authority of the Vedas, but which yet find no expression in the earlier hymns and traditions.

essential for the promulgation of Brahmanism.

The mode by which the Brahmanizing process has been carried on has already been illustrated in the foregoing versions of the Mahá Bhárata and Rámáyana. It should however be remarked that this process has not been the work of a single

Mode of interpretation.

generation, or a single century. For many ages the Hindú mind appears to have been gradually abandoning the ideas and institutions of the Vedic period, and to have been gravitating nearer and nearer towards pure Brahmanism. Thus many practices which were tolerated by Manu, have been discountenanced by later Pundits, under the plea that they belonged to the three early Yugas of the world, and are not permissible in the present age of Kali. By this arbitrary ruling many social and religious usages, which had been sanctioned by antiquity, and appear to have been practised by the ancient Kshatriyas, have been denounced as being contrary to the laws which prevail in the age of Kali. Among these may be mentioned the sacrifice of a bull, a horse, or a man; the appointment of a man to become the father of a son by the widow of a deceased brother or kinsman; the use of spirituous liquors; the slaughter of cattle at the entertainment of a guest; and the use of flesh meat at the celebrated feasts of the dead, which are still performed under the name of Sráddhas.

Manu's canon for reconciling conflicting texts.

This right of interpretation is further illustrated by a curious dogma which is laid down in the code of Manu for the reconciliation of conflicting texts. "Whenever," says the code, "there are texts which appear to be inconsistent with each other, they are all to be accepted as law. Thus there are three different texts in the Veda; one ordering that sacrifice should be offered when the sun was rising; a second ordering that sacrifice should be offered after the sun had risen; and a third ordering that the sacrifice should be performed when neither sun nor stars can

be seen. From these texts it may be inferred that sacrifice may be performed at any or at all those times."[16]

2nd, Offerings of food to propitiate the Pitris.

The sacramental rite of the Pitris consisted in the daily offering of food, such as boiled rice, fruits, roots, milk, and water to the Pitris, or ghosts of departed ancestors. This was known as a daily Sráddha. It appears to have been an old Vedic rite, as the Pitris are invoked on more than one occasion in the hymns of the Rig-Veda.[17] It seems to have been practised by the people in honour of their ancient forefathers, who, like the gods, were supposed to be gratified by the offering of food. It will be seen hereafter that a great monthly Sráddha was also ordained for the more immediate ancestors according to a more elaborate and significant ritual; whilst a special Sráddha was performed on the death of a kinsman, and even formed a part of the marriage ceremony.[18]

[16] Manu, ii. 15.

[17] "May the Pitris, who are easily to be praised, protect us." Rig-Veda, Mand. VII. Hymn 106, v. 12.

[18] Manu, iii. 82.—The Pitris are here included in the sacramental rite of the Spirits, although a separate rite was to be celebrated daily in honour of the latter. Manu also discusses elsewhere the question of who and what the Pitris were; but the texts appear to be purely mythical, and devoid of all historical significance. For the convenience of reference they are given below.

"The Pitris, or great progenitors, are free from wrath, intent on purity, ever exempt from sensual passions, endued with exalted qualities; they are primeval divinities, who have laid arms aside. Hear now completely, from whom they sprang; who they are; and by what ceremonies they are to be honoured. The sons of Maríchi and of all the other Rishis, who were the offspring of Manu, son of Brahmá, are called the companies of Pitris, or forefathers. The Sómasads, who sprang from Viráj, are declared to be the ancestors of the Sádhyas; and the Agnishwáttas, who are famed among created beings as the children of Maríchi, to be the progenitors of the Devas. Of the Daityas, the Dánavas, the Yakshas, the Gandharvas, the Uragas or Serpents, the Rákshasas, the Garudas, and the Kinnaras, the ancestors are Barhishads descended from Atri. Of Bráhmans, those named Somapas; of Kshatriyas, the Havishmats; of Vaisyas, those called Ájyapas; of Súdras, the Sakálins. The Sómapas descended from Me, Bhrigu; the Havishmats, from Angiras; the Ájyapas, from Pulastya; the Sukálins, from Vasishtha.

The sacramental rite of the gods, or Devatas, consisted in pouring oblations of ghee upon the domestic fire in honour of the Vedic deities in the following order:—

3rd, Oblations of ghee to propitiate the Devatas.

1st, To Agni, god of fire.

2nd, To Soma, the moon-god.

3rd, To Agni and Soma both together.

4th, To Kuhú, goddess of the day, when the moon is in the first and second quarters.

5th, To Anumatí, goddess of the day, when the moon is in the third and fourth quarters.

6th, Prajápati, or the lord of creatures.

7th, To Dyává and Prithiví, goddess of sky and earth.

8th, To the fire of the good sacrifice.

9th, To the gods of the four quarters; Indra, Yama, Varuna, and Soma.[19]

Character of the worship of the Vedic deities as enjoined by Manu.

The foregoing deities are all ancient and obscure, and although worshipped as a matter of form, have apparently passed out of the Hindú sphere of religious thought. The last oblation, namely, that to the gods of the four quarters, sufficiently betrays the change in the religious belief. In times primeval the Vedic Aryans had worshipped Indra, Yama, Varuna, and Soma, as great and independent deities, invested with divine attributes. Indra was the god of the firmament, who smote the rain cloud and

Changes in the religion between the Vedic period and Brahmanic period.

Those who are, and those who are not, consumable by fire, called Agnidagdhas, and Anagnidagdhas, the Kavyas, the Barhishads, the Agnishwáttas, and the Saumyas, let mankind consider as the chief progenitors of Bráhmans. Of those just enumerated, who are generally reported the principal tribes of Pitris, the sons and grandsons, indefinitely, are also in this world considered as great progenitors. From the Rishis come the Pitris, or patriarchs; from the Pitris, both Devas and Dánavas; from the Devas, this whole world of animals and vegetables in due order." Manu, iii. 192—201.

[19] Manu, iii. 84—87.

brought down the waters. Yama was the god of death, or rather the judge of the dead, whose existence betrays a vague belief in the future state of the soul after death which prevailed in Vedic times. Varuna was the deity of waters, but was sometimes addressed in the language of elevated devotion. Soma is more obscure, but is generally identified with the moon. Manu however represents these deities as the four guardians of the four quarters of the earth; and appears to denude them of all the moral and religious significance with which the first three are certainly invested in the hymns of the Rig-Veda.

4th, Offerings of boiled rice to propitiate Spirits or Ghosts.

The sacramental rite of Spirits consisted in offerings to all living creatures, Spirits included; and appears to have originated in that belief in ghosts, which belongs to an early stage in religious development. After the rice had been cooked, every twice-born householder was to offer it to all living things according to the following ritual:—

1st, He was to throw boiled rice near his door, saying:—"I salute you, O Maruts [*i. e.* the winds.]"

2nd, He was to throw boiled rice into water, saying:—"I salute you, O water gods."

3rd, He was to throw boiled rice on his pestle and mortar, saying:—"I salute you, O gods of large trees."

After this he was to throw boiled rice near his pillow to Srí [Lakshmí], the goddess of abundance; at the foot of his bed to the propitious goddess Bhadra-Káli; in the middle of his house to Brahmá and his household god; and up in the air to all the assembled gods; by day to the Spirits who walk in light, and by night to those who walk in darkness.

He was then to throw his offering for all creatures in the building on his house top, or behind his back; and what remained he was to give to the Pitris with his face turned towards the south.[20]

Origin and character of a belief in spirits.

The foregoing ordinances contain some curious illustrations of that belief in ghosts and spirits which belongs more or less to every age of which any record has been preserved. A consideration of the phenomena of life entering the infant in the womb, and leaving the body in the event of sickness, violence, or old age; and a consideration of the same phenomena as regards the vegetable kingdom; seem to have led to the conception of a spiritual existence as something apart from material existence. Thus the spirit of a man was supposed to have departed when the body had expired, and the spirit of a tree was supposed to ebb away with a sigh when the tree itself was cut down. This belief was not necessarily confined to beings endowed with animal or vegetable life, but was more or less extended to inanimate things, such as stones, houses, weapons, utensils, springs, groves, mountains, and rivers; and in some cases it was extended to more complex conceptions, such as the village, the city, or the caste. Out of this primitive faith sprang the belief in a separate and spiritual existence of a ghost after the death of the body, which subsequently became modified by the doctrine of the transmigration of the soul into other bodies after death, as well as by the theory of a future state of rewards and punishments.

Popular belief in spirits amongst the Hindús.

The shape in which the conception of ghosts presented itself to the orthodox Hindús in the time of Manu, may be readily inferred from the ritual laid

[20] Manu, iii. 88—91.

down in the code. It will be seen that the worshipper was directed in the first instance to throw boiled rice to the winds, or Maruts, to the water gods, and the gods of large trees. These deities are Vedic, and their worship is eminently fetische. It will moreover be seen that the worship of Indra is ignored, excepting as one of the gods of the four quarters; whilst the worship of the Maruts, which in Vedic times was already opposed to that of Indra, finds prominent expression. Next follows the propitiation of the goddess Lakshmí, who is the wife of Vishnu; the goddess Bhadra-Kálí, who is generally identified with Durgá, the wife of Siva; and the god Brahmá, and other deities. Here it should be remarked that neither of the three deities specified,—Lakshmí, Kalí, or Brahmá—appear to have been regarded as national Hindú deities until a comparatively late period in the history of India; and there is scarcely any allusion made in the code to the important deities, Vishnu and Siva, who are popularly regarded as the husbands of Lakshmí and Durgá. How far they may have been worshipped as local or family deities prior to this Brahmanic period is of course open to question. Indeed Brahma, as the god of the Bráhmans, may have been worshipped by the Bráhmans from a very early date; and Lakshmí, as the goddess of abundance, and Bhadra-Kálí, as an old domestic deity, may have been propitiated for ages before they were converted into Brahmanical deities, and associated in the age of Brahmanical revival with the worship of Vishnu and Siva, and incorporated in the national system of mythology. But neither Lakshmí nor Bhadra-Kálí appear as objects of worship in the hymns of the

Rig-Veda;[21] whilst the references to Brahma are very obscure, and chiefly connected with an attempted identification of that deity with Indra or Agni.

Significant indication in the ritual of the unpopularity of the worship of Brahma.

There is one point in the foregoing ritual which betrays extraordinary acuteness on the part of the compilers of the code. Throughout the Institutes of Manu, the exaltation of the god Brahma above the gods of the Vedic Aryans is never neglected; and yet in the daily ritual the worship of the Devatas is enforced, and the worship of Brahma resolves itself into the simple rite of throwing boiled rice into the middle of the house. From this circumstance it is easy to infer that the worship of Brahma was as unpopular amongst the masses in the age of Manu, as it is amongst the Hindús in the present day; and that the compilers of the code accordingly accommodated the national ritual to the national taste, which still hankered after the worship of the gods of their Vedas, in preference to the new deity which had been introduced by the Bráhmans.

Propitiation of Ghosts.

The propitiation of the gods of the air, and of the spirits that walk by day and of those that walk by night, is more immediately connected with a belief in ghosts, and a fear of them as destructive agencies. A conception of ghosts, and especially of the ghosts of enemies, naturally gives rise to a dread of mysterious evil and secret mischief; and this dread increases, and serves to confirm the original belief, whenever any accident or disease befalls the

[21] The introduction of the worship of Káli in the daily ritual of the Bráhmans, is involved in some obscurity, which may be cleared up hereafter in treating of the worship of Siva, which involves some peculiar ideas connected with ghosts and corpses.

cattle, the harvest, or the household. Thus the old idea of propitiation by means of food finds expression in the daily ritual; and boiled rice is distributed as food to ghosts in general, to the ghosts of enemies as well as to those of friends.

5th, Hospitalities in propitiation of mortal guests.

The sacramental rite of men is simply an ordinance imparting a religious meaning to the ordinary duties of hospitality, especially in the event of the guests being Bráhmans, and above all being learned Bráhmans. Indeed whilst the code duly enjoins hospitality to guests, it significantly declares that oblations which are presented to ignorant Bráhmans are mere ashes. On the other hand, when oblations are offered in the fire of a sacerdotal mouth, which richly blazes with true knowledge and piety, they will release the giver from distress, and even from deadly sin.[22]

Review of the five sacramental rites.

In reviewing the foregoing sacramental rites, it is curious to observe how closely they are mixed up amongst the Hindús with such ordinary actions of life as the daily meals. Amongst western communities the custom prevails of praying to the Supreme Being for a blessing upon food which is about to be eaten, and to return thanks after a meal for the food which has been provided. But according to the Hindú idea, a portion of the food is absolutely desired by the deity or deities, as well as by anomalous beings who are supposed to exercise an influence over the well-being of man. Thus every householder was required, before partaking of food, to propitiate the Rishis, Pitris, Devatas, Spirits, and Guests with offerings of portions of the very provisions which

Curious association of religious worship with the daily meals.

[22] Manu, iii. 94—118.

had been prepared for himself and his family; and it is emphatically declared that he who partakes of food which has been dressed for himself only, and which has not been previously presented to the beings in question, eats in reality nothing but sin.[23]

[23] Manu, iii. 118.

CHAPTER VIII.

EIGHT FORMS OF MARRIAGE.

Marriage laws in Manu.

THE laws and precepts which are to be found in the Brahmanical code respecting marriage, may be divided into two classes, namely :—

1st, Eight forms of marriage.

1st,—Those which refer to eight traditional forms of marriage, some of which are approved whilst others are condemned. The traditions respecting these eight forms of marriage are of considerable historical importance, inasmuch as they apparently belong to different communities, or to different stages in the civilization of the people.

2nd, Miscellaneous precepts.

2nd,—Those which refer to married life generally, and which compare a multiplicity of details respecting the age at which a man ought to marry, the family from whom he ought to select a wife, the kind of damsel to be selected, the treatment of women, the laws respecting adultery and divorce, and a variety of minute directions for the guidance of husbands and wives.

Historical significance of the eight forms.

The laws and precepts belonging to this second class will be dealt with hereafter, in connection with the social condition of the Hindús.[1] The present

[1] The laws respecting the age at which a man ought to marry, and the wife which should be selected, will be found in Chapter XI. on the four Orders, in connection with the life of a householder. The laws respecting the condition of

chapter will be devoted to a consideration of the eight forms of marriage described in Manu, with the view of eliciting such historical results as appear to underlie the several traditions.

Vedic conception of marriage as expressed in the two Epics.

Before however indicating these eight forms of marriage rites, it may be as well to consider the ideas of marriage which prevailed in the Vedic period. It has already been stated that events which lie half hidden in the undergrowth of later Epic legends seem to belong to the Vedic age, although the composition of the poems undoubtedly belongs to the Brahmanic age. Accordingly it may now be advisable to ascertain what further evidence can be adduced in confirmation of this hypothesis, by comparing the marriage customs which appear in the Epic legends, with those which find expression in the hymns of the Rig-Veda. When this has been done it may be useful to bring the results to bear upon the eight forms of marriage rites which are described in the Institutes of Manu.

Marriages in a peaceful community, appertaining to Rishis or Bráhmans.

The marriage customs which are to be found in the Epics seem to refer to two different classes of the community, namely, a peaceful class and a warrior class. The marriages which prevailed amongst the peaceful class may perhaps be exemplified by the union between Yayáti and Devayání, which appears to have involved the idea of one wife married to one man. The marriages of Bráhmans may belong to the same class; although it is impossible to say whether they referred to the Rishis of the Vedic age, or to the Bráhmans of the Brahmanic age. The marriages of the warlike community, who may be

Marriages in a warlike community appertaining to Kshatriyas.

Hindú women will be found in Chapter XII., which is especially devoted to that subject.

HISTORY OF INDIA. PART V.

identified with the Kshatriyas, were altogether of a different character, and involved the conceptions of polyandry and polygamy, the Swayamvara, and the rites subsequently known as Gandharva and Rákshasa.

Polyandry in the Epics.

The system of polyandry is exemplified in the Mahá Bhárata by the marriage of Draupadí with the five sons of Pándu; and in the Rámáyana by the charge brought against Ráma and Lakshmana by Virádha.[2] The attempt to Brahmanize the former tradition, by representing it as a sacred and exceptional mystery, has already been discussed in the previous volume.[3] But a trace of this extraordinary custom is also to be found in a hymn of the Rig-Veda, which is addressed to the two Aswins:—"Aswins, your admirable (horses) bore the car which you had harnessed, (first) to the goal, for the sake of honour; and the damsel who was the prize came through affection to you, and acknowledged your (husbandship), saying, 'You are (my) lords.'"[4] Strangely enough this verse exhibits the custom of polyandry under similar circumstances to those under which it appears in the Swayamvara of Draupadí. According to the Epic legend, Draupadí was the prize of the archery match, and was won by Arjuna. In the Vedic hymn however the damsel was apparently the prize of a chariot race, and was won by the two Aswins. The Aryan origin of this custom is thus placed beyond a doubt. Had it not existed amongst the Vedic Aryans, it would have been as impossible for a Vedic bard to dwell upon the recognized marriage of one

Polyandry in the hymns of the Rig-Veda.

[2] See *ante*, p. 241. [3] See *ante*, Vol. I. Part ii. chap. 4.
[4] Rig-Veda, Mand I. Hymn 119, v. 5.

damsel to two living brothers, as for a European bard of our own time to select such a topic as a subject for a modern poem.

Polygamy in the Epics.

The system of polygamy finds a much larger expression in the Epic legends, as might have been expected in an era of conquest. Thus Vichitra-vírya and Pándu were each married to two wives; and Pándu is said to have obtained his second wife by purchase.[5] Dasaratha again had three wives;[6] and many other instances might be quoted from later traditions. Traces of polygamy are also to be found in the hymns of the Rig-Veda. Raja Swanaya on the banks of the river Indus, gave his ten daughters in marriage to a young Rishi named Kakshívat; and in return was duly praised in a Vedic hymn composed by his enthusiastic son-in-law.[7] In another hymn there is an allusion to the husband of many maidens.[8] Indeed, whilst an exceptional system like that of polyandry could only have originated from strong necessity, that of polygamy belongs to an age of half-barbarous sensuality, when self-indulgence was considered as the highest good.

Polygamy in the hymns of the Rig-Veda.

The Swayamvara in the Epics.

The institution known as the Swayamvara, or self-choice, was however without doubt the most popular of all the forms of marriage which prevailed amongst the Vedic Aryans. It belongs to an age of Hindú chivalry, when a high-spirited and gallant race might be supposed to yearn for the love of women, as a sentiment higher and nobler than that of mere desire. The legend of the marriage of the Aswins seems to associate the Swayamvara with

[5] See Vol. I. p. 53, 64, 66. [6] See *ante*, p. 11.

[7] Wilson's Rig-Veda, vol. ii. p. 14 *et seq.*

[8] Rig-Veda, Mand I. Hymn 116, v. 10.

polyandry; and later Puránic legends associate it with polygamy. It however finds a beautiful and attractive expression in that exquisite picture of a wife's devotion, which is presented in the story of Nala and Damayantí; and there it is found in connection with the true conception of marriage in the permanent union of one woman and one man.[9] The Swayamvara emphatically belongs to the old Vedic period, for it is distinctly recognized in the hymns of the Rig-Veda; not only in the verse already quoted, which intimates that the Aswins won a bride at a chariot-race; but in another hymn, where there is an allusion to a bride who was won at a Swayamvara by the youthful Vimada.[10] It will however be seen hereafter that there is no allusion whatever to the institution in the code of Manu.

The Swayamvara in the hymns of the Rig-Veda.

No allusion to the Swayamvara in Manu.

Gandharva and Rákshasa forms of marriage.

The Gandharva and Rákshasa nuptials belonged to the old lawless times, and were in reality no marriages at all. The Gandharva form was simply a union prompted by mutual desire, and consummated without any preliminary ceremonies; and in this manner Dushyanta met Sakuntalá in the jungle, where the amorous pair followed the old Idyllic fashion, which ultimately led to the birth of the

[9] See Vol. I. Part iii. chap. 2.

[10] Rig-Veda, Mand I. Hymn 116, v. 1. Professor H. H. Wilson explains in a note upon the passage, that the story is told by the scholiast, that Vimada having won his bride at a Swayamvara, was stopped on his way home by his unsuccessful competitors, when the Aswins came to his succour, and placed the bride in their chariot, repulsed the assailants, and carried the damsel to the residence of the husband. Wilson's Rig-Veda, vol. ii. p. 306.

From other allusions in the hymns it would appear that Vimada was a Rishi, and that the father of the bride was a Raja. This seems to confirm the theory already indicated, that many of the Rishis, if not all of them, were Kshatriyas. The idea of a Bráhman contending at a Swayamvara, was regarded by the old Kshatriyas as an arrogant proceeding (see *ante*, Vol. I. Part ii. chap. 4). It is somewhat singular that these allusions to the Swayamvara and polyandry should be associated with the obscure worship of the Aswins.

famous hero Bhárata, the ancestor of the lunar race.[11] The Rákshasa form on the other hand consisted in the seizure of a damsel by force, after the conquest of her kinsmen; and in this manner Bhíshma carried off the three daughters of the Raja of Kásí.[12] According to the old Kshatriya law, a wife even was compelled to submit to the desires of the conqueror of her husband; but then conquest was a necessary preliminary, and it was considered contrary to all rule for a man surreptitiously to carry off the wife of another, without having first fought her husband. Thus it was that Dhaumya protested against the outrage committed upon Draupadí by Jayadratha; and that Sítá in like manner protested against the cowardice of Rávana.[13] These Gandharva and Rákshasa marriages originated in the Vedic period, and were contrary to Brahmanical law. It will indeed be seen hereafter that such unions were tolerated in the code of Manu, but they were permitted to the Kshatriyas alone; but even this toleration to the Kshatriyas is accompanied by expressions which sufficiently indicate a grave disapproval.[14]

Kshatriya law as regards Rákshasa marriages.

Gandharva and Rákshasa marriages restricted by Manu to the Kshatriyas.

The eight forms of marriage described by Manu may now be described in the following order.

Manu's description of the eight nuptials.

1st, The Brahmá marriage, in which a father invited a man versed in the Vedas, and of a good character; and then gave him his daughter, after clothing both of them, and entertaining them, and honouring them with ornaments. This is the ceremony of the Bráhmans.

1. Brahma.

2nd, The Daiva marriage, in which a father

2. Daiva.

[11] See Vol. I. Part ii. chap. i.

[12] Ibid.

[13] See Vol. I. Part ii. chap. viii.; also *ante*, Part iv. chap. xvii.

[14] Manu, iii. 26.

decks his daughter with ornaments, and then gives her to the priest officiating at a properly conducted sacrifice. This is the ceremony of the Devatas.

3. Arsha. 3rd, The Arsha marriage, in which a father receives from a bridegroom one pair of kine (a bull and a cow), or two pairs, for religious purposes, and then gives away his daughter in due form. This is the ceremony of the Rishis.

4. Prajápayta. 4th, The Prajápatya marriage, in which a father gives away his daughter to the bridegroom with due honour, after distinctly uttering this injunction:—"May both of you perform together your civil and religious duties." This is the ceremony of the Prajapatis.

5. Asura. 5th, The Asura mode, in which the bridegroom gives as much wealth as he can afford to the damsel and her kinsmen, and then takes her according to his own pleasure.

6. Gandharva. 6th, The Gandharva mode, in which a youth and damsel are led by mutual desire to form a connection.

7. Rákshasa. 7th, The Rákshasa mode, in which a warrior seizes a maiden by force, and carries her from her home, while she weeps and calls for assistance, and after slaying or wounding her kinsmen.

8. Paisácha. 8th, The Paisácha mode, in which the lover secretly embraces a damsel while she sleeps, or is intoxicated, or disordered in her mind. This is the basest and most wicked of all.[15]

Four valid and four invalid marriages. The foregoing description of the eight forms of marriage must be now subjected to a critical examination. In the first instance there are two points for consideration:—

[15] Manu, iii. 20 *et seq.*

1st, The four marriages which are first on the list, and which are permissible to all the four castes.

2nd, The four marriages which are last upon the list, and of which the validity is more or less impugned.[16]

The four valid marriages ascribed to four different communities.

As regards the four valid marriages, it will be seen that they differ in name, whilst the language implies that they respectively belonged to four different communities; and by comparing the four names with the characteristics of each form, some valuable inferences may be drawn. The distinction between each of the four may be thus exhibited:—

Bráhmans.

1st, Bráhmans;—the gift of a daughter to a man learned in the Veda.

Vedic Aryans.

2nd, Devatas or Vedic Aryans;—the gift of a daughter to a sacrificing priest.

Rishis.

3rd, Rishis or Vedic bards;—the gift of a daughter in return for a pair or two of kine.

Prajápatis.

4th, Prajápatis;—the gift of a daughter to a bridegroom in order that the pair might perform together their civil and religious duties.

Apparent confusion from the arbitrary distinction between the Devatas, Rishis, and Prajápatis.

Here the distinction which has already been drawn between the Rishis and the Bráhmans appears to be involved in some confusion by the introduction of Devatas and Prajápatis as separate classes. But this confusion can be to some extent cleared up. The Bráhman mode of giving a daughter to a student in the Veda, was no doubt the predominant idea of marriage in the Brahmanic age which is depicted in the code. It moreover applied to all the twice-born castes, as all were to be instructed in the Veda. This conception of marriage

Bráhmau form referred to the Brahmanic age.

[16] Manu, iii. 39—42.

HISTORY OF INDIA. PART V.

may therefore be accepted as historical. The mode however which is said to have prevailed amongst the Devatas, or Vedic Aryans, of giving a daughter to the sacrificing priest, is apparently mythical. The age of sacrifice was passing away. Flesh sacrifices are scarcely tolerated in the code, and were certainly opposed to Brahmanism. Still the traditions that the Vedic Aryans offered such sacrifices were treasured up by the masses. Hence, if it was ruled that the form sanctioned by the Bráhmans was the gift of a daughter to a student in the Vedas, it was easy to arrive at the mythical idea that the form sanctioned amongst the Devatas was the gift of a daughter to a sacrificing priest. But whilst one idea is in accordance with human nature, the other is repugnant to it. To marry a daughter to a young Vedic scholar is natural and not unpleasing; but to marry a daughter to a man who has just been acting in the capacity of a butcher or a cook, even though it has been in the service of the gods, is opposed to the instincts of human nature. Moreover the latter idea is opposed to the traditions of the Vedic Aryans, who regarded such hired priests as mere mercenaries unworthy of forming an alliance with the daughter of Kshatriya, although in the old Vedic foretime a Raja might have given his daughter in marriage to a Vedic bard. In one direction however the apparently mythical idea of giving a daughter to a sacrificing priest may have had a historical basis. In the old Vedic period the priest and the head of a household were identical. The idea therefore of giving a daughter in marriage to a priest, may have merely involved the idea of giving her in marriage to the head of a household.

Mythical character of the Daiva mode.

Repugnant to human nature and Kshatriya tradition.

The tradition as regards the third form of permissible nuptials, namely, that the mode amongst the Rishis was to give a daughter to a bridegroom in exchange for a pair or two of kine, is no doubt historical; and it probably prevailed more or less amongst all the Vedic Aryans, as it does even in the present day among many primitive tribes in India. It furnishes moreover a further proof of the distinction between the Rishis, or Vedic bards, and the Bráhmans as priests and worshippers of Brahma, which has been laid down in a previous chapter. It may be added in the present place, that the names of many celebrated Rishis are affixed to the Vedic hymns which they respectively composed;[17]

Rishi mode referred to the old Vedic period.

Further proof of the radical distinction between Rishis and Bráhmans.

[17] Amongst the authors of the hymns of the Rig-Veda are to be found the time-honoured names of Kanwa, Parásara, Gotama, Kasyapa, Agastya, Viswámitra, Vámadeva, Atri, Bharadwája, and Vasishtha. These Rishis have for ages been regarded as Bráhmans, and their exaltation would naturally tend to the glorification of the Bráhmans as a caste. Accordingly their names are to be frequently found in the Brahmanical versions of the Mahá Bhárata and Rámáyana, but always under suspicious circumstances arising from being associated with supernatural details, or with palpable anachronisms. Kanwa was the putative father of Sakuntalá, the mother of Raja Bhárata, whose son Hastin founded the city of Hastinápur. Parásara was the holy sage who is said to have created a mist by the power of his religious austerities, in order that he might gratify his passion for a fish-girl, by whom he became the father of Vyása. Gotama was the sage whose connubial felicity was disturbed by Indra, and who subsequently pronounced a curse, by which his wife was turned to stone, and her seducer was covered with a thousand eyes. Kasyapa was the mythical progenitor of the Sun, and consequently the forefather of the Solar race at Ayodhyá. Agastya gave mythical weapons to the divine hero of the Rámáyana, drank up the sea with all its crocodiles and big fishes, and prevented the Vindhya mountain from attaining a greater altitude. In the Mahá Bhárata Viswámitra is represented as the real father of Sakuntalá by a celestial nymph; and he re-appears in the Rámáyana for the purpose of telling a number of absurd stories to Ráma, and bringing about the marriage of Ráma and Sítá. Vámadeva was the Minister of Dasaratha, but has very little to do in the action of the poem of the Rámáyana. Atri is the mythical progenitor of the Moon, and consequently the ancestor of the Lunar race of Bhárata; but yet he lived to entertain Ráma and Sítá at his hermitage in the neighbourhood of Chitra-kúta. Bharadwája was the mythical father of Drona, the preceptor of the Pándavas and Kauravas; and the equally mythical entertainer of the army of Bhárata at Prayága, or Allahabad. Vasishtha again is said to have been the preceptor of Dasaratha, and takes a prominent part in the minor action of the Rámáyana. These details

and that they could scarcely have been Bráhmans, because their hymns are in no way connected with the worship of the god Brahma. On the contrary, if any stress may be laid upon the general references in the Rig-Veda to the Rishis as a collective body, it would appear that the Rishis stand prominently forward as the worshippers of those Vedic deities who were the least in favour with the Bráhmans.[18]

Further consideration of the distinction between the marriage rite of the Rishis and that of the Bráhmans.

Here it may be as well to take into further consideration the distinction which Manu draws between the marriage rite of the Rishis and that of the Bráhmans. The former appears to be the most ancient, as it certainly was the most primitive; and moreover was devoid of any religious meaning such as clearly appertains to the other three approved marriages. No religious qualification was required in the bridegroom, and the young man simply obtained a damsel by presenting her father with a pair or two of kine; a practice so foreign to the civilization which appears to have prevailed in the time of Manu, that the Hindú lawgiver is compelled to defend it by urging that such a gift of kine to the father of the bride was not a purchase.[19] The cere-

have already been brought forward to prove that the association of the individuals in question with the main traditions in the Mahá Bhárata and Rámáyana is purely mythical.

[18] The Rishis are specially referred to as a collective body in the following hymns. "Friendly to man were those of the ancient Rishis whose praises thou (Indra) hast listened to." (Mand VIII. Hymn 29, v. 4.) "Aswins, hearing the many prayers of the Rishis." (Ib. Hymn 70, v. 5.) "The bride of Súrya (i. e. Ushas, the dawn)..... hymned by the Rishis." (Ib. Hymn 75, v. 5.) "Invigorated by the praise of a thousand Rishis, this Indra is vast as the ocean." (Mand VIII. Hymn 3, v. 4.) "Amid those who do not praise thee, Indra, amid the Rishis who do praise thee..... may thou increase." (Ib. Hymn 6, v. 12.) "Come, Aswins, ... when the Rishis formerly invoked you for protection; so now, Aswins, come at my devout praises." (Ib. Hymn 8, v. 5.) From the tenor of these mantras it would seem that the Rishis are regarded as even more ancient than the composition of many of the hymns.

[19] Manu, iii. 53.

mony taught by the Bráhmans was altogether different. The bridegroom was assumed to be learned in the Veda. He was invited and hospitably entertained by the father of the damsel, and then married to the daughter, after which the father of the bride presented the pair with clothes and ornaments.

Significance of the distinction between the marriage rite of the Bráhmans and that of the Prajápatis.

Another and equally significant distinction seems to be drawn between the ceremony of the Bráhmans and that of the Prajápatis. In the former a father gives away his daughter in subordination to the bridegroom; a subordination which is perfectly in accordance with Brahmanical ideas, and which finds full expression in other parts of the code of Manu. In the ceremony of the Prajápatis, the father gives his daughter to the bridegroom, and enjoins them to "perform together their civil and religious duties." This latter expression seems to imply a higher social position on the part of the wife, and one which approaches to an equality with the husband; and this elevation of women in the social scale is in accordance with Kshatriya institutions, and certainly finds expression in the Rig-Veda.[20] It is however apparently connected with a religious system, as some stress is laid upon the religious duties of the married pair. Now the Prajápatis were undoubtedly a religious community; and the question which arises for consideration is whether any distinction can be laid down between the Prajápatis as worshippers of Prajápati, and the Bráhmans as worshippers of Brahma or Brahmá. Hitherto Prajápati has always been identified with Brahmá, and the conception of each deity as the creator of

Question of whether Prajápati and Brahma are different conceptions.

[20] See Rig-Veda, Mand I. Hymn 26, vol. iv. Wilson's *note*.

the universe appears to be the same. But it by no means follows that the two conceptions did not originate from different sources and become subsequently blended together; and it is not impossible that the worship of Prajápati, as one God, is associated with Manu, who has been termed a Prajápati.[21] Again, the worship of the Pitris is associated with Prajápati; and the Pitris are said to reside in the heaven of Prajápati: and Manu lays down a distinction between the world of the Sun, as the heaven of the Prajápatis, and the world or heaven of Brahma.[22] The question however can scarcely be regarded as fairly solved; and it can only be conjectured that Prajápati, or ruler, may have been originally a Kshatriya conception of the One God; and that Brahma may in like manner have been the Brahmanical conception of the Supreme Being.

Conclusions.

Relative antiquity of the marriages of the Rishis, Prajápatis, and Brahmans.

It may now be as well to recapitulate the conclusions which seem to be established by the foregoing data. The most ancient form of marriage was apparently that of the Rishis, in which a bridegroom gave a pair or two of kine to the father of the bride, probably for the purpose of a marriage feast. A relic of this primitive custom is still to be traced in the modern rite, in which a cow is tied up, but let loose instead of being killed. The Daiva form is dubious. The Prajápatya form is apparently later in the order of time, being connected with a monotheistic religion which prevailed during a transition period between the worship of the Vedic deities and that of the god Brahma, and entailed civil and religious duties upon

[21] See the Mantras already quoted in the Introduction to Vol. I. p. 29.

[22] Manu, iv. 182.

both men and women. The Brahma form is apparently the most modern of all.

The four marriages treated by Manu as illegal.

Having thus brought under review the four forms of marriage which were permitted by the code, it becomes necessary to take into consideration the four remaining nuptials, three of which were famous in the national traditions, and may have been occasionally practised in the age of Manu, but all of which were more or less censured by the Hindu lawgiver. They also seem to some extent to appertain to different communities, or perhaps to different phases of civilization; but they are all widely separated from the four orthodox forms by one general characteristic, namely, the absence of all ceremony, religious or otherwise. The conditions of each may be thus exhibited:—

Asura.

1st, The Asura, in which the bridegroom purchased a damsel of her father.

Gandharva.

2nd, The Gandharva, in which a union was prompted by mutual desire, and in which the rite was not necessarily binding for the future.

Rákshasa.

3rd, The Rákshasa, in which a damsel was captured by force of arms.

Paisácha.

4th, The Paisácha, in which a damsel was surprised whilst asleep, or under the influence of strong liquor, or disordered in her intellect.

Asura and Paisácha strictly prohibited.

Of these four marriage customs, the first and last, namely, the Asura and Paisácha, were altogether forbidden by Manu; whilst the Gandharva and Rákshasa were only permitted to warriors, or men of the Kshatriya caste.

The Gandharva and Rákshasa tolerated.

Asura mode a degenerate form of the marriage of Rishis.

The Asura custom might be supposed by its name to refer to marriages amongst the Asuras or aborigines; but in Manu's time, when the caste

system had been fully established, the term Asura was probably employed only as one of reproach. It is not difficult to understand that the primitive custom of a bridegroom giving a pair of kine to the father of his bride, would degenerate in an age of comparative luxury into a mere matter of bargain and sale; in which family rank and personal attractions were duly considered, and an equivalent demanded in money and jewels.[23] The Gandharva marriage on the other hand might be regarded as the expression of a woman's independence in the disposal of her affections; or, what has already been indicated, it might merely refer to the idyllic loves of pastoral times, when a swain met a damsel in the forest, and the unsophisticated pair simply obeyed the dictates of mutual desire without regard to law

Gandharva mode an expression of idyllic amours.

[23] Marriage customs have greatly changed since the time of Manu. In Bengal the great difficulty is for the father of daughters to procure husbands for them, and a system prevails not unlike the purchase of bridegrooms. At this present moment, if a father wishes to marry a daughter to a young Bengalee who has taken a degree at the Calcutta University, he must agree to spend a much larger sum of money upon the marriage entertainment, and upon the jewels and gifts, than would have been necessary had the bridegroom failed to pass the University examination. The vast expense attending the purchasing of a bridegroom of Kulin caste is well known; and a curious illustration of the social ideas upon this matter may be obtained from a recent biography of a Bengalee millionnaire, named Ramdoolal Dey, who wished to marry his daughter to a young Kulin named Radhakissen. The biography is written by an intelligent Bengalee gentleman, named Grish Chunder Ghose; and the following extract is given in the very words of the author:—"Born of parents wretchedly poor, the soul of Radhakissen was as small as his circumstances were pitiful. His Koolinism was the only bait that had attracted Ramdoolal to the lad. The lad, though not ugly, was ungainly. His hair was red and his features were gross. He had not received even an ordinary education. Yet Ramdoolal was anxious to wed his eldest and most favourite daughter,—a daughter in whose name he had built a ship,—to the son of a Koolin. That daughter refused however to marry the bridegroom thus selected for her. She had seen the boy herself; she loathed him with the absurd hate of a child. On the night on which the marriage was consummated, the bride screamed, and the bride writhed on her seat whilst being conveyed to the altar. So violent indeed was her conduct, that Ramdoolal was compelled to soften her, in order that the marriage rites might be proceeded with, by pouring a handful of gold mohurs into her lap."

or ceremony. The Rákshasa marriage again refers to a custom which prevailed during the wars between the Aryan invaders and the aborigines, by which the daughters and even the wives of the conquered became the prize of the conquerors. The Paisácha however has not a semblance to either a form or a right. The damsel was neither purchased, nor seduced, nor carried away captive, but was simply taken at a disadvantage; an outrage which was far more likely to be committed amongst a peaceful community than amongst a race of chivalrous warriors like the Kshatriyas. The origin of the name Paisácha is somewhat curious. The Pisáchas were evil spirits, or ghosts, who were supposed to haunt the earth; but sometimes they were identified with the more terrible and uncivilized aborigines.[24] If therefore a damsel found herself likely to become a mother, without being able to furnish a satisfactory reason for her maternity, she would naturally plead that she had been victimized by a Pisácha; and probably from this circumstance the term came to be applied to all cases in which a damsel had been taken at a disadvantage by a mortal lover. In modern times however the belief is still very general throughout the rural districts of India, that wives as well as maidens may be occasionally victimized by such ghostly admirers.

Rákshasa mode a war custom of the Kshatriyas.

Paisácha mode originating in a belief in ghosts.

The law permitting Gandharva and Rákshasa marriages to the Kshatriyas is not without historical significance. It seems to indicate that at the time the code of Manu was promulgated the Kshatriyas formed a powerful class of the community; and that

Significance of the law permitting Gandharva and Rákshasa marriages to the Kshatriyas.

[24] "Destroy, Indra, the tawny-coloured, fearfully-roaring Pisáchi; annihilate the Rákshasas." Rig-Veda, Mand I. Hymn 133, v. 5.

the Bráhmans found it necessary to temporize, in order to reconcile so arrogant and important a caste with Brahmanical law.[25]

Respective merits and demerits of the eight forms of marriage.

The respective merits and demerits of the eight forms of marriage are thus indicated by Manu:—

"The son of a wife by the Brahmá rite, if he performs virtuous acts, redeems from sin ten ancestors and ten descendants, and redeems likewise himself, making twenty-one persons in all. The son of a wife by the Daiva rite redeems seven ancestors and seven descendants. The son of a wife by the Arsharite redeems three ancestors and three descendants. The son of a wife by the Prajápatya rite redeems six ancestors and six descendants. By these four marriages are born sons illumined by the Veda, beloved by the learned, adorned with beauty, endowed with goodness, wealthy, renowned, blessed with all lawful enjoyments, performing every duty, and living a hundred years. But in the four other marriages, which are base marriages, are born sons, who act cruelly, speak falsely, abhor the Veda, and the duties prescribed therein."[26]

Significance of Manu's application of the doctrine.

The foregoing observations of the Hindú lawgiver on each of the eight forms of marriage furnish a curious illustration of the system of merits and demerits, which has already been explained as forming the ground-work of Brahmanism. The ingenuity of the authors of the code in dealing with this subject is well worthy of notice. According to the dogma inculcated, the merits of an individual ac-

[25] The custom of treating female captives as prize is as old as the hills. In this fashion Chryseis and Briseis were allotted to Agamemnon and Achilles; and the mother of Sisera is represented in the song of Deborah and Barak as expecting the return of the victorious army of her son with a damsel or two to every man. The brute violence of the custom was greatly mitigated in the Mosáic law, which ordered that a beautiful captive should shave her head and be permitted to lament her parents for a whole month, before a warrior could make her his wife.

[26] Manu, iii. 36—41.

quired by an orthodox marriage will not only tend to his own deliverance from the punishment awarded to demerits, but in some cases will deliver his ancestors or his descendants from such evil consequences. Now, amongst the Hindús the marriage of a son is brought about by the parents; and although there is reason to believe that this custom was not in force in very ancient times, yet the obligation of a father as regards the marriage of his sons and daughters seems to have been generally acknowledged by Manu. The Hindú lawgiver accordingly enlists the self-interest of parents, by declaring that the merits of those who contract the better forms of marriage will be felt through a certain number of degrees in the ascending line; and in like manner he enlists the self-interest of the pair about to be married, by declaring that such merits will be also felt by the children through a corresponding number of generations in the descending line. In the same spirit it is asserted that the sons who are born from any of the prohibited marriages will turn out the vilest of characters.

CHAPTER IX.

THE SRÁDDHA, OR FEAST OF THE DEAD.

Origin of the idea of propitiating the ghosts of ancestors with food.

THE Sráddha, or feast of the dead, is perhaps one of the most primitive, as it certainly is one of the most simple, of all the Vedic rites that have been handed down from a period of remote antiquity to the present day. It originated in the crude idea already indicated, that the spirit or ghost had a separate existence after death, and that it might be gratified or propitiated with offerings of food. This idea certainly involved a belief in the prolonged existence of the spirit in a future state of being; but in its origin it had no connection with the doctrine of future rewards and punishments. It is rather to be traced to the old world belief, which has existed in all ages, and which still lingers in the imagination of even a philosophic and material generation, that the spirits of the departed hover at times near those persons and places which were associated with their earthly careers, and are gratified by any tribute of respect which may be paid to their memory.[1]

[1] This idea finds exquisite expression in Collins's poem on the death of Thomson :—

"Remembrance oft shall haunt the shore
When Thames in summer wreaths is dress'd;
And oft shall stay the dashing oar
To bid his gentle spirit rest."

The Sráddha, or feast of the dead, was thus in its earliest form a pleasing expression of natural religion, which long preceded the advent of a priestly caste, or the introduction of a systematic ritual. But, like every other popular ceremonial which has been handed down amongst the Hindús from the Vedic period, it has been recast in a Brahmanical mould; and it is in this latter form that the institution appears in the Epics as well as in the laws of Manu. It consists of three distinct rites:—

The Sráddha a pleasing expression of natural religion.

Three distinct Sráddhas.

1st, The Daily Sráddha, to be performed in propitiation of the Pitris, or ghosts of remote ancestors.

2nd, The Monthly Sráddha, to be performed in propitiation of the more immediate paternal ancestors.

3rd, The Funeral Sráddha, to be performed within a certain period after death, or the hearing of the death, of a near kinsman.

It should also be remarked that Sráddhas are likewise performed on other occasions, and notably at the celebration of any marriage ceremony.[2]

Other Sráddhas.

[2] In a work entitled Nirneya Sindhu, Colebrooke found authority for classifying obsequies under twelve heads. (1.) Daily obsequies, either food or water only, in honour of ancestors in general, but excluding the Viswadevas. (2.) Obsequies for a special cause, that is, in honour of a kinsman recently defunct. (3.) Voluntary obsequies, performed by way of supererogation, for the greater benefit of the deceased. (4.) Obsequies for increase of prosperity, performed upon any accession of wealth, and upon other joyful occasions. (5.) A Sráddha intended to introduce the ghost of a deceased kinsman to the rest of the ghosts. (6.) Obsequies performed on appointed days, such as that of new moon, full moon, sun's passage into a new sign, etc. (7.) A Sráddha to sanctify the food at an entertainment given to a company of Bráhmans. (8.) One performed when stated numbers of Bráhmans are fed at the cost of a person who needs purification from some defilement. (9.) A Sráddha preparatory to the celebration of any solemn rite, and considered as a part of such rite. (10.) A Sráddha in honour of deities. (11.) Oblations of clarified butter, previous to the undertaking of a distant journey. (12.) A Sráddha to sanctify a meal of flesh-meat prepared simply for the sake of nourishment. See Colebrooke's *Essays on the Religious Ceremonies of the Hindús.*

Daily Sráddha.

The daily Sráddha was an offering either of boiled rice, or of milk, roots, and fruit, or of water only, to the Pitris, or remote ancestors. This ceremonial has been already described,[3] and it will be only necessary to add that in modern practice it is considered sufficient to pour water out of a particular vessel every day as a drink-offering to the Pitris.

Monthly Sráddha, considered under four heads.

The monthly Sráddha may be considered under four separate heads:—

1st, Ceremonies to be performed at a monthly Sráddha.

2nd, Persons to be entertained at the monthly Sráddha.

3rd, Persons to be excluded from the monthly Sráddha.

4th, Relative merits of the different kinds of victuals which may be offered at a monthly Sráddha.

1st, Ceremonies to be performed at a monthly Sráddha.

The ceremonies at the monthly Sráddha, as described in the Institutes of Manu, are of a very intelligible character; and seem to have been laid down for the purpose of converting the old Vedic offering of food and water into a great feast to the Bráhmans. The monthly Sráddha was performed on the dark day of the moon, that is, when the sun and moon are in conjunction. A sequestered spot was selected, such as was supposed to be pleasing to the ghosts; and then the invited Bráhmans were conducted to their allotted seats, which had been purified with kusa grass, and were presented with garlands of flowers and sweet perfumes. The officiating Bráhman then satisfied the three Vedic deities,—Agni, Soma, and Yama,—by pouring an oblation of ghee upon the sacred fire. He then

Oblation to the Vedic deities.

[3] See *ante*, chap. vii.

proceeded to satisfy the ancestors of the giver of the Sráddha. He first sprinkled water on the ground with his right hand, and then formed three balls or cakes of boiled rice, which are called pindas. One of these cakes is presented to each of the three immediate paternal ancestors, namely, the father, the grandfather, and the great-grandfather. The offering of pindas, however, is said to be extended to the fourth, fifth, and sixth degrees of paternal ancestors in the ascending line, by the simple process of wiping the hand with kusa grass after offering the pindas to the ancestors of the first, second, and third degree. This ceremony was followed by a great feast to the Bráhmans, consisting of vessels filled with rice, together with broths, potherbs, milk and curds, ghee, spiced puddings, milky messes of various sorts, roots of herbs, ripe fruits, and savoury meats; and during the feast passages were read from the Sástras. The remains of the cakes were to be eaten by a cow, a Bráhman, or a kid; or to be cast into water or fire;[4] but the wife of the householder was to eat the middle of the three cakes, in order that she might become the mother of a son, who should be long-lived, famous, strong-minded, wealthy, and the father of many sons. When the Bráhmans had duly feasted, the householder gave a feast to the kinsmen of his father, and afterwards to the kinsmen of his mother.[5] In cases of poverty, however, the offering of water seems to be considered a sufficient satisfaction of the spirits of the six paternal ancestors.[6]

Offering of the three cakes of rice or pindas, to the paternal ancestors.

Feast to the Bráhmans.

Disposal of the cakes.

Feast of the kinsmen.

[4] A curious illustration of the popular belief as regards the mode by which the food was supposed to reach the ghosts, is to be found in the discussion between Ráma and Jávâli. See Part iv. chap. xiv. See also the narrative of the second adventure of the horse in Vol. I. Part ii. chap. xvi.

[5] Manu, iii. 206—265.

[6] Manu, iii. 283.

2nd, Persons to be invited to the Sráddha.

As regards the persons to be invited to the monthly Sráddha, great stress is laid by the code upon the entertainment of learned Bráhmans, and the exclusion of ignorant ones from the Sráddha; but it is added that if such learned Bráhmans cannot be found, certain relatives may be entertained. This last expression is somewhat obscure, and may possibly imply that the Sráddha was originally eaten by the kinsmen, and that the introduction of learned Bráhmans was a later idea.[7]

3rd, Catalogue of persons to be excluded from the Sráddha.

Manu's catalogue of the persons who were to be excluded from a monthly Sráddha is of a very miscellaneous character; and is chiefly valuable from the illustrations which it furnishes of the Brahmanical notion of impure or immoral characters. The catalogue may be re-distributed under four general heads, according to the four different grounds upon which the individuals specified have been respectively excluded, namely, moral, religious, physical, and professional.

(1.) Persons disqualified on moral grounds.

The persons to be excluded from a Sráddha on moral grounds, are:—

"A Brahmachári who has not read the Veda; a Bráhman who has committed theft; one who opposes his preceptor; a younger brother married before the elder; an elder brother not married before the younger; one who subsists by the wealth of many relatives; the husband of a Súdra; the son of a twice-married woman; a husband in whose house an adulterer dwells; one who teaches the Veda for wages; one who gives wages to such a teacher; the pupil of a Súdra; the Súdra preceptor; a rude speaker; the son of an adulteress born either before or after the death of her husband; a forsaker of his mother, father, or pre-

[7] Manu, iii. 148.

ceptor without just cause; a man who forms a connection with great sinners; a house-burner; a giver of poison; an eater of food offered by the son of an adulterer; a suborner of perjury; a wrangler with his father; a drinker of intoxicating spirits; one of evil repute; a cheat; the husband of a younger sister married before the elder; an injurer of his friend; a father instructed in the Veda by his own son; one who diverts water-courses; a seducer of damsels; a man who delights in mischief; a Bráhman living as a Súdra; one who observes neither approved customs nor prescribed duties; a constant and importunate asker of favours; one who is despised by the virtuous; the husband of a twice-married woman; a Bráhman of bad manners; and an ignorant Bráhman."

(2.) Persons disqualified on religious grounds.

The persons to be excluded from a Sráddha on religious grounds, are:—

"Those who profess to disbelieve in a future state; a Bráhman who has performed many sacrifices for other men; those who worship images for gain; one who deserts the sacred fire; one who omits the five great sacraments; a contemner of Bráhmans; a despiser of scripture; and one who sacrifices only to the inferior gods."

(3.) Persons disqualified on physical grounds.

The persons to be excluded from a Sráddha on physical grounds, are:—

"Those with whitlows on their nails; those with black-yellow teeth; a consumptive man; a man who has lost an eye; a man with elephantiasis; an impotent man; an epileptic man; one with erysipelas; a leper; a lunatic; a blind man; a club-footed man."

(4.) Persons disqualified on account of their trade or profession.

The persons to be excluded from a Sráddha because of their trade or profession, are:—

"Physicians; gamesters; usurers; dancers; sellers of meat; those who live by low traffic; a public servant of the whole town; a public servant of the Raja; a feeder of cattle; a seller of the moon-plant; a navigator of the ocean; a

poetical encomiast; an oil man; one who employs gamesters for his own benefit; a seller of liquors; a maker of bows and arrows; the keeper of a gambling-house; a common informer; a tamer of elephants, bulls, horses, or camels; one who subsists by astrology; a keeper of birds; one who teaches the use of arms; one who builds houses for gain; a messenger; a planter of trees for pay; a breeder of sporting dogs; a falconer; one who supports himself by tillage; a shepherd; a keeper of buffaloes; and one who removes dead bodies for pay."

Punishment for inviting disqualified persons.

The food that is given to such men at a Sráddha becomes base and impure; and the giver of the Sráddha will be punished in the next life.[8]

Significance of the catalogues of disqualifications.

The foregoing catalogues of persons who are to be excluded from a Sráddha are very suggestive.

Confusion of sin and disease.

In the first place it will be noticed that Manu classifies immorality, heresy, and deviation from caste rule, with physical evils, such as leprosy, blindness, and elephantiasis; and this intermingling is more perceptible in the original text, where no attempt has been made to separate the precepts under different heads. This strange confusion of sin and disease appears to have originated in the old idea, connected with the dogma of the transmigration of the soul, that disease was the punishment of sins committed either in this life or in a previous state of existence.

Peculiar usages.

The peculiar usages which seem to have originated some of the precepts are also well worthy of notice.

Prohibition of the marriage of a younger brother or sister before that of an elder brother or sister.

Thus it has been seen that it was considered wrong for a younger brother or a younger sister to be married before an elder brother or an elder sister;

[8] Manu, iii. 150 *et seq.* The punishments dogmatically awarded by Manu to sinners in the next life are without significance, excepting so far as they illustrate the doctrine of merits and demerits already explained. Accordingly they are only given in the above text in a general and abstract form.

a notion which could only find a place amongst a people who believed that the marriage of a daughter was a duty which every parent was bound to fulfil.[9] It has also been seen that a woman who married a second husband was held in great abhorrence; and to the present day the marriage of a Hindú widow, even when her first husband has died before the marriage has been consummated, is regarded with a national antipathy which education and legislation have done but little to remove. It is also somewhat curious that Manu should exclude a constant and importunate asker of favours from a Sráddha; from which it would appear that askers of favours were as constant and importunate in the age of Manu as they are in our own time.

Prohibition of the re-marriage of widows.

Amongst the persons whom Manu directed should be excluded on religious grounds are to be found those who sacrifice only to the "inferior gods." This expression of "inferior gods" seems to suggest a religious opposition. Indeed it is not impossible that Manu is alluding to the old Vedic deities, who were treated by the Bráhmans as subordinate to their god Brahma. The injunction against the Bráhmans who performed many sacrifices for other men, may have been aimed at the mercenary priests who sacrificed for hire. The injunction against those who worshipped images for the sake of gain is involved in more obscurity, inasmuch as there does not appear to be any satisfactory reference to images in the hymns of the Rig-Veda; although it is easy

Prohibition of the worshippers of inferior gods.

[9] The same idea finds expression in the marriage of Jacob to Leah, when Jacob was really in love with the younger sister Rachel, and under the idea that Rachel was to be his bride.

to conceive that such a form of worship must sooner or later find expression.

Prohibition of Kshatriyas.

The exclusion of men who followed certain trades or professions from the entertainment given at a Sráddha, furnishes in like manner some striking illustrations of the old opposition between the priest and the soldier, the Bráhman and the Kshatriya, which seems to be more or less identical with the opposition between the Bráhmans and the Vedic Aryans. Thus amongst the ancient Kshatriyas

Gambling.

gambling was a favourite pastime, and certainly was not regarded as a vice, excepting when carried to a vicious excess and terminating in the ruin of a family. Even Yudhishthira, who is represented in the Mahá Bhárata as an incarnation of Dharma, or goodness, and who was apparently regarded as a model Raja, is actually said to have disguised himself as a Bráhman, and in that guise to have taught the art of dice to the Raja of Viráta. But Manu excludes from the Sráddha every gambler, and every man who keeps

Sellers of wine and flesh-meat.

a gambling-house or employs gamblers. Then again, the Kshatriyas revelled in wine and flesh-meat; but Manu excludes the sellers of wine and meat from the Sráddha. The most significant precepts however

Makers of weapons and tamers of horses.

are those which exclude the makers of bows and arrows, the tamers of horses, and those who taught the use of arms; for the bow was the favourite weapon of the Kshatriyas, and the taming of horses was regarded as a royal accomplishment; whilst two of the most patriarchal characters in the Mahá Bhárata, Bhíshma and Drona, are said to have trained Pándu and Dritarashtra, and their sons, the Pándavas and Kauravas, in the use of different kinds of weapons. The exclusion of navigators is equally curious. Na-

vigation was certainly known to the Vedic Aryans, and is even recognized by Manu;[10] but it has always been regarded with peculiar horror by the Bráhmans; and consequently it is referred to the three first Yugas or ages, but discountenanced in the age of Kali. The exclusion of physicians seems to have originated in the idea that they must be impure from having to deal with impure things.

4th, Relative merits of different victuals offered at a Sráddha.

As regards the food to be offered to the ghosts at the monthly Sráddha, the precepts in Manu are also significant. The old primitive custom of offering fish and flesh is sufficiently recognized, but at the same time it is urged that the ghosts prefer a more simple and Brahmanical diet, such as milk and honey.[11] At a later period it was declared that the feasting on flesh-meat at a Sráddha was forbidden in the Kali age.[12]

Funeral Sráddha.

The funeral Sráddha, which is performed after the death of a kinsman, is in every respect similar to the monthly Sráddha, and consequently calls for no detailed description. The code lays down certain laws as regards the purification of the survivors, but they are devoid of historical significance. The

[10] Manu, viii. 156, 157.

[11] "Offerings of the following victuals are said to be capable of satisfying the ancestors of men for different periods: Tila [*i. e.* sesamum seeds], rice, barley, black lentils or vetches, water, roots, and fruit, given with the prescribed ceremonies, will satisfy the ancestors of men for an entire month. Fish will satisfy them for two months; venison for three months; mutton for four months; birds, such as the twice-born may eat, for five months; kid's flesh for six months; spotted deer for seven months; the antelope for eight months; the ram for nine months; the flesh of wild boars and wild buffaloes for ten months; horses and tortoises for eleven months. But the milk of cows, and food made of that milk, will satisfy the ancestor for a whole year. . . . The Pitris say:—'Oh! may that man be born in our line who will give us honey and pure butter, both on the thirteenth day of the moon, and when the shadow of an elephant falls to the east.'" Manu, iii. 266—274.

[12] See appendix to Manu, Haughton's *translation*.

ceremonies which accompanied and followed the death of Maháraja Dasaratha sufficiently illustrate the popular ideas and customs which still prevail.[13]

Modifications of the old Vedic belief in the Srádhha by the Bráhmans.

It will be seen from the foregoing data that the old Vedic belief in the worship of ancestors has been strangely Brahmanized by the compilers of the code. The monthly Sráddha, whilst ostensibly celebrated in honour of deceased ancestors, is in reality nothing more than an entertainment given to the Bráhmans. Again, the original idea appears to have originated in a childlike belief that the food and water sustain and refresh the spirit of the departed; whilst, according to the more modern Brahmanical doctrine, the performance of a Sráddha delivers the soul of the dead person from the custody of Yama, the judge of the dead, and translates it to the heaven of the Pitris, or ancestors; there to remain until the merits of its previous life on earth are all exhausted, and then to return again to earth and re-animate another body. Thus it is the current belief that without the Sráddha the soul of the deceased cannot ascend to the heaven of the Pitris and take up its abode there.

[13] See *ante*, Part iv. chap. xi. and xii. The celebration of these Sráddhas is frequently attended by a vast expenditure. The Bráhmans are feasted in great numbers, whilst money and food are lavishly distributed amongst the guests, and also amongst the lower classes of the community. At the Sráddha of Ramdoolal Dey, five lakhs of rupees, or £50,000, were expended. His biographer, Baboo Grish Chunder Ghose, thus describes the proceedings on that occasion:—"The Bráhman and the beggar overflowed in Calcutta at this solemn ceremony. To the former gold and silver, and elephants and horses, and budgerows and boats, and carriages and palanquins, were given away with princely munificence; to the latter upwards of three lakhs of rupees were distributed. On no one was less than a rupee bestowed, and if a beggar woman was found to be with child, a second rupee was given to her. Did a beggar bring a bird in his hand, the bird obtained its alms equally with its master."

CHAPTER X.

THE FOUR CASTES.

THE social fabric of the Hindús rests upon the caste system, namely, the division of the community, without regard to wealth or ability, into the four great classes of priest, soldier, merchant, and cultivator, or Bráhman, Kshatriya, Vaisya, and Súdra. But besides this distinction of caste which dismembers society, there is a division of epochs or stages in the existence of the individual, which maps out the life of every twice-born man into four periods, namely, that of student, householder, hermit, and devotee. Accordingly the present chapter will be devoted to the consideration of the caste system and caste laws, which regulate more or less the social life of the Hindús; whilst the subsequent chapter will be devoted to the consideration of the four successive stages in the life of the individual man.

Division of classes of society into four castes, and of lives of individuals into four stages.

The probable origin of the four castes of Bráhmans, Kshatriyas, Vaisyas, and Súdras has already been briefly indicated. It has been observed [1] that a broad line of demarcation, which finds expression in the investiture of the thread, separates the three twice-born castes, who were apparently Aryan conquerors, from the Súdras, who were apparently a conquered

Probable origin of the four castes.

[1] Vol. I. Introduction.

race. The inference has accordingly been drawn that the Súdras were the original inhabitants of the land, who had been reduced to a servile condition by their Aryan conquerors. Traces of this distinction are to be found in the Vedic hymns; and indeed Manu himself refers the origin of caste to the Aryan settlement on the Saraswatí. But in the Brahmanic age, which is the special subject of the code of Manu, the caste system was firmly rooted in the minds of the people as an article of religious belief; and it was associated with every religious act and duty, whilst enforced by public law as well as by moral and social rule. This distinction may be thus indicated :—

Traces of caste in the Vedic age.

Stratification of the caste system in the Brahmanic age.

Bráhmans, or priests.	Termed the "twice-born" from wearing the sacred thread.
Kshatriyas, or soldiers and Rajas.	
Vaisyas, or merchants and farmers.	
Súdras, or the servile class who tilled the soil.	Never invested with the thread.

The earliest account of the fourfold origin of caste appears in one of the later hymns of the Rig-Veda, known as the Purusha hymn, because it refers to Purusha, or the Supreme Spirit, who may be identified with Brahma. In this hymn the gods and Rishis are supposed to offer up Purusha as a sacrifice, and to dismember him for the purpose of creating the world out of his limbs. This is an ancient conception, and, as already indicated, finds expression in the Scandinavian mythology.[2] But Purusha was a spirit, and accordingly some difficulty appears to

Vedic myth that the four castes were created from the limbs of Purusha.

[2] See *ante*, p. 453, note.

have been felt in assigning bodily members to a spiritual being. Indeed the Sanscrit commentator upon the passage explains that the gods did not actually offer sacrifice and bind Purusha as a victim; but that they offered mental sacrifice and contemplated Purusha as a victim.[3] The entire hymn has been translated by Dr. Muir, but the following extract contains all that refers to the four castes:[4]—

Extracts from the Purusha hymn.

"When they formed [or offered up] Purusha, into how many parts did they divide him? What was his mouth? What were his arms? What were called his thighs and feet?

"The Bráhman was his mouth; the Rajamaya [i.e. Kshatriya] was made his arms; that which was the Vaisya was his thighs; the Súdra sprang from his feet."

Now whilst this hymn may possibly indicate the inferiority of the Súdra to the three twice-born castes, it can scarcely be said to establish the supremacy of the Bráhman over the Kshatriya. On the contrary, the myth only explains the mutual relation of the castes towards each other, and that too in figurative language which could scarcely offend the pride of the haughtiest Kshatriya; for the latter would readily admit that the Bráhmans were the mouth that promulgated Brahmanism, whilst they themselves were regarded as the arm that protected the commonweal.

No Brahmanical superiority asserted in the Purusha hymn.

In the code of Manu however, which is the full expression of Brahmanical assumption, the significance of the Vedic myth is altogether distorted for the purpose of setting the Bráhman above the Kshatriya. Instead of the twice-born castes forming the

Vedic myth distorted in Manu's code, to represent the Bráhmans superior to the Kshatriyas.

[3] Mahidhara, quoted by Dr. Muir.

[4] Muir's Sanscrit Texts, vol. i. chap. i. sect. 2.

mouth, arms, and thighs of the Purusha, they are said to have sprung from those members; and the new idea is introduced that the mouth is better than the arm. Manu says:—

"In order to preserve the universe, Brahmá caused the Bráhman to proceed from his mouth; the Kshatriya to proceed from his arm; the Vaisya to proceed from his thigh; and the Súdra to proceed from his foot. And Brahmá directed that the duties of the Bráhmans should be reading and teaching the Veda; sacrificing and assisting others to sacrifice; giving alms if they be rich, and receiving alms if they be poor. And Brahmá directed that the duties of the Kshatriyas should be to defend the people; to give alms; to sacrifice; to read the Veda; and to keep their passions under control. And he directed that the duties of the Vaisyas should be to keep herds of cattle; to give alms; to read the Sástras; to carry on trade; to lend money at interest; and to cultivate land. And he directed that the Súdra should serve all the three mentioned castes, namely, the Bráhmans, the Kshatriyas, and the Vaisyas; and that he should not depreciate them or make light of them. Since the Bráhman sprang from the mouth, which is the most excellent part of Brahmá, and since he is the first-born and possesses the Veda, he is by right the chief of the whole creation. Him Brahmá produced from his own mouth that he might perform holy rites; that he might present ghee to the gods, and cakes of rice to the Pitris or progenitors of mankind."[5]

Bráhmans, the chief of the creation.

The foregoing account calls for no further comment. The statement that the Bráhmans are the chief of the creation is simply an assumption, which the Hindú lawgiver continues to teach and enforce throughout the entire code.

Expression of caste distinctions.

The system of caste finds expression in every act of Hindú life, and like the doctrine of merits and

[5] Manu, i. 88—94.

demerits, imparts a religious significance to every ordinary proceeding. In its more general form it simply indicates the different professions of priest, soldier, merchant, and cultivator. Thus in ordinary salutations, or polite inquiries, a Bráhman was to be asked whether his devotion had prospered; a Kshatriya whether he suffered from his wounds; a Vaisya whether his wealth was secure; and a Súdra whether he was in good health.[6] In administering oaths to witnesses, however, a far wider distinction is laid down between members of either of the three twice-born castes and a Súdra. Thus a Bráhman was to swear by his veracity; a Kshatriya by his weapons, horse, or elephant; and a Vaisya by his kine, grain, or gold; but a Súdra was to imprecate upon his own head the guilt of every possible crime if he did not speak the truth.[7] The law as regards caste mar-

In salutations.

In administering oaths.

Marriages between castes.

[6] Manu, ii. 127.

[7] Manu, viii. 113.—The following texts respecting perjury, and the examination of witnesses, are very significant:—"When the witnesses are all assembled in the middle of the court-room in the presence of the plaintiff and defendant, the judge, before examining them, should address them as follows:—'What you know to have been transacted in the matter before us between the two parties, declare at large and with truth, for your evidence in this cause is required.' The witness who is truthful will attain the highest fame here below, and the most exalted seats of happiness hereafter; such testimony is revered by Brahma. But the witness who speaks falsely will be fast bound under water in the cords of Varuna, and be wholly deprived of power during a hundred transmigrations. The soul itself is its own witness; the soul itself is its own refuge; let no one then offend his conscious soul, for it is the supreme internal witness of men! The sinful have said in their hearts:—'None sees us!' But the gods distinctly see them, and so does the spirit within their breasts. The twice-born witnesses should be called upon by the judge to declare the truth in the presence of the divinity with their faces turned either to the north or to the east. To a Bráhman the judge should say:—'Declare!' To a Kshatriya he should say:—'Declare the truth!' To the Vaisya he should compare perjury to the crime of stealing kine, grain, or gold. To the Súdra he should compare perjury to every crime, in the following language:—'Whatever places of torture have been prepared for the murderer of a Bráhman, for the murderer of a woman or child, for the injurer of a friend, or for an ungrateful man, have also been ordained for that witness who gives false evidence. If you deviate from the truth, the fruit of every virtuous act which

riages betrays a conflict of usages, inasmuch as it recognizes polygamy, and seems to indicate that the Kshatriyas occasionally insisted upon taking the fair daughters of inferior castes to be their wives. It was enacted that a Bráhman, a Kshatriya, or a Vaisya should in the first instance marry a damsel of his own caste; and if, after fulfilling that duty, one or the other should be driven by inclination to marry a damsel of an inferior caste, he might do so in the direct order of the castes beneath him. This law is curiously artificial, and is evidently aimed against all marriages between castes. Men of the twice-born castes were assured that if through weakness of intellect they irregularly married women of the Súdra caste, they would very soon degrade their families to the condition of Súdras. "If a Bráhman married a daughter of a Súdra as his first wife, that wife would have to prepare the sacrifices to the gods and the oblations to the Pitris, and neither the gods nor the Pitris would eat such offerings. For the crime of that Bráhman there was no expiation."[8] It was, however, ordered that in all marriage rites between different castes the bride was to take in her hand an emblem of the caste to which she belonged. Thus a bride of the warrior caste was to hold an arrow; a bride of the merchant caste was to hold a whip; whilst a bride of the lowest caste of all was to hold the skirt of a mantle.[9] Such arbitrary laws

Marriage with a first wife of a low caste prohibited.

Caste emblems.

Later prohibi-

you have committed since your birth will depart from you to the dogs. The man who gives false evidence shall go naked, shorn, and blind, and be tormented with hunger and thirst, and beg food with a potsherd at the door of his enemy. If he answer one question falsely he shall tumble headlong into hell in utter darkness. Even if he gives imperfect testimony, and asserts a fact which he has not seen, he will suffer pain like a man who eats fish and swallows the sharp bones.'" Manu, viii. 79—95.

[8] Manu, iii. 12—19.

[9] Manu, iii. 44.

naturally tended to throw discredit upon all marriages between castes; and in the present day all such marriages have fallen into disuse and are strictly prohibited.

Prohibition of all marriages between different castes.

The more important illustrations of the caste system, which are to be found in Manu, may be grouped under five different heads, viz. :—

Five groups of illustrations of the caste system.

1st, The veneration in which Bráhmans are to be held.

2nd, The privileges which are to be enjoyed by Bráhmans.

3rd, The occupations or mode of life to be followed by Bráhmans.

4th, The restrictions as regards diet which are to be observed by all men of the twice-born castes.

5th, The scale of punishment for cases of slander between men of different castes.

1st, Veneration for Bráhmans.

The degree of veneration in which the Bráhman was to be held by all other men is explicitly laid down in the code of Manu. The Bráhman, it is said, sprang from the mouth of Brahmá. He was entitled to the whole of the universe by the right of primogeniture. He possessed the Veda, and was alone permitted to teach the laws of Manu.[10] By his sacrifices and imprecations he could destroy a Raja in a moment, together with all his troops, elephants, horses, and chariots.[11] In his wrath he could frame new worlds, with new gods and new mortals.[12] Although convicted of every possible crime, he was never to be put to death by a Raja; he might be banished from the realm, but no injury was to be inflicted on himself or his property.[13] A twicę-born

[10] Manu, i. 94–101.
[11] Manu, ix. 313.
[12] Manu, ix. 315.
[13] Manu, viii. 380.

man, who barely assaulted a Bráhman with the intention of hurting him, would be whirled about for a century in the hell termed Tamasa. He who smote a Bráhman with only a blade of grass would be born an inferior quadruped during twenty-one transmigrations. But he who shed the blood of a Bráhman, saving in battle, would be mangled by animals in his next birth for as many years as there were particles of dust rolled up by the blood of the Bráhman.[14] If a Súdra sat upon the same seat with a Bráhman, he was to be gashed in the part offending.[15]

2nd. Privileges of Bráhmans.

The rights and privileges to be enjoyed by the Bráhman in the state were of a very high character, but were scarcely connected with the idea of nobility. The Raja was to appoint a Bráhman to be chief over all the Ministers; and in him the Raja was to place his fullest confidence.[16] The Raja was to appoint one Bráhman to be his Purohita, or family priest; and another Bráhman to be his Ritwij or performer of sacrifices.[17] The administration of justice was to be largely intrusted to the Bráhmans, and a court of four Bráhmans was called the Court of Brahma, or the Court of four faces; the god Brahma being always represented with four faces, corresponding to the four Vedas, of which he was said to be the author.[18] Treasure trove was to be divided between the Raja and the Bráhmans; but if a Bráhman found the treasure none of it went to the Raja.[19] The property of Bráhmans was never to be escheated by the Raja. On failure of heirs the wealth of all

[14] Manu, iv. 165—168.
[15] Manu, viii. 281.
[16] Manu, vii. 58, 59.
[17] Manu, vii. 78.
[18] Manu, viii. 1, 9, 11.
[19] Manu, viii. 37—39.

other castes might be taken by the Raja; but that of the Bráhman was to be divided amongst his caste.[20] Above all, the Bráhman, provided he was learned in the Veda, was to enjoy a perfect immunity from taxation. Under no circumstances whatever was a Raja to levy a tax upon such a Bráhman, or permit him to be hungry. On the other hand, the Raja was to provide for the maintenance of the Bráhman, and protect him as a father protects a son.[21]

3rd. Occupations of Bráhmans.

As regards the mode of life to be followed by a Bráhman, it is laid down in the code that he might gain his subsistence by lawful gleaning and gathering, by what was given to him in alms, and by tillage. He was, however, to receive no gifts whatever from bad men or from Súdras. If deeply distressed he might support life by traffic and money lending, but never by service which is styled dog-living.[22] If unable to subsist as a Bráhman, he might adopt the profession of a Kshatriya or Vaisya; but he was to avoid tilling the earth, for the iron-mouthed pieces of wood wounded the earth and the creatures dwelling in it. In like manner he was not to sell flesh-meat, or spirituous liquors, or other articles which are expressly prohibited.[23] A Bráhman was never to indulge in any sensual gratification, nor follow any pursuit which might impede his reading the Veda; but he was to bring his apparel, his discourse, and his frame of mind to a conformity with his age, his occupation, his property, his divine knowledge, and his family. He was not to eat with his wife, nor to look at her while she was eating. He

[20] Manu, ix. 188, 189.
[21] Manu, vii. 133—135.
[22] Manu, iv. 1, 6; xi. 194—197; xiii.
[23] Manu, x. 81—89.

was never to dwell in a city which was governed by a Raja who was a Súdra; nor in one surrounded by men who neglected their duties; nor in one abounding with professed heretics; nor in one swarming with low-born outcastes. He was never to play at dice; nor gain wealth by music, or by any act which pleased the sense.[24]

4th, Diet of Bráhmans.

As regards diet the precepts of Manu are explicit, although somewhat contradictory. A Bráhman was to carefully avoid all garlic, onions, leeks, and mushrooms; all bad milk; and all rice and bread which had not been first offered to some deity.[25] "Beasts and birds," says Manu, "may be slain by Bráhmans for sacrifice, since Agastya did this of old; and no doubt in the funeral sacrifices by holy men, and in oblations by Bráhmans and Kshatriyas, the flesh of such beasts and birds as might be legally eaten, was presented to the gods. A Bráhman, however, should never eat the flesh of cattle which has not been consecrated by mantras; but should he earnestly desire to taste such meat, he may gratify his fancy by forming the image of some beasts with dough or chickened ghee."[26]

Compromise involved in the laws respecting the diet of the twice-born castes.

The general ordinances laid down by Manu, as regards the diet of the twice-born castes, is characterized throughout by that extraordinary spirit of compromise between opposite institutions and usages, which so largely prevails throughout the code. That milk and vegetables were considered as the staple of Brahmanical food seems to be proved by the prohibition as regards bad milk and particular vegeta-

[24] Manu, iv. 15—84. [25] Manu, v. 5—10.
[26] Manu, v. 36—42.

bles, from which all Bráhmans are called upon to abstain. In like manner flesh-meat would appear to be considered as the staple food of other twice-born men, namely, the Kshatriyas and Vaisyas, from the prohibitions as regards particular animals and birds, from which all twice-born men should abstain. This conclusion is not perhaps logically proved, inasmuch as all twice-born men, including Bráhmans as well as Kshatriyas and Vaisyas, are required to abstain from particular flesh and birds. Indeed, in Bengal there are many Bráhmans in the present day, who eat the meat which has been offered to Durgá or Kálí. But according to the national idea the Bráhman is supposed to live on milk and vegetables, whilst the Kshatriya and Vaisya may eat mutton and goats' flesh; and this idea finds full expression in the precepts of Manu, although the attempt to arrive at a compromise between the conflicting usages renders the language somewhat equivocal. That flesh-meat was repugnant to Manu is manifest from the condemnation which he pronounces against every one who is connected, however remotely, with the slaughter of an animal, either by consenting to it, or killing the animal, or cutting it up, or selling the flesh, or buying it, or cooking it, or serving it up, or eating it. Even whilst admitting that no sin is committed by eating flesh-meat after it has been[27] offered to the gods and Pitris, Manu declares that the man who abstains from it, will obtain a reward equal to that of a man who has performed a hundred Aswamedhas.[28] But still it was only natural that the Brahmanical lawgiver should exhibit some amount

Opposition between the milk and vegetable diet of the Bráhmans and the flesh-meat of the Kshatriyas.

Repugnance of Manu to flesh-meat.

Toleration of the usages of Kshatriyas and Vaisyas.

[27] Manu, v. 11—18; 48—53.

[28] Manu, v. 54.

of toleration towards the usages of those twice-born men, to whom the Bráhmans chiefly looked for presents and maintenance. Moreover, he had to deal with another difficulty, namely, the old animal sacrifices of the Vedic period, and to defend those sacrifices from the denunciations of the Buddhists. Accordingly, notwithstanding the simple character of the offerings to the gods and Pitris in treating of religious duties, he does permit and even enjoin sacrifices of cattle on certain occasions, and allow twice-born men to eat the flesh-meat which has been thus consecrated.[29] Other texts carry the spirit of toleration still further. Manu declares that there is no sin in lawfully eating flesh-meat, in drinking wine, and in caressing women, as all men are prone to those enjoyments; but he adds that men who refrain from such enjoyments will obtain a signal reward in another life.[30] The simplicity of Manu upon those points is truly charming, and the doctrine is not unknown in western systems of morality. It may be put in the following form. Certain pleasures are lawful, but still they are pleasures; if therefore a man abstain from such pleasures now, he will enjoy other pleasures hereafter. It should however be added that later Brahmanical legislators prohibited altogether the use of flesh-meat, either at entertainments to guests, or at the Sráddhas, or feasts of the dead; on the ground that whilst they were permitted in the earlier ages of mankind, they were forbidden in the present age of Kálí.[31]

Abstinence from lawful pleasures to be rewarded in another life.

5th, Scale of punishments for slander.

The scale of punishments in cases of slander

[29] Manu, v. 26—48. [30] Manu, v. 56.

[31] See Manu, appendix to the English translation.

furnishes a still more distinct idea of the caste system as conceived in the time of the code. A Kshatriya who slandered a Bráhman was to be fined a hundred panas; for the same crime a Vaisya was to be fined a hundred and fifty or two hundred panas, but a Súdra was to be whipped.[32] On the other hand, if a Bráhman slandered a Kshatriya he was to be fined fifty panas; if he slandered a Vaisya he was to be fined twenty-five panas; but if he slandered a Súdra he was only to be fined twelve panas. If, however, a Súdra insulted any man of the twice-born castes with gross invectives he was to have his tongue slit; if he mentioned the name and caste of the individual with contumely, an iron style ten fingers long was to be made red-hot and thrust into his mouth; and if through pride he dared to instruct a Bráhman respecting his duty, the Raja was to order that hot oil should be poured into his mouth and ear.[33]

In addition to these four castes there were a large number of outcastes, of whom the lowest were called Chandálas. The Chandálas were said to be the sons of a Súdra by a Brahmaní woman;[34] but probably they merely formed the lowest class of the community, and the origin of such hated unions as those indicated were condemned to belong to that class. "Chandálas," says Manu, "must dwell without the town. Their sole wealth must be dogs and asses; their clothes must consist of the mantles of deceased persons; their dishes must be broken pots; and

Chandálas or outcastes.

[32] The pana was a copper weight, or a copper coin, of about 200 grains; and was probably equivalent to the modern piece, or something less than a half-penny. See Princep's *Essays*.

[33] Manu, viii. 266—276.

[34] Manu, x. 12, 29, 30.

their ornaments must consist of rusty iron. No one who regards his duties must hold any intercourse with them; and they must marry only amongst themselves. By day they may roam about for the purposes of work, and be distinguished by the badges of the Raja; and they must carry out the corpse of any one who dies without kindred. They should always be employed to slay those who are sentenced by the law to be put to death; and they may take the clothes of the slain, their beds, and their ornaments." [35]

It is scarcely necessary to add, that subsequent to the time of Manu the number of castes became largely increased, and every hereditary calling became regarded as a separate caste. But still every Hindú is regarded as belonging to one or other of the four great castes; or else to one of those dubious classes of the community, which has caste laws of its own, although they cannot be referred to either of the four great castes which are specified by Manu.

[35] Manu, x. 51—58.

CHAPTER XI.

THE FOUR STAGES OF LIFE.

Two of the main objects which the compilers of the Brahmanical code appear to have had in view have now been unfolded, namely:—

Two objects of the code of Manu already unfolded.

1st, The authoritative promulgation of a ritual which should include the polytheistic worship of the Vedic deities, and at the same time superadd the dogma of rewards and punishments in association with the monotheistic worship of the god Brahma.

1st, The establishment of a national ritual.

2nd, To enforce a strict code of caste laws, which should for ever separate the twice-born castes from the Súdras, whilst establishing the ascendancy of the Brahmanical hierarchy over the whole.

2nd, The establishment of the caste system.

A third and equally important measure may now be taken into consideration; namely, the grand effort to map out the life of every man of the twice-born castes into four distinct periods, corresponding to four distinct phases of human existence; that of a student, a householder, a hermit, and a devotee. The object of this extraordinary division of individual existence seems to have been to bring every action of civil and family life into the area of religious duty. That such an arbitrary disposition of the individual should be universally accepted could scarcely be expected. The student may be eager

Question of four stages in the life of individuals treated in the present chapter.

to throw off the restrictions of pupilage, and to undertake the duties of a husband and a father; but the householder, as he advances in years, is not always prepared to sacrifice his domestic happiness for the sake of becoming a hermit or a devotee. Still the system of the four orders, as it is called, is universally recognized by the Hindús; and as the pious householder finds old age creeping upon him, he devotes more and more time and thought to his religious duties, with the view of approximating his life as far as possible with that of a devotee; and with the hope that in so doing he may expiate his sins by penances and good works, and obtain after death a happier existence in the next state of being. In other words, the ideal of Brahmanical life is always before the Hindú, and indeed is pleasing to his imagination. As a student the Bráhman must acquire a perfect knowledge of his duties; as a householder he must practise all those duties in the character of a married man and the father of a household; as a hermit he must mortify his body by penances and religious austerities; and as a devotee he must pass his remaining years in the contemplation of that Divine Essence in which he hopes to be ultimately absorbed, or of that Divine Spirit with whom he hopes ultimately to dwell.

Four stages or orders still recognized but not accepted.

Ideal of Brahmanical life.

The four orders.

The names of these four orders are as follows:—

1st, The Brahmachári, or student in the Veda.

2nd, The Grihastha, or married man and householder.

3rd, The Vánaprastha, or hermit.

4th, Sannyásí, or devotee.

1. THE BRAHMACHÁRI, or student.

The life of a Brahmachári commences from the day of investiture with the thread; but prior to that

ceremony certain rites are ordained, which are performed without the concurrence or knowledge of the child, and which are devoid of all historical significance. These rites consist in the purification of the babe, the giving it a name, the feeding it with rice in the sixth month from its birth, and the shaving of the head.[1] But the investiture with the thread is of the utmost importance in the life of the twice-born. The thread is the symbol which distinguishes the twice-born man from the Súdra; and the investiture is a second birth, which introduces the twice-born youth to a religious life, and sanctifies him for the study of the Veda.

Rites prior to the investiture with the thread.

Significance of the thread.

As regards the ceremony itself, a pleasing illustration is to be found in the story of the childhood of Ráma; but some important additional data are furnished by the code of Manu. The thread of the Bráhman is made of cotton, and is put over the head in three strings. The thread of the Kshatriya is made of hemp; but in more ancient times it seems to have been made of a strip of antelope's skin.[2] The thread of the Vaisya is made of wool. Considerable latitude is allowed as regards the age at which the ceremony should take place. The investiture ought to be carried out in the eighth year of a Bráhman, the eleventh year of a Kshatriya, and the twelfth year of a Vaisya. It might, however, be performed as early as the fifth year of a Bráhman,

Details.

Nature of the thread of the three twice-born castes.

Age of investiture.

[1] Manu, ii. 27—35.

[2] See the narrative of the investiture of Ráma, *ante*, Part iv. chap. iii. There are several allusions to the antelope, both in the Epics and in Manu, which seem to indicate that it was regarded as a sacred animal by the Vedic Aryans. It was not only frequently sacrificed to Vedic deities, but Manu states that the land on which the black antelope grazes is held fit for sacrifice; and thus he seems to lay down a distinction between the land of the Aryans and the land of Mlechhas. Manu, ii. 23.

the sixth year of a Kshatriya, and the eighth year of a Vaisya. But on no account was it to be delayed beyond the sixteenth year of Bráhmans, the twenty-second year of Kshatriyas, or the twenty-fourth year of Vaisyas. The reason for this differential scale probably lay in the fact that it was considered more incumbent on the young Bráhman to commence the study of the Veda at an early age than for the Kshatriya or Vaisya. If a twice-born youth passed the allotted age without investiture he was virtually excommunicated, and became an out-caste. He was degraded from the Gáyatrí; in other words, he was not permitted to offer up that prayer, which a twice-born man was alone permitted to utter. He was in fact treated as an impure man with whom no Bráhman would form a connection.[3]

Ceremony of begging for alms.

The most significant point in Manu's account of the investiture with the sacred thread is the ceremony of begging for alms.[4] On the day of investiture, the youth was to take his staff, and stand opposite to the Sun; this last rite being perhaps a relic of the ancient Sun worship. The youth was next to walk round the fire and beg for alms; and this ceremony is still performed by twice-born boys of every degree, by the son of a Raja as well as by the son of a Vaisya. In the case of a Bráhman youth, this begging for alms is not confined to the day of investiture, but may be carried on day by day throughout the whole period of student life; and in this manner the Brahmachári is supposed to main-

[3] Manu, ii. 36—40. Other details are added concerning the girdle, staff and mantle of men of the three twice-born castes; but they are of no historical significance, and are mere matters of ceremonial law.

[4] Manu, ii. 48—51.

tain both himself and his religious preceptor. But in the case of the Kshatriya or the Vaisya, the ceremony of begging is merely formal, and is confined to the day of investiture. At the present time the ceremony is performed precisely as it is described in the story of the investiture of Ráma and his brethren. The day is one of festivity. All the friends and relations gather together to witness the ceremony; and one and all are generally moved by that deep sympathy with childhood which is a special characteristic of the Hindú. The mother, the sisters, and the aunts are all anxious that the young neophyte should acquit himself with grace and dignity; and they all in turn give alms in food according to the simple ritual. Meantime humble friends and dependents are also admitted, and give their dole to the youthful mendicant as a mark of respect to the whole family and an honour to themselves.

Origin of the ceremony.

The origin of this strange rite is somewhat obscure. The idea especially of a son of a Raja collecting alms of food finds no expression in the Rig-Veda, and seems to have originated in the teachings of Buddha; but whether it is a relic of Brahmanism or Buddhism is a question which can be best decided after a consideration of the state of the Hindú world at the advent of Buddha, which will find a place in the next succeeding volume.

Purification of daughters by marriage, instead of by the thread.

The only point remaining for consideration is the purification of daughters. Manu directs that the same ceremonies should be performed for girls as are ordained for sons, but without either the utterance of sacred mantras, or the investiture with the sacred thread. Indeed, the nuptial ceremony in the case of girls is considered as taking the place of the investi-

ture of the thread, and is the commencement of the religious life of the female.[5]

Rules for the conduct of a Brahmachári after investiture. Their object.

The rules for the conduct of a Brahmachári after investiture may now be taken under consideration. The main object of these rules was to discipline every youth of the twice-born castes in the habitual discharge of every religious observance; and above all, to bring his reason under the perfect control of a faith which admits of no dispute, and which hears and obeys without a question or a murmur. This process is carried on during a period when the affections are the strongest and the mind the most impressible; and if at the same time the passions are kept under strict control by sacred study, by abstinence from all self-indulgence, as well as by daily worship of the gods and daily service rendered towards his preceptor, the student is soon imbued with a deep religious enthusiasm, and regards his preceptor with a reverential regard far exceeding that which pertains to any other form of religious or moral training. No absolute term of years is fixed for the discipline of student life. According to the code, it may be extended over thirty-six years, or eighteen years, or nine years, or until the student perfectly understands the Veda.[6] At the same time rules are laid down for those who are desirous of continuing the religious life of a Brahmachári throughout the whole term of existence. If the preceptor died first, the student for life was to attend upon his son, or upon his widow, or upon one of his paternal kinsmen, paying in either case the same respect which he had paid to his deceased master. Should, however, neither

Result.

[5] Manu, ii. 66, 67.

[6] Manu, iii. 1.

a son, nor the widow, nor a deceased kinsman be alive, the student was to take the place of the preceptor, and occupy his station, and maintain the sacred fires which he had consecrated.[7] The result of these rules is that even in the present day there are Bráhman students, or disciples, who devote their whole lives to sacred study and religious observances in the hermitage of an honoured and loved preceptor.

Duties of a Brahmachári in connection with religion.

The duties of the Brahmachári which are more immediately connected with religion, have been already described in the chapter devoted to the religion of the Bráhmans.[8] It consists in the reverent reading of the Veda in the attitude of worship, and the daily worship of the gods; and to this must be added the conduct of a Brahmachári towards his preceptor, and the control which he was constantly to maintain over his passions. The reverential study of the Veda was to begin and end each day with the three suppressions of the breath, and the utterance of the three mystic letters known as AUM, the three mystic words known as the Vyáhritis, and the three mystic measures known as the Gáyatrí; and it was also to begin and end with the ceremony of clasping the feet of the preceptor as a token of worship.

Reverent study of the Veda.

Worship of the gods.

Equal in importance to the study of the Veda was the daily worship of the gods at morning, noon, and night. The Brahmachári was first to purify himself with water, and then to repeat the Gáyatrí, with all his organs under control, and his attention fixed on the Supreme Being. This act of worship was to be especially performed at sun-rise and sun-set; and should the sun rise or set while the stu-

[7] Manu, ii. 243, 244, 247, 249.

[8] See *ante*, Chap. vii.

dent was asleep, he was to fast and repeat the Gáyatrí throughout an entire day. In like manner, day by day, the Brahmachári was to bathe and purify himself, and then to present the appointed offerings to the Devatas, the Rishis, and the Pitris; and to worship the images of the deities, and bring wood for the maintenance of the sacred fire. He was also to bring all that was required by his preceptor for the performance of religious rites, namely, pots of water, flowers, fresh earth, and the sacred kusa grass.[9]

Service to a preceptor.

Three classes of Brahmans.

As regards preceptors, it should be remarked that Manu lays down three different classes of Bráhmans, namely, the Achárya, the Upádhyá, and the Ritwij.[10]

1st, The Achárya, or Guru.

The Achárya is pre-eminently the spiritual preceptor of the young Bráhman. He is, or should be, the perfect master of the whole Veda. It is he who invests the Brahmachári with the sacrificial thread, and then imparts to him a knowledge of the four Vedas, with their respective Bráhmanas, or sacrificial codes, and Upanishads, or metaphysical teachings. It is this venerated preceptor who should be diligently served by his disciple; and who should indeed be supported by the daily mendicancy of the youthful Bráhman, who lives beneath his roof, and attends him as an affectionate and obedient pupil.

2nd, The Upádhyá, or schoolmaster.

The Upádhyá is a kind of sub-lecturer, or schoolmaster, who is said to instruct his pupils as a means of livelihood, and who teaches the six Vedángas, which are as follows:—

1st, Sikshá, or pronunciation.

2nd, Chandas, or metre.

[9] Manu, ii. 70 –87, 176, 182.

[10] Manu, ii. 140—143.

3rd, Vyákarana, or grammar.
4th, Nirukta, or explanation of words.
5th, Jyotisha, or astronomy.
6th, Kalpa, or ceremonial.[11]

3rd, The Ritwij, or sacrificer.

The Ritwij is the sacrificer, or priest properly so called, who receives a stipend for preparing the holy fire and conducting sacrifices. In the more elaborate ritual of an earlier period, the priests who appear to have served in the great sacrificial sessions, were divided into different classes according to their respective capacities. This classification, however, is merely illustrative of the ancient ritual of the Bráhmanas, and is otherwise devoid of all historical significance.

Respect due from a Brahmachári to his preceptor.

The student was bound on all occasions to show respect to his preceptor, and to salute him first at every meeting, whether the teacher was a Bráhman or otherwise, and whether the instruction received was popular, ceremonial, or sacred.[12] This law has left a lasting impress upon the national mind; and all who have ever imparted instruction to youthful Hindús will be able to testify to their docility and good manners, and to their special anxiety to give no offence. Manu, with a singular knowledge of human nature, has also ordained that the student is never to imitate the gait, speech, or manner of his preceptor. Should the student hear any censorious discourse respecting his preceptor, he was either to cover his ears, or to move to another place. Should he venture to censure his preceptor, however justly, he would be born again as an ass; should he defame his precep-

[11] For a learned account of the six Vedángas, see Professor Max Müller's History of Sanskrit Literature, page 109 *et seq.*

[12] Manu, ii. 117.

tor falsely he would be born a dog; should he take the goods of his preceptor without leave he would be born a small worm; should he envy the merit of his preceptor he would be born an insect or reptile.[13]

Maintenance of a strict control over the passions.

The remaining important point in the training of the Brahmachári was the maintenance of a strict control over the passions. "A wise man," says Manu, "will restrain his organs as a charioteer restrains restless horses. Desire is not satisfied by enjoyment any more than the sacrificial fire is appeased by ghee, but rather will blaze more vehemently. The man who resigns all the pleasures of sense is better than the man who enjoys them all. The man who devotes himself to sensual gratifications can never procure happiness, either by the Vedas, or by alms, or by sacrifices, or by rigid observances, or by pious austerities; for if a single organ obtain the mastery, his knowledge of divine things passes away, as water flows away through a single hole in a leathern bottle."[14] Under these general rules the Brahmachári is strictly enjoined to abstain from honey, flesh-meat, perfumes, chaplets of flowers, gaming, music, dancing, and from wantonly looking upon women.[15] He must, however, salute the wives of his preceptor, but he must render them no personal service; and he must never sit in a sequestered place, even with his nearest female relatives, "lest desire should snatch wisdom from the wise."[16]

Brahmanical disquisition on earthly happiness.

In connection, however, with these strict rules, there is a curious disquisition in the Brahmanical code upon earthly happiness, which terminates in

[13] Manu, ii. 194—201.
[14] Manu, ii. 88, 94, 96, 97, 99.
[15] Manu, ii. 177—179.
[16] Manu, ii. 210—215.

the material conclusion that the chief temporal good consists in the union of virtue, wealth, and lawful pleasure.[17] Perhaps a higher tone of moral sentiment might have been expected from a divine lawgiver; but whatever may be the ostensible idea of the day, the bulk of mankind appear to be still actuated by the principle laid down by the old Hindú legislator.

II. The GRIHASTHA, or householder.

When a twice-born had passed through the order of Brahmachári, or religious student, he entered that of a Grihastha, or married man and householder. Here it should be remarked that marriage is an obligation in the eyes of the Hindú lawgiver which he never fails to enforce. Even in the case of Bráhmans he seems to consider it as incumbent upon every man to marry a wife, as it is to study the Veda or worship the gods; for he specifies three debts that all men are bound to satisfy, namely, that to the Rishis by the study of the Veda, that to the gods by the offering of sacrifices, and that to the Pitris, or ancestors, by begetting a son.[18] This obligation of begetting a son originated in the ancient belief, which finds expression both in Hindú and Greek mythology, that after the death of a father the services of a son were necessary to offer water and cakes to the ghost of the deceased parent. Having thus established marriage as an institution by the strongest of all religious obligations, namely, the happiness of parents in a future state, the Hindú

Obligation to marry incumbent upon all men.

Necessity for a son to offer the funeral cakes to a deceased father.

Marriage regulations for producing a healthy progeny.

[17] Manu, ii. 224.

[18] Manu, iv. 257. In another text, however, reference is made to thousands of Bráhmans who have avoided all sensuality, and have consequently left no families. Manu, ii. 249; v. 159. From this it would appear that the Bráhmans represented some of the more famous Buddhist teachers as being Bráhman sages, in the same way that they represented the old Vedic Rishis as belonging to their order.

lawgiver lays down certain rules for insuring a strong and healthy offspring to every marriage union. He indicates with tolerable clearness the age at which a young man should marry; the degrees of relationship in which a man and woman should not marry; the families from which a man ought not to take a wife; and even the damsel whose moral or physical defects might prevent her from finding favour in the eyes of a husband. He then proceeds to describe the model damsel whom a young man should marry; and winds up with a very brief notice of the marriage ceremony.

Four classes of precepts.

These laws and precepts may be considered under four different heads; and will be found to illustrate the national ideas of marriage which still prevail among the Hindús. These four heads are as follows:—

1st, Ceremonies at the close of student-life.
2nd, Prohibited marriages.
3rd, Qualified damsels.
4th, Marriage ceremonies.

1st, Ceremonies connected with the close of student-life.

The ceremonies connected with the return of a Brahmachári to his father's house would seem to indicate that the Hindú lawgiver was in no way cognizant of infant marriages as far as the bridegroom was concerned. No mention is made of early betrothals, and every man of the twice-born castes is directed to marry at the termination of his life as a student. Manu says:—"A man aged thirty may marry a girl of twelve; a man aged twenty-four may marry a girl of eight; but if his duties would be otherwise impeded let him marry immediately." [19]

Relative age of bridegroom and bride.

[19] Manu, ix. 94.

It is, moreover, easy to infer from the regulations as regards the conduct of a Brahmachári towards the wife of his preceptor, and from the specified periods of student-life, that twice-born men could rarely have been married before they had attained a full marriageable age. Under such circumstances the return of the Brahmachári to his father's house involved a family festivity. The studies of the neophyte had been brought to a conclusion. The sweets of married life were all before him. Manu, accordingly, enjoins that the student should be praised by his preceptor, and honourably welcomed by his father. That he should be seated on a couch and decked with flowers as the hero of the occasion. Above all, that he should be presented with a cow.[20] Now, the possession of a cow by a Hindú in a rural village is a sign of comparative affluence, whilst the animal itself is worshipped and reverenced as a deity. It furnishes the primitive luxuries, the milk, the butter, and the curds, which are so grateful to the Hindús; and it is the living representative of the prolific earth-goddess, the type of the beautiful Lakshmí, who is the wife of Vishnu and the goddess of all prosperity. When, therefore, a young man possessed a cow, it was only natural that he should dream of possessing a bride.

Festivities associated with the return of a bridegroom to his father's house.

Present of a cow.

As regards prohibited marriages, Manu directed that a man should not marry a wife whose family name indicated that she had descended from the same family stem as his father or mother, or who was in the sixth degree of relationship.[21] Again, a twice-born man was never to take a wife from a

2nd, Prohibited marriages.

Degrees.

Unsuitable families.

[20] Manu, iii. 3, 4.

[21] Manu, iii. 5.

family which had omitted to fulfil its religious duties, or had produced no sons, or in which the Veda had not been read, or which was distinguished by thick hair on the body, or which was subject to consumption, indigestion, epilepsy, leprosy, or elephantiasis. Here it should be remarked that Manu distinctly classifies the non-observance of religious duty, and neglect of the Veda, with physical defects, such as leprosy and elephantiasis. Thus, whilst the young student, fresh from the instructions and discipline imparted by his preceptor, was effectually restrained from marrying a wife out of an irreligious family, a strong pressure was placed upon heretics and unbelievers to observe their religious duties and devote some time to the reading of the Veda, lest their daughters should remain unmarried. Some of the laws as regards constitutional debility are amusing from their frank simplicity. To refrain from marrying a damsel because her father had a weak digestion, might be a prudent measure; but the law would bear rather hardly upon the weaker sex, inasmuch as a damsel could scarcely refuse to be given to a husband, whatever might be the state of his digestive organs. The restriction against marrying a girl because her family was distinguished by thick hair on the body, seems somewhat inexplicable. It probably originated in the current Oriental idea that thick hair on the body denoted strong passions; and such tendencies on the part of women are always regarded by Hindús with peculiar aversion, and are often denounced by Native moralists with a bitterness which is scarcely fair.

Non-observance of religious duty classified with physical defects.

Manu's list of damsels whom a man is forbidden to marry, is equally curious. He says:—"A twice-

Unsuitable damsels.

born man should not marry a girl with red hair, nor one with a deformed limb, nor one troubled with habitual sickness, nor one without hair, nor one with too much hair, nor one who talks too much, nor one with inflamed eyes. Neither should he marry a girl with the name of a constellation, or a tree, or a river, or a barbarous nation, or a mountain, or a winged creature, or a snake, or a slave, or with any name which raises an image of terror. Neither should he marry a girl who has no brother, lest her father should take her first-born son as his own to offer the funeral cakes; nor one whose father is not well known, lest an illicit marriage should already have been contracted between the girl and another man."[22] The last two laws seem to call for some explanation. It was ruled that every man ought to have a son, who should perform the funeral rites of his father, and present his spirit on stated occasions with cakes and libations. If a man had no son, but only a daughter, he might adopt the first-born son of his daughter, and thus perchance leave his daughter's husband childless. Accordingly a twice-born man was prohibited from marrying a girl who had no brothers, lest after becoming a father he should find himself virtually childless. The remaining law is significant in another direction. The sentiment with regard to female purity is very strong amongst the Hindús. A damsel who has been once betrothed is regarded as ineligible for marriage to another, even if no consummation has taken place. Accordingly Manu directs that a twice-born man should never marry a damsel whose father was not well

[22] Manu, iii. 8, 9.

known, lest an illicit marriage should have been previously contracted.

3rd, Qualified damsels.

As regards damsels who are qualified to become the wives of twice-born men, Manu lays down the following precepts:—"A man of the three twice-born castes should choose a girl for his wife whose form is without defect, who has an agreeable name, who walks gracefully like a young elephant, who has a moderate quantity of hair, whose teeth are of a moderate size, and whose body is exquisitely soft."[23] This description of a qualified Hindú female is sufficiently general without being too particular; but like the list of prohibited families and prohibited damsels, it is strangely wanting in that sentiment which prevails in the traditions of the Kshatriyas. Moreover, there is an opposition between the Kshatriyas ideal and the Brahmanical ideal, which is worth noting. The conception which appears to have floated before the fancy of a Kshatriya bard was that of a fair or golden-complexioned nymph, graceful and retiring, delicate and slender-waisted. The later Puránic bards were more materialistic and sensuous, and their ideal was that of a young damsel who walked, as Manu says, like a young elephant, and who was moreover endowed with all the exuberant charms of maturer years. In other words, the Kshatriyas loved fair and graceful women, and sought to be loved in return, after the manner of young and chivalrous warriors; whilst the later Bráhmans were as devoid of sentiment as monks shut out from the world by the bars of their cells, and indulged in dreams of voluptuous forms that merely pleased the senses and provoked desire.

Opposition between the Kshatriya and Brahman ideal of female beauty.

[23] Manu, iii. 10.

4th, Marriage ceremonies.

The marriage ceremonies of the Hindús are but very briefly indicated by Manu, probably because they were considered to be so well known as to render details unnecessary. It is simply ordained that when the bridegroom is of the same caste as the bride he should take her hand before the altar.[24] It may, however, be as well to indicate in the present place the leading rites in the marriage ceremony, such as are performed in the present day, and which appear to have been handed down from time immemorial. These rites are eleven in number, namely :—

Eleven leading rites.

1st, The procession of the bridegroom to the house of the father of the bride. Procession.

2nd, The hospitable reception of the bridegroom. Hospitality.

3rd, The gift of the bride by her father to the bridegroom. Gift of bride.

4th, The binding together of the hands of the bride and bridegroom with kusa grass. The binding.

5th, The gift of a waistcloth and mantle by the bridegroom to the bride. Gift to the bride.

6th, The tying together of the skirts of the mantles of the bride and bridegroom. The tying.

7th, The oblations of the bridegroom to the god Agni or "Fire," and the dropping of the rice on the fire by the bride. Oblations to Agni.

8th, The hand of the bride solemnly taken by the bridegroom in marriage. The hand.

9th, The steps of the bride on a stone and muller, the domestic implement for grinding spices and condiments. The steps.

10th, The walk of the bride round the nuptial fire. Walk round the fire.

[24] Manu, iii. 43.

11th, The seven steps in seven circles, which the bride is directed to take by the bridegroom; the seventh step rendering the marriage complete and irrevocable.

The seven final steps.

Domestic life of the Grihastha.

The precepts which refer to the domestic life of the Grihastha, or householder, are characterized by the same minuteness of detail as those which refer to his marriage duties and religious observances. During the most responsible period in the life of man, when he is discharging all the onerous obligations of a husband, a father, and the master of a household, he is virtually deprived of all independence, and compelled to regulate his daily life by a code of authoritative law, which brings almost every one of his acts within the sphere either of merits or demerits, to be punished or rewarded hereafter according to the balance of the sum total of the one over the sum total of the other. These ordinances might be considered under the two heads of means of livelihood and moral conduct; but the former have already been indicated in the preceding chapter on the four castes, whilst the moral rules find general expression in the Brahmanical system. It may, however, be remarked that the precepts respecting means of livelihood refer, not so much to the twice-born castes generally, as to the Brâhmans alone. Indeed, the occupations of the two other twice-born castes were sufficiently known and acknowledged. The Kshatriyas were the rulers and defenders of the community. As soldiers they were maintained by the state, and also were occasionally in a position to acquire lands and riches by foreign conquest. The Vaisyas, again, maintained themselves by merchandise; and it will be seen hereafter, in dealing with

Means of livelihood and moral conduct.

Respective occupations of the three twice-born castes.

the Buddhist period, that such merchants became an important part of the community, and carried their goods from city to city in hundreds of waggons. But the Bráhmans had no ostensible calling save their religious duties as preceptors and priests; and Manu endeavoured to place them as far as possible upon an independent footing, by setting forth the duty of Kshatriyas and Vaisyas to present alms and gifts to the Bráhmans, not merely as a religious obligation, but as a privilege only accorded to worthy and virtuous men. The compilers of the code, however, appear to have been fearful lest the Bráhmans should sink to the position of sordid mendicants; and specially enjoined that the Bráhman should avoid the habit of begging, since by taking many gifts the divine light soon fades away from the soul.[25]

Idea that the Bráhmans should be maintained by the public.

Significance as regards the gifts to be accepted by Bráhmans.

The third and fourth orders, of Vánaprastha and Sannyásí, or hermit and devotee, are frequently recognized in the Epics, and express the very essence of Brahmanism. These two orders, although apparently similar as regards external life, present some striking points of difference as regards internal life, with reference to the objects to be respectively gained by each mode of living. Thus the Vánaprastha, or hermit, devoted his time to religious austerities with the view of mortifying his passions. The Sannyásí, or devotee, is supposed, on the other hand, to have overcome all, the desires of the flesh; and therefore devoted the remainder of his days to religious contemplation, with the view of attaining final beatitude. The latter object was indeed kept

III. The VÁNAPRASTHA, or hermit.

Distinction between the Vánaprastha and Sannyásí.

[25] Manu, iv. 186.

in view by men belonging to either order; but was more immediately the aim of the Sannyásí. The duties of these two orders may now be indicated as follows.

Manu says:—

Religious austerities of the Vánaprastha, or hermit.

"When the twice-born man has remained in the order of Grihastha, or householder, until his muscles become flaccid, and his hair grey, and he sees a child of his child, let him abandon his household and repair to the forest, and dwell there in the order of Vánaprastha, or hermit. He should be accompanied by his wife, if she choose to attend him, but otherwise he should commit her to the care of his sons. He should take with him the consecrated fire, and all the domestic implements for making oblations to the fire, and there dwell in the forest, with perfect control over all his organs; and here day by day he should perform the five sacraments with many sorts of pure food, such as holy sages used to eat, with green herbs, roots, and fruit. He should wear a black antelope's hide, or a vesture of bark, and bathe morning and evening; and he should suffer his nails, and the hair of his head and beard, to grow continually. He should make offerings from such food as he himself may eat, and give alms to the utmost of his power; and he should honour all those who visit his hermitage with presents of water, roots, and fruit. He should be constantly engaged in reading the Veda; he should be patient in all extremities; he should be universally benevolent, and entertain a tender affection for all living creatures; his mind should be ever intent on the Supreme Being; and he should be a perpetual giver of gifts, but not a receiver.[26] He should slide backwards and forwards on the ground; or stand a whole day on tip-toe; or continue in motion by rising and sitting alternately; but every day at sunrise, at noon, and at sunset he should go to the waters and bathe. In the hot season he should sit exposed to five fires, namely, four blaz-

[26] Manu, vi. 1—8. Vishnu Puráaa, iii. 9.

ing around him, whilst the sun is burning above him; in the rainy season he should stand uncovered without even a mantle, while the clouds pour down their heaviest showers; in the cold season he should wear damp vesture. He should increase the austerity of his devotion by degrees, until by enduring harsher and harsher mortifications he has dried up his bodily frame." [27]

As regards the life to be pursued by a Sannyásí, Manu lays down the following direction:—

IV. The SANNYSI, or devotee.

"When a Bráhman has thus lived in the forest during the third portion of his life as a Vánaprastha, he should for the fourth portion of it become a Sannyásí, and abandon all sensual affections, and repose wholly in the Supreme Spirit. When a Bráhman has reposited in his mind the sacrificial fires, he may proceed direct from the second order, or that of Grihastha, or even from the first order, or that of Brahmachâri, to the fourth order, or that of Sannyásí. The glory of that Bráhman who passes from the order of Grihastha to that of Sannyásí illuminates the higher worlds. He should take an earthen water-pot, dwell at the roots of large trees, wear coarse vesture, abide in total solitude, and exhibit a perfect equanimity towards all creatures. He should wish neither for death nor for life; but expect his appointed time, as a hired servant expects his wages. He should look down as he advances his foot, lest he should touch anything impure. He should drink water that has been purified by straining through a cloth, lest he hurt an insect. He should, if he speaks at all, utter words that are purified by truth. He should by all means keep his heart pure. He should bear a reproachful speech with patience, and speak reproachfully to no man; and he should never utter a word relating to vain illusory things. He should delight in meditating on the Supreme Spirit, and sit fixed in such meditation, without needing anything earthly, with-

Life of religious contemplation to obtain final beatitude.

[27] Manu, vi. 22—32. Vishnu Purâna, iii. 9.

out one sensual desire, and without any companion but his own soul."[28]

Means of subsistence.

"The Bráhman who has become a Sannyási should at no time gain his subsistence by explaining omens and prodigies; nor by skill in astrology and palmistry; nor by casuistry and expositions of holy texts. He should not go near a house which is frequented by Vánaprasthas, or Bráhmans, or birds, or dogs, or other beggars. The vessels on which he should receive food are a gourd, a wooden bowl, an earthen dish, or a basket made of reeds. He should only ask for food once a day, and that should be in the evening, when the smoke of the kitchen fires has ceased, when the pestle lies motionless, when the burning charcoal is extinguished, when people have eaten, and when dishes are removed. If he fails to obtain food he should not be sorrowful; if he succeed in obtaining it he should not be glad. He should only care to obtain a sufficiency to support life, and he should not be anxious about his utensils. He should not habituate himself to eat much at a time; for if a Sannyási habituates himself to eat much, he becomes inclined to sensual gratification.[29]

Subjects of reflection.

"A Sannyási should reflect on the transmigrations of men which are caused by their sinful deeds; on their downfall into a region of darkness, and their torments in the mansions of Yama; on their separation from those whom they love, and their union with those whom they hate; on their strength overpowered by old age, and their bodies racked with disease; on their agonizing departure from this corporeal frame, and their formation again in the womb; on the misery attached to embodied spirits from a violation of their duties, and the imperishable bliss which attaches to embodied spirits who have abundantly performed every duty.[30]

The Supreme Spirit.

"A Sannyási should also reflect with all the powers of his mind on the subtle indivisible essence of the Supreme Spirit, and its complete existence in all beings, whether extremely high or extremely low.[31]

[28] Manu, vi. 22—31.
[29] Manu, vi. 32—49.
[30] Manu, vi. 61—64.
[31] Manu, vi. 65.

"The body is a mansion, with bone for its rafters and beams; with nerves and tendons for cords; with muscles and blood for mortar; with skin for its outward covering; and filled with no sweet perfumes, but loaded with refuse. It is a mansion infested by age and by sorrow; the seat of diseases; harassed with pains, haunted with the quality of darkness, and incapable of standing long. Such a mansion of the vital soul should always be quitted with cheerfulness by its occupier.[32]

Inferiority of material existence.

It will now be seen from the foregoing precepts that in all essentials the life of the Sannyásí resembled that of the Buddhist priest; and hence it may be inferred, that whilst the compilers of the code of Manu were consistent in their denunciations against atheism and heresy, they exhibited a toleration, very much resembling that which was displayed by the Roman Catholic Church, towards all fanatics and enthusiasts, and utilized them for the maintenance of the supremacy of Brahmanism. This spirit of inclusion was doubtless one of the causes of the success which attended the rise of the Brahmanical hierarchy. Whilst the Bráhmans represented the Rishis of the old Vedic times as belonging to their own order, they held out the hand of religious fellowship to those devotees, who would otherwise have sought for rest under the shadow of Buddhistic heresy.

Resemblance between the Sannyásis and the Buddhist devotees.

Spirit of inclusion displayed by the Brahmanical hierarchy.

Such, then, was the ideal of Hindú life as understood by the ancient Bráhmans. How far it was modified by Buddhism, or associated with Buddhism, is a difficult question, which must be reserved for investigation in the next volume. One conclusion seems to be certain, that this Brahmanical ideal was

Ideal of Hindú life may have been partially derived from Buddhism, but not from the Vedic worship.

[32] Manu, vi. 76, 77.

not that of the Vedic Aryans, who indulged in healthy but material aspirations for a long life of physical enjoyment.[33] It was rather an ideal which originated in an elaborate belief of a future existence of the soul after the death of the body, combined with the dogma that happiness hereafter depended upon a close adherence in the present life to the arbitrary dictates of ceremonial and conventional law, and a useless concentration of the intellectual energies in contemplating mere metaphysical abstractions. In the old patriarchal time of the Vedic Aryans, men appear to have led active lives to the very last; to have taken young wives in their old age, and gathered in their harvests, and bargained their cattle and merchandise, and fought against their enemies, and feasted and revelled, until perchance they drifted into dotage and sank into the inevitable tomb, to enter upon a dreary existence as ghosts or shades. But under the priestly domination of the Bráhmans, advancing age was not only regarded as a sign of decay, but as a sharp intimation that the individual was about to enter upon an existence in which he would be rewarded or punished according to the sum of his good and evil deeds in this life; and that the individual must peremptorily prepare for that future existence by turning his back upon all the pleasures of the world, and by contemplating that Supreme Spirit to whom he was about to return. These two conflicting ideas still find expression in modern humanity; and the

Originated in a belief in a future state.

Expression of Vedic and Brahmanic ideas of life in modern humanity.

[33] There are several allusions in the Mahá Bhárata and Rámáyana to Rajas who have spent their old age in contemplation and austerities; but the incidents are so foreign to the main spirit of Vedic tradition, as well as to the aspirations expressed in the hymns of the Rig-Veda, that they may be regarded as mythical interpolations of a comparatively recent date.

great problem of old age appears to be how to combine the two. Each one separately considered seems to involve a departure from true wisdom; an attempt to escape from the responsibilities of existence. The man who continues to devote his old age exclusively to the pursuits of this world, seems to ignore those religious duties which are associated with a belief in the immortality of the soul; and the man who devotes his old age exclusively to religious retirement and contemplation, seems in like manner to ignore those moral duties which appertain to the father and the citizen.

CHAPTER XII.

HINDÚ WOMEN.

Condition of Hindú women in Vedic and Brahmanic times.

THE social condition of Hindú men, as members of a caste system and masters of households, has now been brought under consideration; but an important branch of inquiry yet remains for investigation, namely, the condition of Hindú women in Vedic and Brahmanic times.

Marriage relations in the Vedic period.

In the previous chapter, which describes eight kinds of marriage, the circumstances under which marriage relations were formed in the Vedic period were brought under review; and it was seen that damsels were purchased, or won by feats of arms, or carried away captive after a victory; or a union, more or less temporary, was occasionally brought about in the old idyllic fashion, without any rite or ceremony whatever. But as far as can be gathered from the Kshatriya traditions preserved in the Epics, the two leading institutions in Vedic times were Polyandry, or the marriage of one woman to all the brothers of a family, and the Swayamvara, or choice of a husband on the part of the maiden.

Compensation to the female in the case of irregular unions.

The social condition of women who have been purchased, or won by feats of arms, or carried away captive, is a question which may be safely left to the imagination of those who are familiar with the

peculiar conditions of the feminine mind. It may be remarked that in general there is a latent power of adaptation to circumstances in human nature, which would speedily reconcile the female slave and captive to a change of condition; especially if the damsel found that she had really gained the affections of her new lord and master. Moreover, in a lawless age polygamy is virtually a protection to the damsel, who has been deprived of her natural protectors by the chances of war or death of kinsmen; and the services she might render in a patriarchal household, would in a great measure neutralize the jealous hatred with which she would otherwise have been regarded by the legitimate wife and mistress of a family. Unless, however, polygamy is an established institution, maintained by the religious dogma that every man should be the father of a son, an amount of feminine influence is generally exercised by the legitimate wife, which is sufficient to curb the irregular desires of a discontented husband.[1] Indeed,

Position of a damsel in a polygamous household.

Superior authority of the legitimate wife.

[1] An ancient legend is preserved in the Vishnu Purána, which treats of a submissive husband as an exceptional case occurring in a polygamous age, but at the same time sufficiently illustrates the moral strength of women. As it is given as a quotation from an ancient ballad, it may possibly be referred to the Vedic age. It may be reproduced in the following form:—

"There was a certain Raja, named Jyámagha, and he was the husband of Saivyá. And Jyámagha was more submissive to his wife than any man who has ever been born, or whoever will be born; for Saivyá was barren, but her husband was sore afraid of her, and would not take another woman to be his wife. And it came to pass that Jyámagha went out to fight his enemy; and he routed him, and drove him from the field of battle. And the daughter of the enemy was very beautiful, and she was left alone in the battle-field, and her large eyes rolled wildly with fear, and she cried out:—'Save me! Save me!' And Jyámagha was smitten with her beauty, and he said within his heart:—'This damsel is very fair, and I have no child; therefore I will take her to be my wife, and she shall bear me a son.' So Jyámagha took the damsel in his chariot, and drove away to his own city; and his wife Saivyá, and all his Ministers and Chieftains, and all the people of the city, came out to meet him. And when Saivyá saw the damsel standing on the left hand of the Raja, her heart swelled within her, and she said:—'Who is this damsel?' And the Raja was afraid, and knew not

it would be easy to infer that in a primitive and peaceful community, where polygamy was not recognized as an institution, and where the duty of becoming the father of a son was not regarded as a religious obligation, the free play of the affections and emotions would speedily settle the main problem connected with marriage, by generally distributing the young men and women into married pairs, bound to each other by an instinctive affection, and separated from all others by a mutual jealousy.

Natural tendency to monogamy.

As regards the two main institutions of Vedic times, Polyandry and the Swayamvara, little need be said. Modern taste revolts from a consideration of the conditions of Polyandry, which only satisfies an instinct at the expense of all delicacy of feeling and sentiment. The Swayamvara is a far more pleasing ceremony, associated as it is with a pure idea of woman's love centering in a single individual to the exclusion of all others, and finding a full response in the chivalrous affection of a Hindú hero. Indeed, in the story of Nala and Damayantí the ceremony is accompanied by an exquisite conception of maidenly modesty, followed by the self-abnegating devotion of a wife and a mother; and the charming details will scarcely fail to excite the sympathies of all who care to apprehend the depths of woman's tenderness towards a husband whom she

Polyandry and the Swayamvara.

Pleasing idea involved in the Swayamvara.

what to say; and he replied in haste:—'This is my daughter-in-law!' Then Saivyá said:—'No son has been born unto me; therefore tell me what son of yours is the husband of this damsel?' And the Raja replied:—'The son you have yet to bear to me, the same shall be the husband of this damsel.' At these words Saivyá smiled gently, and said:—'So let it be!' And the Raja and his wife entered the palace."

It will be seen that the foregoing legend bears a marvellous resemblance to that of the return of Agamemnon and Cassandra to Argos after the siege of Troy. Had Jyámagha proved less submissive, his wife Saivyá might have appeared in the character of Clytemnestra.

has really and truly loved. But still the institution is an exaggerated expression of the age of chivalry, and seems to have originated in the very Polyandry which later Hindúism affects to ignore. That a lover should seek to win the affections of the damsel whom he loves, by a series of fond attentions and devoted service, is in strict accordance with the instincts of human nature; but it is contrary to the conception of maidenly modesty, which prevails in all civilized communities, that a damsel should publicly manifest her passion for a man who has not previously given her undoubted proofs of his affection. This maidenly modesty is certainly to be found in the story of Nala and Damayantí; but it bears the impress of having been introduced by the Hindú bard, and the mythical details respecting the talking birds with golden wings seem to give weight to the suspicion.

Exaggerated expression of chivalry.

If, however, we turn to the Brahmanic age, as it finds expression in the code of Manu, we find that Polyandry and the Swayamvara are alike ignored, and so too is the sentiment that the woman is in any way the equal to the man. The old Vedic idea that religious worship should be performed by a married pair is indeed preserved in Manu, but without any observation which would imply equality. "Women," he says, "were created to be mothers, and men to be fathers; it is therefore ordained in the Veda that religious rites should be performed by the husband together with the wife."[2] But in every other direction the entire dependence and subordination of women is indicated in the most decided language, as will be seen from the following texts:—

Marriage relations in the Brahmanic period.

Polyandry and the Swayamvara ignored.

Social inferiority of women.

Dependence of females upon fathers, husbands, and sons.

[2] Manu, ix.

"A girl, a young woman, or a matron must do nothing according to her own pleasure, even in her own dwelling-place. In childhood she is dependent on her father; in youth on her husband; in widowhood on her sons. If she has no sons, she must be dependent upon the kinsmen of her deceased husband; if he left no kinsmen, she must be dependent upon the kinsmen of her father; if she have no such kinsmen, she must be dependent upon the Raja. A woman must never seek to be independent. She must never wish to separate herself from her father, her husband, or her sons; for by such a separation she exposes both her father's family and her husband's family to contempt. The father is reprehensible who does not give his daughter in marriage at the proper time; the husband is reprehensible who does not pay due attention to his wife; and the son is reprehensible who does not protect his mother after the death of her lord.[3]

[3] Manu, v. 147—149; ix. 3, 4. Notwithstanding, however, these restrictions upon Hindú women, the wife is occasionally the master in the household, and exercises an influence which would be startling even in Europe. An amusing illustration of this fact is to be found in the biography of Ramdoolal Dey by Baboo Grish Chunder Ghose. Ramdoolal had purchased and stocked his warehouses with six hundred bags of the finest sugar. After a while the sugar market became favourable and he sold the whole. Meantime his wife had engaged a number of Bráhmans to read the Mahá Bhárata; and for ninety days thousands of native women flocked to the house to hear the sacred stories, and were entertained with sherbet made from the sugar. When, therefore, Ramdoolal ordered delivery of the six hundred bags he found that he had only forty left. In the excitement of the moment he called his wife an angel of ill-luck; upon which she ran to her bed-chamber, and bolted the door behind her. The finale of the story may be best told in the language of the biographer:—"Let those who call the Bengalee ungallant and the oppressor of the female sex, contemplate the scene I am about to describe. Slowly Ramdoolal bent his steps in the direction his wife had taken. Finding the doors of her chamber closed, he knocked gently; sobs alone answered him from within. He confessed the enormity of his crime, he called himself a coward and a fool. By a thousand endearing epithets he craved his lady's pardon; mercy was accorded by heaven, and would a woman deny it? There he stood in that outer room; the great man humbled to the dust, moaning and sobbing himself as the moans and sobs of his wife came piercingly upon his ears. At last the bruised heart of his spouse softened; she cried herself to pity. Rising from the bed on which she had flung herself, she slowly drew back the bolts and her husband entered. Throwing himself at her feet, he again and again craved for forgiveness. Forgiveness was at last purchased by him for the worth in gold of one lakh of rupees. This little fortune (about £10,000) Ramdoolal's wife, at her death, left

The duty of a father as regards the marriage of his daughters is laid down very explicitly by Manu; and indeed is felt by every Hindú in the present day to be a religious as well as a family and social obligation.

Duty of a father to his daughter.

"Every man," says Manu, "should give his daughter in marriage to an excellent and handsome youth of the same caste, even though she has not attained her age; but it is better that a damsel, though marriageable, should stay at home until her death, rather than that her father should give her in marriage to a worthless bridegroom. A damsel should wait three years after she is marriageable; and then if her father has not given her in marriage, she may choose for herself a bridegroom of equal caste, and neither she nor her chosen husband commits any offence. A damsel who thus chooses her husband should not carry with her the jewels which she received from her father, nor those which have been given to her by her mother or brethren; and if she carries them away she commits theft. A man who thus marries a damsel after she is of full age, should not give a nuptial present; since her father lost his dominion over her by detaining her at a time when she might have been a mother."[4]

Cases when a damsel may choose her own husband.

The duties of husbands towards their wives are also defined with significant fulness of detail in the Brahmanical code; and an attempt is obviously made to reconcile the wife to the subordinate position in which she is placed by the Hindú lawgiver.

Duties of husbands towards their wives.

to her brother." The writer of this biography is an enlightened and educated Hindú, and the editor of a Native newspaper in the English language; but his idea of gallantry is open to correction. A European would scarcely consider it gallantry on the part of a husband to purchase the forgiveness of a wife with £10,000.

[4] Manu, ix. 88—96. This permission, which is granted to maidens of a certain age, to choose their own husband, must not be confounded with the Swayamvara, although it may be a Brahmanical reproduction of the Vedic custom. The Swayamvara involved the idea of a father providing for a daughter on her arriving at a marriageable age, by inviting a number of young men to an entertainment at which she was to choose a bridegroom.

Wives to be honoured and decorated.

"A married woman," says Manu, "must be honoured and adorned by her father, her brethren, and her husband, if they would obtain abundant prosperity. Where females are honoured, there the deities are pleased; but where the females are not honoured, there all religious acts are of no avail. Should the women of a family, not being duly honoured, pronounce a curse against any house, that house and all belonging to it will utterly perish, as if destroyed by a sacrifice for the death of an enemy. Therefore let all men who are desirous of wealth continually supply the women of their family with ornaments, apparel, and food at all times of festival. If a wife be not elegantly attired she will not exhilarate her husband, and unless her husband be pleased there will be no offspring. When a wife is gaily adorned her whole house is embellished, but if she be without ornament the whole house will be deprived of decoration.[5] When good women thus irradiate the houses of their lords, they are like unto Lakshmí, the goddess of abundance. From the wife alone proceed offspring, good household management, solicitous attention, most exquisite caresses, and heavenly beatitude. She who deserts not her lord, but keeps her heart, speech, and body in subjection to him, shall obtain his mansion in heaven, and be called Sadhwí, or good and faithful; but she who is disloyal to her husband, will be born in the next life from the womb of a jackal, or be tormented with the horrible diseases which punish vice."[6]

Duties of a wife.

The duties of a wife towards her husband and household generally are equally significant.

"She must always," says Manu, "be in a cheerful temper, devoting herself to the good management of the household, taking great care of the household furniture, and keeping down all her expenses with a frugal hand. The husband to whom her father has given her, or to whom her brother has given her with the consent of her father, she must

[5] Manu, iii. 55—62.

[6] Manu, ix. 26—30.

obsequiously honour while he lives, and never neglect him when he dies. The husband gives bliss continually to his wife here below, and he will give her happiness in the next world. He must be constantly revered as a god by a virtuous wife; even though he does not observe approved usages, or is enamoured of another woman, or is devoid of good qualities. No sacrifice is allowed to women apart from their husbands, no religious rite, no fasting; so far only as a wife honours her lord, so far is she exalted in heaven. A faithful wife who wishes to attain heaven, and dwell there with her husband, must never do anything unkind towards him, whether he be living or dead."

Duties of a widow.

The duties of widows are equally explicit, and involve no idea of the horrible Satí. Manu says:—

"When the husband is dead let his widow emaciate her body by living voluntarily on pure flowers, roots, and fruit; but let her not even pronounce the name of another man. Let her continue until death, forgiving all injuries, performing harsh duties, avoiding every sensual pleasure, and cheerfully practising the incomparable rules of virtue, which have been followed by such women as were devoted to one husband alone. Many thousands of Bráhmans have avoided sensuality from their early youth, and have, consequently, had no children, but, nevertheless, when they have died they have ascended to heaven; and in like manner a virtuous wife ascends to heaven, though she have no child, if after the death of her husband she devotes herself to pious austerities. But a widow, who, from her desire to bear children, slights her deceased husband by marrying again, brings disgrace upon herself here below, and will be excluded hereafter from the seat of her lord. In no part of this code is a second husband allowed to a virtuous woman."[7]

Duties of a widower.

The duties of a widower are placed upon another footing by the Hindú lawgiver. Manu says:—

[7] Manu, v. 157—162.

"If the wife of a twice-born man die before him, and if she be of his own caste, and if she has lived a virtuous life according to the ordinance, her body must be burned by her husband with sacred fire and fit implements of sacrifice; and when he has thus performed the funeral rites to his wife he may again marry and light the nuptial fire."[8]

Restrictions to be placed on women.

The system of confinement and repression, however, was not always successful in subduing the irregular desires of such women as were unmindful of their duties and obligations.

"Husbands," says Manu, "should diligently keep their wives under lawful restrictions. No man, indeed, can wholly restrain women by lawful measures; but a wife may be employed in the collection and expenditure of wealth, in purification and female duty, in the preparation of daily food, and in the superintendence of household utensils. Women are not secure by confinement at home, even under affectionate and observant guardians; and those only are truly secure, who are guarded by their own good inclinations.

Vices of women.

Six faults bring infamy upon a woman:—Drinking intoxicating liquors, associating with evil persons, absence from a husband, rambling abroad, sleeping at unseasonable times, and dwelling in the house of another. Such women care not whether a lover be handsome or ugly, young or old; they think it is enough that he is a man; and through their passion for men, their mutable temper, their want of settled affection, and their perverse nature, they soon become alienated from their husbands."[9]

Maintenance and conduct of a wife in the absence of her husband.

As regards the maintenance and conduct of a wife during the absence of her husband on business or pleasure, the following rules are laid down in the code of Manu:—

"Should a man have business abroad, he should assure a fitting maintenance for his wife while he is away; for

[8] Manu, v. 167–169.

[9] Manu, ix. 6—15.

even if a wife be virtuous she may be tempted to act amiss, if she be distressed by want of subsistence. If the maintenance of a wife be thus provided for her, she should continue firm in the practice of religious austerities whilst her husband is absent; but if her maintenance be not provided for, she should subsist by spinning and other blameless arts. If the husband live abroad on account of some sacred duty, she should wait for him eight years; if he is abroad on account of knowledge or fame, she should wait six years; if he is abroad on account of pleasure, she should wait three years."[10]

Question as regards the period of absence.

The significance of these texts lies in the law which directs the wife to await the return of her husband for certain periods of years, which are to be longer or shorter, according to the circumstances which have led to the absence of her lord. This law would seem to imply that after a specified period of separation a woman might marry again; but such a conclusion is opposed to the spirit of another law, which denounces the second marriage of a woman. The commentator Kullúka, however, endeavours to remove the difficulty by adding that at the end of the period of separation the woman should rejoin her husband.[11] But this addition bears obvious marks of being an arbitrary interpretation; and it seems more likely that there existed an old law respecting the number of years during which a wife was to await the return of her husband; and that Kullúka has simply brought this law into apparent conformity with the rule which denounces all second marriages of females.

Forced explanation of Kullúka.

Law respecting divorce.

The laws of Manu as regards divorce, and the circumstances under which a man might marry a second wife whilst the first is still alive, are full and

[10] Manu, ix. 74—76.

[11] Manu, ix. 76.

explicit; and they tend to prove that whilst polygamy was an institution in Vedic times, monogamy was the dominant idea in the Brahmanic period. Manu says:—

"Should a wife treat her husband with aversion, he should bear with her for one whole year; but after that period he may deprive her of her separate property, and cease to treat her as his wife. She who neglects her husband, though he be addicted to gaming, or fond of spirituous liquors, or diseased, must be deserted for three months, and deprived of her ornaments and household furniture. But if she is averse to her husband because he is mad, or a deadly sinner, or without manly strength, or afflicted with such maladies as are the punishment of crimes, she must neither be deserted, nor stripped of her property.[12] A wife may at all times be superseded by another wife if she drinks spirituous liquors, or acts immorally, or manifests hatred towards her husband, or is diseased, or mischievous, or wastes her husband's property. A wife who is barren may be superseded by another in the eighth year; she whose children are all dead may be superseded in the tenth year; she who brings forth only daughters may be superseded in the eleventh year; but she who speaks unkindly may be superseded without delay. A wife, however, who is afflicted with disease, but at the same time is beloved and virtuous, must never be disgraced, although she may be superseded by another wife with her own consent. If a wife, who has been legally superseded, departs in wrath from the house, she must either be instantly confined, or she must be abandoned in the presence of the whole family."[13]

Supersession of a wife by a second wife to obtain a son.

Good wives to be superseded only with their own consent.

It will be seen from the foregoing precepts that a Hindú was justified in putting away a wife, not only if she proved unfaithful, but also if she indulged in spirituous liquors, or was diseased, or barren, or only gave birth to daughters. In the three latter cases a

[12] Manu, ix. 77—79.

[13] Manu, ix. 80—83.

good wife was not to be superseded by a second wife without her own consent; and even then she was not to be divorced or put away. As regards a wife who was barren, or who only gave birth to daughters, it will be observed that a patriarchal custom, originating in an age of polygamy, was converted into a religious obligation; and such is the force of religious obligation in the minds of many women that it will override one of the strongest instincts of human nature. Thus it was that when Sarai found that she bore no children, she took Hagar her Egyptian handmaid, and gave her to Abram to be his wife;[14] and even in the present day Hindú wives are to be found, who are prepared to see a husband take a second wife, rather than that he should die without becoming the father of a son.[15]

Force of the religious obligation to beget a son.

[14] Genesis xvi.

[15] The following incident in the life of Ramdoolal Dey, as described by Grish Chunder Ghose, furnishes a graphic picture of a scene which not unfrequently occurs in a Hindú household, when the first wife has grown old without giving birth to a son:—"A strict Hindú, filled with the orthodox horror for *put*,—the [redacted] of the Hindús, which is declared by the sastras to yawn for the childless,—Ramdoolal was advised by the Brâhmans who constantly surrounded him, to marry another wife. With hesitancy and by stealth was the marriage consummated—unknown to his first wife, unsuspected even by her. But the news of such an important event in the life of a husband cannot long be kept a secret from a spouse. It soon travelled into the ears of the rival, who repaired in gloomy dissatisfaction to her brother's house in Moolajore. Ramdoolal dared not bring this second wife to his home, without softening and conciliating the first. The latter was at last found to be not unreasonable; though the woman within her, the natural feeling of her sex, had made her at first a rebel against her lord. She returned in the best of all possible humours; returned to welcome the bride to her home, to carry in her arms the rival in the affections of her husband; the child, who, arrived at womanhood, gave that husband two boys and five girls as the heirs of his vast estate. Yet the lives of the two wives did not run smoothly. The jealousy natural to the sex embittered existences, which had otherwise no ground for distraction. Outwardly the two ladies exhibited no signs of discord. The youngest never dared ever to raise her veil before the eldest; or to address her, except in a low, not direct, respectful tone of voice. But there was gall and bitterness in their hearts. Ramdoolal invariably took his meals in the apartments of his first wife, and skulked into those of his second after the former had fallen sound asleep.

Laws against adultery.

The laws against adultery, which appear to have been in force in the Brahmanic age, are naturally very severe.

"Adultery," says Manu, "causes a mixture of castes, from whence arises violation of duties, and the destruction of the root of felicity. Men, therefore, who manifest adulterous inclinations for the wives of others, should be punished by the Raja with such bodily marks as excite aversion, and be banished from the realm. A man who converses in secret with the wife of another, and has been previously noted for such an offence, shall pay a fine of two hundred and fifty panas.[16] But if a man so converses for some reasonable cause, and has not been previously noted for such an offence, he shall pay no fine, for he has incurred no transgression. He who talks with the wife of another man at a place of pilgrimage, or in a forest, or grove, or at the confluence of rivers, incurs the guilt of an adulterous inclination. To send her flowers or perfumes, to sport and jest with her, to touch her apparel and ornaments, to sit with her on the same couch, are held to be adulterous acts on his part. The wives of all the four castes ought to be

---

He dared not speak to the latter in the presence of the former; and all his children by his second wife were born in a separate house, which belonged to that wife's relatives; for he would not wound the feelings of his first spouse by parading before her eyes the evidences of his secret love towards the second. It was not until the children grew up, and were able to walk and to hop, that they were brought to his own mansion. And then, such was the caprice of a truly benevolent heart, their own mother was not more watchful and affectionate towards them than their step-mother. Yet this step-mother constantly laboured to estrange her husband from her rival by spells and by poojahs; and her weakness on this point was so extravagant that even the lads about her, whenever they wanted money, had only to present her with a cocoa-nut, or other fruit curiously marked, declaring that it was a charm,—to extract from her foolish credulity whatever sums they required. Her rival having died before her, she anxiously inquired of the Brahmans, if there was any means available for preventing the former from joining her husband in heaven prior to her own death." *Lecture on the Life of Ramdoolal Dey, the Bengalee millionnaire, delivered in the Hall of the Hooghly College on the 14th March, 1868, by Grish Chunder Ghose.*

[16] A pana was apparently equivalent to the modern pice, or something less than a half-penny. But a pice in the time of Manu may have borne a much higher value than it does in the present day. The penny of Anglo Saxon times was an important coin.

ever most especially guarded; but the Súdra who commits actual adultery with the wife of a Bráhman should be put to death. Any man who converses with the wife of another, after he has been forbidden by her husband or father, shall pay a fine; but mendicants, eulogists, Bráhmans prepared for a sacrifice, and artisans are not prohibited from speaking to married women."[17]

Punishment of unfaithful wives and their paramours.

"Should a wife actually violate the duty which she owes to her husband, let the Raja condemn her to be devoured by dogs in a public place; and let the adulterer be burned to death upon an iron bed. A Súdra who has committed adultery with a woman of a twice-born caste, who has been guarded by her husband at home, shall suffer death; but if the woman has not been guarded, he shall be mutilated and deprived of all his substance. A Vaisya who commits adultery with a guarded Brahmaní woman shall be imprisoned for a year and forfeit all his wealth; and if a Kshatriya commit the same crime, he shall be fined a thousand panas, and be shaved with impure water; but if the Brahmaní woman has not been guarded by her husband, the Vaisya shall be fined five hundred panas, and the Kshatriya one thousand panas."[18]

Punishment of Bráhmans.

"A Bráhman who has criminal intercourse with a guarded woman with her free consent shall be fined five hundred panas; but if against her will, he shall be fined a thousand panas. When a Bráhman commits adultery, for which one of the other castes would be put to death, he must be shaved ignominiously; for a Raja must never slay a Bráhman, even though he be guilty of all possible crimes. Indeed no greater crime is known on earth than that of slaying a Bráhman: the Raja may banish him, but even then he must retain his property and be sent unhurt out of the realm."[19]

Public women and female anchorites.

"These laws," continues Manu, "do not relate to the wives of public singers and dancers, or of such base men as live by the intrigues of their wives; men who either carry

[17] Manu, viii. 352–360. [18] Manu, viii. 374—376.
[19] Manu, viii. 378—381.

women to others, or who live concealed at home and permit their wives to carry on a criminal intercourse. Yet that man who carries on a private intercourse with such women, or with servant girls kept by one master, or with female anchorites, shall be compelled to pay a small fine. If a man has intercourse with a damsel without her consent, he shall immediately suffer corporal punishment; but if the damsel was willing, and belonged to his own caste, he shall not suffer such punishment."[20]

Question of guarded wives.

It will be unnecessary to comment upon the foregoing laws which refer to the relations of the sexes, as they will fully speak for themselves. It may, however, be observed that great stress is laid upon the question of whether the wife was guarded or otherwise; thus implying an obligation on the part of the husband to place his wife under certain restrictions. Again, it will be seen that whilst the existence of public women was recognized by the code, yet men who visited them were punishable by a small fine. It is doubtful, however, whether this fine was regarded as a punishment, or simply as a tax; for if the former, it would seem to imply a higher standard of morality than that which actually prevailed. At the very commencement of the Buddhist period, and for centuries later, public women were living in great splendour and luxury; whilst the presence of a mistress in the same house with a legitimate wife, was not opposed to the moral sense of the general community. At the same time this laxity of morals was brought so far under the cognizance of the common law, that a dancing girl could be punished by the civil authorites, if, without

Punishment for visiting public women.

Position of public women and private mistresses.

[20] See Bigandet's *Life of Buddha*, Wilson's *Hindu Theatre*, and Halhed's *Gentoo Laws*. This subject, however, will be fully treated hereafter in dealing with the later history of the Hindús.

reasonable excuse, she broke any engagement she might have made.[21]

Female anchorites placed in the same category with public women.

There is, however, one strange and significant feature in the laws of Manu as regards public women, which demands special notice. It will be seen that female anchorites are placed in the same category with singing and dancing girls. This law is so widely different from the old stern Roman rule as regards the chastity of Vestals, that it can only be regarded as a sarcasm levelled at those Buddhist nuns who devoted themselves to a convent life. The existence of female devotees seems to have been unknown to the old Brahmanical system, although such women are to be found in the present day at Benares and other sacred places. Hence it is easy to apprehend the full bitterness of the law of Manu, which classifies female anchorites with public women, and enacts that those who violated their chastity should be punished by a small fine.

Sarcasm levelled at Buddhist nuns.

Conduct of a Hindú towards the wives of his brethren.

The law as regards the conduct to be observed by a Hindú towards the wives of his several brothers is sufficiently indicated in the code by the simple statement, that the wife of an elder brother was to be considered as a mother-in-law, and the wife of a younger brother as a daughter-in-law.[22] There was, however, one important exception to this rule, which originated in an old Vedic custom, and is partially recognized by Manu. In ancient times, when women were regarded as property, the widow or widows of a deceased husband were inherited by his brother or nearest male kinsman. This custom seems to have been continued to a comparatively recent

Law for raising up a son to a deceased brother.

[21] Manu, viii. 362–366.

[22] Manu, ix. 57, 58.

period by the force of a religious obligation connected with the Sráddha, or feast of the dead. It was deemed essential that the offerings made to the soul after death, should be presented by a son of the deceased; and consequently it was necessary that every man should by some process or other become the father of a son. Accordingly the dogma seems to have been generally accepted, that if a man died childless, his nearest kinsman should beget a son upon the surviving widow, who should be regarded as the son of the deceased, and should present the necessary offering to his shade. Manu was aware of this custom, which indeed has already been exemplified in the legend of Vyása, who raised up sons to his deceased brother Vichitra-vírya;[23] but he can scarcely be said to tolerate it: He directs that under any circumstances the kinsman should be free from all impure desire, and that after the birth of a son no further intercourse should be permitted under pain of loss of caste. But he adds that no woman of a twice-born caste is authorized to become a mother by any one but her husband; and that this practice is fit only for cattle, and is reprehended by the learned Bráhmans. He refers the custom itself to the reign of Vena, one of those mythical Rajas who may be referred to a very remote antiquity, and who are said to have governed the whole earth. It is also stated in Manu that Vena indulged in his fondness for women to such an extent as to weaken his intellect and cause a confusion of castes. Now according to such vague traditions of Raja Vena as have been preserved in the Mahá Bhárata and

Custom recognized but not tolerated by Manu.

Custom referred to the reign of Raja Vena.

[23] In *ante*, Vol. I. Part ii. chap. 1.

Puránas, he appears at some primitive period to have displayed great hostility to the Bráhmans. It is not, therefore, surprising that the compilers of the Brahmanical code should have referred an evil custom to so obnoxious a Raja, and should otherwise have sought to blacken his name.[24]

Modern custom of adoption.

This degrading custom still largely prevails amongst the lower orders of Hindús, but is no longer practised by men of the twice-born castes; and with its decline another custom has arisen, namely, that of adoption. According to Manu, a man without a son might appoint his married daughter to raise up a son to perform the necessary ceremonies at the Sráddha; but in this case the son of the daughter would ultimately be required to offer two funeral cakes, namely, one to his natural father, and one to his maternal grandfather who had adopted him. A childless man might also adopt a son from another family; but in that case he could offer no funeral cake to his natural father, but only to his adopted father; and he could consequently never claim the estate of his natural father, as that would devolve on the son who offered the cake.[25]

[24] Manu, ix. 59—69. Compare Vishnu Purána, Book i. chap. 13.
[25] Manu, ix. 132, 142, 145—147, 162—164, 167.

CHAPTER XIII.

HINDŮ GOVERNMENT.

HISTORY OF INDIA. PART V.

THE theory of Hindú government which is set forth in the code of Manu, presents a marked contrast to the patriarchal and feudal types which appear in the Vedic traditions of the Mahá Bhárata and Rámáyana. The loyal attachment of kinsmen and retainers, and their obligations to render military service to their suzerain, which characterize the great story of the war of Bhárata, find no expression whatever in the code of Brahmanical law; and no precepts are to be discovered, which recognize in any way that patriotic interest in the welfare of the Raj, which was respectively displayed by the general community during the gambling match of Nala, and during the movement in favour of installing Ráma as Yuvaraja. To all appearance the old Roman sentiment of devotion to the common weal, which is to be found amongst all Aryan nations, and which certainly appertained to the old Vedic Aryans, had passed away beneath the blighting influence of Brahmanical oppression; and the public spirit which had animated the body politic in the Vedic age, and which is essential to the permanence of states and

Contrast between the theory of government in Manu, and the patriarchal and feudal types in Vedic tradition.

Absence of patriotism and public spirit.

empires, seems to have been narrowed down to the caste, the village, or the family. The result has been that for ages the people of India have had but one political tie, one nationality, and one patriotism, and that is religion, and religion alone. Foreign rule may be introduced, a Raj may be annexed by a paramount power, and a once reigning family be condemned to obscurity or exile; but the masses have never exhibited a spark of that deep-seated loyalty, which led the old Barons of England to rally round the standard of King Charles, and which stirred up the Highland clans to fight lustily for the Chevalier, and to spurn the tempting rewards that were offered for his capture. If, however, the religion be assailed, or only threatened by the temporal power, common superstitions and common fears seem to unite the people into a mysterious brotherhood, which will fight to the last with the high-souled daring of Crusaders, although it may be wanting in the stern discipline of Cromwell's Ironsides.

Religion the only political and national tie.

The political system of the Bráhmans, like their religious system, was based upon fear. Under the gloomy influence of a remorseless priesthood, the Raja and his people ceased to glory in the worship of the old Vedic deities, and were kept in a state of abject submission by the dread of mysterious evil, either in this life, or in the life hereafter. In the isolation of a village, or a household, an independence might have been occasionally displayed; but all constitutional checks upon the conduct of a Raja seem to have disappeared; excepting such as were exercised by the Bráhmans alone. The Raja was regarded as a divine administrator of the law; but the law was to be interpreted by the Bráhmans. He

Political system of the Bráhmans based upon fear.

was a despotic sovereign; but he was restrained in every direction by religious obligations. He held the country by a military occupation; but he was controlled by Brahmanical advisers. If, like Saul, he sought to throw off the yoke of the priesthood, another Raja would be set up in his room; and he might expect poison in every dish, and a dagger in the dress of every female in his household.

Hindú Government treated under four heads.

The system of Government which finds expression in the Institutes of Manu may now be considered under four several heads, namely:—

1st, The Raja, his Court and Ministers.

2nd, Government of the Provinces.

3rd, Administration of Justice.

4th, Laws of War.

1. The Raja, his Court and Ministers.

The precepts which refer to the Raja, his Court and Ministers, comprise in the first instance a sketch of the Hindú ideal of a Raja as a divine being, followed by the obligations which bind him to reward the good and to punish all evil-doers. His daily duties are there laid down; the worship of the gods, the vices he is to avoid, his public appearance, his secret Councils, his noon-day meal, the precautions he is to take against poison and assassination, his women, military reviews, reception of spies, evening meal, and music. The whole winds up with full directions as regards his Metropolis, Fort, and Palace; his Rání and Priests; his Minister and officials; his Ambassador or Minister for Foreign Affairs; and the distribution of the chief offices. The details connected with these several subjects may now be considered in regular order.

Hindú ideal of a Raja.

The Hindú ideal of a Raja is in exact accordance

with the Oriental idea of sovereignty, which still prevails amongst the people of India.

"Brahmá," says Manu, "created a Raja for the maintenance of the law; for without a Raja the world would quake with fear. And Brahmá formed the Raja out of the essence of the eight deities who guard the universe; and thus the Raja surpasses all mortals in glory, and should exercise the attributes of the eight gods. As Indra, the god of the firmament, sends plentiful showers during the four months of the rainy season; so let the Raja rain abundance upon his people. As Súrya, the sun-god, draws up the water by his rays; so let the Raja by his sovereign power draw the legal revenue from his dominions. As Pavana, the god of air, moves throughout the world; so let the Raja pervade all places by his spies. As Yama, the judge of the dead, punishes friends and foes; so let the Raja punish all offending subjects. As Varuna, the god of the waters, binds the guilty in fatal cords; so let the Raja keep evil-doers in rigid bonds. As Chandra, the moon-god, delights the world in the fulness of his glory; so let the Raja appear before his subjects in the splendour of his sovereignty. As Agni, the god of fire, burns and consumes; so let the just wrath of the Raja destroy all evil ministers. As Príthiví, the earth-goddess, supports all creatures; so let the Raja protect all his subjects. The Raja is a powerful deity in human form; and even as a child he must not be treated lightly. He is the firmament, the sun, the wind, the judge of all men, the deep ocean, the full moon, the fire, and the earth. He is the perfect essence of majesty, by whose power the goddess of abundance rises on her lotos, in whose valour dwells conquest, and in whose wrath dwells destruction."[1]

Divine attributes.

The duty of a Raja as regards rewarding virtu-

Just punishment of evil-doers the special duty of a Raja.

[1] Manu, vii. 1–13; ix. 303–311. The goddess of abundance is Lakshmí.

ous men, and punishing evil-doers, is thus laid down in the code :—

"The Raja should reward the good and punish the wicked. Punishment is the perfection of justice, the true manager of public affairs, the dispenser of all laws, the governor of all, and the protector of all. When it is inflicted with consideration and justice, it makes all the people happy; when it is inflicted hastily and unjustly, it wholly destroys them. If the Raja were not to punish the evil-doers, the stronger would roast the weaker like fish on a spit; the crow would peck at the consecrated food; the dog would eat up the sacred ghee; the rich would be deprived of all their wealth; the twice-born would be overcome by the Súdra. If punishment were withdrawn, or inflicted unjustly, all castes would become corrupt, all barriers would be destroyed, and there would be an utter confusion among all people. But when punishment advances with a black countenance and red eyes to destroy sin, the people dwell undisturbed. That Raja is the fit dispenser of justice who speaks the truth on all occasions, who understands the sacred books; and such a Raja, if he inflicts just punishment, and knows the distinctions of virtue, pleasure, and wealth, will increase the happiness which men derive from all three. But punishment itself will destroy that Raja, who is crafty, voluptuous, and wrathful. Punishment shall overtake his castles, his territories, and all that exist therein, and all his race; whilst the gods and Rishis will be filled with affliction and return from earth to the sky. Let the Raja act with justice in his own dominions, chastise his foes with vigour, be honest and truthful to his friends, and lenient to the Bráhmans: and his fame will spread over the whole world like a drop of oil on the surface of water. But if he is unjust, untruthful, and unkind to the Bráhmans, his reputation will be like a lump of ghee in a river."[2]

A good Raja.

A bad Raja.

[2] Manu, vii. 13—34.

The daily duties of a Raja are thus indicated:—

"Every morning the Raja should rise at early dawn, and make his oblations to the gods, and respectfully attend to Bráhmans who are versed in the Veda, and in the science of morals. From the Bráhmans he should learn to be modest and composed; for without humility many Rajas have perished with all their possessions. In this manner Raja Vena was utterly ruined, and so was the great Raja Nahusha. Day and night must the Raja endeavour to control his organs, and to shun the eighteen vices; the ten vices of pleasure and the eight vices of wrath, all of which end in misery. The ten vices which are born of pleasure are hunting, gambling, sleeping by day, censuring rivals, excess with women, intoxication, singing, music, dancing, and useless travel. The eight vices which are born of wrath are tale-bearing, violence, insidious wounding, envy, detraction, unjust confiscation, reviling, and open assault. Vice is more dreadful than death; since after death the vicious man sinks to the lower regions, whilst the virtuous man ascends to heaven."[3]

Daily duties of a Raja.

Oblations to the gods.

Attendance on Bráhmans.

Control of the passions.

Ten vices born of pleasure.

Eight vices born of wrath.

"Having paid due respect to the Bráhmans, the Raja should enter the hall of his palace, and gratify his subjects with kind looks and words. He should then dismiss them all and take secret counsel with his Ministers, either by ascending a mountain, or going privately to a terrace, a bower, a forest, or some other lonely place where he can consult with his Ministers unobserved and without listeners; for that Raja whose secrets are hidden shall attain dominion over the whole earth, although he may possess no treasure. He must exclude from his Councils all who are stupid, or diseased, as well as all heretics, women, and talking birds: since those who are disgraced are apt to betray secret counsel, and so are talking birds, and above all so are women."[4]

Public appearance of the Raja.

Secret Councils.

"At noon, after the Raja has consulted with his Ministers, and taken exercise, and bathed, he should enter his private apartment for the purpose of taking food. His victuals

Noon-day meal.

[3] Manu, vii. 35—53.

[4] Manu, vii. 145—150.

should be prepared by servants who are attached to him and are incapable of perfidy; and when the food has been tested and proved innocent, and when it has also been consecrated by mantras which repel poison, he may eat thereof; but he should always swallow such medical substances with his food as resist poison, and constantly wear such gems as are known to repel poison. The dress and ornaments of his females should be examined, lest some weapon should be concealed in them; after which the females should render him humble service with fans, water, and perfumes. In like manner he should take diligent care when he goes out in a carriage or on horseback; when he sits or when he lies down; when he takes his food, and when he bathes and anoints himself, and puts on all his habiliments. When he has finished his noon-day meal, he may divert himself with his women in the recesses of his palace; and when he has idled a reasonable time, he should again think of the public affairs, and review his armed men with their elephants, horses, chariots, accoutrements, and weapons. At sunset he should perform his religious duty. After this he should proceed to his inner apartments, and there in private and well armed, he should take the reports of his spies, of whom he should take five kinds in his pay, namely:—active and artful young men, degraded anchorites, distressed husbandmen, decayed merchants, and false devotees. When he has heard all that they have to say, he should dismiss them. After this he should go to another secret chamber, and eat his evening meal attended by his women; and then having been recreated by music, he should retire early to rest that he may rise on the morrow refreshed from his slumbers."[5]

Precautions against poison and assassination.

Women.

Parades.

Evening duties.

Reception of spies.

Evening meal.

Music.

Modern life in Hindú courts similar to that described in Manu.

Commentary upon the foregoing details is perhaps scarcely necessary. The picture which they present of the life of a Hindú Raja is identical with that which may still be found in most native courts. Superstition, secrecy, suspicion, idling with women,

[5] Manu, vi. 154, 216, 225.

espionage, and military display were and are the conditions of Oriental sovereignty. Meantime intrigues like those which agitated the zenana of Maharaja Dasaratha were doubtless as frequent in the past age, as they are in the courts of native princes of our own time.[6]

The directions laid down in the Institutes of Manu respecting the Metropolis, Fort, and Palace of the Raja, and also his Rání, Priests, and Ministers, may be thus indicated:—

City of the Raja in a level plain surrounded by mountains.

"A Raja should dwell in a district where the country is level and open, and abounds in grain. The Raja should there dwell in a capital city, having round it a desert by way of a fortress, or else a fortress of earth, or one of water, or one of trees, or one of armed men, or one of mountains. Of all these a fortress of mountains is to be preferred; for wild beasts dwell in the desert fortress, vermin in the earth fortress, aquatic animals in the water fortress, monkeys in the fortress of trees, men in the fortress of armed men, but gods in the fortress of mountains. The Raja should dwell within a Fort; for one bowman placed upon a wall is a match in war for a hundred enemies, and a hundred bowmen on a wall is in like manner a match for ten thousand enemies. The Fort should be supplied with weapons, money, grain, beasts, Bráhmans, artificers, engines, grass, and water. In the centre of the Fort the Raja should raise his Palace, which should be completely defended, brilliant with white stucco, and surrounded with water and trees."[7]

The Fort.

The Palace.

A Rání.

"When a Raja has prepared a Fort and Palace he should choose a Rání of the same caste as himself, born of an exalted race, captivating the heart, adorned with every beauty and every virtue. He must also appoint a domestic priest or Purohita; also a performer of sacrifices, or Ritwij; and these Bráhmans may solemnize the religious rites of his

Domestic priest and sacrificing priest.

[6] *Ante*, Book iv. chap. 7.

[7] Manu, vii. 69—76.

family, as well as those which are performed with the three sacred fires."[8]

Sacrifices and gifts to Bráhmans.

"A Raja should perform sacrifices accompanied with gifts. He should pay due respect to Bráhmans who have returned from the dwellings of their preceptors; for a present to such a Bráhman is called a precious gem, which is deposited by Rajas with the Bráhman caste, which never perishes, and which neither thieves nor foes can take away. An oblation in the mouth of a Bráhman is far better than offerings to holy fire; it never drops, it never dies, it is never consumed."[9]

Ministers.

"The Raja must appoint seven or eight Ministers, who must be sworn. They should be men whose ancestors were the servants of Rajas; who are versed in the Sástras; who are personally brave; who are skilled in the use of weapons, and who are of noble lineage. He should perpetually consult with those Ministers on matters pertaining to peace and war; on his army; on his revenues; on the protection of his people; and on the proper expenditure of the wealth which he has acquired. He should ascertain the opinions of his Counsellors, first of each one separately, and then of the whole collectively; and then he should do that which is most beneficial in public affairs. To one learned Bráhman distinguished among them all, the Raja should impart his momentous counsel; and to this Bráhman he should intrust all transactions with full confidence; and when he has finally resolved how to act, he should commence his measures in conjunction with this Chief Minister."[10]

The Chief Minister to be a Bráhman.

Officials.

"A Raja must in like manner appoint other Officers, who should be men of integrity, well informed, steady, habituated to gain wealth, and tried by experience. Those who are brave, skilful, well-born, and honest he should employ in his mines of gold and gems, and in other similar works; but those who are pusillanimous he should employ in the recesses of his palace."[11]

---

[8] Manu, vii. 77, 78.
[9] Manu, vii. 79–84.
[10] Manu, vii. 54–59.
[11] Manu, vii. 60–62.

The Ambassador.

"The Raja should likewise employ an Ambassador who is versed in all the Sástras; who understands hints, external signs, and actions; whose abilities are great, and who is of illustrious birth. He should be one who is generally beloved; who is dexterous in business; who is endued with an excellent memory; who knows countries and times; and who is handsome, brave, and eloquent. In the transaction of affairs, the Ambassador should be able to comprehend the plans of a foreign Raja, by the signs, hints, and acts of his confidential servants; and he should also be able to discover the measures which a foreign Raja desires to undertake, by studying the character and conduct of his Ministers. Thus when a Raja has learned from his Ambassador all the designs of a foreign Raja, he may be able by vigilant care to guard himself against any evil."[12]

Distribution of offices.

"The government of the country and regulation of the treasury should be in the hands of the Raja; the administration of justice should be in the hands of the Raja's officers; the forces of the realm should be directed by the Commander-in-Chief; and the negotiations respecting peace and war should be conducted by Ambassadors."[13]

Characteristics of Hindú sovereignty.

The foregoing directions respecting the guarded security in which a Raja should dwell, and the Ministers and Officers by whom he should be surrounded, exhibit with sufficient clearness the timidity, distrust, and love of deception and artifice, which but too often characterize Native administration. The ideal of a city, a palace, and a fort, will be found strikingly illustrated in the description of the city of Ayodhyá, and the fort and palace of Mahá-raja Dasaratha; as well as in the description of Lanká, and the fort and palace of Rávana, which appear in the Rámáyana.[14] The character of an

Illustrations to be found in the Rámáyana and Mahá Bhárata.

[12] Manu, vii. 63, 64, 66, 68.

[13] Manu, vii. 65. Elphinstone justly observes that the officer who is here styled an Ambassador bears a closer resemblance to a Minister for foreign affairs.

[14] See *ante*, Part iv. chap. 1 and 20.

Ambassador, again, is similar to that of Sanjaya, the Minister and charioteer of Maháraja Dhritaráshtra, who was sent on an embassy to the Pándavas prior to the war of the Mahá Bhárata.[15]

2nd, Government of the Provinces.

A military occupation based upon the village system.

The administration of the Provinces, which is prescribed by the compilers of the code, seems to have partaken largely of a military character; and is such as might have been expected after the conquest and occupation of Hindústan by the Aryan invaders. A military force was cantoned in the several districts according to their extent; whilst a civil administration was introduced upon the basis of the ancient division of the country into villages or townships.[16] The village system appears to have originated in remote antiquity, and still continues to prevail throughout India, excepting, perhaps, in Bengal proper. A Hindú village, however, comprehends something more than an English village; and it will be necessary to glance at its constitution, before taking into consideration the administrative measures laid down in Manu.

Hindú village comprising both a district and a town.

The so-called Hindú village is in fact a township, or district including an area of land, as well as a village or town, properly so called. It varies in extent, but is inhabited by a single community; and is separated from all other villages by boundaries, which are carefully defined and rigidly guarded. The village lands may be of all descriptions; cultivated, culturable and uncultivated, pasture, and unculturable waste. The lands are divided into fields

[15] See *ante*, Vol. I. Part ii. chap. 10. A distinction, however, must be laid down between the marks of resemblance which are to be found in the original Vedic tradition, and those which appear in the modern Brahmanical version.

[16] Manu, vii. 114.

by boundaries, which are as well understood as those of the village; and the name of each field, with its qualities, extent, and holders, are minutely entered in the village records. Each village thus consists of lands, or farms, from which the community draws its subsistence; and the assemblage of houses or huts, which constitute the village proper, and in which the community dwell more or less together for the sake of security.[17]

The village communities, or republics.

These village communities are little republics, each having its head-man, and its little body of village officials. But the officials themselves are controlled by the public opinion of the community, which is expressed by popular gatherings beneath shady trees, after the old-world fashion of our Saxon fore-fathers, and much in the same way that the elders and people of Israel assembled at the gates of their cities to settle disputes about heritance and lands.

Village officials.

According to the current idea there ought to be twelve officials in every village; but the number varies, and there are officers in some villages, who are not to be found in others.

The Head-man.

Each village has its head-man, who transacts all business with the ruling authority; apportions the payment of land revenue among the villagers, according to the extent of these lands and the nature of their tenures; lets out lands which have no fixed occupants; and partitions the water for irrigation. He also settles disputes and apprehends offenders.

Village assemblies.

All points of public interest are, however, arranged in free consultation with the villagers; and all disputes are decided with the assistance of arbitrators or assessors. The head-man is

[17] Elphinstone's *History of India*, Book ii. chapter 2.

assisted by an accountant and a watchman. The accountant keeps the village records, manages the accounts, draws up deeds, and writes private letters when required. The watchman guards the boundaries of the villages, and those of the fields within the village; and he likewise watches the crops, and acts throughout the village as a constable, public guide, and messenger. In addition to these there is generally a Bráhman priest, who is sometimes an astrologer, and schoolmaster; a jeweller, who is also a money-changer; a smith, carpenter, barber, potter, and worker in leather. Sometimes, also, there is a tailor, washerman, physician, musician, and a poet, who is also a genealogist; and in the south of India there is generally a dancing-girl. The head-man and the accountant generally hold pieces of land, and sometimes receive allowances from government; but all the officials receive fees from the villagers, consisting either of money, or of a handful or two out of each measure of grain.[18]

The accountant.

The watchman.

The Bráhman priest.

Astrologer and schoolmaster.

Jeweller.

Miscellaneous village servants.

Emoluments of the village officials in land and fees.

These village communities have outlived dynasties, revolutions, invasions, and what appeared to be utter destruction. For years a village may have been depopulated by pillage and massacre; but still when tranquil times return, and possession is again possible, the scattered villagers will return to their old homesteads. A generation may pass away, but their sons will return, and re-establish the village on its ancient site, rebuild the houses which their fathers occupied, and again cultivate the fields which had been in the hands of their families from time immemorial.[19]

Antiquity and permanence of the Hindú Village system.

[18] Elphinstone.

[19] Sir Charles Metcalfe's minute, *quoted by Elphinstone.* See also Elphin-

The code of Manu does not expressly define the constitution of the Hindú village, as it is laid down in the preceding paragraphs; but there seems every reason to believe that the village, as it existed in the time when the code was promulgated, corresponded in all essentials with the village of the present day. The object of the lawgiver was not so much to define existing institutions, as to lay down laws and precepts; and, consequently, the data to be derived from the Institutes of Manu must be chiefly gathered from the laws respecting pastures and landmarks.

Village system as indicated by Manu.

"A space for pasture," says Manu, "should be left round every village. In breadth it should be three hundred cubits, or three throws of a large stick. In the case of cities, or large towns, the surrounding pasture should be three times as broad. Every field bordering on the pasture land should be enclosed by a hedge, so high that a camel cannot look over it; and every gap through which a dog or a boar could thrust its head should be stopped. If the bordering fields are not enclosed in this manner, and cattle enter in and damage the rising crops, the herdsman of the cattle shall not be punished. If, however, cattle in charge of a herdsman work mischief in a field near a highway, the herdsman must be fined a hundred panas; but the owner of such a field ought to secure it against cattle that have no herdsman. In other fields the owner of cattle working mischief should be fined one pana and a quarter; but in all cases the value of the damaged grain must be paid. No fine should be levied for damage done by a cow within ten days of her calving; or by a bull which is kept for breeding purposes; or by cattle which have been consecrated to the deity."[20]

Law respecting the surrounding pasture land.

stone's *History of India*, Book ii. chapter 3, which must always be regarded as a high authority on Indian revenue matters. Numerous other authorities have also been consulted, but specific references are unnecessary.

[20] Manu, viii. 237—242.

As regards boundaries and landmarks, the following directions are laid down in the code:—

Village boundaries and landmarks.

"In cases of dispute between two villages, or two landholders, respecting a boundary, the Raja, or his Judge, should investigate the matter in the month of Jayaishtha [about October], when the landmarks can be seen more distinctly than at other times. Some landmarks should be concealed under-ground, such as large pieces of stone, bones, tails of cows, bran, ashes, potsherds, bricks, tiles, charcoal, pebbles, sand, and other such substances, which are not corroded by the earth. Trees should also be planted along the boundary, with clustering shrubs and creepers. Lakes, wells, pools, and streams, should also be made on the common limits; and temples dedicated to the gods should also be built there. By these marks, or by the course of a stream, or by long-continued possession, the Judge may ascertain the limit between the lands of two parties in litigation; but should there be still a doubt, he must have recourse to the declarations of witnesses. These witnesses should be examined in the presence of all the townsmen or villagers, or of both of the contending parties. They should put earth on their heads, and wear red mantles, and chaplets of red flowers; and they should be sworn by the reward of all their several good actions to give correct evidence concerning the boundaries; and their evidence should be recorded in writing, together with all their names. Those who give true evidence are absolved from all their sins; but such as give unjust evidence shall be fined two hundred panas. If no witnesses are forthcoming, four men who dwell on the four sides of the two villages should be called upon in the presence of the Raja to make a decision concerning the boundary. If there be no such neighbours dwelling on the sides of the two villages, nor any men whose ancestors had lived there since the villages were built, nor other inhabitants who could give evidence respecting the boundaries, the Judge must examine those who dwell in the jungle, such as hunters, fowlers, herdsmen, fishers, diggers for roots,

Investigation of disputes respecting landmarks.

snake-catchers, and gleaners, and fix the boundary between the two villages according to their evidence. As regards the bounds of arable fields, wells, pools, gardens, and houses, the testimony of the nearest neighbours on every side must be regarded as the best means of decision. Should they say anything untrue, each of them must be made to pay five hundred panas. If the boundary cannot be ascertained, the Raja should consult the future benefit of both parties, and make a boundary line between their lands."[21]

Government of villages as laid down by Manu.

The scheme laid down by the code of Manu for the government of villages may be thus indicated:—

"A Raja should appoint a lord of one village, a lord of ten villages, a lord of twenty villages, a lord of a hundred villages, and a lord of a thousand villages. The lord of one village should report any robberies, tumults, or other evils which may arise within his district, to the lord of ten villages. In like manner the lord of ten villages should report to the lord of twenty; the lord of twenty to the lord of a hundred; and the lord of a hundred to the lord of a thousand."[22]

The head-man, or lord of one village.

Of all these officers, the head-man, or lord of a village, seems to be the only one who has retained his office intact to the present day; with this difference, however, that whereas in the time of the code the post was apparently in the gift of the Raja, it is now generally hereditary in a particular family.

The Purgunnah, comprising a hundred villages.

The division known as a Purgunnah appears to correspond to the hundred villages; but the officers employed in it are only known by their continuing to enjoy the hereditary lands or fees; or at the most by their being depositaries of the registers and

[21] Manu, viii. 245–265.

[22] Manu, vii. 115—117.

records connected with the purgunnah. The other divisions may also be faintly traced, but the occupations of the respective officers appear to have altogether passed away.[23]

Modern traces of other divisions.

Emoluments of the District Officers in the time of Manu.

The emoluments of the several provincial officers are clearly specified in the code. The head of a village was to receive as his daily perquisite, the fees of food, drink, fuel, and other articles, which according to the law ought to be presented by the villagers to the Raja. The fees from every village being thus appropriated by its respective head-man, a separate provision had to be made for the lords of many villages. The lord of ten villages was to receive the produce of two ploughed lands; the lord of twenty villages was to receive the produce of ten ploughed lands; but why the one should receive five times as much as the other is somewhat unintelligible. The lord of a hundred villages was to receive the entire produce of one village; and the lord of a thousand villages was to receive the produce of one large town.[24]

Governors of cities.

Besides these lords of villages, or districts, a Governor was to be appointed in every city or

[23] Elphinstone's *History of India*. The head-man of a village is called Pátel in the Dekhan, and in the centre and west of Hindústan; Mandel in Bengal; and Mokaddam in many other places, especially where there are, or have lately been, hereditary village landholders. The accountant is called Patwari in Hindústan; Kulkarni and Karnam in the Dekhan and south of India; and Tallati in Guzerat. The watchman is called Pasban, Gorayet, Peik, Douraha, etc., in Hindústan; Mhar in the Dekhan; Tillari in the south of India; Paggi in Guzerat. The lord of ten or twenty villages was called Naikwari, Tarref, etc. The lord of a hundred villages, or Purgunnah, is called Desmuk or Desai in the Dekhan, and his registrar is called Despandi; in the north of India they are called Choudris and Canongos. The lords of a thousand villages were called Sirdesmuks in the Dekhan, and their provinces are called Sirkars. Their hereditary registrars are still to be found under the name of Sir Despandis. See Elphinstone's *Appendix*.

[24] Manu, vii. 118, 119.

capital, with high rank and authority, for the supervision of the provincial administration, and especially to watch the proceedings of the lords and villages. This supervision appears to have been very necessary. According to the code, the servants of the Raja who were appointed to guard the villages, were generally knaves, who seized what belonged to other men; and it was suggested that the Raja should confiscate the property of such knaves, and banish them from the realm.[25]

System of taxation in return for protection.

The system of taxation is so clearly indicated in the code, that it would appear to have been universally understood and recognized by the entire community. The principle is laid down in the first instance, that the taxes should be so adjusted that whilst merchants and others should gain a fair profit, the Raja should receive a just compensation for the protection which he afforded to the whole community. Accordingly, in levying a tax upon trades, the Raja was to consider not only the prime cost of the goods and the prices at which they are sold, but also the cost of conveyance and travelling, the expense of subsistence, the outlay necessary for insuring the security of goods, and the net profits which remained after all these charges had been defrayed. In this manner the Raja was to draw an annual revenue from his dominions by little and little; just as the leech, the bee, and the sucking calf take in their natural food. Here a new idea is expressed, which is unknown to modern taxation. The assessment was made not on the incomes of the people; but on what might be regarded as their

Tax upon traders.

Assessment on yearly savings.

[25] Manu, vii. 121—124.

yearly savings. Thus the Raja was to take one-fiftieth of all the cattle, gems, and gold and silver, which his subjects added every year to their capital stock; a law which not only furnished a convenient pretext for oppression and confiscation, but probably originated those habits of hoarding wealth in concealment, which have characterized the people for ages, but which are now fast disappearing from all parts of the country under British rule. As regards land revenue, the Raja was to take one-sixth, one-eighth, or one-twelfth of the grain produce, according to the difference of soil. He was also to take one-sixth of the clear annual increase of trees, flesh-meat, honey, ghee, perfumes, medicinal substances, liquids, flowers, roots, fruit, gathered leaves, potherbs, grass, earthen pots, articles made of leather and cane, and all things made of stone. The meaner inhabitants of the Raj, who lived by petty traffic, were only to be required to pay a mere trifle to the Raja as an annual tax; whilst those who supported themselves by labour, such as low handicraftsmen, artificers, and others, were required to give one day's labour every month to the Raja. But even though the Raja might be dying of want, he was never to receive any tax from a Bráhman who was learned in the Veda.[26]

Land revenue.

Raja's share of products and manufactures.

Tax on petty traders and artisans.

Exemption of Bráhmans.

Paramount duty of a Raja to protect his subjects.

But whilst the right of the Raja to levy taxes is duly maintained, the corresponding duty of protection on his part is asserted with a persistency which seems to intimate that it was frequently neglected.

"The Raja," says Manu, "who takes a sixth part of th

[26] Manu, vii. 127—138.

grain, together with the market duties and tolls, and the small daily presents for his household, and the fines for offenders, and yet fails to protect his subjects, the same will fall after death into a region of horror. By protecting his people a Raja obtains a sixth part of all their religious merits; but by failing to protect them he will be visited by a sixth part of all their iniquities."[27]

3rd, Administration of justice.

The administration of justice, which finds expression in the code of Manu, seems to be little more than a Brahmanizing of the old patriarchal system, in which the Raja dispensed justice according to his own rude and primitive notions of right and wrong. A scheme is laid down by which the Raja may administer justice, or employ a deputy who is a Bráhman; but in the former case he is to be guided by the interpretations of the Bráhmans. The laws themselves refer to trust property, property which has no owner, lost property, treasure trove, and stolen goods; also to debts, money lending, sureties, deposits, false testimony, oaths, and ordeals; and finally, to damage to cattle, neglect of lands, and inheritance in the case of undivided and divided families. These may now be indicated in due order.

Brahmanizing of the old patriarchal system.

The administration of justice by a Raja, assisted by Bráhmans, is thus laid down in the code:—

"A Raja," says Manu, "should enter his Court of Justice with a grave and composed demeanour, and be accompanied by Bráhmans and Counsellors capable of advising him. There he should take his seat in suitable attire, with his mind attentively fixed, and should decide cases according to the law. Should he desire it, a Bráhman who

[27] Manu, viii. 302–311.

is not a sacrificial priest, may interpret the law to him; but if a Raja looks stupidly on whilst cases are being decided by a Súdra, his Raj will be troubled like a cow who is sinking in deep mire. When the Raja cannot preside in person, he should appoint a Bráhman of eminent learning to be Chief Judge, accompanied by three Bráhmans to sit as Assessors; and this assembly is called the Court of Brahma with four faces."[28]

Court of Brahma with four faces.

Conduct of the Raja or Chief Judge.

"The Raja, or the Chief Judge appointed by the Raja, should commence proceedings by doing reverence to the deities who guard the world, and then enter on the trial of causes. He should understand what is expedient or inexpedient, but he should consider only what is law or not law; and in this spirit he should examine all disputes between parties in the order of their several castes. He should see through the thoughts of men by their voice, colour, countenance, limbs, eyes, and action; for the internal workings of the mind are to be discovered from the limbs, the look, the motion of the body, the gesticulation, the speech, and the changes of the eye and face."[29]

Laws respecting property.

The more important precepts of Manu as regards property are as follows:—

Trusts.

"Property should be held in trust by the Raja, when it belongs to a Brahmachári or an infant, until the Brahmachári has ceased his studentship, or until the infant has attained his sixteenth year. In like manner, property must be held in trust by the Raja when it belongs to a barren woman, or to a woman without sons, or to women without kindred, or to women whose husbands are in distant places, or to widows who are true to their lords, or to women who are afflicted with sickness. Such kinsmen as appropriate the property of women who are yet living should be punished by a just Raja with the severity due to thieves."[30]

Property without owners.

"Property for which no owner appears may be detained

[28] Manu, viii. 1—11; 20—22. [29] Manu, viii. 23—26.
[30] Manu, viii. 27—29.

by the Raja for three years; if the owner appear within that time he may take his property, but otherwise it may be confiscated by the Raja. The Raja may take a sixth, or a tenth, or a twelfth of the property which has been so detained by him."[31]

Lost property.

"Property which has been lost by one man and found by another should be secured by the Raja, who should commit it to the care of trustworthy men. If any should be convicted of stealing such property, the Raja should condemn the thief to be trampled upon by an elephant. If the right owner should claim the property, the Raja may restore it to him, after deducting a sixth or a twelfth part. But if a man set up a false claim, he may be fined either an eighth of his own property, or else a proportion of the value of the goods which he has falsely claimed."[32]

Treasure trove.

"A learned Bráhman who finds a hidden treasure may take it without any deduction being made to the Raja, for he is lord of all. But if the treasure be discovered by the Raja, he may lay up half in his treasury, and give the other half to the Bráhmans. The Raja is entitled to the half of all treasure trove and precious minerals, in return for the general protection which he affords, and because he is the lord paramount of all the soil."[33]

Stolen property.

"All property seized by robbers must be restored by the Raja to the rightful owners, whatever may be their caste; for a Raja who keeps the stolen goods for himself incurs the guilt of a robber."[34]

Patriarchal character of the law.

The foregoing laws thus seem to refer to a period when the administration was more patriarchal in its character than it became in later years. The Raja appears as the guardian of all infants and unprotected women, and to hold their property in trust. He also detained all unclaimed property, and it is remarkable that any one stealing such property was to

[31] Manu, viii. 30—38.
[32] Manu, viii. 34—36.
[33] Manu, viii. 37—39.
[34] Manu, viii. 40.

be trampled to death by an elephant; the severity of the sentence being probably caused by the frequency of the crime.[35] The privileges of Bráhmans as regards treasure trove have already been treated elsewhere.

Punishment of elephant trampling.

Miscellaneous law.

The laws as regards debts, money-lending, sureties, and deposits, are as follows:—

Debts.

"When a creditor sues a debtor before the Raja, the debtor should be required by the Raja to pay whatever is proved to be true, together with a small fine. Should a defendant deny the debt, then the plaintiff must call a witness who was present when the loan was made, or produce other evidence. When a defendant admits a debt he must pay a fine of five per cent.; but if he denies the debt, and it be afterwards proved against him, he must pay a fine of ten per cent."[36]

Money-lending.

"A money-lender may take an eightieth part of a hundred, or one and a quarter per cent., as interest per month for the money lent, provided he has a pledge. But if the money-lender has no pledge he may take two per cent. as a month's interest. He may also take interest per month according to the caste of the borrower; that is, two per cent. from the Bráhman, three per cent. from a Kshatriya, four per cent. from a Vaisya, and five per cent. from a Súdra. Stipulated interest beyond the legal rate is invalid, and is called usury."[37]

Bottomry.

"A lender of interest on safe carriage, who has agreed on the place and time, shall not receive such interest, if the goods are not carried to the place, or within the time. The amount of interest should be settled by men well acquainted with sea voyages and journeys by land."[38]

---

[35] A sepoy convicted of conspiracy was subjected by the Guicowar of Baroda to this demoralizing punishment as late as 1866; but since then, at the instigation of the paramount power, the punishment of elephant trampling has been abolished by the Guicowar.

[36] Manu, viii. 47—59. [37] Manu, viii. 152. [38] Manu, viii. 156, 157.

Sureties.

"The man who becomes surety for the appearance of a debtor, and does not produce him, shall be liable for the debt; but the son of such a surety shall not be liable; nor shall a son be liable for money which his father has idly promised to musicians and actresses, or lost at play, or owes for spirituous liquors, or for the balance of a fine or toll. If, however, the father shall have been surety for the payment of the money, and not for the mere appearance of the debtor, then his heirs may be compelled to discharge the debt. Again, if a debtor borrows money and expends it for the use of his family, and afterwards dies, the money must be paid by that family, whether it be divided or undivided, out of the estate."[39]

Deposits.

"If a defendant refuses to restore a deposit, and there are no witnesses, the judge should employ artful spies to deposit gold with the same man; then if the defendant restore the deposit given to him by the spies, there is nothing against him; but if he refuse to restore it, he shall be compelled to pay the value of both deposits."[40]

Exorbitant rates of interest in India.

The foregoing details call for very brief observations. Those which refer to debts and interest are perfectly simple; and the interest chargeable per month is quite in accordance with modern custom, although it may appear exorbitant in European eyes. The law which relates to the lender of interest on the safe carriage of goods despatched by land or sea, seems to approximate as regards sea voyages to the English law of bottomry; in which the owner of the ship borrows money on the security of his ship, and is not called upon to repay the advance unless the vessel returns in safety. The text is valuable as it indicates that sea voyages are not unknown to the Hindús in the time of Manu;

Sea voyages of the Hindús proved by the law of Bottomry.

[39] Manu, viii. 158–160, 166.

[40] Manu, viii. 182–184.

although later Pundits have declared that voyages by sea were only permissible in the yugas which preceded the age of Kali. The law as regards sureties was invested with a moral significance in connection with musicians and actresses, gaming and drinking, which is eminently Brahmanical; but its efficacy in restraining men from such amusements may well be doubted. The law as regards deposits betrays that talent for artifice which still characterizes the Hindú.

Moral significance of the laws respecting sureties.

Artifice in the law respecting deposits.

False testimony.

The laws respecting false testimony, oaths, and ordeals, are as follows:—

"A witness who knowingly says anything different from that which he had seen or heard, will fall headlong after death into a region of horror, and be debarred from heaven. In some cases, however, the witness who gives false evidence from a pious motive, shall not lose a seat in heaven; such evidence is called by wise men the speech of the gods. Whenever the death of a man, whether a Bráhman, Kshatriya, Vaisya, or Súdra, would be occasioned by true evidence, falsehood may be spoken, and is even preferable to truth. Such witnesses must offer cakes and milk as oblations to the goddess Saraswatí; and thus they will fully expiate the venial sin of benevolent falsehood."[41]

Oaths.

"No man should take an oath in vain on a trifling occasion, or he will be punished both in this life and in the next; but it is not a deadly sin to take a light oath to women at a time of dalliance, or on a proposal of marriage, or in the case of grass or fruit eaten by a cow, or of wood taken for a sacrifice, or of a promise made for the preservation of a Bráhman."[42]

Ordeals.

The want of veracity displayed in the foregoing laws unfortunately continues to be a characteristic of

[41] Manu, viii. 75, 103–105.

[42] Manu, viii. 111, 112.

the Hindús; and may possibly have originated the trial by ordeal, which is applied by the code to witnesses alone. Manu says:—

"Sometimes a witness may be required to hold fire, or to dive under water, or to touch the heads of his children and wife; and if the fire does not burn him, or if the water does not speedily force him to the surface, or if he does not speedily meet with misfortune, his testimony must be held to be true."[43]

Pastoral law respecting damage to cattle.

The law respecting damages to cattle is chiefly remarkable for its pastoral simplicity. Manu says:—

"If any damage or hurt as regards cattle takes place in the day-time, the blame falls on the herdsman; but if it takes place in the night-time, the blame falls on the owner, if the cattle be kept in his own house. The wages of herdsmen are paid in milk, and they may with the assent of the master milk the best cow out of ten; the wages, however, may be paid in a different mode. If a beast has strayed through want of care on the part of the herdsman, and has been destroyed by reptiles, or killed by dogs, or has died by falling into a pit, the herdsman should make good the loss; but he should not be required to do so if the beast has been carried off by robbers, and if, after proclamation and pursuit, he gives notice to his master. When cattle die, the herdsman should carry their ears, hides, tails, and other portions to his master, and also point out their limbs. When a flock of sheep or goats is attacked by wolves, and the herdsman does not go out to repel the attack, he shall make good every sheep or goat that is slain; but if, whilst they are grazing together near a wood, a wolf suddenly springs out and kills one, the herdsman shall not be responsible."[44]

Neglect of land by cultivators.

The law respecting neglect of land is of real sig-

[43] Manu, viii. 114, 115.

[44] Manu, viii. 230—236.

nificance. The question of whether land in India was originally the property of the sovereign or the cultivator, has long been a subject of controversy. It has been ruled that the Raja was not the actual owner of the soil, but only the owner of a share of the crop. According, however, to Manu, the cultivator is not only bound to pay the established share of the crop to the Raja, but is under an obligation to keep the land in good cultivation, so that the Raja should be no loser by any negligence. Manu says:—

"If land be injured by the fault or neglect of the farmer, he shall be called upon to pay ten times as much as the Raja's share of the crop; but if the injury has been caused by the fault of his servants without his knowledge, he shall only be called upon to pay five times the Raja's share."[45]

The question of land tenures in India can, however, only be decided in dealing with the later periods of Hindú history.

Undivided and divided families.

The law as regards undivided and divided families involves a change in the national usage which is of some significance. Manu says:—

"After the death of the father and mother, the brothers may assemble and divide among themselves the paternal estate; but they have no power over it while their parents live [unless the father choose to distribute it]. The elder brother may take entire possession of the patrimony; and the others may live under him, as they lived under their father [unless they choose to be separated]."[46]

Here it should be remarked that the passages within brackets are not to be found in the original texts, but are the glosses of Kullúka, the comment-

[45] Manu, viii. 243.

[46] Manu, ix. 104, 105.

ator. The inference therefore seems to follow that in ancient times the general custom was for families to live undivided; but that as society progressed, the practice of dividing the family property among the several members came gradually into vogue. A very large proportion of Hindú families are still undivided.

Criminal law. Criminal law amongst the Hindús presents but few points of significance. Those relating to breaches of caste, and injury to women, have already been treated in foregoing chapters.[47] The laws respecting theft are, however, worthy of special notice from their extreme severity. Manu says:— Severe punishment of thieves and cheats.

> "Burglars who break a wall or partition, and commit theft in the night, should have their hands lopped off, and be impaled over a sharp stake. Cutpurses should be deprived of two fingers for a first offence; of a hand and foot for a second; and suffer death for a third. Those who furnish a thief with fire, food, arms, or apartments, or who receive a thing stolen, should receive the same punishment as the thief. The seller of bad grain for good, and the destroyer of landmarks, should suffer such corporal punishment as will disfigure them. But the worst of all cheats is a goldsmith; and if such a man commits fraud, the Raja should order him to be cut to pieces with razors."[48]

4th, Laws of war. The laws of war, as laid down in the code of Manu, present the same strange intermingling of conflicting ideas, which have already been referred to the opposition between the Kshatriya and the Bráhman, between the Vedic period and the Brahmanic period. Moreover, they exhibit that two-fold opposition, which has already been noticed as existing in each period; namely:— Four conflicting elements.

[47] See *ante*, chaps. x. and xii.

[48] Manu, ix. 276—278, 291, 292.

First, the opposition which existed in the Vedic age between a warlike community and a peaceful community, the worshippers of Indra and the worshippers of the Maruts.

Secondly, the opposition which prevailed in the Brahmanic period between the soldier and the priest, the Kshatriya and the Bráhman.

Difficulty of tracing each element to an individual community.

Each of these four elements may be traced in the laws respecting war; but the reference of each element to one of the four communities in question is only apparent and probable, and cannot be proved. Thus it is easy to refer all precepts implying praise of valour and contempt of cowardice to a warlike community; but it is difficult to classify such sentiments into Vedic and Brahmanic; although Brahmanic precepts may be occasionally detected by their association with the dogma of merits and demerits which especially belongs to the Brahmanic age. So, in like manner, the references to the value of alliances and diplomacy, and the benevolent laws respecting quarter and fair fighting, may be referred to a peaceful community of priests; but it is difficult to say decisively whether they originated in Vedic times or in Brahmanic times; although, as already seen in the war of the Mahá Bhárata, such precepts were but little regarded by the Kshatriyas of the Vedic period.

Division of the laws of war under four heads.

The laws of war laid down in the code of Manu may now be treated under four several heads, of duties of Rajas in defensive warfare, duties of Rajas in offensive warfare, rules as regards quarter and fair fighting, and treatment of a conquered country. These may now be considered in order.

The duty of a Raja when placed upon the defensive was very simple. Manu says:—

Duties of a Raja in defensive warfare.

"Whenever a Raja is threatened by an enemy of equal or superior force, he must never turn his face from battle, nor forget the duties of the Kshatriya caste to which he belongs, namely, to accept every challenge, to protect the general community, and to honour the Bráhmans. Every Raja who fights briskly to the last will ascend to heaven immediately after death."[49] "The soldier who turns his back to the enemy out of fear, and happens to be slain by his foes, shall take upon his own soul all the sins of his Commander, and shall give to his Commander all the merits of his own virtuous acts."[50]

Incongruity of Brahmanic and Vedic ideas.

Here the incongruity of Brahmanic and Vedic ideas seems abundantly manifest. The Brahmanic dogma of merits and demerits, has been superadded to the old Kshatriya notion, which finds even fuller expression in the Scandinavian belief, that the soul of the valiant soldier who fell in battle would ascend to the heaven of Odin, whilst the coward, or man who died a natural death, descended to the hell of Niflheim. The duties of a Raja after the commencement of the war are of a somewhat hesitating character.

Duties during actual operations.

"When a Raja," says Manu, "perceives that his subjects are firm in their allegiance, and feels that he is powerful against the enemy, he should stand on the defensive. When a Raja knows that his own troops are in good spirits and well supplied, and that his enemy is disheartened and ill provided, he should eagerly march against him. On the other hand, when a Raja is expecting reinforcements, and

Advance and retreat.

[49] Manu, vii. 87—89.

[50] Manu, vii. 87—89.

suffering but little injury meanwhile, he should temporize. When he finds himself weak in troops and beasts of burden, he should remain quietly in camp, and endeavour to make terms. When he perceives that his enemy is in every way stronger than himself, he should detach a portion of his army to amuse the foe, and meantime secure his own safety in some inaccessible locality. When he finds himself open to attack on all sides, he should seek the protection of a just and powerful Raja, and propitiate him with all the honours which should be paid to a father. But should a Raja find that the alliance is a source of evil, he should wage war alone. In a word, a Raja should so conduct his affairs, that neither an ally, nor a neutral, nor an enemy should ever gain an advantage over him; and this is the sum of political wisdom."[51]

Alliance.

Duties of a Raja in offensive warfare.

The duty of a Raja in offensive warfare is of a decided character.

Invading an enemy's territory.

"When a Raja," says Manu, "invades the territory of an enemy, he should advance towards the enemy's metropolis.

The march.

He should commence his march either in the spring or in the autumn, so that he may find either the vernal or the autumnal crops on the ground; but if he has a clear prospect of victory, or if his enemy is weakened by disasters, he may commence his march at any season. He must always, however, be upon his guard against secret friends who are in the service of a hostile Raja; and against all those who bring messages from the enemy's camp. On a plain he should fight with chariots and cavalry; in a region where there is water, he should fight on boats and elephants; in a woody country he should fight with bows and arrows; and where the ground is clear he should fight with swords and targets, and other weapons adapted to those quarters. In blockading an enemy, a Raja should sit encamped, and lay waste the surrounding country; spoiling the grass, wells, fuel, and trenches of the enemy, and harass-

Secret friends and emissaries.

Tactics.

Blockades.

[51] Manu, vii. 94, 95.

ing him night and day. A Raja should secretly gain over all such leading men from the side of his enemy as can be brought in with safety. He should keep himself thoroughly informed of all that his enemies are doing; and then when a fortunate moment is offered by heaven, he should give battle without hesitation. At the same time, however, he should be more desirous of reducing his enemy by negotiation, or by suitable bribes, or by creating dissension, than by risking all upon a battle."[52]

Rules of fair fighting and quarter.

The rules as regard fair fighting and quarter are identical with those which are laid down in the Mahá Bhárata.[53] Manu says:—

Prohibited weapons.

"Men should not fight with concealed weapons, nor with arrows mischievously barbed, nor with poisoned arrows, nor with darts blazing with fire. Again, a horseman, or a soldier in a chariot, should not fight a man who is on foot. Quarter should be given to the following individuals, namely:—one who sues for life with joined hand; one whose hair is loose and obstructs his sight; one who is sitting down fatigued; one who surrenders himself a prisoner; one who is asleep; one who has lost his coat of mail; one who is disarmed; one who is only looking on, or fighting another man; one who is grievously wounded, or terrified, and one who is running away."[54]

Individuals who are to receive quarter.

Policy to be pursued in a conquered country.

The course to be followed by a Raja after a conquest is worthy of notice, as it may possibly throw light upon the policy by which the Aryan conquerors established their empire over Hindústan. Manu says:—

"When a Raja has conquered a country, he should respect the deities which are worshipped in that country, as well as the virtuous priests of those deities. He should also

[52] Manu, vii. 181—199. [53] See *ante*, Vol. I. Part ii. chap. 11.
[54] Manu, vii. 90—93.

distribute largesses, and reassure the people by loud proclamation. He should respect the laws of the country, and place it under a Prince of the royal race, and gratify him with presents of jewels. Or he may form an alliance with the Raja whom he has conquered, and act in unison with him. He should also pay due attention to any Raja who has supported his cause, and to any Raja who has been hostile to his ally; so that both from an ally and an enemy he may secure the fruit of his expedition. By securing a firm ally a Raja obtains greater strength than by gaining wealth and territory."

These precepts are curious, inasmuch as they exhibit the Oriental custom of conciliating a people and consolidating a conquest. No change of rulers was carried out, and no change of laws; and an alliance was merely formed for the purpose of increasing the military strength of the conqueror, without any reference whatever to the moral or material welfare of the people. The utter failure of this policy to maintain order and law, and to provide for the defence of the country at large, will form hereafter one of the most important political lessons, which are to be gathered from the history of India under native rule.

Its failure.

CHAPTER XIV.

HISTORICAL RESUMÉ.

Absence of perspective in the ancient history of India.

THE two earliest ages in Hindú history, namely, the Vedic and Brahmanic periods, have now been investigated; and the results have been classified into chapters, and reduced to an available form. But still the labour of the historian is incomplete. The utter want of perspective, which has hitherto characterized the early legends of India, as it characterizes those of ancient Greece, has only been partially filled up. It is true that the ideas and institutions of the Vedic Aryans have been distinguished from those of the Bráhmans; and so far the task may be regarded as satisfactory; inasmuch as the two periods have for ages been blended into one in the belief of the people of India. But with this exception, the ordinary requirements of history appear to be altogether wanting. Imagination may fill the ear with the roar of distant ages, and please the eye with visions of primeval men; but there is no vista of the past carrying the mind back by successive stages to the earliest glimmer of legend. Two pictures are certainly presented, one of the Vedic times, and the other of Brahmanic times; and it appears to be established that the two differed widely from each other. But in each case there is a

want of chronological sequence. The annals of the Vedic Aryans, and the annals of the Bráhmans, are alike unknown; and no record whatever has been preserved of the circumstances under which the two have been blended together; although the process by which the ideas and institutions of the Vedic age have been Brahmanized in the Hindú literature has been partially explained. The question, therefore, remains to be solved of whether it is possible, by comparing the different phases of civilizations which appear to belong to different Epic traditions, to discover the clue to a chronological sequence, which shall in any degree correspond to the notion of annals that is implied in the modern idea of history.

No chronological sequence beyond the distinction between the Vedic and Brahmanic epochs.

Possibility of discovering a clue to a sequence.

Before, however, attempting this task, it will be necessary to define clearly the limits of the inquiry. Many questions have been passed over in the present work, which have been largely and profitably discussed by eminent Sanskrit scholars, and especially by the great school of German philology of which Professors Lassen and Weber may be regarded as representatives. Among these questions may be mentioned the origin of the Vedic people, and their apparent line of march before they entered the Punjab; the interpretation of Vedic myths by reference to natural phenomena; the reduction of traditions of individual heroes into allegorical histories of tribes or clans; and the classification of Vedic and Brahmanic literature into epochs, like that which has been attempted with so much success by Professor Max Müller. The importance of these inquiries, as contributions to the history of human development, cannot be denied; but they can scarcely be regarded

Limits of the inquiry.

Questions passed over in the present history.

as having a direct bearing upon a history of the Hindús, which has been mainly undertaken for the purpose of illustrating the civilization and institutions of the people, with especial reference to their present condition and future prospects, and to the political relations of the British Government with the great Indian feudatories of the crown. Moreover, an exhaustive investigation of these points would necessitate a preliminary training of many years in purely philological studies; and such a training would tend to wean away the mind from such historical criticism as is based upon the lives of men, rather than upon their languages. Finally, with all respect for the eminent scholars whose names have been mentioned, grave doubts may perhaps be expressed as regards the reduction of many of the Epic traditions into descriptions of natural phenomena, or allegorical histories of tribes or clans. That the hymns of the Rig-Veda abound with mythical allusions of the former character cannot be doubted; and Professor Max Müller's forthcoming translation of the hymns will in all probability open up a new field of thought in this direction. But, as regards the Hindú legends in the Epics, another question has to be taken into consideration; namely, whether natural phenomena has not often been described in language and illustrated by incidents, which have been borrowed from authentic tradition. Again, it is a comparatively easy task to select certain incidents in the Mahá Bhárata and Rámáyana, and point out the striking resemblance which they bear to astronomical phenomena; but it would be as easy to select certain incidents from modern history and biography, in which the resemblance would

Unsatisfactory character of modern modes of interpretation.

References to natural phenomena in the Vedic hymns.

Objections to the interpretation of Epic traditions by reference to natural phenomena.

be equally startling. Unless, therefore, the upholders of the so-called mythological theory are prepared to show that the whole of the Epics are amenable to a mythological interpretation, their method may possibly prove an *ignis fatuus*, tending in many cases to lead the student astray from the beaten track of authentic tradition into the field of conjectural allegory. The attempts which have been made to transmute the Tale of Troy, and indeed the whole mass of Greek legends, into similar myths, can by no means be regarded as satisfactory; and other attempts which have been made to reduce the sacred traditions of the Hebrews to the same category are still more open to criticism. The same remarks would in some measure apply to the theory which would reduce some of the traditions of individual heroes into allegorical histories of tribes or clans. Here, however, a distinction must be laid down between mythological legends of the gods, and what appear to be historical traditions of heroes. Legends of Indra and other gods, and the wars between gods and demons, appears to be generally capable of allegorical interpretation. But the case seems somewhat different as regards the Epic traditions of individual heroes, who have never been admitted into the Hindú Pantheon, or who have only been deified at a comparatively recent period. As regards this latter class of traditions, the simple method has been preferred of stripping the authentic tradition as far as possible of what appeared to be the Brahmanical accumulations of a later period, and thus attempting to restore the original story as far as may be to its pristine form; referring the Brahmanical additions to the later age in which they seem to have

Reduction of traditions of heroes into allegorical histories of clans applicable only to mythological legends, and not to traditions of heroes.

originated, and proposing to consider them hereafter in connection with the history of the period to which they appear to belong, namely, the age of Brahmanical revival. This method is left to stand upon its merits. Indeed, controversy would be out of place in the present work, and is, perhaps, best avoided; and the allegorical modes of interpretation are thus left to rest upon the authority of the eminent scholars by whom they have been suggested.[1]

First scene in Indian history: —the Vedic Aryans in the Punjab.

The first scene in the history of India opens upon the Aryan occupation of the Punjab. A teeming population had apparently been settled for generations, and perhaps for centuries, in the land of the five or seven rivers. That the people had attained a certain civilization is evident from the allusions to houses, chariots, mailed armour, ships, and merchandise, which are to be found in the Vedic hymns as well as in the Epics. Their means of subsistence appear to have been generally drawn from lands and cattle; and doubtless their civilization varied, not only according to the affluence or otherwise of different families, but according to the fact of whether they dwelt in long established and well protected villages, or in new and outlying settlements recently cleared from the jungle, and bordering on an alien population. In that remote period the river Saraswatí flowed into the Indus; and it is easy to infer from hymns already quoted, that a line of Aryan settlements was to be found on the banks of both rivers. In the subsequent age of

[1] It is much to be regretted that the works of the leading continental Orientalists have not been reproduced in an English form. In India there are many scholars, both Native and European, who would be glad of such a republication of the works of Lassen, Weber, and some others, who are at present only known at second-hand or by reputation.

Second scene in Indian history: —the Aryan conquest of Hindústan.

Vast unrecorded interval between the two.

Brahmanism, the Aryans had conquered Hindústan, and the geography of the region bordering on the Saraswatí had almost faded away from the national memory; and but little was known beyond the fact that the river itself disappeared in the sand long before it reached the Indus. The period between the establishment of Vedic settlements on the Saraswatí, and the Aryan conquest of Hindústan, probably covers an interval of thousands of years; and yet the only positive facts which have been preserved in connection with this period are the disappearance of the Saraswatí and the rise of Brahmanism. Certain inferences, however, may be drawn from the Epic legends and traditions which have been reproduced in the present work, as well as from obscure and isolated allusions in other sacred books. It should, however, be added that whatever may have been the date in which the Epics and Institutes of Manu received their present form, the old Vedic and Brahmanic ages preceded the advent of Buddhism; and, consequently, they preceded the invasion of Alexander, and cannot be illustrated by the coins and inscriptions which have been hitherto discovered, and which appear to belong to a later era. Probably, however, it will be seen hereafter that the history of the Buddhist period furnishes further illustrations of the Brahmanic era, in the same way that Brahmanic literature has been found to furnish illustrations of the Vedic period.

Classification of different phases of civilization in Epic traditions: —the patriarchal, heroic, and monarchical.

Under such circumstances it may perhaps be as well to compare the different phases of civilization which appear to characterize different legends, and then to attempt a classification of the results in a form corresponding to annals. In the history of

every people of which a record has been preserved there appear to have been three political stages, namely:—

1st, The Patriarchal.

2nd, The Heroic.

3rd, The Monarchical.

Modification of the three stages of civilization by human nature.

Each of these stages, however, may be more or less modified by three different and powerful elements, which have their origin in human nature, and are more or less common to all classes of the community, namely:—

Instincts.

1st, The instinctive desires which develope into passions.

Democratic yearnings.

2nd, The yearning after individual freedom and power, which finds expression in democracy.

Religious aspirations.

3rd, The higher aspirations after temporal and spiritual good, which are involved in the conception of religion.[2]

Action of human nature upon the three stages of political development the essence of history.

A critical narrative of the modifications produced upon the three stages of political development by the instincts, the yearnings of democracy, and the aspirations of religion, would form the very essence of history; and would prove infinitely more valuable than the narratives of migrations, wars, and court intrigues, to which the name of history has been often improperly applied. Accordingly, it may be advisable to arrange the historical conclusions to be gathered from the Hindú traditions as far as possible under the three heads of patriarchal, heroic, and monarchical; and at the same time to inquire

[2] This classification is not strictly logical, as democratic and religious yearnings might with certain reservations be reckoned amongst the instincts. But the classification is practical and intelligible, and controversy is avoided by its adoption.

step by step how far each stage in Hindú history has been modified by the three influences indicated.

1st, Patriarchal age of Hindú history illustrated by the war of Bhárata and adventures of the Pándavas at Viráta.

The most valuable illustrations of the patriarchal age of Hindú history are perhaps to be gathered from the tradition of the great war of Bhárata, and the episode, which describes the adventures of the Pándavas in the court of Raja Viráta. These two stories present important differences as regards religious belief, and must, therefore, be considered separately.

Family settlement at Hastinápur involved in the tradition of the war of Bhárata.

The tradition of the war of Bhárata involves in the first instance the settlement of a family at Hastinápur on the banks of the upper Ganges, which had been conquered and cleared by a remote ancestor.

Pursuits of the settlers. Agriculture.

The pursuits of this family were eminently patriarchal. The cultivation of land is implied, though not directly expressed; probably because according to the caste system, which was fully in force when the tradition was reduced to its present form, the cultivation of land was left to the Vaisyas and Súdras.

Keeping cattle.

The keeping of cattle, however, is sufficiently indicated by the fact that the younger members of the family were accustomed to go out into the pastures at regular intervals for the purpose of marking all the calves, and re-marking all the older cattle. There were two branches in the family, namely, the sons of a reigning Chieftain who were named Kauravas, and those of a deceased Chieftain who were named Pándavas.

Training in the use of arms.

All were brought up together and trained to defend their crops and cattle against enemies and robbers; and thus they were all more or less proficient in pugilism, wrestling, archery, throwing stones, casting nooses, and hurling chakras. As regards enemies there appears to

have been a feud with a neighbouring Raja named Drupada; whilst the Bhíls in the neighbourhood were kept in strict subordination.

Feuds.

Subsequently a breach arose between the Kauravas and Pándavas; and the Kauravas remained behind at Hastinápur, whilst the five Pándavas went out with their mother, and founded a new settlement at Indra-prastha on the banks of the Jumná.

Breach between two rival branches of the family.

Migration of the Pándavas to Indra-prastha.

An episode occurs in connection with this new settlement, which illustrates the prevailing idea as regards marriage. Monogamy and polygamy seem to have been recognized institutions in the family history of the settlement at Hastinápur; but otherwise there appears to have been little sentiment in the marriage unions. A young damsel was induced to become the wife of an aged Chieftain, by the promise that any sons she might bear him should inherit the estate to the exclusion of the heir-apparent. In another case three young sisters were carried away by force to be the wives of a young Raja. Again, the widows of a deceased Kshatriya were made over on his death to his nearest kinsmen, in order that sons might be begotten to inherit the family estate. Lastly, before the Pándavas commenced clearing a new settlement at Indra-prastha, they married one woman amongst them, according to a depraved custom which finds expression in the Vedic hymns; the eldest brother being regarded as the real husband of the lady, whilst the younger brothers were permitted to share his privileges.[3]

Laxity as regards marriage in the family traditions.

Polyandry of the Pándavas.

[3] The idea which prevails amongst the Bhooteas, who still practise polyandry, is that a younger brother is entitled to a share of the wife of the eldest brother until he procured a wife of his own; and that in return for this privilege he is

Colonial life at Indra-prastha.

Glimpses of the old colonial life of the five brothers and their joint wife at Indra-prastha, frequently appear beneath the dense overgrowth of later myths. The daily meals were apparently cooked and distributed amongst the brothers, first by the mother and afterwards by the joint wife.

Clearing the jungle.

The Pándavas cleared their land by burning down the jungle; and in so doing they appear to have come into collision with a Scythian tribe of Nágas or snake worshippers.

Possession asserted by a great feast.

After the Pándavas had established themselves at Indra-prastha, they gave a great banquet, called a Rajasúya, which appears to have been an assertion of possession or sovereignty, but which is represented in the Mahá Bhárata as a great sacrifice to Indra and the other Vedic deities.

Pándavas lose their wife at a gambling match.

Subsequently the Kauravas challenged the Pándavas to a gambling match; and the Pándavas lost both their estate or Raj, and their wife Draupadí; but were subsequently permitted to depart with Draupadí, on the condition that they should absent themselves for thirteen years. The residence in the jungle is chiefly valuable from an illustration which it furnishes of an ancient law, that a wife should never be captured until her husband or husbands had been first conquered.

Feud between the Pándavas and Kauravas settled by a war to the knife.

The feud between the Kauravas and Pándavas was subsequently settled by a terrible war; and the narrative becomes more fruitful of illustrations of patriarchal times. The negotiations which preceded the war appear to have been carried on in an age when writing was unknown, for messages were sent between the rival parties by word of mouth. The war

bound to render personal service to the household, and is expected to make some presents to the wife. The question of parentage is settled by the mother.

which ensued between the Kauravas and Pándavas was almost like a savage contest between wild beasts. The warriors fought with their fists, feet, and teeth; and cut and hewed and mangled and maimed each other with knives and clubs. Sometimes they threw an enemy down, and knelt upon his breast, and cut off his head; and in one case a warrior drank the blood of his slaughtered enemy with wild exultations of joy. The victory was ultimately gained by the Pándavas, but on the night of their final triumph, their camp was broken open by an ally of the Kauravas who had survived the fray, and their five sons were slaughtered, and the bleeding heads carried off as trophies of the revenge which had been achieved. The Pándavas resigned themselves as they best could to this fearful blow, and ultimately effected a reconciliation with their uncle, whose sons had fallen in the war. They performed the funeral rites of the slain, which are remarkable as showing the absence of all idea of burning the living widow with the dead husband. Finally, the Pándavas returned in triumph to the old family inheritance; and inaugurated their eldest brother Yudhishthira as Raja; and eventually asserted his supremacy as lord paramount of all the neighbouring Rajas, by the celebration of an Aswamedha. In this significant ceremony a horse was let loose by the Pándavas to wander where it pleased; a proceeding which was regarded as a challenge to all the neighbouring Rajas either to acknowledge their submission by letting the horse alone, or to hazard a battle by leading it away. After the lapse of a certain time, said to be a year, during which the Pándavas had asserted and maintained their suzerainty by conquering all who

Horrible revenge.

Absence of Sati.

Return of the Pándavas to Hastinápur, and celebration of an Aswamedha.

interfered with the horse, a great feast was held, in which the horse was killed and roasted as a sacrifice to Indra, and then served up to the conquered Rajas who attended as guests.

Allegorical myths referring to wars against the Scythian Nágas.

The story of the great war is followed by some myths, which throw a curious light upon the subsequent fortunes of the reigning house at Hastináp̀ur. These myths seem to refer to some ancient wars between the Aryans and Scythian Nágas, or snake-worshippers. Parikshit, who succeeded Yudhishthira in the Raj, is said to have been killed by a snake, which seems to indicate that he was slain by a Nága. In revenge his son Janamejaya is said to have performed a sacrifice of snakes, in which the snakes were irresistibly impelled by the divine power of the sacrificing Bráhman to enter the sacred flame; a myth which seems to cover a tradition of some treacherous massacre of Scythic Nágas at a great banquet. In later legends these Nágas are identified with the Buddhists; and it is not improbable that these legends denote the subsequent overthrow of the reigning dynasty in the neighbourhood of Delhi by a Buddhist conqueror.

Free play of the instincts in the patriarchal age.

The illustrations of the patriarchal period, which are furnished by the tradition of the great war of Bhárata, may be further amplified by a consideration of the modifications of the patriarchal stage of human development, which were produced by the instincts, the yearnings of democracy, and the aspirations of religion. At such an early period the instincts appear to have had full play, and the passions became the dominant powers. The Pándavas sacrificed all sentiment to instinct by taking one wife amongst them. They were driven by sheer

want to clear out lands and keep cattle in a distant jungle, where they appear to have been surrounded by enemies and robbers. Finally, after they had lost their cleared lands at a gambling match, they were impelled partly by want, and partly by a passion for revenge, to enter upon a bloody fratricidal war, which terminated in the destruction of their rival kinsmen. In like manner the rude democratic yearnings and uncultured religious aspirations partook of the nature of instincts. The young men simply struggled against the authority of the elders, and plunged into a war to the knife contrary to the sober counsel of experienced age. The religious idea consisted in offering to their rude national or tribal gods such savoury meat as pleased themselves, for the sake of imparting a superstitious significance to the possession of cultivated land, and to the assertion of superiority over their neighbours. A few sentiments, chiefly in reference to war, seem to have been more or less recognized by the warrior caste of the patriarchal period. The precept that a wife should not be carried away as prize until her husband had been conquered, has already been noticed. To this may be added the notion that a challenge should always be accepted; that a third party should never interfere whilst two combatants are fighting; that death is to be preferred to dishonour; and that revenge is more or less a virtue. Indeed, the Oriental passion for revenge can only be kept within bounds by a system of order and law, like that which prevails under British administration; and it has always attained a fearful growth both in the patriarchal age, and in the heroic time which follows it, when each man does what seems right in

Democratic struggles of young men against the elders.

Sacrifices associated with the possession of land and assertion of sovereignty.

Sentiments in reference to war.

Force of the Oriental passion for revenge.

his own eyes. The terrible massacre perpetrated by the sons of Jacob, in revenge for the seduction of their sister Dinah by the Prince of Shechem, is a striking illustration of the force of this sentiment. So too is the episode in the life of Samson, whose Philistine wife had been given away by her father to one of his companions; and who thereupon set on fire the standing corn of the Philistines by attaching firebrands to the tails of three hundred foxes. In return for this outrage the Philistines burnt both the faithless wife and her offending father; and again in revenge for this atrocity the Hebrew slew a thousand Philistines with the jaw-bone of an ass. The history of Native rule has for ages been characterized by the story of such bloody feuds, excepting when order has been maintained and justice administered by a paramount power. The tribes beyond the pale of the North-West frontier, who are also more or less beyond the pale of British administration, are probably the relics of the time when the sons of Pándu fought the sons of Dhritaráshtra; and to this day a Sepoy in the pay of the British Government, who has been enlisted from these frontier tribes, will occasionally take a furlough for the definite purpose of settling some old family feud by the slaughter of an enemy; and it is often the case that the enemy will be slaughtered, together with every member of his family down to the babe in arms, so that no one may remain to perpetuate the feud. As, however, the tide of European civilization spreads over Asia, such atrocities will cease to be.

Native rule in India characterized by bloody feuds.

Patriarchal basis of the story of the adventures of the Pándavas at Viráta.

The second tradition which appears to illustrate the patriarchal age, is to be found in the episode in the Mahá Bhárata, which narrates the adventures of

the Pándavas and their wife at the court of Raja Viráta.[4] This tradition is presented in an artificial form corresponding to later Hindú fiction; but it certainly has a patriarchal basis. The Raja kept cattle which were carried away by an enemy. Upon this the ryots and herdsmen were required to bring all the remaining cattle into the so-called city, which was probably only a fortified village; whilst the Raja or Chieftain marched out with his servants to pursue the cattle-lifters and recover what had been stolen. The details of this story have perhaps been sufficiently discussed in the previous volume. The main point, however, demands a further consideration, namely, the belief that ghosts can be comforted by the society of a favourite female, a belief which subsequently found a modified expression in the rite of Satí. It should here be remarked, that whilst a belief in ghosts is fully intimated in the hymns of the Rig-Veda, there is apparently no reference in those hymns to the burning of a living widow with a dead husband; nor, indeed, is there any trustworthy reference to such a rite in the Vedic traditions which have been preserved in the Epics. On the contrary, the widows of those who were slain in the great war of Bhárata were not burnt with their dead husbands, but lived many years afterwards; whilst neither a wife nor a concubine of Maharaja Dasaratha, the father of Ráma, was put to death at his decease. But the story of the adventures of the Pándavas at the court of Raja Viráta throws considerable light upon the origin of Satí,

Absence of the rite of Sati from the Vedic hymns.

Idea of the rite involved in the tradition of Viráta.

[4] All the Hindú legends here quoted will be found either in the present or previous volume.

before it was associated with Brahmanical doctrines, or even involved the idea of a voluntary sacrifice on the part of the widow. The downright realism of the story has already been commented upon, and furnishes curious illustrations of the primitive customs of patriarchal times. The Commander of the forces falls in love with the waiting maid of the Rání who is his sister. He asks his sister to send the maid to his house, which is accordingly done; but the maid refuses to listen to his proposals, being in fact the wife of the Pándavas in disguise. Subsequently the maid feigns consent, and agrees to give him a meeting; but sends one of her husbands in her room. Accordingly, instead of meeting a mistress, the lover finds himself at the mercy of the husband, who eventually pommels him to death. The brothers of the dead man then determine to burn the living maid with the corpse, partly to avenge his death, and partly to solace the ghost of the deceased with her society in the world of spirits.

Scythian custom of strangling a concubine at the grave of a king.

This idea is perhaps not Aryan but Scythian; that is, if any opposition between Aryan and Scythian is to be recognized. According to Herodotus the Scythians were accustomed on the death of a King to strangle one of his concubines, and bury her with him, without apparently any regard to her willingness or otherwise.[5] The custom might also have been adopted as a safeguard from all attempts at assassination on the part of a wife or concubine.

Viráta a Scythian settlement.

It may be therefore inferred from these data that Raja Viráta was the Chieftain of a Scythian tribe, which had encamped in the neighbourhood of an

[5] Herodotus, iv. 71.

Aryan settlement. It does not, however, appear that the Scythians of Viráta were Nágas, or snake-worshippers, like those whom the Pándavas fought in the jungle; although the identity is not impossible, inasmuch as the peculiar habits of snakes, in disappearing in holes beneath the surface of the earth, led to their being worshipped in primitive times as deities of the under-world, and that worship still lingers in every quarter of India.

Difference between the Aryan and Scythian treatment of widows.

The difference between the Aryan and the Scythian custom may now be indicated. Amongst the Aryans, a widow was made over to a kinsman of the deceased husband; amongst the Scythians, a favourite widow or concubine was sent to accompany the dead man. That the Aryan custom ultimately fell into disuse amongst the twice-born castes, and was superseded by the later Satí, subsequently to the promulgation of the Institutes of Manu, has already been shown. Still the fact, that traces of the rite are to be found in a tribe dwelling in India during the Vedic period, seems to justify an investigation of those instinctive passions under which it eventually merged into Brahmanical law.

Difference between the later Brahmanical rite of Satí and the early Scythic form.

Two ideas are involved in the later Brahmanical rite which find no expression in the early Scythic form, namely, that the act was voluntary on the part of the widow, and that it was associated with a well-grounded belief in the immortality of the soul. The widow, indeed, entered the fire with a profound conviction that she would thereby rejoin her husband in abodes of bliss. The Thracians had a similar custom, except that the widow was not burnt, but slaughtered at the grave of her dead husband by her next of kin; and it is curious to

HISTORY OF INDIA. PART V.

note that the doctrine of the immortality of the soul had been promulgated amongst the Thracians at an early period by a religious teacher named Zalmoxis.[6]

Connection of the later rite with a belief in the immortality of the soul.

A further reference to the working of the human heart will indicate, that wherever the belief in a future state has superseded the old crude idea of wandering ghosts, and become the unquestioned faith of the people, a latent desire exists in every wedded pair who have truly lived and loved together, to accompany each other to the tomb; and this desire is stronger in the wife, to whom by common consent a larger measure of delicacy and sentiment is awarded.[7] In India this desire appears to have been brought into play during that phase of civilization when sentiment begins to triumph over materialism; when the husband shuddered at the knowledge that after his death his widow would be transferred to a kinsman, and the loving wife revolted at the idea of being made over to the same individual, who might already have had a wife of his own. There were also exceptional circumstances which would lead to an extension of the rite of Satí. The precautions to be taken by a Rája against being poisoned or assassinated by a female, were rendered unnecessary when the female was condemned to enter the fire after the death of her deceased master, and when the prolonged existence of a Rája was a point of paramount importance to every wife and concubine in his zenana. Again,

Phase in the civilization of India in which Satí originated.

Exceptional circumstances tending to the extension of Satí.

[6] Herodotus, iv. 94, 95; v. 5.

[7] A story has been preserved in the Arabian Nights, in which a man, who has been thrown upon a distant island, and has married the daughter of the king, finds that it is the custom of the country for the husband to follow a deceased wife to the tomb, and accordingly expresses the greatest possible alarm at the discovery.

the unprotected state in which widows were left in a lawless age, and the harsh treatment they would receive as mere dependants in the family, must have driven many a distracted woman to enter the fire and follow the soul of a loving husband. In a still later age, when the Satí became associated with the Brahmanical religion, and was glorified as an act which conferred lasting fame upon the wife, and immortal happiness upon herself and her deceased, it is not surprising that the rite should have become general throughout India. In that terrible hour which succeeds the death of a beloved husband, when the reason is crazed with grief, and the zenana is filled with weeping and wailing, it is easy to understand that a widow would prefer a glorious death before a thousand spectators, and immediate re-union with a deceased husband, to a life of degradation, in which every pleasure would be denied her, and her very presence would be regarded as an evil omen.

Glorification of the Sati by the Brahmans.

Turning now from the patriarchal age, during which the Vedic Aryans were probably restricted to the neighbourhood of Meerut and Delhi, it becomes necessary to glance at the period during which they descended the valleys of the Ganges and Jumná, and achieved the conquest of Hindústan. This era of Aryan conquest may be regarded as the heroic age of Hindú history, but it is almost a blank to the historical student. In Hebrew history the corresponding period of conquest is depicted with a fulness and truthfulness, which would alone suffice to perpetuate the story to the end of time. Indeed the books of Joshua and Judges comprise the only authentic annals of heroic times, when a patriarchal

2nd, Heroic age of Hindú history identified with the Aryan conquest of Hindústan.

Pictures of the heroic age furnished by Hebrew history.

form of government was modified by the rise of individual warriors, who conquered new territories, and ruled them with a strong arm, by the common consent of the people at large. In Greece the heroic age is obscured by legends, which have yet to be subjected to a tedious critical process before they can be expected to yield historical results. But in India the case is even worse. The age of Aryan conquest may have been one of convulsion and upheaval. The valleys of the Ganges and Jumná may have rung with victories as memorable as those of Joshua, Barak, Gideon, Jephtha, and Samson. Old landmarks may have been destroyed, and a new religious faith superadded to the grosser superstitions of the aborigines. But scarcely a vestige or record of the conquest remains, beyond what philologists may elicit from a study and comparison of languages. Even the names of the men who fought the battles and subjugated the country from the Himálayas to the Vindhya mountains have passed away like the memory of the Shepherd Kings. There may have been old Kshatriya ballads which celebrated the establishment of Aryan empires at Delhi, Agra, Oude, and Bahar. If so, however, they have long been converted into nursery fictions, like the stories of the wars of Bhíma against the Usuras, or the stories of the wars of the four younger Pándavas in connection with the Aswamedha of Yudhishthira. Perhaps also they have been transmuted into obscure myths of wars between the Devatas and Daityas, the gods and demons; which may possibly be identified with the conflict between the fair-complexioned Aryans and the black-skinned aborigines; although in their present form they certainly seem to refer

Meagre relics of the heroic age in India.

Nursery fiction.

Mythological wars.

more frequently to the later antagonism between the Bráhmans and the Buddhists. Here and there in the Epics and Puránas glimpses may perhaps be obtained of Rajas who had conquered the surrounding Rajas, and had thereby attained a certain supremacy as local suzerains. In this manner mention is made of Indra as a temporal sovereign; of Nahusha, Vena, Prithu, Manu, and others; and of a succession of lords paramount who were known as Indras. But these lists, as will be shown hereafter, are utterly untrustworthy. Some of the sovereigns are represented, in the inflated language of Oriental exaggerations, as conquerors of the earth, and rulers over all its continents and seas. Others are said to have conquered the three worlds, namely, earth, heaven, and the under-world. Meantime the reigns of the several rulers are extended over many thousands of years. It will, however, suffice to state here, that with the dubious exceptions noted, not a single relic has hitherto been recovered, which can be regarded as a veritable illustration of the old Aryan conquest of Hindústan.

Glimpses of Rajas reigning as lords paramount.

Two inferences, however, may be drawn from existing data, which throw some light upon the heroic period, namely:—

Two inferences respecting the heroic period.

1st, That the Aryan conquest of Hindústan was mainly carried out whilst the Bráhmans were employed as mere animal sacrificers, and before they had attained political power as a hierarchy.

2nd, That during the rise of Hindú suzerainties, the Bráhmans may have occasionally struggled to assert their supremacy; but in so doing they met with considerable opposition from the Maharajas.

The rise of the Bráhmans as an ecclesiastical

Aryan conquest of Hindústan

hierarchy was certainly subsequent to the Aryan conquest. When Nishadha, Ayodhyá, and Mithila were already in existence as independent empires, the Bráhmans are merely introduced as messengers and sacrificers; and every attempt to represent them as holding important posts in the govèrnment is palpably mythical. The early Rajas were their own priests, and marriage rites were performed not by a Bráhman, but by the father of the bride. Indeed it would appear that the heroic age of Hindú history was eminently an age of sacrifice. During the patriarchal period the assertion of proprietorship over cleared land was celebrated by a Rajasúya sacrifice; and the assertion of local suzerainty by an Aswamedha, or sacrifice of a horse; and it is easy to infer that the acquisition of large territories, and the establishment of substantive empires, would be accompanied by vast holocausts, at which cattle would be slain by hundreds and thousands, and the banquet would be truly national and imperial. It is probable that under such circumstances the mystic sacrificial ritual laid down in the Aitareya Bráhmanam was gradually moulded into formal shape; whilst the extensive employment of Bráhmans at such sacrifices may have originated the caste idea, with which it was undoubtedly associated, that nó food was so pure as that which was cooked by a Bráhman.

completed before the rise of the Brahmanical hierarchy.

Extended employment of the Bráhmans as annual sacrificers in the heroic age.

Early antagonism of the Bráhmans to the Maháraja.

During the rise of Hindú suzerainties the Bráhmans seem to have been occasionally in antagonism to the Maháraja. In the myths of successive Indras and other lords paramount, to which reference has already been made, one single idea predominates throughout, which indicates either their Brah-

manical origin, or the extent to which they have been manipulated by the Brahmanical compilers. If a Maháraja treated Bráhmans with respect, and adhered strictly to Brahmanical law, his empire was described as prosperous, and his reign as glorious. If, on the contrary, a Maháraja was disrespectful to the Bráhmans, and gratified his passions without regard to Brahmanical law, which appears to have been the case with Raja Vena; then, according to the myth, he was deprived of his Raj, and condemned to exile or destruction. The same idea finds full expression in the Institutes of Manu, where certain Rajas are specified as having been utterly ruined because they had not learned virtuous humility from the Bráhmans; in other words, who had not shown that deference to an arrogant priesthood, which was claimed by the Brahmanical hierarchy.

Worthless character of the mythological myths shown by reference to the myth of Indra, and Nahusha.

The worthless character of these myths, beyond perhaps indicating an early opposition between the Bráhmans and the Mahárajas, may be further proved by a reference to the myths respecting Indra. Here it should be remarked that the name of Indra is sometimes applied to deity, sometimes to sovereignty, sometimes to a mortal hero, and possibly on some occasions it may be the eponym of the Aryan race. In the myths, however, his deity is recognized, but serious charges of impiety are brought against him. In a legend already quoted he is said to have seduced the wife of a pious sage;[8] and in the Vishnu Purána he is represented as having treated with disrespect a flower which had been

[8] See *ante*, Part iv. chap. 49.

given to him by a sage named Durvásas; and on both occasions he was severely punished by the loss of power. At another time, having offended the Bráhmans, a rival named Nahusha was permitted to conquer him, and to exercise his sovereignty. Indra is then said to have concealed himself in a lotos, whilst Nahusha required Indra's wife to accept him as her husband. The lady made no attempt to deny the right of Nahusha, under the old Kshatriya law by which the wife became the property of the conqueror of the husband; but she simply endeavoured to put off Nahusha with excuses and promises. At length Nahusha refused to grant her any further delay; and the lady agreed to yield to his wishes if he would fetch her away in a palanquin borne by Bráhmans. Nahusha acquiesced; the palanquin was prepared with Bráhman bearers; and the amorous conqueror set off to bring away his bride. But the bearers were slow, and Nahusha was in a hurry, and he accordingly abused the Bráhmans, and finally put out his foot and pushed one of them; on which the Bráhman turned round and cursed him into becoming a snake. The result was that Nahusha lost both the lady and the sovereignty; whilst Indra recovered both, on the implied understanding that he would be more respectful to the Bráhmans in future. This myth is one of many which may be referred either to the earlier wars between the Aryans and the Nágas, or to the later opposition between the Bráhmans and Buddhists, but the question will be considered hereafter in dealing with the history of the Buddhist period.

Limited analogy between the

Possibly some further light might be thrown upon

the heroic period of Hindú history, by reference to the same period in Hebrew history; and perhaps the wars carried on by the so-called Judges against the Canaanites and the surrounding tribes, were of a similar character to those which were carried on by the unknown heroes of the age of Aryan conquest against the aboriginal tribes in the valley of the Ganges and Jumná. But there the analogy ceases. Government in Hindústan never appears to have been a theocracy, such as prevailed under Eli the priest and Samuel the prophet; nor are there any traces of a Maháraja being selected from amongst the people, and anointed King, in the same manner that Saul and David were successively selected and anointed by the prophet Samuel. Consequently no analogy is furnished which will serve to clear away the deep obscurity which at present veils the rise and progress of Aryan conquest in Hindústan.

Heroic age of the Hindús and Hebrews.

Absence of a theocracy in India.

The third and last period in early Hindú history, namely, the monarchical age, may now be brought under consideration. Here at the very outset will be perceived the vast interval which separates the patriarchal period which is depicted in the traditions of the war of Bhárata, and the monarchical period which is depicted in those of the Rámáyana. The primitive habits and simplicity of patriarchal households had passed entirely away; and beneath all the exaggerations of Oriental fancy it is easy to perceive that wealth, civilization, and luxury were really to be found in the palaces and courts of Mahárajas. Polyandry had entirely disappeared, and nothing remained of it but the Swayamvara; and married life, when not depressed by polygamy, appears in its

3rd, Monarchical age of Hindú history.

Vast interval between the patriarchal and monarchical periods.

most pleasing form, as the loving and devoted union of one woman to one man.

Distinction between the era of constitutional monarchy and that of despotism supported by the Brahmanical hierarchy.

Before, however, entering upon the history of the monarchical period, a distinction must be drawn between the constitutional form of government which finds expression in the Vedic traditions in the Epics; and the system of despotism, checked only by an ecclesiastical hierarchy, which is laid down in the Institutes of Manu. In the constitutional form of monarchy, the Hindú Mahárajas appear to have reigned in tolerably peaceful possession of their respective territories; and the interest in the traditions does not turn so much upon wars and blood feuds, as upon incidents of a domestic character, and the evils produced by polygamy and gambling. Indeed, but for these evils, it is difficult to understand why the independence of Hindú sovereignties should not have been maintained down to the present generation. A glance, however, at the later period of Hindú despotism, during which a Brahmanical hierarchy exercised supreme power, will help to solve the whole problem.

Ecclesiastical hierarchies fatal to constitutional forms.

The domination of an ecclesiastical hierarchy in alliance with monarchy invariably proves fatal to the liberties of a people and destructive to all constitutional forms. It seems to have swept away the popular element from the Aryan monarchies in Hindústan, in the same way that it has swept away the same element from the continental monarchies of Europe; and if England has been preserved from a similar fate, it is because during that half-century which formed the most critical period of her history, the Episcopal hierarchy found itself in the first instance in antagonism to the people, and subsequently

in antagonism to the Crown. Had it proved otherwise Great Britain might have been in the present day of no more account in Europe than Portugal or Spain; and might have even succumbed to the imperial yoke of a Louis or a Napoleon.

Illustrations of the early monarchical period furnished by the tradition of Ráma.

The first and most important tradition, which has been preserved of the early monarchical period, is that of Ráma; but the narrative, as it appears in the Rámáyana, has been so intensely Brahmanized throughout, that its full significance cannot be apprehended until the age of Brahmanical revival has been brought under review. The main object kept in view throughout the Rámáyana is to represent Ráma as an incarnation of Vishnu, and a deified protector of the Bráhmans against the Buddhists. But the moral aim of the old Kshatriya tradition was to point out the political evils which were caused by polygamy; and especially to show the mischief which would be occasioned by any attempt on the part of a Mahárája to set aside the son of the first wife in order to give the succession to the son of a younger and favourite partner. This matter was apparently a favourite theme with the old Kshatriya bards; and no doubt the evils in question might have been exemplified at one time or another in the history of most reigning families in India. It finds expression in the old legend of Raja Sántanu and his son Bhíshma; it appears in a still grosser and exaggerated form in later Puránic legends; whilst the fratricidal wars which have been convulsing Afghanistan since 1863 are to be attributed to the fact that the late Ameer Dost Mahomed Khan passed over his eldest son Mahomed Afzul Khan, in order to appoint his favourite son Shere Ali Khan to succeed him as Ameer. In the

Moral aim of the old Kshatriya story; the mischief of setting aside the son of the first wife for the son of a younger favourite.

A favourite theme with the old Kshatriya bards.

case of Ráma it led to the exile of the rightful heir and the succession of a younger son; and with that event the original tradition appears to close. The subsequent life of Ráma in the jungle, and his wars against the Rákshasas, appear to refer to a later phase in Hindú history; and accordingly must be reserved for consideration hereafter in connection with the age of Buddhism and Brahmanical revival.

Points in the original Kshatriya tradition.

The main points in what appears to be the original tradition of Ráma may be very briefly indicated. Maháraja Dasaratha was sovereign over the great Raj of Ayodhyá, or Oude. He had three wives and four sons. Ráma was the son of the first and principal wife; and Bharata was the son of the youngest and favourite wife. The middle wife had two sons, who play subordinate parts in the story; one appearing as the friend of Ráma, and the other as the friend of Bharata.

Family of Dasaratha.

Ráma's marriage.

When Ráma was grown, he proceeded on a visit to the neighbouring Raj of Mithila, where he married Sítá, the daughter of the Raja; and his brothers were likewise married to royal maidens of the same family.

Zenana intrigue respecting the appointment of a successor.

After the marriages the question arose as to the appointment of a Yuvaraja, or little Raja. This appointment is in accordance with an Oriental custom, which also existed under the Hebrew monarchy, of nominating an eldest son to the throne during the life-time of the reigning sovereign, in order that the young Prince might be trained in the duties of the administration, and relieve his father from the cares of state; and above all, that the question of succession might be fully settled during the life-time of the Maháraja Ráma, the son of Kausalyá, the first

wife, seems to have had the best claim; but the beautiful Kaikeyí, the youngest and favourite wife of the Maháraja, seems to have long determined that her son Bharata should be appointed Yuvaraja. The Maháraja himself, like many a sovereign advancing in years, was not inclined to make the appointment; but the Chieftains and people probably found that he was getting old and uxorious, and they were anxious for the installation of a young Prince and a settlement of the question of succession. Accordingly a deputation of Ministers, Chieftains, and people proceeded to the palace, and prayed the Maháraja to appoint Ráma. The Maháraja, still hesitating summoned a great Council; and again the popular feeling seems to have been in favour of Ráma. The Maháraja now yielded, and announced to the Council that Ráma should be installed next morning. He had, however, anticipated the result, and had already sent Bharata to the city of his maternal grandfather to be out of the way; and in the evening he hinted to Ráma that he had better be on the watch against Bharata, as Bharata might have had an inkling of the contemplated installation, and taken steps to prevent it by force of arms. The news that Ráma was to be installed naturally ran through the city like wildfire, and of course reached the royal zenana. In the evening the Maháraja proceeded to the apartments of Kaikeyí, probably with the view of reconciling her to the disappointment; but he found her in a fit of sullen rage, in which by the force of angry tears and youthful beauty she managed to wheedle him into promising that Ráma should be sent into exile, and that Bharata should be installed as successor to the Raj.

Interference of the Chieftains and people.

Decision that Ráma should be installed.

Maháraja persuaded to set aside Ráma in favour of Bharata.

The denouement.

Meantime and throughout the night the city is said to have been in a fever of expectation. At early dawn the rural population were pouring in to behold the ceremony of installation; whilst the citizens watered the streets, and decorated their houses with flags and garlands; and singers, musicians, and dancing-girls began to perform before the joyous multitudes. At the same time Ráma and his wife Sítá were wholly ignorant of the intrigue that had been transpiring in the royal zenana; and when Ráma was summoned by the Maháraja, he proceeded in his chariot to the palace in the full expectation of being installed with the customary ceremonies. At that moment the blow fell. Instead of a throne, Ráma learned from his weeping father and relentless mother-in-law that he was to be sent into exile. He broke the sad news to his own mother, and beheld her dashed down from the height of felicity and triumph to the lowest depths of wretchedness and despair. Rebellion was suggested, but Ráma dutifully set his face against disobedience to his father. Ráma then proceeded to his own house and broke the sad news to his wife; but Sítá at once declared her intention of braving all the dangers and privations of the jungle, and accompanying him in his exile.

Exile of Ráma and Sítá.

The hapless pair then walked bare-footed to the palace, as a token of submission; and having taken leave of the Maháraja and Ránís, they were driven by the charioteer of the Maháraja to the dominions of a Bhíl Raja, who appears to have owed some allegiance to the Raj of Ayodhyá.

Death of the Maháraja.

On the night after the departure of Ráma, the Maháraja is said to have died with grief at the loss of his son; but the fact of his death was not made

known, as the women who were with him at the time swooned away in horror and sorrow. Accordingly at early morning the palace life commenced as usual. The bards and eulogists sounded the praises of the Maháraja, and the men-servants and maid-servants were busy with their respective duties. All were expecting the appearance of the Maháraja, when suddenly a cry ran through the palace that he was dead, and the air was filled with weeping and wailing. But amidst all the commotion arising from the suddenness of the catastrophe, there was a strict attention to constitutional forms. The Ministers assembled together, and decided that the remains of the deceased Maháraja should not be burned in the absence of all his sons, but should be preserved in a bath of oil. Next a great Council was convened, and the question of the succession was debated; and it was determined that the decision of the Maháraja in favour of Bharata should be considered as binding and final. The exile of Ráma was accepted as a disqualification; and swift messengers were despatched to bring Bharata to Ayodhyá. On the arrival of Bharata, the funeral rites of the Maháraja were celebrated without a Satí, but with a pomp and circumstance which forms a striking picture of the times. The bards and eulogists appeared in front, chanting the praises of the deceased sovereign. Next followed the widows and other women of the Maháraja, with their long black hair dishevelled over their faces, piercing every ear with their shrieks and screams. Next the royal corpse was carried in state upon a litter covered with flowers and garlands, whilst the ensigns of royalty surrounded it. The rest of the procession was com-

Picture of palace life.

Constitutional forms.

Picture of the funeral rites of the Maháraja.

posed of chariots filled with the royal servants, who scattered gifts amongst the people. In this manner, the procession moved out of the city towards a lonely place on the bank of the river, where the funeral pile was erected; and the royal corpse was laid upon the pile, and speedily enveloped and consumed in a tower of flames. Here the tradition seems to end, so far as it refers to Vedic times. How Sítá was subsequently carried away by the Raja of the Rákshasas, and was recovered after some severe fighting, but separated from her husband and abandoned in the jungle on the bare suspicion of her purity, are incidents which may have had some foundation in truth, but which scarcely seem to call for notice in a sketch of the Vedic period. So too the alleged return of Ráma to Ayodhyá, and his subsequent reign as Maháraja, form a very interesting climax to the story, but are otherwise associated with traditions which seem to belong to a later age.

Close of the original tradition.

Play of the instincts.

The main features of the incidents connected with the exile may now be considered by the light of the three influences already specified. In the first instance it may be remarked that throughout the story flesh-meat appears as the ordinary diet; although, as already seen, such food is scarcely tolerated in the code of Manu, and was declared by later commentators to be improper and impure in the present Yuga. Ráma and his wife and brother appear to have lived chiefly on venison, and to have dried the meat in the sun after the manner of the American Indians. In connection with this subject a question might be raised as to the superior physique of flesh-eaters over vegetarians, and as to whether the change of diet, which was beginning to

General use of flesh-meat.

Question of superior physique of flesh-eaters over vegetarians.

take place in the time of Manu, ultimately led to the subjugation. It is the common belief of the people of India that the European is stronger than the Hindú because he eats meat and drinks beer; and it was the senseless fear of the sepoys, that the British Government wished to break their caste for the purpose of inducing them to use the same diet, and to strengthen them for the conquest of Asia, that led in a great measure to the unhappy mutiny of 1857.

Pictures of married life: polygamy contrasted with monogamy.

The pictures of married life in the same story present a remarkable contrast between the intrigues which prevailed in a polygamous household, and the domestic felicity which was to be found even in the jungle, when the hero was married only to one wife. Indeed the pictures of zenana life furnish powerful illustrations of the working of the human heart under circumstances which are altogether foreign to European experiences. It will be seen that in the seclusion of the zenana the passions of jealousy and ambition will convert the woman into a tigress, as in the case of Kaikeyí; and will impel a woman to suggest a rebellion against her husband, which might eventuate in his assassination, as in the case of Kausalyá. As to the uxorious old Maháraja, who was induced by a young wife to commit an act of injustice which might have imperilled the well-being of the realm, abundant instances of a like nature might be found in almost every family history. It is in fact the story of every-day life, the same in India as elsewhere, aggravated only by the conditions of polygamy. The domestic felicity of Ráma and Sítá is by no means perfect, but it is infinitely more pleasing than that which prevailed

in the palace of Maháraja Dasaratha. Up to the period of exile, and for some time after it, Sítá appears as the true ideal of a wife, animated by a loving and self-sacrificing devotion towards her husband; excepting of course in those portions of the Rámáyana which have been extracted from the modern version, in which the character more resembles the Hindú princess of the present day. The subsequent story of the exile is altogether dubious, and Sítá displays a wayward disposition, which is wholly at variance with what might have been expected from her previous behaviour. One peculiarity in the wedded life of Ráma and Sítá is worthy of notice, namely, the absence of all mention of children; for it was not until after the triumphant return to Ayodhyá, and the abandonment of Sítá in the jungle, that she appears in the character of a mother. This circumstance may have had something to do with the sequel of the story, in which the conduct of Ráma appears to have been harsh in the extreme, and is usually regarded with disapproval even by native commentators who believe in his divinity. The fact that Sítá was childless until after her deliverance from Rávana, and the subsequent discovery that she was about to become a mother, may have suggested to the mind of Ráma that he was not the father of the coming progeny, and induced him to abandon his wife under the cruel circumstances mentioned in the Rámáyana.

Character of Sítá.

Ráma and Sítá without children.

Probable cause of the abandonment of Sítá.

Democratic element manifested in the popular Councils.

The democratic element in the Raj of Ayodhyá appears to have been much stronger than could have been anticipated under an Oriental despotism. It involved not only the existence of Councils of Ministers and Chieftains, but also assemblies of the

people; and it would appear that even such questions as the appointment of a Yuvaraja, and the nomination of a successor in a case of the sudden demise of a Mahárája, were brought under the consideration of the whole body of the citizens; although efforts have certainly been made by the Brahmanical compilers to represent Vasishtha the Bráhman as the superior power who directed all and counselled all.

Religious ideas in the tradition.

The religious ideas which find expression in the original tradition are altogether of the old Kshatriya type. Flesh-meat is not only offered to the Vedic gods, but meat and wine are promised by Sítá to the river goddesses, provided only that Ráma returns in safety to the city of his fathers. The old Vedic idea of gratifying the gods with good things in return for favours received or expected, is thus fully expressed; and vows of gifts to Gangá and Jumná are made much after the fashion in which vows are said to be made to the Virgin and Saints in many Roman Catholic countries.

Flesh sacrifices.

Vows of flesh and wine to the river goddesses.

Further illustrations of the monarchical period furnished by the story of Nala and Damayantí.

A second tradition, namely, that of Nala and Damayantí, furnishes a far more pleasing picture of the constitutional phase of early Hindú monarchy than is displayed in the tradition of Ráma. The story seems to have originated in an age not very remote from that of Ráma, but it is devoid of all reference to polygamy, and seems more especially to point to the evils which are likely to arise from an undue indulgence in gambling. It is evidently much later than the patriarchal story of the war of Bhárata, for whilst the existence of such a Raj as Nishadha implies an advanced stage in Aryan conquest, the tradition is free from all allusions to

Absence of polygamy and reference to gambling.

Apparent age of the story.

polyandry, or to any of the lawless forms of marriage which appear to have accompanied the earlier conquests of the Kshatriyas. Moreover the gambling match of Nala presents a more civilized picture than the gambling match of Yudhishthira, for the losing gambler altogether refuses to stake his wife upon a throw. At the same time the tradition is evidently Vedic. The institution known as the Swayamvara finds full expression in its happiest form; and the marriage rites of Nala and Damayantí are performed by the father of the bride. Moreover the tradition is prior to the rise of Brahmanism; for the proposition of a second Swayamvara in the case of Damayantí, implies the case of re-marriage of a widow, which is altogether opposed to Brahmanical law.

Play of the instincts.

The play of the instincts in this charming story is more delicate and refined than in the traditions of a patriarchal type. The expression of mutual affection is exquisitely true to human nature in a higher development. So true is the picture of the agony of the wife and mother during the progress of the gambling match; and her subsequent devotion to her husband, even after he had deserted her; and her love for the children subordinate to the love for her husband; and the final re-union of the pair after so many trials and sorrows. Above all, the passion for revenge is beautifully modified by a higher tone of moral sentiment than is displayed in patriarchal story. In the sequel Nala not only forgives his enemy, but dismisses him with many gifts.

Pure connubial affection.

Modified revenge.

Manifestations of the democratic element.

The democratic element in the tradition is of a peculiar type. Whilst the Chieftains and people display great anxiety during the gambling match, lest

the Raja should lose his Raj, the Rání freely consults with them as to the best means of avoiding the threatening catastrophe. Meantime no authentic traces are to be found of any interference on the part of a Brahmanical hierarchy; nor is the authority of religion brought into play for the purpose of restraining the Raja in his career of ruin.

Religious ideas.

The religious ideas in the story are all Vedic, but apparently of a comparatively late period. The personification of the gods of the elements is complete; and they appear in the heaven of Indra in much the same fashion as the Olympic deities appear in the Homeric poems. Moreover the Vedic deities, like the Olympic deities, are amenable to moral passions; and appear at the Swayamvara as candidates for the hand of the beautiful Damayantí. The signs by which the blushing damsel knew that her admirers were divinities, and not mortal men, are very poetically expressed; their feet would not touch the earth, their eyes winked not, their garlands were as fresh as if newly gathered, and not a stain of dust lay upon their raiment, nor drop of perspiration upon their brows. Damayantí, however, whilst paying all homage to the gods, would choose only Nala for her lord; whilst Nala in return publicly declared that he would be ever faithful to the maiden with the eye serene, since she had chosen him to be her husband in the presence of the gods.

Appearance of the gods in the heaven of Indra.

Signs of deity.

Such then, step by step, the current of Indian history appears to have run from the earliest glimmer of patriarchal legend down to the monarchical age when the Brahmanical system, which is defined and explained in the code of Manu, began to exercise

Stages in Hindú history prior to the spiritual domination of the Brahmans.

a dominant sway over the people of Hindústan. The earlier process by which the Vedic religion was gradually set aside by Brahmanical law must for the present be left to conjecture. In all probability the Bráhmans rose from the condition of mere mercenary sacrificers to that of an ecclesiastical hierarchy, by the ordinary means which accompany the rise of a priesthood to political power. In the first instance the Bráhmans appeared in their sacerdotal character as a medium between the worshippers and the deity worshipped; and in that capacity they probably first pretended to explain such religious omens as might be gathered from the manifestations and motions of the sacrificial flame, or from the marks which appeared on the animal that was sacrificed. In connection with this pretended knowledge of the will of the deities, the Brahmans seem to have practised astrology, and to have assumed the possession of supernatural power, such as the production of rain or drought, health or disease, prosperity or calamity. Finally they asserted for themselves a divine origin from Brahma, whom they exalted very far above all the Vedic deities. Consequently they arrogated for themselves a superiority over the popular gods, under which they promulgated new religious dogmas, and introduced a multiplicity of rites of purification and consecration. Subsequently at every birth, marriage, or death, there was the inevitable Bráhman, who thus became associated in the minds of the people with every household event that gladdened their hearts or moved them to tears. Moreover the prayers and incantations of the Bráhmans were supposed to be always necessary to insure the long life and pros-

Probable means by which the Bráhmans attained supreme power.

perity of all individuals and families; to procure a favourable seed-time and an abundant harvest; to increase the profits of every bargain and promote the success of every undertaking; to purify the water of wells and strengthen the foundation of dwelling-houses; to consecrate and impart new powers to weapons, armour, ensigns, implements, books, and tools, and to ward off every danger and every calamity which can befall a human being and his belongings. In this manner every Hindú has moved for centuries in the fetters of religious superstition from his cradle to his grave; and the result has been that the national life has ebbed away, and the country has only been saved from the most hopeless of anarchies by the introduction of European rule.

Evil results of Brahmanical ascendancy.

The evils which have resulted from the establishment of a Brahmanical hierarchy have indeed far exceeded those which have followed the establishment of any other ecclesiastical ascendancy. Other priesthoods, like the Jesuits in Spain, have dominated over the minds of men, and crushed out the national aspirations and deadened the intellectual energies; but then such priests have generally sprung from the people, and have occasionally appeared as the protectors of the oppressed, and have stayed the hand of the tyrant and marauder by the threat of anathemas and excommunications. The Bráhmans, however, whilst occasionally exercising similar powers for the furtherance of their own ends, have been themselves the victims of a caste system which has necessarily shut them out from all sympathies with the masses. In other words, they formed an hereditary caste of priests,

Aggravated by the caste system.

which had laboured to degrade the Súdra instead of supporting him, and fattened upon the credulity of a people whom they had neither the power nor will to serve. But still it must not be inferred that the rise of the Brahmanical hierarchy was productive only of evil. There were Bráhmans who passed their lives in divine contemplation, and who analyzed the thoughts, the language, the intellect, and the affections, until they obtained from the depths of their consciousness a deeper knowledge of divine things, and a more enlightened appreciation of the attributes of the Supreme Spirit. It was such Sages who succeeded in weaning away the minds of many from the grosser superstitions of polytheism to the higher faith in One God; and who taught after their own mystic fashion how man might obtain the absorption of his soul into the Divine Essence, or dwell hereafter as a purified spirit with the Supreme Soul. It may be that the aspirations after monotheism, which find expression in the Institutes of Manu, are couched in the pantheistic language of the Vedantists; but even amidst the aberrations of religious thought, the throes of the soul to escape from the trammels of polytheism, are to be found flashes of that eternal truth which is as old as the stars, and finds a response in every human bosom. "All gods," says Manu, "are in the Divine Spirit; all worlds are in the Divine Spirit; and the Divine Spirit produces the connected series of acts which are performed by embodied souls. Him some adore as present in the element of fire; others as present in Manu, lord of creatures; some as present in Indra; others as present in pure Ether; and others as the most High Eternal Spirit. It is He, who,

Beneficial influences exercised by the Bráhmans.

Spiritual teaching.

Brahmanical aspirations after monotheism.

pervading all beings in five elementary forms, causes them by the gradations of birth, growth, and dissolution, to revolve in this world like the wheels of a car. Thus the man, who perceives in his own soul the Supreme Soul present in all creatures, regards them all with equal benevolence, and will be absorbed at last in the highest Essence, even that of the Almighty himself."[9] It was left for one greater than the Hindú legislator to teach the simpler and purer doctrine:—"God is a Spirit, and they that worship Him must worship Him in spirit and in truth."[10]

Political condition of Hindústan in the Brahmanic age.

Here it may be again remarked that in the time when the code of Manu was compiled, the area of Aryan conquest had spread far beyond the limits of Brahmanism, and probably included both Buddhism and Brahmanism within its frontiers. The Bráhmans as a body had not advanced beyond Kanouj on the banks of the Ganges; whilst the Aryans had conquered the whole of Hindústan from sea to sea. Again, the Aryans are directed to select their Brahmanical preceptors from Brahmárshí-desa, or the country of the Bráhman Rishis; whilst bitter denunciations are pronounced against atheists and heretics, in other words, against the followers of Buddha. From these data it is easy to infer that whilst the Bráhman missionaries were spreading from Brahmárshí-desa, on the west of Kanouj, Buddhism was really dominant in eastern Hindústan. At the same time it is difficult to say how far the ideas of the Buddhists passed into Brahmanism; or how far the ideas of the Bráhmans passed into Bud-

Growing opposition between the Bráhmans and the Buddhists.

[9] Manu, xii. 119, 123—126.

[10] St John iv. 24.

dhism. Originally the two currents of religious thought may have flowed on side by side, without exciting much antagonism. Subsequently, however, the practical atheism of the Buddhists in denying or ridiculing the gods of the Bráhmans, and the opposition of the Bráhmans towards the conventual system of the Buddhists, brought about those deadly hostilities which eventuated in the expulsion of the Buddhists and triumph of the Bráhmans. Meantime the Swayamvara, the Rajusúya, and the Aswamedha passed away. The rites of marriage were brought into conformity with Brahmanical law. The use of flesh-meat at meals and sacrifices began to disappear, and vegetable food was substituted. Finally, the great Aryan empires, which had long been established in Hindústan, began to be swayed to and fro by those religious convulsions which belong to the subsequent eras of Hindú history. Indeed the inquiries which have yet to be carried out in the religious history of India, will be found to be the most important of all. The origin of polytheism amongst the Aryan people, and its development into monotheism, or the worship of the Supreme Spirit, have been in some measure indicated; but before the European reader can comprehend the Hindú people as they think and act, it will be necessary to review the rise and decline of that form of atheism in association with asceticism, which is known as Buddhism; to point out the method by which the Brahmanical compilers of the Epics spiritualized Kshatriya heroes, such as Ráma and Krishna, into incarnations of Vishnu as the Supreme Being; to investigate that deification of the passions, which was superadded to the fetish worship of the aboriginal races in primi-

Subsequent religious convulsions.

tive times; to unfold the process by which the new and strange gods were admitted into the Brahmanical pantheon; and to explore those forms of religious thought and philosophical inquiry, which were promulgated by teachers and sages, whilst a dense cloud of superstition and ignorance overspread the land. Moreover there seems reason to hope that such inquiries will not only lead to a better knowledge of the progress of religious thought amongst the Hindús, but will help to solve the vexed problem of why Christianity has failed to achieve that conquest over the national faith which it has effected elsewhere. Hitherto the non-acceptation of the Christian religion by the people of India has been referred to inscrutable causes, such as the mysterious dispensation of Providence, or the exceptional depravity of the heart of the Hindú. But it will appear hereafter that it should be rather ascribed to the current of religious ideas, which has flowed in channels unknown and unappreciated by the western world, and which has rendered Christianity less acceptable to the civilized Hindús of the plains than to the barbarous aborigines who inhabit the hills.

END OF VOL. II.

INDEX.

ACHARYA, or Guru, 550.
Adhyátma Rámáyana, a spiritualized version of the Rámáyana, 25.
Adoption, modern custom of, 585.
Adultery, laws against, 580.
Agastya, his hermitage near the Vindhya mountains, 252; legend of Vátápi and Ilwala, 253; devours Vátápi, ib.; his miracles, 254; entertains Ráma and acknowledges him as the lord of the universe, 255; gives him supernatural weapons, 256; denounces the evil nature of women, 256; upholds the worship of the Maruts and expostulates with Indra, 440; complaint of his wife, 444.
Agni, Indrajit's sacrifice to, 370; probable substitution of Agni for Káli, 377; attests the purity of Sítá, 384, 385; identified with the Supreme Spirit, 412; identified with Brahma, 413; attributes, 437; regarded as the creator, 452; daily oblation to, 493.
Ahalyá, wife of Gautama, seduced by Indra, 48; cursed by Gautama, 49; freed from the curse by Ráma, ib.
Aksha, son of Rávana, slain by Hanuman, 341.
Alms, ceremony of begging for, 546; its origin, 547.
Ambassador, duties of one, 595.
Amrita, churning of the sea for, 47.
Anasúyá, wife of Atri, her miracles, 237; her interview with Sítá, ib.; gives her an ointment which renders her ever beautiful, 238; describes the approach of night in poetic language, 239.
Anchorites, female, 581.
Anga, Raj of, great drought, 12; the Raja marries his daughter to the Rishi Sringa, 13.
Angada, son of Bali, installed Yuvaraja of Kishkindhyá, 323.
Antelope, sacrifice of, to Vedic deities, 545, *note.*
Anumatí, goddess of the day, 493.
Apsaras, rise out of the sea and become the nymphs in Indra's heaven, 47; story of Rambhá who became a Rákshasa, 244; story of the Apsaras who sported with the sage Mandakarni, 251.
Arsha marriage, 506; referred to the Vedic period, 508; radical distinction between the Arsha and Brahmá rites, 509.
Aryans, advance from Delhi to Oude, 2; resemblance of their ancient marriage ceremony to the modern Hindú rite, 60; sometimes identified with their gods or Devatas, 426; progress of their invasion before the time of Manu, 432; conception of Manu as their ancestor, 453.
Aryávarta, or the Aryan pale, 431; question of whether it extended from sea to sea, 433, *note.*
Asamanja, Raja of Ayodhyá, tradition of, 126.
Astrology, planet of Dasaratha threatened by three malignant aspects, 83.
Asura marriages, 506; involved the purchase of the bride, 513.
Aswamedha, a horse sacrifice, of Mahárája Dasaratha, 10; invested with a different meaning to that in the Mahá Bhárata, ib.; loosening of the horse, 16; preparations for the sacrifice, ib.; the second sacrifice, 18; appearance of an emanation of Brahma, 20; two sacrifices involved, the horse and the homa, 22; performed to produce conception, ib.; substitution of páyasa for horse-flesh, 23; performed by Ráma to atone for having slain Rávana, 401.
Aswapati, Raja of Girivraja, father of Kaikeyí, and grandfather of Bharata, 78; dismisses Bharata, 163.
Aswins, custom of polyandry involved in a Vedic tradition, 502.
Atri, the sage, chronological difficulties connected with him, 230; Ráma visits his hermitage, 237; interview between his wife Anasúyá and Sítá, ib.
Autumn, poetical description of, 40.
Ayodhyá, the modern Oude, present appearance of the ruins, 1; ancient magnificence, ib.; known as the Raj of Kosala—*see* Kosala; description of the city, 3; fortifications, 4; the people, ib.; assembly of the chieftains and people to consider which of the sons of Dasaratha should be appointed Yuvaraja, 79, 80; universal rejoicings on the approaching installation of Ráma, 86; profound sorrow of the people at the exile of Ráma, 122; re-

proach the Maháraja and Kaikeyí, ib.; mournful appearance of the city after the departure of Ráma, 137; gloomy appearance indicated in a succession of Hindú similes, 219; preparations of the people for the triumphant return of Ráma, 388; return of Ráma and Sítá with their sons, 403.

Bali, overcome by Vishnu in the dwarf incarnation, 43.

Bálí, the Monkey Chieftain of Kishkindhya, his ill-treatment of Sugríva, 320; his combat with Sugríva, 321; mortally wounded by Ráma, ib.; sudden appearance of his wife Tárá, ib.; her lamentations over him, 322; funeral ceremonies for him, ib.

Bhagiratha, Raja, legend of his restoring the sixty thousand sons of Sagara to life, 46, *note*.

Bharadwája, the sage, seat at Prayága, 135; receives Ráma and Sítá, 145; recommends the hill Chitra-kúta as a residence, 146; his extraordinary entertainment of the army of Bharata, 186; entertains the army of Monkeys, 387, *note*.

Bharata, son of Dasaratha and Kaikeyí, his birth, 21; sent to Girivraja with his uncle Yudhájit, 77; instructions of his father Dasaratha, ib.; residence and studies in the house of his grandfather Raja Aswapati, 78; significance of his absence during the preparations for the installation of Ráma as Yuvaraja, 87; summoned to Ayodhyá on the death of the Maháraja, 158; his ominous dream, 162; his return to Ayodhyá, 163; his presents to his grandfather, 164; scene between him and Kaikeyí, 165; his grief, ib.; demands the reason of Ráma's exile, 166; bitterly reproaches his mother, 167; proclaims the right of Ráma to the Raj, ib.; prevents Satrughna from slaying Manthará, 168; declares to Kausalyá his loyal attachment to Ráma, 169; performs the funeral rites for Maháraja Dasaratha, 179; his grief, 174; refuses the request of the council that he will accept the Raj, 179; prepares to visit Ráma at Chitra-kúta, 180; the march, 181; halt at Sringavera, 182; interview with Raja Guha, 183; passage of his army over the river Ganges, 185; proceeds to the hermitage of Bharadwája at Prayága, ib.; extraordinary entertainment of the soldiers by the sage, 186; march from Prayága to Chitra-kúta, 190; approaches the hermitage of Ráma, 203; acquaints him with the death of the Maháraja, 208; offers the Raj to Ráma, 211; the discussion, ib.; offers to go into exile, 217; final refusal of Ráma, ib.; rules the Raj through the shoes of Ráma, 218; returns to Ayodhyá, ib.; resides at Nandigráma, 219; review of his proceedings, 228; his austerities on account of Ráma, 259; his preparations for the triumphant return of Ráma, 388; meeting with Ráma, 389.

Bhíl country, frontier at Sringavera, 135; Raja Guha welcomes Ráma, 139.

Bottomry, law respecting, 608.

Brahmá, birth of, in an egg, 455; separation into male and female, 460; production of Viráj, ib.; day of, 465; simplicity of the idea, 467; court of, with four faces, 606.

Brahmá marriage, 505; referred to the Brahmanic age, 507; differed altogether from the rite of the Rishis, 510.

Brahma, mythical ancestor of the Rajas of Kosala, 2; Indra and the gods pray him to protect them against Rávana, 18; conducts them to the abode of Vishnu, 19; emanation from, presents a cup of páyasa to Dasaratha, 20; worshipped by Rávana, 232; Virádha preserved by his blessing, 243; arrow of, 256; his irresistible noose, 311.

Brahma placed above all the Vedic deities, 412; distinction between Brahma, the Supreme Soul, and Brahmá, or his creative energy, 413, *note*; identified with Agni and Prajápati, ib.; placed in opposition to the Vedic deities, 426; idea of sleeping upon the waters, 455; conception of Brahma and Brahmá, 478; decline of the worship, 479; connection with Om, the Vyáhritis and the Gáyatrí, 482; identified with the Sun, 483; significant indication of the unpopularity of the worship, 497; perhaps a different conception to Prajápati, 511.

Brahmachári, or student in the Veda, 544; rites prior to the investiture with the thread, 545; significance of the thread, ib.; age of investiture, ib.; ceremony of begging for alms, 546; its origin, 547; rules for the conduct of a Brahmachári after investiture, 548; their object, ib.; his religious duties, 549; reverent study of the Veda, ib.; worship of the gods, ib.; service to a preceptor, 550; respect due to a preceptor, 551; maintenance of a strict control over the passions, 552; festivities associated with his return to his father's house, 554; present of a cow, 555.

Brahmácharis, 4; Ráma and his brethren become Brahmachárís, 33.

Bráhmanas, or formal rituals, 448; account of, ib., *note*.

Brahmanic period, history of, 407; religion distinct from the Vedic religion, 412; compromise between the two, 413; chronology of, 418; probable duration, 420; settlements separated from the Vedic settlements by the Saraswatí river, 425; stratification of the four castes, 530; marriage relations in, 571; absence of chronological sequence, 620; political condition of Hindústan, 659; growing opposition between Bráhmans and Buddhists, ib.; subsequent religious convulsions, 660.

Brahmanical revival, period of, 416; appeal to the worship of the old gods of India, 417; characterized by the worship of Vishnu and Siva, ib.; chronology of, 418.

Brahmanism, its indefinite extension throughout the Buddhist age, 421; a re-

ligion of the masses, ib.; code of Manu a stand-point in its history, 422.
Bráhmans, their three classes of disciples, viz. servants, students, and Brahmachâris, 4; advise the Raja of Anga to give his daughter in marriage to Rishi Sringa, 12; production of rain by the Rishi, 13; refuse land because they are unable to rule, 17; opposition of the Rákshasas, 38, 230; Ráma and Sítá give their jewels to the Bráhmans, 121; settlements of the Bráhmans, 150; character of their hermitages, 229; sages introduced as types of the Bráhmans of the Dekhan, 230; picture of their hermitages, 240; their origin in Brahmárshi-desa, 431; distinguished from the Rishis, or Vedic psalmists, 435; wide difference between them, 438; stories of their marriages with young Princesses, ib., *note.*; their first appearance as mercenary sacrificers, 441; their ascendancy secured by asceticism, 442; Vedic faith in their power, ib.; compared with frogs in a Vedic hymn, 443; conception of Manu compared with the Vedic conception, 445; toleration of old customs, 450; the code of Manu their text book, 451; their cosmogony, 453; their bold attempt to map out eternity, 463; religion of the Bráhmans, 471; divisible into invocations and sacramental rites, 478; significance of the invocations as forming combinations of Three in One, ib.; significance of Om, the Vyáhritis and the Gáyatrí, 481; daily repetition of the invocations, 485; claimed the right of interpreting the Veda, 490; mode of interpretation, ib.; conception of marriage, 501; feasted at the great Sráddhas, 520; prohibited from worshipping inferior gods, 525; modifications of the old Vedic belief in the Sráddha, 528; veneration for, 535; privileges of, 536; occupation of, 537; diet of, 538; opposition between the milk and vegetable diet of the Brahmans, and the flesh-meat of the Kshatriyas, 539; ideal of Brahmanical life as expressed in Manu's system of four orders, 544; three classes of Bráhmans, 550; their occupations, 560; idea that they should be maintained by the public, 561; their spirit of inclusion, 565; ideal of life partially obtained from Buddhism, but not from the Vedic worship, ib.; originated in a belief in a future state, 566; expression in modern humanity, 566-7; punishment of Bráhmans, 581; theory of government, 586; absence of patriotism and public spirit, ib.; religion the only political and national tie, 587; political system based upon fear, ib.; rise of the Brahmanical hierarchy, 640; early antagonism to the Mahárajas, ib.; means by which they attained power, 656; evil results, 657; beneficial influence, 658; opposition to the Buddhists, 659.
Brahmárshi-desa, or country of the Bráhmans, probably a historical name, 428; description of, in Manu, 439.
Brahmávarta, probably a mythical name applied to the country frequented by the Vedic gods, or Aryan people, 428; Manu's geography of, 430.
Buddhism, legends of, connected with the life of Sákya Muni, 408; broad features of Buddhism, 414; expulsion of Buddhism in the age of Brahmanical revival, 416; failed to influence the masses, ib.; chronology of, 418; a religion of the aristocracy, 421; denounced by Manu, 451; devotees resembling Sannyásis, 565; sarcasm levelled at their nuns, 583; opposition of Bráhmans, 659.
Buddhists, Jáváli the logician charged with being one, 215; identified with the Rákshasas, 232; characteristics of, in the sensuality of Rávana, 347; satirical hit in the story of Kumbha-karna, 379.

Caggar, river, 430, *note.*
Calanus, story of his burning himself, 262.
Caste, an engine of ecclesiastical oppression, 413; probable origin of, in the river Saraswatí, 431; division of classes of society into four castes, 529; probable origin of the four castes, ib.; traces of, in the Vedic age, 530; stratification of the system in the Brahmanic age, ib.; no Brahmanical superiority asserted in the Purusha hymn, 531; Vedic myth distorted in Manu's code, ib.; expression of caste distinctions, 532; in salutations, 533; in administering oaths, ib.; marriages, ib.; caste emblems, 534; later prohibition of all marriages between castes, 535; five groups of illustrations of the caste system, ib.; veneration for Bráhmans, ib.; their privileges, 536; their occupations, 537; their diet, 538; scale of punishment for slander, 540; chandalas, or outcastes, 541; increase in the number of castes subsequent to the age of Manu, 542; respective occupations of the three twice-born castes, 560.
Cattle, pastoral law respecting damage to, 611.
Chamber of displeasure, sought by Hindú wives when angry, 941.
Chandálas, 4.
Chandálas, or out-castes, 541.
Chariot, description of Khara's, 269.
Children, Hindú love for, as exemplified in the story of Ráma, 27, 90.
Chitra-kúta, the seat of Válmiki in Bundelkund, 135; recommended to Ráma as a residence, 146; Ráma builds a hermitage there, 148; beautiful description of the hill as it appeared to Bharata and his army, 191; Ráma descants on its beauties to his wife Sítá, 199.
Chronology, sacred, 463; calculation of days, months, and years, 464; calculation of Yugas, or ages, 465; Hindú and European ideas of, compared, 468; influence of the different chronological systems upon the respective religious belief of Hindús and Europeans, 469; system of Manwantaras superadded to the Brahmanic system of Kalpas, ib.; absence of

sequence in the history of ancient India, 620.
Churning of the sea for amrita, legend of, 47.
Civil law, 606.
Civilization, description of the Raj of Kosala, and city of Ayodhyá, 3; the people, 4; palace and throne of the Maháraja, 5; ministers, counsellors, and preceptors, 6; Hindú ideal of a city, 7; necessity for spies, 9; horse sacrifice—*see* Aswamedha; legend of the Rishi Sringa who had never seen a woman, 12; story of the damsels sent to entice him, ib.; rejoicings on the birth of sons, 21; ceremony of giving names, ib.; story of Ráma's childhood, 27; efforts of the women to pacify Ráma, 30; education of boys, 32; unwillingness of Ráma to slay a woman, 42; jealousies and intrigues in the Zenana on the appointment of a Yuvaraja, 73; public reception of Bharata at Girivraja, 78; studies of Bharata, ib.; assembly of a great council to discuss the installation of Ráma, 80; virtues of a young prince as exemplified in the recital of the merits of Ráma, 81; preparations for the installation of a Yuvaraja, 82; planet of Dasaratha threatened by three malignant aspects, 83; universal rejoicings in the city of Ayodhyá on the approaching installation of Ráma, 86; democratic element in the city of Ayodhyá, 87; scenes within the palace on the eve of the installation, 90; curious reference to the chamber of displeasure, 94; description of the Zenana of Maháraja Dasaratha, 95; preparations for the installation of the Yuvaraja, 106; praises bestowed by Sumantra upon the Maháraja, 107; description of the beautiful residence of Ráma, ib.; procession of Ráma to the palace of the Maháraja, 108; sacrifice of Kausalyá to Vishnu, 113; Kausalyá's advice to Ráma to slay the Maháraja, 115; perils of a jungle life, 118; scene in the palace of the Maháraja on the departure of Ráma and Sítá, 123; jungle dresses, 126; general distress at the departure of Ráma and Sítá from Ayodhyá, 130; demonstrative character of family affections amongst the Hindús, 133; filial obedience of Ráma a model, 134; mournful appearance of the city of Ayodhyá, after the departure of Ráma, 137; scene in the palace after Ráma's exile, 152; striking scene after the death of the Maháraja, 155; royal corpse preserved in oil, 156; assembly of a great council, ib.; poetical description of a country without a Maháraja, 157; presents given by Bharata to his grandfather, 164; funeral rites for Maháraja Dasaratha, 170; the days of mourning and performance of a Sraddha, 175; council assembled after the funeral ceremonies for Maháraja Dasaratha, 179; construction of the great road to Chitra-kúta, 180; march of Bharata from Ayodhyá to Chitra-kúta, 181; presents of fish, honey, and flesh, made by the Bhíl Rajá to Bharata, 183; passage of the army of Bharata over the river Ganges, 185; extraordinary entertainment of the army by the sage Bharadwája, 186; sports of Ráma and Sítá on the hill Chitra-kúta, 201; duties of Rajas detailed by Ráma, 205; threat of Ráma to sit in Dharná, 217; curious idea of Bharata ruling the Raj through the shoes of Ráma, 218; gloomy appearance of Ayodhyá described in a succession of Hindú similes, 219; picture of Brahmanical hermitages, 240; description of the forest of Dándaka, 241; cannibalism of Virádha, ib.; extraordinary description of asceties, 247; Ráma's hermitage at Panchavatí, 257; poetical description of the cold season, 258; shameless proposals of Súrpa-nakhá, 265; chariot of Khara, 269; abuse of Khara by Ráma, 275; ancient law that the wife of the conquered became the prize of the conqueror, 298, 305; burying alive, 310; Sarvarí burns herself, 312; description of the city of Lanká, 331; the palace of Rávana, 333; the inner apartments, 334; the women of Rávana, ib.; treatment of Mandodarí by the Monkeys, 373; story of the ordeal of Sítá, 384; entertainment of the Monkeys by Bharadwája, 387; ceremonies of installing Ráma and Sítá, 391; domestic life of Ráma and Sítá, 394; popularity of the Rámáyana, ib.
Civilization, three phases of, 624; modified by human nature, 625.
Cosmogony. *See* Creation.
Court of Brahma with four faces, 606.
Creation of the universe by Manu and Bsahmá, 452; obscurity of the Vedic idea, ib.; cosmogony of the Brahmanic period, 453; Manu's account, 454; compared with that of Moses, 455; contrast between the Hindú idea of Brahma sleeping on the waters with the Hebrew idea of a vivifying wind, 456; the mundane egg, 457; the metaphysical creation, 457; introduction of Manu and the ten Rishis, 460.
Criminal law, 613.

Daiva marriage, 505; its mythical character, 508.
Daksha, the sacrifice of, destroyed by Siva, 54, 55, *note*.
Dándaka, description of the forest, 239, 241.
Dasaratha, Maháraja of Kosala, 2; his virtues, 6; determines to perform an Aswamedha, 11; his three Ránís, ib.; goes to Anga, and brings Sringa to perform the Aswamedha, 15; gives páyasa to his Ránís, 20; birth of his four sons, 21; his anxieties respecting their marriage, 38; permits Ráma and Lakshmana to accompany Viswámitra, 39; proceeds to Mithilá, to the marriage of his sons to the daughters and nieces of Raja Janaka, 55; performs a great Sráddha, 56; intrigues and jealousies excited in his court and zenana by the appointment of a Yuvaraja,

73; entertains Yudhájit, the brother of his wife Kaikeyí, 77; sends his sons Bharata and Satrughna to Girivraja in charge of Yudhájit, ib.; his partiality for Ráma, 79; requested by the Chieftains and people to retire in favour of Ráma, ib.; his feigned anger, ib.; his speech to the great council expressing a desire to appoint Ráma to be Yuvaraja, 80; directs his two priests to prepare for the installation, 82; sends for Ráma, ib.; requests him to become Yuvaraja, 83; his planet threatened by three malignant aspects, ib.; proceeds to the apartments of Kaikeyí, 95; his surprise at finding her absent, ib.; follows her to the chamber of displeasure, ib.; his affectionate speeches to Kaikeyí, ib.; swears to perform her request, 96; his distraction at her request that Bharata should be installed and Ráma exiled, 97; his wrath at her obstinacy, 98; his lamentations and remonstrances, 99; his real feelings, 101; mythical story of the two boons, ib.; summoned by Sumantra to attend the installation, 106; commands him to bring Ráma to the palace, 107; his grief on seeing Ráma, 111; his final parting with Ráma, 123; his lamentations on the departure of Ráma, 131; reproached by Kausalyá, 152; implores her forgiveness, 153; his last words, 154; death, 155; episode respecting his being cursed by a recluse, 159; funeral rites, 171; appears at the ordeal of Sítá, 384.

Daughters, purification by marriage instead of the thread, 547.

Day, Hindú, division of, 464; four different days, ib.

Devatas, or gods worshipped by the Vedic Aryans, sometimes identified with the Aryan people, 426; day of, 465.

Dharma-vrita, hermitages of, 252.

Dharná, custom of, 217.

Diet, of Bráhmans, 538; compromise involved in the laws respecting that of the twice-born castes, ib.; opposition between the milk and vegetable food of the Bráhmans and the flesh-meat of the Kshatriyas, 539; repugnance to flesh-meat, ib.; general use of flesh-meat in ancient times, 650.

Divorce, law respecting, 577; supersession of a wife by a second wife to obtain a son, 578.

Drishadwatí, river, 430, *note*.

Durgá, worship of, 417.

Dúshana, brother of Rávana, his wars against Ráma, 269; his death, 274.

Education of Ráma by Vasishtha, 32; rites of initiation, ib.; daily attendance at school, ib.; alphabet, grammar, arts and sciences, and examinations in the council-hall, ib.; study of the Vedas, 33; studies of Bharata at Girivraja, 78.

Egg, Orphic and Brahmanical idea of, compared, 456; origin of the conception, 457; possible connection with the worship of the Linga, ib.

Egotism, the threefold, 459.

Epochs, four in the religious history of India, 411; chronology of, 418; definite chronology impossible, 419.

Evidence, false, law respecting, 610.

Families, divided and undivided, 612.

Famine in the Raj of Anga, 12; rain produced by Rishi Sringa, 13.

Food. *See* Diet.

Frogs compared with Bráhmans in a Vedic hymn, 443.

Funeral arrangements, 156; narrative of the rites performed for Maháraja Dasaratha, 172; for Jatáyus, 307; for Báli, 322.

Future state of rewards and punishments unknown in the Vedic age, 471; introduced to enforce Brahmanical laws, 472; future existences of the soul dependent upon merits and demerits, 473.

Gambling prohibited, 526.

Gandharva marriages, 504; restricted by Manu to the Kshatriyas, 505; the expression of a woman's independence, 514.

Ganesa, god of good luck, 418.

Ganges, hermitage at its junction with the Sarayú, 41; passage of Ráma and Viswámitra over the river, ib.; legend of its descent from the Himalaya mountain upon the head of Siva, and thence on the earth, 45, 46, *note*; poetical description of the river, 138; Ráma's passage over, 140; Sítá's prayer to the river, 142; passage of the army of Bharata over the river, 185.

Garura, the bird of Vishnu, 257.

Gautama, his wife Ahalyá seduced by Indra, 48; curses her, 49; Ráma frees her from the curse, ib.

Gáyatrí, including three measures, 480; meaning of, 482.

Gayatri, the holy, taught to Ráma, 33.

Geography, Vedic and Brahmanic compared, 425; of the Saraswatí river, 429.

Ghosts, belief in, 411; daily offerings to, 494; origin of the belief in, 495; popular belief in, among the Hindús, ib.; propitiation of, in the daily ritual, 497, 498; associated with the Paisácha form of marriage, 515; feasted in the Sráddhas, 518.

Girivraja, city of, 78, 163.

Godáveri river, 257.

Government, Hindú, contrast between the theory in Manu and the patriarchal and feudal types in Vedic tradition, 586; absence of patriotism and public spirit, ib.; religion the only political and national tie, 587; political system of the Bráhmans based upon fear, ib.; the Rajá, his court and ministers, 588; characteristics of Hindú sovereignty, 595; illustrations to be found in the Mahá Bhárata and Rámáyana, ib.; government of the provinces, 596; a military occupation based upon the village system, ib.; government of villages as laid down by Manu, 601; governors of cities, 602; system of taxation in return for protection, 603; ad-

ministration of justice, 605; laws of war, 613; policy to be pursued in a conquered country, 617; its failure, 618.
Grihastha, or householder, 553; obligation to marry, ib.; domestic life, 560; means of livelihood and moral conduct, ib.; respective occupations of the three twice-born castes, ib.
Guha, Raja of the Bhils, welcomes Ráma at Sringavera, 139; his conversation with Lakshmana, 140; prepares to oppose the army of Bharata, 182; his interview with Bharata, 183; conducts Bharata's army over the Ganges, 185; his joy at hearing of Ráma's return to Ayodhyá, 387.
Gunas, or the three qualities, their creation, 458.
Guru, the, 550.

Hanuman, the chief counsellor of the Monkey chieftain Sugríva, 319; his adventures in Lanká, 326; receives the marriage ring of Ráma, 328; meets Sampáti, 329; reaches the sea, ib.; his mighty leap, 330; beholds the beautiful city of Lanká, 331; reconnoitres Lanká in the form of a cat, 332; meets with Uggra Chunda, the genius of Lanká, ib.; proceeds through the city to the palace of Rávana, 333; searches for Sítá in the inner apartments, 334; finds her in the Asoka garden, 335; the interview, 339; destroys the grove, 340; combat with Jambu-málí, ib.; slays Aksha, 341; combat with Indrajit, ib.; bound in the irresistible noose of Brahma, ib.; his tricks with the Rákshasas, 342; his appearance before Rávana, ib.; his tail set on fire, 343; returns with the Monkey army to Ráma, ib.; review of his adventures, 344; carries away the Himalaya mountain by the roots, 369; sets Lanká on fire, ib.; his adventure with Kála-nemi, 371; with Bharata at Nundigráma, ib.; carries away the Himalaya a second time, 372.
Happiness, Brahmanical disquisition on, 552.
Hermit. *See* Vánapratha.
Hermitage at the junction of the Ganges and Sarayú, 41; question of the existence of hermitages in the time of Ráma, 150; beautiful description of the hermitage of Ráma, 204; general character of, 229; picture of, 240; those of the sage Dharmavrita, 252; of the sage Matanga, 311.
Heroic age of Hindú history, 637; meagre relics, 638.
Hindús, four epochs in their history, 407; Vedic and Brahmanic geography, 425; Rishis and Bráhmans, 435; Vedic and Brahmanic conceptions of Manu, 445; creation of the universe by Manu and Brahmá, 452; religion of the Bráhmans, 471; eight forms of marriage, 500; the Sráddha, or feast of the dead, 518; the four castes, 529; the four stages of life, 543; Hindú women, 568; government, 586; historical resumé, 619.—*See* India.
Hospitality, a religious rite, 498.
Householders. *See* Grihastha.
Husbands. *See* Marriage.

Ikshwáku, ancestor of the Rájas of Kosala, 6, 84, *note*.
Ilwala, consumed by the fire of the eye of Agastya, 253.
India, characteristics of the cold weather in, 258.
India, history of, possibility of constructing, 407; materials, ib.; Epics, Vedas, and Puranas, ib.; Buddhist legends, 408; laws of Manu, ib.; Hindú drama and poetry, ib.; Mackenzie manuscripts, ib.; miscellaneous vernacular records, ib.; inscriptions, etc., 409; history of, as distinct from that of Mussulman and British rule, ib.; religions from within, 410; importance of the history, ib.; objects of the present work, 409, *note*; emphatically a religious history, 410; four epochs, 411; chronology of the four epochs, 418; definite chronology impossible, 419; distinction between the age when the Saraswatí flowed into the Indus, and the age when it disappeared in the sand, 428; chronological interval, 432; distinctions between Rishis and Bráhmans, 445; historical significance of the compromise between Vedic and Brahmanic ideas in the code of Manu, 446; Vedic usages forbidden in the age of Kali, 491; changes in the religion between the Vedic and Brahmanic periods, 493; resumé of the ancient history, 619; first scene—the Vedic Aryans in the Punjab, 623; second scene—the Aryan conquest of Hindústan, 623-4; three phases of civilization, 624; modification of the three phases by human nature, 625; the patriarchal age, 626; the heroic age, 637; the monarchical age, 643; probable means by which the Bráhmans attained power, 656; political condition of Hindústan in the Brahmanic age, 659.
Indra, his assumed power of producing rain arrogated by the Bráhmans, 14; his presence at the Aswamedha of Dasaratha, 18; proceeds to the heaven of Brahma to complain of Rávana, ib.; conducted to the abode of Vishnu, 19; legend of the churning of the sea, 47; legend of his adultery with the wife of Gautama, 48; cursed by Gautama, 49; his luminous appearance at the hermitage of Sarabhanga, 245; legend of his tempting a sage to become a warrior, 250; his coat of mail given to Agastya and then to Ráma, 256; sends his chariot to Ráma, 374; Indra, his attributes, 437; worship of, opposed to the worship of the Maruts, 439; regarded as a creator, 452; decline of his worship in the Brahmanic age, 496; myths respecting, 641.
Indrajit, son of Rávana and conqueror of Indra, binds Hanuman in the noose of Brahma, 341; his sacrifices, 364; confines Ráma and Lakshmana in his noose, 365; slain by Lakshmana, 370; significance of his sacrifices, 378.

Jambu-mali, slain by Hanuman, 341.
Janaka, Raja of Mithilá, receives Viswámitra the sage, with Ráma and Lakshmana; 54; exhibits the great bow of Siva, ib.; his daughter Sítá promised to that Raja who could bend the bow, 55; Ráma bends the bow, ib.; the Raja invites Dasaratha to the marriage, ib.; proposes to marry his two daughters to Ráma and Lákshmana, and his two nieces to Bharata and Satrughna, 56; performs the marriage rites, 57, 59.
Jatáyus, son of Garura, allies with Ráma, 257; hears the cries of Sítá in the chariot of Rávana, 292; stops Rávana and fights desperately, 264; his death, 297; his body discovered by Ráma, 307; his funeral rites performed by Ráma, 308; meeting of his brother Sampáti with Hanuman, 329.
Jáváli, the logician, his atheistical speech to Ráma at Chitra-kúta, 211; Ráma's wrathful reply, 214; renewal of the discussion, 215; charged with Buddhism, ib.; his recantation, ib.; review of his character, 224.
Jumná, river, worshipped by Sítá, 147.
Jungle life, perils and sufferings of, described by Ráma to Sítá, 118.
Justice, administration of, 605; Brahmanizing of the old patriarchal system, ib.; conduct of the judge, 606; laws respecting property, ib.
Jyámagha, the submissive husband, legend of, 569, *note*.

Kabandha, the living mountain, his encounter with Ráma, 309; legend of, 310; counsels Ráma to ally with Sugríva, ib.
Kaikeyí, a Rání of Maháraja Dasaratha, 11; gives birth to Bharata, 21; visit of her brother Yudhájit, 77; her joy at hearing that her son Bharata was to accompany Yudhájit to Girivraja, ib.; her intrigues, 89; description of her slave woman Manthará, 91; her jealousy at the installation of Ráma excited by Manthará, ib.; aroused to action, 93; runs away to the chamber of displeasure, 94; induces the Maháraja to swear that he will grant her request, 96; demands the installation of her son Bharata and the exile of Ráma, ib.; reproached for her cruelty, 97; her remorseless obstinacy, 98; insists upon the Maháraja keeping his word, 99; lamentations and remonstrances of the Maháraja, ib.; review of the narrative, 101; curious Brahmanical interpolation that she required Ráma to become a religious devotee, 103; desires Sumantra to summon Ráma to the palace, 107; informs Ráma that he is to be exiled and his brother Bharata installed, 111; reproved by Sumantra, 124; her conduct intended as a warning to younger wives, 134; interview with her son Bharata after his return from Girivraja, 165; reproached by Bharata, 167; her joy at the return of Ráma, 388.
Kakshívat, the Rishi who married ten daughters of a Raja, 438, 503.
Kála-nemi, his adventure with Hanuman, 371; legend concerning, 372.
Kali age, usages prohibited in, 491.
Káli, worship of, 417.
Kalpa, or day of Brahmá, involves the idea of eternity, 467.
Káma, god of love, 418.
Káma, the god of love, legend of his smiting Siva with his arrows, 41.
Kanouj, city of, legend of its foundation, 45, *note*.
Kártikeya, god of war, 418.
Kásyapa, grandson of Brahma, the mythical ancestor of the Rajas of Kosala, 2; Buddhist legend of, 15, *note*.
Kausalyá, a Rání of Maháraja Dasaratha, 11; gives birth to Ráma, 21; her fondness for the infant, 29; her joy at Ráma's elevation to the post of Yuvaraja, 84; her sacrifice to Vishnu, 113; informed by Ráma of his exile, 114; her bitter lamentations, ib.; urges Ráma to seize the Raj, and slay the Maháraja, 115; Ráma's refusal, ib.; reproaches the Maháraja, 152; acknowledges her transgression, 154; Bharata declares to her his loyal attachment to Ráma, 169; her grief at Chitra-kúta at seeing Ráma offering a coarse cake to Dasaratha, 210.
Khara, brother of Rávana, learns from his sister Súrpa-nakhá that she has been disfigured by Lákshmana, 268; his unsuccessful wars against Ráma 269; disregards the evil omens, 270; slain by Ráma, 275.
Kishkindhyá, the Monkey city of Báli, 319.
Kosala, Raj of, 2; claim of the Rajas to be descended from the Sun and Brahma, ib.; description of the Raj, 3.
Kshatriyas, 4; alleged extirpation of, by Parasu Ráma an exaggeration of some petty local tradition, originating in the theft of a cow, 64.
Kshatriyas, conception of marriage, 502; illegal marriages tolerated, 515; significance of the law which permitted Gandharva and Rákshasa marriages to, ib.; laws against, 524; laws against flesh-meat, 526; their occupations, 560.
Kuhú, goddess of the day, 493.
Kumbha-karna, the great sleeper, his awakening and death, 367; popularity of the story, 379; a satire of the Buddhist dogma of Nirvána, ib.
Kuvera, god of wealth, 418.

Lakshmana, son of Dasaratha and Sumitrá, his birth, 21; accompanies Ráma and Viswámitra, 39; cuts off the ears and nose of Táraká 41; married to Urmilá, the sister of Sítá, 57; seconds the counsel of Kausalyá that Ráma should slay the Maháraja and seize the Raj, 115; proceeds with Ráma and Sítá bare-footed to the palace, 122; attends on Ráma at the Tamasá river, 136; at Sringavera, 140; builds the hut at Chitra-kúta, 148; advises Ráma that Bharata should be slain, 203; builds a hermitage for Ráma at Panchavatí, 257; cuts off the ears and nose of Súrpa-nakhá, 267; reproached by

Sítá for not leaving her to aid Ráma, 287; reproached by Ráma, 306; accompanies Ráma in the search for Sítá, 307.
Lakshmí, the goddess of beauty, rises out of the sea, and becomes the wife of Vishnu, 47.
Lanká, the capital of Rávana's empire, 290; island of, 329; description of the city and palace, 331; the seven canals and walls, ib.; reconnoitred by Hanuman, 332; combat between the genius of Lanká and Hanuman, 333; set on fire by Hanuman, 343, 369.
Lava, his birth, educated by Válmíki, 401; with Kusa defeats Ráma, 402; acknowledged by Ráma as his sons, ib.
Laws, respecting property, 606; miscellaneous, 608; neglect of land by cultivators, 611-12; criminal, 613; laws of war, ib.
Linga worship, 417; possibly connected with the idea of a mundane egg, 457.
Linga, worshippers of, Ráma represented as their champion, 233; a form of Siva, 234; set up by Ráma at Ramisseram, 353.
Lomapáda, Raja of Anga, sends damsels to entice Rishi Sringa from his father's hermitage, 12; gives his daughter in marriage to Sringa, 14.

Mackenzie manuscripts, 408.
Madhya-desa, or the middle region, 430; its extent, 432.
Málíavat, maternal grandfather of Rávana, counsels him to restore Sítá, 356.
Malyavana mountain, the residence of Ráma and Lakshmana during the rainy season, 349.
Mandakarni, lake of, the abode of the sage Mandakarni and five Apsaras, 251.
Mandákiní river, 149; Ráma's description of it, 200.
Mandara mountain, 47, 167.
Mandodarí, wife of Rávana, prevents her husband from slaying Sítá, 338; implores him to restore Sítá, 365; ill-treated by the Monkeys, 373.
Manthará, the slave nurse of the Rání Kaikeyí, 90; her ugliness, 91; attempts to excite the jealousy of Kaikeyí at the installation of Ráma, ib.; declares that Bharata will become the slave of Ráma, 92; counsels Kaikeyí to persuade the Maháraja to install Bharata and exile Ráma, 93; reminds Kaikeyí of the two boons promised her by the Maháraja, ib.; ill-treated by Satrughna, 167; released by Bharata, 168.
Mantras, or hymns, 448, 449.
Mantras, two powerful ones given by Viswámitra to Ráma, 43.
Manu, Institutes of, 408; a stand-point in the history of Brahmanism, 421; contains no references to the age of Brahmanical revival, 422; geography of, compared with that of the Rig-Veda, 425; geography of Brahmávarta mythical, but that of Brahmárshi-desa probably historical, 428; places the Vedic deities in subordination to Brahma, ib.; description of Brahmávarta and Brahmárshi-desa, 430; Vedic conception of Manu as the first man, compared with the Brahmanic conception of a divine legislator, 445; associated with a legend of the deluge, ib.; laws of a compromise between Vedic and Brahmanic ideas, 446; conflicting character of his authorities, ib.; four roots of the law, 447; his use of the term Veda, 449; includes later ordinances, immemorial customs, and approval of conscience as roots of the law, 449, 450; his spirit of toleration, 450; distinction between Sruti, or revelation, and Smriti, or tradition, ib.; denunciations against Buddhists, 451; his code the text book of the Bráhmans, ib.; conception of father Manu as the progenitor of men, 453; his cosmogony compared with that of Moses, 454; produced from Viraj, 460; his system of chronology, 463; his religious system both a development and a compromise, 471; daily invocations, 478; five daily sacramental rites, 487; of the Rishis, 488; of the Pitris, 492; of the Devatas, 493; of the Spirits or Ghosts, 494; of mortal Guests, 498; canon for reconciling conflicting texts in the Vedas, 491; his description of the eight forms of marriage, 505; perhaps associated with Prajápati, 511; tolerated Gandharva and Rákshasa marriages, 515; merits and demerits of the eight forms of marriage, 516; significance of the application of the dogma, ib.; relative merits of different rituals offered at a Sráddha, 527; Vedic myth of the origin of caste distorted in the code to represent the Bráhmans as superior to the Kshatriyas, 531; Manu's version of the origin of caste, 532; caste laws, ib.; repugnance to flesh-meat, 539; toleration of the usages of Kshatriyas and Vaisyas, ib.; abstinence from lawful pleasures to be rewarded in another life, 540; scale of punishments for slander, ib.; two objects of the code, viz. the establishment of a national ritual and a caste system, 543; system of four stages or orders in the life of every man of the twice-born castes, 544; the Brahmachári, or student, 544; the Grihastha, or householder, 553; the Vánaprastha, or hermit, 562; the Sannyási, or devotee, 563; disquisition on earthly happiness, 552; tolerates the law for raising up a son to a deceased brother, 583; theory of Hindú government, 586; references to the village system, 598, 601.
Manus, the ten, creation of, 455; a separate cosmogony from that of Brahmá, 461; chronology of their reigns, 469.
Manwantaras, chronological system of, superadded to the Brahmanic system of Kalpas, 469.
Márícha, the Rákshasa, driven into the ocean by Ráma, 44; dissuades Rávana from carrying away Sítá, 276; urgently entreated by Rávana to assist, 283; obeys, 284; assumes the form of a deer, 285; slain by Ráma, 286.
Marriage, the three Ránís of Maháraja

Dasaratha, 11; story of the damsels who enticed Sringa from his father's hermitage, 13; marriage of Sringa and Santá, 14; the general interest attached to marriages intensified in India, 51; the all-absorbing topic in Hindú households, ib.; paramount duty of Hindú parents to arrange the marriages of their children, ib.; transcendant interest attached to the marriage of Ráma and Sítá, 52; the story of the marriage, ib.; the marriage performed, not by Bráhmans, but by Raja Janaka, 59; the four important rites, ib.; resemblance between the ancient Aryan ceremony and the modern Christian rite, 60; modern story of Ráma's honeymoon, 65, 66; decorations of the bridal chamber, 67; Ráma and Sítá playing at dice, ib.; Ráma compares Sítá with different things in nature, 68; sports of the married pair in the pond, ib.; Ráma and Sítá drink honey together, 68; jealousies and intrigues in the zenana on the selection of a Yuvaraja, 73; the chamber of displeasure, 94; description of the zenana of Maháraja Dasaratha, 95; description of the house of Ráma, 107; picture of Ráma sitting on a couch and being fanned by Sítá, 108; duties of wives, 153; lamentations of the widows on the death of the Maháraja, 156; Hindú idea of wedded happiness, 199, 220; virtuous conduct of Ráma towards the Maháraja's women, 238; taunt of Virádha that Ráma and Lakshmana had but one wife between them, 241; evil nature of women denounced by Agastya, 256; fastidious ideas of physical chastity amongst the Hindús, 302; ancient law by which the wife of the conquered became the property of the conqueror, 298, 505; night visit of Rávana to Sítá surrounded by his women, 335.

Marriage, eight forms of, specified by Manu, 500; their historical significance, ib.; Vedic conceptions of, as expressed in the Epics, 501; marriages in a peaceful community appertaining to Rishis or Bráhmans, ib.; in a warlike community appertaining to Kshatriyas, ib.; polyandry in the Epics, 502; in the hymns of the Rig-Veda, ib.; polygamy in the Epics and the Vedic hymns, 503; the Swayamvara, ib.; Gandharva and Rákshasa marriages, 504; old Kshatriya law that a wife should submit to the conqueror of a husband, 505; list of the eight forms, ib.; four valid, 506; arbitrary distinction between the Devatas, Rishis, and Prajápatis, 507; four illegal, 513; modern marriage customs, 514, *note*; merits and demerits of the eight forms, 516; younger brothers and younger sisters not to be married before elder brothers and sisters, 524; remarriage of widows prohibited, 525; marriages between castes, 534; with a first wife of a low caste prohibited, ib.; later prohibition of all marriages between castes 535; regarded as the purification of daughters, 547; incumbent on all men, 553; regulations for producing a healthy progeny, ib.; relative ages of bridegroom and bride, 554; prohibited marriages, 555; unsuitable families, 556; unsuitable damsels, ib.; qualified damsels, 558; opposition between the Kshatriya and Brahman idea of female beauty, ib.; marriage ceremonies, 559; eleven leading rites, ib.; social condition of Hindú women, 568; marriage relations in the Vedic times, ib.; compensation to the female in the case of irregular unions, ib.; position of a damsel in a polygamous household, 569; superior authority of the legitimate wife, ib.; natural tendency to monogamy, 570; polyandry and the Swayamvara, 550; legend of a submissive husband in a polygamous age, 569, *note*; marriage relations in the Brahmanic period, 571; polyandry and the Swayamvara ignored, ib.; dependence of females upon fathers, husbands, and sons, 571-2; duty of a father to a daughter, 573; story of Ramdoolal Dey, 572, *note*; cases when a damsel might choose her own husband, 573; duties of husbands towards their wives, ib.; wives to be honoured and decorated, 574; duties of a wife, ib.; duties of a widow, 575; duties of a widower, 575-6; restrictions to be placed on women 576; vices of women, ib.; *maintenance* and conduct of a wife in the absence of her husband, ib.; questions as regards the period of her absence, 757; forced explanation of Kullúka, ib.; law respecting divorce, ib.; supersession of a wife by a second wife to obtain a son, 578; good wives superseded with their own consent, ib.; force of the religious obligation to beget a son, 579; amusing story of Ramdoolal Dey and his second wife, ib.; laws against adultery, 580; punishment of unfaithful wives and their paramours, 581; punishment of seducers who are Bráhmans, ib.; public women and female anchorites, ib.; question of guarded wives, 582; punishment for visiting public women and private mistresses, ib.; conduct of a Hindú towards the wives of his brother, 583; law for raising up a son to a deceased brother, ib.; modern custom of adoption, 585.

Maruts, worship of, opposed to the worship of Indra, 439; enjoined by Manu, 496.

Matanga, the sage, his hermitage on the road to Pampá, 310; teaches the name of "Ráma" to Sarvarí, 312.

Mendicant. *See* Sannyási.

Merits and demerits, dogma of, 473; future existence of the soul dependent upon, ib.; causes of the universality in the belief, 475; form of the conception in the Mosaic law, 476; iniquity of fathers visited upon children, ib.; inferior merit of duties performed in the hope of reward, 477; distinction between higher and lower motives, ib.; merits and demerits of the eight forms of marriage, 516; merits of different victuals offered at a Sraddha, 527.

Metaphysical creation taken from the Sánkhya school of philosophy, 457.
Mithilá, the modern Tirhut, 45; Ráma enters the city, 54.
Monarchical age in Hindú history, 643.
Monkeys on the Rishya-múkha mountain, 298; significance of their alleged alliance with Ráma, 315; circumstances which led to the Hindú belief in the alliance, 316; those of the Rámáyana identical with the aboriginal population of the south, 317; three hypotheses respecting the origin of the confusion, ib.; reason why the Monkey gods of the south may have been represented as fighting for Ráma, 318; nondescript character, 323; adventures in the honey-garden of Sugríva, 343; bring stones to Nala for the great bridge, 352; cross the bridge, 353; restored to life by Sushena, 369; their ill-treatment of Mandodarí, 373; entertained by Bharadwája, 387, *note*.
Monogamy, natural tendency to, 570.
Mosaic cosmogony compared with that of Manu, 454; doctrine of rewards and punishments, 475; iniquity of fathers visited upon children, 476; law as regards marriage, 516, *note*.
Muhúrtta, the Hindú hour, 464.
Müller, Professor Max, his translation of a Vedic hymn comparing the Bráhmans with frogs, 443.

Nahusha, myth respecting, 641.
Nala, builds a bridge of stone over the sea at Lanká, 352.
Nandigráma, the residence of Bharata, 219.
Navigation, regarded with horror by the Bráhmans, 526.
Nemesis, the avenging, conception of, finds expression in the story of Ráma, 89.
Nikashá, mother of Rávana, her trouble about Sítá, 352.
Nirváṇa, satirized in the story of Kumbhakarna, 379.
Nirvána, the Buddhist ideal of happiness, 415.
Noah, resemblance between his flood and the flood of Manu, 445.

Oaths, administration of, to different castes, 533; laws respecting, 610.
Obindhya, his advice to Rávana after Hanuman's leap, 330.
Om, its meaning, 480.
Omens, evil ones preceding the wars between Ráma and Khara, 270.
Orders, the four stages in the life of the individual, 543; the Brahmachári, or student, 544-5; the Grihastha, or householder, 553; the Vánaprastha, or hermit, 561; the Sannyási, or devotee, 563.
Orphic egg, compared with the Brahmanical egg, 457.
Oude. *See* Ayodhyá.

Paisácha marriages, 506; originated in a belief in ghosts, 515.
Pampá, description of the lake, 312.
Panchavatí, the modern Nasik, near the river Godáveri, 257; Ráma's hermitage there, ib.
Parasu Ráma, son of Jamadagni, his opposition to Ráma, the son of Dasaratha, 60; his terrible appearance during the return journey of Ráma from Mithilá, 62; challenges Ráma to break the bow of Vishnu, 62; acknowledges Ráma to be Vishnu, 63; his alleged extirpation of the Kshatriyas proved to be an exaggeration, 64; the mere hero of some petty local tradition originating in the theft of a cow, ib.
Parvatí, worship of, 417.
Patriarchal age of Hindú history, 626.
Páyasa, a sacred food of rice and milk, presented to Dasaratha, 20; distributed among the Ránís and produces conception, 21: its connection with the incarnation of deity, 23.
Physicians excluded from the Sráddha, 527.
Pindas, or cakes, offerings of, at the Sráddhas, 521.
Pitris, or spirits of ancestors, a day of, 464; daily offering of food to, 492; associated with Prajápati, 512; feasted in the Sráddha, 521.
Polyandry in the Epics, 502; traces of the custom in a hymn of the Rig-Veda, ib.; similarity of the legend in the hymn to the Swayamvara of Draupadí, ib.; revolting character, 570.
Polygamy in the Epic traditions, 503; in the hymns of the Rig-Veda, ib.; position of a damsel in a polygamous household, 569; superior authority of the legitimate wife, ib.; amusing story of Jyámagha, the submissive husband, 569, *note*.
Prajápati, identified with the Supreme Spirit, 412; identified with Brahma, 413; perhaps a different conception, 511.
Prajápatya marriages, 506; distinction between them and the rite of the Bráhmans, 511.
Prayága, the modern Alláhabád, the seat of Bharadwája, 135.
Property, laws respecting, 606; neglect of land by cultivators, 611-12; divided and undivided families, 612.
Provinces, government of, 596; a military occupation based upon the village system, ib.
Pulastya, the sage, said to be the progenitor of the Rákshasas, 269.
Puránas, manuscript translations of, by Professor H. H. Wilson, 407.
Purgunnah, comprising a hundred villages, 601.
Purusha hymn, 453; Vedic myth that the four castes were created from the limbs of Purusha, 530; extracts from the hymn, 531; no Brahmanical superiority asserted in the Purusha hymn, ib.

Raja, his court and ministers, 588; Hindú ideal of one, 588, 589; divine attributes, 589; punishment his special duty, 589, 590; his daily duties, 591; public appear-

ance, ib.; secret councils, ib.; precautions against poison and assassination, 592; his city, fort, and palace, 593; queen, priests, and ministers, 593, 594; officials, 594; characteristics of Hindú sovereignty, 595; duties in defensive warfare, 615; duties during actual operations, ib.; alliances, 616; duties in offensive warfare, ib.; policy to be pursued in a conquered country, 617.

Rajas, duties of, detailed by Ráma, 205.

Rákshasa marriages, 505; restricted by Manu to the Kshatriyas, ib.; an old war custom, 515.

Rákshasas, early wars of Ráma against, 37; confusion respecting them, ib.; regarded as ghosts, and represented as descendants from Brahman sages, and as worshippers of Brahma, ib.; origin of their opposition to the Bráhmans, 38; inquiry into the real character of the Rákshasas of the Rámáyana, 231; their empire in the south of India, 232; identified with the Buddhists, ib.; Viradha, the, Rákshasa, 241; said to be the children of Palastya, 269; popularly supposed to be able to assume new forms at will, 279.

Ráma, son of Dasaratha and Kausalyá, his birth, 21; an incarnation of Vishnu, 25; story of his life from infancy to manhood, 27; identified by Vasishtha as an incarnation of Vishnu, 29; anecdotes of his childhood, ib.; his crying for the moon, ib.; pacified by a mirror, 30; begins to talk, 31; his sports with other boys, ib.; educated by Vasishtha, 32; invested with the sacred thread, 33; becomes a Brahmachári for the day, ib.; taught the Gayatri, ib.; studies the Vedas, ib.; his early life a type of the modern Hindú, 35; goes with Viswámitra to protect the Bráhmans against the Rákshasas, 39; Viswámitra acts as his Guru, 40; arrives at the hermitage at the junction of the Ganges and Sarayú, 41; passage over the Ganges, ib.; requested by Viswámitra to slay Táraká, ib.; the combat, 42; his unwillingness to slay a woman, ib.; slays Táraká at the instigation of Viswámitra, ib.; receives divine weapons from Viswámitra, 43; his reception at the hermitage of Viswámitra at Buxar, 44; destroys the Rákshasas, ib.; proceeds with Viswámitra to the sacrifice of Janaka at Mithilá, ib.; crosses the Ganges and halts at Visálá, 46; enters the hermitage of Gautama and releases Ahalyá from a curse, 49; story of his marriage with Sítá, 51; excites the religious sympathies of Hindú families, 52; division of the story, 53; received at Mithilá by Raja Janaka, 54; bends the great bow of Siva, 55; the preliminaries, ib.; the marriage ceremony, 57; ceremonies in the inner apartments, 58; review of the narrative, 59; the marriage performed not by Bráhmans but by Raja Janaka, ib.; opposition of Ráma, the Kshatriya, to Parasu Ráma, the Brahman, 60, 62, 64 —*see* also Parasu Ráma; modern story of Ráma's honeymoon, 65; review of the story, 69; appointed Yuvaraja, 72; jealousies and intrigues in the zenana of Dasaratha, 73; partiality of the Maháraja for Ráma, 79; his virtues, ib.; resolution to appoint him Yuvaraja, ib.; speech of the Mahárája before the great Council on the appointment of Ráma to be Yuvaraja, 80; joy of the assembly, 81; recital of Ráma's merits, ib.; his wisdom, bravery, and kind words, ib.; his truth, continence, and justice, ib.; Vasishtha directs the preparations for the installation, 82; Ráma summoned to the palace by Dasaratha, ib.; graciously received by the Mahárája, and requested to accept the post of Yuvaraja, 83; directed to keep watch until the morning, ib.; proceeds to his mother's apartments, 84; joy of Kausalyá, ib.; returns to his home, ib.; receives instructions from Vasishtha, 85; worships Vishnu, ib.; keeps watch in the temple of Vishnu, ib.; universal rejoicings, 86; acme of human felicity attained by Ráma, 89; conception of the avenging Nemesis, ib.; story of the intrigues of Kaikeyí for bringing about his exile, and the installation of her son Bharata in his room, 90; curious Brahmanical interpolation that Kaikeyí required that he should become a religious devotee, 103; modern belief in the idea, ib.; story of his visit to the palace on the morning of the installation, 105; his beautiful house, 107; picture of his sitting on a couch fanned by Sítá, ib.; accompanies Sumantra to the palace of the Mahárája, 108; acclamations of the multitude, ib.; his interview with the Mahárája and Kaikeyí, 110; his prompt and cheerful obedience, 111; control of his passions, 112; his interview with his mother Kausalyá, 113; refuses to rebel against his father, 115; his interview with Sítá, 117; yields to her entreaties, 121; proceeds barefooted to the palace, 122; puts on bark garments, 127; leaves Ayodhyá in a chariot, 129; directs Sumantra to excuse himself by a falsehood, 130; route from Ayhodyá to Bundelkund, 135; halt at the Tamasá river, 136; depart in the morning without awaking the people, 137; entertained at Sringavera by Raja Guha, 139; dismisses Sumantra, 140; becomes a devotee and dismisses Guha, 142; passage over the Ganges, ib.; reaches the hermitage of Bharadwája, 145; directed by the sage to live at Chitra-kúta, 146; passage over the Jumná, 147; arrival at Chitra-kúta, ib.; describes the beauties of Chitra-kúta to his wife Sítá, 199; describes the river Mandákiní, 230; sports with his wife Sítá on the hill, 201; hears the approach of the army of Bharata, 203; beautiful description of his hermitage, 204; his speech on the duties of Rajas, 205; demands the reason of Bharata's coming, 208; his affliction on hearing of the death of his father the Mahá-

rajá, 208; offers water and funeral cakes to the soul of Dasaratha, 209; his condescension to Bharata's army, 209; his veneration towards his mothers and Vasishtha, 210; refuses to accept the Raj, 211; atheistical speech of Jávâli, the logician, ib.; his wrathful reply, 214; renewal of the discussion, 215; his reply to Vasishtha, 216; his shoes adopted by Bharata as an emblem of his sovereignty, 218, 228; dismisses his brethren, ib.; puerile character of his dialogue with Sítá, 221; mixture of military pursuits and religious worship involved in the description of his hut, ib.; strained and artificial character of his dialogues with Bharata and others, 222; review of his interview with Jávâli, 224; his character as the champion of the Bráhmans against the Buddhists, 227; authenticity of his exile, 229; locality of the wanderings, ib.; dubious existence of the sages said to be his contemporaries, 230; his three characters as a mortal hero, as an incarnation of Vishnu, and as a champion of the Linga worshippers, 233; contradiction involved, 234; three elements in the Rámáyana, corresponding to the three characters, ib.; ten incidents in the narrative of the exile, 235; departure from Chitra-kúta, 236; journey to the hermitage of Atri, 237; praised by Sítá, 238; engages to defend the sages from the Rákshasas in the forest of Dándaka, 239; joyfully entertained by the sages, 240; appearance of Virádha, 241; agony at seeing his wife in the grasp of Virádha, 242; buries Virádha alive, 243; visit to the hermitage of Sarabhanga, 245; admires the chariot and horses of Indra, ib.; sees Sarabhanga burn himself alive, 246; entreated by the sages to protect them against the Rákshasas, 247; visit to the hermitage of Sutíkshna, 248; visit to neighbouring sages, 249; dialogue with Sítá on the propriety of making war against the Rákshasas, 249; ten years wanderings in the neighbourhood of Sutíkshna's hermitage at Ramtek, 251; visits the lake where a sage is sporting with five Apsaras, ib.; return to the hermitage of Satíkshna, 252; visits the sage Agastya near the Vindhya mountains, ib.; joy of Agastya, 254; acknowledged as Raja of the universe, 255; receives divine weapons from Agastya, 256; resides at Panchavatí, the modern Nasik, 257; allies with Jatáyus, ib.; his large hut with four rooms, ib.; his oblations to the god of dwellings, 258; reproves Lakshmana, 259; significance of his dialogue with Sítá as to his protecting the Bráhmans, 260; his wars respecting Súrpa-nakhá, 264; efforts of Súrpa-nakhá to induce him to marry her, 265; jests with her, 267; resists the attacks of her brothers, Khara and Dúshana, 269; his calmness, 272; his terrible arrows, 273; slays Dúshana, 274; slays Khara, 275; pursues Márícha, who has taken the form of a deer, 285; slays Márícha, 286; narrative of his search for Sítá, 306; his address to the moon, 307; discovers the body of Jatáyus, ib.; performs funeral rites for him, 308; proceeds towards the south, 309; encounter with Kabandha, ib.; advised by Kabandha to ally with Sugríva, 310; visits the hermitage of Matanga, and praises the piety of Sarvarí, 311; proceeds to the Pampá lake, 312; his name taught as a mantra, ib.; sees Sarvarí burn herself alive, 311; change in his character from the divine to the human, 314; hypothesis that the son of Dasaratha and Linga-worshipper of the Dekhan are different individuals, 315; significance of his alleged alliance with the Monkeys, 315; reason why the monkey gods of the south may have been represented as fighting for him, 318; proceeds from the lake Pampá to the Rishyamúkha mountain, 319; received by Sugríva and Hanuman, ib.; sees the ornaments of Sítá in the possession of Sugríva, 320; engages to slay Báli, ib.; mortally wounds him, 321; breach of the laws of fair fighting, 324; marshalling of the armies on the Malyavana mountain, 326; gives his ring to Hanuman, 328; receives Sítá's jewel from Hanuman, 344; his genius for alliances, 349; narrative of his war against Rávana, 350; progress of the army of Monkeys and Bears towards the sea, 351; joined by Vibhíshana, 352; the building of the bridge, ib.; worships Siva, and sets up a Linga in Ramisseram, 353; crosses the bridge with his army of Monkeys and Bears, ib.; permits Rávana's spies to survey his camp, 354; his message to Rávana, ib.; review of the narrative, 357; the Lingá, a monument of triumph, and a religious symbol, ib.; temple to Ráma at Ramisseram, 358; his war against Rávana, 361; confined with Lakshmana in the noose of snakes, 364; his deliverance, 365; takes the field against Rávana, ib.; orders Hanuman to fire the city of Lanká, 369; combat with Rávana, 370; final overthrow of Rávana, 374; his cruel words to Sítá, 383; her appeal, ib.; the god Agni attests her purity, 384; receives her as his wife, ib.; prepares to return to Ayodhyá, 385; describes his adventures to Sítá, 386; arrives at the hermitage of Bharadwaja, ib.; the entertainment, 387, *note;* preparations for his triumphant return to Ayodyhá, 388; meeting with Bharata, 389; casts aside the garb of a devotee for that of a Raja, 390; entry into Ayodhyá, ib.; the installation ceremonies, 391; popularity of the narrative, 394; determines to put away Sítá, 399; sufferings of Sítá, 400; performs an Aswamedha, 402; acknowledges his sons, 403; is reconciled to his wife, Sítá, ib.; ascends to heaven, 405.

Rámáyana, opening scene at Ayodhyá, 1; scarcity of early family traditions, 2; commencement of the poem, 3; spiritualized version known as the Adhyátma Rámá-

yana, 25; poetical description of autumn, 40; three elements corresponding to the three characters of Ráma, 234; natural conclusion of the story, 381; popularity of the story, 394; conclusion, 406.
Rambhá, the Apsara, legend of, 244.
Ramdoolal Dey, his Sráddha, 528, *note;* story of his submission to his wife, 572, *note;* conduct as regards a second wife, 579, *note.*
Ramisseram, Linga set up there by Ráma, 353; description of the pagoda there, 358.
Rávana, Raja of the Rákshasas, rendered invulnerable by Brahma and makes the gods his slaves, 18; the gods complain to Brahma, ib.; Vishnu promises to overthrow him by mortals and monkeys, 19; grandson of Pulastya, the son of Brahma, 37; hears of Ráma's slaughter of Khara and Dúshana, 276; dissuaded by his minister Márícha from carrying off Sítá, 277; narrative of his abduction of Sítá, 278; extraordinary conception of his having ten heads and twenty arms, 280; description of him, 281; addressed by Súrpa-nakhá, ib.; urged to carry off Sítá, 282; induces Márícha to take the form of a deer, 283; proceeds to Panchavatí, 285; visits the hermitage of Ráma, 288; his proposals to Sítá, 289; assumes his proper form, 290; carries away Sítá through the air, 291; his chariot stopped by Jatáyus, 296; slays Jatáyus, 297; contrast between his black complexion and the gold complexion of Sítá, 297; passes the Rishya-múkha mountain, 298; conducts Sítá to his palace at Lanká, ib.; refusal of Sítá to listen to his proposals, 300; his alarm at Hanuman's leap, 330; his night visit to Sítá surrounded by his women, 335; threatens to devour her, 337; prevented from slaying her by his wife Mandodarí, 338; hears that a Monkey has destroyed his Asoka grove, 340; sends out successive armies and warriors to slay Hanuman, ib.; questions Hanuman, 342; orders Hanuman's tail to be set on fire, 343; his Buddhist character, 347; his rupture with Vibhishana, who joins Ráma, 352; sends Súka and Sárana to spy out the army of Ráma, 353; his wrath at Ráma's message, 354; surveys the army of Monkeys and Bears, ib.; prepares to withstand Ráma, 356; counselled by Nikashá and Málavat, ib.; takes the field in person, 365; entreated by his wife Mandodarí to restore Sita, ib.; the battle, ib.; combat with Ráma, 366; awakening and death of Kumbha-karna, 367; shuts himself up in Lanká, 369; combat with Ráma, 370; his sacrifice with closed doors, 373; ill-treatment of his wife Mandodarí by the Monkeys, ib.; his final overthrow, 374; lamentations of his widows, 382.
Religious history of India, four epochs of, 407, 410; chronology of, 418; laws of Manu a compromise between Vedic and Brahmanic ideas, 446; historical significance of the compromise, ib.
Religious ideas, legend of the production of rain by Rishi Sringa, 13; the churning of the ocean for the possession of amrita, 47; belief connected with the marriage of Ráma and Sítá as inearnations of Vishnu and Lákshmí, 52; curious Brahmanical interpolation that Kaikeyí desired that Ráma should become a religious devotee, 103; Ráma becomes a devotee, 142; Sítá's prayer to the river Ganges, ib.; offerings of wine and flesh-meat to female deities, 143; worship of the Jumná by Sítá, 147; worship of the fig-tree, ib.; propitiation of the god of dwellings, 148; atheistical speech of Jáváli, 211; wrathful reply of Ráma, 214; Buddhist tenets of Jáváli, 215; his recantation, ib.; review of his character and arguments, 224; Brahma worshipped by Rávana, 232; Rákshasas identified as Buddhists, ib.; Virádha preserved by the blessing of Brahma, 243; extraordinary description of asceties, 247; legend of the devotee who was tempted by Indra to become a warrior, 250; Ráma's oblation to the god of dwellings, 258; worship of Siva by Ráma, 353; Linga set up by Ráma at Ramisseram, ib.; Súkra, the preceptor of the Rákshasas, 373; belief in the efficacy of sacrifice, 373, 377.
Religious ideas, in the Vedic age, 411; belief in ghosts, ib.; rise of the Aryans from polytheism to monotheism, ib.; identification of the Supreme Spirit with Agni and Prajápati, 412; ideas in the Brahmanic age, ib.; Brahmanic religion distinct from the Vedic religion, ib.; amalgamation of the two, ib.; doctrines of Buddhism, 414; existence an evil, 415; idea of Nirvána, ib.; age of satiety, 416; failure of Buddhism to influence the masses, ib.; appeal of the Bráhmans to the old gods of India, 417; Brahmanism a religion of the people and Buddhism a religion of the nobles, 421; worship of the Saraswatí river by the Vedic Aryans, 429; Vedic religion restricted generally to the present life, 435; genial character of the Vedic religion, 437; ascendancy of the Bráhmans secured by asceticism, 442; distinction between an age of spontaneous devotion and one of ritualism, 448; Brahmanical toleration of old usages, 450; creation of the universe—*see* Creation; influence of the different chronological systems upon the respective religious belief of Hindús and Europeans, 469; religion of the Bráhmans described at length, 471; Brahmanical doctrine of rewards and punishments unknown in the Vedic age, ib.; crude conception of sin, 472; Brahmanical dogma of merits and demerits, 473; distinction between the religious obligations felt in Europe and those felt in India, 474; causes of the universality of the belief in rewards and punishments, 475; Mosaic conception of the iniquity of fathers visited upon children, 476; in-

ferior merit of duties performed in the hope of reward, 477; distinction between natural law and ecclesiastical law, ib.; distinction between higher and lower motives, ib.; religious worship of the Bráhmans divisible into invocations and sacramental rites, 478; significance of the invocations as forming combinations of Three in One; ib.; meaning of Om, the Vyáhritis and the Gáyatrí, 481; the Sun identified with Brahma, 483; chain of conceptions involved in the worship of the Sun, 484; daily repetition of the invocations, 485; religious value of a daily ritual, ib.; relative effect of present and future punishment in the suppression of heresy, 486; five daily sacramental rites enjoined by Manu, 487; placed upon an anomalous basis, ib.; reading of the Veda to propitiate the Rishis, 488; offering of food to propitiate the Pitris, 492; oblations of ghee to propitiate the Devatas, 493; offerings of boiled rice to propitiate spirits or ghosts, 494; hospitality in propitiation of guests, 498; worship of trees, 496; merits and demerits of the eight forms of marriage, 516; ideas involved in the Sráddha, or feast of the dead, 518; persons to be excluded, 522; significance of the catalogues of disqualifications, 524; confusion of sin and disease, ib.; prohibition of the worship of inferior gods, 525; relative merits of different victuals offered at a Sráddha, 527; modifications of the old Vedic belief in the Sraddha by the Bráhmans, 528; sacrifice of the anteloge peculiar to the Vedic Aryans, 545, *note*; results of the religious training of the Brahmachári, 548; religious duties of the Brahmachári, 549; Brahmanical disquisition on earthly happiness, 552; austerities of the Vánaprastha, or hermit, 562; of the Sannyási, or devotee, 563; religious contemplation to obtain final beatitude, ib.; subjects of reflection, 564; inferiority of material existence, 565; Brahmanical idea of life partially obtained from Buddhism but not from the Vedic worship, 565; expression of Vedic and Brahmanic ideas of life in modern humanity, 566, 567.

Religious rites, propitiation of Sustí for the purpose of pacifying children, 30; performance of a Sráddha before marriage, 56; worship of Vishnu by Kausalyá, 84; worship of Vishnu by Ráma, 85; Kausalya's sacrifice, 113; worship of Siva by Ráma, 353; sacrifice of Indrajit, 364—370; sacrifice of Rávana with closed doors, 373.

Revenue, land, 604; miscellaneous taxes, ib.

Rig-Veda, geography of the hymns compared with that of Manu, 425; geography of the Saraswatí river, 429; genial character of the ceremonial, 437; character of the Vedic bards, 438; opposition in the hymns between a peaceful and a warlike community, 439; between the worship of the Maruts and that of Indra, ib.; express both fear and contempt of the Bráhmans, 442, 443; comparison of the Bráhmans with frogs, 443.

Rishis, distinguished from the Bráhmans, 435; religious ideas expressed in their hymns, 436; their popularity and power, 437; married the daughters of Rajas, 438; resembled the Hebrew psalmists, ib.; daily propitiation of, by the study of the Veda, 488; conception of marriage, 501; marriage rite of, 505; difference between their rite and the rite of the Rishis, 509; the most ancient rite, 512.

Rishya-múkha mountain, the abode of the Monkeys, 298; Sugríva, the Monkey chieftain, 310, 319.

Ritwij, or sacrificer, 551.

Rumá, wife of Sugríva, 320, 323.

Sacramental rites, five daily, enjoined by Manu, 487; of the Rishis, 44; of the Pitris, 488; of the Devatas, 493; of the Spirits or Ghosts, 494; of mortal Guests, 498; review of the rites, ib.

Sacrifice, description of, at the Aswamedha of Dasaratha, 17; domestic sacrifice of Vishnu, 113.

Sagara, Raja, his sixty thousand sons, legend of, 46, *note*.

Saivyá, her power over her husband Jyamagha, 569, *note*.

Sákya Muni, the great teacher of Buddhism in India, 408; characteristics of his teachings, 414; existence an evil, 415.

Salutations to men of different castes, 533.

Sampáti, brother of Jatáyus, informs Hanuman that Rávana has carried Sítá to Lanká, 329.

Sánkhya philosophy expressed in the cosmogony of Manu, 457.

Sannyási, a devotee, 563; life of religious contemplation to obtain final beatitude, ib.; means of subsistence, 564; subjects of reflection, ib.; resemblance to the Buddhist devotees, 565.

Sarabhanga, the sage, visit of Ráma and Sítá to his hermitage, 245; visited by Indra, ib.; burns himself alive, and ascends to the heaven of Brahma, 246.

Saramá, wife of Vibhíshana, serves Sítá, 352.

Sárana, sent by Rávana with Súka to spy upon Ráma's army, 353.

Saraswatí, goddess of learning, worshipped by school-boys, 32; decay in her worship, consequent on the introduction of printed books, 36, *note*.

Saraswatí river, a line of separation between the Vedic and Brahmanic settlements, 425; distinction between the age when it flowed into the Indus, and the age when it disappeared in the sand, 428; geographical notices of, in the Rig-Veda, 429.

Sarayú river, the modern Gogra, 1, 3; holy hermitages at its junction with the Ganges, 41; funeral place on its bank, 174.

Sarvarí, the female disciple of Matanga, 311; relates her story to Ráma, ib.; burns herself alive, 312.

Satí, rite of, 633.

Satrughna, son of Dasaratha and Sumitrá, his birth, 21; accompanies his brother Bharata to the city of Raja Aswapati, 77, 78; ill-treats Mantharà, 168; restrained by Bharata, ib.; defeated and wounded by Lava and Kusa, 402.
Sávitrí, the Sun, identified with Brahma, 483.
Scythian custom resembling the rite of Sati, 634.
Sea, legend of the churning of, 47.
Sea voyages, existence of, proved by the law of Bottomry, 609.
Sersooty river, mistakes concerning, in modern geography, 431, *note*.
Sin, crude conception of, by the Vedic Aryans, 472; confounded with disease, 524.
Sítá, daughter of Janaka, Raja of Mithilá, promised in marriage to the Raja who could bend the great bow of Siva, 55; Ráma bends the bow, ib.; married to Ráma, 57; mythical story of her birth, 58; modern story of her honeymoon, 66; plays at dice with Ráma, 67; drinks honey, 68; her prayer when Ráma leaves her to be installed Yuvaraja, 108; Ráma returns from the palace and informs her of his exile, 117; declares that she will accompany him to the jungle, 118; her solemn appeal to Ráma, 119; her wrath, 120; Ráma yields to her entreaties, 121; accompanies Ráma and Lákshmana in a farewell visit to the Maháraja, ib.; weeps over the bark clothing, 127; accompanies her husband in a chariot, 129; her prayer to the river Ganges, 112; her prayer to the river Jumná and fig-tree, 147; sports with her husband Ráma on the hill Chitra-kúta, 199; episode of the tíká, 201; her interview with Anasúyá, the wife of Atri, 237; praised for her devotion to her husband, ib.; praises Ráma, 238; receives an ointment which renders her ever young and beautiful, 238; seized by Virádha the cannibal, 242; rescued by Ráma and Lakshmana, 243; reproaches Ráma for waging war against the Rákshasas, 249; attacked by Súrpa-nakhá, 267; placed in a case throughout the wars, 271, 275; entreats Ráma to pursue a beautiful deer, 285; taunts Lákshmana into leaving her, 287; addressed by Rávana, 289; her wrathful reply, 290; carried away by Rávana, 291; her cries heard by Jatáyus, 297; poetical contrast of her golden complexion with the black complexion of Rávana, ib.; her lamentations for Ráma, ib.; drops her ornaments amongst the Monkeys on Rishya-múkha, 298; conducted to the palace of Rávana, ib.; wrathfully refuses to receive the addresses of Rávana, 300; her ornaments shown to Ráma by Sugríva, 320; discovered by Hanuman in the Asoka garden at Lanká, 335; night visit of Rávana surrounded by his women, ib.; Rávana threatens to slay her, 338; threatened by the Rákshasí women, ib.; her interview with Hanuman, 339; difficulty as regards her purity after her imprisonment in the palace of Rávana, 381; narrative of her ordeal, 382; restored to Ráma, 383; cruel words of Ráma, ib.; her appeal, ib.; enters the fire, 384; the god Agni attests her purity, ib.; Ráma receives her as his wife, 385; installed as Rání, 391; gives her necklace to Hanumán, 392; story of her separation and exile, 398; her sufferings, 400; found by Válmíki, gives birth to Lava and Kusa, 401; is reconciled to Ráma, 403; questionable authenticity of the story of Sítá, 405.
Siva, the god, legend of his being smitten by the love-inspiring arrows of Káma, 41; legend of the descent of the Ganges upon his head, 45; legend of the great bow with which he destroyed the sacrifice of Daksha, 54; worshipped by Ráma, who sets up a Linga at Ramisseram, 353; worshipped in the age of Brahmanical revival, 417.
Slander, scale of punishments for, 540.
Smriti, or tradition, 450.
Soma, the moon god, daily oblation to, 493.
Spies considered necessary under Hindú government, 7, 9.
Spirits. *See* Ghosts.
Sráddha, performance of, before marriage, 56; on the death of Maháraja Dasaratha, 175; performed by Ráma, 209; curious reasoning of Jávali against its performance, 225.
Sráddha, the daily, 492; description of the Sráddha, or feast of the dead, 518; origin of the idea, ib.; a pleasing expression of natural religion, 519; three distinct Sráddhas, ib.; ceremonies to be performed at a monthly Sráddha, 520; persons to be invited to a Sráddha, 522; persons to be excluded, ib.; significance of the catalogues of disqualifications, 524; relative merits of different victuals offered at, 527; the funeral Sráddha, ib.; modifications of the old Vedic belief in, by the Bráhmans, 528; description of the Sráddha of Ramdoolal Dey, ib., *note*.
Sringa, Rishi, legend of his never having seen a woman, 11; enticed from his father's hermitage by damsels sent by the Raja of Anga, 12; causes rain in Anga, 13; marries Sántá, the daughter of the Raja, 14; performs the Aswamedha of Maháraja Dasaratha, 16.
Sringavera, the modern Sungrcor, the frontier town between Kosala and the Bhíl country, 135; Ráma and Sítá halt there, 139; halt of the army of Bharata, 182.
Sruti, or revelation, 450.
Subala mountain in the island of Lanká, 330.
Súdras, 4.
Sugríva, the Monkey chieftain on the Rishya-múkha mountain, 310; receives Ráma and Lakshmana, 319; shows Sítá's ornaments to Ráma, 320; relates the

story of his grievances against Báli, ib.; proceeds to Kishkindhya, and fights Báli, 321; Bali slain by Ráma, ib.; takes the wife of Báli and is installed Raja of Kishkindhyá, 323; his neglect to assist Ráma, 326; joins Ráma with his army, ib.; adventures of the Monkeys in his honey garden, 343; his joy at their return, 344.
Súka, sent by Rávana with Sárana to spy upon the army of Ráma, 353; returns to Rávana and dismissed from his service, 355.
Súkra, the preceptor of the Rakshasas, 373.
Sumantra, chief counsellor of Maháraja Dasaratha, 6; makes known the ancient prophecy that the Aswamedha was to be performed by Rishi Sringa, 11; relates the legend of the Rishi Sringa who had never seen a woman, ib.; pacifies the infant Ráma with a mirror, 30; sent by Vasishtha to summon the Maháraja to the installation of Ráma, 106; praises the Maháraja, 107; commanded by Kaikeyí and the Maháraja to bring Ráma to the palace, ib.; brings Ráma, 108; reproaches Kaikeyí, 124; drives Ráma and Sítá out of Ayodhyá in the royal chariot, 129; returns to Ayodhyá, 140; delivers Ráma's message to Dasaratha, 152.
Sumitrá, a Ráni of Maháraja Dasaratha, 11; gives birth to Lakshmana and Satrughna, 21.
Sun, identified with the Supreme Spirit, 412; identified with Brahma, 483; chain of conceptions involved in his worship, 484.
Sun-god. *See* Súrya.
Supreme Spirit, identified with the Sun, Agni, and Prajápati, 412; identified with Brahma, 483; contemplation of, by the religious devotee, 563, 564.
Sureties, law respecting, 609; its moral significance, 610.
Súrpa-nakhá, sister of Rávana, admires the beauty of Ráma, 265; her efforts to induce Ráma to marry her, ib.; advised by Ráma to marry Lakshmana, 267; rushes upon Sítá and loses her ears and nose, ib.; escapes to her brother Khara, 268; the wars between Khara and Dúshana and Ráma, 269; her angry address to Rávana, 281; urges him to carry off Sítá, ib.; curses Rávana, 374.
Súrya, or the Sun, the mythical ancestor of the Rajas of Kosala, 2.
Sushena, the physician, restores the dead Monkeys to life by herbs brought from the Himalaya mountain, 369; a second time, 372.
Sustí, the goddess, propitiated for the purpose of quieting the infant Ráma, 30.
Sutíkshna, the ascetic, visited by Ráma, Sítá, and Lakshmana, 248.
Suvahu, the Rákshasa, destroyed by Ráma, 44.
Swayamvara, associated with polyandry, 502; its origin, 503; referred to in the hymns of the Rig-Veda, 504; no allusion to it in Manu, ib.; pleasing idea involved, 570; an exaggerated expression of chivalry, 571.
Tamasá river, Ráma's encampment there, 136.
Tárá, wife of Báli, entreats her husband not to fight Sugríva, 321; her lamentations over him, 322; becomes the wife of Sugríva, 323.
Táraka, the Rakshasí, haunts the wilderness, 41; slain by Ráma at the request of Viswamitra, 42.
Taxes, system of, in return for protection, 603; assessment on yearly savings, ib.; land revenue, etc., 604.
Thread, the distinguishing symbol of the three higher castes, 529, 545.
Tíká, pressed on Ráma's breast from Sítá's forehead, 201.
Time, Hindú calculations of, 464.
Traditions, various modes of interpretation, different phases of civilization, 624.
Treasure trove, law respecting, 607.
Tree, Ingudí, encampment of Ráma and Sítá under, 139; juice of the fig tree employed to mat the hair of devotees, 142; worshipped by Sítá, 147.
Trees, daily worship of, 494; spirits of, 495.
Trijatá, the Rákshasí woman, protects Sítá, 339.
Twilight of the Vedic deities, 466.

Uggra Chunda, the genius of Lanká, her combat with Hanuman, 333.
Upádhyá, or schoolmaster, 550.
Urmilá, daughter of Janaka, married to Lakshmana, 57.
Usury, law respecting, 608.

Vaisyas, 4; their occupations, 561.
Válmíki, the author of the Rámáyana, his seat at Chitra-kúta, 135; visited by Ráma, 148; chronological difficulties connected with him, 230; finds Sítá, 401; educates her sons, ib.
Vámadeva, preceptor of Maháraja Dasaratha, 6.
Vánaprastha, life of, as described in the Vishnu Purána, 104.
Vánaprastha, or hermit, as distinguished from the Sannyási, or devotee, 561; his religious austerities, 562.
Varuna, the god of waters, advises Ráma that Nala can bridge the sea at Lanká, 352.
Váruní, the goddess of wine, rises out of the sea, 47.
Vasishtha, his satire upon the Bráhmans, 443.
Vasishtha, preceptor of Maháraja Dasaratha, 6; identifies Ráma as an incarnation of Vishnu, 29; educates Ráma and his brothers, 32; invests him with the sacred thread and teaches him the Gayatri, 33; directs the necessary preparations for the installation of Ráma as Yuvaraja, 82; his instructions to Ráma; 84; a later Brahmanical interpolation, 87; preparations on the morning of the installation, 106; sends Sumantra to summon the Maháraja, ib.; reproaches Kaikeyí, 127; his proceedings on the death of Maháraja

Dasaratha, 156; sends messengers for Bharata, 158; directs the funeral ceremonies of Mahárája Dasaratha, 172; appearance at Chitra-kúta, 210; endeavours to persuade Ráma to accept the Raj, 216; conducts the installation of Ráma after his return from exile, 391; advises Ráma, 401.
Vásuki, the serpent, 47.
Vátápi and Ilwala, legend of, 253.
Vedangas, the six, 550.
Vedas, four, corresponding to the four faces of Brahma, 447; character of the four Vedas, 447, *note;* the Mantras and Bráhmanas, 448; daily study of, in propitiation of the Rishis, 488; preparatory ceremonial, ib.; effect of the ceremonial upon the young Bráhman, 489; right of interpretation claimed by the Bráhmans, 489, 490; mode of interpretation, 490.
Vedic age, characteristics of, 411; distinct from the Brahmanic, 412; compromise between the two, ib.; deities recognized, but placed subordinate to Brahma, 413; Vedic period illustrated by the Brahmanic period, 414; appeal of the Vedic deities in the age of Brahmanical revival, 416; chronology of the Vedic age, 418; Vedic geography compared with that in the code of Manu, 425; Vedic gods identified with the Vedic Aryans, 426; inferior to Brahma, 428; Vedic psalmists as distinct from Bráhman priests, 435; Vedic religion restricted generally to the present life, ib.; genial character of the ceremonial, 437; popularity and power of the Vedic psalmists, ib.; wide interval between Vedic and Brahmanic ideas, 438; effect produced on the Vedic Aryans by the asceticism of the Bráhmans, 442; compare the Bráhmans with frogs, 443; conception of Manu compared with the Brahmanic conception, 445; idea of the creation, 452; Brahmanical doctrine of rewards and punishments unknown, 471; crude conception of sin, 472; Vedic gods included in Om, the Vyáhritis, and the Gáyatrí, 481; daily oblations of ghee to the Vedic gods, 493; Vedic conceptions of marriage as expressed in the two Epics, 501; polyandry, 502; polygamy, 503; inferior gods, 525; modifications of the old belief in the Sráddha by the Bráhmans, 528; traces of caste, 530; myth that the four castes were created from the limbs of Purusha, ib.; sacrifice of the antelope peculiar to the Vedic Aryans, 545, *note;* marriage relations in, 568; ideas of government contrasted with those in Manu, 586; absence of chronological sequence, 620.
Vedic deities, oppressed by Rávana, 18; complain to Brahma, ib.; promised relief by Vishnu, 19; become incarnate as Monkeys and Bears, 20; commanded by Vishnu to churn the sea, 47.
Vena, Raja, his fondness for women, 581.
Vibhándaka, father of the Rishi Sringa, 13.
Vibhíshana, the younger brother of Rávana, a worshipper of Vishnu, 333; interferes in behalf of Hanuman, 342; part played by him in the original tradition, 348; joins Ráma and promised the Raj of Lanká, 352; his proceedings after the death of Rávana, 382; installed Raja of Lanká, 383.
Village, the Hindú, comprising both a district and a town, 596; village communities, 597; officials, ib.; assemblies, ib.; emoluments of village officials, 598; antiquity and permanence of the system, ib.; law respecting the surrounding pasture land, 599; boundaries and land-marks, 600; investigation of disputes, ib.; government of, as laid down by Manu, 601.
Vinasana, or disappearance of the Saraswatí, a land-mark adopted by Manu, 428.
Virádha, the cannibal Rákshasa, his horrible appearance, 241; taunts Ráma and Lakshmana with having only one wife, ib.; preserved from slaughter by the blessing of Brahma, 243; buried alive, ib.; legend respecting, 244.
Viráj, produced from Brahmá, 460; progenitor of Manu, ib.
Visálá, Raja of, welcomes the arrival of Ráma and Lakshmana, 48.
Vishnu, appears from the sea of milk, and promises to relieve the Vedic deities from the oppression of Rávana, 19; promises to become incarnate as the four sons of Dasaratha, 20; becomes incarnate through the agency of páyasa, 23; distinguishing marks of, 29; legend of his taking three steps in the Dwarf incarnation for the destruction of Bali, 43; desires Indra and the gods to churn the sea for amrita, 47; the goddess Lakshmí rises from the sea and becomes his wife, ib.; gives the amrita to Indra and the gods, 48; propitiated by Kausalyá, 84; worshipped by Ráma, 85; dubious stress laid upon his worship, 87; sacrifices of Kausalyá, 113; character of Ráma as an incarnation of, 233; bow of, 256.
Vishnu, worshipped in the age of Brahmanical revival, 417.
Viswakarma, the architect of the gods, provides Bharadwája with the means of entertaining the army of Bharata, 186.
Viswámitra, son of Gádhi, his visit to Mahárája Dasaratha, 38; originally a Kshatriya, 39; requests that Ráma may be sent to protect his Brahmanical settlement against the Rákshasas, ib.; Ráma and Lakshmana permitted to accompany him, ib.; acts as Guru to Ráma, 40; commands Ráma to slay Táraká, 41; removes his scruples about killing a woman, 42; presents divine weapons and mantras to Ráma, 43; conducts Ráma and Lakshmana to his hermitage, ib.; his anomalous character, 49; probably a Buddhist Kshatriya who had become a Bráhman, ib. *note;* accompanies Ráma and Lakshmana to Mithilá, 54—56; proceeds to the Himalaya mountain, 61.
Vyáhritis, comprising earth, sky, and heaven, 480; meaning of, 481.

War, fortifications of Ayodhyá, 4.
War, laws of, 613; duties of a Raja in defensive warfare, 615; duties during actual operations, ib.; alliances, 616; duties in offensive warfare, ib.; policy to be pursued in a conquered country, 617.
Weapons, divine, given by Viswámitra to Ráma, 43; the great bow of Siva, 51; the great bow of Vishnu, 62; divine, given by Agastya to Ráma, 256.
Widows. *See* Marriage.
Winter, poetical description of, 258.
Witnesses of different castes, examination of, 533, *note*.
Women, their social condition amongst the Hindús, 568. *See* Marriage.
Yudhájit, brother of Kaikeyí, entertained by Mahárajá Dasaratha, 77; returns to the city of Girivraja, accompanied by Bharata and Satrughna, ib.
Yugas, or ages, four, 465; simplicity of the conception involved, 465, 466; the Mahá Yuga, or great age, 466.
Yuvaraja, appointment of the heir-apparent during the life-time of a Raja, 72; threefold object of the custom, ib.; jealousies excited in the zenana, 73; palace intrigues, 76; narrative of the appointment of Ráma, 77; joy of Kausalyá, 84; Vasishtha's directions to Ráma, 85; general rejoicings, 86.

JOHN CHILDS AND SON, PRINTERS.

00035541

Digitized with financial assistance from

Government of Maharashtra

on 30 January, 2020